

# **Standard Chinese**

**A modular Approach**

---

## **Standard Chinese: A modular Approach**

---

---

# Table of Contents

Colophon .....	xx
Preface .....	xxi
Introduction .....	xxiii
About the course .....	xxiii
Background Notes: About Chinese .....	xxx
1. Module 1: Orientation .....	1
Objectives .....	2
Tapes for ORN and associated resource modules .....	3
Unit 1 Target List .....	4
Unit 2 Target List .....	6
Unit 3 Target List .....	8
Unit 4 Target List .....	10
Unit 1 .....	12
Introduction .....	12
References .....	17
Drills .....	27
Unit 2 .....	35
Introduction .....	35
References .....	36
Drills .....	48
Unit 3 .....	81
Introduction .....	81
References .....	82
Drills .....	92
Unit 4 .....	111
Introduction .....	111
References .....	112
Drills .....	123
Criterion Test .....	145
Part I .....	145
Part II .....	147
Part III .....	147
Appendices .....	149
Appendix 1: Map of China .....	149
Appendix 2: Map of Taiwan .....	150
Appendix 3: Countries and Regions .....	151
Appendix 4: American States .....	152
Appendix 5: Canadian Provinces .....	154
Appendix 6: Common Chinese Names .....	155
Appendix 7: Chinese Provinces .....	156
Appendix 8: Chinese Cities .....	157
2. Module 2: Biographic Information .....	158
Objectives .....	158
Tapes for BIO and associated modules .....	159
Unit 1 Target List .....	160
Unit 2 Target List .....	162
Unit 3 Target List .....	164
Unit 4 Target List .....	166
Unit 5 Target List .....	168
Unit 6 Target List .....	170
Unit 7 Target List .....	172
Unit 8 Target List .....	174
Unit 1 .....	176
Introduction .....	176
References .....	177

Drills .....	187
Unit 2 .....	206
Introduction .....	206
References .....	207
Drills .....	220
Unit 3 .....	251
Introduction .....	251
References .....	252
Drills .....	263
Unit 4 .....	297
Introduction .....	297
References .....	298
Drills .....	309
Unit 5 .....	348
Introduction .....	348
References .....	349
Drills .....	361
Unit 6 .....	387
Introduction .....	387
References .....	388
Drills .....	401
Unit 7 .....	437
Introduction .....	437
References .....	438
Drills .....	448
Unit 8 .....	485
Introduction .....	485
References .....	486
Drills .....	498
3. Module 3: Money .....	524
Objectives .....	524
Unit 1 Target List .....	525
Unit 2 Target List .....	528
Unit 3 Target List .....	531
Unit 4 Target List .....	534
Unit 5 Target List .....	536
Unit 6 Target List .....	538
Unit 1 .....	540
References .....	540
Drills .....	551
Unit 2 .....	580
References .....	580
Drills .....	595
Unit 3 .....	619
References .....	619
Drills .....	637
Unit 4 .....	663
Reference List .....	663
Vocabulary .....	666
Reference Notes .....	667
Drills .....	676
Unit 5 .....	716
Reference List .....	716
Vocabulary .....	718
Reference Notes .....	719
Drills .....	728
Unit 6 .....	749
Reference List .....	749



Vocabulary .....	751
Reference Notes .....	752
Drills .....	761
4. Module 4: Directions .....	793
Objectives .....	793
Images .....	794
Unit 1 Target List .....	796
Unit 2 Target List .....	798
Unit 3 Target List .....	800
Unit 4 Target List .....	803
Unit 5 Target List .....	806
Unit 1 .....	808
References .....	808
Drills .....	823
Unit 2 .....	849
References .....	849
Vocabulary Booster .....	868
Drills .....	870
Unit 3 .....	899
References .....	899
Drills .....	916
Unit 4 .....	940
References .....	940
Drills .....	953
Unit 5 .....	980
References .....	980
Drills .....	996
5. Module 5: Transportation .....	1018
Objectives .....	1018
Unit 1 Target List .....	1019
Unit 2 Target List .....	1022
Unit 3 Target List .....	1024
Unit 4 Target List .....	1026
Unit 5 Target List .....	1028
Unit 6 Target List .....	1030
Unit 7 Target List .....	1032
Unit 8 Target List .....	1034
Unit 1 .....	1036
References .....	1036
Drills .....	1049
Unit 2 .....	1077
References .....	1077
Drills .....	1087
Unit 3 .....	1114
References .....	1114
Drills .....	1124
Unit 4 .....	1145
References .....	1145
Drills .....	1154
Unit 5 .....	1177
References .....	1177
Drills .....	1186
Unit 6 .....	1218
References .....	1218
Drills .....	1229
Unit 7 .....	1250
References .....	1250
Drills .....	1260

Unit 8 .....	1282
References .....	1282
Drills .....	1295
6. Module 6: Arranging a meeting .....	1320
Objectives .....	1320
Unit 1 Target List .....	1321
Unit 2 Target List .....	1323
Unit 3 Target List .....	1325
Unit 4 Target List .....	1327
Unit 5 Target List .....	1329
Unit 6 Target List .....	1331
Unit 7 Target List .....	1333
Unit 8 Target List .....	1335
Unit 1 .....	1337
References .....	1337
Drills .....	1349
Unit 2 .....	1374
References .....	1374
Drills .....	1392
Unit 3 .....	1416
References .....	1416
Drills .....	1428
Unit 4 .....	1452
References .....	1452
Drills .....	1464
Unit 5 .....	1475
References .....	1475
Drills .....	1489
Unit 6 .....	1509
References .....	1509
Drills .....	1520
Unit 7 .....	1538
References .....	1538
Drills .....	1554
Unit 8 .....	1571
References .....	1571
Drills .....	1581
7. Module 7: Society .....	1598
Preface .....	1598
Introduction .....	1599
Section 1 : To the student .....	1599
How to use the book .....	1599
How to use the tapes .....	1600
Section 2 : To the teacher .....	1600
TAPES FOR MODULE 7 (SOC) .....	1602
Objectives .....	1603
Unit 1 Travel plans .....	1604
Introduction .....	1604
References .....	1605
Unit 2 Equality of sexes .....	1630
Introduction .....	1630
References .....	1631
Unit 3 Family Values .....	1648
Introduction .....	1648
References .....	1649
Unit 4 A Family History .....	1669
Introduction .....	1669
References .....	1670

Unit 5 Traditional Attitudes and Modern Changes .....	1686
Introduction .....	1686
References .....	1687
Unit 6 Politics and Culture .....	1704
Introduction .....	1704
References .....	1705
Unit 7 Social Problems .....	1725
Introduction .....	1725
References .....	1726
Unit 8 Directions for the Future .....	1749
Introduction .....	1749
References .....	1750
Vocabulary .....	1765
8. Module 8: Travelling in China .....	1766
Preface .....	1766
Maps of Chinese languages .....	1767
Unit 1 .....	1768
References .....	1768
Unit 2 .....	1782
References .....	1782
Unit 3 .....	1795
References .....	1795
Unit 4 .....	1808
References .....	1808
Unit 5 .....	1816
References .....	1816
Unit 6 .....	1827
References .....	1827
Unit 7 .....	1837
References .....	1837
Unit 8 .....	1850
References .....	1850
9. Module 9: .....	1860
Introduction .....	1860
Unit 1 .....	1861
Vocabulary .....	1861
Frames .....	1869
Unit 2 .....	1872
Vocabulary .....	1872
Frames .....	1881
Unit 3 .....	1884
Vocabulary .....	1884
Frames .....	1891
Unit 4 .....	1893
Vocabulary .....	1893
Frames .....	1901
Unit 5 .....	1904
Vocabulary .....	1904
Frames .....	1914
Unit 6 .....	1917
Vocabulary .....	1917
Frames .....	1926
Unit 7 .....	1929
Vocabulary .....	1929
Frames .....	1937
Unit 8 .....	1939
Vocabulary .....	1939
Frames .....	1948

---

10. Car	1951
Objectives of the Car Module	1951
General	1951
Specific	1951
Unit 1	1952
Part 1	1952
Part 2	1953
Part 3	1954
Unit Vocabulary List	1955
Unit 2	1955
Part 1	1955
Part 2	1956
Part 3	1957
Unit Vocabulary List	1958
Parts of the car	1958
11. Hotel	1959
General	1959
Specific	1959
Objectives	1959
Unit 1	1959
Part 1	1959
Part 2	1960
Part 3	1961
Part 4	1961
Unit Vocabulary List	1962
Unit 2	1962
Part 1	1962
Part 2	1963
Part 4	1965
Vocabulary	1965
Things in a Hotel Room	1965
12. Post Office and Telephone	1966
Objectives	1966
General	1966
Specific	1966
Unit 1	1967
Part 1	1967
Part 2	1967
Part 3	1968
Part 4	1968
Unit Vocabulary List	1969
Unit 2	1969
Part 1	1969
Part 2	1970
Part 3	1970
Part 4	1971
Unit Vocabulary List	1971
13. Customs Surrounding	1972
Objectives	1972
General	1972
Specific	1972
Unit 1: Weather and Terrain	1973
Part 1: Winter and Summer	1973
Part 2: Spring and Fall	1977
Part 3: Terrain	1979
Unit Vocabulary List	1979
Unit 2: Clothing	1979
Part 1: Buying Clothes	1979

---

Part 2: Buying Clothes .....	1979
Having Clothes made .....	1979
Unit Vocabulary List .....	1979
Unit 3: Hair Care .....	1979
Part 1: At the Barber .....	1980
Part 2: At the Hairdresser .....	1980
Unit Vocabulary List .....	1980
Unit 4: In the Home .....	1980
Part 1: Personal Belongings .....	1981
Part 2: Parts of the Home .....	1981
Taking Care of Children .....	1981
Unit Vocabulary List .....	1981
Unit 5: Minor Physical Complaints .....	1981
Part 1: Colds and Fevers .....	1982
Part 2: Stomach Ailments .....	1982
Taking Temperature and Blood Pressure .....	1982
Unit Vocabulary List .....	1982
Unit 6: Accidents and Difficulties .....	1982
Part 1: Losing a Driver's license .....	1983
Part 2: A Motorcycle Accident .....	1983
Crossing into a Restricted Area .....	1983
Unit Vocabulary List .....	1983
Appendix .....	1983
Parts of the Body .....	1983
Medical Conditions and Illness .....	1983
Furniture and Household Items .....	1983
Parts of the House .....	1983
14. Restaurant .....	1984
Objectives .....	1984
General .....	1984
Specific .....	1984
Unit 1 .....	1985
Part 1 .....	1985
Part 2 .....	1987
Part 3 .....	1988
Unit Vocabulary List .....	1989
Unit 2 .....	1989
Part 1 .....	1989
Part 2 .....	1991
Part 3 .....	1992
Unit Vocabulary List .....	1993
Unit 3 .....	1993
Part 1 .....	1993
Part 2 .....	1995
Part 3 .....	1997
Unit Vocabulary List .....	1997
Unit 4 .....	1997
Part 1 .....	1997
Part 2 .....	1999
Part 3 .....	2001
Unit Vocabulary List .....	2001
Foods .....	2001
15. Personal Welfare .....	2002
Objectives for the Personal Welfare Module .....	2002
Unit 1: Weather and Terrain .....	2002
Reference List .....	2002
References Notes .....	2002
Unit 2: Clothing .....	2004

Unit 3: Hair Care .....	2004
Unit 4: In the Home .....	2004
Unit 5: Minor Physical Complaints .....	2004
Unit 6: Accidents and Difficulties .....	2004
Appendixes .....	2004
Parts of the body .....	2004
Medical Conditions and Illnesses .....	2004
Furniture and Household Items .....	2004
Parts of the House .....	2004
Module Vocabulary List .....	2004

---

## List of Figures

1. <a href="#">Wén wǔ</a> Temple in central Taiwan (courtesy of Thomas Madden) .....	xxviii
2. Strokes order .....	xxxii
3. Running style writing .....	xxxii
4. Running style writing .....	xxxiii
1.1. On a <a href="#">Běijīng</a> street .....	11
1.2. 0021-FSI-StandardChinese-Module01ORN-StudentText-7.png .....	86
1.3. 0021-FSI-StandardChinese-Module01ORN-StudentText-8.png .....	115
3.1. Writing suspicious characters on red paper at Chinese New Year's. People buy these decorations to hang on doors. ....	665
4.1. Maps for C-1 Tape .....	852

---

## List of Tables

1.1. Create a question from the statement .....	48
1.2. Give a positive answer to the question. ....	50
1.3. All of your answers will be negative. Give the correct name according to the cue. ....	52
1.4. This drill is a combination of the two previous drills. Give an affirmative or a negative answer according to the cue. ....	55
1.5. Transform the sentence according to the model. ....	58
1.6. Transform the sentence using <i>bú xìng</i> . ....	60
1.7. Transform the sentence according to the model. ....	62
1.8. Expand the sentence using the model. ....	64
1.9. Expand the sentence using the model. ....	67
1.10. Respond according to the cue and the model. ....	70
1.11. Respond according to the model. ....	73
1.12. Transform the statement according to the model. ....	76
1.13. Transform the sentence according to the model. ....	79
1.14. All responses will be affirmative. ....	92
1.15. Answer according to the model. ....	94
1.16. Answer according to the cue. ....	97
1.17. Respond according to the cue. ....	100
1.18. Transform the sentence according to the model. ....	103
1.19. Transform the sentence according to the model. ....	105
1.20. Transform the sentence according to the model. ....	107
1.21. Ask the question corresponding to the statement. ....	109
1.22. PRC .....	117
1.23. TAIWAN .....	117
1.24. Respond to the question “Where is He/she from?” according to the cue. ....	123
1.25. Ask the appropriate “where” question, as in the example. ....	126
1.26. Change affirmative statements to negative statements. ....	128
1.27. Add <i>yě</i> to the statement. ....	130
1.28. Add <i>yě</i> to the statement. ....	132
1.29. Give a negative answer to the questions. ....	134
1.30. Respond according to the cue. ....	137
1.31. Transform the statement according to the model. ....	140
1.32. Respond according to the cue. ....	142
2.1. Give affirmative response to all questions. ....	187
2.2. Give affirmative response to all questions. ....	190
2.3. Give negative response to all questions. ....	192
2.4. Give either a negative or an affirmative response, according to the cues. ....	194
2.5. Change the less polite forms <i>něige rén</i> and <i>zhèige rén</i> to the more polite forms <i>nèiwèi</i> and <i>zèiwèi</i> .....	197
2.6. Respond to <i>něige fāndiàn?</i> “Which hotel?” according to the cues. ....	199
2.7. Respond to <i>něige rén</i> “which person ” with <i>nèige rén</i> , “That person.” .....	202
2.8. Ask the appropriate “which” or “where” question according to the statements. ....	204
2.9. Respond according to the cues. ....	220
2.10. Respond according to the cues. ....	223
2.11. According to each cue, respond with the appropriate street number on <i>Dàlǐ</i> street. ....	226
2.12. Give the appropriate <i>Táiwān</i> street addresses according to the cues. ....	229
2.13. Respond according to the model. ....	232
2.14. Change each <i>ma</i> question to a <i>ba</i> question. ....	234
2.15. Give an answer according to the cues. ....	236
2.16. Give affirmative response to all questions. ....	239
2.17. Add <i>xiànzài</i> , “now” to each statement. ....	241
2.18. Make each statement negative by changing <i>zài</i> to <i>bú zài</i> .....	243
2.19. Give negative response to the questions, adding correct information according to the cues. ....	245
2.20. Give an affirmative or negative response according to the cues. ....	248



2.21. Give affirmative answers using <b>yǒu</b> .	263
2.22. Give affirmative answers using <b>yǒu</b> .	265
2.23. Give negative answers using <b>méiyǒu</b> .	267
2.24. Give a negative or affirmative response to each question according to the cue.	269
2.25. Change each <b>ma</b> question to a <b>jǐ</b> question.	272
2.26. Respond to the questions according to the cue.	274
2.27. Add the cues to the questions.	276
2.28. Use 1) <b>jiù</b> + the number and 2) <b>méiyǒu</b> to answer each question.	279
2.29. Respond according to the cue.	281
2.30. The speaker will ask you 2 questions for each exchange. Use the number cue to answer the first question. Answer the second question with <b>Dōu</b> and the first alternative.	283
2.31. Substitute the cue.	288
2.32. Add the cue and <b>gēn</b> to each sentence.	291
2.33. Answer to the question according to the cue.	294
2.34. Transform the question according to the model.	309
2.35. Transform the question according to the model.	311
2.36. Answer to the question according to the model.	313
2.37. Answer to the question according to the model.	315
2.38. Answer to the question according to the model.	318
2.39. Give an affirmative response to the first question in each exchange, and include <b>hái</b> and <b>méi</b> in your response to the second question.	321
2.40. Respond to the question according to the model.	324
2.41. Respond to each question with a completed-action answer or a yet-to-be-completed answer, depending on the cue.	327
2.42. Respond according to the clue.	332
2.43. For each item, ask “which day...”	334
2.44. Transform the statement according to the model	336
2.45. Respond with a <b>shì...de</b> sentence when the cue makes it appropriate.	338
2.46. Give affirmative responses to the questions.	341
2.47. Give negative responses to the <b>shì... de</b> questions.	343
2.48. According to the cues, give an affirmative or a negative response to each <b>shì...de</b> question.	345
2.49. According to the cues, give an answer to each <b>shì...de</b> question.	361
2.50. Transform the question according to the model.	364
2.51. Transform the statement according to the model.	366
2.52. According to the cues, give a response to each question.	369
2.53. According to the cues, give a response to each question.	371
2.54. According to the cues, give a response to each statement.	374
2.55. According to the cues, give a response to each question.	377
2.56. According to the cues, give a response to each question.	379
2.57. According to the cues, give a response to each question.	381
2.58. Substitute <b>shàngge yuè</b> , “last month” (May), <b>zhèige yuè</b> , “this month” (June), or <b>xiàge yuè</b> , “next month” (July), according to the month mentioned in the speaker’s sentence.	383
2.59. Each of the speaker’s statements is the answer to a question. After hearing each answer, ask the question which could have prompted the response.	385
2.60. Respond according to the cue.	401
2.61. Respond according to the cue.	404
2.62. Respond according to the cue.	407
2.63. Expand the response according to the model and the cue.	410
2.64. Transform the sentence according to the model.	413
2.65. Expand the sentence according to the model.	415
2.66. Transform the sentence according to the model.	417
2.67. Transform the sentence according to the model.	419
2.68. Respond by adding <b>xiǎng zhù</b> , or <b>zhùle</b> + duration phrase + <b>le</b> to each statement, according to the cue.	421
2.69. Transform the sentence according to the model.	424

---

2.70. Transform the sentence according to the model. ....	426
2.71. Transform the sentence according to the model. ....	428
2.72. Transform the sentence according to the model. ....	431
2.73. Give a negative response to each question. ....	433
2.74. Give a negative response to each question. ....	435
2.75. ....	448
2.76. ....	451
2.77. ....	454
2.78. ....	457
2.79. ....	459
2.80. ....	462
2.81. ....	464
2.82. Give negative responses to all the questions, and complete your answers according to the cues. ....	466
2.83. Give negative or affirmative responses to all the questions according to the cues. ....	469
2.84. ....	472
2.85. ....	474
2.86. ....	477
2.87. Give an affirmative or a negative response to each question, according to the cues. ....	479
2.88. Give an affirmative or a negative response to each question, according to the cues. ....	482
2.89. ....	498
2.90. ....	500
2.91. ....	502
2.92. ....	505
2.93. ....	508
2.94. ....	511
2.95. ....	514
2.96. ....	516
2.97. ....	518
2.98. ....	520
3.1. Transform the question according to the model. ....	551
3.2. Transform the statement according to the model. ....	553
3.3. Answer the questions according to the cue. ....	555
3.4. Transform the question using the appropriate measure word. ....	557
3.5. Transform the question using the appropriate measure word. ....	559
3.6. Answers the questions according to the cue. ....	562
3.7. Answer the questions according to the cue. ....	564
3.8. Transform the statement using the appropriate measure word. ....	566
3.9. Answer the questions according to the cue. ....	568
3.10. Transform the statement using <i>meiyou?</i> . ....	570
3.11. Answer the questions according to the cue. ....	572
3.12. Transform the statement according to the model. ....	574
3.13. Answer the questions according to the cue. ....	577
3.14. ....	595
3.15. ....	597
3.16. ....	600
3.17. ....	602
3.18. ....	605
3.19. ....	607
3.20. ....	609
3.21. ....	611
3.22. For your answers, use specific counters with <i>liàng</i> . ....	614
3.23. Give affirmative response to all questions. ....	617
3.24. Here is a new expression you will need in the exercise: <i>nèibā yūsān</i> . ....	637
3.25. ....	639
3.26. ....	641
3.27. ....	644
3.28. ....	647

---

---

3.29.	649
3.30.	652
3.31.	654
3.32.	656
3.33.	658
3.34.	660
3.35.	676
3.36.	678
3.37.	680
3.38.	682
3.39.	685
3.40.	688
3.41.	691
3.42.	694
3.43.	697
3.44.	699
3.45.	701
3.46.	704
3.47.	706
3.48.	709
3.49.	712
3.50.	714
3.51.	728
3.52.	730
3.53.	732
3.54.	735
3.55.	737
3.56.	739
3.57.	741
3.58. Use <b>liáng-</b> for all your responses.	743
3.59.	746
3.60. Answer to the questions according to the cue.	761
3.61. Give an answer according to the model.	764
3.62. Answer according to the model.	766
3.63. Give affirmative response to all questions using <b>Dui le</b> and according to the model.	768
3.64. Answer according to the model.	771
3.65. In your responses, assume that closing time is seven o'clock.	773
3.66. Give a statement according to the cue.	775
3.67. Answer to all questions according to the cue.	777
3.68. Transform the sentence according to the cue.	780
3.69. Transform the statement according to the model.	782
3.70. Expand the statement according to the cue.	784
3.71. Transform the statement according to the cue.	787
3.72. Answer to the questions according to the cue.	790
4.1. Expand the statement according to the model and the cue.	823
4.2. Answer to all the questions according to the cue.	826
4.3. Transform the question according to the model.	829
4.4. Answer to all the questions according to the model and the cue.	831
4.5. Create the question corresponding to the statement, according to the model.	833
4.6. Transform the question according to the model.	835
4.7. Expand the statement according to the model and the cue.	837
4.8. Expand the question according to the model and the cue.	840
4.9. Answer to all the questions according to the model and the cue.	843
4.10. Answer to all the questions according to the model and the cue.	846
4.11. Create a question according to the cue.	870
4.12. Transform the statement according to the cue.	872
4.13. Transform the statement according to the cue.	874
4.14. Give a response to all questions according to the cue.	876

---

---

4.15. Transform the statement according to the model. ....	879
4.16. Transform the statement according to the model and the cue. ....	881
4.17. Transform the statement according to the model and the cue. ....	884
4.18. Transform the statement according to the model and the cue. ....	887
4.19. Transform the statement according to the model and the cue. ....	890
4.20. Transform the statement according to the model. ....	892
4.21. Transform the statement according to the model. ....	894
4.22. Give a response to all questions according to the cue. ....	896
4.23. Expand the statement according to the model. ....	916
4.24. Expand the statement according to the model and the cue. ....	918
4.25. Transform the statement according to the model. ....	921
4.26. Expand the statement according to the model. ....	923
4.27. Give an response according to the model. ....	925
4.28. Give affirmative response to all questions. ....	927
4.29. Give a response to all questions according to the model. ....	929
4.30. Give affirmative response to all questions. ....	931
4.31. Give affirmative or negative response to all questions according to the cue. ....	934
4.32. Give a response to all questions according to the model. ....	937
4.33. Transform the statement according to the cue. ....	953
4.34. Transform the statement according to the model and the cue. ....	956
4.35. Expand the statement according to the model and the cue. ....	959
4.36. Transform the statement according to the model and the cue. ....	962
4.37. Expand the statement according to the model and the cue. ....	965
4.38. Expand the statement according to the model and the cue. ....	968
4.39. Transform the statement according to the model. ....	971
4.40. Create a question in relation of the statement, and according to the model. ....	973
4.41. Transform the statement according to the model and the cue. ....	975
4.42. Answer to all the questions according to the cue. ....	977
4.43. Transform the question according to the model and the cue. ....	996
4.44. Create a question from the statement according to the model. ....	999
4.45. Answer to all questions according to the model and cue. ....	1001
4.46. Transform the statement according to the model and the cue. ....	1004
4.47. Transform the statement according to the model. ....	1007
4.48. Transform the statement according to the model and the cue. ....	1009
4.49. Transform the statement according to the model and the cue. ....	1011
4.50. Answer to all the questions according to the model and the cue. ....	1014
5.1. Expand according to the cue and the model. ....	1049
5.2. Expand according to the cue and the model. ....	1051
5.3. Respond according to the cue and the model. ....	1053
5.4. Respond according to the cue and the model. ....	1056
5.5. Expand according to the cue and the model. ....	1059
5.6. Respond according to the cue and the model. ....	1062
5.7. Transform according to the cue and the model. ....	1064
5.8. Transform according to the cue and the model. ....	1066
5.9. Expand according to the cue and the model. ....	1069
5.10. Respond according to the cue and the model. ....	1072
5.11. Expand according to the cue and the model. ....	1074
5.12. Substitute according to the cue and the model. ....	1087
5.13. Respond according to the cue and the model. ....	1090
5.14. Expand according to the cue and the model. ....	1093
5.15. Respond according to the cue and the model. ....	1096
5.16. Respond according to the cue and the model. ....	1098
5.17. Expand according to the cue and the model. ....	1100
5.18. Transform according to the cue and the model. ....	1103
5.19. Respond according to the cue and the model. ....	1105
5.20. Respond according to the cue and the model. ....	1108
5.21. Expand according to the cue and the model. ....	1111
5.22. Expand according to the cue and the model. ....	1124

---

5.23. Expand according to the cue and the model. ....	1127
5.24. Expand according to the cue and the model. ....	1129
5.25. Respond according to the cue and the model. ....	1131
5.26. Transform according to the cue and the model. ....	1134
5.27. Expand according to the cue and the model. ....	1136
5.28. Respond according to the cue and the model. ....	1139
5.29. Expand according to the cue and the model. ....	1142
5.30. Respond according to the cue and the model. ....	1154
5.31. Expand according to the cue and the model. ....	1157
5.32. Respond according to the cue and the model. ....	1160
5.33. Expand according to the cue and the model. ....	1163
5.34. Respond according to the cue and the model. ....	1166
5.35. Respond according to the cue and the model. ....	1169
5.36. Respond according to the cue and the model. ....	1172
5.37. Transform according to the cue and the model. ....	1175
5.38. Respond according to the cue and the model. ....	1186
5.39. Respond according to the cue and the model. ....	1189
5.40. Respond according to the cue and the model. ....	1192
5.41. Transform according to the cue and the model. ....	1195
5.42. Respond according to the cue and the model. ....	1198
5.43. Transform according to the cue and the model. ....	1201
5.44. Substitute according to the cue and the model. ....	1204
5.45. Transform according to the cue and the model. ....	1207
5.46. Expand according to the cue and the model. ....	1210
5.47. Respond according to the cue and the model. ....	1213
5.48. Expand according to the cue and the model. ....	1215
5.49. Expand according to the cue and the model. ....	1229
5.50. Respond according to the cue and the model. ....	1232
5.51. Expand according to the cue and the model. ....	1235
5.52. Substitute according to the cue and the model. ....	1238
5.53. Expand according to the cue and the model. ....	1240
5.54. Respond according to the cue and the model. ....	1242
5.55. Expand according to the cue and the model. ....	1245
5.56. Expand according to the cue and the model. ....	1247
5.57. Transform according to the cue and the model. ....	1260
5.58. Expand according to the cue and the model. ....	1262
5.59. Respond according to the cue and the model. ....	1265
5.60. Expand according to the cue and the model. ....	1268
5.61. Substitute according to the cue and the model. ....	1270
5.62. Transform according to the cue and the model. ....	1273
5.63. Transform according to the cue and the model. ....	1276
5.64. Expand according to the cue and the model. ....	1278
5.65. Expand according to the cue and the model. ....	1280
5.66. Transform according to the cue and the model. ....	1295
5.67. Expand according to the cue and the model. ....	1297
5.68. Substitute according to the cue and the model. ....	1299
5.69. Transform according to the cue and the model. ....	1301
5.70. Substitute according to the cue and the model. ....	1303
5.71. Respond according to the cue and the model. ....	1305
5.72. Transform according to the cue and the model. ....	1308
5.73. Transform according to the cue and the model. ....	1311
5.74. Transform according to the cue and the model. ....	1313
5.75. Expand according to the cue and the model. ....	1316
6.1. ....	1349
6.2. ....	1352
6.3. Drill ....	1354
6.4. ....	1357
6.5. ....	1360

---

6.6.	1363
6.7.	1366
6.8.	1368
6.9.	1370
6.10.	1372
6.11.	1392
6.12.	1395
6.13.	1398
6.14.	1400
6.15.	1403
6.16.	1406
6.17.	1409
6.18.	1411
6.19.	1413
6.20.	1428
6.21.	1431
6.22.	1434
6.23.	1437
6.24.	1440
6.25.	1443
6.26.	1445
6.27.	1447
6.28.	1450
6.29.	1464
6.30.	1466
6.31.	1468
6.32.	1470
6.33.	1472
6.34.	1489
6.35.	1492
6.36.	1494
6.37.	1496
6.38.	1499
6.39.	1502
6.40.	1504
6.41.	1506
6.42.	1520
6.43.	1522
6.44.	1524
6.45.	1526
6.46.	1529
6.47.	1531
6.48.	1533
6.49.	1535
6.50.	1554
6.51.	1556
6.52.	1558
6.53.	1561
6.54.	1564
6.55.	1566
6.56.	1568
6.57.	1581
6.58.	1584
6.59.	1586
6.60.	1589
6.61.	1592
6.62.	1595

---

## List of Examples

1.1. Here is an English example of a substitution drill: .....	15
1.2. Here is an English example of a transformation drill, in which the student is changing affirmative sentences into negative ones: .....	15
1.3. Here is an English example of a response drill: .....	15
1.4. Here is an English example of an expansion drill: .....	16
1.5. Here is an English example of a combination drill: .....	16
1.6. Examples .....	41
2.1. Example: .....	260
3.1. Examples .....	624
5.1. <a href="#">Yībān chē</a> : .....	1042
5.2. <a href="#">Èrshífēn zhōng</a> : .....	1042

---

# Colophon

This publication is to be used primarily in support of instructing military personnel as part of the Defense Language Program (resident and nonresident). Inquiries concerning the use of materials, including requests for copies, should be addressed to:

Defense Language Institute

Foreign Language Center

Nonresident Training Division

Presidio of Monterey, CA 93944-5006

Topics in the areas of politics, international relations, mores, etc., which may be considered as controversial from some points of view, are sometimes included in the language instruction for DLIFLC students since military personnel may find themselves in positions where a clear understanding of conversations or written materials of this nature will be essential to their mission. The presence of controversial statements—whether real or apparent—in DLIFLC materials should not be construed as representing the opinions of the writers, the DLIFLC, or the Department of Defense.

Actual brand names and businesses are sometimes cited in DLIFLC instructional materials to provide instruction in pronunciations and meanings. The selection of such proprietary terms and names is based solely on their value for instruction in the language. It does not constitute endorsement of any product or commercial enterprise, nor is it intended to invite a comparison with other brand names and businesses not mentioned.

In DLIFLC publications, the words he, him, and/or his denote both masculine and feminine genders. This statement does not apply to translations of foreign language texts.

The DLIFLC may not have full rights to the materials it produces. Purchase by the customer does not constitute authorization for reproduction, resale, or showing for profit. Generally, products distributed by the DLIFLC may be used in any not-for-profit setting without prior approval from the DLIFLC.

## Note

This course was formatted by Eric Streit ([eric@yojik.eu](mailto:eric@yojik.eu)) using the docbook format from the pdf scanned documents found on:

<https://fsi-language.yojik.eu>

Ronald Grenier (Demi Puppet) is helping a lot with digitizing, proofreading! Thanks a lot.

You can find the pdf, epub, odt versions on <https://git.yojik.eu/> (whole book or separate lessons)

The document will be edited with traditional characters, and converted to simplified later. The transformation from traditional to simplified is far more accurate than the other way I intended to do.

The tones in the book sentences will match how the word would sound when spoken in a sentence, not how it sounds in the dictionary.

I intend to do a French version later ....



---

# Preface

Standard Chinese: A Modular Approach originated in an inter-agency conference held at the Foreign Service Institute in August 1973 to address the need generally felt in the U.S. Government language training community for improving and updating Chinese materials, to reflect current usage in Beijing and Taipei.

The conference resolved to develop materials which were flexible enough in form and content to meet the requirements of a wide range of government agencies and academic institutions.

A Project Board was established consisting of representatives of the Central Intelligence Agency Language Learning Center, the Defense Language Institute, the State Department's Foreign Service Institute, the Cryptologic School of the National Security Agency, and the U.S. Office of Education, later joined by the Canadian Forces Foreign Language School. The representatives have included Arthur T. McNeill, John Hopkins, and John Boag (CIA); Colonel John F. Elder III, Joseph C. Hutchinson, Ivy Gibian, and Major Bernard Muller-Thym (DLI); James R. Frith and John B. Ratliff III (FSI); Kazuo Shitama (NSA); Richard T. Thompson and Julia Petrov (OE); and Lieutenant Colonel George Kozoriz (CFFLS).

The Project Board set up the Chinese Core Curriculum Project in 1974 in space provided at the Foreign Service Institute. Each of the six U.S. and Canadian government agencies provided funds and other assistance.

Gerard P. Kok was appointed project coordinator, and a planning council was formed consisting of Mr. Kok, Frances Li of the Defense Language Institute, Patricia O'Connor of the University of Texas, Earl M. Rickerson of the Language Learning Center, and James Wrenn of Brown University. In the fall of 1977, Lucille A. Barale was appointed deputy project coordinator. David W. Dellinger of the Language Learning Center and Charles R. Sheehan of the Foreign Service Institute also served on the planning council and contributed material to the project. The planning council drew up the original overall design for the materials and met regularly to review their development.

Writers for the first half of the materials were John H. T. Harvey, Lucille A. Barale, and Roberta S. Barry, who worked in close cooperation with the planning council and with the Chinese staff of the Foreign Service Institute. Mr. Harvey developed the instructional formats of the comprehension and production self-study materials, and also designed the communications classroom activities and wrote the teacher's guides. Lucille A. Barale and Roberta S. Barry wrote the tape scripts and the student text. By 1978 Thomas E. Madden and Susan C. Pola had joined the staff. Led by Ms. Barale, they have worked as a team to produce the materials subsequent to Module 6.

All Chinese language material was prepared or selected by Chuan O. Chao, Ying-chi Chen, Hsiao-Jung Chi, Eva Diao, Jan Hu, Tsung-mi Li, and Yunhui C. Yang, assisted for part of the time by Chieh-fang Ou Lee, Ying-ming Chen, and Joseph Yu Hsu Wang. Anna Affholder, Mei-li Chen, and Henry Khuo helped in the preparation of a preliminary corpus of dialogues.

Administrative assistance was provided at various times by Vincent Basciano, Lisa A. Bowden, Jill W. Ellis, Donna Fong, Renee T. C. Liang, Thomas E. Madden, Susan C. Pola, and Kathleen Strype.

The production of tape recordings was directed by Jose M. Ramirez of the Foreign Service Institute Recording Studio. The Chinese script was voiced by Ms. Chao, Ms. Chen, Mr. Chen, Ms. Diao, Ms. Hu, Mr. Khuo, Mr. Li, and Ms. Yang. The English script was read by Ms. Barale, Ms. Barry, Mr. Basciano, Ms. Ellis, Ms. Pola, and Ms. Strype.

The graphics were produced by John McClelland of the Foreign Service Institute Audio-Visual staff, under the general supervision of Joseph A. Sadote, Chief of Audio-Visual.

Standard Chinese: A Modular Approach was field-tested with the cooperation of Brown University; the Defense Language Institute, Foreign Language Center; the Foreign Service Institute; the Language Learning Center; the United States Air Force Academy; the University of Illinois; and the University of Virginia.

Colonel Samuel L. Stapleton and Colonel Thomas G. Foster, Commandants of the Defense Language Institute, Foreign Language Center, authorized the DLIFLC support necessary for preparation of this edition of the course materials. This support included coordination, graphic arts, editing, typing, proof-reading, printing, and materials necessary to carry out these tasks.

A handwritten signature in black ink that reads "James R. Frith". The signature is written in a cursive style with a large, looping initial "J".

**James R. Frith, Chairman**  
**Chinese Core Curriculum Project Board**

---

# Introduction

## About the course

This course is designed to give you a practical command of spoken Standard Chinese. You will learn both to understand and to speak it. Although Standard Chinese is one language, there are differences between the particular form it takes in Beijing and the form it takes in the rest of the country. There are also, of course, significant non-linguistic differences between regions of the country. Reflecting these regional differences, the settings for most conversations are Beijing and Taipei.

This course represents a new approach to the teaching of foreign languages. In many ways it redefines the roles of teacher and student, of classwork and homework, and of text and tape. Here is what you should expect:

- The focus is on communicating in Chinese in practical situations—the obvious ones you will encounter upon arriving in China. You will be communicating in Chinese most of the time you are in class. You will not always be talking about real situations, but you will almost always be purposefully exchanging information in Chinese.
- This focus on communicating means that the teacher is first of all your conversational partner. Anything that forces him<sup>1</sup> back into the traditional roles of lecturer and drill-master limits your opportunity to interact with a speaker of the Chinese language and to experience the language in its full spontaneity, flexibility, and responsiveness.
- Using class time for communicating, you will complete other course activities out of class whenever possible. This is what the tapes are for. They introduce the new material of each unit and give you as much additional practice as possible without a conversational partner.
- The texts summarize and supplement the tapes, which take you through new material step by step and then give you intensive practice on what you have covered. In this course you will spend almost all your time listening to Chinese and saying things in Chinese, either with the tapes or in class.

### How the Course Is Organized

The subtitle of this course, “A Modular Approach,” refers to overall organization of the materials into MODULES which focus on particular situations or language topics and which allow a certain amount of choice as to what is taught and in what order. To highlight equally significant features of the course, the subtitle could just as well have been “A Situational Approach,” “A Taped-Input Approach,” or “A Communicative Approach.”

Ten situational modules form the core of the course:

ORIENTATION (ORN)	Talking about who you are and where you are from.
BIOGRAPHIC INFORMATION (BIO)	Talking about your background, family, studies, and occupation and about your visit to China.
MONEY (MON)	Making purchases and changing money.
DIRECTIONS (DIR)	Asking directions in a city or in a building.
TRANSPORTATION (TRN)	Taking buses, taxis, trains, and planes, including finding out schedule information, buying tickets, and making reservations.

---

<sup>1</sup>As used in this course, the words “he,” “him,” and “Ms” are intended to include both masculine and feminine genders. (Translations of foreign language material not included.)

ARRANGING A MEETING (MTG)	Arranging a business meeting or a social get-together, changing the time of an appointment, and declining an invitation.
SOCIETY (SOC)	Talking about families, relationships between people, cultural roles in traditional society, and cultural trends in modern society.
TRAVELING IN CHINA (TRL)	Making travel arrangements and visiting a kindergarten, the Great Wall, the Ming Tombs, a commune, and a factory.
LIFE IN CHINA (LIC)	Talking about daily life in <a href="#">Běijīng</a> street committees, leisure activities, traffic and transportation, buying and rationing, housing.
TALKING ABOUT THE NEWS (TAN)	Talking about government and party policy changes described in newspapers the educational system agricultural policy, international policy, ideological policy, and policy in the arts.

Each core module consists of tapes, a student textbook, and a workbook.

In addition to the ten CORE modules, there are also RESOURCE modules and OPTIONAL modules. Resource modules teach particular systems in the language, such as numbers and dates. As you proceed through a situational core module, you will occasionally take time out to study part of a resource module. (You will begin the first three of these while studying the Orientation Module.)

PRONUNCIATION AND ROMANIZATION (P&R)	The sound system of Chinese and the Pinyin system of romanization.
NUMBERS (NUM)	Numbers up to five digits.
CLASSROOM EXPRESSIONS (CE)	Expressions basic to the classroom learning situation.
TIME AND DATES (T&D)	Dates, days of the week, clock time, parts of the day.
GRAMMAR	Aspect and verb types, word order, multisyllabic verbs and auxiliary verbs, complex sentences, adverbial expressions.

Each module consists of tapes and a student textbook.

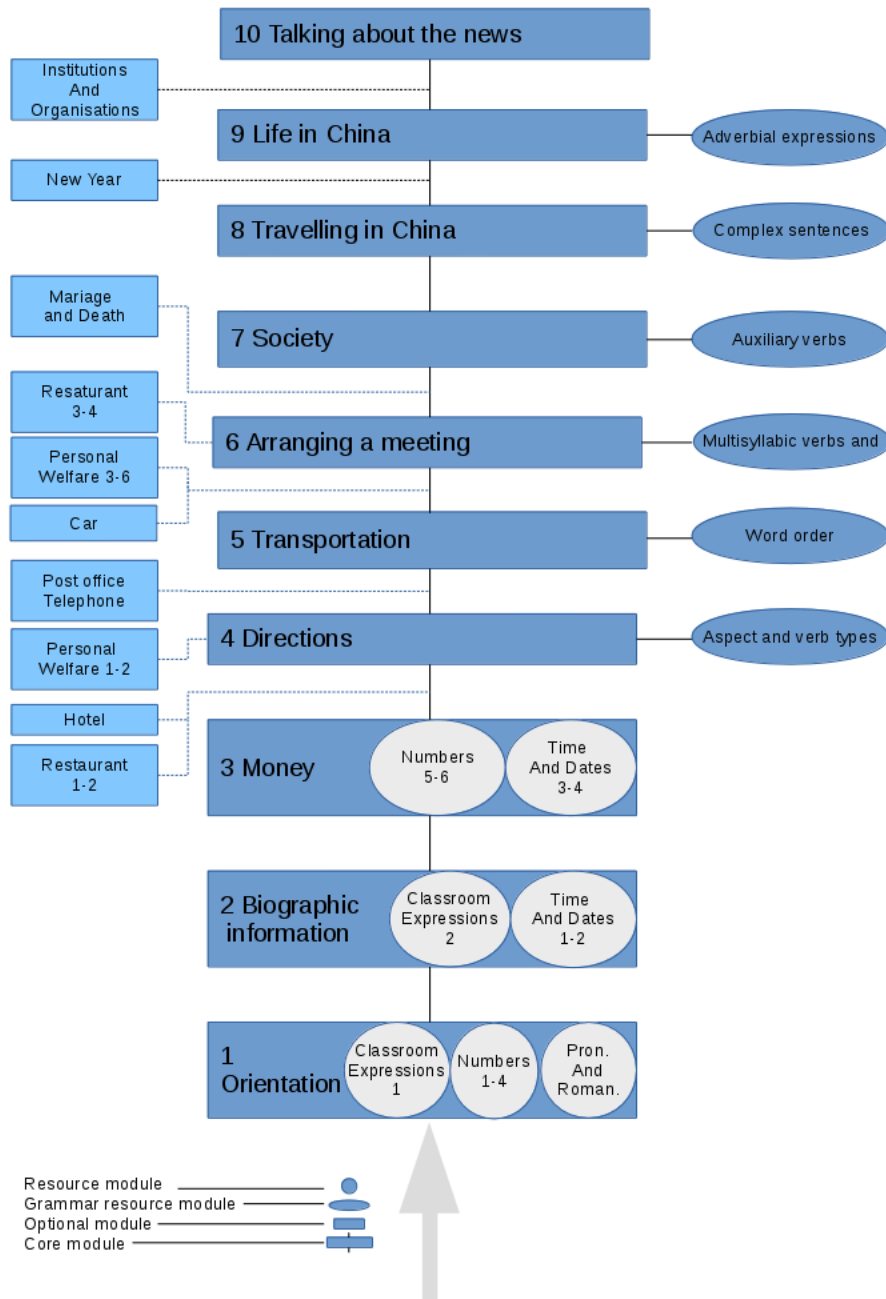
The eight optional modules focus on particular situations:

- RESTAURANT (RST)
- HOTEL (HTL)
- PERSONAL WELFARE (WLF)
- POST OFFICE AND TELEPHONE (PST/TEL)
- CAR (CAR)
- CUSTOMS SURROUNDING MARRIAGE, BIRTH, AND DEATH (MBD)
- NEW YEAR'S CELEBRATION (NYR)
- INSTITUTIONS AND ORGANIZATIONS (I&O)

Each module consists of tapes and a student textbook. These optional modules may be used at any time after certain core modules,

The diagram on [diagram](#) shows how the core modules, optional modules, and resource modules fit together in the course. Resource modules are shown where study should begin. Optional modules are shown where they may be introduced.

### Standard Chinese : A modular approach



### Inside a Core Module

Each core module has from four to eight units. A module also includes:

- **Objectives:** The module objectives are listed at the beginning of the text for each module. Read these before starting work on the first unit to fix in your mind what you are trying to accomplish and what you will have to do to pass the test at the end of the module.

- **Target Lists:** These follow the objectives in the text. They summarize the language content of each unit in the form of typical questions and answers on the topic of that unit. Each sentence is given both in romanized Chinese and in English. Turn to the appropriate Target List before, during, or after your work on a unit, whenever you need to pull together what is in the unit.
- **Review Tapes (R-1):** The Target List sentences are given on these tapes. Except in the short Orientation Module, there are two R-1 tapes for each module.
- **Criterion Test:** After studying each module, you will take a Criterion Test to find out which module objectives you have met and which you need to work on before beginning to study another module.

### Inside a Unit

Here is what you will be doing in each unit. First, you will work through two tapes:

1. **Comprehension Tape 1 (C-1):** This tape introduces all the new words and structures in the unit and lets you hear them in the context of short conversational exchanges. It then works them into other short conversations and longer passages for listening practice, and finally reviews them in the Target List sentences. Your goal when using the tape is to understand all the Target List sentences for the unit.
2. **Production Tape 1 (P-1):** This tape gives you practice in pronouncing the new words and in saying the sentences you learned to understand on the C-1 tape. Your goal when using the P-1 tape is to be able to produce any of the Target List sentences in Chinese when given the English equivalent.

The C-1 and P-1 tapes, not accompanied by workbooks, are “portable,” in the sense that they do not tie you down to your desk. However, there are some written materials for each unit which you will need to work into your study routine. A text *Reference List* at the beginning of each unit contains the sentences from the C-1 and P-1 tapes. It includes both the Chinese sentences and their English equivalents. The text *Reference Notes* restate and expand the comments made on the C-1 and P-1 tapes concerning grammar, vocabulary, pronunciation, and culture. After you have worked with the C-1 and P-1 tapes, you go on to two class activities:

3. **Target List Review:** In this first class activity of the unit, you find out how well you learned the C-1 and P-1 sentences. The teacher checks your understanding and production of the Target List sentences. He also presents any additional required vocabulary items, found at the end of the Target List, which were not on the C-1 and P-1 tapes.
4. **Structural Buildup:** During this class activity, you work on your understanding and control of the new structures in the unit. You respond to questions from your teacher about situations illustrated on a chalkboard or explained in other ways.

After these activities, your teacher may want you to spend some time working on the drills for the unit.

5. **Drill Tape:** This tape takes you through various types of drills based on the Target List sentences and on the additional required vocabulary.
6. **Drills:** The teacher may have you go over some or all of the drills in class, either to prepare for work with the tape, to review the tape, or to replace it.

Next, you use two more tapes. These tapes will give you as much additional practice as possible outside of class.

7. **Comprehension Tape 2 (C-2):** This tape provides advanced listening practice with exercises containing long, varied passages which fully exploit the possibilities of the material covered. In the C-2 Workbook you answer questions about the passages.

8. **Production Tape 2 (P-2):** This tape resembles the Structural Buildup in that you practice using the new structures of the unit in various situations. The P-2 Workbook provides instructions and displays of information for each exercise.

Following work on these two tapes, you take part in two class activities:

9. **Exercise Review:** The teacher reviews the exercises of the C-2 tape by reading or playing passages from the tape and questioning you on them. He reviews the exercises of the P-2 tape by questioning you on information displays in the P-2 Workbook.
10. **Communication Activities:** Here you use what you have learned in the unit for the purposeful exchange of information. Both fictitious situations (in Communication Games) and real-world situations involving you and your classmates (in "interviews") are used.

**Materials and Activities for a Unit**

TAPED MATERIALS	WRITTEN MATERIALS	CLASS ACTIVITIES
C-1, P-1 Tapes	Target List	Target List Review
	Reference List	
	Reference Notes	
_____	_____	Structural Buildup
D-1 Tapes	Drills	Drills
C-2, P-2 Tapes	Reference Notes	Exercise Review
	C-2, P-2 Workbooks	
_____	_____	Communication Activities









## Background Notes: About Chinese

### The Chinese Languages

We find it perfectly natural to talk about a language called “Chinese.” We say, for example, that the people of China speak different dialects of Chinese, and that Confucius wrote in an ancient form of Chinese. On the other hand, we would never think of saying that the people of Italy, France, Spain, and Portugal speak dialects of one language, and that Julius Caesar wrote in an ancient form of that language. But the facts are almost exactly parallel.

Therefore, in terms of what we think of as a language when closer to home, “Chinese” is not one language, but a family of languages. The language of Confucius is partway up the trunk of the family tree. Like Latin, it lived on as a literary language long after its death as a spoken language in popular use. The seven modern languages of China, traditionally known as the “dialects,” are the branches of the tree. They share as strong a family resemblance as do Italian, French, Spanish, and Portuguese, and are about as different from one another.

The predominant language of China is now known as **Pǔtōnghuà**, or “Standard Chinese” (literally “the common speech”). The more traditional term, still used in Taiwan, is **Guóyǔ**, or “Mandarin” (literally “the national language”). Standard Chinese is spoken natively by almost two-thirds of the population of China and throughout the greater part of the country.

The term “Standard Chinese” is often used more narrowly to refer to the true national language which is emerging. This language, which is already the language of all national broadcasting, is based primarily on the Peking dialect, but takes in elements from other dialects of Standard Chinese and even from other Chinese languages. Like many national languages, it is more widely understood than spoken, and is often spoken with some concessions to local speech, particularly in pronunciation.

The Chinese languages and their dialects differ far more in pronunciation than in grammar and vocabulary. What distinguishes Standard Chinese most from the other Chinese languages, for example, is that it has the fewest tones and the fewest final consonants.

The remaining six Chinese languages, spoken by approximately a quarter of the population of China, are tightly grouped in the southeast, below the Yangtze River. The six are: the Wu group (**Wú**), which includes the “Shanghai dialect”; Hunanese (**Xiāng**); the “Kiangsi dialect” (**Gàn**); Cantonese (**Yuè**), the language of **Guǎngdōng**, widely spoken in Chinese communities in the United States; Fukienses (**Mín**), a variant of which is spoken by a majority on Taiwan and hence called Taiwanese; and Hakka (**Kèjiǎ**), spoken in a belt above the Cantonese area, as well as by a minority on Taiwan. Cantonese, Fukienses, and Hakka are also widely spoken throughout Southeast Asia.

There are minority ethnic groups in China who speak non-Chinese languages. Some of these, such as Tibetan, are distantly related to the Chinese languages. Others, such as Mongolian, are entirely unrelated.

### Some Characteristics of Chinese

To us, perhaps the most striking feature of spoken Chinese is the use of variation in tone (“tones” to distinguish the different meanings of syllables which would otherwise sound alike. All languages, and Chinese is no exception, make use of sentence intonation to indicate how whole sentences are to be understood. In English, for example, the rising pattern in “He’s gone?” tells us that the sentence is meant as a question. The Chinese tones, however, are quite a different matter. They belong to individual syllables, not to the sentence as a whole. An inherent part of each Standard Chinese syllable is one of four distinctive tones. The tone does just as much to distinguish the syllable as do the consonants and vowels. For example, the only difference between the verb “to buy,” **mǎi** and the verb “to sell,” **mài**, is the Low tone ( √ # ) and the Falling tone ( ˋ ). And yet these words are just as distinguishable

as our words “buy” and “guy,” or “buy” and “boy.” Apart from the tones, the sound system of Standard Chinese is no more different from English than French is.

Word formation in Standard Chinese is relatively simple. For one thing, there are no conjugations such as are found in many European languages. Chinese verbs have fewer forms than English verbs, and nowhere near as many irregularities. Chinese grammar relies heavily on word order, and often the word order is the same as in English. For these reasons Chinese is not as difficult for Americans to learn to speak as one might think.

It is often said that Chinese is a monosyllabic language. This notion contains a good deal of truth. It has been found that, on the average, every other word in ordinary conversation is a single-syllable word. Moreover, although most words in the dictionary have two syllables, and some have more, these words can almost always be broken down into single-syllable units of meaning, many of which can stand alone as words.

### Written Chinese

Most languages with which we are familiar are written with an alphabet. The letters may be different from ours, as in the Greek alphabet, but the principle is the same: one letter for each consonant or vowel sound, more or less. Chinese, however, is written with “characters” which stand for whole syllables—in fact, for whole syllables with particular meanings. Although there are only about thirteen hundred phonetically distinct syllables in standard Chinese, there are several thousand Chinese characters in everyday use, essentially one for each single-syllable unit of meaning. This means that many words have the same pronunciation but are written with different characters, as *tiān*, “sky,” 天, and *tiān*, “to add,” “to increase,” 添. Chinese characters are often referred to as “ideographs” which suggests that they stand directly for ideas. But this is misleading. It is better to think of them as standing for the meaningful syllables of the spoken language.

Minimal literacy in Chinese calls for knowing about a thousand characters. These thousand characters, in combination, give a reading vocabulary of several thousand words. Full literacy calls for knowing some three thousand characters. In order to reduce the amount of time needed to learn characters, there has been a vast extension in the People’s Republic of China (PRC) of the principle of character simplification, which has reduced the average number of strokes per character by half.

During the past century, various systems have been proposed for representing the sounds of Chinese with letters of the Roman alphabet. One of these romanizations, *Hànyǔ Pīnyīn* (literally “Chinese Language Spelling,” generally called “Pinyin” in English), has been adopted officially in the PRC, with the short-term goal of teaching all students the Standard Chinese pronunciation of characters. A long-range goal is the use of Pinyin for written communication throughout the country. This is not possible, of course, until speakers across the nation have uniform pronunciations of Standard Chinese. For the time being, characters, which represent meaning, not pronunciation, are still the most widely accepted way of communicating in writing.

Pinyin uses all of the letters in our alphabet except “v,” and adds the letter “ü.” The spellings of some of the consonant sounds are rather arbitrary from our point of view, but for every consonant sound there is only one letter or one combination of letters, and vice versa. You will find that each vowel letter can stand for different vowel sounds, depending on what letters precede or follow it in the syllable. The four tones are indicated by accent marks over the vowels, and the Neutral tone by the absence of an accent mark:

High: *mā*

Falling: *mà*

Rising: *má*

Neutral: *ma*

Low: *mǎ*

One reason often given for the retention of characters is that they can be read, with the local pronunciation, by speakers of all the Chinese languages. Probably a stronger reason for retaining them is that the characters help keep alive distinctions of meaning between words, and connections of meaning between words, which are fading in the spoken language. On the other hand, a Cantonese could learn to speak Standard Chinese, and read it alphabetically, at least as easily as he can learn several thousand characters.

Pinyin is used throughout this course to provide a simple written representation of pronunciation. The characters, which are chiefly responsible for the reputation of Chinese as a difficult language, are taught separately.

### **BACKGROUND NOTES: ABOUT CHINESE CHARACTERS**

Each Chinese character is written as a fixed sequence of strokes. There are very few basic types of strokes, each with its own prescribed direction, length, and contour. The dynamics of these strokes as written with a brush, the classical writing instrument, show up clearly even in printed characters. You can tell from the varying thickness of the stroke how the brush met the paper, how it swooped, and how it lifted; these effects are largely lost in characters written with a ball-point pen.

The sequence of strokes is of particular importance. Let's take the character for "mouth," pronounced [kǒu](#). Here it is as normally written, with the order and directions of the strokes indicated.

**Figure 2. Strokes order**



If the character is written rapidly, in "running-style writing," one stroke glides into the next, like this.

**Figure 3. Running style writing**



If the strokes were written in any but the proper order, quite different distortions would take place as each stroke reflected the last and anticipated the next, and the character would be illegible.

The earliest surviving Chinese characters, inscribed on the Shang Dynasty "oracle bones" of about 1500 B.C., already included characters that went beyond simple pictorial representation. There are some characters in use today which are pictorial, like the character for "mouth." There are also some which are directly symbolic, like our Roman numerals I, II, and III. (The characters for these numbers—the first numbers you learn in this course—are like the Roman numerals turned on their sides.) There are some which are indirectly symbolic, like our Arabic numerals 1, 2, and 3. But the most common type of character is complex, consisting of two parts: a "phonetic," which suggests the pronunciation, and a "radical," which broadly characterizes the meaning. Let's take the following character as an example.

**Figure 4. Running style writing**

This character means “ocean” and is pronounced *yáng*. The left side of the character, the three short strokes, is an abbreviation of a character which means “water” and is pronounced *shuǐ*. This is the “radical.” It has been borrowed only for its meaning, “water.” The right side of the character above is a character which means “sheep” and is pronounced *yáng*. This is the “phonetic.” It has been borrowed only for its sound value, *yáng*. A speaker of Chinese encountering the above character for the first time could probably figure out that the only Chinese word that sounds like *yáng* and means something like “water,” is the word *yáng* meaning “ocean.” We, as speakers of English, might not be able to figure it out. Moreover, phonetics and radicals seldom work as neatly as in this example. But we can still learn to make good use of these hints at sound and sense.

Many dictionaries classify characters in terms of the radicals. According to one of the two dictionary systems used, there are 176 radicals; in the other system, there are 214. There are over a thousand phonetics.

Chinese has traditionally been written vertically, from top to bottom of the page, starting on the right-hand side, with the pages bound so that the first page is where we would expect the last page to be. Nowadays, however, many Chinese publications paginate like Western publications, and the characters are written horizontally, from left to right.

**BACKGROUND NOTES: ABOUT CHINESE PERSONAL NAMES AND TITLES**

A Chinese personal name consists of two parts: a surname and a given name. There is no middle name. The order is the reverse of ours: surname first, given name last.

The most common pattern for Chinese names is a single-syllable surname followed by a two-syllable given name.<sup>2</sup>

*Máo Zédōng* (Mao Tse-tung)

*Zhōu Ēnlái* (Chou En-lai)

*Jiǎng Jièshí* (Chiang Kai-shek)

*Sòng Qínglíng* (Soong Ch#ing-ling—Mme Sun Yat-sen)

*Sòng Měilíng* (Soong Mei-ling—Mme Chiang Kai-shek)

It is not uncommon, however, for the given name to consist of a single syllable:

*Zhū Dé* (Chu De) : Marshal Zhu De, the communist general 朱德

*Lín Biāo* (Lin Piao)

*Hú Shì* (Hu Shih)

*Jiǎng Qīng* (Chiang Ch#ing—Mme Mao Tse-tung)

There are a few two-syllable surnames.

These are usually followed by single-syllable given names:

<sup>2</sup>The first version of each example is in the Pinyin system of romanization. The second parenthesized version is the conventional, or anglicized, spelling.

[Sīmǎ Guāng](#) (Ssu-ma Kuang)

[Ōuyáng Xiū](#) (Ou-yang Hsiu)

[Zhūgè Liàng](#) (Chu-ke Liang)

But two-syllable surnames may also be followed by two-syllable given names:

[Sīmǎ Xiāngrú](#) (Ssu-ma Hsiang-ju)

An exhaustive list of Chinese surnames includes several hundred written with a single character and several dozen written with two characters. Some single-syllable surnames sound exactly alike although written with different characters, and to distinguish them, the Chinese may occasionally have to describe the character or “write” it with a finger on the palm of a hand. But the surnames that you are likely to encounter are fewer than a hundred, and a handful of these are so common that they account for a good majority of China’s population.

Given names, as opposed to surnames, are not restricted to a limited list of characters. Men’s names are often but not always distinguishable from women’s; the difference, however, usually lies in the meaning of the characters and so is not readily apparent to the beginning student with a limited knowledge of characters.

Outside the People’s Republic the traditional system of titles is still in use. These titles closely parallel our own “Mr.,” “Mrs.,” and “Miss.” Notice, however, that all Chinese titles follow the name—either the full name or the surname alone—rather than preceding it.

The title “Mr.” is [Xiānsheng](#).

[Mǎ Xiānsheng](#)

[Mǎ Mínglǐ Xiānsheng](#)

The title “Mrs.” is [Tàitai](#). It follows the husband’s full name or surname alone.

[Mǎ Tàitai](#)

[Mǎ Mínglǐ Tàitai](#)

The title “Miss” is [Xiǎojiě](#). The Ma family’s grown daughter, [Défēn](#), would be

[Mǎ Xiǎojiě](#)

[Mǎ Défēn Xiǎojiě](#)

Even traditionally, outside the People’s Republic, a married woman does not take her husband’s name in the same sense as in our culture. If Miss Fang [Bǎolán](#) marries Mr. [Ma Mínglǐ](#), she becomes Mrs. [Mǎ Mínglǐ](#), but at the same time she remains [Fāng Bǎolán](#). She does not become [Mǎ Bǎolán](#); there is no equivalent of “Mrs. Mary Smith.” She may, however, add her husband’s surname to her own full name and refer to herself as [Mǎ Fāng Bǎolán](#). At work she is quite likely to continue as Miss [Fāng](#).

These customs regarding names are still observed by many Chinese today in various parts of the world. The titles carry certain connotations, however, when used in the PRC today: [Tàitai](#) should not be used because it designates that woman as a member of the leisure class. [Xiǎojiě](#) should not be used because it carries the connotation of being from a rich family.

In the People’s Republic, the title “Comrade,” [Tóngzhì](#) is used in place of the titles [Xiānsheng](#), [Tàitai](#), and [Xiǎojiě](#). [Mǎ Mínglǐ](#) would be:

[Mǎ Tóngzhì](#)

[Mǎ Mínglǐ Tóngzhì](#)

The title “Comrade” is applied to all, regardless of sex or marital status. A married woman does not take her husband’s name in any sense. [Mǎ Mínglǐ](#)’s wife would be:

[Fāng Tóngzhì](#)

[Fāng Bǎolán Tóngzhì](#)

Children may be given either the mother’s or the father’s surname at birth. In some families one child has the father’s surname, and another child has the mother’s surname. [Mǎ Mínglǐ](#)’s and [Fāng Bǎolán](#)’s grown daughter could be

[Mǎ Tǒngzhì](#)

[Mǎ Děfēn Tóngzhì](#)

Their grown son could be

[Fāng Tóngzhì](#)

[Fāng Zìqiáng Tóngzhì](#)

Both in the PRC and elsewhere, of course, there are official titles and titles of respect in addition to the common titles we have discussed here. Several of these will be introduced later in the course.

The question of adapting foreign names to Chinese calls for special consideration. In the People’s Republic the policy is to assign Chinese phonetic equivalents to foreign names. These approximations are often not as close phonetically as they might be, since the choice of appropriate written characters may bring in non-phonetic considerations. (An attempt is usually made when transliterating to use characters with attractive meanings.) For the most part, the resulting names do not at all resemble Chinese names. For example, the official version of “David Anderson” is [Dàiwěi Āndésēn](#).

An older approach, still in use outside the PRC, is to construct a valid Chinese name that suggests the foreign name phonetically. For example, “David Anderson” might be [Ān Dàwèi](#).

Sometimes, when a foreign surname has the same meaning as a Chinese surname, semantic suggestiveness is chosen over phonetic suggestiveness. For example, [Wáng](#), a common Chinese surname, means “king,” so “Daniel King” might be rendered [Wáng Dànián](#).

Students in this course will be given both the official PRC phonetic equivalents of their names and Chinese-style names.

---

# Chapter 1. Module 1: Orientation

The Orientation Module and associated resource modules provide the linguistic tools needed to begin the study of Chinese. The materials also introduce the teaching procedures used in this course.

The Orientation Module is not a typical course module in several respects. First, it does not have a situational topic of its own, but rather leads into the situational topic of the following module—Biographic Information. Second, it teaches only a little Chinese grammar and vocabulary. Third, two of the associated resource modules (Pronunciation and Romanization, Numbers) are not optional; together with the Orientation Module, they are prerequisite to the rest of the course.



## Objectives

Upon successful completion of this module and the two associated resource modules, the student should:

1. Distinguish the sounds and tones of Chinese well enough to be able to write the **Hànyǔ Pīnyīn** romanization for a syllable after hearing the syllable.
2. Be able to pronounce any combination of sounds found in the words of the Target Lists when given a romanized syllable to read. (Although the entire sound system of Chinese is introduced in the module, the student is responsible for producing only sounds used in the Target Sentences for ORN. Producing the remaining sounds is included in the Objectives for Biographic Information.)
3. Know the names and locations of five cities and five provinces of China well enough to point out their locations on a map, and pronounce the names well enough to be understood by a Chinese.
4. Comprehend the numbers 1 through 99 well enough to write them down when dictated, and be able to say them in Chinese when given English equivalents.
5. Understand the Chinese system of using personal names, including the use of titles equivalent to “Mr.,” “Mrs.,” “Miss,” and “Comrade.”
6. Be able to ask and understand questions about where someone is from.
7. Be able to ask and understand questions about where someone is.
8. Be able to give the English equivalents for all the Chinese expressions in the Target Lists.
9. Be able to say all the Chinese expressions in the Target Lists when cued with English equivalents.
10. Be able to take part in short Chinese conversations, based on the Target Lists, about how he is, who he is, and where he is from.

## Tapes for ORN and associated resource modules

Orientation (ORN)					
Unit 1	1 C-1	1 P-1	1&2 D-1		
Unit 2	2 C-1	2 P-1			
Unit 3	3 C-1	3 P-1	3 D-1	3 C-2	3 P-2
Unit 4	4 C-1	4 P-1	4 D-1	4 C-2	4 P-2

Pronunciation and Romanization (P&R)					
P&R 1	P&R 2	P&R 3	P&R 4	P&R 5	P&R 6

Numbers			
NUM 1	NUM 2	NUM 3	NUM 4

Classroom Expressions (CE)
CE 1

## Unit 1 Target List

1. A: **Nǐ shì shéi?**  
**你是谁？**  
Who are you?  
  
B: **Wǒ shì Wáng Dànián.**  
**我是王大年。**  
I am **Wáng Dànián** (Daniel King).  
  
A: **Wǒ shì Hú Měilíng.**  
**我是胡美玲。**  
I am **Hú Měilíng**.
2. A: **Nǐ xìng shénme?**  
**你姓什么？**  
What is your surname?  
  
B: **Wǒ xìng Wáng.**  
**我姓王。**  
My surname is **Wáng** (King).  
  
A: **Wǒ xìng Hú.**  
**我姓胡。**  
My surname is **Hú**.
3. A: **Tā shì shéi?**  
**他/她是谁？**  
Who is he/she?  
  
B: **Tā shì Mǎ Mínglǐ.**  
**他是马明理。**  
He is **Mǎ Mínglǐ**.  
  
A: **Tā shì Mǎ xiānsheng.**  
**他是马先生。**  
He is Mr. **Mǎ**.  
  
B: **Tā shì Mǎ tàitai.**

她是马太太。

She is Mrs. Mǎ.

A: Tā shì Mǎ xiǎojiě?

她是马小姐。

She is Miss Mǎ.

B: Tā shì Mǎ tóngzhì

他/她是马同志。

He/she is Comrade Mǎ.

4. A: Wáng xiānsheng, tā shì shéi?

王先生，他是谁？

Mr. Wáng, who is he?

B: Tā shì Mǎ Mínglǐ xiānsheng.

他是马明理先生。

He is Mr. Mǎ Mínglǐ.

5. A: Xiānsheng, tā shì shéi?

先生，她是谁？

Sir, who is she?

B: Tā shì Mǎ Mínglǐ tàitai.

她是马明理太太。

She is Mrs. Mǎ Mínglǐ.

6. A: Tóngzhì, tā shì shéi?

同志，她是谁？

Comrade, who is she?

B: Tā shì Fāng Bǎolán tóngzhì.

她是方宝兰同志。

She is Comrade Fāng Bǎolán.

## Unit 2 Target List

1. A: Nǐ shì Wáng Xiānsheng ma?

你是王先生吗？

Are you Mr. Wáng?

B: Wǒ shì Wáng Dànián.

我是王大年。

I am Wáng Dànián.

A: Wǒ bú shì Wáng Xiānsheng.

我不是王先生。

I'm not Mr. Wáng.

2. A: Nǐ xìng Wáng ma?

你姓王吗？

Is your surname Wáng?

B: Wǒ xìng Wáng.

我姓王。

My surname is Wáng.

A: Wǒ bú xìng Wáng.

我不姓王。

My surname isn't Wáng.

3. A: Nín guìxìng?

您贵姓？

Your surname? (POLITE)

B: Wǒ xìng Wáng.

我姓王。

My surname is Wáng.

4. A: Nǐ jiào shénme?

你叫什么？

What is your given name?

B: Wǒ jiào Dànián.

我叫大年。

My given name is Dànián (Daniel).

5. A: Nǐ hǎo a?

你好啊？

How are you?

B: Wǒ hǎo. Nǐ ne?

我好。你呢？

I'm fine. And you?

A: Hǎo. Xièxie.

好。谢谢。

Fine, thanks.

6. míngzi

名字

given name

## Unit 3 Target List

1. A: **Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?**  
**你是美国人吗？**  
Are you an American?  
  
B: **Shì.**  
**是。**  
Yes (I am).  
  
B: **Bú shì.**  
**不是。**  
No (I'm not).
2. A: **Nǐ shì Zhōngguó rén ma?**  
**你是中国人吗？**  
Are you Chinese?  
  
B: **Shì, wǒ shì Zhōngguó rén.**  
**是，我是中国人。**  
Yes, I'm Chinese.  
  
B: **Bú shì, wǒ bú shì Zhōngguó rén.**  
**不是，我不是中国人。**  
No, I'm not Chinese.
3. A: **Nǐ shì něiguó rén?**  
**你是哪国人？**  
What is your nationality?  
  
B: **Wǒ shì Měiguó rén.**  
**我是美国人。**  
I'm an American.  
  
B: **Wǒ shì Zhōngguó rén.**  
**我是中国人。**  
I'm Chinese.  
  
B: **Wǒ shì Yīngguó rén.**

我是英国人。

I'm English.

4. A: **Nǐ shì nǎrde rén?**

你是哪儿的人？

Where are you from?

B: **Wǒ shì Jiāzhōu rén.**

我是加州人。

I'm a Californian.

B: **Wǒ shì Shànghǎi rén.**

我是上海人。

I'm from Shanghai.

5: **Déguó**

德国

Germany

6: **Èguó (Éguó)**

俄国

Russia

7: **Fàguó (Fǎguó)**

法国

France

8: **Rìběn**

日本

Japan



## Unit 4 Target List

1. A: Āndésēn xiānsheng, nǐ shì nǎrde rén?  
安德森先生，你是哪儿的人？  
Where are you from, Mr. Anderson?

B: Wǒ shì Dézhōu rén.  
我是德州人。  
I'm from Texas.

A: Āndésēn fūren ne?  
安德森夫人呢？  
And Mrs. Anderson?

B: Tā yě shì Dézhōu rén.  
她也是德州人。  
She is from Texas too.

2. A: Tā shì Yīngguó rén ma?  
他是英国人吗？  
Is he English?

B: Bú shì, tā bú shì Yīngguó rén.  
不是，他不是英国人。  
No, he is not English.

A: Tā àiren ne?  
他爱人呢？  
And his wife?

B: Tā yě bú shì Yīngguó rén.  
她也并不是英国人。  
She isn't English either.

3. A: Qǐngwèn, nǐ lǎojiā zài nǎr?  
请问，你老家在哪儿？  
May I ask, where is your family from?

B: Wǒ lǎojiā zài Shāndōng.

我老家在山东。

My family is from Shāndōng.

4. A: Qīngdǎo zài zhèr ma?

青岛在这儿吗？

Is Qīngdǎo here? (pointing to a map)

B: Qīngdǎo bú zài nàr, zài zhèr.

青岛不在那儿，在这儿。

Qīngdǎo isn't there; it's here. (pointing to a map)

5. A: Nǐ àiren xiànzài zài nǎr?

你爱人现在在哪儿？

Where is your spouse now?

B: Tā xiànzài zài Jiānádà.

他/她现在在见那大。

He/she is in Canada now.

Figure 1.1. On a Běijīng street

Anagoria, CC BY 3.0 <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0>, via Wikimedia Commons



# Unit 1

## Introduction

### Topics Covered in this Unit

1. Questions and answers about full names and surnames.
2. Titles and terms of address (“Mr.,” “Mrs.,” etc.).

### Prerequisites to the Unit

(Be sure to complete these before starting the unit.)

1. Background Notes
2. P&R 1 (Tape 1 of the resource module on Pronunciation and Romanization), the tones.
3. P&R 2 (Tape 2 of the resource module on Pronunciation and Romanization), the tones.

### Materials You Will Need

1. The C-1 and P-1 tapes, the Reference List and Reference Notes.
2. The drill tape (1D-1)

### About the C-1 and P-1 Tapes

The C-1 and P-1 tapes are your introduction to the Chinese words and structures presented in each unit. The tapes give you explanations and practice on the new material. By the time you have worked through these two tapes, you will be competent in understanding and producing the expressions introduced in the unit.

With the C-1 tape, you learn to understand the new words and structures. The material is presented in short conversational exchanges, first with English translations and later with pauses which allow you to translate. Try to give a complete English translation for each Chinese expression. Your goal when using the C-1 tape is to learn the meanings of all the words and structures as they are used in the sentences.

With the P-1 tape, you learn to put together these sentences. You learn to pronounce each new word and use each new structure. When the recorded instructions direct you to pronounce a word or say a sentence, do so out loud. It is important for you to hear yourself speaking Chinese, so that you will know whether you are pronouncing the words correctly. Making the effort to say the expression is a big part of learning it. It is one thing to think about how a sentence should be put together or how it should sound. It is another thing to put it together that way or make it sound that way. Your goal when using the P-1 tape is to produce the Target List expressions in Chinese when given English equivalents. At the end of each P-1 tape is a review of the Target List which you can go over until you have mastered the expressions.

At times, you may feel that the material on a tape is being presented too fast. You may find that there is not enough time allowed for working out the meaning of a sentence or saying a sentence the way you want to. When this happens, stop the tape. If you want to, rewind; Use the control buttons on your machine to make the tape manageable for you most and to get the most out of it.

## About the Reference List and the Reference Notes

The Reference List and the Reference Notes are designed to be used before, during, or directly after work with the C-1 and P-1 tapes.

The Reference List is a summary of the C-1 and P-1 tapes. It contains all sentences which introduce new material, showing you both the Chinese sentences written in romanization and their English equivalents. You will find that the list is printed so that either the Chinese or the English can be covered to allow you to test yourself on comprehension, production, or romanization of the sentences.

The Reference Notes give you information about grammar, pronunciation, and cultural usage. Some of these explanations duplicate what you hear on the C-1 and P-1 tapes. Other explanations contain new information.

You may use the Reference List and Reference Notes in various ways. For example, you may follow the Reference Notes as you listen to a tape, glancing at an exchange or stopping to read a comment whenever you want to. Or you may look through the Reference Notes before listening to a tape, and then use the Reference List while you listen, to help you keep track of where you are. Whichever way you decide to use these parts of a unit, remember that they are reference materials. Don't rely on the translations and romanizations as subtitles for the C-1 tape or as cue cards for the P-1 tape, for this would rob you of your chance to develop listening and responding skills.

## About the Drills

The drills help you develop fluency, ease of response, and confidence. You can go through the drills on your own, with the drill tapes, and the teacher may take you through them in class as well.

Allow more than half an hour for a half-hour drill tape, since you will usually need to go over all or parts of the tape more than once to get full benefit from it.

The drills include many personal names, providing you with valuable pronunciation practice. However, if you find the names more than you can handle the first time through the tape, replace them with the pronoun *tā* whenever possible. Similar substitutions are often possible with place names.

Some of the drills involve sentences which you may find too long to understand or produce on your first try, and you will need to rewind for another try. Often, particularly the first time through a tape, you will find the pauses too short, and you will need to stop the tape to give yourself more time. The performance you should aim for with these tapes, however, is full comprehension and full, fluent, and accurate production while the tape rolls.

The five basic types of drills are described below.

1. **Substitution Drills:** The teacher (T) gives a pattern sentence which the student (S) repeats. Then the teacher gives a word or phrase (a cue) which the student substitutes appropriately in the original sentence. The teacher follows immediately with a new cue.

**Example 1.1. Here is an English example of a substitution drill:**

- T: Are you an American?
- S: Are you an American?
- T: (cue) English
- S: Are you English?
- T: (cue) French
- S: Are you French?

2. **Transformation Drills:** On the basis of a model provided at the beginning of the drill, the student makes a certain change in each sentence the teacher says.

**Example 1.2. Here is an English example of a transformation drill, in which the student is changing affirmative sentences into negative ones:**

- T: I'm going to the bank.
- S: I'm not going to the bank.
- T: I'm going to the store.
- S: I'm not going to the store.

3. **Response Drills:** On the basis of a model given at the beginning of the drill, the student responds to questions or remarks by the teacher as cued by the teacher.

**Example 1.3. Here is an English example of a response drill:**

- T: What is his name? (cue) Harris

- S: His name is Harris.
- T: What is her name? (cue) Noss
- S: Her name is Noss.

4. Expansion Drills: The student adds something to a pattern sentence as cued by the teacher.

**Example 1.4. Here is an English example of an expansion drill:**

- T: He isn't Chinese, (cue) Japanese.
- S: He isn't Chinese. He's Japanese.
- T: She isn't German. (cue) French.
- S: She isn't German. She's French.

5. Combination Drills: On the basis of a model given at the beginning of the drill, the student combines two phrases or sentences given by the teacher into a single utterance.

**Example 1.5. Here is an English example of a combination drill:**

- T: I am reading a book. John gave me the book.
- S: I am reading a book which John gave me.
- T: Mary bought a picture. I like the picture.
- S: Mary bought a picture which I like.

## References

### Reference list

1. A: Nǐ shì shéi?  
你是谁？  
Who are you?  
B: Wǒ shì Wáng Dànián.  
我是王大年。  
I'm Wáng Dànián.
2. A: Nǐ shì shéi?  
你是谁？  
Who are you?  
B: Wǒ shì Hú Měilíng.  
我是胡美玲。  
I'm Hú Měilíng.
3. A: Tā shì shéi?  
他是谁？  
Who is he?  
B: Tā shì Mǎ Mínglǐ.  
他是马明理。  
He is Mǎ Mínglǐ.
4. A: Tā shì Mǎ Mínglǐ.  
他是马明理。  
He is Mǎ Mínglǐ.  
B: Tā shì Hú Měilíng.  
她是胡美玲。  
She is Hú Měilíng.
5. A: Nǐ xìng shénme?  
你姓什么？  
What is your surname?  
B: Wǒ xìng Wáng.  
我姓王。  
My surname is Wáng.
6. A: Tā xìng shénme?  
他姓什么？  
What is his surname?  
B: Tā xìng Mǎ.



7. A: 他姓马。  
His surname is Mǎ.  
Tā shì shéi?  
他是谁?  
Who is he?  
B: Tā shì Mǎ xiānsheng.  
他是马先生。  
He is Mr. Mǎ .
8. A: Tā shì shéi?  
他是谁?  
Who is he?  
B: Tā shì Mǎ Mínglǐ xiānsheng.  
他是马明理先生。  
He is Mr. Mǎ Mínglǐ.
9. A: Wáng xiānsheng, tā shì shéi?  
王先生，他是谁?  
Mr. Wáng, who is he?  
B: Tā shì Mǎ Mínglǐ xiānsheng.  
他是马明理先生。  
He is Mr. Mǎ Mínglǐ.
10. A: Xiānsheng, tā shì shéi?  
先生，他是谁?  
Sir, who is he?  
B: Tā shì Mǎ xiānsheng  
他是马先生。  
He is Mr. Mǎ.
11. A: Xiānsheng, tā shì shéi?  
先生，她是谁?  
Sir, who is she?  
B: Tā shì Mǎ tàitai.  
她是马太太。  
She is Mrs. Mǎ.
12. A: Wáng xiānsheng, tā shì shéi?  
王先生，她是谁?  
Mr. Wáng, who is she?  
B: Tā shì Mǎ Mínglǐ tàitai.  
她是马明理太太。  
She is Mrs. Mǎ Mínglǐ.
13. A: Wáng xiānsheng, tā shì shéi?

- 王先生，她是谁？  
Mr. Wáng, who is she?
14. B: Tā shì Mǎ xiǎojiě.  
她是马小姐。  
She is Miss Mǎ.
- A: Tā shì shéi?  
他是谁？  
Who is he?
- B: Tā shì Mǎ Mínglǐ tóngzhì.  
他是马明理同志。  
He is Comrade Mǎ Mínglǐ.
15. A: Tóngzhì, tā shì shéi?  
同志，她是谁？  
Comrade, who is she?
- B: Tā shì Fāng Bǎolán.  
她是方宝兰。  
She is Fāng Bǎolán.
16. A: Tóngzhì, tā shì shéi?  
同志，她是谁？  
Comrade, who is she?
- B: Tā shì Fāng Bǎolán tóngzhì.  
她是方宝兰同志。  
She is Comrade Fāng Bǎolán.

**Vocabulary**

nǐ	你	you
shéi	谁	who
shénme	什么	what
shì	是	to be
tā	他, 她, 它	he, she, it
tàitai	太太	Mrs.; wife, married woman, lady
tóngzhi	同志	comrade
wǒ	我	I
xiānsheng	先生	Mr., sir, husband, teacher
xiǎojiě (xiǎojie)	小姐	Miss, lady, daughter (polite)
xìng	姓	to be surnamed

## Reference Notes

## Notes on № 1-4

1. A: Nǐ shì shéi?  
你是谁?  
Who are you?  
B: Wǒ shì Wáng Dànián.  
我是王大年。  
I'm Wáng Dànián.
2. A: Nǐ shì shéi?  
你是谁?  
Who are you?  
B: Wǒ shì Hú Měilíng.  
我是胡美玲。  
I'm Hú Měilíng.
3. A: Tā shì shéi?  
他是谁?  
Who is he?  
B: Tā shì Mǎ Mínglǐ.  
他是马明理。  
He is Mǎ Mínglǐ.

The verb *shì* means “to be” in the sense of “to be someone or something,” as in “I am Daniel King.” It expresses identity. (In Unit 4 you will learn a verb which means “to be” in another sense, “to be somewhere,” as in “I am in *Běijīng*.” That verb expresses location.) The verb *shì* is in the **Neutral tone** (with no accent mark) except when emphasized.

Unlike verbs in European languages, Chinese verbs do not distinguish first, second, and third persons. A single form serves for all three persons.

Wǒ	shì	Wáng Dànián.	I am Wáng Dànián.
我	是	王大年	
Nǐ	shì	Hú Měilíng.	You are Hú Měilíng.
你	是	胡美玲	
Tā	shì	Mǎ Mínglǐ.	He is Mǎ Mínglǐ.
他	是	马明理	

Later you will find that Chinese verbs do not distinguish singular and plural, either, and that they do not distinguish past, present, and future as such. You need to learn only one form for each verb.

The pronoun *tā* is equivalent to both “he” and “she.” (and it), but the writing is different: he # 他, she # 她, it # 它.

The question *Nǐ shì shéi?* is actually too direct for most situations, although it is all right from teacher to student or from student to student. (A more polite question is introduced in Unit 2.)

Unlike English, Chinese uses the same word order in questions as in statements.

Tā	shì	shéi?	Who is he?
他	是	谁?	
Tā	shì	Mǎ Mínglǐ?	He is Mǎ Mínglǐ.
他	是	马明理	

When you answer a question containing a question word like *shéi*. “who,” simply replace the question word with the information it asks for.

## Notes on № 5-6

5. A: Nǐ xìng shénme?  
你姓什么?  
What is your surname?
- B: Wǒ xìng Wáng.  
我姓王。  
My surname is Wáng.
6. A: Tā xìng shénme?  
他姓什么?  
What is his surname?
- B: Tā xìng Mǎ.  
他姓马。  
His surname is Mǎ.

Xìng is a verb, “to be surnamed.” It is in the same position in the sentence as shì, “to be.”

Wǒ	shì	Wáng Dànián.
我	是	王大年
I	am	Wáng Dànián.
Wǒ	xìng	Wáng.
我	姓	王
I	am surnamed	Wáng.

Notice that the question word shénme. “What,” takes the same position as the question word shéi “who.”

Nǐ	shì	shéi?
你	是	谁?
You	are	who?
Nǐ	xìng	shénme?
你	姓	什么?
You	are surnamed	what?

Shénme is the official spelling. However, the word is pronounced as if it were spelled shémma, or even shéma (often with a single rise in pitch extending over both syllables.) Before another word which begins with a consonant sound, it is usually pronounced as if it were spelled shém.

## Notes on № 7-8

7. A: Tā shì shéi?  
他是谁?  
Who is he?  
B: Tā shì Mǎ xiānsheng.  
他是马先生。  
He is Mr. Mǎ .
8. A: Tā shì shéi?  
他是谁?  
Who is he?  
B: Tā shì Mǎ Mínglǐ xiānsheng.  
他是马明理先生。  
He is Mr. Mǎ Mínglǐ.

After the verb **shì** you may have the full name alone, the surname plus title, or the full name plus title.

Tā	shì	Mǎ	Mínglǐ	
他	是	马	明理	
Tā	shì	Mǎ		xiānsheng.
他	是	马		先生。
Tā	shì	Mǎ	Mínglǐ	xiānsheng.
他	是	马	明理	先生。

**Xiānsheng**, literally “first-born,” has more of a connotation of respectfulness than “Mr.” **Xiānsheng** is usually applied only to people other than oneself. Do not use the title **xiānsheng** (or any other respectful title, such as **Jiàoshòu**, “Professor” when giving your own name. If you want to say “I am Mr. Jones,” you may say **Wǒ xìng Jones**.

When a name and title name are said together, logically enough it is the name which gets the heavy stress: **WÁNG xiānsheng**, You will often hear the title pronounced with no full tones: **WÁNG Xian-sheng**.

Notes on № 9-12

9. A: Wáng xiānsheng, tā shì shéi?  
王先生，他是谁？  
Mr. Wáng, who is he?  
B: Tā shì Mǎ Mínglǐ xiānsheng.  
他是马明理先生。  
He is Mr. Mǎ Mínglǐ.
10. A: Xiānsheng, tā shì shéi?  
先生，他是谁？  
Sir, who is he?  
B: Tā shì Mǎ xiānsheng  
他是马先生。  
He is Mr. Mǎ.
11. A: Xiānsheng, tā shì shéi?  
先生，她是谁？  
Sir, who is she?  
B: Tā shì Mǎ tàitai.  
她是马太太。  
She is Mrs. Mǎ.
12. A: Wáng xiānsheng, tā shì shéi?  
王先生，她是谁？  
Mr. Wáng, who is she?  
B: Tā shì Mǎ Mínglǐ tàitai.  
她是马明理太太。  
She is Mrs. Mǎ Mínglǐ.

When you address someone directly, use either the name plus the title or the title alone. *Xiānsheng* must be translated as “Sir” when it is used alone, since “Mr.” would not capture its respectful tone. (*Tàitai*, however, is less respectful when used alone. You should address Mrs. *Mǎ* as *Mǎ tàitai*..)



Notes on № 13-16

13. A: Wáng xiānsheng, tā shì shéi?

王先生，她是谁？

Mr. Wáng, who is she?

B: Tā shì Mǎ xiǎojiě.

她是马小姐。

She is Miss Mǎ.

14. A: Tā shì shéi?

他是谁？

Who is he?

B: Tā shì Mǎ Mínglǐ tóngzhì.

他是马明理同志。

He is Comrade Mǎ Mínglǐ.

15. A: Tóngzhì, tā shì shéi?

同志，她是谁？

Comrade, who is she?

B: Tā shì Fāng Bǎolán.

她是方宝兰。

She is Fāng Bǎolán.

16. A: Tóngzhì, tā shì shéi?

同志，她是谁？

Comrade, who is she?

B: Tā shì Fāng Bǎolán tóngzhì.

她是方宝兰同志。

She is Comrade Fāng Bǎolán.

See the Background Notes on Chinese Personal Names and Titles for *tóngzhì*. “Comrade,” and the use of maiden names.

## Drills

### Substitution drill.

Give affirmative response to all questions.

1. Mǎ Mínglǐ

马明理

Mǎ Mínglǐ

Tā shì Mǎ Mínglǐ.

他是马明理。

He is Mǎ Mínglǐ.

2. Hú Měilíng

胡美玲

Hú Měilíng

Tā shì Hú Měilíng.

她是胡美玲。

She is Hú Měilíng.

3. Wáng Dànián

王大年

Wáng Dànián

Tā shì Wáng Dànián.

他是王大年。

He is Wáng Dànián.

4. Lǐ Shìmín

李世民

Lǐ Shìmín

Tā shì Lǐ Shìmín.

他是李世民。

He is Lǐ Shìmín.

5. Liú Lǐróng

刘丽容

Liú Lìróng

Tā shì Liú Lìróng.

她是刘丽容。

She is Liú Lìróng.

6. Zhāng Bǎolán

张宝兰

Zhāng Bǎolán

Tā shì Zhāng Bǎolán.

她是张宝兰。

She is Zhāng Bǎolán.

## Response Drill

When the cue is given by a male speaker, male students should respond. When the cue is given by a female speaker, female students should respond.

1. Nǐ shì shéi?

你是谁?

Who are you?

Cue

Wáng Dànián

王大年

Wáng Dànián

Wǒ shì Wáng Dànián.

我是王大年。

I am Wáng Dànián.

2. Nǐ shì shéi?

你是谁?

Who are you?

Cue

Hú Měilíng

胡美玲

Hú Měilíng

Wǒ shì Hú Měilíng.

我是胡美玲。

I am Hú Měilíng.

3. Nǐ shì shéi?

你是谁?

Who are you?

Cue

Liú Shímín

李世民

Liú Shímín

Wǒ shì Liú Shímín.

我是李世民。

I am Liú Shímín.

4. Nǐ shì shéi?  
你是谁?  
Who are you?

Cue Chén Huìrán  
陈蕙然  
Chén Huìrán

Wǒ shì Chén Huìrán.  
我是陈蕙然。  
I am Chén Huìrán.

5. Nǐ shì shéi?  
你是谁?  
Who are you?

Cue Huáng Déxián  
黄德贤  
Huáng Déxián

Wǒ shì Huáng Déxián.  
我是黄德贤。  
I am Huáng Déxián.

6. Nǐ shì shéi?  
你是谁?  
Who are you?

Cue Zhào Wǎnrú  
赵婉如  
Zhào Wǎnrú

Wǒ shì Zhào Wǎnrú.  
我是赵婉如。  
I am Zhào Wǎnrú.

7. Nǐ shì shéi?  
你是谁?  
Who are you?

Cue	Jiǎng Bīngyíng 蒋冰莹 Jiǎng Bīngyíng
	Wǒ shì Jiǎng Bīngyíng. 我是蒋冰莹。 I am Jiǎng Bīngyíng.
8.	Nǐ shì shéi? 你是谁? Who are you?
Cue	Gāo Yǒngpíng 高永平 Gāo Yǒngpíng
	Wǒ shì Gāo Yǒngpíng. 我是高永平。 I am Gāo Yǒngpíng.

## Response drill.

Answer according to the cues.

1. Nǐ shì shéi?

你是谁?

Who are you?

Cue

Wáng Dànián

王大年

Wáng Dànián

Wǒ shì Wáng Dànián.

我是王大年。

I am Wáng Dànián.

2. Nǐ shì shéi?

你是谁?

Who are you?

Cue

Hú Měilíng

胡美玲

Hú Měilíng

Wǒ shì Hú Měilíng.

我是胡美玲。

I am Hú Měilíng.

3. Nǐ shì shéi?

你是谁?

Who are you?

Cue

Liú Shimín

李世民

Liú Shimín

Wǒ shì Liú Shimín.

我是李世民。

I am Liú Shimín.

4. Nǐ shì shéi?  
你是谁?  
Who are you?

Cue Chén Huìrán  
陈蕙然  
Chén Huìrán

Wǒ shì Chén Huìrán.  
我是陈蕙然。  
I am Chén Huìrán.

5. Nǐ shì shéi?  
你是谁?  
Who are you?

Cue Huáng Déxián  
黄德贤  
Huáng Déxián

Wǒ shì Huáng Déxián.  
我是黄德贤。  
I am Huáng Déxián.

6. Nǐ shì shéi?  
你是谁?  
Who are you?

Cue Zhào Wǎnrú  
赵婉如  
Zhào Wǎnrú

Wǒ shì Zhào Wǎnrú.  
我是赵婉如。  
I am Zhào Wǎnrú.

7. Nǐ shì shéi?  
你是谁?  
Who are you?



Cue	Jiǎng Bīngyíng 蒋冰莹 Jiǎng Bīngyíng
	Wǒ shì Jiǎng Bīngyíng. 我是蒋冰莹。 I am Jiǎng Bīngyíng.
8.	Nǐ shì shéi? 你是谁? Who are you?
Cue	Gāo Yǒngpíng 高永平 Gāo Yǒngpíng
	Wǒ shì Gāo Yǒngpíng. 我是高永平。 I am Gāo Yǒngpíng.

## **Unit 2**

### **Introduction**

#### **Topics covered in this unit**

1. Questions and answers about given names.
2. Yes/no questions.
3. Negative statement.
4. Greetings.

#### **Prerequisites to the Unit**

1. P&R 3 and P&R 4 (Tapes 3 and 4 of the resource module on Pronunciation and Romanization).

#### **Materials You Will Need**

1. The C-1 and P-1 tapes, the Reference List and Reference Notes.
2. The 2D-1 tape.

## References

### Reference list

1. A: Tā shì Wáng tàitai ma?  
她是王太太吗?  
Is she Mrs. Wáng?  
B: Tā shì Wáng tàitai.  
她是王太太。  
she is Mrs. Wáng.
2. A: Nǐ shì Wáng xiānsheng ma?  
你是王先生吗?  
Are you Mr. Wáng?  
B: Wǒ shì Wáng Dànián.  
我是王大年。  
I'm Wáng Dànián.
3. A: Nǐ shì Mǎ xiānsheng ma?  
你是马先生吗?  
Are you Mr. Mǎ.  
B: Wǒ shì Wáng Dànián.  
我是王大年。  
I'm Wáng Dànián.
4. A: Nǐ shì Mǎ xiānsheng ma?  
你是马先生吗?  
are you Mr. Mǎ?  
B: Wǒ bú shì Mǎ xiānsheng.  
我不是马先生。  
I'm not Mr. Mǎ.
5. A: Wǒ shì Wáng Dànián.  
我是王大年。  
I am Wáng Dànián.  
B: Wǒ bú shì Wáng Dànián.  
我不是王大年。  
I am not Wáng Dànián.
6. A: Nǐ xìng Fāng ma?  
你姓方吗?  
Is your surname Fāng?  
B: Wǒ bú xìng Fāng

7. A: 我不姓方。  
My surname isn't Fāng.  
Wǒ xìng Wáng.  
我姓王。  
My surname is Wáng.  
B: Wǒ bú xìng Wáng.  
我不姓王。  
My surname isn't Wáng.
8. A: Nǐ xìng Mǎ ma?  
你姓马吗?  
Is your surname Mǎ?  
B: Bù xìng Mǎ. Xìng Wáng.  
不姓马。(我)姓王。  
My surname isn't Mǎ. My surname is Wáng.
9. A: Nín guìxìng?  
您贵姓?  
Your surname? (polite)  
B: Wǒ xìng Wáng.  
我姓王。  
My surname is Wáng.
10. A: Nǐ jiào shénme?  
你叫什么?  
What is your given name?  
B: Wǒ jiào Dànián.  
我叫大年。  
My given name is Dànián.
11. A: Nǐ hǎo a?  
你好啊?  
How are you?  
B: Wǒ hǎo.  
我好  
I'm fine.
12. A: Nǐ hǎo a?  
你好啊?  
How are you?  
B: Wǒ hǎo. Nǐ ne?  
我好，你呢?  
I'm fine. And you?  
A: Hǎo, xièxie.

好，谢谢。

Fine, thanks.

## Vocabulary

a	啊	question marker
bù/bú	不	not
bú shi	不是	not to be
guìxìng	贵姓	honorable name
hǎo	好	to be fine, to be well, OK, good
jiào	叫	to be called, named
ma	吗	question marker at the end of the sentence
míngzì	名字	given name, full name
ne	呢	question marker
xièxie	谢谢	thank you

## Reference Notes

### Notes on № 1-3

1. A: Tā shì Wáng tàitai ma?  
她是王太太吗?  
Is she Mrs. Wáng?  
B: Tā shì Wáng tàitai.  
她是王太太。  
she is Mrs. Wáng.
2. A: Nǐ shì Wáng xiānsheng ma?  
你是王先生吗?  
Are you Mr. Wáng?  
B: Wǒ shì Wáng Dànián.  
我是王大年。  
I'm Wáng Dànián.
3. A: Nǐ shì Mǎ xiānsheng ma?  
你是马先生吗?  
Are you Mr. Mǎ.  
B: Wǒ shì Wáng Dànián.  
我是王大年。  
I'm Wáng Dànián.

The marker **ma** may be added to any statement to turn it into a question which may be answered “yes” or “no,”

The reply to a yes/no question is commonly a complete affirmative or negative statement, although, as you will see later, the statement may be stripped down considerably.

Notes on № 4-5

4. A: Nǐ shì Mǎ xiānsheng ma?  
你是马先生吗?  
are you Mr. Mǎ?
- B: Wǒ bú shì Mǎ xiānsheng.  
我不是马先生。  
I'm not Mr. Mǎ.
5. A: Wǒ shì Wáng Dànián.  
我是王大年。  
I am Wáng Dànián.
- B: Wǒ bú shì Wáng Dànián.  
我不是王大年。  
I am not Wáng Dànián.

The negative of the verb *shì*, “to be,” is *bú shì*, “not to be.” The equivalent of “not” is the syllable *bù*. The tone for the syllable *bù* depends on the tone of the following syllable. When followed by a syllable with a High, Rising, or Low tone, a Falling tone is used (*bù*). When followed by a syllable with a Falling or Neutral tone, a Rising tone is used (*bú*).

Example 1.6. Examples

*bù fēi* 不飞 (not to fly)

*bù fēi* 不肥 (not to be fat)

*bù fēi* 不诽 (not to slander)

*bú fèi* 不费 (not to waste)

Almost all of the first few verbs you learn happen to be in the Falling tone, and so take *bù*. But remember that *bù* is the basic form. That is the form the syllable takes when it stands alone as a short “no” answer—*bù*—and when it is discussed, as in “*bù* means ‘not’.”

Notice that even though *shì*, “to be,” is usually pronounced in the Neutral tone in the phrase *bú shì*, the original Falling tone of *shì* still causes *bù* to “be pronounced with a Rising tone: *bú*.”

Wǒ		shì		Wáng Dànián.
我		是		王大年。
I		am		Wáng Dànián.
Wǒ	bú	shì		Mǎ xiānsheng.
我	不	是		马先生。
I		am	not	Mǎ xiānsheng.



Notes on № 6-8

6. A: Nǐ xìng Fāng ma?  
你姓方吗?  
Is your surname Fāng?
- B: Wǒ bú xìng Fāng  
我不姓方。  
My surname isn't Fāng.
7. A: Wǒ xìng Wáng.  
我姓王。  
My surname is Wáng.
- B: Wǒ bú xìng Wáng.  
我不姓王。  
My surname isn't Wáng.
8. A: Nǐ xìng Mǎ ma?  
你姓马吗?  
Is your surname Mǎ?
- B: Bù xìng Mǎ. Xìng Wáng.  
不姓马。(我)姓王。  
My surname isn't Mǎ. My surname is Wáng.

It is quite common in Chinese—much commoner than in English—to omit the subject of a sentence when it is clear from the context.

### Notes on № 9

9.     A:     Nín guìxìng?  
              您贵姓?  
              Your surname? (polite)
- B:     Wǒ xìng Wáng.  
              我姓王。  
              My surname is Wáng.

Nín is the polite equivalent of nǐ, “you.”

Guìxìng is a polite noun, “surname.” Guì means “honorable.” Xìng which you have learned as the verb “to be surnamed” is in this case a noun, “surname.”

Literally, Nín guìxìng? is “Your surname?” The implied question is understood, and the “sentence” consists of the subject alone.

**Notes on № 10**

10.    A:    Nǐ jiào shénme?  
          你叫什么？  
          What is your given name?
- B:    Wǒ jiào Dànián.  
          我叫大年。  
          My given name is Dànián.

**Jiào** is a verb meaning “to be called.” In a discussion of personal names, we can say that it means “to be given-named.”

Notes on № 11

11. A: Nǐ hǎo a?  
你好啊?  
How are you?
- B: Wǒ hǎo.  
我好  
I'm fine.

Notice that the Low tones of **wǒ** and **nǐ** change to Rising tones before the Low tone of **hǎo**: **Nǐ hǎo a? Wǒ hǎo.**

**Hǎo** is a verb: “to be good” “to be well” “to be fine.” Since it functions like the verb “to be” plus an adjective in English, we will call it an **adjectival verb**.

Wǒ	hǎo.
我	好。
I	am fine

Nǐ	hǎo	a?
你	好	阿?
You	are fine	?

**Notes on № 12**

12. A: Nǐ hǎo a?  
你好啊?  
How are you?
- B: Wǒ hǎo. Nǐ ne?  
我好，你呢?  
I'm fine. And you?
- A: Hǎo, xièxie.  
好，谢谢。  
Fine, thanks.

The marker **ne** makes a question out of the single work **nǐ**, “you”: “And you?” or “How about you?”

**Xiè** is the verb “to thank.” “I thank you” would be **Wǒ xièxie nǐ**. **Xièxie** is often repeated: **Xièxie, xièxie**.

**Notes on № 13**

One way to ask what someone's given name is: *Nǐ jiào shénme míngzi?* 你叫什么名字？

## Drills

### Transformations drill

#### Create a question from the statement

1 Tā shì Wáng xiānsheng.

他是王先生。

He is Mr. Wáng.

Tā shì Wáng xiānsheng ma?

他是王先生吗？

Is he Mr. Wáng?

2. Tā shì Hú tàitai.

她是胡太太。

She is Mrs. Hú.

Tā shì Hú tàitai ma?

她是胡太太吗？

Is she Mrs. Hú?

3. Tā shì Liú tóngzhi.

他是刘同志。

He is Comrade Liú.

Tā shì Liú tóngzhi ma?

他是刘同志吗？

Is he Comrade Liú?

4. Tā shì Zhāng xiǎojiě.

她是张小姐。

She is Miss Zhāng.

Tā shì Zhāng xiǎojiě ma?

她是张小姐吗？

Is she Miss Zhāng?

5. Tā shì Mǎ xiānsheng.

他是马先生。

He is Mr. Mǎ.

Tā shì Mǎ xiānsheng ma?

他是马先生吗？

Is he Mr. Mǎ?

6. Tā shì Fāng xiǎojiě.

她是方小姐。

She is Miss Fāng.

Tā shì Fāng xiǎojiě ma?

她是方小姐吗？

Is she Miss Fāng?

7. Tā shì Lín tóngzhì.

他是林同志。

He is Comrade Lín.

Tā shì Lín tóngzhì ma?

他是林同志吗？

Is he Comrade Lín?



## Response drill

Give a positive answer to the question.

1. Tā shì Wáng xiānsheng ma?

他是王先生吗？

Is he Mr. Wáng?

Shì. Tā shì Wáng xiānsheng.

是。他是王先生。

Yes. He is Mr. Wáng.

2. Tā shì Zhào tàitai ma?

她是赵太太吗？

Is she Mrs. Zhào?

Shì. Tā shì Zhào tàitai.

是。她是赵太太。

Yes. She is Mrs. Zhào.

3. Tā shì Chén tóngzhì ma?

她是陈同志吗？

Is she comrade Chén?

Shì. Tā shì Chén tóngzhì.

是。她是陈同志。

Yes. She is Comrade Chén.

4. Tā shì Liú xiǎojiě ma?

她是刘小姐吗？

Is she Miss Liú?

Shì. Tā shì Liú xiǎojiě.

是。她是刘小姐。

Yes. She is Miss Liú.

5. Tā shì Sòng xiānsheng ma?

他是宋先生吗？

Is he Mr. Sòng?

Shì. Tā shì Sòng xiānsheng.

是。他是宋先生。

Yes. He is Mr. Sòng.

6. Tā shì Sūn tàitai ma?

她是孙太太吗？

Is she Mrs. Sūn?

Shì. Tā shì Sūn tàitai.

是。她是孙太太。

Yes. She is Mrs. Sūn.

7. Tā shì Zhāng xiānsheng ma?

他是张先生吗？

Is he Mr. Zhāng?

Shì. Tā shì Zhāng xiānsheng.

是。他是张先生。

Yes. He is Mr. Zhāng.

## Response drill

All of your answers will be negative. Give the correct name according to the cue.

1. Tā shì Wáng xiānsheng ma?

他是王先生吗？

Is he Mr. Wáng?

Cue

Liú

刘

Liú

Bú shì. Tā shì Liú xiānsheng.

不是。他是刘先生。

No. He is Mr. Liú.

2. Tā shì Gāo xiǎojiě ma?

她是高小姐吗？

Is she Miss Gāo?

Cue

Zhào

赵

Zhào

Bú shì. Tā shì Zhào xiǎojiě.

不是。她是赵小姐。

No. She is Miss Zhào.

3. Tā shì Huáng tóngzhì ma?

她是黄同志吗？

Is she Comrade Huáng?

Cue

Wáng

王

Wáng

Bú shì. Tā shì Wáng tóngzhì.

不是。她是王同志。

No. She is Comrade Wáng.

4. Tā shì Yáng tàitai ma?  
她是杨太太吗?  
Is she Mrs. Yáng?

Cue Jiǎng  
蒋  
Jiǎng

Bú shì. Tā shì Jiǎng tàitai.  
不是。她是蒋太太。  
No. She is Mrs. Jiǎng.

5. Tā shì Mǎ xiānsheng ma?  
他是马先生吗?  
Is he Mr. Mǎ?

Cue Máo  
毛  
Máo

Bú shì. Tā shì Máo xiānsheng.  
不是。他是毛先生。  
No. He is Mr. Máo.

6. Tā shì Zhōu xiǎojiě ma?  
她是周小姐吗?  
Is she Miss Zhōu?

Cue Zhào  
赵  
Zhào

Bú shì. Tā shì Zhào xiǎojiě.  
不是。她是赵小姐。  
No. She is Miss Zhào.

7. Tā shì Jiāng xiānsheng ma?  
他是江先生吗?  
Is he Mr. Jiāng?

Cue

Jiǎng

蒋

Jiǎng

Bú shì. Tā shì Jiǎng xiānsheng.

不是。他是蒋先生。

No. He is Mr. Jiǎng.

## Transformation drill

This drill is a combination of the two previous drills. Give an affirmative or a negative answer according to the cue.

1. Tā shì Liú tàitai ma?

她是刘太太吗？

Is she Mrs. Liú?

Cue

Liú

刘

Liú

Shì. Tā shì Liú tàitai.

是。她是刘太太。

Yes. She is Mrs. Liú.

2. Tā shì Liú tàitai ma?

她是刘太太吗？

Is she Mrs. Liú?

Cue

Huáng

黄

Huáng

Bú shì. Tā shì Huáng tàitai.

不是。她是黄太太。

No. She is Mrs. Huáng.

3. Tā shì Wáng xiānsheng ma?

他是王先生吗？

Is he Mr. Wáng?

Cue

Wáng

王

Wáng

Shì. Tā shì Wáng xiānsheng.

是。他是王先生。

Yes He is Mr. Wáng.

4. Tā shì Gāo tàitai ma?  
她是高太太吗?  
Is she Mrs. Gāo?

Cue Zhào  
赵  
Zhào

Bú shì. Tā shì Zhào tàitai.  
赵不是。她是赵太太。  
No. She is Mrs. Zhào.

5. Tā shì Táng xiǎojiě ma?  
她是唐小姐吗?  
Is she Miss Táng?

Cue Táng  
唐  
Táng

Shì. Tā shì Táng xiǎojiě.  
是。她是唐小姐。  
Yes. She is Miss Táng.

6. Tā shì Huáng xiānsheng ma?  
他是黄先生吗?  
Is he Mr. Huáng?

Cue Wáng  
王  
Wáng

Bú shì. Tā shì Wáng xiānsheng.  
不是。他不是王先生。  
No. He is Mr. Wáng.

7. Tā shì Zhāng tàitai ma?  
她是张太太吗?  
Is she Mrs. Zhāng?

Cue

Jiāng

江

Jiāng

Bú shì. Tā shì Jiāng tàitai.

不是。她是江太太。

No. She is Mrs. Jiāng.



## Transformation drill

Transform the sentence according to the model.

1. Nǐ shì Zhāng xiānsheng ma?

你是张先生吗？

Are you Mr. Zhāng?

Nǐ xìng Zhāng ma?

你姓张吗？

Is your surname Zhāng?

2. Nǐ shì Zhào tàitai ma?

你是赵太太吗？

Are you Mrs. Zhào?

Nǐ xìng Zhào ma?

你姓赵吗？

Is your surname Zhào?

3. Nǐ shì Jiǎng xiǎojiě ma?

你是蒋小姐吗？

Are you Miss Jiǎng?

Nǐ xìng Jiǎng ma?

你姓蒋吗？

Is your surname Jiǎng?

4. Nǐ shì Liú tóngzhi ma?

你是刘同志吗？

Are you Comrade Liú?

Nǐ xìng Liú ma?

你姓刘吗？

Is your surname Liú?

5. Nǐ shì Sòng tàitai ma?

你是宋太太吗？

Are you Mrs. Sòng?

Nǐ xìng Sòng ma?

你姓宋吗？

Is your surname Sòng?

6. Nǐ shì Lǐ xiānsheng ma?

你是李先生吗？

Are you Mr. Lǐ?

Nǐ xìng Lǐ ma?

你姓李吗？

Is your surname Lǐ?

7. Nǐ shì Sūn tóngzhì ma?

你是孙同志吗？

Are you Comrade Sūn?

Nǐ xìng Sūn ma?

你姓孙吗？

Is your surname Sūn?

## Transformation drill

Transform the sentence using **bú xìng**.

1. Wǒ xìng Zhāng.

我姓张。

My surname is Zhāng.

Wǒ bú xìng Zhāng.

我不姓张。

My surname is not Zhāng.

2. Wǒ xìng Chén.

我姓陈。

My surname is Chén.

Wǒ bú xìng Chén.

我不姓陈。

My surname is not Chén.

3. Wǒ xìng Huáng.

我姓黄。

My surname is Huáng.

Wǒ bú xìng Huáng.

我不姓黄。

My surname is not Huáng.

4. Wǒ xìng Gāo.

我姓高。

My surname is Gāo.

Wǒ bú xìng Gāo.

我不姓高。

My surname is not Gāo.

5. Wǒ xìng Sūn.

我姓孙。

My surname is Sūn.

Wǒ bú xìng Sūn.

我不姓孙。

My surname is not Sūn.

6. Wǒ xìng Zhāng.

我姓张。

My surname is Zhāng.

Wǒ bú xìng Zhāng.

我不姓张。

My surname is not Zhāng.

7. Wǒ xìng Zhōu.

我姓周。

My surname is Zhōu.

Wǒ bú xìng Zhōu.

我不姓周。

My surname is not Zhōu.

## Expansion drill

Transform the sentence according to the model.

1. Wǒ bú shì Lǐ xiānsheng.

我不是李先生。

I'm not Mr. Lǐ.

Wǒ bú xìng Lǐ.

我不姓李。

My surname is not Lǐ.

2. Wǒ bú shì Wáng tàitai.

我不是王太太。

I'm not Mrs. Wáng.

Wǒ bú xìng Wáng.

我不姓王。

My surname is not Wáng.

3. Wǒ bú shì Chén xiānsheng.

我不是陈先生。

I'm not Mr. Chén.

Wǒ bú xìng Chén.

我不姓陈。

My surname is not Chén.

4. Wǒ bú shì Lín tóngzhì.

我不是林同志。

I'm not Comrade Lín.

Wǒ bú xìng Lín.

我不姓林。

My surname is not Lín.

5. Wǒ bú shì Zhōu xiǎojiě.

我不是周小姐。

I'm not Miss Zhōu.

Wǒ bú xìng Zhōu.

我不姓周。

My surname is not Zhōu.

6. Wǒ bú shì Jiǎng xiānsheng.

我不是蒋先生。

I'm not Mr. Jiǎng.

Wǒ bú xìng Jiǎng.

我不姓蒋。

My surname is not Jiǎng.

7. Wǒ bú shì Sòng tàitai.

我不是宋太太。

I'm not Mrs. Sòng.

Wǒ bú xìng Sòng.

我不姓宋。

My surname is not Sòng.

## Expansion drill

Expand the sentence using the model.

1. Tā bú shì Wáng xiānsheng.

他不是王先生。

He is not Mr. Wáng.

Cue

Huáng

黄

Huáng

Tā bú shì Wáng xiānsheng, tā xìng Huáng.

他不是王先生，他姓黄。

He is not Mr. Wáng, his surname is Huáng.

2. Tā bú shì Jiǎng tàitai.

她不是蒋太太。

She is not Mrs. Jiǎng.

Cue

Jiāng

江

Jiāng

Tā bú shì Jiǎng tàitai, tā xìng Jiāng.

她不是蒋太太，她姓江。

She is not Mrs. Jiǎng, her surname is Jiāng.

3. Tā bú shì Liú tóngzhì.

他不是刘同志。

He is not comrade Liú.

Cue

Lín

林

Lín

Tā bú shì Liú tóngzhì, tā xìng Lín.

他不是刘同志，他姓林。

He is not Comrade Liú, his surname is Lín.

4. Tā bú shì Sòng xiǎojiě.

她不是宋小姐。

She is not Miss Sòng.

Cue Sūn

孙

Sūn

Tā bú shì Sòng xiǎojiě, tā xìng Sūn.

她不是宋小姐，她姓孙。

She is not Miss Sòng, her surname is Sūn.

5. Tā bú shì Zhào xiānsheng.

他不是赵先生。

He is not Mr. Zhào.

Cue Zhōu

周

Zhōu

Tā bú shì Zhào xiānsheng, tā xìng Zhōu.

他不是赵先生，他姓周。

He is not Mr. Zhào, his surname is Zhōu.

6. Tā bú shì Jiāng tóngzhì.

他不是江同志。

He is not Comrade Jiāng.

Cue Zhāng

张

Zhāng

Tā bú shì Jiāng tóngzhì, tā xìng Zhāng.

他不是江同志，他姓张。

He is not Comrade Jiāng, his surname is Zhāng.

7. Tā bú shì Sūn tàitai.

她不是孙太太。

She is not Mrs. Sūn.



Cue

Sòng

宋

Sòng

Tā bú shì Sūn tàitai, tā xìng Sòng.

她不是孙太太，她姓宋。

She is not Mrs. Sūn, her surname is Sòng.

## Expansion drill

Expand the sentence using the model.

1. Wǒ bú xìng Fāng.

我不姓方。

My surname is not Fāng.

Cue

Hú

胡

Hú

Wǒ bú xìng Fāng, xìng Hú.

我不姓方。姓胡。

My surname is not Fāng, it's Hú.

2. Wǒ bú xìng Sūn.

我不姓孙。

My surname is not Sūn

Cue

Sòng

宋

Sòng

Wǒ bú xìng Sūn, xìng Sòng.

我不姓孙，姓宋。

My surname is not Sūn, it's Sòng.

3. Wǒ bú xìng Yáng.

我不姓杨。

My surname is not Yáng.

Cue

Táng

唐

Táng

Wǒ bú xìng Yáng, xìng Táng.

我不姓杨，姓唐。

My surname is not Yáng, it's Táng.

4. Wǒ bú xìng Jiǎng.  
我不姓蒋。  
My surname is not Jiǎng.

Cue Zhāng  
张  
Zhāng

Wǒ bú xìng Jiǎng, xìng Zhāng.  
我不姓蒋，姓张。  
My surname is not Jiǎng, it's Zhāng.

5. Wǒ bú xìng Zhōu.  
我不姓周。  
My surname is not Zhōu.

Cue Zhào  
赵  
Zhào

Wǒ bú xìng Zhōu, xìng Zhào.  
我不姓周，姓赵。  
My surname is not Zhōu, it's Zhào.

6. Wǒ bú xìng Wáng.  
我不姓王。  
My surname is not Wáng.

Cue Huáng  
黄  
Huáng

Wǒ bú xìng Wáng, xìng Huáng.  
我不姓王，姓黄。  
My surname is not Wáng, it's Huáng.

7. Wǒ bú xìng Jiāng.  
我不姓江。  
My surname is not Jiāng.

Cue

Jiǎng

蒋

Jiǎng

Wǒ bú xìng Jiāng, xìng Jiǎng.

我不姓江，姓蒋。

My surname is not Jiāng, it's Jiǎng.

## Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Tā shì Wáng xiānsheng ma?  
他是王先生吗？  
Is he Mr. Wáng?

Cue Wáng  
王  
Wáng

Shì. Tā shì Wáng xiānsheng.  
是。他是王先生。  
Yes. He is Mr. Wáng.

2. Tā shì Wáng xiānsheng ma?  
他是王先生吗？  
Is he Mr. Wáng?

Cue Huáng  
黄  
Huáng

Tā bú shì Wáng xiānsheng, tā xìng Huáng.  
他不是王先生，他姓黄。  
He is not Mr. Wáng. His surname is Huáng.

3. Tā shì Liú tàitai. ma?  
她是刘太太吗？  
Is she Mrs. Liú?

Cue Lín  
林  
Lín

Tā bú shì Liú tàitai. Tā xìng Lín.  
她不是刘太太。她姓林。  
He is not Mr. Wáng. His surname is Huáng.

4. Tā shì Chén xiǎojiě ma?

她是陈小姐吗？

Is she Miss Chén?

Cue

Chén

陈

Chén

Shì. Tā shì Chén xiǎojiě.

是。她是陈小姐。

Yes. She is Miss Chén.

5. Tā shì Máo xiānsheng ma?

他是毛先生吗？

Is he Mr. Máo?

Cue

Máo

毛

Máo

Shì. Tā shì Máo xiānsheng.

是。他是毛先生。

Yes. He is Mr. Máo.

6. Tā shì Jiāng tóngzhì ma?

他是江同志吗？

Is He/she Comrade Jiāng?

Cue

Zhāng

张

Zhāng

Tā bú shì Jiāng tóngzhì. Tā xìng Zhāng.

他不是江同志。他姓张。

He/she isn't Comrade Jiāng. His/her surname is Zhāng.

7. Tā shì Sòng tàitai. ma?

她是宋太太吗？

Is she Mrs. Sòng?

Cue

Sòng

宋

Sòng

Shì. Tā shì Sòng tàitai.

是。她是宋太太。

Yes. She is Mrs. Sòng.

8. Tā shì Lǐ xiānsheng ma?

他是李先生吗？

Is he Mr. Lǐ?

Cue

Wáng

王

Wáng

Tā bú shì Lǐ xiānsheng. Tā xìng Wáng.

他不是李先生。他姓王。

He isn't Mr. Lǐ. His surname is Wáng.

## Transformation drill

Respond according to the model.

1            Wǒ xìng Wáng.  
              我姓王。  
              My surname is Wáng.

Student 1    Tā xìng shénme?  
              他姓什么？  
              What is his surname?

Student 2    Tā xìng Wáng.  
              他姓王。  
              His surname is Wáng.

2            Wǒ xìng Chén.  
              我姓陈。  
              My surname is Chén.

Student 1    Tā xìng shénme?  
              他姓什么？  
              What is his surname?

Student 2    Tā xìng Chén.  
              他姓陈。  
              His surname is Chén.

3            Wǒ xìng Liú.  
              我姓刘。  
              My surname is Liú.

Student 1    Tā xìng shénme?  
              他姓什么？  
              What is his surname?

Student 2    Tā xìng Liú.  
              他姓刘。  
              His surname is Liú.



4  
Wǒ xìng Huáng.  
我姓黄。  
My surname is Huáng.

Student 1  
Tā xìng shénme?  
他姓什么?  
What is his surname?

Student 2  
Tā xìng Huáng.  
他姓黄。  
His surname is Huáng.

5  
Wǒ xìng Sòng.  
我姓宋。  
My surname is Sòng.

Student 1  
Tā xìng shénme?  
他姓什么?  
What is his surname?

Student 2  
Tā xìng Sòng.  
他姓宋。  
His surname is Sòng.

6  
Wǒ xìng Lǐ.  
我姓李。  
My surname is Lǐ.

Student 1  
Tā xìng shénme?  
他姓什么?  
What is his surname?

Student 2  
Tā xìng Lǐ.  
他姓李。  
His surname is Lǐ.

7  
Wǒ xìng Wáng.  
我姓王。  
My surname is Wáng.

Student 1      Tā xìng shénme?  
他姓什么?  
What is his surname?

Student 2      Tā xìng Wáng.  
他姓王。  
His surname is Wáng.

## Transformation drill

Transform the statement according to the model.

1. Wǒ xìng Wáng jiào Dànián.

我姓王叫大年。

My surname is Wáng, and my given name is Dànián.

Cue

Nǐ xìng Wáng jiào shénme?

Dànián.

大年。

Dànián.

你姓王叫什么？

Your surname is Wáng, and what is your given name?

2. Wǒ xìng Hú jiào Měilíng.

我姓胡叫美玲。

My surname is Hú, and my given name is Měilíng.

Cue

Nǐ xìng Hú jiào shénme?

Měilíng.

美玲。

Měilíng.

你姓胡叫什么？

Your surname is Hú, and what is your given name?

3. Wǒ xìng Lǐ jiào Shìyīng.

我姓李叫世英。

My surname is Lǐ, and my given name is Shìyīng.

Cue

Nǐ xìng Lǐ jiào shénme?

Shìyīng.

世英。

Shìyīng.

你姓李叫什么？

Your surname is Lǐ, and what is your given name?

4. Wǒ xìng Fāng jiào Bǎolán.

我姓方叫宝兰。

My surname is Fāng, and my given name is Bǎolán.

Cue Nǐ xìng Fāng jiào shénme?

Bǎolán.

宝兰。

Bǎolán.

你姓方叫什么？

Your surname is Fāng, and what is your given name?

5. Wǒ xìng Sūn jiào Déxián.

我姓孙叫德贤。

My surname is Sūn, and my given name is Déxián.

Cue Nǐ xìng Sūn jiào shénme?

Déxián.

德贤。

Déxián.

你姓孙叫什么？

Your surname is Sūn, and what is your given name?

6. Wǒ xìng Chén jiào Huìrán.

我姓陈叫蕙然。

My surname is Chén, and my given name is Huìrán.

Cue Nǐ xìng Chén jiào shénme?

Huìrán.

蕙然。

Huìrán.

你姓陈叫什么？

Your surname is Chén, and what is your given name?

7. Wǒ xìng Zhāng jiào Zhèn hàn.

我姓张叫振汉。

My surname is **Zhāng**, and my given name is **Zhèn hàn**.

Cue

Nǐ xìng Zhāng jiào shénme?

**Zhèn hàn.**

**振汉。**

**Zhèn hàn.**

**你姓张叫什么？**

Your surname is **Zhāng**, and what is your given name?

## Combination drill

### Transform the sentence according to the model.

- 1 Tā xìng Chén. Tā jiào Bǎolán.  
她姓陈。她叫宝兰。  
Her surname is Chén. Her given name is Bǎolán.

Tā xìng Chén, jiào Bǎolán.  
她姓陈，叫宝兰。  
Her surname is Chén, given name Bǎolán.

- 2 Tā xìng Lǐ. Tā jiào Mínglǐ.  
他姓李。他叫明理。  
His surname is Lǐ. His given name is Mínglǐ.

Tā xìng Lǐ, jiào Mínglǐ.  
他姓李，叫明理。  
His surname is Lǐ, given name Mínglǐ.

- 3 Tā xìng Hú. Tā jiào Bǎolán.  
她姓胡。她叫宝兰。  
Her surname is Hú. Her given name is Bǎolán.

Tā xìng Hú, jiào Bǎolán.  
她姓胡，叫宝兰。  
Her surname is Hú, given name Bǎolán.

- 4 Tā xìng Jiāng. Tā jiào Déxián.  
他姓江。他叫德贤。  
His surname is Jiāng. His given name is Déxián.

Tā xìng Jiāng, jiào Déxián.  
他姓江，叫德贤。  
His surname is Jiāng, given name Déxián.

- 5 Tā xìng Zhōu. Tā jiào Zǐyàn.  
她姓周。她叫紫燕。  
Her surname is Zhōu. Her given name is Zǐyàn.

Tā xìng Zhōu, jiào Zǐyàn.

她姓周，叫紫燕。

Her surname is Zhōu, given name Zǐyàn.

6 Tā xìng Zhāng. Tā jiào Tíngfēng.

他姓张。他叫廷峰。

His surname Zhāng. His given name is Tíngfēng.

Tā xìng Zhāng, jiào Tíngfēng.

他姓张，叫廷峰。

His surname is Zhāng, given name Tíngfēng.

7 Tā xìng Chén. Tā jiào Huìrán.

她姓陈。她叫蕙然。

Her surname is Chén. Her given name is Huìrán.

Tā xìng Chén, jiào Huìrán.

她姓陈，叫蕙然。

Her surname is Zhāng, given name Huìrán.

## **Unit 3**

### **Introduction**

#### **Topics covered in this unit**

1. Nationality.
2. Home state, province, and city.

#### **Prerequisites to the unit**

1. P&R 5 and P&R 6 (Tapes 5 and 8 of the resource module on Pronunciation and Romanization.)
2. NUM 1 and NUM 2 (Tapes 1 and 3 of the resource module on Numbers), the numbers from 1 to 10.

#### **Material you will need**

1. The C-1 and P-1 tapes, the Reference List and Reference Notes.
2. The C-2 and P-2 tapes, the workbook.
3. The 3D-1 tape.



## References

### Reference List

1. A: Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?  
你是美国人吗?  
Are you American?  
B: Wǒ shì Měiguó rén.  
我是美国人。  
I'm American.
2. A: Nǐ shì Zhōngguó rén ma?  
你是中国人吗?  
Are you Chinese?  
B: Wǒ shì Zhōngguó rén.  
我是中国人。  
I'm Chinese.
3. A: Wáng xiānsheng, nǐ shì Yīngguó rén ma?  
王先生，你是英国人吗?  
Mr. Wáng, are you English?  
B: Wǒ bú shì Yīngguó rén.  
我不是英国人。  
I'm not English.
4. A: Nǐ shì Zhōngguó rén ma?  
你是中国人吗?  
Are you Chinese?  
B: Bú shì.  
不是。  
No.
- A: Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?  
你是美国人吗?  
Are you American?  
B: Shì.  
是。  
Yes, I'm.
5. A: Mǎ xiǎojiě shì Měiguó rén ma?  
马小姐是美国人吗?  
Is Miss Mǎ an American?  
B: Bú shì, tā bú shì Měiguó rén.

不是，他不是美国人。

No, she is not an American.

A: Tā shì Zhōngguó rén ma?

她是中国人吗？

Is she Chinese?

B: Shì, tā shì Zhōngguó rén.

是，她是中国人。

Yes, she is Chinese.

6. A: Nǐ shì nǎiguo rén?

你是哪国人？

What is your nationality?

B: Wǒ shì Měiguó rén.

我是美国人。

I'm American.

7. A: Tā shì nǎiguo rén?

他是哪国人？

What is his nationality?

B: Tā shì Yīngguó rén.

他是英国人。

He is English.

8. A: Nǐ shì nǎrde rén?

他是哪儿的人？

Where are you from?

B: Wǒ shì Shànghǎi rén.

我是上海人。

I'm from Shànghǎi.

9. A: Tā shì Fāng Bǎolán de xiānsheng.

他是方宝兰的先生？

He is Fāng Bǎolán's husband.

10. A: Tā shì nǎrde rén?

他是哪儿的人？

Where is he from?

B: Tā shì Shāndōng rén.

他是山东人。

He's from Shāndōng.

11. A: Nǐ shì nǎrde rén?

你是哪儿的人？

Where are you from?

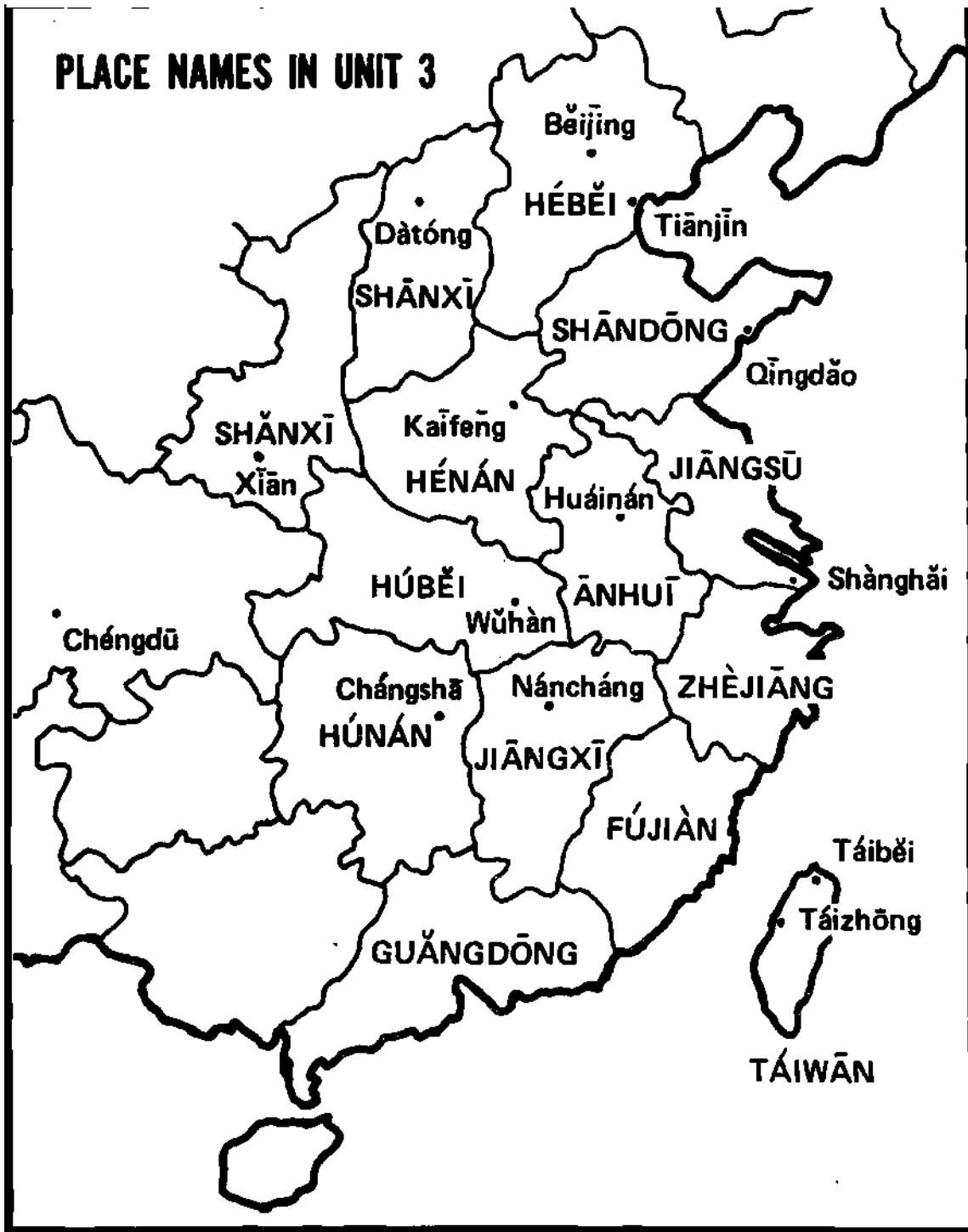
B: Wǒ shì Jiāzhōu rén.

12. A: 我是加州人。  
I'm Californian.  
Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?  
你是美国人吗?  
Are you an American?
- B: Nǐ shì nǎguó rén?  
你是哪国人?  
What's your nationality?
- A: Nǐ shì nǎrde rén?  
你是哪儿的人?  
Where are you from?

## Vocabulary

-de	—的	possessive Marker
Déguo	德国	Germany
Èguo Éguo	俄国	Russia
Fàguó Fǎguo	法国	France
Jiāzhōu	加州	California
Měiguó	美国	America, United States
nǎr	哪儿	where?
nǎi-	哪—	which?
nǎiguó	哪国	which country?
rén	人	person
Rìběn	日本	Japan
Shāndōng	山东	a province name
Shànghǎi	上海	a city name
Yīngguó	英国	England
Zhōngguó	中国	China

Figure 1.2. 0021-FSI-StandardChinese-Module01ORN-StudentText-7.png



## Reference Notes

## Notes on № 1-3

1. A: Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?  
你是美国人吗?  
Are you American?  
B: Wǒ shì Měiguó rén.  
我是美国人。  
I'm American.
2. A: Nǐ shì Zhōngguó rén ma?  
你是中国人吗?  
Are you Chinese?  
B: Wǒ shì Zhōngguó rén.  
我是中国人。  
I'm Chinese.
3. A: Wáng xiānsheng, nǐ shì Yīngguó rén ma?  
王先生，你是英国人吗?  
Mr. Wáng, are you English?  
B: Wǒ bú shì Yīngguó rén.  
我不是英国人。  
I'm not English.

Rén is a noun, “person” or “persons”; so Měiguó rén is a noun phrase, literally “American person.” Sometimes, however, it is preferable or necessary to translate expressions of this sort as adjectives or prepositional phrases.

Tā shì Měiguó rén .	他是美国人。	He is an American (noun phrase)
Tā shì Zhōngguó rén.	他是中国人。	He is Chinese (adjective)
Tā shì Shāndōng rén.	他是山东人。	Hi is from Shāndōng. (prepositional phrase)

Although Měiguó rén is translated here as “an American,” in other contexts it may be translated as “the American,” “American,” or “the Americans.” Later you will learn the various ways to indicate in Chinese whether a noun is definite or indefinite, singular or plural.

The syllable -guó usually loses its tone in expressions like Měiguó rén. (some speakers drop the tone when the word stands alone: Měiguó.)

Notes on № 4-5

4. A: Nǐ shì Zhōngguó rén ma?  
你是中国人吗?  
Are you Chinese?  
B: Bú shì.  
不是。  
No.
- A: Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?  
你是美国人吗?  
Are you American?  
B: Shì.  
是。  
Yes, I'm.
5. A: Mǎ xiǎojiě shì Měiguó rén ma?  
马小姐是美国人吗?  
Is Miss Mǎ an American?  
B: Bú shì, tā bú shì Měiguó rén.  
不是，他不是美国人。  
No, she is not an American.
- A: Tā shì Zhōngguó rén ma?  
她是中国人吗?  
Is she Chinese?  
B: Shì, tā shì Zhōngguó rén.  
是，她是中国人。  
Yes, she is Chinese.

The short “yes” answer *shì* is really the verb “am” of the longer, more complete answer. The short “no” answer *bú shì* is really the “am not” of the longer answer.

It is possible to reduce a “no” answer to *bù* (note the Falling tone), but polite usage requires that you follow it up with a more complete answer. Both the short answers *shì* and *bú shì* are commonly followed by complete answers.

Notes on № 6-7

6. A: Nǐ shì nǎguó rén?  
 你是哪国人?  
 What is your nationality?
- B: Wǒ shì Měiguó rén.  
 我是美国人。  
 I'm American.
7. A: Tā shì nǎguó rén?  
 他是哪国人?  
 What is his nationality?
- B: Tā shì Yīngguó rén.  
 他是英国人。  
 He is English.

Nǎi- is the question word “which.” It is a bound word—a word which cannot stand alone—not a free word.

nǎi-	guo	rén
哪	国	人
which	country	person

Notice that the syllable -guó, “country,” in the phrase nǎiguó rén may lose its rising tone.



## Notes on № 8-11

8. A: Nǐ shì nǎrde rén?  
他是哪儿的人?  
Where are you from?  
B: Wǒ shì Shànghǎi rén.  
我是上海人。  
I'm from Shànghǎi.
9. A: Tā shì Fāng Bǎolán de xiānsheng.  
他是方宝兰的先生?  
He is Fāng Bǎolán's husband.
10. A: Tā shì nǎrde rén?  
他是哪儿的人?  
Where is he from?  
B: Tā shì Shāndōng rén.  
他是山东人。  
He's from Shāndōng.
11. A: Nǐ shì nǎrde rén?  
你是哪儿的人?  
Where are you from?  
B: Wǒ shì Jiāzhōu rén.  
我是加州人。  
I'm Californian.

nǎr is the question word “where.” The syllable *de* is the possessive marker; it functions like the English possessive ending -'s.

nǎr	-de	rén
哪儿	的	人
where	's	person

By reversing the word order, a slightly more idiomatic translation is possible: “a person of where.” The closest English equivalent is “a person from where.” To clarify the role of *-de* in this expression, the tape gives the following example of *-de* functioning like the English possessive ending -'s:

Fāng Bǎolán	-de	xiānsheng
方宝兰	的	先生
Fāng Bǎolán	's	husband

**Notes on № 12**

12. A: Nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?  
你是美国人吗?  
Are you an American?
- B: Nǐ shì nǎguó rén?  
你是哪国人?  
What's your nationality?
- A: Nǐ shì nǎrde rén?  
你是哪儿的人?  
Where are you from?

## Drills

### Response Drill

All responses will be affirmative.

1. Tā shì Zhōngguó rén ma?

他是中国人吗？

Is he Chinese?

Tā shì Zhōngguó rén.

他是中国人。

He is Chinese.

2. Tā shì Rìběn rén ma?

他是日本人吗？

Is he Japanese?

Tā shì Rìběn rén.

他是日本人。

He is Japanese.

3. Tā shì Zhōngguó rén ma?

他是中国人吗？

Is he Chinese?

Tā shì Zhōngguó rén.

他是中国人。

He is Chinese.

4. Tā shì Měiguó rén ma?

他是美国人吗？

Is he American?

Tā shì Měiguó rén.

他是美国人。

He is American.

5. Tā shì Déguó rén ma?

他是德国人吗？

Is he German.

Tā shì Déguó rén.

他是德国人。

He is German.

6. Tā shì Jiānádà rén ma?

他是加拿大人吗？

Is he Canadian?

Tā shì Jiānádà rén.

他是加拿大人。

He is Canadian.

7. Tā shì Fàguó rén ma?

他是法国人吗？

Is he French.

Tā shì Fàguó rén.

他是法国人。

He is French.

## Response Drill

Answer according to the model.

1. Tā shì Jiānádà rén ma?  
他是加拿大人吗？  
Is he Canadian?

Cue Yīngguó  
英国  
England

Tā bú shì Jiānádà rén. Shì Yīngguó rén.  
他不是加拿大人。是英国人。  
He's not Canadian. (He) is English.

2. Tā shì Rìběn rén ma?  
他是日本人吗？  
Is he Japanese?

Cue Zhōngguó  
中国  
China

Tā bú shì Rìběn rén. Shì Zhōngguó rén.  
他不是日本人。是中国人。  
He's not Japanese. (He) is Chinese.

3. Tā shì Yīngguó rén ma?  
他是英国人吗？  
Is he English?

Cue Měiguó  
美国  
America

Tā bú shì Yīngguó rén. Shì Měiguó rén.  
他不是英国人。是美国人。  
He's not English. (He) is American.

4. Tā shì Měiguó rén ma?  
他是美国人吗?  
Is he American?

Cue Jiānádà  
加拿大  
Canada

Tā bú shì Měiguó rén, Shì Jiānádà rén.  
他不是美国人。是加拿大人。  
He's not American. (He) is Canadian.

5. Tā shì Èguó rén ma?  
他是俄国人吗?  
Is he Russian?

Cue Déguó  
德国  
Germany

Tā bú shì Èguó rén. Shì Déguó rén.  
他不是俄国人。是德国人。  
He's not Russian. (He) is German.

6. Tā shì Yuènnán rén ma?  
他是越南人吗?  
Is he Vietnamese?

Cue Zhōngguó  
中国  
China

Tā bú shì Yuènnán rén. Shì Zhōngguó rén.  
他不是越南人。是中国人。  
He's not Vietnamese. (He) is Chinese.

7. Tā shì Fàguó rén ma?  
他是法国人吗?  
Is he French?

Cue

Yīngguó

英国

England

Tā bú shì Fàguó rén. Shì Yīngguó rén.

他不是法国人。是英国人。

He's not French. (He) is English.

## Response Drill

Answer according to the cue.

1. Tā shì nǚguó rén?  
他是哪国人?  
What is his nationality?

Cue Fàguó  
法国  
France

Tā shì Fàguó rén.  
他是法国人。  
He is French.

2. Tā shì nǚguó rén?  
他是哪国人?  
What is his nationality?

Cue Zhōngguó  
中国  
China

Tā shì Zhōngguó rén.  
他是中国人。  
He is Chinese.

3. Tā shì nǚguó rén?  
他是哪国人?  
What is his nationality?

Cue Měiguó  
美国  
America

Tā shì Měiguó rén.  
他是美国人。  
He is American.



4. Tā shì nǚguó rén?  
他是哪国人?  
What is his nationality?

Cue Jīānádà  
加拿大  
Canada

Tā shì Jīānádà rén.  
他是加拿大人。  
He is Canadian.

5. Tā shì nǚguó rén?  
他是哪国人?  
What is his nationality?

Cue Rìběn  
日本  
Japan

Tā shì Rìběn rén.  
他是日本人。  
He is Japanese.

6. Tā shì nǚguó rén?  
他是哪国人?  
What is his nationality?

Cue Èguó  
俄国  
Russia

Tā shì Èguó rén.  
他是俄国人。  
He is Russian.

7. Tā shì nǚguó rén?  
他是哪国人?  
What is his nationality?

Cue

Déguo

德国

Germany

Tā shì Déguo rén.

他是德国人。

He is German.

## Response Drill

Respond according to the cue.

1. Tā shì nǎrde rén?  
他是哪儿的人?  
Where is he from?

Cue Běijīng  
北京  
Běijīng

Tā shì Běijīng rén.  
他是北京人。  
He is from Běijīng.

2. Tā shì nǎrde rén?  
他是哪儿的人?  
Where is he from?

Cue Shànghǎi  
上海  
Shànghǎi

Tā shì Shànghǎi rén.  
他是上海人。  
He is from Shànghǎi.

3. Tā shì nǎrde rén?  
他是哪儿的人?  
Where is he from?

Cue Chángshā  
长沙  
Chángshā

Tā shì Chángshā rén.  
他是长沙人。  
He is from Chángshā.

4. Tā shì nǎrde rén?  
他是哪儿的人?  
Where is he from?

Cue Táizhōng  
台中  
Táizhōng

Tā shì Táizhōng rén.  
他是台中人。  
He is from Táizhōng.

5. Tā shì nǎrde rén?  
他是哪儿的人?  
Where is he from?

Cue Táiběi  
台北  
Táiběi

Tā shì Táiběi rén.  
他是台北人。  
He is from Táiběi.

6. Tā shì nǎrde rén?  
他是哪儿的人?  
Where is he from?

Cue Tiānjīn  
天津  
Tiānjīn

Tā shì Tiānjīn rén.  
他是天津人。  
He is from Tiānjīn.

7. Tā shì nǎrde rén?  
他是哪儿的人?  
Where is he from?

Cue

Běijīng

北京

Běijīng

Tā shì Běijīng rén.

他是北京人。

He is from Běijīng.

## Transformation Drill

Transform the sentence according to the model.

1. Tā shì Běijīng rén.

他是北京人。

He is from Běijīng.

Tā shì nǎrde rén?

他是哪儿的人？

Where is he from?

2. Tā shì Zhōngguó rén.

他是中国人。

He is from China.

Tā shì nǎiguó rén?

他是哪国人？

Where is he from?

3. Tā shì Jiānádà rén.

他是加拿大人。

He is from Canada.

Tā shì nǎiguó rén?

他是哪国人？

Where is he from?

4. Tā shì Táiběi rén.

他是台北人。

He is from Táiběi.

Tā shì nǎrde rén?

他是哪儿的人？

Where is he from?

5. Tā shì Shànghǎi rén.

他是上海人。

He is from Shànghǎi.

Tā shì nǎrde rén?

他是哪儿的人？

Where is he from?

6. Tā shì Yīngguó rén.

他是英国人。

He is from England.

Tā shì nǎiguó rén?

他是哪国人？

Where is he from?

7. Tā shì Měiguó rén.

他是美国人。

He is from America.

Tā shì nǎiguó rén?

他是哪国人？

Where is he from?

8. Tā shì Táizhōng rén.

他是台中人。

He is from Táizhōng.

Tā shì nǎrde rén?

他是哪儿的人？

Where is he from?

## Transformation Drill

Transform the sentence according to the model.

1. Tā shì Lǐ tàitai.

她是李太太。

She is Mrs. Lǐ.

Tā bú shì Lǐ tàitai.

她不是太太。

She is not Mrs. Lǐ.

2. Tā xìng Gāo.

他姓高。

Her surname is Gāo.

Tā bú xìng Gāo.

他不姓高。

Her surname is not Gāo.

3. Tā shì Táiběi rén.

她是台北人。

He is from Táiběi.

Tā bú shì Táiběi rén.

她不是台北人。

Hi is not from Táiběi.

4. Tā xìng Liú.

他姓刘。

Her surname is Liú.

Tā bú xìng Liú.

他不姓刘。

Her surname is not Liú.

5. Tā shì Měiguó rén.

她是美国人。

She is American.



Tā bú shì Měiguó rén.

她不是美国人。

She is not American.

6. Tā shì Jiānádà rén.

她是加拿大人。

She is Canadian.

Tā bú shì Jiānádà rén.

她不是加拿大人。

She is not Canadian.

## Transformation Drill

Transform the sentence according to the model.

1. Tā xìng Hú.

他姓胡。

His surname is Hú.

Tā xìng Hú ma?

他姓胡吗？

Is his surname Hú?

2. Tā shì Běijīng rén.

他是北京人。

He is from Běijīng.

Tā shì Běijīng rén ma?

他是北京人吗？

Is he from Běijīng?

3. Tā shì Wáng Dànián.

他是王大年。

He is Wáng Dànián.

Tā shì Wáng Dànián ma?

他是王大年吗？

Is he Wáng Dànián?

4. Tā xìng Lín.

她姓林。

Her surname is Lín.

Tā xìng Lín ma?

她姓林吗？

Is her surname Lín?

5. Tā shì Zhōngguó rén.

她是中国人。

She is Chinese.

Tā shì Zhōngguó rén ma?

她是中国人吗？

Is she Chinese?

## Transformation Drill

Ask the question corresponding to the statement.

1. Tā xìng Zhāng.

他姓张。

His surname is Zhāng.

Tā xìng shénme?

他姓什么？

What's his surname?

2. Tā shì Běijīng rén.

他是北京人。

He is from Běijīng.

Tā shì nǎrde rén?

他是哪儿的人？

Where is he from?

3. Tā shì Wáng Dànián.

他是王大年。

He is Wáng Dànián.

Tā shì shéi?

他是谁？

Who is he?

4. Tā shì Rìběn rén.

他是日本人。

He is Japanese.

Tā shì nǎiguó rén?

他是哪国人？

What is his nationality?

5. Tā shì Shāndōng rén.

他是山东人。

He is from Shāndōng.

Tā shì nǎrde rén?

他是哪儿的人？

Where is he from?

6. Tā shì Chén tóngzhì.

他是陈同志。

Hi is Comrade Chén.

Tā shì shéi?

他是谁？

Who is he?

## **Unit 4**

### **Introduction**

#### **Topics covered in this unit**

1. Location of people and places.
2. Where people's families are from.

#### **Prerequisites to the unit**

1. NUM 3 and NUM 4 (Tapes 3 and 4 of the resource module on Numbers.)
2. CE 1, on Classroom Expressions.

#### **Material you will need**

1. The C-1 and P-1 tapes, the Reference List and Reference Notes.
2. The C-2 and P-2 tapes , the workbook.
3. The 4D-1 tape.

## References

### Reference List

1. A: Qǐngwèn, nǐ shì nǎrde rén?  
请问，你是哪儿的人？  
May I ask, where are you from?  
B: Wǒ shì Dézhōu rén.  
我是德州人。  
I'm from Texas.
2. A: Qǐngwèn, Āndésen fūren shì nǎrde rén?  
请问，安德森夫人是哪儿的人？  
May I ask, where is Mrs. Andersen from?  
B: Tā yě shì Dézhōu rén.  
她也是德州人。  
She is from Texas too.
3. A: Tā shì Yīngguó rén ma?  
他是英国人吗？  
Is she English?  
B: Bú shì, tā bú shì Yīngguó rén.  
不是，他不是英国人。  
No, he is not English.  
A: Tā àiren ne?  
他爱人呢？  
And his wife?  
B: Tā yě bú shì Yīngguó rén.  
她也并不是英国人。  
She isn't English either.
4. A: Qǐngwèn, Qīngdǎo zài nǎr?  
请问，青岛在哪儿？  
May I ask, where is Qīngdǎo?  
B: Qīngdǎo zài Shāndōng.  
青岛在山东。  
Qīngdǎo is in Shāndōng.
5. A: Qǐngwèn, nǐ lǎojiā zài nǎr?  
请问，你老家在哪儿？  
May I ask, where is your family from?  
B: Wǒ lǎojiā zài Āndàlùè.

- 我老家在安大略。  
My family is from Ontario.
6. B: Wǒ lǎojiā zài Shāndōng.  
我老家在山东。  
My family is from Shāndōng.
- A: Chén Shimín tóngzhì zài nǎr?  
陈世民同志在哪儿?  
Where is Comrade Shimín?
- B: Tā zài nàr.  
他在那儿。  
He's there.
7. A: Qīngdǎo zài nǎr?  
青岛在哪儿?  
Where is Qīngdǎo?
- B: Zài zhèr.  
在这儿。  
It's here.
8. A: Nǐ àiren xiànzài zài nǎr?  
你爱人现在在哪儿?  
Where is your wife now?
- B: Wǒ àiren xiànzài zài Jiānádà.  
我爱人现在在加拿大。  
My wife is in Canada now.



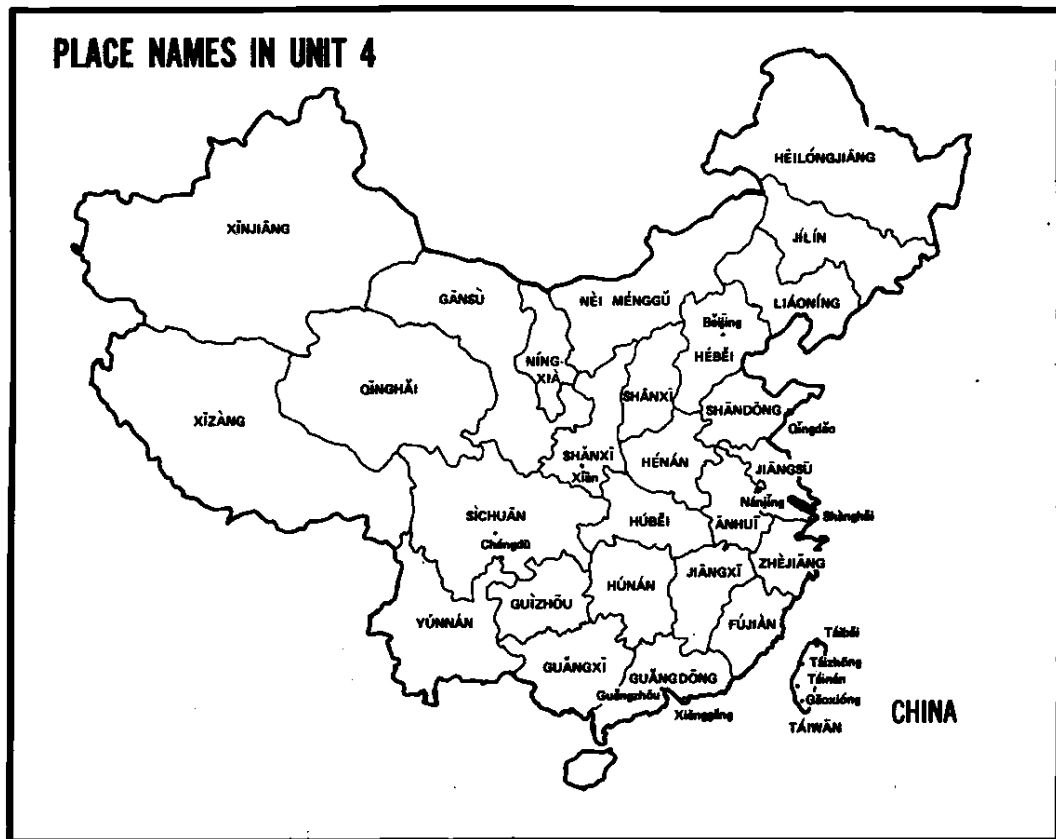
## Vocabulary

àiren	爱人	spouse
Āndálüè	安大略	Ontario
Dézhōu	德州	Texas
fūren	夫人	Lady, Madame, Mrs., wife (of a high ranking person)
Jiānádà	加拿大	Canada
lǎojiā	老家	“original home”
nàr (nèr)	那儿	there
Qīngdǎo	青岛	a city name
Qǐngwèn	请问	May I ask?
xiànzài	现在	now
yě	也	also, too, either
zài	在	to be in/at/one
zhèr	这儿	here

Additional required vocabulary not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes.

Learn the pronunciation and location of any five cities and five provinces of China on the maps on page 80-81.

Figure 1.3. 0021-FSI-StandardChinese-Module01ORN-StudentText-8.png



## Reference Notes

### Notes on № 1

1. A: Qǐngwèn, nǐ shì nǎrde rén?  
请问，你是哪儿的人？  
May I ask, where are you from?
- B: Wǒ shì Dézhōu rén.  
我是德州人。  
I'm from Texas.

**Qǐngwèn:** Literally, **qǐng** means “request,” and **wèn** means “ask (for information).” **Qǐngwèn** is used as English speakers use “excuse me,” to get someone’s attention in order to ask him a question.

#### **Note**

**Qǐngwèn** is NOT the word used for saying “excuse me” when you step on someone’s foot. For that, you say **duìbuqǐ**.

## Notes on № 2

2. A: Qǐngwèn, Āndésen fūren shì nǎrde rén?  
 请问，安德森夫人是哪儿的人？  
 May I ask, where is Mrs. Andersen from?
- B: Tā yě shì Dézhōu rén.  
 她也是德州人。  
 She is from Texas too.

**Names:** In the People's Republic, a foreigner is known by the standard phonetic equivalent of his full name. His given name is followed by his surname, which is followed by the appropriate title, Mr. David Anderson will be called *Dàiwéi Āndésèn xiānsheng*. In Taiwan, there is no set way of giving names to foreigners. Sometimes, as in the PRC, a phonetic equivalent of the full name is used (though there are no standard versions). Sometimes, the equivalent is based entirely on the surname. Mr. Anderson, for instance, might be *Ān Désēn xiānsheng*. The surname may also be translated, as when “King” is translated into *Wáng*. It is also common to base the Chinese surname on the first syllable of the original surname, and the Chinese given name on something else (often the original given name). In Taiwan, *Dàwèi* is a common phonetic equivalent for “David.” “Mr. David Anderson,” therefore, might be *Ān Dàwèi xiānsheng*.

Here is a chart of some of the Chinese names that might be given to Mr. David Anderson.

## PRC

Dàiwéi	Āndésèn	xiānsheng
--------	---------	-----------

## TAIWAN

Ān	Désēn	xiānsheng
Ān	Dàwèi	xiānsheng

**Titles:** In the PRC, a foreign man is addressed as *xiānsheng*, and a married woman as either *fūren* or *taimai*, depending on her status. The term *fūren* is an especially respectful term used to address the wife of a high-ranking official or businessman. *Fūren* is also used this way on Taiwan.

An unmarried foreign woman in the PRC may be addressed as *xiǎojiě* “Miss.” Married or unmarried women may be addressed as *Nǚshì*. or “Ma’am.” *Nǚshì* will be introduced in BIO, Unit 1.

The term *tóngzhì*, “Comrade,” was originally used only by members of the Communist Party to address other members. It is now the general term of address used by all Chinese adults in the PRC. It should be remembered, though, that *tóngzhì* does carry a distinct political implication. Visitors in the People's Republic, who are not citizens and who do not take part in efforts to realize Communist ideals, will not be addressed as *tóngzhì* and should not feel obliged to address anyone else as such.

*Yě* is an adverb meaning “also,” or “too.” It always comes before the verb.

## Notes on № 3

3. A: Tā shì Yīngguó rén ma?  
他是英国人吗?  
Is she English?
- B: Bú shì, tā bú shì Yīngguó rén.  
不是，他不是英国人。  
No, he is not English.
- A: Tā àiren ne?  
他爱人呢?  
And his wife?
- B: Tā yě bú shì Yīngguó rén.  
她也不是英国人。  
She isn't English either.

**Àiren**, which originally meant “loved one,” “sweetheart” or “lover,” is used in the PRC for either “husband” or “wife,” i.e., for “spouse.”

The possessive phrase **Tā Àiren**, “his wife” (or, “her husband”), is formed by putting the words for “he” (or “she”) and “spouse” together.

The marker **-de** (which you have seen in **nǎrde rén**) is not needed when the possessive relationship is felt to be very close. (See also the notes on No. 5.)

**Yě** in a negative sentence is usually translated as “either.” In this case, **bù** comes between **yě** and the verb. Possible English translations for **yě**, in both affirmative and negative sentences, are:

Tā yě shì Yīngguó rén.	她也是英国人。	She is English too. She is also English.
Tā yě bú shì Yīngguó rén.	她也不是英国人。	She is not English either. She is also not English.

**Notes on № 4**

4.     A:     Qǐngwèn, Qīngdǎo zài nǎr?  
          请问，青岛在哪儿？  
          May I ask, where is Qīngdǎo?
- B:     Qīngdǎo zài Shāndōng.  
          青岛在山东。  
          Qīngdǎo is in Shāndōng.

Zài is the verb “to be in/at/on,” that is, “to be somewhere.” Zài involves location, while shì involves identity, “to be someone/something.”

## Notes on № 5

5. A: **Qǐngwèn, nǐ lǎojiā zài nǎr?**  
 请问，你老家在哪儿？  
 May I ask, where is your family from?
- B: **Wǒ lǎojiā zài Āndàlùè.**  
 我老家在安大略。  
 My family is from Ontario.
- B: **Wǒ lǎojiā zài Shāndōng.**  
 我老家在山东。  
 My family is from **Shāndōng**.

Literally, **lǎojiā** is “old home” (“original home,” “ancestral home,” “native place”), that is, the place you and your family are from. When a Chinese asks you about your **lǎojiā**, he probably wants to know about your hometown, the place where you grew up.

When you ask a Chinese about his **lǎojiā** however, he will tell you where his family came from originally. A Chinese whose grandparents came from the province of **Guǎngdōng** will give that as his **lǎojiā**, even if he and his parents have spent all of their lives in **Sichuān**.

**Nǐ lǎojiā zài nǎr?** (literally “Where is your original home?”) asks for the LOCATION of the town you come from.

The question is answered with **zài** plus the name of the province (or state) that the town is located in: **Wǒ lǎojiā zài Dèzhōu (Āndàlùè, Shāndōng)**. **Nǐ lǎojiā shì nǎr?** (translated into English as “What is your original home?”) asks about the IDENTITY of the town you come from. That question is answered with **shì** plus the name of the town (or city): **Wǒ lǎojiā shì Jiùjīnshān (Qǐngdǎo, Shànghǎi)**.

Compare:

<b>Wǒ lǎojiā zài Guǎngdōng.</b>	<b>我老家在广东。</b>	My original home is in <b>Guǎngdōng</b> .
<b>Wǒ lǎojiā shì Guǎngzhōu.</b>	<b>我老家是广州。</b>	My original home is <b>Guǎngzhōu</b> .

The possessive **nǐ lǎojiā**, like **tā àiren**, does not require a possessive marker. However, if more than one word must be used to indicate the possessor, **-de** is often inserted after the last word: **nǐ àirende lǎojiā**, “your spouse’s original home” or “where your spouse’s family comes from.”

Notes on № 6-8

6. A: Chén Shimín tóngzhì zài nǎr?  
陈世民同志在哪儿?  
Where is Comrade Shimín?
- B: Tā zài nàr.  
他在那儿。  
He's there.
7. A: Qīngdǎo zài nǎr?  
青岛在哪儿?  
Where is Qīngdǎo?
- B: Zài zhèr.  
在这儿。  
It's here.
8. A: Nǐ àiren xiànzài zài nǎr?  
你爱人现在在哪儿?  
Where is your wife now?
- B: Wǒ àiren xiànzài zài Jiānádà.  
我爱人现在在加拿大。  
My wife is in Canada now.

You have learned three words for asking and telling about locations.

nǎr	哪儿	where
nàr (nèr)	那儿	there
zhèr	这儿	here

Notice that the question word **nǎr** is in the Low tone, while the answer words **nàr** and **zhèr** are both in the Falling tone. Also notice that the vowel sound in **zhèr** is different from that in **nǎr** and **nàr**. (Some speakers prefer **nèr** to **nàr**.) When you are talking about movable things and people that you presume are not nearby (“nearby,” being approximately within pointing range), you usually ask where they are NOW. The “present time” word may be omitted if the time has been established earlier in the conversation.

Nǐ àiren xiànzài zài nǎr?	你爱人现在在哪儿?	Where is your wife now?
Tā zài Běijīng.	她在北京。	She's in Běijīng (now).

If you ask about someone or something you presume to be nearby (a pair of scissors in a drawer, for instance, or a person in a group across the room), you do not use **xiànzài**.

In English, the words “here” and “there” are used to refer to locations of any size. In Chinese, however, **zhèr** and **nàr** are usually not used for cities, provinces, and countries (with the exception that you may use **zhèr** to refer to the city you are in). Instead, you repeat the name of the place.

Compare these two exchanges in **Beijīng**:



Country:	Mǎdīng xiānsheng xiànzài zài Zhōngguó ma?
	Tā xiànzài zài Zhōngguó.
	Is Mr. Martin in China?
	He is <b>here</b> now.
City:	Mǎdīng xiānsheng xiànzài zài Shànghǎi ma?
	Tā bú zài Shànghǎi; tā zài zhèr.
	Is Mr. Martin in Shànghǎi ?
	He is not <b>there</b> ; he is here.
	马丁先生现在在中国吗？
	他现在在中国。
	马丁先生现在在上海吗？
	他不在上海；他在这儿。

**Jiānádà** “Canada”: Although the middle syllable of this word is marked with the Rising tone, at a normal rate of speech you will probably hear **Jiānādà**.

## Drills

### Response Drill

Respond to the question “Where is He/she from?” according to the cue.

1. Tā shì nǎrde rén?  
他/她是哪儿的人?  
Where is he/she from?

Cue Húnán  
湖南  
Húnán

Tā shì Húnán rén.  
他/她是湖南人。  
He/She is from Húnán.

2. Tā shì nǎrde rén?  
他/她是哪儿的人?  
Where is he/she from?

Cue Shāndōng  
山东  
Shāndōng

Tā shì Shāndōng rén.  
他/她是山东人。  
He/She is from Shāndōng.

3. Tā shì nǎrde rén?  
他/她是哪儿的人?  
Where is he/she from?

Cue Héběi  
河北  
Héběi

Tā shì Héběi rén.

他/她是河北人。

He/She is from Héběi.

4. Tā shì nǎrde rén?

他/她是哪儿的人？

Where is he/she from?

Cue

Jiāngsū

江苏

Jiāngsū

Tā shì Jiāngsū rén.

他/她是江苏人。

He/She is from Jiāngsū.

5. Tā shì nǎrde rén?

他/她是哪儿的人？

Where is he/she from?

Cue

Guǎngdōng

广东

Guǎngdōng

Tā shì Guǎngdōng rén.

他/她是广东人。

He/She is from Guǎngdōng.

6. Tā shì nǎrde rén?

他/她是哪儿的人？

Where is he/she from?

Cue

Húběi

湖北

Húběi

Tā shì Húběi rén.

他/她是湖北人。

He/She is from Húběi.

7. Tā shì nǎrde rén?

他/她是哪儿的人？

Where is he/she from?

Cue

Sichuān

四川

Sichuān

Tā shì Sìchuān rén.

他/她是四川人。

He/She is from Sìchuān.

## Transformation Drill

Ask the appropriate “where” question, as in the example.

1. Zhāng tóngzhì fūren shì Běijīng rén.  
张同志夫人是北京人。  
Comrade Zhāng’s wife is from Běijīng.

Qǐngwèn, Zhāng fūren shì nǎrde rén?  
请问张夫人是哪儿的人？  
May I ask, where is Mrs. Zhāng from?

2. Huáng tóngzhì fūren shì Shànghǎi rén.  
黄同志夫人是上海人。  
Comrade Huáng’s wife is from Shànghǎi.

Qǐngwèn, Huáng fūren shì nǎrde rén?  
请问黄夫人是哪儿的人？  
May I ask, where is Mrs. Huáng from?

3. Wáng tóngzhì fūren shì Nánjīng rén.  
王同志夫人是南京人。  
Comrade Wáng’s wife is from Nánjīng.

Qǐngwèn, Wáng fūren shì nǎrde rén?  
请问王夫人是哪儿的人？  
May I ask, where is Mrs. Wáng from?

4. Lǐ tóngzhì fūren shì Guǎngzhōu rén.  
李同志夫人是广州人。  
Comrade Lǐ’s wife is from Guǎngzhōu.

Qǐngwèn, Lǐ fūren shì nǎrde rén?  
请问李夫人是哪儿的人？  
May I ask, where is Mrs. Lǐ from?

5. Zhào tóngzhì fūren shì Xiānggǎng rén.  
赵同志夫人是香港人。  
Comrade Zhào’s wife is from Hong Kong.

Qǐngwèn, Zhào fūren shì nǎrde rén?

请问赵夫人是哪儿的人？

May I ask, where is Mrs. **Zhào** from?

6. Máo tóngzhì fūren shì Qīngdǎo rén.

毛同志夫人是青岛人。

Comrade **Máo**'s wife is from **Qīngdǎo**.

Qǐngwèn, Máo fūren shì nǎrde rén?

请问毛夫人是哪儿的人？

May I ask, where is Mrs. **Máo** from?

7. Chén tóngzhì fūren shì Běijīng rén.

陈同志夫人是北京人。

Comrade **Chén**'s wife is from **Běijīng**.

Qǐngwèn, Chén fūren shì nǎrde rén?

请问陈夫人是哪儿的人？

May I ask, where is Mrs. **Chén** from?

## Transformation Drill

Change affirmative statements to negative statements.

1. Tā shì Héběi rén.

他/她是河北人。

He/She is from Héběi.

Tā bú shì Héběi rén.

他/她不是河北人。

He/She is not from Héběi.

2. Tā shì Shāndōng rén.

他/她是山东人。

He/She is from Shāndōng.

Tā bú shì Shāndōng rén.

他/她不是山东人。

He/She is not from Shāndōng.

3. Tā shì Jiāngsū rén.

他/她是江苏人。

He/She is from Jiāngsū.

Tā bú shì Jiāngsū rén.

他/她不是江苏人。

He/She is not from Jiāngsū.

4. Tā shì Fújiàn rén.

他/她是福建人。

He/She is from Fújiàn.

Tā bú shì Fújiàn rén.

他/她不是福建人。

He/She is not from Fújiàn.

5. Tā shì Zhèjiāng rén.

他/她是浙江人。

He/She is from Zhèjiāng.

Tā bú shì Zhèjiāng rén.

他/她不是浙江人。

He/She is not from Zhèjiāng.

6. Tā shì Húnán rén.

他/她是湖南人。

He/She is from Húnán.

Tā bú shì Húnán rén.

他/她不是湖南人。

He/She is not from Húnán.

7. Tā shì Sìchuān rén.

他/她是四川人。

He/She is from Sìchuān.

Tā bú shì Sìchuān rén.

他/她不是四川人。

He/She is not from Sìchuān.



## Transformation Drill

### Add **yě** to the statement.

1. Tā shì Héběi rén.

他/她是河北人。

He/She is from Héběi.

Tā yě shì Héběi rén.

他/她也是河北人。

He/She is from Héběi too.

2. Tā shì Zhèjiāng rén.

他/她是浙江人。

He/She is from Zhèjiāng.

Tā yě shì Zhèjiāng rén.

他/她也是浙江人。

He/She is from Zhèjiāng too.

3. Tā shì Fújiàn rén.

他/她是福建人。

He/She is from Fújiàn.

Tā yě shì Fújiàn rén.

他/她也是福建人。

He/She is from Fújiàn too.

4. Tā shì Húnán rén.

他/她是湖南人。

He/She is from Húnán.

Tā yě shì Húnán rén.

他/她也是湖南人。

He/She is from Húnán too.

5. Tā shì Jiāngsū rén.

他/她是江苏人。

He/She is from Jiāngsū.

Tā yě shì Jiāngsū rén.

他/她也是江苏人。

He/She is from Jiāngsū too.

6. Tā shì Shāndōng rén.

他/她是山东人。

He/She is from Shāndōng.

Tā yě shì Shāndōng rén.

他/她也是山东人。

He/She is from Shāndōng too.

7. Tā shì Hénán rén.

他/她是河南人。

He/She is from Hénán.

Tā yě shì Hénán rén.

他/她也是河南人。

He/She is from Hénán too.

## Transformation Drill

### Add **yě** to the statement.

1. Zhào xiānsheng bú shì Táiwān rén.

赵先生不是台湾人。

Mr. Zhào isn't from Táiwān.

Zhào xiānsheng yě bú shì Táiwān rén.

赵先生也不是台湾人。

Mr. Zhào isn't from Táiwān either.

2. Lǐ xiānsheng bú shì Táiběi rén.

李先生不是台北人。

Mr. Lǐ isn't from Táiběi.

Lǐ xiānsheng yě bú shì Táiběi rén.

李先生也不是台北人。

Mr. Lǐ isn't from Táiběi either.

3. Wáng xiānsheng bú shì Táizhōng rén.

王先生不是台中人。

Mr. Wáng isn't from Táizhōng.

Wáng xiānsheng yě bú shì Táizhōng rén.

王先生也不是台中人。

Mr. Wáng isn't from Táizhōng either.

4. Huáng xiānsheng bú shì Tánán rén.

黄先生不是台南人。

Mr. Huáng isn't from Tánán.

Huáng xiānsheng yě bú shì Tánán rén.

黄先生也不是台南人。

Mr. Huáng isn't from Tánán either.

5. Liú xiānsheng bú shì Táidōng rén.

刘先生不是台东人。

Mr. Liú isn't from Táidōng.

Lǐu xiānsheng yě bú shì Táidōng rén.

刘先生也不是台东人。

Mr. Lǐu isn't from Táidōng either.

6. Hú xiānsheng bú shì Jīlóng rén.

胡先生不是基隆人。

Mr. Hú isn't from Jīlóng.

Hú xiānsheng yě bú shì Jīlóng rén.

胡先生也不是基隆人。

Mr. Hú isn't from Jīlóng either.

7. Chén xiānsheng bú shì Gāoxióng rén. Mr.

陈先生不是高雄人。

Mr. Chén isn't from Gāoxióng.

Chén xiānsheng yě bú shì Gāoxióng rén.

陈先生也不是高雄人。

Mr. Chén isn't from Gāoxióng either.

## Response drill

Give a negative answer to the questions..

1. Mǎ tóngzhì shì Běijīng rén ma?

马同志是北京人吗？

Is Comrade Mǎ from Běijīng?

Tā bú shì Běijīng rén.

他/她不是北京人。

He/She isn't from Běijīng.

2. Tā àiren ne?

他/她爱人呢？

And his/her spouse?

Tā àiren yě bú shì Běijīng rén.

他/她爱人也不是北京人。

He/She isn't from Běijīng either.

3. Zhāng tóngzhì shì Shànghǎi rén ma?

张同志是上海人吗？

Is Comrade Zhāng from Shànghǎi?

Tā bú shì Shànghǎi rén.

他/她不是上海人。

He/She isn't from Shànghǎi.

4. Tā àiren ne?

他/她爱人呢？

And his/her spouse?

Tā yě bú shì Shànghǎi rén.

他/她也不是上海人。

He/She isn't from Shànghǎi either.

5. Jiāng tóngzhì shì Nánjīng rén ma?

蒋同志是南京人吗？

Is Comrade Jiāng from Nánjīng?

Tā bú shì Nánjīng rén.

他/她不是南京。

He/She isn't from Nánjīng.

6. Tā àiren ne?

他/她爱人呢?

And his/her spouse?

Tā yě bú shì Nánjīng rén.

他/她也不是南京人。

He/She isn't from Nánjīng either.

7. Chén tóngzhì shì Guǎngzhōu rén ma?

陈同志是广州人吗?

Is Comrade Chén from Guǎngzhōu?

Tā bú shì Guǎngzhōu rén.

他/她不是广州人。

He/She isn't from Guǎngzhōu.

8. Tā àiren ne?

他/她爱人呢?

And his/her spouse?

Tā yě bú shì Guǎngzhōu rén.

他/她也不是广州人。

He/She isn't from Guǎngzhōu either.

9. Sūn tóngzhì shì Chéngdū rén ma?

孙同志是成都人吗?

Is Comrade Sūn from Chéngdū?

Tā bù shì Chéngdū rén.

他/她不是成都人。

He/She isn't from Chéngdū.

10. Tā àiren ne?

他/她爱人呢?

And his/her spouse?

Tā yě bú shì Chéngdū rén.

他/她也不是成都人。

He/She isn't from Chéngdū either.

11. Máo tóngzhì shì Qīngdǎo rén ma?

毛同志是青岛人吗？

Is Comrade Máo from Qīngdǎo?

Tā bú shì Qīngdǎo rén.

他/她不是青岛人。

He/She isn't from Qīngdǎo.

12. Tā àiren ne?

他/她爱人呢？

And his/her spouse?

Tā yě bú shì Qīngdǎo rén.

他/她也不是青岛人。

He/She isn't from Qīngdǎo either.

13. Yáng tóngzhì shì Běijīng rén ma?

杨同志是北京人吗？

Is Comrade Yáng from Běijīng?

Tā bú shì Běijīng rén.

他/她不是北京人。

He/She isn't from Běijīng.

14. Tā àiren ne?

他/她爱人呢？

And his/her spouse?

Tā yě bú shì Běijīng rén.

他/她也不是北京人。

He/She isn't from Běijīng either.

## Response Drill

Respond according to the cue.

1. Qǐngwèn, Qīngdǎo zài nǎr?

请问青岛在哪儿？

May I ask, where is Qīngdǎo?

Cue

Shāndōng

山东

Shāndōng

Qīngdǎo zài Shāndōng.

青岛在山东。

Qīngdǎo is in Shāndōng.

2. Qǐngwèn, Nánjīng zài nǎr?

请问南京在哪儿？

May I ask, where is Nánjīng?

Cue

Jiāngsū

江苏

Jiāngsū

Nánjīng zài Jiāngsū.

南京在江苏。

Nánjīng is in Jiāngsū.

3. Qǐngwèn, Guǎngzhōu zài nǎr?

请问广州在哪儿？

May I ask, where is Guǎngzhōu?

Cue

Guǎngdōng

广东

Guǎngdōng

Guǎngzhōu zài Guǎngdōng.

广州在广东。

Guǎngzhōu is in Guǎngdōng.



4. Qǐngwèn, Shànghǎi zài nǎr?  
请问上海在哪儿？  
May I ask, where is Shànghǎi?

Cue Jiāngsū  
江苏  
Jiāngsū

Shànghǎi zài Jiāngsū.  
上海在江苏。  
Shànghǎi is in Jiāngsū.

5. Qǐngwèn, Běijīng zài nǎr?  
请问北京在哪儿？  
May I ask, where is Běijīng?

Cue Héběi  
河北  
Héběi

Běijīng zài Héběi.  
北京在河北。  
Běijīng is in Héběi.

6. Qǐngwèn, Qīngdǎo zài nǎr?  
请问青岛在哪儿？  
May I ask, where is Qīngdǎo?

Cue Shāndōng  
山东  
Shāndōng

Qīngdǎo zài Shāndōng.  
青岛在山东。  
Qīngdǎo is in Shāndōng.

7. Qǐngwèn, Shànghǎi zài nǎr?  
请问上海在哪儿？  
May I ask, where is Shànghǎi.

Cue

Jiāngsū

江苏

Jiāngsū

Shànghǎi zài Jiāngsū.

上海在江苏。

Shànghǎi is in Jiāngsū.

## Transformation Drill

Transform the statement according to the model.

1. Lín tóngzhì shì Húběi rén.

林同志是河北人。

Comrade Lín is from Húběi.

Lín tóngzhì de lǎojiā zài Húběi.

林同志的老家在河北。

Comrade Lín's family is from Húběi.

2. Wáng tóngzhì shì Shānxī rén.

王同志是山西人。

Comrade Wáng is from Shānxī.

Wáng tóngzhì de lǎojiā zài Shānxī.

王同志的老家在山西。

Comrade Wáng's family is from Shānxī.

3. Huáng tóngzhì shì Shǎnxī rén.

黄同志是陕西人。

Comrade Huáng is from Shǎnxī.

Huáng tóngzhì de lǎojiā zài Shǎnxī.

黄同志的老家在陕西。

Comrade Huáng's family is from Shǎnxī.

4. Gāo tóngzhì shì Fújiàn rén.

高同志是福建人。

Comrade Gāo is from Fújiàn.

Gāo tóngzhì de lǎojiā zài Fújiàn.

高同志的老家在福建。

Comrade Gāo's family is from Fújiàn.

5. Lǐ tóngzhì shì Sìchuān rén.

李同志是四川人。

Comrade Lǐ is from Sìchuān.

Lǐ tóngzhì de lǎojiā zài Sìchuān.

李同志的老家在四川。

Comrade Lǐ's family is from Sìchuān.

6. Zhōu tóngzhì shì Zhèjiāng rén.

周同志是浙江人。

Comrade Zhōu is from Zhèjiāng.

Zhōu tóngzhì de lǎojiā zài Zhèjiāng.

周同志的老家在浙江。

Comrade Zhōu's family is from Zhèjiāng.

7. Máo tóngzhì shì Húnán rén.

毛同志是湖南人。

Comrade Máo is from Húnán.

Máo tóngzhì de lǎojiā zài Húnán.

毛同志的老家在湖南。

Comrade Máo's family is from Húnán.

## Response Drill

Respond according to the cue.

1. Tā àiren zài nǎr?  
他/她爱人在哪儿?  
Where is his/her spouse?

Cue Měiguó  
美国  
America

Tā àiren xiànzài zài Měiguó.  
他/她爱人现在在美国。  
His/Her spouse is in America now.

2. Tā àiren zài nǎr?  
他/她爱人在哪儿?  
Where is his/her spouse?

Cue Jiānádà  
加拿大  
Canada

Tā àiren xiànzài zài Jiānádà.  
他/她爱人现在在加拿大。  
His/Her spouse is in Canada now.

3. Tā àiren zài nǎr?  
他/她爱人在哪儿?  
Where is his/her spouse?

Cue Yīngguó  
英国  
England

Tā àiren xiànzài zài Yīngguó.  
他/她爱人现在在英国。  
His/Her spouse is in England now.

4. Tā àiren zài nǎr?  
他/她爱人在哪儿?  
Where is his/her spouse?

Cue Déguo  
德国  
Germany

Tā àiren xiànzài zài Déguó.  
他/她爱人现在在德国。  
His/Her spouse is in Germany now.

5. Tā àiren zài nǎr?  
他/她爱人在哪儿?  
Where is his/her spouse?

Cue Měiguó  
美国  
America

Tā àiren xiànzài zài Měiguó.  
他/她爱人现在在美国。  
His/Her spouse is in America now.

6. Tā àiren zài nǎr?  
他/她爱人在哪儿?  
Where is his/her spouse?

Cue Fàguó  
法国  
France

Tā àiren xiànzài zài Fàguó.  
他/她爱人现在在法国。  
His/Her spouse is in France now.

7. Tā àiren zài nǎr?  
他/她爱人在哪儿?  
Where is his/her spouse?

Cue

Èguo

俄国

Russia

Tā àiren xiànzài zài Èguó.

他/她爱人现在在俄国。

His/Her spouse is in Russia now.

## Criterion Test

The purpose of the Criterion Test at the end of each module is to show you not only how much of the material you have learned, but also what points you need to work on before beginning to study another module.

Since the primary goal of ORN is to introduce the sound system of Standard Chinese, this test focuses on your ability to discriminate and produce tones, vowels, and consonants. Additionally, there are sections which test your ability to comprehend and produce numbers from 1 through 99 and the material in the ORN Target Lists.

Your knowledge of personal names and titles and the romanization system is also tested. Read the Objectives at the beginning of the module for a description of exactly what the test covers.

Note: Although the entire sound system is introduced in the Pronunciation and Romanization Module, you will be tested here only on those sounds which occur in the Target Sentences. Other sounds will be included in Criterion Tests for later modules.

Following is a sample of the Criterion Test for this module. Each section of the test, with directions and a sample question, is represented here so that you may know exactly what is expected of you after studying the ORN Module.

Minimum scores are suggested for each section of the test. Achieving these scores means that you are adequately prepared for the next module. If you fall below the minimum criterion on any section, you should review relevant study materials.

You will use a tape to complete Part I of the test. Part II is written, and you will complete Part III with your instructor. Part IV of the test (Diagnostics) indicates the passing score for each section and review materials for each section.

### Part I

1. This section tests your ability to distinguish the four tones. In your test booklet you will see two syllables after each letter. The speaker will pronounce both syllables, and then say one of them again. You are to decide which syllable was repeated, and circle the appropriate one to indicate your choice. The syllables may occur in any of the four tones, regardless of which tone was used previously in the module. The same syllable may occur more than once in this section.

For example, the speaker might say: fēi ... fěi and then repeat fēi

- a. fēi fěi

2. This section tests your ability to recognize the four tones in isolated syllables. The speaker will pronounce a syllable twice; you add to the written syllable the tone that you hear. Again, the syllables may occur in any of the four tones, regardless of which tone was used previously in the module.

For example, the speaker might say: fēi...fēi

- a. fei → fěi

3. This section tests your ability to recognize the four tones in two-syllables combinations. The speaker pronounces each two-syllable item twice and then pauses a moment for you to mark tones



on the written syllables. For the first ten items, one of the two tones is already marked. For the last ten items, you must fill in both tones.

For example: the speaker might say: **cháběi...cháběi**

a. **chabei** → **cháběi**

4. In this section, you are tested on syllables which differ minimally in sound. The speaker will pronounce each syllable in an item once; then he will pronounce one of the syllables again. Decide which of the syllables was repeated, and indicate your choice by circling that written syllable in your test booklet. The syllables in this test do not necessarily correspond in every way to syllables in the Target Lists They may vary in tone, for example.

For example, the speaker might say: **fàn...fàng** and then repeat **fàng**.

a. **fàn fàng**

5. In this section, you complete the romanization for the syllables that you hear. As the speaker says a syllable, write the appropriate vowel or consonant letter(s) in the blank. This tests your ability to recognize the sounds of a syllable and to use the romanization system correctly. The speaker will say each syllable twice.

For example, the speaker might say: **pàng...pàng** then you would write:

a. **pàng**

6. This section tests your ability to understand the numbers 1 through 99 in Chinese. For each item, the speaker will say a number, and you write down the numerals for that number.

For example, you might hear: **shí-sān**

a. **13**

7. This section tests your ability to understand questions and answers about where someone is from and where he is now. Listen to a conversation between Mr. Johnson and Comrade **Zhào**, who have just met. You will hear the conversation three times. The third time you hear it, a pause will follow each line. You may use these pauses to fill in the boxes in your booklet with appropriate information. (You do not have to wait for the second repetition of the conversation to fill in the answers, of course.)

For example: [You will hear a conversation similar to conversations you heard on the C-2 tapes in this module.]

	Home State or Province	Present Location
Comrade <b>Zhào</b>		
Mr. Johnson ( <b>Yuēhànsūn</b> )		
Comrade <b>Zhào</b> 's husband		
Mrs. Johnson		

8. This section tests your ability to comprehend Chinese utterances by asking you for the English equivalents. For each item, the speaker will say a sentence from the Target List twice. You indicate

your understanding of the sentence by circling the letter of the English sentence which most closely matches the meaning of the Chinese sentence.

For example, you might hear: **nǐ shì shéi?...nǐ shì shéi?**

- a. Who is she?
- b. Who is he?
- c. Who are you?

## Part II

1. This section tests your general understanding of the Chinese system of personal names and titles. Read the family histories in your test booklet, and answer the questions.

For example,

**Yáng Tíngfēng** is the Chinese name used by an American, Timothy Young, now that he is living in Taipei. His Chinese surname is:

- a. **Yáng**
- b. **Tíngfēng**
- c. **Yáng Tíngfēng**

## Part III

1. This section tests your ability to pronounce the four tones. Simple sound combinations have been chosen so that special attention may be given to tone production. For each item, choose one syllable and read it aloud. As you do so, put a circle around the one you choose. The instructor will note the syllable he hears. Be sure to choose a fair sampling of all four tones, and select them in random order.

For example, you might say: **má**

- a. **mā má mǎ mà**
2. This section tests your ability to pronounce Chinese sounds from the Target Lists, as well as your ability to read romanization. For each item, choose one syllable and read it aloud. As you do so, put a circle around the one you choose. The instructor will note the syllable he hears. Be sure to choose syllables from each column as you go through this section of the test.

For example, you might say: **nín**

- a. **nín...níng**

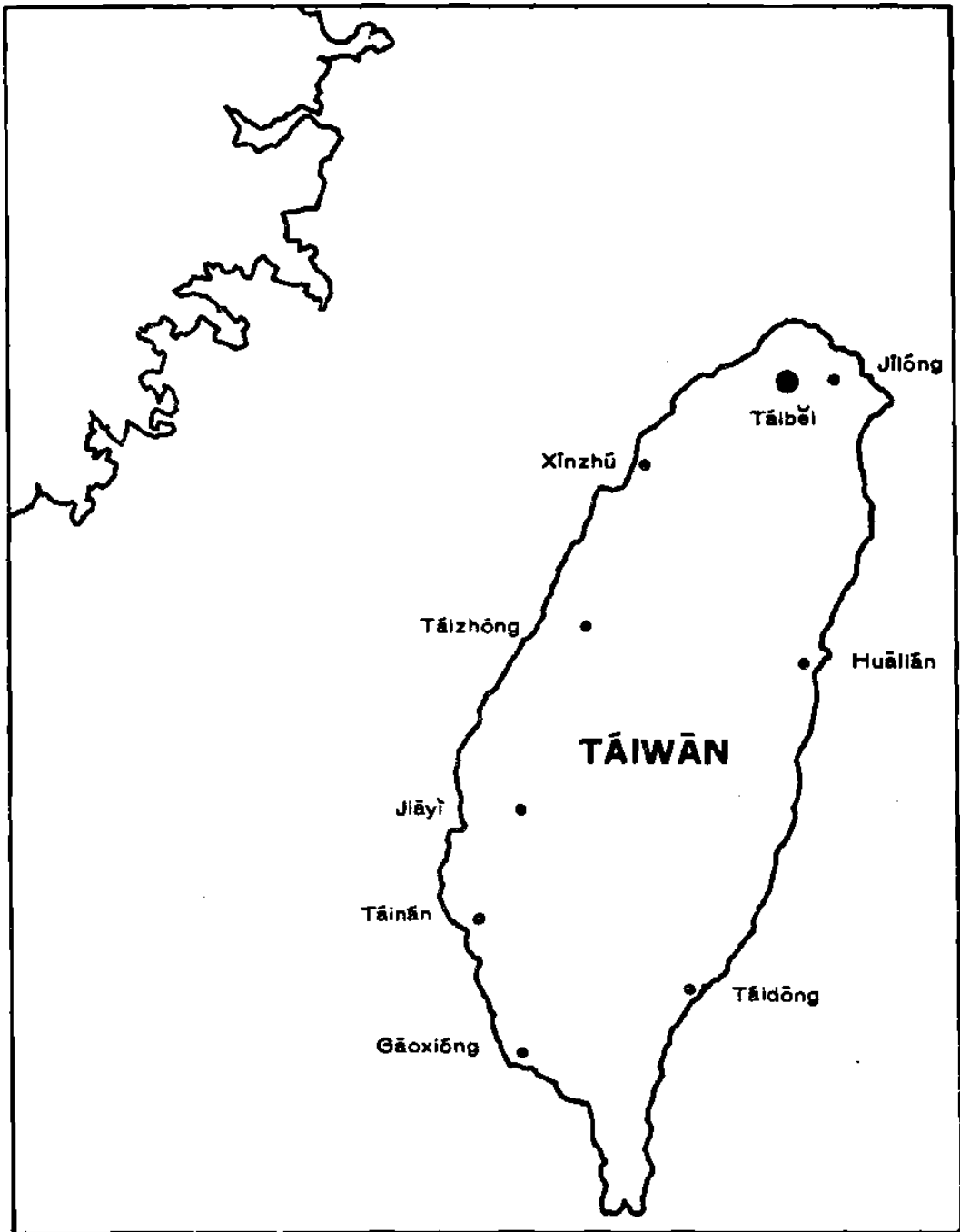
3. This section tests your ability to locate and name main cities and provinces in China. Using the map in your booklet, point out to your instructor five cities and five provinces and name them. Pronunciation is of secondary importance here.
4. This section tests your ability to produce sentences in Chinese. Your instructor will say an English sentence from the Target Lists, and you translate it into Chinese. Your Chinese sentence must “be correct,” both in grammar and in content.
5. This section tests your ability to make conversational use of the material covered in this module. Although limited in scope, this conversation between you and your instructor represents a situation which you are likely to encounter in the real world. As in any conversation, you are free to ask for a repetition or rephrasing of a sentence, or you may volunteer information on the subject. It is not so much the correctness of your pronunciation and grammar that is being tested as it is your ability to communicate effectively.

# Appendices

## Appendix 1: Map of China



## Appendix 2: Map of Taiwan



## **Appendix 3: Countries and Regions**

## Appendix 4: American States

Alabama	阿拉巴马	Ālābāmǎ
Alaska	阿拉斯加	Ālāsījiā
Arizona	亚利桑那	Yàlīsāngnà
Arkansas	阿肯色	Ākěnsè, Akānsàsī
California	加州, 加利福尼亚	Jiāzhōu, Jiālìfóniyà
Colorado	科罗拉多	Kēluólādūō
Connecticut	康涅狄格, 康乃狄克	Kāngnièdígé, Kāngnǎidígé
Delaware	特拉华	Tèlāhuá, Délāwēi (ěr)
Florida	佛罗里达	Fóluólídá
Georgia	乔治亚, 佐治亚	Qióozhiyà, Zuǒzhiyà
Hawaii	夏威夷	Xiàwēiyí
Idaho	爱达荷	Àidáhé
Illinois	伊利诺	Yīlínuò (sī)
Indiana	印第安纳	Yīndiànnà
Iowa	爱奥华	Yīāhuá, Àiāhuá
Kansas	堪萨斯	Kānsàsī
Kentucky	肯塔基	Kěntǎjī
Louisiana	路易斯安那	Lùyìsīānnà
Maine	缅因	Miǎnyīn
Maryland	马里兰	Mǎlìlán
Massachusetts	马萨诸塞	Māsāzhūsài, Mǎshèng
Michigan	密歇根,	Mìxiēgēn, Mìzhīān
Minnesota	明尼苏达	Míngnīsūdá
Mississippi	密西西比	Mìxīxībǐ
Missouri	密苏里	Mìsūlǐ
Montana	蒙大纳	Méngdànà
Nebraska	内布拉斯加	Nèibùlāsījiā
Nevada	内华达	Nèihuádá
New Hampshire	新罕布什尔	Xīn Hānbùshìěr, Xīn Hānbùxià
New Jersey	新泽西	Xīn Zéxī
New Mexico	新墨西哥	Xīn Mòxīgē

New York	纽约	Niūyuē
North Carolina	北卡罗来纳	Běi Kǎluóláinà, Běi Kǎluólínnà
North Dakota	北达科他	Běi Dákētā, Běi Dákēdá
Ohio	俄亥俄	Éhàié
Oklahoma	俄克拉荷马	Ékèlāhémǎ, Ākèlāhémǎ
Oregon	俄勒冈	Élègāng
Pennsylvania	宾州, 宾夕法尼亚, 宾西法尼亚	Bīnxhōu, Bīnxīfǎníyà, Bīnxīfǎnīyà
Rhode Island	罗得岛	Luódé Dǎo, Luódéàilán
South Carolina	南卡罗来纳	Nán Kǎluóláinà, Nán Kǎluólínnà
South Dakota	南达科他	Nán Dákētā
Tennessee	田纳西	Tiánnàxī
Texas	得克萨斯	Dézhōu, Dékèsàsī
Utah	犹他	Yóutā, Yōuta
Vermont	佛蒙特	Wēiméngtè, Fóméngtè
Virginia	维吉尼亚, 弗吉尼亚	Wēijīníyà, Fójīníyà
Washington	华盛顿	Huáshèngdùn
West Virginia	西弗吉尼亚	Xī Fójīníyà
Wisconsin	威斯康星	Wēisīkāngxīn(g)
Wyoming	怀俄明	Huáiyémíng



## Appendix 5: Canadian Provinces

Alberta	阿尔伯塔, 艾伯塔	(Yǎbódá) Ā'ěrbótǎ, Àibótǎ
British Columbia	英属哥伦比亚	Yīngshǔ Gēlúnbǐyà
Manitoba	马尼托巴	Mǎnnítuōbā
New Brunswick	新不伦瑞克	Xīn Bùlúnzīwéikè
Newfoundland	纽芬兰与拉布拉多	Niǔfēnlándǎo
Northwest Territories	西北领地	Xīběilíngdì
Nova Scotia	新斯科舍	Xīn Sīkès hè
Ontario	安大略省	Āndàlüè
Prince Edward Island	爱德华岛	Àidéhuádǎo
Quebec	魁北克	Kuīběikè
Saskatchewan	萨克其万, 萨斯喀彻温	Sàkèqíwàn, Sàsīkāchewēn
Yukon	育空	Yùkōng

## Appendix 6: Common Chinese Names

### Note

Wikipedia has a nice page about Chinese names, more complete than this short list. Take a look here: [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List\\_of\\_common\\_Chinese\\_surnames#Mainland\\_China,\\_Hong\\_Kong,\\_Macau,\\_and\\_Taiwan](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_common_Chinese_surnames#Mainland_China,_Hong_Kong,_Macau,_and_Taiwan)

Surnames					
Huáng	黄	Zhōu	周	Liú	刘
Wáng	王	Jiāng	江	Chén	陈
Zhāng	张	Jiǎng	蒋	Yáng	杨
Lǐ	李	Gāo	高	Sīmǎ	司马
Zhào	赵	Lín	林	Oūyáng	欧阳
Máo	毛	Sūn	孙	Hú	胡
Táng	唐	Sòng	宋	Wú	吴
Mǎ	马	Fāng	方	Liáng	梁
Qián	钱	Zēng	曾	Hé	何

Given names (male)					
Dá lǐ	达礼	Yǒng píng	永平	Shào wén	绍文
Míng lǐ	明理	Zì qiáng	自强	Shì yīng	世英
Dà nián	大年	Jié	杰	Tíng fēng	廷峰
Shì mǐn	世民	Zhī yuǎn	知远	Chéng	诚
Huá	华	Guó quán	国权	Zhèn hàn	振汉
Dé xián	德贤				

Given names (female)					
Juān	娟	Huì wén	蕙文	Mǐn zhēn	敏贞
Lì róng	丽容	Dé fēn	德芬	Huì rán	蕙然
Wǎn rú	婉如	Lù	露	Bīng yíng	冰莹
Xiù fēng	秀风	Yù zhēn	玉珍	Zǐ yàn	紫燕
Qiǎo yún	巧云	Měi lì	美丽		

## Appendix 7: Chinese Provinces

Pinyin spelling	Chinese spelling	Map spelling
Ānhuī	安徽	Anhwei
Fújiàn	福建	Fukien
Gānsù	甘肃	Kansu
Guǎngdōng	广东	Kvangtung
Guānzhōu	官洲岛	Kvangsi
Guǐzhōu	贵州	Kveìchou
Hébuǐ/Héběi	河北	Hopeh
Hēilóngjiāng	黑龙江	Heilungkiang
Hénán	河南	Honan
Húběi	湖北	Hupeh
Húnán	湖南	Hunan
Jiāngsū	江苏	Kiangsu
Jiāngxī	江西	Kiangsi
Jílín	吉林	Kirin
Liáoníng	辽宁	Liaoning
Nèiměnggǔ	内蒙古	Inner Mongolia
Níngxià	宁夏	Ninghai
Qīnghǎi	青海	Tsinghai
Shāndōng	山东	Shantung
Shānxī	山西	Shansi
Shǎnxī	陕西	Shensi
Sīchuān	四川	Szechuan
Táiwān	台湾	Taiwan
Xīnjiāng	新疆	Xinjiang
Xīzàng	西藏	Tibet
Yúnnán	云南	Yunnan
Zhèjiāng	浙江	Chekiang

## Appendix 8: Chinese Cities

Pinyin spelling	Chinese spelling	Map spelling
Běijīng	北京	Peking
Chángshā	长沙	Ch'ang-sha
Chéngdū	成都	Ch'eng-tu
Dàtóng	大同	Ta-t'ung
Gāoxióng	高雄	Kao-hsiung
Guǎngzhōu	广州	Canton
Hángzhōu	杭州	Hang-chou
Hánkǒu	汉口	Han-k'ou
Hǎinán	海南	Huai-nan
Jīlóng	基隆	Chi-lung
Kāifēng	开封	K'ai-feng
Nánchāng	南昌	Nan-ch'ang
Nánjīng	南京	Nanking
Qīngdǎo	青岛	Tsingtao
Shànghǎi	上海	Shanghai
Táiběi	台北	Taipei
Táidōng	台东	T'ai-tung
Táinán	台南	T'ai-nan
Táizhōng	台中	T'ai-chung
Tiānjīn	天津	Tientsin
Wúchāng	武昌	Wu-ch'ang
Wǔhàn	武汉	Wu-han
Xiān	西安	Sian

---

# Chapter 2. Module 2: Biographic Information

The Biographic Information Module provides you with linguistic and cultural skills needed for a simple conversation typical of a first-meeting situation in China. These skills include those needed at the beginning of a conversation (greetings, introductions, and forms of address), in the middle of a conversation (understanding and answering questions about yourself and your immediate family), and at the end of a conversation (leave-taking).

Before starting this module, you must take and pass the ORN Criterion Test. The resource modules Pronunciation and Romanization and Numbers (tapes 1-4) are also prerequisites to the BIO Module.

The Criterion Test will focus largely on this module, but material from Module 1 and associated resource modules may also be included.

## Objectives

Upon successful completion of the module, the student should be able to:

1. Pronounce correctly any word from the Target Lists of ORN or BIO, properly distinguishing sounds and tones, using the proper stress and neutral tones, and making the necessary tone changes.
2. Pronounce correctly any sentence from the BIO Target Lists, with proper pauses and intonation, that is, without obscuring the tones with English intonation.
3. Use polite formulas in asking and answering questions about identity (name), health, age, and other basic information.
4. Reply to questions with the Chinese equivalents of “yes” and “no”
5. Ask and answer questions about families, including who the members are, how old they are, and where they are.
6. Ask and answer questions about a stay in China, including the date of arrival, location-purpose-duration of stay, previous visits, traveling companions, and date of departure.
7. Ask and answer questions about work or study, identification of occupation, the location, and the duration.
8. Give the English equivalent for any Chinese sentence in the BIO Target Lists.
9. Be able to say any Chinese sentence in the BIO Target Lists when cued with its English equivalent.
10. Take part in a short Chinese conversation, using expressions included in the BIO Target List sentences.

## Tapes for BIO and associated modules

### Biographic information (BIO)

Unit 1:	1	C-1	1 P-1	1&2 D-1	1 C-2	1 P-2
Unit 2:	2	C-1	2 P-1		2 C-2	2 P-2
Unit 3:	3	C-1	3 P-1	3&4 D-1	3 C-2	3 P-2
Unit 4:	4	C-1	4 P-1		4 C-2	4 P-2
Unit 5:	5	C-1	5 P-1	5&6 D-1	5 C-2	5 P-2
Unit 6:	6	C-1	6 P-1		6 C-2	6 P-2
Unit 7:	7	C-1	7 P-1	7&8 D-1	7C-2	7 P-2
Unit 8:	8	C-1	8 P-1		8 C-2	8 P-2

Units 1–4 R-1

Units 5–8 R-1

### Classroom Expressions (CE)

CE 2

### Time and Dates (T&D)

T&D 1 T&D 2

## Unit 1 Target List

1. Qǐngwèn, nǐ zhù zai nǎr?

请问，你住在哪儿？

May I ask, where are you staying?

Wǒ zhù zai Běijīng Fàndiàn.

我住在北京饭店。

I'm staying at the Běijīng Hotel.

2. Nǐ zhù zai nǎige fàndiàn?

你住在哪个饭店？

Which hotel are you staying at?

Wǒ zhù zai nàige fàndiàn.

我住在那个饭店。

I'm staying at that hotel.

3. Nǐ zhù zai zhèige fàndiàn ma?

你住在这个饭店吗？

Are you staying at this hotel?

Bù, wǒ bú zhù zai zhèige fàndiàn.

不，我不住在这个饭店。

No, I'm not staying at this hotel.

4. Nǐ zhù zai Mínnú Fàndiàn ma?

你住在民族饭店吗？

Are you staying at the Nationalities Hotel?

Bù, wǒ bú zhù zai Mínnú Fàndiàn.

不，我不住在民族饭店。

No, I'm not staying at the Nationalities Hotel.

5. Nǎiwèi shi Gāo tóngzhi?

哪位是高同志？

Which one is Comrade Gāo

Nǎiwèi shi Gāo tóngzhi.

那位是高同志。

That one is Comrade Gāo.

6. Zǎo. Nuòwǎkè nǚshì! Nín hǎo.

早。诺瓦克女士！您好。

Good morning. Ms. Nowak! How are you?

Wǒ hěn hǎo.

我很好。

I'm very well.

7. Qīnwèn, nǐ shì Měiguó nǎrde rén?

请问，你是美国哪儿个人。

Where are you from in America?

Wǒ shì Jiāzhōu Jiùjīnshān rén.

我是加州旧金山人。

I'm from San Francisco, California.



## Unit 2 Target List

1. Nǐ péngyou jiā zài nǎlǐ?

你朋友家在哪里？

Where is your friend's house?

Tā jiā zài Dàlǐ Jiē.

他家在大理街。

His house is on Dàlǐ street.

2. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì ...?

你朋友的地址是……？

What is your friend's address?

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dàlǐ Jiē Sìshíèr hào.

他的地址是大理街四十二号。

His address is No. 42 Dàlǐ Street.

3. Nǐ shì Wèi shàoxiào ba?

你是魏少校把？

You are Major Weiss, aren't you?

Shìde.

是的。

Yes.

4. Nà shì Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn ba?

那是国宾大饭店吧？

That is Ambassador Hotel, isn't it?

Shìde, nà shì Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn.

是的，那是国宾大饭店。

Yes, that's the Ambassador Hotel.

Nǐ zhù zài nàlǐ ma?

你住在那里吗？

Are you staying there?

Bù, wǒ zhù zài zhèlǐ.

不，我住在这里。

No, I'm staying here.

5. Nǐ péngyou zài Táiběi gōngzuò ma?

你朋友在台北工作吗？

Does your friend work in Taipei?

Tā bù zài Táiběi gōngzuò; tā zài Táizhōng gōngzuò.

他不在台北工作。他在台中工作。

He doesn't work in Taipei; he works in Taichung.

6. Nǐ zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?

你在哪里工作？

Where do you work?

Wǒ zài Wǔguānchù gōngzuò.

我在武官处工作。

I work at the defense attache's office.

Wǒ zài yínháng gōngzuò.

我在银行工作。

I work at a bank.

## Unit 3 Target List

1. Nǐmen yǒu hái zi ma?

你们有孩子吗？

Do you have any children?

Yǒu, wǒmen yǒu.

有，我们有。

Yes, we have.

2. Liú xiānsheng méiyǒu Měiguó péngyou.

刘先生没有美国朋友。

Mr. Liú doesn't have any American friends.

3. Nǐmen yǒu jǐge nánháizi, jǐge nǚháizi?

你们有几个男孩子，几个女孩子？

How many boys and how many girls do you have?

Wǒmen yǒu liǎnge nánháizi, yíge nǚháizi.

我们有两个男孩子，一个女孩子。

We have two boys and one girl.

4. Hú xiānsheng, Hú tàitai yǒu jǐge hái zi?

胡先生，胡太太有几个孩子？

How many children do Mr. and Mrs. Hú have?

Tāmen yǒu liǎngge hái zi.

他们有两个孩子。

They have two children.

Shì nánháizi, shì nǚháizi?

是男孩子，是女孩子？

Are they boys or girls?

Dōu shì nǚháizi.

都是女孩子。

Both of them are girls.

5. Nǐmen hái zi dōu zài zhèlǐ ma?

你们孩子都在这里吗？

Are all your children here?

Bù. Liǎngge zài zhèlǐ, yíge hái zài Měiguó.

不，两个在这里，一个还在美国。

No. Two are here, and one is still in America.

6. Nǐ jiāli yǒu shénme rén?

你家里有什么人？

What people are in your family?

Yǒu wǒ tàitai gēn sānge háizi.

有我太太跟三个孩子。

There's my wife and two children.

7. Nǐ jiāli yǒu shénme rén?

你家里有什么人？

What people are in your family?

Jiù yǒu wǒ fùqin, mǔqin.

就有我父亲，母亲。

Just my father and mother.

## Unit 4 Target List

1. Tā míngtiān lái ma?

他明天来吗？

Is he coming tomorrow?

Tā yǐjīng lái le.

他已经来了。

He has already come.

2. Nǐ péngyou lái le ma?

你朋友来了吗？

Has your friend come?

Tā hái méi(you) lái.

她还没(有)来。

She hasn't come yet.

3. Tā shì shénme shíhòu dào de?

他是什么时候到的？

When did he arrive?

Tā shì zuótiān dào de.

他是昨天到的。

He arrived yesterday.

4. Nǐ shì yíge rén lái de ma?

你是一个人来的吗？

Did you come alone?

Bú shì, wǒ bú shì yíge rén lái de.

不是，我不是一个人来的。

No, I didn't come alone.

5. Nǐ nǎitiān zǒu?

你哪天走？

What day are you leaving?

Wǒ jīntiān zǒu.

我今天走。

I'm leaving today.

## Unit 5 Target List

1. Nǐ shì zài nǎr shēngde?

你是在哪儿生的？

Where were you born?

Wǒ shì zài Dézhōu shēngde.

我是在得州生的。

I was born in Texas.

2. Nǐmen xīngqījǐ zǒu?

你们星期几走？

What day of the week are you leaving?

Wǒmen Xīngqītiān zǒu.

我们星期天走。

We are leaving on Sunday.

3. Nǐ shì nǎinián shēngde?

你是哪年生的？

What year were you born?

Wǒ shì yī jiǔ sān jiǔ nián shēngde.

我是一九三九年生的。

I was born in 1939.

4. Nǐ shì jǐ yuè jǐ hào shēngde?

你是几月几号生的？

What is your month and day of birth?

Wǒ shì qī yuè sì hào shēngde.

我是七月四号生的。

I was born on July 4.

5. Nǐ duō dà le?

你多大了？

How old are you?

Wǒ sān shí wǔ le.

我三十五了。

I'm 35.

6. Nǐmēn nánháizi dōu jǐsui le?

你们男孩子都几岁了？

How old are your boys?

Yíge jiǔsui le, yíge liùsui le.

一个九岁了，一个六岁了。

One is nine and one is six.



## Unit 6 Target List

1. Nǐ zhù duó jiǔ?

你住多久？

How long are you staying?

Wǒ zhù yínián.

我住一年。

I'm staying one year.

2. Nǐ tàitai zài Xiānggǎng zhù duó jiǔ?

你太太在香港住多久？

How long is your wife staying in Hong Kong?

Wǒ xiǎng tā zhù liǎngtiān.

我想她住两天。

I think she is staying two days.

3. Nǐ xiǎng zài Táiwān zhù duó jiǔ?

你想在台湾住多久？

How long are you thinking of staying in Taiwan?

Wǒ xiǎng zhù liùge yuè.

我想住六个月。

I'm thinking of staying six months.

4. Nǐ lái le duó jiǔ le?

你来了多久了？

How long have you been here?

Wǒ lái le liǎngge xīnqī le.

我来了两个星期。

I have been here two weeks.

5. Nǐ tàitai zài Xiānggǎng zhù le duó jiǔ?

你太太在香港住了多久？

How long did your wife stay in Hong Kong?

Tā zhù le liǎngtiān.

她住了两天。

She stayed two days.

6. Lǐ tàitai méi lái.

李太太没来。

Mrs. Lǐ didn't come.

7. Nǐ cóngqián láiguó ma?

你从前来过吗？

Have you ever been here before?

Wǒ cóngqián méi láiguó. Wǒ tàitai láiguó.

我从前没来过。我太太来过。

I have never been here before. My wife has been here.

## Unit 7 Target List

1. Nín zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?  
您在哪里工作?  
Where do you work?  
  
Wǒ zài Měiguó Guówùyuàn gōngzuò.  
我在美国国务院工作。  
I work with the State Department.
2. Nǐ zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?  
您在哪里工作?  
Where do you work?  
  
Wǒ shì xuéshēng.  
我是学生。  
I'm student.
3. Nǐ lái zuò shénme?  
您来做什么?  
What did you come here to do?  
  
Wǒ lái niàn shū.  
我来念书。  
I came here to study.
4. Nǐ niàn shénme?  
你念什么?  
What are you studying?  
  
Wǒ xué Zhōngwén.  
我学中文。  
I'm studying Chinese.
5. Nǐ zài dàxué niànguó lìshǐ ma?  
你在大学念过历史吗?  
Did you study history in college?  
  
Niànguó.

念过。

Yes.

6. Nǐmen huì shuō Zhōngwén ma?

你们会说中文吗？

Can you speak Chinese?

Wǒ tàitai bú huì shuō, wǒ huì shuō yídiǎn.

我太太不会说，我会说一点。

My wife can't speak it; I can speak it a little.

7. Nǐ de Zhōngguó huà hěn hǎo.

你的中国话很好。

Your Chinese is very good.

Náli, náli. Wǒ jiù huì shuō yídiǎn.

哪里，哪里。我就说一点。

Not at all. I can speak only a little.

8. Nǐ shì zài nǎlǐ xuéde Zhōngzén?

你是在哪里学的中文？

Where did you study Chinese?

Wó shì zài Huáshèngdùn xuéde.

我是在华盛顿学的。

I studied it in Washington.

## Unit 8 Target List

1. Nǐ jīntiān hái yǒu kè ma?

你今天还有课吗？

Do you have any more classes today?

Méiyǒu kè le.

没有课了。

I don't have any more classes.

2. Nǐ cóngqián niàn Yīngwén niànle duō jiǔ?

你从前念英文念了多久？

How long did you study English?

Wǒ niàn Yīngwén niànle liùnián.

我念英文念了六年。

I studied English for six years.

3. Nǐ niàn Fàwén niànle duō jiǔ le?

你念法文念了多久了？

How long have you been studying French?

Wǒ niànle yínián le.

我念了一年了。

I've been studying it for one year.

4. Qùnián wǒ hái bú huì xiě Zhōngguó zì.

去年我还不会写中国字。

Last year, I couldn't write Chinese characters.

Xiànzài wǒ huì xiě yídiǎn le.

现在我会写一点了。

Now, I can write a little.

5. Nǐ fùqīn shì jūnrén ma?

你父亲是军人吗？

Is your father a military man?

Shì, tā shì hǎijūn jūnguān.

是，他是海军军官。

Yes, he's a naval officer.

6. Wǒ jīntiān bù lái le.

我今天不来了。

I'm not coming today.

Wǒ bìng le.

我病了。

I'm sick.

7. Jīntiān hǎo le méiyǒu?

今天好了没有？

Are you better today?

Jīntiān hǎo le.

今天好了。

Today, I'm better.

# Unit 1

## Introduction

### Topics covered in this unit

1. Where people are staying (hotels),
2. Short answers.
3. The question word *něige*, “which.”

### Material you will need

1. The C-1 and P-1 tapes, the Reference List and Reference Notes.
2. The C-2 and P-2 tapes, the Workbook.
3. The drill tape (1D-1).

## References

### Reference List

(in Běijīng)

1. A: Qǐngwèn, nǐ zhù zai nǎr?  
请问，你朱在哪儿？  
May I ask, where are you staying?  
B: Wǒ zhù zai Běijīng Fàndiàn.  
握住在北京饭店。  
I'm staying at the Beijing Hotel.
2. A: Nǐ zhù zai Mínzú Fàndiàn ma?  
你住在民族饭店吗？  
Are you staying at the Nationalities Hotel?  
B: Shì, wǒ zhù zai Mínzú Fàndiàn.  
是，我住在民族饭店吗。  
Yes, I'm staying at the Nationalities Hotel.
3. A: Nǐ zhù zai nǎige fàndiàn?  
你住在哪个饭店？  
Which hotel are you staying at?  
B: Wǒ zhù zai Běijīng Fàndiàn.  
我住在北京饭店。  
I'm staying ate the Beijing Hotel.
4. A: Nǎiwèi shì Zhāng tóngzhì?  
哪位是张同志？  
Which one is Comrade Zhāng?  
B: Tā shì Zhāng tóngzhì.  
他是张同志。  
She is Comrade Zhāng.
5. A: Nǎige rén shì Méi tóngzhì?  
哪个人是梅同志？  
Which person is Comrade Méi?  
B: Nèige rén shì Méi tóngzhì.  
那个人是梅同志。



That person is Comrade Méi.

6. A: Nēiwei shi Gāo tóngzhì?

哪位是高同志。

Which one is Comrade Gāo?

B: Nèiwèi shi Gāo tóngzhì.

那位是高同志。

That one is Comrade Gāo.

7.<sup>a</sup> A: Nǐ zhù zai zheige fàndiàn ma?

你住在这个饭店吗？

Are you staying at this hotel?

B: Bù, wǒ bú zhù zai zheige fàndiàn.

不，我不住在这个饭店。

No, I'm staying at this hotel.

8. A: Jiāng tóngzhì! nín zǎo.

江同志！您早。

Comrade Jiāng! Good morning.

B: Zǎo. Nuòwǎkè nǚshì! nín hǎo.

早。诺瓦克女士！您好。

Good morning, Ms. Novak! How are you?

A: Wǒ hěn hǎo.

### Tone sandhi

There is a one sandhi shift here for 2 3rd tones in a row to hén hǎo.

我很好

I'm very well.

9. A: Qǐngwèn, nǐ shi Měiguó nǎrde rén?

请问，你是美国哪儿人？

May I ask, where are you from in America?

B: Wǒ shi Jiāzhōu Jiùjīnshān rén.

我是加州旧金山人。

I'm from San Francisco, California.

<sup>a</sup>This exchange occurs on the C-I tape only.

## Vocabulary

fàndiàn	饭店	hotel
-ge	个	general counter
hěn	很	very
Jiùjīnshān	旧金山	San Francisco
Mínzú Fàndiàn	民族饭店	Nationalities Hotel
něi-	哪-?	which
něige?	哪个?	which?
nèige	那个	that
něiwei	哪位?	which one (person)?
nèiwèi	那位	that one (person)
nǚshì	女士	polite title for a married or unmarried woman) Ms.; Lady
shì	是	yes, that's so.
-wèi	位	polite counter for people
zǎo	早	good morning
zhèi-	这-	this
zhèige	这个	this
zhèiwèi	这位	this one (person)
zhù	住	to stay, to live

## Reference Notes

### Notes on № 1

1. A: Qǐngwèn, nǐ zhù zài nǎr?  
请问，你住在哪儿？  
May I ask, where are you staying?
- B: Wǒ zhù zài Běijīng Fàndiàn.  
我住在北京饭店。  
I'm staying at the Běijīng Hotel.

The verb **zhù**, “to live,” or “to reside,” may be used to mean “to stay at” (temporary residence) or “to live in” (permanent residence).

**Zhù zài nǎr** literally means “live at where.” The verb **zài**, “to be in/at/on,” is used here as a preposition “at.” It loses its tone in this position in a sentence. (The use of **zài** as a preposition is treated more fully in Unit 2.)

**Fàndiàn** has two meanings—“restaurant” and “hotel” (a relatively large hotel with modern facilities).<sup>1</sup> Literally, **fàndiàn** means “rice shop.”

<sup>1</sup>Another word for “restaurant” is **fànguǎnzi**. The general word for “hotel” is **lǚguǎn**.

## Notes on № 2

2.     A:    Nǐ zhù zài Mínzú Fàndiàn ma?  
          你住在民族饭店吗？  
          Are you staying at the Nationalities Hotel?
- B:    Shì, wǒ zhù zài Mínzú Fàndiàn.  
          是，我住在民族饭店。  
          Yes, I'm staying at the Nationalities Hotel.

**Shì:** The usual way to give a short affirmative answer is to repeat the verb used in the question. Some verbs, however, may not be repeated as short answers. **Zhù** is one such verb. Others not to be used are **xìng**, “to be surnamed,” and **jiào**, “to be given-named.” Many speakers do not repeat the verb **zài** as a short answer. To give a short “yes” answer to questions containing these verbs, you use **shì**.

Notes on № 3–7

3. A: Nǐ zhù zài nǎige fàndiàn?  
你住在哪个饭店？  
Which hotel are you staying at?  
B: Wǒ zhù zài Běijīng Fàndiàn.  
我住在北京饭店。  
I'm staying at the Beijing Hotel.
4. A: Nǎiwèi shì Zhāng tóngzhì?  
哪位是张同志？  
Which one is Comrade Zhāng?  
B: Tā shì Zhāng tóngzhì.  
他是张同志。  
She is Comrade Zhāng.
5. A: Nǎige rén shì Méi tóngzhì?  
哪个人是梅同志？  
Which person is Comrade Méi?  
B: Nàige rén shì Méi tóngzhì.  
那个人是梅同志。  
That person is Comrade Méi.
6. A: Nǎiwèi shì Gāo tóngzhì?  
哪位是高同志。  
Which one is Comrade Gāo?  
B: Nǎiwèi shì Gāo tóngzhì.  
那位是高同志。  
That one is Comrade Gāo.
7. A: Nǐ zhù zài zhèige fàndiàn ma?  
你住在这个饭店吗？  
Are you staying at this hotel?  
B: Bù, wǒ bú zhù zài zhèige fàndiàn.  
不，我不住在这个饭店。  
No, I'm staying at this hotel.

Nǎige is the question word “which.” In the compound nǎiguó, you found the bound word nǎi-, which was attached to the noun guó. In the phrase nǎiguó rén, “which person,” the bound word nǎi- is attached to the general counter -ge. (You will learn more about counters in Unit 3. For now, you may think of -ge as an ending which turns the bound word nǎi- into the full word nǎige.)

**Něige rén/něiwèi:** To be polite when referring to an adult, you say **něiwèi** or **něiwèi**, using the polite counter for people **-wèi** rather than the general counter **-ge**, though **-ge** is used in many informal situations.

Notice that the noun **rén** is not used directly after **-wèi**:

Něiwèi	Měiguó rén	shì shéi?
那位	美国人	是谁
Něiwèi		zhù zài Mínpú Fàndiàn.
哪位		住在民族饭店。

Compare the specifying words “which?” “that,” and “this” with the location words you learned in Unit 4 of ORN:

Specifying words		Location words	
něige? (nǎge?)	which?	nǎr?	where?
哪个		哪儿	
nèige (nàge)	that	nàr (nèr)	there
那个		那儿	
zhèige (zhège)	this	zhèr (zhàr)	here
这个		这儿	

Both question words are in the Low tone, while the other four words are in the Falling tone.

Many people pronounce the words for “which?” “that,” and “this” with the usual vowels for “where?” “there,” and “here”: **nǎge?** **nàge**, and **zhège**.

**Bù:** A short negative answer is usually formed by **bù** plus a repetition of the verb used in the question. When a verb, like **zhù (zài)**, cannot be repeated, **bù** is used as a short answer and is followed by a complete answer. Notice that when used by itself **bù** is in the Falling tone, but when followed by a Falling tone syllable **bù** is in the Rising tone.

**Bù, tā xiànzài bú zài zhèr.** No, he’s not here now.

## Notes on № 8

8. A: Jiāng tóngzhì! Nín zǎo.  
江同志！您早。  
Comrade Jiang! Good morning.
- B: Zǎo. Nuòwǎkè nǚshì! nín hǎo.  
早。诺瓦克女士！您好。  
Good morning, Ms. Novak! How are you?

**Name as greeting:** A greeting may consist simply of a person's name: *Wáng tóngzhì!* “Comrade *Wáng!*” The name may also be used with a greeting phrase: *Wáng tóngzhì! Nín zǎo.* “Comrade *Wáng!* Good morning.”—or, in reverse order, *Nín zǎo. Wáng tóngzhì!* “Good morning. Comrade *Wáng!*” The name is pronounced as an independent exclamation acknowledging that person's presence and status. It is not de-emphasized like “Comrade *Wáng,*” in the English sentence “Good morning, Comrade *Wáng.*”

*Nín zǎo* means “good morning”—literally, “you are early.” You may also say either *nǐ zǎo* or simply *zǎo*.

*Nǚshì*, “Ms.,” is a formal, respectful title for a married or unmarried woman. It is used after a woman's own surname, not her husband's. Traditionally, this title was used for older, educated, and accomplished women.

In the PRC, where people use *tóngzhì*, “Comrade,” in general only foreign women are referred to and addressed as (so-and-so) *nǚshì*. On Taiwan, however, any woman may be called (so-and-so) *nǚshì* in a formal context, such as a speech or an invitation.

*Nín hǎo*: This greeting may be said either with or without a question marker, just as in English we say “How are you?” as a question or “How are you” as a simple greeting.

*Nǐ hǎo ma?* How are you?

*Nǐ hǎo.* How are you.

Also Just as in English, you may respond to the greeting by repeating it rather than giving an answer.

*Lǐ tóngzhì! Nín hǎo.* Comrade *Lǐ!* How are you.

*Nín hǎo. Gāo tóngzhì!* How are you. Comrade *Gāo!*

Literally, *hěn* means “very.” The word often accompanies adjectival verbs (like *hǎo*, “to be good”), adding little to their meaning. (See also Module 3, Unit 3.)

**How to identify yourself:** You have now learned several ways to introduce yourself. One simple, direct way is to extend your hand and state your name in Chinese—for instance, *Mǎ Mínglǐ*. Here are some other ways:

<i>Wǒ shì Mǎ Mínglǐ.</i>	I'm <i>Mǎ Mínglǐ</i> .
我是马明理。	
<i>Wǒ xìng Mǎ.</i>	My surname is <i>Mǎ</i> .
我姓马。	
<i>Wǒ xìng Mǎ, jiào Mǎ Mínglǐ.</i>	My surname is <i>Mǎ</i> ; I'm called <i>Mǎ Mínglǐ</i> .

我姓马，叫马明理。	
Wǒ de Zhōngguó míngzì jiào Mǎ Mínglǐ.	My Chinese name is Mǎ Mínglǐ.
我的中国名字叫马明理。	



Notes on № 9

9. A: Qǐngwèn, nǐ shì Měiguó nǎrde rén?  
 请问，你是美国哪儿的人？  
 May I ask, where are you from in America?
- B: Wǒ shì Jiāzhōu Jiùjīnshān rén.  
 我是加州旧金山人。  
 I'm from San Francisco, California.

**Order of place names:** Notice that *Jiāzhōu Jiùjīnshān* is literally “California, San Francisco.” In Chinese, the larger unit comes before the smaller. Similarly, in the question *Nǐ shì Měiguó nǎrde rén?* the name of the country comes before the question word *nǎr*, which is asking for a more detailed location. The larger unit is usually repeated in the answer:

Nǐ shì	Shāndōng	nǎr	-de	rén?
你是	山东	哪儿	的	人
Wǒ shì	Shāndōng	Qīngdǎo		rén.
我是	山东	青岛		人

Literally, *Jiùjīnshān* means “Old Gold Mountain.” The Chinese gave this name to San Francisco during the Gold Rush days.

## Drills

### Response drill

Give affirmative response to all questions.

1. Tā zhù zai nǎr?  
他/她住在哪儿?  
Where is he/she staying?

Cue Běijīng Fàndiàn  
北京饭店  
the Běijīng Hotel

Tā zhù zai Běijīng Fàndiàn.  
他/她住在北京饭店。  
He/she is staying at the Běijīng Hotel.

2. Nǐ àiren zhù zai nǎr?  
你爱人住在哪儿?  
Where is your spouse staying?

Cue Mínzú Fàndiàn  
民族饭店  
the Nationalities Hotel

Tā zhù zai Mínzú Fàndiàn.  
他/她住在民族饭店。  
He/she is staying at the Nationalities Hotel.

3. Lǐ tóngzhì zhù zai nǎr?  
李同志住在哪儿?  
Where is comrade Lǐ staying?

Cue zhèige fàndiàn  
这个饭店  
this hotel

Tā zhù zai zhèige fàndiàn.

他/她住在这个饭店。

He/she is staying at this hotel.

4. Fāng tóngzhì zhù zai nǎr?

方同志住在哪儿？

Where is comrade Fāng staying?

Cue

nèige fàndiàn

那个饭店

that hotel

Tā zhù zai nèige fàndiàn.

他/她住在那个饭店。

He/she is staying at that hotel.

5. Chén tóngzhì zhù zai nǎr?

陈同志住在哪儿？

Where is comrade Chén staying?

Cue

Běijīng Fàndiàn

北京饭店

the Běijīng Hotel

Tā zhù zai Běijīng Fàndiàn.

他/她住在北京饭店。

He/she is staying at the Běijīng Hotel.

6. Lín tóngzhì zhù zai nǎr?

林同志住在哪儿？

Where is comrade Lín staying?

Cue

Mínzú Fàndiàn

民族饭店

the Nationalities Hotel

Tā zhù zai Mínzú Fàndiàn.

他/她住在民族饭店。

He/she is staying at the Nationalities Hotel.

7. Huáng tóngzhì zhù zai nǎr?

黄同志住在哪儿？

Where is comrade **Huáng** staying?

Cue

zhèige fàndiàn

这个饭店

this hotel

Tā zhù zai zhèige fàndiàn.

他/她住在这个饭店。

He/she is staying at this hotel.

## Response drill

Give affirmative response to all questions.

1. Gāo nǚshì zhù zài Mínzú Fàndiàn ma?

高女士住在民族饭店吗？

Is Ms. Gāo staying at the Nationalities Hotel?

Shì, tā zhù zài Mínzú Fàndiàn.

是，她住在民族饭店。

Yes, she is staying at the Nationalities Hotel.

2. Zhāng nǚshì zhù zài Běijīng Fàndiàn ma?

张女士住在北京饭店吗？

Is Ms. Zhāng staying at the Běijīng Hotel?

Shì, tā zhù zài Běijīng Fàndiàn.

是，她住在北京饭店。

Yes, she is staying at the Běijīng Hotel.

3. Jiāng nǚshì zhù zài zhèige fàndiàn ma?

江女士住在这个饭店吗？

Is Ms. Jiāng staying at this hotel?

Shì, tā zhù zài zhèige fàndiàn.

是，她住在这个饭店。

Yes, she is staying at this hotel.

4. Huáng nǚshì zhù zài nèige fàndiàn ma?

黄女士住在那个饭店吗？

Is Ms. Huáng staying at that hotel?

Shì, tā zhù zài nèige fàndiàn.

是，她住在那个饭店。

Yes, she is staying at that hotel.

5. Wáng nǚshì zhù zài Běijīng Fàndiàn ma?

王女士住在北京饭店吗？

Is Ms. Wáng staying at the Běijīng Hotel?

Shì, tā zhù zài Běijīng fàndiàn.

是，她住在北京饭店。

Yes, she is staying at the Běijīng Hotel.

6. Lín nǚshì zhù zài Mínzú Fàndiàn ma?

林女士住在民族饭店吗？

Is Ms. Lín staying at the Nationalities Hotel?

Shì, tā zhù zài Mínzú Fàndiàn,

是，她住在民族饭店。

Yes, she is staying at the Nationalities Hotel.

7. Máo nǚshì zhù zài zhèige fàndiàn ma?

毛女士住在这个饭店吗？

Is Ms. Máo staying at this hotel?

Shì, tā zhù zài zhèige fàndiàn.

是，她住在这个饭店。

Yes, she is staying at this hotel.

## Response drill

Give negative response to all questions.

1. Jiāng xiānsheng zhù zài zhège fàndiàn ma?

江先生住在这个饭店吗？

Is Mr. Jiāng staying at this hotel?

Bú shì, tā bú zhù zài zhège fàndiàn.

不是，他不住在这个饭店。

No, he is not staying at this hotel.

2. Mǎ xiānsheng zhù zài nàge fàndiàn ma?

马先生住在那个饭店吗？

Is Mr. Mǎ staying at that hotel?

Bú shì, tā bú zhù zài nàge fàndiàn.

不是，他不住在那个饭店。

No, he is not staying at that hotel.

3. Lǐ xiānsheng zhù zài Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn ma?

李先生住在国宾大饭店吗？

Is Mr. Lǐ staying at the Ambassador Hotel?

Bú shì, tā bú zhù zài Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn.

不是，他不住在国宾大饭店。

No, he is not staying at the Ambassador Hotel.

4. Zhào xiānsheng zhù zài Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn ma?

赵先生住在圆山大饭店吗？

Is Mr. Zhào staying at the Yuánshān hotel?

Bú shì, tā bú zhù zài Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn.

不是，他不住在圆山大饭店。

No, he is not staying at the Yuánshān hotel.

5. Liú xiānsheng zhù zài Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn ma?

刘先生住在圆山大饭店吗？

Is Mr. Liú staying at the Yuánshān hotel?

Bú shì, tā bú zhù zài Yánshān Dàfàndiàn.

不是，他不住在圆山大饭店。

No, he is not staying at the Yuánshān hotel.

6. Táng xiānsheng zhù zài nàge fàndiàn ma?

唐先生住在那个饭店吗？

Is Mr. Táng staying at that hotel?

Bú shì, tā bú zhù zài nàge fàndiàn.

不是，他不住在那个饭店。

No, he is not staying at that hotel.

7. Sòng xiānsheng zhù zài zhège fàndiàn ma?

宋先生住在这个饭店吗？

Is Mr. Sòng staying at this hotel.

Bú shì, tā bú zhù zài zhège fàndiàn.

不是，他不住在这个饭店。

No, he is not staying at this hotel.



## Response drill

Give either a negative or an affirmative response, according to the cues.

1. Táng tóngzhì zhù zai zhèige fàndiàn ma?

唐同志在在这个饭店吗？

Is Comrade Táng staying at this hotel?

Cue

zhèige fàndiàn

这个饭店

this hotel

Shì, tā zhù zai zhèige fàndiàn.

是，他/她住在这个饭店。

Yes, he/she is staying at this hotel.

2. Mǎ tóngzhì zhù zai nèige fàndiàn ma?

马同志住在那个饭店吗？

Is Comrade Mǎ staying at that hotel?

Cue

zhèige fàndiàn

这个饭店

this hotel

Bú shì, tā bú zhù zai nèige fàndiàn.

不是，他/她不住在那个饭店。

No, he/she is not staying at that hotel.

3. Lǐ tóngzhì zhù zai Běijīng Fàndiàn ma?

李同志住在北京饭店吗？

Is Comrade Lǐ staying at the Běijīng Hotel?

Cue

Běijīng Fàndiàn

北京饭店

Běijīng Hotel

Shì, tā zhù zai Běijīng Fàndiàn.

是，他/她住在北京饭店。

Yes, he/she is staying at the Běijīng Hotel.

4. Zhào tóngzhì zhù zai Mínzú Fàndiàn ma?

赵同志住在民族饭店吗？

Is Comrade Zhào staying at the Nationalities Hotel?

Cue Běijīng Fàndiàn  
北京饭店  
Běijīng Hotel

Bú shì, tā bú zhù zai Mínzú Fàndiàn.

不是，他/她不住在民族饭店。

No, he/she is not staying at the Nationalities Hotel.

5. Liú tóngzhì zhù zai zhèige fàndiàn ma?

刘同志住在这个饭店吗？

Is Comrade Liú staying at this hotel?

Cue nèige fàndiàn  
那个饭店  
that hotel

Bú shì, tā bú zhù zai zhèige fàndiàn.

不是，他/她不住在这个饭店。

No, he/she is not staying at this hotel.

6. Jiāng tóngzhì zhù zai nèige fàndiàn ma?

江同志住在那个饭店？

Is Comrade Jiāng staying at that hotel?

Cue nèige fàndiàn  
那个饭店  
that hotel

Shì, tā zhù zai nèige fàndiàn.

是，他/她住在那个饭店。

Yes, he/she is staying at that hotel.

7. Zhāng tóngzhì zhù zai Běijīng Fàndiàn ma?

张同志住在北京饭店吗？

Is Comrade Zhāng staying at the Běijīng Hotel?

Cue

Mínzú Fàndiàn

民族饭店

Nationalities Hotel

Bú shì, tā bú zhù zài Běijīng Fàndiàn.

不是，他/她不住在北京饭店。

No, he/she is not staying at the Běijīng Hotel.

## Transformation drill

Change the less polite forms **nèige rén** and **zhèige rén** to the more polite forms **nèiwèi** and **zhèiwèi**.

1. Nèige rén shì Lǐ tóngzhì.

那个人是李同志。

That person is Comrade Lǐ.

Nèiwèi shì Lǐ tóngzhì.

那位是李同志。

That one is Comrade Lǐ.

2. Zhèige rén shì Fāng tóngzhì.

这个人 是方同志。

This person is Comrade Fāng.

Zhèiwèi shì Fāng tóngzhì.

这位是方同志。

This one is Comrade Fāng.

3. Nèige rén shì Jiāng tóngzhì.

那个人是江同志。

That person is Comrade Jiāng.

Nèiwèi shì Jiāng tóngzhì.

那位是江同志。

That one is Comrade Jiāng.

4. Zhèige rén shì Zhōu tóngzhì.

这个人 是周同志。

This person is Comrade Zhōu.

Zhèiwèi shì Zhōu tóngzhì.

这位是周同志。

This one is Comrade Zhōu.

5. Nèige rén shì Zhāng tóngzhì.

那个人是张同志。

That person is Comrade Zhāng.

Nèiwèi shì Zhāng tóngzhì.

那位是张同志。

That one is Comrade Zhāng.

6. Zhèige rén shì Chén tóngzhì.

这个人 是陈同志。

This person is Comrade Chén.

Zhèiwèi shì Chén tóngzhì.

这位是陈同志。

This one is Comrade Chén.

7. Nèige rén shì Hú tóngzhì.

那个人是胡同志。

That person is Comrade Hú.

Nèiwèi shì Hú tóngzhì.

那位是胡同志。

That one is Comrade Hú.

## Response drill

Respond to **něige fàndiàn?** “Which hotel?” according to the cues.

1. Tā zhù zai něige fàndiàn?

他/她住在哪个饭店？

Which hotel is he/she staying at?

Cue

Mínzú Fàndiàn

民族饭店

the Nationalities Hotel

Tā zhù zai Mínzú Fàndiàn.

他/她住在民族饭店。

He/she is staying at the Nationalities Hotel.

2. Zhāng tóngzhì zhù zai něige fàndiàn?

张同志住在哪个饭店？

Which hotel is Comrade Zhāng staying at?

Cue

Běijīng Fàndiàn

北京饭店

the Běijīng Hotel

Tā zhù zai Běijīng Fàndiàn.

他/她住在北京饭店

He/she is staying at the Běijīng Hotel.

3. Jiāng tóngzhì zhù zai něige fàndiàn?

江同志住在哪个饭店？

Which hotel is Comrade Jiāng staying at?

Cue

něige fàndiàn

哪个饭店

that hotel

Tā zhù zai něige fàndiàn.

他/她住在那个饭店

He/she is staying at that hotel.

4. Wáng tóngzhì zhù zai nǐge fàndiàn?  
王同志住在哪个饭店？  
Which hotel is Comrade Wáng staying at?

Cue zhèige fàndiàn  
这个饭店  
this hotel

Tā zhù zai zhèige fàndiàn.  
他/她住在这个饭店。  
He/she is staying at this hotel.

5. Huáng tóngzhì zhù zai nǐge fàndiàn?  
黄同志住在哪个饭店？  
Which hotel is Comrade Huáng staying at?

Cue Mínzú Fàndiàn  
民族饭店  
the Nationalities Hotel

Tā zhù zai Mínzú Fàndiàn.  
他/她住在民族饭店。  
He/she is staying at the Nationalities Hotel.

6. Lín tóngzhì zhù zai nǐge fàndiàn?  
林同志住在哪个饭店？  
Which hotel is Comrade Lín staying at?

Cue Běijīng Fàndiàn  
北京饭店  
the Běijīng Hotel

Tā zhù zai Běijīng Fàndiàn.  
他/她住在北京饭店。  
He/she is staying at the Běijīng Hotel.

7. Liú tóngzhì zhù zai nǐge fàndiàn?  
刘同志住在哪个饭店？  
Which hotel is Comrade Liú staying at?

Cue

zhèige fàndiàn

这个饭店

this hotel

Tā zhù zai zhèige fàndiàn.

他/她住在这个饭店。

He/she is staying at this hotel.



## Response drill

Respond to **nèige rén** “which person ” with **nèige rén**, “That person.”

1. Qǐngwèn, nèige rén shì Wáng Déxián?

请问，哪个人是王德贤？

May I ask, which person is Wáng Déxián?

Nèige rén shì Wáng Déxián.

那个人是王德贤。

That person is Wáng Déxián.

2. Qǐngwèn, nèige rén shì Zhào Shimín?

请问，哪个人是赵世民？

May I ask, which person is Zhào Shimín?

Nèige rén shì Zhào Shimín.

那个人是赵世民。

That person is Zhào Shimín.

3. Qǐngwèn, nèige rén shì Lín Bǎolán?

请问，哪个人是林宝兰？

May I ask, which person is Lín Bǎolán?

Nèige rén shì Lín Bǎolán.

那个人是林宝兰。

That person is Lín Bǎolán.

4. Qǐngwèn, nèige rén shì Gāo Tíngfēng?

请问，哪个人是高廷峰？

May I ask, which person is Gāo Tíngfēng?

Nèige rén shì Gāo Tíngfēng.

那个人是高廷峰。

That person is Gāo Tíngfēng.

5. Qǐngwèn, nèige rén shì Zhāng Wǎnrú?

请问，哪个人是张婉如？

May I ask, which person is Zhāng Wǎnrú?

Nèige rén shì Zhāng Wǎnrú.

那个人是张婉如。

That person is Zhāng Wǎnrú.

6. Qǐngwèn, nǎige rén shì Hú Měilíng?

请问，哪个人是胡美玲？

May I ask, which person is Hú Měilíng?

Nèige rén shì Hú Měilíng.

那个人是胡美玲。

That person is Hú Měilíng.

7. Qǐngwèn, nǎige rén shì Sòng Zhīyuǎn?

请问，哪个人是宋知远？

May I ask, which person is Sòng Zhīyuǎn?

Nèige rén shì Sòng Zhīyuǎn.

那个人是宋知远。

That person is Sòng Zhīyuǎn.

## Transformation drill

Ask the appropriate “which” or “where” question according to the statements.

1. Tā lǎojiā zài Qīngdǎo.  
他/她老家在青岛。  
His/her family is from Qīngdǎo.

Tā lǎojiā zài nǎr?  
他/她老家在哪儿?  
Where is his/her family from?

2. Tā xiànzài zài Jiānádà.  
他/她现在在加拿大。  
He /she is in Canada now.

Tā xiànzài zài nǎr?  
他/她现在在哪儿?  
Where is he/she now?

3. Tā zhù zài Běijīng Fàndiàn.  
他/她住在北京饭店。  
He/she is staying at the Běijīng Hotel.

Tā zhù zài nǎige fàndiàn?  
他/她住在哪个饭店?  
In which hotel is he/she staying?

4. Tā xiànzài zài Shāndōng.  
他/她现在在山东。  
He /she is in Shāndōng now.

Tā xiànzài zài nǎr?  
他/她现在在哪儿?  
Where is he/she now?

5. Tā zhù zài Mínzú Fàndiàn.  
他/她住在民族饭店。  
He/she is staying at the Nationalities Hotel.

Tā zhù zai nǐge fàndiàn.

他/她住在哪个饭店？

In which hotel is he/she staying?

6. Tā lǎojiā zài Húběi.

他/她老家在湖北。

His/her family is from Húběi.

Tā lǎojiā zài nǎr?

他/她老家在那儿？

Where is his/her family from?

7. Tā xiànzài zài Měiguó.

他/她现在在美国。

He/she is in America now.

Tā xiànzài zài nǎr?

他/她现在在哪儿？

Where is he/she now?

8. Tā zhù zai zhèige fàndiàn.

他/她住在这个饭店。

He/she is staying at this hotel.

Tā zhù zai nǐge fàndiàn?

他/她住在哪个饭店？

In which hotel is he/she staying?

9. Tā lǎojiā zài Guǎngdōng.

他/她老家在广东。

His/her family is from Guǎngdōng.

Tā lǎojiā zài nǎr?

他/她老家在那儿？

Where is his/her family from?

## Unit 2

### Introduction

#### Topics covered in this unit

1. Where people are staying (houses).
2. Where people are working.
3. Addresses.
4. The marker **de**.
5. The marker **ba**.
6. The prepositional verb **zài**.

#### Material you will need

1. The C-1 and P-1 tapes, the Reference List and Reference Notes.
2. The C-2 and P-2 tapes, the Workbook.
3. The 2D-1 tape.

## References

### Reference List

1. A: Nǐ zhù zài nǎlǐ?  
你住在哪理？  
Where are you staying?  
B: Wǒ zhù zài Guó bīn Dà fàn diàn.  
我住在国宾大饭店。  
I'm staying at the Ambassador Hotel.
  
2. A: Nǐ zhù zài nǎlǐ?  
你住在哪理？  
Where are you staying?  
B: Wǒ zhù zài zhèlǐ.  
我住在这理。  
I'm staying here.  
A: Tā ne?  
他呢？  
How about him?  
B: Tā zhù zài nǎlǐ.  
他住在那理。  
He is staying there.
  
3. A: Nǐ zhù zài nǎlǐ?  
你住在哪理？  
Where are you staying?  
B: Wǒ zhù zài péngyou jiā.  
我住在朋友家。  
I'm staying at a friend's home.
  
4. A: Nǐ péngyou jiā zài nǎlǐ?  
你朋友家在哪理？  
Where is your friend's house?  
B: Tā jiā zài Dà lì Jiē.  
他家在大力街。  
His house is on Dà lì Street.
  
5. A: Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì ...?

你朋友的地址是……？

What is your friend's address?

B: Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dàlǐ jiē Sishìèrhào.

他的地址是大力街四十二号。

His address is № 42 Dàlǐ Street.

6.<sup>a</sup> A: Nǐ shì Wèi shàoxiào ba?

你是魏少校吧？

You are Major Weiss, aren't you?

B: Shìde.

是的。

Yes.

7.<sup>b</sup> A: Nà shì Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn ba?

那是国宾大饭店吧？

That is Ambassador Hotel, isn't it?

B: Shìde.

是的。

Yes.

8. A: Nǐ péngyou xiànzài zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?

你朋友现在在哪里工作？

Where does your friend work now?

B: Tā zài Táinán gōngzuò.

他在台南工作。

He works in Táinán.

9.<sup>c</sup> A: Nǐ zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?

你在哪里工作？

Where do you work?

B: Wǒ zài Wǔguānchù gōngzuò.

我在武官处工作。

I work at the Defense Attache's Office.

10.<sup>d</sup> A: Nǐ zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?

你在哪里工作？

Where do you work?

B: Wǒ zài yínháng gōngzuò.

我在银行工作。

I work at a bank.

- 11.<sup>e</sup>      A:    Nǐ péngyou zài Táiběi gōngzuò ma?  
             你朋友在台北工作吗?  
             Does your friend work in Taipei?
- B:    Tā bú zài Táiběi gōngzuò; tā zài Táizhōng gōngzuò.  
             他不在台北工作。他在台中工作。  
             He doesn't work in Taipei; he works in Taichung.

<sup>a</sup>This exchange occurs on the C-1 tape only

<sup>b</sup>This exchange occurs on the P-1 tape only

<sup>c</sup>This exchange occurs on the C-1 tape only

<sup>d</sup>This exchange occurs on the P-1 tape only

<sup>e</sup>This exchange occurs on the C-1 tape only



## Vocabulary

ba	吧	question marker expressing supposition of what answer will be
dàfàndiàn	大饭店	hotel
-de	的	possessive marker
dìzhǐ	地址	address
gōngzuò	工作	to work
Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn	国宾大饭店	Ambassador Hotel
-hào	—号	number (in address)
jiā	家	home, house
jiē	街	street
lù	路	road
nà-	那一	that
nàge	那个	that (one)
náli	哪里	where
nàli	那里	there
péngyou	朋友	friend
shàoxiào	少校	major (military title)
Shìde	是的	Yes, that's so.
Wǔguānchù	武官处	defense attache office
yínháng	银行	bank
zài	在	to be in/at/on (prepositional verb)
zhè-	这	this
zhège	这个	this (one)
zhèli	这里	here
Dìyī Dàfàndiàn	第一大饭店	First Hotel
Měiguó Guójiā Jiāoliú Zǒngshǔ	美国国际交流总署	U.S. International Communications Agency
Měiguó Yínháng	美国银行	Bank of America
Táiwān Yínháng	台湾银行	Bank of Taiwan
Yóuzhèngjú	邮政局	post office

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1–2

1. A: **Nǐ zhù zài nǎlǐ?**  
你住在哪理？  
Where are you staying?  
B: **Wǒ zhù zài Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn.**  
我住在国宾大饭店。  
I'm staying at the Ambassador Hotel.
2. A: **Nǐ zhù zài nǎlǐ?**  
你住在哪理？  
Where are you staying?  
B: **Wǒ zhù zài zhèlǐ.**  
我住在这理。  
I'm staying here.  
A: **Tā ne?**  
他呢？  
How about him?  
B: **Tā zhù zài nàlǐ.**  
他住在那理。  
He is staying there.

The word **guóbīn** actually refers to any official state guest, not just an ambassador. (The word for “ambassador” is **dàshǐ**) The translation “Ambassador Hotel” has been used for years by that hotel and, although inaccurate, has been retained in this text.

**Dàfàndiàn** means “great hotel” or “grand hotel.” It is commonly used in the names of Taiwan and Hong Kong hotels.

**Nǎlǐ**, **nàlǐ**, and **zhèlǐ** are common variants of **nǎr**, **nàr**, and **zhèr** in non-Peking dialects of Standard Chinese. The forms with **r** are Peking dialect forms.

Compare:

Peking	Other	
<b>nǎr?</b>	<b>nǎlǐ?</b>	where?
哪儿	哪里	
<b>nàr</b>	<b>nàlǐ</b>	there
那儿	那里	
<b>zhèr</b>	<b>zhèlǐ</b>	here
这儿	这里	

Notice the difference in tone between **nǎr** and **náli**. This is because **-li** has a basic Low tone, and the first of two adjoining Low-tone syllables changes to a Rising tone: **nǎ** + **-li** = **náli**.

### Notes on №3–4

3. A: Nǐ zhù zài nǎlǐ?  
你住在哪理？  
Where are you staying?  
B: Wǒ zhù zài péngyou jiā.  
我住在朋友家。  
I'm staying at a friend's home.
4. A: Nǐ péngyou jiā zài nǎlǐ?  
你朋友家在哪理？  
Where is your friend's house?  
B: Tā jiā zài Dàlì Jiē.  
他家在大力街。  
His house is on Dàlì Street.

The possessive relationships in *péngyou jiā*, “friend’s house,” *nǐ péngyou jiā*, “your friend’s house,” and *tā jiā*, “his house,” are unmarked, while the English must include -’s or the possessive form of the pronoun (“your,” “his”). In Chinese, possessive relationships may be expressed by simply putting the possessor in front of the possessed when the relationship between the two is particularly close, like the relationship between a person and his home, family, or friends.

Notes on №5

5. A: Nǐ péngyoude dìzhǐ shì ...?  
你朋友的地址是……？  
What is your friend's address?
- B: Tā de dìzhǐ shì jīè Sīshìèrhào.  
他的地址是大力街四十二号。  
His address is № 42 Dàlì street.

Péngyou de dìzhǐ: “The marker *-de* in this phrase is Just like the English possessive ending *-’s*. With the exception of close relationships, this is the usual way to form the possessive in Chinese.

nǐ péngyǒu	-de	dìzhǐ
你朋友	的	地址
your friend	’s	address

Unlike the English *-’s* ending, *-de* is also added to pronouns.

wǒ de	my
我的	
nǐ de	your
你的	
tā de	his/her
他/她的	

You are learning possessive phrases in which the marker *-de* is used (*tā de dìzhǐ*) and some possessive phrases which do not contain *-de* (*nǐ péngyou jiā*). There are certain reasons for the inclusion or omission of *-de*. If a close relationship exists between the possessor and the possessed, the marker *-de* might not be used. If a phrase is long and complex, as *Lǐ xiānsheng péngyou de tàitai*, the marker *-de* is used to separate the possessor from the possessed.

short or simple		long or complex	
nǐ	jiā	Hú Měilíng	-de lǎojiā
你	家	胡美玲	的老家
wǒ	péngyou	nǐ péngyou	-de dìzhǐ
我	朋友	你朋友	的地址
		Lǐ xiānsheng péngyou	-de tàitai
		李先生朋友	的太太

But these are not hard and fast rules. The use or omission of *-de* is not determined solely by the number of syllables in a phrase or by the closeness between the possessor and the possessed, although both of these considerations do play a big part in the decision.

While some common nouns are usually used without *-de* before them, most nouns are more likely to be preceded by *-de*, and many even require it. *Dìzhǐ*, “address,” is the only noun you have learned

which **REQUIRES** the possessive marker **-de** added to the possessor. But other nouns such as **jiā** are not always preceded by **-de**. This is also the case with nouns indicating personal relationships, like **fùmǔ**, “father,” and **tàitai** “wife.” **Péngyou**, “friend,” **xuésheng**, “student,” and **lǎoshī** “teacher” are commonly used without **-de**, but may also be used with the marker.

You might expect the question **Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ...?** to be completed with a word such as **shénme**, “what.” However, the incomplete form given in this exchange, with the voice trailing off, inviting completion, is also commonly used.

**Addresses:** The order in which addresses are given in Chinese is the reverse of that used in English. In Chinese, the order is from the general to the specific: country, province or state, city, street name, street number.

**-hào:** A street number is always given with the bound word **-hào**, “number,” after it.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>2</sup>The word **di-** is sometimes translated “number,” as in **dìyī**, “number one” (See resource module on Numbers, tape 4.)

Notes on №6–7

6. A: Nǐ shì Wèi shàoxiào ba?  
你是魏少校吧？  
You are Major Weiss, aren't you?
- B: Shìde.  
是的。  
Yes.
7. A: Nà shì Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn ba?  
那是国宾大饭店吧？  
That is Ambassador Hotel, isn't it?
- B: Shìde.  
是的。  
Yes.

Ba is a marker for a question which expresses the speaker's supposition as to what the answer will be. It is the type of question which asks for a confirmation from the listener.

There are three ways to translate the two questions in exchanges 6 and 7 into English:

Nǐ shì Wèi shàoxiào ba?	Aren't you Major Weiss?
你是魏少校吧？	You are Major Weiss, aren't you? You must be Major Weiss.
Nà shì Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn ba?	Isn't that the Ambassador Hotel?
那是国宾大饭店吧？	That is the Ambassador Hotel, isn't it? That must be the Ambassador Hotel.

Each translation reflects a different degree of certainty on the part of the speaker. (While the differences in certainty are expressed in English by variation in wording, they can be expressed in Chinese by intonation.) You will probably find that the "isn't it", "aren't you" translation fits most situations.

The short answer *shìde* is an expanded form of the short answer *shì*, with the same meaning: "Yes, that's so." *Shìde* is also the word used for the "yes" in the military "Yes, sir."

*Nà* (nèi): In the subject position, *nà* (nèi), "that," and *zhè* (zhèi), "this," may be used either as free words or as bound words, with *-ge* following.

Compare:

Nà		shì Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn.
那		是国宾大饭店。
That		is the Ambassador Hotel.
Nà	-ge	shì Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn.
那	个	是国宾大饭店。

That	one	is the Ambassador Hotel.
------	-----	--------------------------

However, the question form **nǎ-** (**něi-**) is a bound word.

Nǎge (fàndiàn) shì Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn?	Which one is the Ambassador Hotel?
那个 (饭店) 是国宾大饭店?	



Notes on №8–11

8. A: Nǐ péngyou xiànzài zài nǎli gōngzuò?  
你朋友现在在哪里工作？  
Where does your friend work now?  
B: Tā zài Tánán gōngzuò.  
他在台南工作。  
He works in Tánán
9. A: Nǐ zài nǎli gōngzuò?  
你在哪里工作？  
Where do you work?  
B: Wǒ zài Wǔguānchù gōngzuò.  
我在武官处工作。  
I work at the Defense Attache’s Office.
10. A: Nǐ zài nǎli gōngzuò?  
你在哪里工作？  
Where do you work?  
B: Wǒ zài yínháng gōngzuò.  
我在银行工作。  
I work at a bank.
11. A: Nǐ péngyou zài Táiběi gōngzuò ma?  
你朋友在台北工作吗？  
Does your friend work in Taipei?  
B: Tā bú zài Táiběi gōngzuò; tā zài Táizhōng gōngzuò.  
他不在台北工作。他在台中工作。  
He doesn’t work in Taipei; he works in Taichung.

Wǔguānchù, “defense attache’s office,” literally means “military attache’s office.”

Zài...gōngzuò: Compare these two sentences:

Tā	zài	Tánán.	
他/她	在	台南	
He	is in	Tainan.	
Tā	zài	Tánán	gōngzuò.
他/她	在	台南	工作。
He	in	Tainan	works.

The sentence *Tā zài Tánán gōngzuò* seems to have two verbs: *zài*, “to be in/at/on,” and *gōngzuò*, “to work.” But there is only one verb in the translation: “He works in Tainan.” The translation reflects the fact that *zài* loses its full verb status in this sentence and plays a role like that of the English preposition “in.” The *zài* phrase in Chinese, like the “in” phrase in English, gives more information about the main verb *gōngzuò*; that is, it tells where the action takes place. “He works,” and the work takes place “in Tainan.” In sentences like this, the word *zài* is a prepositional verb. Most relationships expressed by prepositions in English are expressed by prepositional verbs in Chinese.

You have also seen *zài* used as a prepositional verb in the sentence *Nǐ zhù zài nǎlǐ?* “Where do you live?”—literally, “You live at where?” Notice that in this sentence the prepositional verb phrase *zài nǎlǐ* comes after the main verb *zhù*. In the sentence *Nǐ zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?* the prepositional verb phrase *zài nǎlǐ* comes before the main verb *gōngzuò*. Many things, such as stress, contrast, and other objects in the sentence, can influence the order of the prepositional verb phrase and the main verb.

In some cases, either order may be used, as in *Nǐ zài nǎlǐ zhù?* or *Nǐ zhù zài nǎlǐ?* In other cases, the word order is fixed, as in *Nǐ zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?* For text examples, it will be pointed out whether or not the word order may be changed, and the reasons will be given.

*Tā bú zài Táiběi gōngzuò*, “He doesn’t work in Taipei”: In this sentence, the negative adverb *bù* comes before the prepositional verb *zài* (which starts the complete predicate *zài Táiběi gōngzuò*, not before the main verb *gōngzuò*. This makes sense, for you are not saying “He does NOT WORK,” but you are saying “He does NOT work IN TAIPEI.”

Tā			gōngzuò.
他/她			工作。
Tā	bù		gōngzuò.
他/她	不		工作。
Tā		zài Táiběi	gōngzuò.
他/她		在台北	工作。
Tā	bù	zài Táiběi	gōngzuò.
他/她	不	在台北	工作。

## Drills

### Response drill

Respond according to the cues.

1. Lǐ xiānsheng zhù zài nǎlǐ?

李先生住在哪里？

Where is Mr. Lǐ staying?

Cue

Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn

国宾大饭店

Ambassador Hotel

Tā zhù zài Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn.

他住在国宾大饭店。

He is staying at the Ambassador Hotel.

2. Gāo xiānsheng zhù zài nǎlǐ?

高先生住在哪里？

Where is Mr. Gāo staying?

Cue

Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn

圆山大饭店

Yuánshān hotel

Tā zhù zài Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn.

他住在圆山大饭店。

He is staying at the Yuánshān hotel.

3. Yáng xiānsheng zhù zài nǎlǐ?

杨先生住在哪里？

Where is Mr. Yáng staying?

Cue

Dìyī Dàfàndiàn

第一大饭店

Grand Hotel

Tā zhù zài Dìyī Dàfàndiàn.

他住在第一大饭店。

He is staying at the Grand Hotel.

4. Táng xiānsheng zhù zài nǎlǐ?

唐先生住在哪里？

Where is Mr. Táng staying?

Cue zhèlǐ  
这里  
here

tā zhù zài zhèlǐ.

他住在这里里。

He is staying here.

5. Sīmǎ xiānsheng zhù zài nǎlǐ?

司马先生住在哪里？

Where is Mr. Sīmǎ staying?

Cue péngyou jiā  
朋友家  
friend's house

Tā zhù zài péngyou jiā.

他住在朋友家。

He is staying at his friend's house.

5. Liú xiānsheng zhù zài nǎlǐ?

刘先生住在哪里？

Where is Mr. Sīmǎ staying?

Cue nàlǐ  
那里  
there

Tā zhù zài nàlǐ.

他住在那里？

He is staying there.

7. Wáng xiānsheng zhù zài nǎlǐ?

王住住在哪里？

Where is Mr. Wáng staying?

Cue

Dìyī Dàfàndiàn

第一大饭店

Grand Hotel

Tā zhù zai Dìyī Dàfàndiàn.

他住在第一大饭店。

He is staying at the Grand Hotel.

## Response drill

### Respond according to the cues.

1. Tā péngyou jiā zài nǎlǐ?

他朋友家在哪里？

Where is your friend's house?

Cue

Bóài Lù

博爱路

Bóài road

Tā jiā zài Bóài Lù.

他家在博爱路。

His/her house is on Bóài road.

2. Lǐ xiānsheng jiā zài nǎlǐ?

李先生家在哪里？

Where is Mr. Lǐ house?

Cue

Dūnhuà Lù

敦化路

Dūnhuà road

Tā jiā zài Dūnhuà Lù

他家在敦化路。

His house is on Dūnhuà road.

3. Wáng xiānsheng jiā zài nǎlǐ?

王先生家在哪里？

Where is Mr. Wáng's house?

Cue

Nóngān Jiē

农安街

Nóngān street

Tā jiā zài Nóngān Jiē.

他家在农安街。

His house is on Nóngān street.

4. Hé xiānsheng jiā zài nǎlǐ?  
何先生家在哪里？  
Where is Mr. Hé's house?

Cue Dàlǐ Jiē  
大理街  
Dàlǐ street

Tā jiā zài Dàlǐ Jiē.  
他家在大理街。  
His house is on Dàlǐ street.

5. Bāo xiānsheng jiā zài nǎlǐ?  
包先生家在哪里？  
Where is Mr. Bāo's house?

Cue Nánjīng Lù  
南京路  
Nánjīng road

Tā jiā zài Nánjīng Lù  
他家在南京路。  
His house is on Nánjīng road.

6. Mǎ xiānsheng jiā zài nǎlǐ?  
马先生家在哪里？  
Where is Mr. Mǎ's house?

Cue Zhōngshān Lù  
中山路  
Zhōngshān road

Tā jiā zài Zhōngshān.  
他家在中山路。  
His house is on Zhōngshān road.

7. Lín xiānsheng jiā zài nǎlǐ?  
林先生家在哪里？  
Where is Mr. Lín's house?

Cue

Zhèjiāng Jiē

浙江街

Zhèjiāng street

Tā jiā zài Zhèjiāng Jiē.

他家在浙江街。

His house is on Zhèjiāng street.



## Response drill

According to each cue, respond with the appropriate street number on **Dàlǐ** street.

1. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì...?

你朋友的地址是……？

What is your friend's address?

Cue

42 hào

四十二号

number 42

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dàlǐ Jiē Sishìèrhào.

他/她的地址是大理街四十二号。

His/her address is number 42 Dàlǐ street.

2. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì...?

你朋友的地址是……？

What is your friend's address?

Cue

40 hào

四十号

number 40

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dàlǐ Jiē Sishíhào.

他/她的地址是大理街四十号。

His/her address is number 40 Dàlǐ street.

3. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì...?

你朋友的地址是……？

What is your friend's address?

Cue

95 hào

九十五号

number 95

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dàlǐ Jiē Jiǔshíwǔhào.

他/她的地址是大理街九十五号。

His/her address is number 95 Dàlǐ street.

4. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì...?  
你朋友的地址是……？  
What is your friend's address?

Cue  
26 hào  
二十六号  
number 26

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dàlǐ Jiē Èrshíliùhào.  
他/她的地址是大理街二十六号。  
His/her address is number 26 Dàlǐ street.

5. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì...?  
你朋友的地址是……？  
What is your friend's address?

Cue  
77 hào  
七十七号  
number 77

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dàlǐ Jiē Qīshíqīhào.  
他/她的地址是大理街七十七号。  
His/her address is number 77 Dàlǐ street.

6. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì...?  
你朋友的地址是……？  
What is your friend's address?

Cue  
68 hào  
六十八号  
number 68

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dàlǐ Jiē Liùshíbāhào.  
他/她的地址是大理街六十八号。  
His/her address is number 68 Dàlǐ street.

7. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì...?  
你朋友的地址是……？  
What is your friend's address?

Cue

44 hào

四十四号

number 44

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dàlǐ Jiē Sishìsìhào.

他/她的地址是大理街四十四号。

His/her address is number 44 Dàlǐ street.

## Response drill

Give the appropriate Táiwan street addresses according to the cues.

1. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì...?  
你朋友的地址是……？  
What is your friend's address?

Cue Dàlǐ Jiē 43 hào  
大理街十四三号  
42 Dàlǐ street

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dàlǐ Jiē Sishìèrhào.  
他/她的地址是大理街十四三号。  
His/her address is number 42 Dàlǐ street.

2. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì...?  
你朋友的地址是……？  
What is your friend's address?

Cue Bóài Lù 94 hào  
博爱路九十四号  
94 Bóài road

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Bóài Lù Jiǔshísihào.  
他/她的地址是博爱路九十四号。  
His/her address is number 95 Bóài road.

3. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì...?  
你朋友的地址是……？  
What is your friend's address?

Cue Dūnhuà Lù 55 hào  
敦化路五十五号  
55 Dūnhuà road

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dūnhuà Lù Wǔshíwǔhào.  
他/她的地址是敦化路五十五号。  
His/her address is number 55 Dūnhuà road.

4. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì...?  
你朋友的地址是……？  
What is your friend's address?

Cue Nóngān Jiē 75 hào  
农安街七十五号  
75 Nóngān street

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Nóngān Qīshíwǔhào.  
他/她的地址是农安街七十五号。  
His/her address is number 75 Nóngān street.

5. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì...?  
你朋友的地址是……？  
What is your friend's address?

Cue Dàlǐ Jiē 42 hào  
大理街四十二号  
42 Dàlǐ street

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dàlǐ Jiē Sìshíèrhào.  
他/她的地址是大理街四十二号。  
His/her address is number 42 Dàlǐ street.

6. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì...?  
你朋友的地址是……？  
What is your friend's address?

Cue Dūnhuà Lù 55 hào  
敦化路五十五号  
55 Dūnhuà road

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dūnhuà Lù Wǔshíwǔhào.  
他/她的地址是敦化路五十五号。  
His/her address is number 55 Dūnhuà road.

7. Nǐ péngyou de dìzhǐ shì...?  
你朋友的地址是……？  
What is your friend's address?

Cue

Bóài Lù 94 hào

博爱路九十四号

94 Bóài road

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Bóài Lù Jiùshísìhào.

他/她的地址是博爱路九十四号。

His/her address is number 94 Bóài road.

## Transformation drill

### Respond according to the model.

1. Mǎ tàitai jiā zài Dàlǐ Jiē Sishìèrhào.  
马太太家在大理街四十二号。  
Mǎ's house is at N°42 Dàlǐ street.

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dàlǐ Jiē Sishìèrhào.  
她的地址是大理街四十二号。  
Her address is N°42 Dàlǐ street.

2. Zhào tàitai jiā zài Bóài Lù Jiùshìsìhào.  
赵太太家在博爱路九十四号。  
Mrs. Zhào's house is at N°94 Bóài road.

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Bóài Lù Jiùshìsìhào.  
她的地址是博爱路九十四号。  
Her address is N°94 Bóài road.

3. Lǐ tàitai jiā zài Dūnhuà Lù Wǔshiwǔhào.  
李太太家在敦化路五十五号。  
Mrs. Lǐ's house is at Dūnhuà road.

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dūnhuà Lù Wǔshiwǔhào.  
她的地址是敦化路五十五号。  
Her address is N°55 Dūnhuà road.

4. Hé tàitai jiā zài Nóngān Jiē Qīshiwǔhào.  
何太太家在农安街七十五号。  
Mrs. Hé's house is at N°75 Nóngān street.

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Nóngān Jiē Qīshiwǔhào.  
她的地址是农安街七十五号。  
Her address is N°75 Nóngān street.

5. Gāo tàitai jiā zài Dàlǐ Jiē Sishìèrhào.  
高太太家在大理街四十二号。  
Mrs. Gāo's house is at N°42 Dàlǐ street.

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dàlǐ Jiē Sìshíèrhào.

她的地址是大理街四十二号。

Her address is N°42 Dàlǐ street.

6. Wáng tàitai jiā zài Bóài Lù Jiǔshísihào.

王太太家在博爱路九十四号。

Mrs. Wáng's house is at N°94 Bóài road.

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Bóài Lù Jiǔshísihào.

她的地址是博爱路九十四号。

Her address is N°94 Bóài road.

7. Lín tàitai jiā zài Dūnhuà Lù Wǔshíwǔhào.

林太太家在敦化路五十五号。

Mrs. Lín's house is at N°55 Dūnhuà road.

Tā de dìzhǐ shì Dūnhuà Lù Wǔshíwǔhào.

她的地址是敦化路五十五号。

Her address is N°55 Dūnhuà road.



## Transformation drill

Change each **ma** question to a **ba** question.

1. Nín shì Wèi shàoxiào ma?

您是魏少校吗？

Are you Major Weiss?

Nín shì Wèi shàoxiào ba?

您是魏少校吧？

You are Major Weiss, aren't you?

2. Tā shì Zhāng shàoxiào ma?

他是张少校吗？

Is he Major Zhāng?

Tā shì Zhāng shàoxiào ba?

他是张少校吧？

He is Major Zhāng, isn't he?

3. Nín shì Huáng xiǎojiě ma?

您是黄小姐吗？

Are you Miss Huáng?

Nín shì Huáng xiǎojiě ba?

您是黄小姐吧？

You are Miss Huáng, aren't you?

4. Nà shì Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn ma?

那是国宾大饭店吗？

Is that the Nationalities Hotel?

Nà shì Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn ba?

那是国宾大饭店吧？

That is the Nationalities Hotel, isn't it?

5. Zhè shì Dìyī Dàfàndiàn ma?

这是第一大饭店吗？

Is this the Grand Hotel?

Zhè shì Dìyī Dàfàndiàn ba?

这是第一大饭店吧？

This is the Grand Hotel, isn't it?

6. Nàwèi shì Wáng tàitai ma?

那位是王太太吗？

Is that person Mrs. Wáng?

Nàwèi shì Wáng tàitai ba?

那位是王太太吧。

This person is Mrs. Wáng, isn't it?

7. Nà shì Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn ma?

那是圆山大饭店吗？

Is that the Yuánshān hotel?

Nà shì Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn ba?

那是圆山大饭店吧？

That is the Yuánshān hotel, isn't it?

## Response drill

Give an answer according to the cues.

1. Tā zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?  
他/她在哪里工作?  
Where dos he/she works?

Cue Táiběi  
台北  
Taipei

Tā zài Táiběi gōngzuò.  
他/她在台北工作。  
He/she works in Taipei.

2. Tā zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?  
他/她在哪里工作?  
Where dos he/she works?

Cue Táinán  
台南  
T'ai-nan

Tā zài Táinán gōngzuò.  
他/她在台南工作。  
He/she works in T'ai-nan.

3. Tā zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?  
他/她在哪里工作?  
Where dos he/she works?

Cue Táizhōng  
台中  
T'ai-chung

Tā zài Táizhōng gōngzuò.  
他/她在台中工作。  
He/she works in T'ai-chung.

4. Tā zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?  
他/她在哪里工作?  
Where dos he/she works?

Cue Gāoxióng  
高雄  
Kao-hsiung

Tā zài Gāoxióng gōngzuò.  
他/她在高雄工作。  
He/she works in Kao-hsiung.

5. Tā zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?  
他/她在哪里工作?  
Where dos he/she works?

Cue Jīlóng  
基隆  
Chi-lung

Tā zài Jīlóng gōngzuò.  
他他/她在基隆工作。  
He/she works in Chi-lung.

6. Tā zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?  
他/她在哪里工作?  
Where dos he/she works?

Cue Táiběi  
台北  
Taipei

Tā zài Táiběi Gōngzuò.  
他/她在台北工作。  
He/she works in Taipei.

7. Tā zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?  
他/她在哪里工作?  
Where dos he/she works?

Cue

Táizhōng

台中

T'ai-chung

Tā zài Táizhōng gōngzuò.

他/她在台中工作。

He/she works in T'ai-chung.

## Response drill

### Give affirmative response to all questions.

1. Tā zài yóuzhèngjú gōngzuò ma?

他/她在邮政局工作吗？

Does he/she works at the post office?

Dui le, tā zài yóuzhèngjú gōngzuò.

对了，他/她在邮政局工作。

Yes, he/she works at the post office.

2. Tā zài Wǔguānchù gōngzuò ma?

他/她在武官处工作吗？

Does he/she works at the military attache's office?

Dui le, tā zài Wǔguānchù gōngzuò.

对了，他/她在武官处工作。

Yes, he/she works at the military attache's office.

3. Tā zài yínháng gōngzuò ma?

他/她在银行工作吗？

Does he/she works at the bank?

Dui le, tā zài yínháng gōngzuò.

对了，他/她在银行工作。

Yes, he/she works at the bank?

4. Tā zài Měiguó yínháng gōngzuò ma?

他/她在美国银行工作吗？

Does he/she works at the Bank of America?

Dui le, tā zài Měiguó yínháng gōngzuò.

对了，他/她在美国银行工作。

Yes, he/she works at the Bank of America.

5. Tā zài Táiwān yínháng gōngzuò ma?

他/她在台湾银行工作吗？

Does he/she works at the Bank of Táiwān?

Duì le, tā zài Táiwān yínyáng gōngzuò.

对了，他/她在台湾银行工作。

Yes, he/she works at the Bank of Táiwān.

6. Tā zài Wǔguānchù gōngzuò ma?

他/她在武官处工作吗？

Does he/she works at the military attache's office?

Duì le, tā zài Wǔguānchù gōngzuò.

对了，他/她在武官处工作。

Yes, he/she works at the military attache's office.

7. Tā zài yóuzhèngjú gōngzuò ma?

他/她在邮政局工作吗？

Does he/she works at the post office?

Duì le, tā zài yóuzhèngjú gōngzuò.

对了，他/她在邮政局工作。

Yes, he/she works at the post office.

## Transformation drill

Add **xiànzài**, “now” to each statement.

1. Zhōu xiānsheng zài Táiběi gōngzuò.

周先生在台北工作。

Mr. Zhōu works in Táiběi.

Zhōu xiānsheng xiànzài zài Táiběi gōngzuò.

周先生现在在台北工作。

Mr. Zhōu is working in Táiběi now.

2. Zhāng xiānsheng zài Táizhōng gōngzuò.

张先生在台中工作。

Mr. Zhāng works in Táizhōng.

Zhāng xiānsheng xiànzài zài Táizhōng gōngzuò.

张先生现在在台中工作。

Mr. Zhāng is working in Táizhōng now.

3. Hú xiǎojiě zài Táinán gōngzuò.

胡小姐在台南工作。

Miss Hú works in Táinán.

Hú xiǎojiě xiànzài zài Táinán gōngzuò.

胡小姐现在在台南工作。

Miss Hú is working in Táinán now.

4. Mǎ xiǎojiě zài Gāoxióng gōngzuò.

马小姐在高雄工作。

Miss Mǎ works in Gāoxióng.

Mǎ xiǎojiě xiànzài zài Gāoxióng gōngzuò.

马小姐现在在高雄工作。

Miss Mǎ is working in Gāoxióng now.

5. Zhào xiānsheng zài Jīlóng gōngzuò.

赵先生在基隆工作。

Mr. Zhào works in Jīlóng.



Zhào xiānsheng xiànzài zài Jīlóng gōngzuò.

赵先生现在在基隆工作。

Mr. Zhào is working in Jīlóng now.

6. Chén xiānsheng zài Táiběi gōngzuò.

陈先生现在在台北工作。

Mr. Chén works in Táiběi.

Chén xiānsheng xiànzài zài Táiběi gōngzuò.

陈先生现在在台北工作。

Mr. Chén is working in Táiběi now.

7. Jiāng xiǎojiě zài Gāoxióng gōngzuò.

江小姐在高雄工作。

Miss Jiāng works in Gāoxióng.

Jiāng xiǎojiě xiànzài zài Gāoxióng gōngzuò.

江小姐现在在高雄工作。

Miss Jiāng is working in Gāoxióng now.

## Transformation drill

Make each statement negative by changing **zài** to **bú zài**.

1. Hú tóngzhì zài Běijīng gōngzuò.

胡同志在北京工作。

Comrade Hú works in Běijīng.

Hú tóngzhì bú zài Běijīng gōngzuò.

胡同志不在北京工作。

Comrade Hú doesn't work in Běijīng.

2. Lǐ tóngzhì zài Nánjīng gōngzuò.

李同志在南京工作。

Comrade Lǐ works in Nánjīng.

Lǐ tóngzhì bú zài Nánjīng gōngzuò.

李同志不在南京工作。

Comrade Lǐ doesn't work in Nánjīng.

3. Tā zài Qīngdǎo gōngzuò.

他/她在青岛工作。

He/she works in Qīngdǎo.

Tā bú zài Qīngdǎo gōngzuò.

他/她不在青岛工作。

He/she doesn't work in Qīngdǎo.

4. Lín tóngzhì zài Guǎngzhōu gōngzuò.

林同志在广州工作。

Comrade Lín works in Guǎngzhōu.

Lín tóngzhì bú zài Guǎngzhōu gōngzuò.

林同志不在广州工作。

Comrade Lín doesn't work in Guǎngzhōu.

5. Zhào tóngzhì zài Shànghǎi gōngzuò.

赵同志在上海工作。

Comrade Zhào works in Shànghǎi.

Zhào tóngzhì bú zài Shànghǎi gōngzuò.

赵同志不在上海工作。

Comrade Zhào doesn't work in Shànghǎi.

6. Chén tóngzhì zài Qīngdǎo gōngzuò.

陈同志在青岛工作。

Comrade Chén works in Qīngdǎo.

Chén tóngzhì bú zài Qīngdǎo gōngzuò.

陈同志不在青岛工作。

Comrade Chén doesn't work in Qīngdǎo.

7. Huáng tóngzhì zài Běijīng gōngzuò.

黄同志在北京工作。

Comrade Huáng works in Běijīng.

Huáng tóngzhì bú zài Běijīng gōngzuò.

黄同志不在北京工作。

Comrade Huáng doesn't work in Běijīng.

## Response drill

Give negative response to the questions, adding correct information according to the cues.

1. Hú xiǎojiě zài Táiběi gōngzuò ma?

胡小姐在台北工作吗？

Does Miss Hú work in Taipei?

Cue

Táinán

台南

T'ai-nan

Tā bú zài Táiběi gōngzuò; tā zài Táinán gōngzuò.

她不在台北工作。她在台南工作。

She doesn't work in Taipei; she works in Tainan.

2. Lǐ tàitai zài Táizhōng gōngzuò ma?

李太太在台中工作吗？

Does Mrs. Lǐ work in Táizhōng?

Cue

Jílóng

基隆

Chi-lung

Tā bú zài Táizhōng gōngzuò; tā zài Jílóng gōngzuò.

她不在台中工作。她在基隆工作。

She doesn't work in T'ai-chung; she works in Chi-lung.

3. Mǎ xiānsheng zài zhèlǐ gōngzuò ma?

马先生在这里工作吗？

Does Mr. Mǎ work here?

Cue

Gāoxióng

高雄

Kao-hsiung

Tā bú zài zhèlǐ gōngzuò; tā zài Gāoxióng gōngzuò.

他不在这里工作。他在高雄工作。

He doesn't work here. He works in Kao-hsiung.

4. Tā zài Wúguānchù gōngzuò ma?

他/她在武官处工作吗？

Does he/she work in the defense attache office?

Cue

Měiguó Yínháng

美国银行

Bank of America

Tā bú zài Měiguó gōngzuò; tā zài Měiguó Yínháng gōngzuò.

他/她不在武官处工作。他/她在美国银行工作。

He doesn't work in the military attaché's office; he works in the Bank of America.

5. Tā zài yóuzhèngjú gōngzuò ma?

他/她在邮政局工作吗？

Does he work in the post office?

Cue

Táiwān Yínháng

台湾银行

Bank of Taiwan

Tā bú zài yóuzhèngjú gōngzuò; tā zài Táiwān Yínháng gōngzuò.

他/她不在邮政局工作。他/她在台湾银行工作。

He doesn't work in the post office; he works in the Bank of Taiwan.

6. Lín xiānsheng zài nàlǐ gōngzuò ma?

林先生在那里工作吗？

Does Mr. Lín work there?

Cue

zhèlǐ

这里

here

Tā bú zài nàlǐ gōngzuò; tā zài zhèlǐ gōngzuò.

他不在那里工作。他在这里工作。

He doesn't work here; he works there.

7. Liú xiǎojiě zài Táiběi gōngzuò ma?

刘小姐在台北工作吗？

Does Miss Liú work in Taipei?

Cue

Táizhōng

台中

T'ai-chung

Tā bú zài Táiběi gōngzuò; tā zài Táizhōng gōngzuò.

她不在台北工作。她在台中工作。

She doesn't work in Taipei; she works in T'ai-chung.

## Response drill

Give an affirmative or negative response according to the cues.

1. Tā zài Táiběi gōngzuò ma?  
他/她在台北工作吗?  
Does he/she work in Taipei?

Cue Táiběi  
台北  
Taipei

Dui le, tā zài Táiběi gōngzuò.  
对了，他/她在台北工作。  
Yes, he/she works in Taipei.

2. Tā zài Táiběi gōngzuò ma?  
他/她在台北工作吗?  
Does he/she work in Taipei?

Cue Táinán  
台南  
T'ai-nan

Tā bú zài Táiběi gōngzuò; tā zài Táinán gōngzuò.  
他/她不在台北工作。他/她在台南工作。  
No, he/she doesn't work in Taipei. he/she works in T'ai-nan.

3. Tā zài Táizhōng gōngzuò ma?  
他/她在台中工作吗?  
Does he/she work in T'ai-chung.

Cue Jílóng  
基隆  
Chi-lung

Tā bú zài Táizhōng gōngzuò; tā zài Jílóng gōngzuò.  
他/她不在台中工作吗。他/她在基隆工作。  
No he/she doesn't work in T'ai-chung. He/she works in Chi-lung.

4. Tā zài zhèli gōngzuò ma?  
他/她在这里工作吗？  
Does he/she work here?

Cue zhèli  
这里  
here

Duì le, tā zài zhèli gōngzuò.  
对了，他/她在这里工作。  
Yes, he/she works here.

5. Tā zài yóuzhèngjú gōngzuò ma?  
他/她在邮政局工作吗？  
Does he/she work at the post office?

Cue Táiwān yínháng  
台湾银行  
Bank of Taiwan

Tā bú zài yóuzhèngjú gōngzuò; tā zài Táiwān Yínháng gōngzuò.  
他/她不在邮政局工作。他/她在台湾银行工作吗。  
He/she doesn't work at the post office. He/she works at the Bank of Taiwan.

6. Tā zài Wǔguānchù gōngzuò ma?  
他/她在武官处工作吗？  
Does he/she work at the defense attache office?

Cue zhèli  
这里  
here

Tā bú zài Wǔguānchù gōngzuò; tā zài zhèli gōngzuò.  
他/她不在武官处工作。他/她在这里工作。  
No, he/she doesn't work at the defense attache office. He/she works here.

7. Tā zài Měiguó Yínháng gōngzuò ma?  
他/她在美国银行工作吗？  
Does he/she work at the Bank of America?



Cue

Měiguó Yínháng

美国银行

Bank of America

Dui le, tā zài Měiguó Yínháng gōngzuò.

对了，他/她在美国银行工作。

Yes, he/she works at the Bank of America.

## Unit 3

### Introduction

#### Topics covered in this unit

1. Members of a family.
2. The plural ending **-men**.
3. The question word **jǐ**- “how many.”
4. The adverb **dōu** “all.”
5. Several ways to express “and.”

#### Material you will need

1. The C-1 and P-1 tapes, the Reference List and Reference Notes.
2. The C-2 and P-2 tapes, the Workbook.
3. The 3D-1 tape.

## References

### Reference List

1. A: Nǐmen yǒu hái zi ma?  
你们有孩子吗？  
Do you have children?  
B: Yǒu, wǒmen yǒu.  
有，我们有。  
Yes, we have.
  
2. B: Liú xiānsheng yǒu Měiguó péngyou ma?  
刘先生有美国朋友吗？  
Does Mr Liú have any American friends?  
A: Tā méiyǒu Měiguó péngyou.  
他没有美国朋友。  
He doesn't have any American friends.  
A: Tā yǒu Yīngguó péngyou.  
他有英国朋友。  
He has English friends. (or an English friend)
  
3. A: Nǐmen yǒu jǐ ge hái zi?  
你们有几个孩子？  
How many children do you have?  
B: Wǒmen yǒu sān ge hái zi.  
我们三个孩子。  
We have three children.
  
4. A: Nǐmen yǒu jǐ ge nán hái zi, jǐ ge nǚ hái zi?  
你们有几个男孩子，几个女孩子？  
How many boys and how many girls do you have?  
B: Wǒmen yǒu liǎng ge nán hái zi, yī ge nǚ hái zi.  
我们两个男孩子，一个女孩子。  
We have two boys and one girl.
  
5. B: Shì nán hái zi, shì nǚ hái zi?  
是男孩子，是女孩子？  
Are they boys or girls?

- A: Tāmen dōu shì nǚháizi.  
他们都是女孩子。  
All of them are girls.
6. B: Hú xiānsheng, tàitai ne? Tāmen yǒu jǐge hái zi?  
胡先生，太太呢？他们有几个孩子？  
How about Mr. and Mrs. Hú? How many children do they have?  
A: Tāmen yǒu liǎngge hái zi.  
他们有两个孩子。  
They have two children.  
B: Shì nánháizi, shì nǚháizi?  
是男孩子，是女孩子？  
Are they boys or girls?  
A: Dōu shì nǚháizi.  
都是女孩子。  
Both of them are girls.
7. A: Nǐmen hái zi dōu zài zhèlǐ ma?  
你们孩子都在这里吗？  
Are all your children here?  
B: Bù, liǎngge zài zhèlǐ, yíge hái zài Měiguó.  
不，两个在这里，一个还在美国。  
No. Two are here, and one is still in America.
8. A: Nǐ jiāli yǒu shénme rén?  
你家里有什么人？  
What people are (there) in your family?  
B: Yǒu wǒ tàitai gēn sāngè hái zi.  
有我太太跟三个孩子。  
There's my wife and three children.
9. B: Nǐ jiāli yǒu shénme rén?  
你家里有什么人？  
What people are (there) in your family?  
A: Jiù (yǒu) wǒ fùqin, mǔqin.  
就（有）我父亲，母亲。  
Just my father and mother.

## Vocabulary

zhǐ	只	only
dìdì	弟弟	younger brother
gēge	哥哥	older brother
jiějie	姐姐	older sister
mèimei	妹妹	younger sister
xiōngdì	兄弟	brothers
jiěmèi	姐妹	sisters
xiōngdì jiěmèi	兄弟姐妹	brothers and sisters
fùmǔ	父母	parents
zǔfù	祖父	paternal grandfather
zǔmǔ	祖母	paternal grandmother
wàizǔfù	外祖父	maternal grandfather
wàizǔmǔ	外祖母	maternal grandmother
bàba	爸爸	papa, dad, father
māma	妈妈	momma, mom, mother
dōu	都	all, both
fùqin	父亲	father
gēn	跟	and, with, and (in addition to)
hái	还	still, yet
háizi	孩子	children, child
jǐ-	几—	how many
jiāli	家里	family
jǐge	几个	how many
jiù	就	only, just
liǎng-	两	two
méi	没	not, not to have
méiyǒu	没有	not to have, there is not
-men	们	plural suffix
mǔqin	母亲	mother
nán-	男—	male
nánháizi	男孩子	boy

nǐmen	你们	you (plural)
nǚ-	女—	female
nǚháizi	女孩子	girl
tāmen	他们	they, them
wǒmen	我们	we, us
yǒu	有	to have, there is
zhǐ	只	only
yíng le	赢了	I('ve) won

## Reference Notes

## Notes on №1

1. A: **Nǐmen yǒu háizi ma?**  
 你们有孩子吗？  
 Do you have children?
- B: **Yǒu, wǒmen yǒu.**  
 有，我们有。  
 Yes, we have.

The plural pronouns are formed by adding -men to the singular pronouns

singular		plural	
wǒ	I	wǒmen	we
我		我们	
nǐ	you	nǐmen	you
你		你们	
tā	he/she	tāmen	they
他/她		他/她们	

(You have already seen these pronoun forms used as possessives: “my,” “our,” etc. Later you will find that they are also used as objects: “me,” “us,” etc.)

**Háizi:** Chinese nouns have the same form for singular and plural.

**Háizi** may be either “child” or “children.”<sup>3</sup> Usually the context will make clear whether a noun should be translated as singular or as plural, but not always. Chinese does not require that the matter be pinned down to the same extent that English does.

**Wǒmen yǒu háizi** is a perfectly good sentence, even though the only accurate translation is the clumsy “We have one or more children.” We would prefer to have enough information to translate it either as “We have a child” or as “We have children.”

At times this ambiguity is an advantage. When you ask **Nǐmen yǒu háizi ma?** you do not, after all, know whether you are referring to one child or to more than one child. To cover both bets in the same way in English, we have to say “Do you have any children?”

<sup>3</sup>A few nouns referring to people may be made explicitly plural by adding -men. **Háizimen** can only be “children”

### Notes on №2

2. B: Liú xiānsheng yǒu Měiguó péngyou ma?  
刘先生有美国朋友吗?  
Does Mr Liú have any American friends?
- B: Tā méiyǒu Měiguó péngyou.  
他没有美国朋友。  
He doesn't have any American friends.
- A: Tā yǒu Yīngguó péngyou.  
他有英国朋友。  
He has English friends. (or an English friend)

**Méi you:** All the verbs discussed so far form the negative with **bù**, with the single exception of **yǒu**, “to have,” which has the irregular negative form **méiyǒu**.



## Notes on №3–4

3. A: Nǐmen yǒu jǐge hái'zi?  
你们有几个孩子？  
How many children do you have?
- B: Wǒmen yǒu sānge hái'zi.  
我们三个孩子。  
We have three children.
4. A: Nǐmen yǒu jǐge nánhái'zi, jǐge nǚhái'zi?  
你们有几个男孩子，几个女孩子？  
How many boys and how many girls do you have?
- B: Wǒmen yǒu liǎngge nánhái'zi, yíge nǚhái'zi.  
我们两个男孩子，一个女孩子。

In Peking speech, *jǐ-*, “how many,” is usually used only when the number expected in an answer is about 10 or less. In many other parts of China, speakers use *jǐ-* no matter how large a number is expected in the answer.

**Counters:** In Chinese, a noun cannot be counted or specified (i.e., used with *něi-* “which,” *nèi-* “that,” *zhèi-* “this”) without the addition of a bound word, a counter, to indicate the sort of thing being specified or counted. English has a few such counters, as “head” in “how many head of cattle” and “loaves” in “seven loaves of bread.”

The counter used in a particular instance depends on the noun being specified or counted. Many nouns have special counters. You have already learned the polite counter for persons, *-wèi*. Other special counters refer in some way to the kind of thing the noun represents. The word for “hotel,” for instance, has a special counter *-jiā*, “house,” used for counting or specifying business establishments.

The general counter *-ge* is used with nouns that do not have special counters. For example, there is no special counter for the word *pùbù*, “waterfall,” so you would say *yíge pùbù*, “one waterfall.” You have already found the general counter *-ge* in specifying expressions such as *něige hái'zi*, “which child,” and *zhèige fàndiàn*, “this hotel.”

You may find that, in colloquial speech, nouns that have special counters are sometimes used with *-ge* anyway, but this tendency is looked down upon by many speakers.

Here are the numbers 1 through 10 with the counter *-ge*:

*yíge liǎngge sānge sìge wǔge liùge qíge bāge jiǔge shíge*

The number 2 has a special form before a counter: *liǎng-*. Notice that the words for 1, 2, and 8 have Rising tones before *-ge*, because *-ge* is basically a Falling-tone syllable. (See also Unit 5, notes on No. 9 and No. 10.)

**Nán- nǚ-:** The “bound words *nán-* “male,” and *nǚ-* “female,” are often used in compounds; for example, *nán péngyou*, “boyfriend,” and *nǚ tóngzhì* “(woman) Comrade.”

**And:** In Chinese, a word for “and” is not needed between parallel phrases like *liǎngge nánhái'zi, yíge nǚhái'zi* “two boys, (and) one girl.” A pause is usual between the two phrases, but even the pause is sometimes omitted.

Notes on №5–7

5. B: **Shì nánháizi, shì nǚháizi?**  
是男孩子，是女孩子？  
Are they boys or girls?  
A: **Tāmen dōu shì nǚháizi.**  
他们都是女孩子。  
All of them are girls.
6. B: **Hú xiānsheng, tàitai ne? tāmen yǒu jǐge háizi?**  
胡先生，太太呢？他们有几个孩子？  
How about Mr. and Mrs. Hú? How many children do they have?  
A: **Tāmen yǒu liǎngge háizi.**  
他们有两个孩子。  
They have two children.  
B: **Shì nánháizi, shì nǚháizi?**  
是男孩子，是女孩子？  
Are they boys or girls?  
A: **Dōu shì nǚháizi.**  
都是女孩子。  
Both of them are girls.
7. A: **Nǐmen háizi dōu zài zhèlǐ ma?**  
你们孩子都在这里吗？  
Are all your children here?  
B: **Bù, liǎngge zài zhèlǐ, yíge hái zài Měiguó.**  
不，两个在这里，一个还在美国。  
No. Two are here, and one is still in America.

**Shì nánháizi, shì nǚháizi?** In Chinese, an “or” question (i.e., a question asking which of two alternatives is true) may be asked simply by stating the two alternatives with a pause between. In this kind of question, the verb must appear in each alternative. (You will learn other ways of making “or” questions in later modules.)

**Dōu** may usually be translated in a sentence as “all (of),” or, if it refers to only two things, as “both (of).” Literally, **dōu** means “in all cases,” “uniformly,” “entirely,” “completely.” Since it is an adverb, it must be placed after the subject of a sentence and before the verb (like the adverb **yě**, “also”).

Notes on №8–9

8. A: Nǐ jiāli yǒu shénme rén?  
你家里有什么人?  
What people are (there) in your family?
- B: Yǒu wǒ tàitai gēn sānge háiizi.  
有我太太跟三个孩子。  
There's my wife and three children.
9. B: Nǐ jiāli yǒu shénme rén?  
你家里有什么人?  
What people are (there) in your family?
- A: Jiù yǒu wǒ fùqin, mǔqin.  
就有我父亲，母亲。  
Just my father and mother.

Literally, the phrase *nǐ jiāli* means “in your home” (*jiā*, “home”; *-li*, “in”#. In this sentence it is extended to mean “the people in your home, “that is, “your family.”

*Nǐ jiāli - yǒu - shénme rén?* Phrase by phrase, this question is: “In your family - there are - what people?,” The word “family” can be taken to mean either all your relatives or only those living in your household.

By itself, the verb *yǒu* means “to “be,” “to exist.” You have now seen it translated two ways:

- as “have,” with a personal subject: *Wǒmen yǒu sānge háiizi.* “We have three children.”
- as “there is/are,” in the so-called impersonal construction: *Nǐ jiāli yǒu shénme rén?* “What people are (there) in your family?”

In exchange 8, the verb *yǒu* in the answer is translated as “there’s.” Some English speakers may find this translation too colloquial. The answer can also be translated Just by listing the family members, with no verb in the English, as was done in exchange 9. Chinese almost always keeps the verb in the answer to a question, while English tends to leave it out.

**How to say “and”:** Chinese has several words for “and.” *Gēn* is the word for “and” when joining nouns or noun phrases. *Yě* is the word for “and” when Joining verbs, verb phrases, or whole sentences:

**Example 2.1. Example:**

*Wǒ bú xìng Lǐ, yě bú xìng Lǚ. Wǒ xìng Lǚ.*

I’m not surnamed *Lǐ* and I’m not surnamed *Lǚ*. I’m surnamed *Lǚ*.

Chinese tends to use a word for “and” when the noun phrases being Joined are not parallel and not to use one when the phrases are parallel:

Not parallel				
<i>Yǒu</i>	<i>wǒ tàitai</i> Possessor noun	<i>gēn</i>	<i>sānge háiizi.</i> number noun	There’s my wife and 3 children.

Parallel				
Yǒu	liǎnge nánháizi number noun	,	yíge nǚháizi. number noun	There are 2 boys and one girl.

While “and” is often omitted in Chinese, it may be added for emphasis between nouns and between noun phrases just as in English.

**Jiù**, “only,” “just,” is an adverb (like **yě** and **dōu**). The use of **jiù** to mean “only” is probably mostly confined to the Peking dialect.<sup>4</sup> Speakers from other parts of the country will not necessarily use **jiù** to mean “only” or understand it as such. A more widely used and understood word for “only” is **zhǐ**. Thus the answer in exchange 9 could also be: **Zhǐ yǒu wǒ fùqin, mǔqin.**

<sup>4</sup>**Jiù** has several other meanings, which will be presented to you as you continue through this course.

## Notes on additional vocabulary

Chinese is much more precise than English in its terms for family members. There is not just one word for “brother,” or “sister” but words for “older brother,” “younger brother,” “older sister,” and “younger sister.”

	older	younger		
brother	gēge	didi	brothers	xiōngdì
	哥哥	弟弟		兄弟
sister	jiějie	mèimei	sisters	jiěmèi
	姐姐	妹妹		姐妹

When referring to both older and younger sisters, the term **jiěmèi** is used. When referring to both older and younger brothers, the term **xiōngdì** is used. When referring to sisters and brothers, the phrase **xiōngdì jiěmèi** is used.

Chinese also distinguishes between grandparents on the father’s side of the family and grandparents on the mother’s side:

	father’s side	mother’s side
grandfather	zǔfù	wàizǔfù
	祖父	外祖父
grandmother	zǔmǔ	wàizǔmǔ
	祖母	外祖母

The syllable **wài-** in **wàizǔfù** and **wàizǔmǔ** literally means “outer” or “outside.”

## Drills

### Response drill

Give affirmatives answers using **yǒu**.

1. Tā yǒu Měiguó pényou ma?  
他/她有美国朋友吗？  
Does he/she have any American friends?

Yǒu, tā yǒu Měiguó péngyou.  
有，他/她有美国朋友。  
Yes, he/she has some American friends.

2. Tā yǒu Zhōngguó péngyou ma?  
他/她有中国朋友吗？  
Does he/she have any Chinese friends?

Yǒu, tā yǒu Zhōngguó péngyou.  
有，他/她有中国朋友。  
Yes, he/she has some Chinese friends.

3. Tā yǒu Déguó péngyou ma?  
他/她有德国朋友吗？  
Does he/she have any German friends?

Yǒu, tā yǒu Déguó péngyou.  
有，他/她有德国朋友。  
Yes, he/she has some German friends.

4. Tā yǒu Rìběn péngyou ma?  
他/她有日本朋友吗？  
Does he/she have any Japanese friends?

Yǒu, tā yǒu Rìběn péngyou.  
有，他/她有日本朋友。  
Yes, he/she has some Japanese friends.

5. Tā yǒu Jiānádà péngyou ma?

他/她有加拿大朋友吗？

Does he/she have any Canadian friends?

Yǒu, tā yǒu Jiānádà pényou.

有，他/她有加拿大朋友。

Yes, he/she has some Canadian friends.

6. Tā yǒu Èguo péngyou ma?

他/她有俄国朋友吗？

Does he/she have any Russian friends?

Yǒu, tā yǒu Èguo péngyou.

有，他/她有俄国朋友。

Yes, he/she has some Russian friends.

7. Tā yǒu Yīngguó péngyou ma?

他/她有英国朋友吗？

Does he/she have any English friends?

Yǒu, tā yǒu Yīngguó péngyou.

有，他/她有英国朋友。

Yes, he/she has some English friends.

## Response drill

Give affirmatives answers using **yǒu**.

1. Tā yǒu gēge ma?

他/她有哥哥吗？

Does he/she have an older brother?

Yǒu, tā yǒu gēge.

有，他/她有哥哥。

Yes, he/she has an older brother.

2. Tā yǒu jiějie ma?

他/她有姐姐吗？

Does he/she have an older sister?

Yǒu, tā yǒu jiějie.

有，他/她有姐姐。

Yes, he/she has an older sister.

3. Tā yǒu dìdi ma?

他/她有弟弟吗？

Does he/she have a younger brother?

Yǒu, tā yǒu dìdi.

有，他/她有弟弟。

Yes, he/she has a younger brother.

4. Tā yǒu mèimei ma?

他/她有妹妹吗？

Does he/she have a younger sister?

Yǒu, tā yǒu mèimei.

有，他/她有妹妹。

Yes, he/she has a younger sister.

5. Tāmen yǒu háizi ma?

他/她有孩子吗？

Does he/she have children?



Yǒu, tāmen yǒu hái zi.

有，他/她有孩子。

Yes, he/she has children.

6. Tāmen yǒu nán hái zi ma?

他/她有男孩子吗？

Does he/she have boys?

Yǒu, tāmen yǒu nán hái zi.

有，他/她有男孩子。

Yes, he/she has boys.

7. Tāmen yǒu nǚ hái zi ma?

他/她有女孩子吗？

Does he/she have girls?

Yǒu, tāmen yǒu nǚ hái zi.

有，他/她有女孩子？

Yes, he/she has girls.

## Response drill

Give negative answers using **méiyou**.

1. Zhāng xiānsheng yǒu jiějie ma?

张先生有姐姐吗？

Does Mr. Zhāng have an older sister?

Méiyou, Zhāng xiānsheng méiyou jiějie.

没有，张先生没有姐姐。

No, Mr. Zhāng doesn't have an older sister.

2. Wáng xiānsheng yǒu nǚháizi ma?

王先生有女孩子吗？

Does Mr. Wáng have a daughter?

Méiyou, Wáng xiānsheng méiyou nǚháizi.

没有，王先生没有女孩子。

No, Mr. Wáng doesn't have a daughter.

3. Lín xiānsheng yǒu mèimei ma?

林先生有妹妹吗？

Does Mr. Lín have a younger sister?

Méiyou, Lín xiānsheng méiyou mèimei.

没有，林先生没有妹妹。

No, Mr. Lín doesn't have a younger sister.

4. Tā tàitai yǒu gēge ma?

他太太有哥哥吗？

Does his wife have an older brother?

Méiyou, Tā tàitai méiyou gēge.

没有，他太太没有哥哥。

No, his wife doesn't have an older brother.

5. Huáng xiǎojiě yǒu dìdi ma?

黄小姐有弟弟吗？

Does Miss Huáng have a younger brother?

Méiyóu, Huáng xiǎojiě méiyóu dìdì.

没有，黄小姐没有弟弟。

No, Miss Huáng doesn't have a younger brother.

6. Mǎ xiānsheng, Mǎ tàitai yǒu háizi ma?

马先生，马太太有孩子吗？

Do Mr. Mǎ, Mrs. Mǎ have children?

Méiyóu, Mǎ xiānsheng, Mǎ tàitai méiyóu háizi.

没有，马先生，马太太没有孩子。

No, Mr. Mǎ, Mrs. Mǎ don't have children.

7. Yáng tàitai yǒu nánháizi ma?

杨太太有男孩子吗？

Does Mrs. Yáng have boys?

Méiyóu, Yáng tàitai méiyóu nánháizi.

没有，杨太太没有男孩子。

No, Mrs. Yáng doesn't have boys.

## Response drill

Give a negative or affirmative response to each question according to the cue.

1. Nǐ yǒu dìdì ma?  
你有弟弟吗?  
Do you have a younger brother?

Cue yǒu  
有  
yes

Yǒu, wǒ yǒu dìdì.  
有，我有弟弟。  
Yes, I have a younger brother.

2. Nǐ yǒu dìdì ma?  
你有弟弟吗?  
Do you have an older brother?

Cue méiyǒu  
没有  
no

Méiyǒu, wǒ méiyǒu dìdì.  
没有，我没有弟弟。  
No, I don't have an older brother.

3. Tā yǒu mèimei ma?  
他/她有妹妹吗?  
Does he/she have a younger sister?

Cue méiyǒu  
没有  
no

Méiyǒu, tā méiyǒu mèimei.  
没有，他/她没有妹妹。  
No, he/she doesn't have a younger sister.

4. Wáng tóngzhì yǒu gēge ma?  
王同志有哥哥吗？  
Does Comrade Wáng have an older brother?

Cue yǒu  
没有  
yes

Yǒu, Wáng tóngzhì yǒu gēge.  
有，王同志有哥哥。  
Yes, Comrade Wáng has an older brother.

5. Tāmen yǒu hái zi ma?  
他们有孩子吗？  
Do you have children?

Cue yǒu  
有  
yes

Yǒu, tāmen yǒu hái zi.  
有，他们有孩子。  
Yes, we have children.

6. Guō tóngzhì yǒu Yīngguó péngyou ma?  
郭同志有英国朋友吗？  
Does Comrade Guō have an English friend?

Cue méiyǒu  
没有  
no

Méiyǒu, Guō tóngzhì méiyǒu Yīngguó péngyou.  
没有，郭同志没有英国朋友。  
No, Comrade Guō doesn't have an English friend.

7. Chén xiānsheng yǒu Fàguó péngyou ma?  
陈先生有法国朋友吗？  
Does Mr. Chén have a French friend?

Cue

yǒu

有

yes

Yǒu, Chén xiānsheng yǒu Fàguó péngyou.

有，陈先生有法国朋友。

Yes, Mr. Chén has a French friend.

## Transformation drill

Change each **ma** question to a **jǐ** question.

1. Tāmen yǒu hái'izi ma?

他们有孩子吗？

Do they have any children?

Tāmen yǒu jǐge hái'izi?

他们有几个孩子？

How many children do they have?

2. Wáng xiānsheng yǒu jiějie ma?

王先生有姐姐吗？

Does Mr. Wáng have an older sister?

Wáng xiānsheng yǒu jǐge jiějie?

王先生有几个姐姐？

How many older sisters does have Mr Wáng?

3. Tāmen yǒu nánhái'izi ma?

他们有男孩子吗？

Do they have any boys?

Tāmen yǒu jǐge nánhái'izi?

他们有几个男孩子？

How many boys do they have?

4. Nǐmen yǒu nǚhái'izi ma?

你们有女孩子吗？

Do you have daughters?

Nǐmen yǒu jǐge nǚhái'izi?

你们有几个女孩子？

How many daughters do you have?

5. Fāng xiǎojiě yǒu gēge ma?

方小姐有哥哥吗？

Does Miss Fāng have an older brother?

Fāng xiǎojiě yǒu jǐge gēge?

方小姐有几个哥哥？

How many older brothers does Miss Fāng have?

6. Zhào tàitai yǒu dìdì ma?

赵太太有弟弟吗？

Does Mrs. Zhào have a younger brother?

Zhào tàitai yǒu jǐge dìdì?

赵太太有几个弟弟？

How many younger brothers does Mrs. Zhào have?

7. Tā yǒu Zhōngguo péngyou ma?

他/她有中国朋友吗？

Does he/she have a Chinese friend?

Tā yǒu jǐge Zhōngguo péngyou?

他/她有几个中国朋友？

How many Chinese friends does he/she have?



## Response drill

Respond to the questions according to the cue.

1. Zhāng tóngzhì yǒu jǐge hái zi?  
张同志有几个孩子？  
How many children does Comrade Zhāng have?

Cue 2

Zhāng tóngzhì yǒu liǎngge hái zi.  
张同志有两个孩子。  
Comrade Zhāng has 2 children.

2. Zhào tóngzhì yǒu jǐge nǚ hái zi?  
赵同志有几个女孩子？  
How many daughters does Comrade Zhào have?

Cue 1

Zhào tóngzhì yǒu yíge nǚ hái zi.  
赵同志有一个女孩子。  
Comrade Zhào has 1 daughter.

3. Chén tóngzhì yǒu jǐge nán hái zi?  
陈同志有几个男孩子？  
How many boys does Comrade Chén have?

Cue 3

Chén tóngzhì yǒu sāngè nán hái zi.  
陈同志有三个男孩子。  
Comrade Chén has 3 boys.

4. Jiāng tóngzhì yǒu jǐge Měi guo péng you.  
江同志有几个美国朋友？  
How many American friends does Comrade Jiāng have?

Cue 5

Jiāng tóngzhì yǒu wǔge Měiguó péngyou.

江同志有五个美国朋友。

Comrade Jiāng has 5 American friends.

5. Fāng tóngzhì yǒu jǐge mèimei?

方同志有几个妹妹？

How many younger sisters does Comrade Fāng have?

Cue 1

Fāng tóngzhì yǒu yíge mèimei.

方同志有一个妹妹。

Comrade Fāng has 1 younger sister.

6. Wáng xiānsheng yǒu jǐge Zhōngguó péngyou?

王先生有几个中国朋友？

How many Chinese friends does Mr. Wáng have?

Cue 2

Wáng xiānsheng yǒu liǎngge Zhōngguó péngyou.

王先生有两个中国朋友。

Mr. Wáng has 2 Chinese friends.

7. Tā yǒu jǐge gēge?

他/她有几个哥哥？

How many older brothers does he/she have?

Cue 3

Tā yǒu sānge gēge.

他/她有三个哥哥。

He/she has 3 older brothers.

## Expansion drill

### Add the cues to the questions.

1. Tā yǒu jǐge nánháizi?

他/她有几个男孩子？

How many sons does he/she have?

Cue

nǚháizi

女孩子

daughter

Tā yǒu jǐge nánháizi, jǐge nǚháizi?

他/她有几个男孩子，几个女孩子？

How many sons and how many daughters does he/she have?

2. Huáng xiānsheng yǒu jǐge Měiguó péngyou?

黄先生有几个美国朋友？

How many American friends does Mr. Huáng have?

Cue

Fàguo péngyou

法国朋友

French friend

Huáng xiānsheng yǒu jǐge Měiguó péngyou, jǐge Fàguo péngyou?

黄先生有几个美国朋友，几个法国朋友？

How many American friends and how many French friends does Mr. Huáng have?

3. Lǐ tàitai yǒu jǐge gēge?

李太太有几个哥哥？

How many older brothers does Mrs. Lǐ have?

Cue

didi

弟弟

younger brother

Lǐ tàitai yǒu jǐge gēge, jǐge didi?

李太太有几个哥哥，几个弟弟？

How many older brothers and how many younger brothers does Mrs. Lǐ have?

4. Sūn xiǎojiě yǒu jǐge jiějie?  
孙小姐有几个姐姐？  
How many older sisters does Miss Sūn have?

Cue mèimei  
妹妹  
younger sister

Sūn xiǎojiě yǒu jǐge jiějie, jǐge mèimei?  
孙小姐有几个姐姐，几个妹妹？  
How many older sisters and how many younger sisters does Miss Sūn have?

5. Tāmen yǒu jǐge Yīngguo péngyou?  
他们有几个英国朋友？  
How many English friends do they have?

Cue Déguo péngyou  
德国朋友  
German friend

Tāmen yǒu jǐge Yīngguo péngyou, jǐge Déguo péngyou?  
他们有几个英国朋友，几个德国朋友？  
How many English and German friends do they have?

6. Sòng xiānsheng yǒu jǐge nánháizi?  
宋先生有几个男孩子？  
How many sons does Mr. Sòng have?

Cue nǚháizi  
女孩子  
daughter

Sòng xiānsheng yǒu jǐge nánháizi, jǐge nǚháizi?  
宋先生有几个男孩子，几个女孩子？  
How many sons and how many daughters does Mr. Sòng have?

7. Tā yǒu jǐge gēge?  
他/她有几个哥哥？  
How many older brothers does he/she have?

Cue

jiějie

姐姐

older sister

Tā yǒu jǐge gēge, jǐge jiějie?

他/她有几个哥哥，几个姐姐？

How many older brothers and how many older sisters does he/she have?

## Response drill

Use 1) **jiù** + the number and 2) **méiyóu** to answer each question.

1. Tā yǒu jǐge nánháizi, jǐge nǚháizi?

他/她有几个男孩子，几个女孩子？

How many sons and how many daughters does he/she have?

Cue 2

Tā jiù yǒu liǎngge nánháizi, méiyóu nǚháizi.

他/她就有两个男孩子，没有女孩子。

2. Lǐ xiānsheng yǒu jǐge gēge, jǐge jiějie?

李先生有几个哥哥，几个姐姐？

How many older brothers and how many older sisters does Mr. **Lǐ** have?

Cue 1

Tā jiù yǒu yíge gēge, méiyóu jiějie.

他就有一个哥哥，没有姐姐。

3. Zhāng xiǎojiě yǒu jǐge jiějie, jǐge mèimei?

张小姐有几个姐姐，几个妹妹？

How many older sisters and how many younger sisters does Miss **Zhāng** have?

Cue 2

Tā jiù yǒu liǎngge jiějie, méiyóu mèimei.

她就有两个姐姐，没有妹妹。

4. Zhōu tàitai yǒu jǐge gēge, jǐge didi?

周太太有几个哥哥，几个弟弟？

How many older brothers and how many younger brothers does Mrs. **Zhōu** have?

Cue 1

Tā jiù yǒu yíge gēge, méiyǒu dìdì.

她就有一个哥哥，没有弟弟。

5. Hú xiānsheng yǒu jǐge dìdì, jǐge mèimei?

胡先生有几个弟弟，几个妹妹？

How many younger brothers and how many younger sisters does Mr. Hú have?

Cue 2

Tā jiù yǒu liǎngge dìdì, méiyǒu mèimei.

他就有两个弟弟，没有妹妹。

6. Tā yǒu jǐge Fàguó péngyou, jǐge Déguó péngyou?

他/她有几个法国朋友，几个德国朋友？

How many French friends and how many German friends does he/she have?

Cue 2

Tā jiù yǒu liǎngge Fàguó péngyou, méiyǒu Déguó péngyou.

他/她就有两个法国朋友，没有德国朋友。

7. Tāmen yǒu jǐge nánháizi, jǐge nǚháizi?

他们有几个男孩子，几个女孩子？

How many sons and how many daughters do they have?

Cue 1

Tāmen jiù yǒu yíge nánháizi, méiyǒu nǚháizi.

他们有一个男孩子，没有女孩子。

## Response drill

### Respond according to the cue.

1. Tā yǒu jǐge nánháizi, jǐge nǚháizi?

他/她有几个男孩子，几个女孩子？

How many sons and how many daughters does he/she have?

Cue 2, 3

Tā yǒu liǎngge nánháizi, sānge nǚháizi.

他/她有两个男孩子，三个女孩子。

He/she has 2 sons and 3 daughters.

2. Zhōu tóngzhì yǒu jǐge gēge, jǐge dìdì?

周同志有几个哥哥，几个弟弟？

How many older brothers and how many younger brothers does Comrade Zhōu have?

Cue 1, 2

Zhōu tóngzhì yǒu yíge gēge, liǎngge dìdì.

周同志有一个哥哥，两个弟弟。

Comrade Zhōu has one older brother and two younger brothers.

3. Zhāng tóngzhì yǒu jǐge jiějie, jǐge mèimei?

张同志有几个姐姐，几个妹妹？

How many older sisters and how many younger sisters does Comrade Zhāng have.

Cue 3, 1

Zhāng tóngzhì yǒu sānge jiějie, yíge mèimei.

张同志有三个姐姐，一个妹妹。

Comrade Zhāng has 3 older sisters and one younger sister.

4. Tāmen yǒu jǐge Zhōngguó péngyou, jǐge Riběn péngyou?

他们有几个中国朋友，几个日本朋友？

How many Chinese friends and how many Japanese friends do they have?

Cue 5, 1



Tāmen yǒu wǔge Zhōngguo péngyou, yíge Riběn péngyou.

他们有五个中国朋友，一个日本朋友。

They have 5 Chinese friends and one Japanese friend.

5. Chén tóngzhì yǒu jǐge Yīngguo péngyou, jǐge Déguo péngyou?

陈同志有几个英国朋友，几个德国朋友？

How many English friends and how many German friends does Comrade Chén have?

Cue 3, 2

Chén tóngzhì yǒu sānge Yīngguo péngyou, liǎngge Déguo péngyou.

陈同志有三个英国朋友，两个德国朋友。

Comrade Chén has 3 English friends and 3 German friends.

6. Liú tóngzhì yǒu jǐge nánháizi, jǐge nǚháizi?

刘同志有几个男孩子，几个女孩子？

How many sons and how many daughters does comrade Liú have?

Cue 2, 2

Liú tóngzhì yǒu liǎngge nánháizi, liǎngge nǚháizi.

刘同志有两个男孩子，两个女孩子。

Comrade Liú has 2 sons and 2 daughters.

7. Tā yǒu jǐge jiějie, jǐge gēge?

他/她有几个姐姐，几个哥哥？

How many older sisters and how many older brothers does he/she have?

Cue 1, 3

Tā yǒu yíge jiějie, sānge gēge.

他/她有一个姐姐，三个哥哥。

He/she has one older sister and 3 older brothers.

## Response drill

The speaker will ask you 2 questions for each exchange. Use the number cue to answer the first question. Answer the second question with **Dōu** and the first alternative.

1. Qǐngwèn, tāmen yǒu jǐge hái'zi?  
请问，他们有几个孩子？  
May I ask, how many children do you have?

Cue 2  
2  
2

Tāmen yǒu liǎngge hái'zi.  
他们有两个孩子。  
They have 2 children.

2. Shi nánhái'zi, shi nǚhái'zi?  
是男孩子，是女孩子？  
Are they boys or girls?

Cue Dōu  
都  
all

Dōu shi nánhái'zi.  
都是男孩子。  
Both of them are boys.

3. Qǐngwèn, tā yǒu jǐge xiōngdì?  
请问，他/她有几个兄弟？  
May I ask, how many brothers does he/she have?

Cue 3  
3  
3

Tā yǒu sāngè xiōngdì.  
他/她有三个兄弟。

He/she has 3 brothers.

4. Shi gēge, shi dìdì?  
是哥哥，是弟弟？  
Are they older or younger brothers?

Cue Dōu  
都  
all

Dōu shi gēge.  
都是哥哥。  
All of them are older brothers.

5. Qǐngwèn, tā yǒu jǐge jiěmèi?  
请问，他/她有几个姐妹？  
May I ask, how many sisters does he/she have?

Cue 2  
2  
2

Tā yǒu liǎngge jiěmèi.  
他/她有两个姐妹。  
He/she has 2 sisters.

6. Shi jiějie, shi mèimei?  
是姐姐，是妹妹？  
Are they older or younger sisters?

Cue Dōu  
都  
all

都是姐姐。  
Dōu shi jiějie.  
Both of them are older sisters.

7. Qǐngwèn, tā yǒu jǐge Zhōngguo péngyou?  
请问，他/她有几个中国朋友？

May I ask, how many Chinese friends does he/she have?

Cue 4  
4  
4

Tā yǒu sìge Zhōngguó péngyou.

他/她有四个中国朋友。

He/she has 4 Chinese friends.

8. Shì nán péngyou, shì nǚ péngyou?

是男朋友，是女朋友？

Are they male or female friends?

Cue Dōu  
都  
all

Dōu shì nán péngyou.

都是男朋友。

All of them are female friends.

9. Qǐng wèn, tā yǒu jǐ ge Měi guó péngyou?

请问，他/她有几个美国朋友？

May I ask, how many American friends does he/she have?

Cue 2  
2  
2

Tā yǒu liǎng ge Měi guó péngyou.

他/她有两个美国朋友。

He/she has 2 American friends.

10. Shì nán péngyou, shì nǚ péngyou?

是男朋友，是女朋友？

Are they male or female friends?

Cue Dōu  
都

all

Dōu shì nán péng you.

都是男朋友。

Both of them are male friends.

11. Qǐng wèn, tā yǒu jǐ ge hái zǐ?

请问，他/她有几个孩子？

May I ask, how many children does he/she have?

Cue

3

3

3

Tā yǒu sān ge hái zǐ.

他/她有三个孩子。

He/she has 3 children.

12. Shì nán hái zǐ, shì nǚ hái zǐ?

是男孩子，是女孩子？

Are they boys or girls?

Cue

Dōu

都

all

Dōu shì nán hái zǐ.

都是男孩子。

All of them are boys.

13. Qǐng wèn, tā men yǒu jǐ ge hái zǐ?

请问，他们有几个孩子？

May I ask, how many children do they have?

Cue

5

5

5

5

Tā men yǒu wǔ ge hái zǐ.

他们有五个孩子。

14. Shì nánháizi, shì nǚháizi?

是男孩子，是女孩子？

Are they boys or girls?

Cue

Dōu

都

all

Dōu shì nánháizi.

都是男孩子。

All of them are boys.

## Substitution drill

### Substitute the cue.

1. Qǐngwèn, nǐmen jiāli yǒu shénme rén?  
请问，你们家里有什么人？  
May I ask, what people are (there) in your family?

Cue tāmen  
他们  
they

Qǐngwèn, tāmen jiāli yǒu shénme rén?  
请问，他们家里有什么人？  
May I ask, what people are (there) in their family?

2. Qǐngwèn, tāmen jiāli yǒu shénme rén?  
请问，他们家里有什么人？  
May I ask, what people are (there) in their family?

Cue Fāng xiānsheng  
方先生  
Mr. Fāng

Qǐngwèn, Fāng xiānsheng yǒu shénme rén?  
请问，方先生有什么人？  
May I ask, what people are (there) in Mr. Fāng's family?

3. Qǐngwèn, Fāng xiānsheng jiāli yǒu shénme rén?  
请问，方先生家里有什么人？  
May I ask, what people are (there) in Mr. Fāng's family?

Cue Zhāng xiǎojiě  
张小姐  
Mrs. Zhāng

Qǐngwèn, Zhāng xiǎojiě jiāli yǒu shénme rén?  
请问，张小姐家里有什么人？  
May I ask, what people are (there) in Miss Zhāng's family?

4. Qǐngwèn, Zhāng xiǎojiě jiāli yǒu shénme rén?  
请问，张小姐家里有什么人？  
May I ask, what people are (there) in Miss Zhāng's family?

Cue Lǐ Mínglǐ  
李明理  
Lǐ Mínglǐ

Qǐngwèn, Lǐ Mínglǐ jiāli yǒu shénme rén?  
请问，李明理家里有什么人？  
May I ask, what people are (there) in Lǐ Mínglǐ's family?

5. Qǐngwèn, Lǐ Mínglǐ jiāli yǒu shénme rén?  
请问，李明理家里有什么人？  
May I ask, what people are (there) in Lǐ Mínglǐ's family?

Cue nǐ gēge  
你哥哥  
your younger brother

Qǐngwèn, nǐ gēge jiāli yǒu shénme rén?  
请问，你哥哥家里有什么人？  
May I ask, what people are (there) in your older brother's family?

6. Qǐngwèn, nǐ gēge jiāli yǒu shénme rén?  
请问，你哥哥家里有什么人？  
May I ask, what people are (there) in your older brother's family?

Cue nǐ péngyou  
你朋友  
your friend

Qǐngwèn nǐ péngyou jiāli yǒu shénme rén?  
请问，你朋友家里有什么人？  
May I ask, what people are (there) in your friend's family?

7. Qǐngwèn, nǐ péngyou jiāli yǒu shénme rén?  
请问，你朋友家里有什么人？  
May I ask, what people are (there) in your friend's family?



Cue

nǐ bàba

你爸爸

your father

Qǐngwèn, nǐ bàba jiāli yǒu shénme rén?

请问，你爸爸家里有什么人？

May I ask, what people are (there) in your father's family?

## Expansion drill

Add the cue and **gēn** to each sentence.

1. Tā yǒu yíge háizi.  
他/她有一个孩子。  
He/she has one child.

Cue tàitai  
太太  
wife

Yǒu tā tàitai gēn yíge háizi.  
有他/她太太跟一个孩子。  
There are his wife and one child.

2. Hú xiānsheng yǒu yíge mèimei.  
胡先生有一个妹妹。  
Mr. Hú has one younger sister.

Cue mǔqin  
母亲  
mother

Yǒu tā mǔqin gēn yíge mèimei.  
有他母亲跟一个妹妹。  
There are his mother and one younger sister.

3. Lǐ xiǎojiě yǒu liǎngge dìdi.  
李小姐有两个弟弟。  
Miss Lǐ has 2 younger brothers.

Cue jiějie  
姐姐  
older sister

Yǒu tā jiějie gēn liǎngge dìdi.  
有她姐姐跟两个弟弟。  
There are her older sister and two younger brothers.

4. Liú xiānsheng yǒu yíge nǚhaizi.

刘先生有一个女孩子。

Mr. Liú has one daughter.

Cue

mǔqin

母亲

mother

Yǒu tā mǔqin gēn yíge nǚháizi.

有他母亲跟一个女孩子。

There are his mother and one daughter.

5. Lín tàitai yǒu sānge nánháizi.

林太太有三个男孩子。

Mrs. Lín has 2 boys.

Cue

xiānsheng

先生

Mister

Yǒu tā xiānsheng gēn sānge nánháizi.

有她先生跟三个男孩子。

There are her husband and 3 boys.

6. Tā yǒu yíge jiějie.

他/她有一个姐姐。

He has one older sister.

Cue

fùqin

父亲

father

Yǒu tā fùqin gēn yíge jiějie.

有他/她父亲跟一个姐姐。

There are his/her older sister and his/her father.

7. Wáng xiānsheng yǒu sìge háizi.

王先生有四个孩子。

Mr. Wáng has 4 children.

Cue

tàitai

太太

wife

Yǒu tā tàitai gēn sìge háizi.

有他太太跟四个孩子。

There are his wife and 4 children.

## Response drill

Answer to the question according to the cue.

1. Tāmen háizi dōu zài zhèli ma?

他们孩子都在这里吗？

Are all of their children here?

Cue

Měiguó

美国

America

Bù, yíge zhèli, yíge hái zài Měiguó.

不，一个在这里，一个还在美国。

No, one is here, and one is still in America.

2. Tā gēge, jiějie dōu zài zhèli ma?

他/她哥哥，姐姐都在这里吗？

Are his/her older brother and older sister both here?

Cue

Jiāzhōu

加州

California

Bù, yíge zài zhèli, yíge hái zài Jiāzhōu.

不，一个在这里，一个还在加州。

No, one is here, and one is still in California.

3. Tā měiguó péngyou dōu zài zhèli ma?

他/她美国朋友都在这里吗？

Are his/her American friends all here?

Cue

Táizhōng

台中

T'ai-chung

Bù, yíge zài zhèli, yíge hái zài Táizhōng.

不，一个在这里，一个还在台中。

No, one is here, and one is still in T'ai-chung.

4. Tā dìdì , mèimei dōu zài Zhōngguo ma?  
他/她弟弟，妹妹都在中国吗？  
Are his/her younger brother and younger sister both here?

Cue Dézhōu  
德州  
Texas

Bù, yíge zài Zhōngguo, yíge hái zài Dézhōu.  
不，一个在中国，一个还在德州。  
No, one is in China, one is still in Texas.

5. Wáng xiānsheng de hái zi dōu zài Dézhōu ma?  
王先生的孩子都在德州吗？  
Are Mr. Wáng's children all here?

Cue Jiāzhōu  
加州  
California

Bù, yíge zài Dézhōu, yíge hái zài Jiāzhōu.  
不，一个在德州，一个还在加州。  
No, one is in Texas, and one is still in California.

6. Nèi liǎngwèi xiānsheng dōu zài Shànghǎi ma?  
那两位先生都在上海吗？  
Are both those gentlemen in Shànghǎi?

Cue Qīngdǎo  
青岛  
Qīngdǎo

Bù, yíge zài Shànghǎi, yíge hái zài Qīngdǎo.  
不，一个在上海，一个还在青岛。  
No, one is in Shànghǎi, one is in Qīngdǎo.

7. Tāmen hái zi dōu zài Xiānggǎng ma?  
他们孩子都在香港吗？  
Are their children all in Hong Kong?

Cue

Měiguó

美国

America

Bù, yíge zài Xiāngǎng, yíge hái zài Měiguó.

不，一个在香港，一个还在美国。

No, one is in Hong Kong, one is still in America.

## Unit 4

### Introduction

#### Topics covered in this unit

1. Arrival and departure times.
2. The marker **le**
3. The **shi ... de** construction.

#### Material you will need

1. The C-1 and P-1 tapes, the Reference List and Reference Notes.
2. The C-2 and P-2 tapes, the Workbook.
3. The 4D-1 tape.



## References

### Reference List

in Běijīng

1. A: Nǐ àiren lái ma?  
你爱人来吗?  
Is your wife coming?  
B: Tā lái.  
她来。  
She is coming.
2. A: Nǐ àiren lái le ma?  
你爱人来了吗?  
Has your wife come?  
B: Lái le, tā lái le.  
来了, 她来了。  
Yes, she has come.
3. A: Nǐ àiren yě lái le ma?  
你爱人也来了吗?  
Has your wife come too?  
B: Tā hái méi lái.  
她还没来。  
She hasn't come yet.
4. A: Tā shénme shíhou lái?  
她什么时候来?  
When is she coming?  
B: Tā míngtiān lái.  
她明天来。  
She is coming tomorrow.
5. A: Nǐ péngyou shénme shíhou dào?  
你朋友什么时候到?  
When is your friend arriving?  
B: Tā yǐjīng dào le.  
他已经到了。  
He has already arrived.
6. A: Tā shì shénme shíhou dào de?  
她是什么时候到的?  
When did she arrive?

7. B: Tā shì zuótiān dào de.  
她是昨天到的。  
She arrived Yesterday.
- A: Nǐ shì yí ge rén lái de ma?  
你是一个人来的吗?  
Did you come alone?
- B: Bú shì, wǒ bú shì yí ge rén lái de.  
不是，我不是一个人来的。  
No, I didn't come alone.
8. A: Nǐ shén me shí hou zǒu?  
你什么时候走?  
When are you leaving?
- B: Wǒ jīn tiān zǒu.  
我今天走。  
I'm leaving today.
9. A: Nǐ nǎ tiān zǒu?  
你哪天走?  
What day are you leaving?
- B: Wǒ jīn tiān zǒu.  
我今天走。  
I'm leaving today.

## Vocabulary

dào	到	to arrive
érzi	儿子	son
érzi	二字	son
hòutiān (hòutian)	后天	the day after tomorrow
jīntiān (jīntian)	今天	today
lái	来	to come
le	了	combined le: new-situation and completion marker
míngtiān (míngtian)	明天	tomorrow
něitiān	哪天	what day
nǚér	女儿	daughter
qiántiān (qiántian)	前天	the day before Yesterday
shénme shíhou	什么时候	when
shì de	是的	emphatic agreement
-tiān	天	day
tiāntiān	天天	every day
yíge rén	一个人	singly, alone
yǐjīng (yǐjing)	已经	already
zǒu	走	to leave
zuótiān	昨天	Yesterday
jiéhūn	结婚	to get married, to be married
méi jiéhūn	没结婚	not to be married
kěshi	可是	but
xiǎng	想	to think, to think that

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1

- |    |    |                  |            |                      |
|----|----|------------------|------------|----------------------|
| 1. | A: | Nǐ àiren lái ma? | 你爱人来<br>吗？ | Is your wife coming? |
|    | B: | Tā lái.          | 她来。        | She is coming.       |

These sentences refer to future time, but *lái* is not a future-tense form. Strictly speaking, Chinese verbs do not have tenses. The same form of the verb can be used in present, past, and future contexts.

We translated the sentence *Tā zài Tàinán gōngzuò*. as “He works in Tainan” assuming a present context. But in a past context we could translate it as “He **worked** in Tainan; and in a future context we could translate it as “He **will work** in Tainan.” The verb form *gōngzuò* does not tell you what time is being talked about. You have to look elsewhere for that information, perhaps to a time expression like “last year” or “now” or “tomorrow,” or to the conversational setting.

## Notes on №2

2.	A:	Nǐ àiren lái le ma?	你爱人来了 吗？	Has your wife come?
	B:	Lái le, tā lái le.	来了，她来了。	Yes, she has come.

**Aspect:** *Le* is an aspect marker. Through the use of and other one-syllable markers (*de, zhe, ne, guo*), the Chinese language indicates whether the occurrence being talked about is completed, ongoing, about to occur, or experienced for the first time. Aspect markers may also be used to indicate whether the whole situation in the sentence is a new, changed situation.

“**Completion**” and “**new situation**” are not **tenses** but **aspects**. Aspect is a way of talking about events or activities in relation to time. While tenses categorize action in terms of features such as completeness and change. Aspect markers are very different from tense markers because the same aspect may be used in past, present, and future contexts. We may speak of an action that will be completed as of a future time, for example, or of a situation that was new as of a past time. English communicates these ideas to a certain extent through the use of many different tenses for the verb (future perfect, simple past, etc.). Chinese does this through the use of aspect markers and time words. The verbs themselves do not change form.

*Le* is used in exchange 2 to indicate two aspects—completion and new situation, (it is, however, often used to indicate only one aspect.)

Here, it indicates that the person has come, meaning that the action is completed, and that the person is now here, a changed situation. When the marker *le* refers to both these aspects, we call it “combined *le*.” Combined *le* can be thought of as a telescoping of the completion *le* followed by a new-situation *le*: *le le* becomes *le*. In the next two units, you will see the marker *le* used to indicate each of these aspects separately.

**Notes on №3**

3. A: *Nǐ àiren yě lái le ma?* 你爱人也来了吗? Has your wife come too?  
 B: *Tā hái méi lái.* 她还没来。 She hasn't come yet.

Negative of combined **le**: Compare these affirmative and negative forms:

<b>affirmative</b>			<i>lái</i>		is coming.
			来		
<b>negative</b>		<i>bù</i>	<i>lái</i>		isn't coming.
		不	来		

<b>affirmative</b>			<i>lái</i>	<i>le</i>	has come (now).
			来	了	
<b>negative</b>	<i>hái</i>	<i>méi(you)</i>	<i>lái</i>		hasn't come (yet).
	还	没(有)	来		

Notice that the marker **le** does not appear in the negative answer in the exchange.

**Hái**: The negative of a sentence containing combined **le** will include the adverb **hái**, “yet,” as well as the negative **méi(you)**. In English, the “yet” is frequently left out.

Like other adverbs such as **yě**, **hái** always precedes the verb, although not always directly. Elements such as the negatives **bù** and **méi** may come between an adverb and a verb.

**Méiyóu**, “not have” is used to negate the aspect of completion; that is, to say that a certain event did not take place. **Méiyóu** may be shortened to **méi**. Here are three possible negative answers to the question. *Tā lái le ma?* “Has he come?”

<i>Tā</i>	<i>hái</i>	<i>méiyóu</i>	<i>lái.</i>	He hasn't come yet.
他	还	没有	来。	
<i>Tā</i>	<i>hái</i>	<i>méi</i>	<i>lái.</i>	He hasn't come yet.
他	还	没	来。	
	<i>hái</i>	<i>méiyóu.</i>		Not yet.
	还	没有。		

**Notes on №4–5**

4.	A: Tā shénme shíhou lái?	她什么时候来？	When is she coming?
	B: Tā míngtiān lái.	她明天来。	She is coming tomorrow.
5.	A: Nǐ péngyou shénme shíhou dào?	你朋友什么时候到？	When is your friend arriving?
	B: Tā yǐjīng dào le.	他已经到了。	He has already arrived.

Position of time words: Time phrases occupy the same position in a sentence as adverbs such as **yě** and **hái** between the subject and the verb.

Notes on №6–7

- |    |                                       |              |                          |
|----|---------------------------------------|--------------|--------------------------|
| 6. | A: Tā shì shénme shíhòu dàode?        | 她是什么时候到的？    | When did she arrive?     |
|    | B: Tā shì zuótiān dàode.              | 她是昨天到的。      | She arrived Yesterday.   |
| 7. | A: Nǐ shì yíge rén lái de ma?         | 你是一个人来的吗？    | Did you come alone?      |
|    | B: Bú shì, wǒ bú shì yíge rén lái de. | 不是，我不是一个人来的。 | No, I didn't come alone. |

(shi)...de: <sup>5</sup> This is another way to indicate the aspect of completion. The aspect marker **le** and the pattern (shi)...de perform different functions and convey different meanings. This is how they are different:

The aspect marker **le** or its negative **méi (you)** is used when the center of interest is whether or not an action took place. For example, if you do not know whether Mr. Sun came or not, you would ask:

Tā lái le méiyou?	Did he come?
他来了没有？	

and you would be answered either

Tā lái le.	He came.
他来了。	

or

Tā méi lái.	He didn't come.
他没来。	

In this question and answer, you use **le** or its negative **méi(you)** because the focus is on whether the action took place or not.

The purpose of the (shi)...de construction, on the other hand, is to focus on additional information about a completed action; that is, the construction is used when the center of interest is NOT whether or not a certain action took place.

For example, once it has been established that Mr. Sun did in fact come, the (shi)...de construction will probably be used for any additional questions and answers about his coming. For example:

Tā shì shénme shíhòu lái de?	When did he come?
他是什么时候来的？	

<sup>5</sup>On occasion, a speaker may omit the **shi** (which is why it is written in parentheses in these notes).



Tā shì zuótiān lái de.	He came yesterday.
他是昨天来的。	
Tā shì yíge rén lái de ma?	Did he come alone?
他是一个人来的吗？	
Tā shì yíge rén lái de.	He came alone.
他是一个人来的。	

These questions and answers use the (shi)...de construction because you already know that Mr. Sun came and now you are asking for additional information about his visit. Many types of additional information can be focus points for which the (shi)...de construction is used.

In Tā shì shénme shíhòu lái de? the additional information is the time when something happens.

In Tā shì yíge rén lái de ma? the information asked for is the manner in which something takes place.

Other possible focus points are place, cause of action, goal of action, and performer of action.

Now let's take a look at how shì and de function separately in this construction. The verb shì, coming before the phrase which is the center of interest, serves as a signal that what follows is emphasized. The verb "to be" is often used in a similar way in English to mark the center of interest:

Tā shì zuótiān lái de ma?	Was it yesterday that he came?
他是昨天来的吗？	

Another way of showing the center of interest in English is by word stress. Here is a comparison between focusing in Chinese with (shi)...de and focusing in English with stress:

Tā lái le ma?	Has he come?
他来了吗？	
Lái le.	Yes, he has.
来了。	
Tā shì zuótiān lái de ma?	Did he come YESTERDAY?
他是昨天来的吗？	
Shì, tā shì zuótiān lái de.	Yes, YESTERDAY.
是，他是昨天来的。	

The marker de coming after the verb indicates completion. When the marker de is not used in the sentence, that sentence no longer describes a completed event. The marker shì by itself emphasizes something about the action.

Compare these sentences:

Tā shì jīntiān lái.	She is coming (later) today.
他是今天来。	
Tā shì jīntiān lái de.	She came (earlier) today.
他是今天来的。	

For the time being, you will not use shì without de.

The negative form of the (shi)...de construction is **bú shì...de**. Compare this with the negatives you have already learned:

Tā		shi	zuótiān		lái	-de	It was YESTERDAY that he came.
他		是	昨天		来	的。	
Tā	bú		zuótiān		lái	-de	It wasn't YESTERDAY that he came.
他	不		昨天		来	的。	

Tā					lái	le.	He has come.
他					来	了。	
Tā			hái	méi	lái.		He hasn't come.
他			还	没	来。		

Tā			míngtiān		lái.		He is coming tomorrow.
他			明天		来。		
Tā			míngtiān	bù	lái.		He isn't coming tomorrow.
他			明天	不	来。		

Notice that in a (shi)...de construction the negative **bú** precedes the verb **shì** rather than the main verb. Short answers are also formed with **shì** rather than with the main verb:

Nǐ shì yíge rén lái de ma?	Did you come alone?
你是一个人来的吗？	
Shì, wǒ shì yíge rén lái de.	Yes, I came alone.
是，我是一个人来的。	
Búshì, wǒ bú shì yíge rén lái de.	No, I didn't come alone.
不是，我不是一个人来的。	

The (shi)...de construction is not used in every completed-action sentence containing a time, place, or manner phrase. If the center of interest is still whether or not the action took place, **le** is used. If, for example, you knew that someone was expected to come yesterday and you wanted to find out only whether he actually did come, the conversation might go as follows:

A:	Tā zuótiān méi lái ma?	Didn't he COME yesterday?
	他昨天没来吗？	
B:	Tā zuótiān lái le.	He DID COME yesterday.
	他做太年来了。	

Literally, **yíge rén** means “one person.” When the expression is used to describe how someone does something, translate it as “alone”

## Notes on №8–9

8.	A: Nǐ shénme shíhou zǒu?	你什么时候走？	When are you leaving?
	B: Wǒ jīntiān zǒu.	我今天走。	I'm leaving today.
9.	A: Nǐ nǎitiān zǒu?	你哪天走？	What day are you leaving?
	B: Wǒ jīntiān zǒu.	我今天走。	I'm leaving today.

The word for “day” is the bound word **-tiān**. To ask “what day” (literally “which day”), the bound word **něi-** “which,” is combined with the bound word **-tiān**, “day”: **něitiān** (like **něiguó**, “which country”).

něitiān?	what day?/which day?
那天	
qiántiān	day before yesterday
前天	
zuótiān	yesterday
昨天	
jīntiān	today
今天	
míngtiān	tomorrow
明天	
hòutiān	day after tomorrow
后天	

Some speakers say the **-tiān** in these words in the Neutral tone: **qiántian**, **zuótian**, **jīntian**, **míngtian**, **hòutian**.

## Drills

### Transformation drill

Transform the question according to the model.

1. Nǐ àiren lái ma?

你爱人来吗？

Is your spouse coming?

Nǐ àiren lái le ma?

你爱人来了吗？

Has your spouse come?

2. Nǐ fùmǔ zǒu ma?

你父母走吗？

Are your parents coming?

Nǐ fùmǔ zǒu le ma?

你父母走了吗？

Have your parents come?

3. Nǐ péngyou zǒu ma?

你朋友走吗？

Is your friend coming?

Nǐ péngyǒu zǒu le ma?

你朋友走了吗？

Has your friend come?

4. Nǐ gēge zǒu ma?

你哥哥走吗？

Is your older brother coming?

Nǐ gēge zǒu le ma?

你哥哥走了吗？

Has your older brother come?

5. Nǐ jiějie lái ma?

你姐姐来吗？

Is your older sister coming?

Nǐ jiějie lái le ma?

你姐姐来了吗？

Has your older sister come?

6. Nǐ mèimei lái ma?

你妹妹来吗？

Is your younger sister coming?

Nǐ mèimei lái le ma?

你妹妹来了吗？

Has your younger sister come?

7. Nǐ didi zǒu ma?

你弟弟走吗？

Is your younger brother coming?

Nǐ didi zǒu le ma?

你弟弟走了吗？

Has your younger brother come?

## Transformation drill

Transform the question according to the model.

1. Tā lái le ma?

他/她来了吗？

Has he/she come?

Tā yǐjīng lái le ma?

他/她已经来了吗？

Has he/she already come?

2. Máo tóngzhì dào le ma?

毛同志到了吗？

Has Comrade Máo arrived?

Máo tóngzhì yǐjīng dào le ma?

毛同志已经到了吗？

Has comrade Máo already arrived?

3. Lǐ tóngzhì zǒu le ma?

李同志走了吗？

Has Comrade Lǐ left?

Lǐ tóngzhì yǐjīng zǒu le ma?

李同志已经走了吗？

Has comrade Lǐ already left?

4. Mǎ tóngzhì zǒu le ma?

马同志走了吗？

Has Comrade Mǎ left?

Mǎ tóngzhì yǐjīng zǒu le ma?

马同志已经走了吗？

Has comrade Mǎ already left?

5. Zhāng tóngzhì lái le ma?

张同志来了吗？

Has Comrade Zhāng come?

Zhāng tóngzhì yǐjīng lái le ma?

张同志已经来了吗？

Has comrade Zhāng already come?

6. Huáng tóngzhì dào le ma?

黄同志到了吗？

Has Comrade Huáng arrived?

Huáng tóngzhì yǐjīng dào le ma?

黄同志已经到了吗？

Has comrade Huáng already arrived?

7. Sūn tóngzhì zǒu le ma?

孙同志走了吗？

Has Comrade Sūn left?

Sūn tóngzhì yǐjīng zǒu le ma?

孙同志已经走了吗？

Has comrade Sūn already left?

## Response drill

Answer to the question according to the model.

1. Tā lái le ma?

他/她来了吗？

Has he/she come?

Tā hái méi lái.

他/她还没来。

He/she hasn't come yet.

2. Wáng tóngzhì zǒu le ma?

王同志走了吗？

Has Comrade Wáng left?

Tā hái méi zǒu.

他/她还没来。

He/she hasn't left yet.

3. Lǐ tóngzhì dào le ma?

李同志到了吗？

Has Comrade Lǐ arrive yet?

Tā hái méi dào.

他/她还没来。

He/she hasn't arrive yet.

4. Hé tóngzhì lái le ma?

何同志来了吗。

Has Comrade Hé come?

Tā hái méi lái.

他/她还没来。

He/she hasn't come yet.

5. Zhào tóngzhì lái le ma?

赵同志来了吗？？

Has Comrade Zhào come?



Tā hái méi lái.

他/她还没来。

He/she hasn't come yet.

6. Liú tóngzhì zǒu le ma?

刘同志走了吗？

Has Comrade Liú left?

Tā hái méi zǒu.

他/她还没来。

He/she hasn't left yet.

7. Sūn tóngzhì lái le ma?

孙同志来了吗？

Has Comrade Sūn come?

Tā hái méi lái.

他/她还没来。

He/she hasn't come yet.

## Response drill

Answer to the question according to the model.

1. Tā zǒu le ma?

他/她走了吗？

Has he/she left?

Zǒu le, tā yǐjīng zǒu le.

走了，他/她已经走了。

Yes, he/she has already left.

2. Tā àiren ne?

他/她爱人呢？

And his/her spouse?

Tā àiren yě yǐjīng zǒu le.

他/她爱人也已经走了。

His/her spouse has already left too.

3. Tā lái le ma?

他/她来了吗？

Has he/she come?

Lái le, tā yǐjīng lái le.

来了，他/她。

Yes, he/she has already come.

4. Tā àiren ne?

他/她爱人呢？

And his/her spouse?

Tā àiren yě yǐjīng lái le.

他/她爱人也已经来了。

His/her spouse has already come too.

5. Tā dào le ma?

他/她到了吗？

Has he/she arrived?

Dào le, tā yǐjīng dào le.

到了，他/她已经到了

Yes, he/she has already arrived.

6. Tā àiren ne?

他/她爱人呢？

And his/her spouse?

Tā àiren yě yǐjīng dào le.

他/她爱人也已经到了。

His/her spouse has already arrived too.

7. Lǐ tóngzhì zǒu le ma?

李同志走了走吗？

Has Comrade Lǐ left?

Zǒu le, tā yǐjīng zǒu le.

走了，他已经走了。

Yes, he has already left.

8. Tā gēge ne?

他/她哥哥呢？

And his older brother?

Tā gēge yě yǐjīng zǒu le.

他/她哥哥也已经走了。

His older brother has already left too.

9. Wáng tóngzhì lái le ma?

王同志来了吗？

Has Comrade Wáng come?

Lái le, tā yǐjīng lái le.

来了，他已经来了。

Yes, he has already come.

10. Tā àiren ne?

他爱人呢？

And his spouse?

Tā àiren yě yǐjīng lái le.

他爱人也已经来了。

His spouse has already come too.

11. Zhào xiānsheng dào le ma?

赵先生到了吗？

Has Mr. Zhào arrived?

Dào le, tā yǐjīng dào le.

到了，他已经到了。

Yes, he has already arrived.

12. Tā dìdi ne?

他弟弟呢？

And his younger brother.

Tā dìdi yě yǐjīng dào le.

他弟弟也已经到了。

His younger brother has already arrived too.

13. Zhāng tóngzhì zǒu le ma?

张同志走了吗？

Has Comrade Zhāng left?

Zǒu le, tā yǐjīng zǒu le.

走了，他已经走了。

Yes, he has already left.

14. Chén tóngzhì ne?

陈同志呢？

And Comrade Chén?

Chén tóngzhì yě yǐjīng zǒu le.

陈同也已经走了。

Comrade Chén has already left too.

## Response drill

Answer to the question according to the model.

1. Tā lái le ma?

他/她来了吗？

Has he/she come?

Tā hái méi lái.

他/她还没来。

He/she hasn't come yet.

2. Tā àiren ne?

他/她爱人呢？

And his/her spouse?

Tā àiren yě hái méi lái.

他/她爱人也还没来。

His/her spouse hasn't come yet either.

3. Tā zǒu le ma?

他/她走了吗？

Has he/she left?

Tā hái méi zǒu.

他/她还没走。

He/she hasn't left yet.

4. Tā àiren ne?

他/她爱人呢？

And his/her spouse?

Tā àiren yě hái méi zǒu.

他/她爱人也还没走。

His/her spouse hasn't left yet either.

5. Tā dào le ma?

他/她到了吗？

Has he/she arrived?

Tā hái méi dào.

他/她还没到。

He/she hasn't arrived yet.

6. Tā àiren ne?

他/她爱人呢？

And his/her spouse?

Tā àiren yě hái méi dào.

他/她爱人也还没到。

His/her spouse hasn't arrived yet either.

7. Fāng nǚshì lái le ma?

方女士来了吗？

Has Ms. Fāng come?

Fāng nǚshì hái méi lái.

方女士还没来。

Ms. Fāng hasn't come yet.

8. Tā dìdì ne?

她弟弟呢？

And her younger brother?

Tā dìdì yě hái méi lái.

她弟弟也还没来。

Her younger brother hasn't come yet either.

9. Lǐ xiānsheng dào le ma?

李先生到了吗？

Has Mr. Lǐ arrived?

Lǐ xiānsheng hái méi dào.

李先生还没到。

Mr. Lǐ hasn't arrived yet.

10. Tā fùmǔ ne?

他父母呢？

And his parents?

Tā fùmǔ yě hái méi dào.

她父母也还没到。

His parents haven't come yet either.

11. Chén tóngzhì zǒu le ma?

陈同志走了吗？

Has comrade Chén left?

Chén tóngzhì hái méi zǒu.

陈同志还没走。

Comrade Chén hasn't left yet?

12. Jiāng tóngzhì ne?

江同志呢？

And comrade Jiāng?

Jiāng tóngzhì yě hái méi zǒu.

江同志也还没走。

Comrade Jiāng hasn't left yet either.

13. Tā mǔqīn dào le ma?

他/她亲到了吗？

Has his/her mother arrived?

Tā mǔqīn hái méi dào.

他/她母亲还没到。

His/her mother hasn't arrived yet.

14. Tā jiějie ne?

他/她姐姐呢？

And his/her older sister?

Tā jiějie yě hái méi dào.

他/她姐姐也还没到。

His/her older sister hasn't arrived yet either.

## Response drill

Give an affirmative response to the first question in each exchange, and include **hái** and **méi** in your response to the second question.

1. Tā zǒu le ma?

他/她走了吗？

Has he/she left?

Tā yǐjīng zǒu le.

他/她已经走了。

He/she has already left.

2. Tā àiren ne?

他/她爱人呢？

And his/her spouse?

Tā àiren hái méi zǒu.

他/她爱人还没走。

His/her spouse hasn't left yet.

3. Tā lái le ma?

他/她来了吗？

Has he/she come?

Tā yǐjīng lái le.

他/她已经来了。

He/she has already come.

4. Tā àiren ne?

他/她爱人呢？

And his/her spouse?

Tā àiren hái méi lái.

他/她爱人还没来。

His/her spouse hasn't come yet.

5. Tā dào le ma?

他/她到了吗？

Has he/she arrived?



Tā yǐjīng dào le.

他/她已经到了。

He/she has already arrived.

6. Tā àiren ne?

他/她爱人呢？

And his/her spouse?

Tā àiren hái méi dào.

他/她爱人还没到。

His/her spouse hasn't arrived yet.

7. Wáng xiānsheng zǒu le ma?

王先生走了吗？

Has Mr. Wáng left?

Wáng xiānsheng yǐjīng zǒu le.

王先生已经走了。

Mr. Wáng has already left.

8. Tā mǔqīn ne?

他母亲呢？

And his mother?

Tā mǔqīn hái méi zǒu.

他母亲还没走。

His mother hasn't left yet.

9. Qián tóngzhì lái le ma?

钱同志来了吗？

Has Comrade Qián come?

Qián tóngzhì yǐjīng lái le.

钱同志已经来了了。

Comrade Qián has already come.

10. Jiāng tóngzhì ne?

江同志呢？

And Comrade Jiāng?

Jiāng tóngzhì hái méi lái.

江同志还没来。

Comrade Jiāng hasn't come yet.

11. Máo nǚshì dào le ma?

毛女士到了吗？

Has Mrs. Máo arrived?

Máo nǚshì yǐjīng dào le.

毛女士已经到了。

Mrs. Máo has already arrived.

12. Tā mèimei ne?

她妹妹呢？

And her younger sister?

Tā mèimei hái méi dào.

她妹妹还没到。

Her younger sister hasn't arrived yet.

13. Zēng fūren zǒu le ma?

曾夫人走了吗？

Has Mrs. Zēng left?

Zēng fūren yǐjīng zǒu le.

曾夫人已经走了。

Mrs. Zēng has already left.

14. Tā mǔqīn ne?

他母亲呢？

And his mother?

Tā mǔqīn hái méi zǒu.

他母亲还没走。

His mother hasn't left yet.

## Response drill

Respond to the question according to the model.

1. Tā lái le ma?

他/她来了吗？

Has he/she come?

Tā hái méi lái.

他/她还没来。

He/she hasn't come yet.

2. Tā àiren ne?

他/她爱人呢？

And is/her spouse?

Tā àiren yǐjīng lái le.

他/她爱人已经来了。

His/her spouse has already come.

3. Tā zǒu le ma?

他/她走了吗？

Has he/she left?

Tā hái méi zǒu.

他/她还没走。

He/she hasn't left yet.

4. Tā àiren ne?

他/她爱人呢？

And his/her spouse?

Tā àiren yǐjīng zǒu le.

他/她爱人已经走了。

His/her spouse has already left.

5. Tā dào le ma?

他/她到了吗？

Has he/she arrived?

Tā hái méi dào.

他/她还没到。

He/she hasn't arrived yet.

6. Tā àiren ne?

他/她爱人呢？

And his/her spouse?

Tā àiren yǐjīng dào le.

他/她爱人已经到了。

His/her spouse has already arrived.

7. Cāo tóngzhì lái le ma?

曹同志来了吗？

Has Comrade Cāo come?

Cāo tóngzhì hái méi lái.

曹同志还没来。

Comrade Cāo hasn't come yet.

8. Sūn tóngzhì ne?

孙同志呢？

And Comrade Sūn?

Sūn tóngzhì yǐjīng lái le.

孙同志已经来了。

Comrade Sūn has already come.

9. Zhāng xiānsheng lái le ma?

张先生来了吗？

Has Mr. Zhāng come?

Zhāng xiānsheng hái méi lái.

张先生还没来。

Mr. Zhāng hasn't come yet.

10. Tā dìdì ne?

他弟弟呢？

And his younger brother?

Tā dìdì yǐjīng lái le.

他弟弟已经来了。

His younger brother has already come.

11. Tā mǔqīn dào le ma?

他/她母亲到了吗？

Has his/her mother arrived?

Tā mǔqīn hái méi dào.

他/她母亲还没到。

His/her mother hasn't arrived yet.

12. Tā mèimei ne?

他/她妹妹呢？

And his/her younger sister?

Tā mèimei yǐjīng dào le.

他/她妹妹已经到了。

His/her younger sister has already arrived.

13. Wáng nǚshì zǒu le ma?

王女士走了吗？

Has Mrs. Wáng left.

Wáng nǚshì hái méi zǒu.

王女士还没走。

Mrs. Wáng hasn't left yet.

14. Zhāng nǚshì ne?

张女士呢？

And Mrs. Zhāng?

Zhāng nǚshì yǐjīng zǒu le.

张女士已经走了。

Mrs. Zhāng has already left.

## Response drill

Respond to each question with a completed-action answer or a yet-to-be-completed answer, depending on the cue.

1. Tā zǒu le ma?

他/她走了吗？

Has he/she left?

Cue

zuótiān

昨天

yesterday

Tā yǐjīng zǒu le.

他/她已经走了。

He/she has already left.

2. Tā àiren ne?

他/她呢？

And his/her spouse?

Cue

zuótiān

昨天

yesterday

Tā àiren yě yǐjīng zǒu le

他/她爱人也已经走了。

His/her spouse has already left too.

3. Tā lái le ma?

他/她来了吗？

Has he/she come?

Cue

míngtiān

明天

tomorrow

Tā hái méi lái.

他/她还没来。

He/she hasn't come yet.

4. Tā àiren ne?  
他/她爱人呢?  
And his/her spouse?

Cue míngtiān  
明天  
tomorrow

Tā àiren yě hái méi lái.  
他/她爱人也还没来。  
His/her spouse hasn't come either.

5. Tā dào le ma?  
他/她到了?  
Has he/she arrived?

Cue zuótiān  
昨天  
yesterday

Tā yǐjīng dào le.  
他/她已经到了。  
He/she hasn't already yet.

6. Tā àiren ne?  
他/她爱人呢?  
And his/her spouse?

Cue míngtiān  
明天  
tomorrow

Tā àiren hái méi dào.  
他/她爱人还没到。  
His/her spouse hasn't arrived either.

7. Tā zǒu le ma?  
他/她走了吗?  
Has he/she left?





Wáng tóngzhì yě yǐjīng dào le.

王同志也已经到了。

Comrade Wáng has already arrived too.

11. Tā fùmǔ zǒu le ma?

他/她父母走了吗？

Have his/her parents left?

Cue

míngtiān

明天

tomorrow

Tā fùmǔ hái méi zǒu.

他/她父母还没走。

His/her parents hasn't left yet.

12. Tāmen háizi ne?

他们孩子呢？

And their children?

Cue

zuótiān

昨天

yesterday

Tāmen háizi yǐjīng zǒu le.

他们孩子已经走了。

Their children have already left.

13. Tā àiren lái le ma?

他/她爱人来了呢？

Has his/her spouse come?

Cue

zuótiān

昨天

yesterday

Tā àiren yǐjīng lái le.

他/她爱人已经来了。

His/her spouse has already come.



## Response drill

### Respond according to the clue.

1. Tā shénme shíhou lái?  
他/她什么时候来?  
When is he/she coming?

Cue míngtiān  
明天  
tomorrow

Tā míngtiān lái.  
他/她明天来。  
He/she is coming tomorrow.

2. Lǐ xiānsheng shénme shíhou zǒu?  
李先生什么时候走?  
When is Mr. Lǐ leaving?

Cue jīntiān  
今天  
today

Tā jīntiān zǒu.  
他今天走。  
He is leaving today.

3. Hú xiǎojiě shénme shíhou dào?  
胡小姐什么时候到?  
When is Miss Hú arriving?

Cue míngtiān  
明天  
tomorrow

Tā míngtiān dào.  
她明天到。  
She is arriving tomorrow

4. Zhāng xiānsheng shénme shíhou lái?

张个什么时候来？

When is Mr. Zhāng coming?

Cue

hòutiān

后天

the day after tomorrow

Tā hòutiān lái.

他后天来。

He is coming the day after tomorrow.

5. Wáng xiǎojiě shénme shíhou dào?

王小姐什么时候到？

When is Miss Wáng arriving?

Cue

jīntiān

今天

today

Tā jīntiān dào.

她今天到。

She is arriving today.

6. Tā shénme shíhou zǒu?

他/她什么时候走？

When is he/she leaving?

Cue

hòutiān

后天

the day after tomorrow

Tā hòutiān zǒu.

他/她后天走。

He/she is leaving the day after tomorrow.

## Transformation drill

For each item, ask “which day...”

1. Tā lái.

他/她来。

He/she is coming.

Tā nǚtiān lái?

他/她哪天来？

What day is he/she coming?

2. Wáng xiānsheng zǒu.

王先生走。

Mr. Wáng is leaving.

Wáng xiānsheng nǚtiān zǒu?

王先生哪天走？

What day is Mr. Wáng leaving?

3. Lǐ tàitai dào.

李太太到。

Mrs. Lǐ is arriving.

Lǐ tàitai nǚtiān dào?

李太太哪天到？

What day is Mrs. Lǐ arriving?

4. Hú tàitai zǒu.

胡太太走。

Mrs. Hú is leaving.

Hú tàitai nǚtiān zǒu.

胡太太哪天走？

What day is Mrs. Hú leaving?

5. Zhāng xiānsheng dào.

张先生到。

Mr. Zhāng is arriving.

Zhāng xiānsheng nǚtiān dào?

张先生哪天到？

What day is Mr. Zhāng arriving?

6. Huáng tàitai lái.

黄太太来。

Mrs. Huáng is coming.

Huáng tàitai nǚtiān lái?

黄太太哪天来。

What day is Mrs. Huáng coming?

7. Tā zǒu.

他/她走。

He/she is leaving.

Tā nǚtiān zǒu?

他/她哪天走？

What day is he/she leaving?

## Transformation drill

### Transform the statement according to the model

1. Tā shénme shíhou lái?  
他/她什么时候来?  
When is he/she coming?

Tā shì shénme shíhou lái de?  
他/她是什么时候来的?  
When did he/she come?

2. Wáng xiānsheng shénme shíhou dào?  
王先生什么时候到?  
When is Mr. Wáng arriving?

Wáng xiānsheng shì shénme shíhou dào de?  
王先生是什么时候到的?  
When did Mr. Wáng arrive?

3. Lǐ tàitai shénme shíhou zǒu?  
李太太什么时候走?  
When is Mrs. Lǐ leaving?

Lǐ tàitai shì shénme shíhou zǒu de?  
李太太是什么时候走的?  
When did Mrs. Lǐ leave?

4. Hú xiānsheng shénme shíhou lái?  
胡先生什么时候来?  
When is Mr. Hú coming?

Hú xiānsheng shì shénme shíhou lái de?  
胡先生是什么时候来的?  
When did Mr. Hú come?

5. Huáng tàitai shénme shíhou dào?  
黄太太什么时候到?  
When is Mrs. Huáng arriving?

Huáng tàitai shì shénme shíhou dào de?

黄太太是什么时候到的？

When did Mrs. Huāng arrive?

6. Lín tàitai shénme shíhou zǒu?

林太太什么时候走？

When is Mrs. Lín leaving?

Lín tàitai shì shénme shíhou zǒu de?

林太太是什么时候走的？

When did Mrs. Lín leave?

7. Tā shénme shíhou lái?

他/她什么时候来？

When is he/she coming?

Tā shì shénme shíhou lái de?

他/她是什么时候来的？

When did he/she come?



## Transformation drill

Respond with a **shi...de** sentence when the cue makes it appropriate.

1. Tā lái.  
他/她来。  
He/she is coming.

Cue míngtiān  
明天  
tomorrow

Tā míngtiān lái.  
他/她明天来。  
He/she is coming tomorrow.

2. Tā lái le.  
他/她来了。  
He/she has come.

Cue zuótiān  
昨天  
yesterday

Tā shì zuótiān lái de.  
他/她是昨天来的。  
He/she has come yesterday.

3. Wáng tàitai zǒu.  
王太太走。  
Mrs. Wáng is leaving.

Cue jīntiān  
今天  
today

Wáng tàitai jīntiān zǒu.  
王太太今天走。  
Mrs. Wáng is leaving today.

4. Huáng tàitai zǒu le.

黄太太走了。

Mrs. Huáng has left.

Cue

qiántiān

前天

the day before yesterday

Huáng tàitai shì qiántiān zǒude.

黄太太是前天走的。

Mrs. Huáng left the day before yesterday.

5. Lǐ xiānsheng lái.

李先生来。

Mr. Lǐ is coming.

Cue

hòutiān

后天

the day after tomorrow

Lǐ xiānsheng hòutiān lái.

李先生后天来。

Mr. Lǐ is coming the day after tomorrow.

6. Lín xiānsheng lái le.

林先生来了。

Mr. Lín has come.

Cue

zuótiān

昨天

yesterday

Lín xiānsheng shì zuótiān lái de.

林先生是昨天来的。

Mr. Lín came yesterday.

7. Mǎ xiǎojiě dào le.

马小姐到了。

Miss Mǎ has arrived.

Cue

qiántiān

前天

the day before yesterday

Mǎ xiǎojiě shì qiántiān dàode.

马小姐是前天到的。

Miss Mǎ has arrived the day before yesterday.

## Response drill

### Give affirmative responses to the questions.

1. Tā shì zuótiān lái de ma?

他/她是昨天来的吗？

Did he/she come yesterday?

Shìde. Tā shì zuótiān lái de.

是的。他/她是昨天来的。

Yes, he/she came yesterday.

2. Wáng xiānsheng shì jīntiān dào de ma?

王先生是今天到的吗？

Did Mr. Wáng arrived today?

Shìde. Wáng xiānsheng shì jīntiān dào de.

是的。王先生是今天到的。

Yes, Mr. Wáng arrived today.

3. Lǐ tóngzhì shì qiántiān zǒu de ma?

李同志是前天走的吗？

Did Comrade Lǐ leave the day before yesterday?

Shìde. Lǐ tóngzhì shì qiántiān zǒu de.

是的。李同志是前天走的。

Yes, Comrade Lǐ left the day before yesterday.

4. Máo fūren míngtiān lái ma?

毛夫人明天来吗？

Is Mrs. Máo coming tomorrow?

Shìde. Máo fūren míngtiān lái.

是的。毛夫人明天来？

Yes, Mrs. Máo is coming tomorrow.

5. Tāmen háizi hòutiān dào ma?

他们孩子后天到吗？

Are their children arriving the day after tomorrow?

Shìde. Tāmen háizi hòutiān dào.

是的。他们孩子后天到。

Yes, their children are arriving the day after tomorrow.

6. Tā fùmǔ jīntiān zǒu ma?

他/她父母今天走吗？

Are his/her parents leaving?

Shìde. Tā fùmǔ jīntiān zǒu.

是的。他/她父母今天走。

Yes, his/her parents are leaving today.

7. Zhāng nǚshì shì zuótiān lái de ma?

张女士是昨天来的吗？

Did Mrs. Zhāng come yesterday?

Shìde. Zhāng nǚshì shì zuótiān lái de.

是的。张女士是昨天来的。

No, Mrs. Zhāng did not come yesterday.

## Response drill

Give negative responses to the **shi... de** questions.

1. Tā shì zuótiān lái de ma?

他/她是昨天来的吗？

Did he/she come yesterday?

Bù. Tā bú shì zuótiān lái de.

不。他/她不是昨天来的。

No, he/she didn't come yesterday.

2. Jiāng xiānsheng shì jīntiān dào de ma?

江先生是今天道德吗？

Did Mr. Jiāng arrive today?

Bù. Jiāng xiānsheng bú shì jīntiān dào de.

不。江先生不是今天到的。

No, Mr. Jiāng didn't arrive today.

3. Zhāng tóngzhì shì qiántiān zǒu de ma?

张同志是前天走的吗？

Did Comrade Zhāng leave the day before yesterday?

Bù. Zhāng tóngzhì bú shì qiántiān zǒu de.

不。张同志不是前天走的。

No, Comrade Zhāng didn't leave day before yesterday.

4. Tāmen shì zuótiān lái de ma?

他们是昨天来的吗？

Did they come yesterday?

Bù. Tāmen bú shì zuótiān lái de.

不。他们不是昨天来的。

No, they didn't come yesterday.

5. Tāmen hái zi shì qiántiān dào de ma?

他们孩子是前天到的吗？

Did their children arrive the day before yesterday?

Bù. Tāmen háizi bú shì qiántian dàode.

不。他们孩子不是前天到的。

No, their children didn't arrive the day before yesterday.

6. Hé tóngzhi shì jīntiān zǒude ma?

何同志是今天走的吗？

Did comrade Hé leave today?

Bù. Hé tóngzhi bú shì jīntiān zǒude.

不。何同志不是今天走的。

No, Comrade Hé didn't leave today.

7. Tā àiren shì zuótiān lái de ma?

他/她爱人是昨天来的吗？

Did his/her spouse come yesterday?

Bù. Tā àiren bú shì zuótiān lái de.

不。他/她爱人不是昨天来的。

No, his/her spouse didn't come yesterday.

## Response drill

According to the cues, give an affirmative or a negative response to each **shi...de** question.

1. Tā shì zuótiān lái de ma?

他/她是昨天来的吗？

Did he/she come yesterday?

Cue

affirmative

Shì de. Tā shì zuótiān lái de.

是的。他/她是昨天来的。

Yes, he/she came yesterday.

2. Tā shì zuótiān lái de ma?

他/她是昨天来的？

Did he/she come yesterday?

Cue

negative

Bù. Tā bú shì zuótiān lái de.

不。他/她不是昨天来的。

No, he/she didn't come yesterday.

3. Wáng tóngzhì shì qiántiān dào de ma?

王同志是前天到的吗？

Did Comrade Wáng arrive the day before yesterday?

Cue

negative

Bù. Wáng tóngzhì bú shì qiántiān dào de.

不。王同志不是前天到的。

No, Comrade Wáng didn't arrive the day before yesterday.

4. Tā gēge shì jīntiān lái de ma?

他/她哥哥是今天来的吗？

Did his/her older brother come today?

Cue

negative



Bù. Tā gēge bú shì jīntiān lái de.

不。他/她哥哥不是今天来的。

No, his/her older brother didn't come today.

5. Lǐ xiānsheng shì jīntiān zǒu de ma?

李先生是今天走的吗？

Did Mr. Lǐ leave today?

Cue negative

Bù. Lǐ xiānsheng bú shì jīntiān zǒu de.

不。李先生不是今天走的。

No, Mr. Lǐ didn't leave today.

6. Zhào fūren shì zuótiān dào de ma?

赵夫人是昨天到的吗？

Did Mrs. Zhào arrive yesterday?

Cue affirmative

Shì de. Zhào fūren shì zuótiān dào de.

是的。赵夫人是昨天到的。

Yes, Mrs. Zhào did arrive yesterday.

7. Tāmen hái zi shì qiántiān zǒu de ma?

他们孩子是前天走的吗？

Did their children leave the day before yesterday?

Cue negative

Bù. Tāmen hái zi bú shì qiántiān zǒu de.

不。他们孩子不是前天走的。

No, their children didn't leave the day before yesterday.

8. Sūn nǚshì shì zuótiān dào de ma?

孙女士是昨天到的吗？

Did Mrs. Sūn arrive yesterday?

Cue negative

Bù. Sūn nǚshì bǔ shì zuótiān dào de.

不。孙女士不是昨天到的。

No, Mrs. Sūn didn't arrive yesterday

## Unit 5

### Introduction

#### Topics covered in this unit

1. Date and Place of birth.
2. Days of the week.
3. Ages.
4. The marker **le** for new situations.

#### Material you will need

1. The C-1 and P-1 tapes, the Reference List and Reference Notes.
2. The C-2 and P-2 tapes.
3. The 5D-1 tape.

## References

### Reference List

1. A: Āndésēn fūren, nǐ shì zài nǎr shēngde?  
安德森夫人，你是在哪儿生的？  
Mrs. Andersen, where were you born?  
B: Wǒ shì zài Dézhōu shēngde.  
我是在得州生的。  
I was born in Texas.
2. A: Nǐmen shì Xīngqīsi dào de ma?  
你们是星期四到的吗？  
Did you arrive on Thursday?  
B: Bú shì, wǒmen shì Xīngqīwǔ dào de.  
不是，我们是星期五到的。  
No, we arrived on Friday.
3. A: Nǐmen xīngqījǐ zǒu?  
你们星期几走？  
What day of the week are you leaving?  
B: Wǒmen Xīngqītīan zǒu.  
我们星期天走。  
We are leaving on Sunday.
4. A: Nǐ shì nǎinián shēngde?  
你是哪年生的？  
What year are you born?  
B: Wǒ shì Yī jiǔ sān jiǔ nián shēngde.  
我是一九三九年生的。  
I was born in 1939.
5. A: Nǐ shì jǐyuè shēngde?  
你是几月生的？  
What month were you born?  
B: Wǒ shì Qīyuè shēngde.  
我是七月生的。  
I was born in July.
6. A: Nǐ shì jǐhào shēngde?  
你是几号生的？  
What day of the month were you born?

	B:	Wǒ shì Sìhào shēngde. 我是四号生的。 I was born on the fourth.
7. <sup>a</sup>	A:	Nǐ duō dà le? 你多大了? How old are you?
	B:	Wǒ èr shí sì le. 我二十四了。 I'm 24.
8. <sup>b</sup>	A:	Nǐ duō dà le? 你多大了? How old are you?
	B:	Wǒ sān shí wǔ le. 我三十五了。 I'm 35.
9.	A:	Nǐmen nǚháizi jǐsui le? 你们女孩子几岁了? How old is your girl?
	B:	Tā bāsuì le. 她八岁了。 She's eight years old.
10.	A:	Nǐmen nánháizi dōu jǐsui le? 你们男孩子都几岁了? How old are your boys?
	B:	Yíge jiǔsui le, yíge liùsui le. 一个九岁了，一个六岁了。 One is nine, and one is six.

<sup>a</sup>This exchange occurs on the C-1 tape only.

<sup>b</sup>This exchange occurs on the P-1 tape only.

## Vocabulary

duó dà	多大	how old
hòunián (hòunian)	后年	the year after next
jǐhào	几号	what day of the month?
jīnnián (jīnnian)	今年	this year
jǐsui	几岁	how old
jǐyüè	几月	what month
míngnián (míngnian)	明年	next year
něinián	哪年?	which year
niánnián (niánnian)	年年	every year
qiánnián (qiánnian)	前年	the year before last
qùnián (qùnian)	去年	last year
shàngge yuè	上个月	last month
shēng	生	to be born
-sui	岁	year (of age)
xiàge yuè	下个月	next month
Xīngqīèr	星期二	Tuesday
xīngqījǐ	星期几	what day of the week
Xīngqīliù	星期六	Saturday
Xīngqīsān	星期三	Wednesday
Xīngqīsì	星期四	Thursday
Xīngqītiān, Xīngqīrì	星期天, 星期日	Sunday
Xīngqīwǔ	星期五	Friday
Xīngqīyī	星期一	Monday
zhège yuè	这个月	this month

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1

1. A: Āndésēn fūren, nǐ shì zài nǎr shēngde? 安德森夫人，你是在哪儿生的？ Mrs. Andersen, where were you born?
- B: Wǒ shì zài Dézhōu shēngde. 我是在得州生的。 I was born in Texas.

The *shi...de* construction is used to focus on place expressions as well as on time and manner expressions.

Wǒ	shì	zài Měiguó	shēng	-de.	I was born in America. WHERE
我	是	在美国	生	的。	
Wǒ	shì	zuótiān	dào	-de.	I arrived yesterday. WHEN
我	是	昨天	到	的。	
Wǒ	shì	yíge rén	lái	-de.	I came alone. HOW
我	是	一个人	来	的	

Notes on №2–3

2. A: *Nǐmen shì Xīngqīsi dàode ma?* 你们是星期四到的吗？ Did you arrive on Thursday?  
 B: *Bú shì, wǒmen shì Xīngqīwǔ dàode.* 不是，我们是星期五到的。 No, we arrived on Friday.
3. A: *Nǐmen xīngqījǐ zǒu?* 你们星期几走？ What day of the week are you leaving?  
 B: *Wǒmen Xīngqītiān zǒu.* 我们星期天走。 We are leaving on Sunday.

Days of the week:

<i>Xīngqījǐ</i>	What day of the week?
星期几	
<i>Xīngqīyī</i>	Monday
星期一	
<i>Xīngqīèr</i>	Tuesday
星期二	
<i>Xīngqīsān</i>	Wednesday
星期三	
<i>Xīngqīsi</i>	Thursday
星期四	
<i>Xīngqīwǔ</i>	Friday
星期五	
<i>Xīngqīliù</i>	Saturday
星期六	
<i>Xīngqītiān</i>	Sunday
星期天	

Until now, you have always seen *jǐ*, “how many,” at the beginning of a word (*jǐge háizi*, *jǐwèi xiānsheng*, *jǐhào*). In *xīngqījǐ*, *-jǐ* is at the end of the word. In both places, occupies the position of a number and acts like a number: *xīngqījǐ*, “What number day of the week?”



Notes on №4

- |    |  |            |                         |
|----|--|------------|-------------------------|
| 4. | A: Nǐ shì nǎinián shēngde?             | 你是哪年生的？    | What year are you born? |
|    | B: Wǒ shì yī jiǔ sān jiǔ nián shēngde. | 我是一九三九年生的。 | I was born in 1939.     |

The word for “year,” -nián is a bound word (like the word for “day,” -tiān). The question word nǎinián, “which year,” is formed with the bound word nǎi “which.”

The year is given as a sequence of digits, so that 1972, yījiǔqīèrnián would literally be “one-nine-seven-two year.” In a sequence of digits, the word èr- (not liǎng- is used for 2, and the words for 1, 7, and 8 keep their basic high tones. (See notes on No. 10 for cases in which these tones change.)

## Notes on №5

5. A: *Nǐ shì jǐ yuè shēngde?* 你是几月生的？ What month were you born?  
 B: *Wǒ shì Qī yuè shēngde.* 我是七月生的。 I was born in July.

## Months:

<i>jǐ yuè?</i> 几月	What month?		
<i>yī yuè</i> 一月	January	<i>qī yuè</i> 七月	July
<i>èr yuè</i> 二月		<i>bā yuè</i> 八月	
<i>sān yuè</i> 三月	February	<i>jiǔ yuè</i> 九月	September
<i>sì yuè</i> 四月		<i>shí yuè</i> 十月	
<i>wǔ yuè</i> 五月	March	<i>shí yī yuè</i> 十一月	November
<i>liù yuè</i> 六月		<i>shí èr yuè</i> 十二月	
	April		October
	May		December

Since the names of the months are formed with numbers, *jǐ-* “how many,” is the appropriate question word to use for “what month.” *Jǐ-* is used in *Běijīng* to ask for a number expected to be around 10 or 11.

Notice the tones on the words for 1, 7 and 8, which most Peking speakers pronounce as Rising before Falling-tone words such as *yuè*. The syllable *-yī-* in the word for “November,” however, is usually pronounced with the High tone: *shí yī yuè* (See the notes on No. 10 for a summary of tone changes.)

## Notes on №6

6.	A: Nǐ shì jǐhào shēngde?	你是几号生的？	What day of the month were you born?
	B: Wǒ shì Sìhào shēngde.	我是四号生的。	I was born on the fourth.

Days of the month are expressed by the number of the day followed by the bound word **-hào**. You will remember that **-hào** is also used in giving addresses.

In asking about days of the month, “how many,” is used, even though the question may be answered by a number as high as 31. The month and day of the month may be given together. For example:

Nǐ shì jǐyuè jǐhào shēngde?	What is your month and day of birth?
你是几月几号生的？	
Wǒ shì bāyuè jiǔhào shēngde.	I was born on August 9.
我是八月九号生的。	

## Notes on №7–8

7.	A:	Nǐ duó dà le?	你多大了？	How old are you?
	B:	Wǒ èr shí sì le.	我二十四了。	I'm 24.
8.	A:	Nǐ duó dà le?	你多大了？	How old are you?
	B:	Wǒ sān shí wǔ le.	我三十五了。	I'm 35.

**Nǐ duó dà le?** “How old are you?” literally means “How big (in years of age) are you?” This is a common way to ask a person’s age. The question is appropriate for asking the age of a child or a young adult, but the expression is not considered polite enough for asking an older adult his age. (More formal ways to ask a person’s age will be introduced on the C-2, P-2, and drill tapes.)

The marker **le** which ends these sentences calls attention to the fact that something is true now that was not true before.

 **Note**

Ages may also be asked and given without using the new-situation **le**.

**Le** has only this new-situation meaning in these sentences. It has no meaning of completion, since in fact, there is no completed event.

One way to reflect the new-situation **le** in the English translation is to add the word “now”: “I’m 35 now.” Essentially, however, “new situation” (sometimes called “change of state”) is a Chinese grammatical category with no simple English equivalent.

The marker **le** for new situations is always found at the end of a sentence and is sometimes called “sentence **le**.”

Notice that neither answer contains a verb. The verb that has been left out is **yǒu** “to have.” The verb may not be left out in the negative: **Wǒ méiyǒu sānshíwǔ**. “I’m not 35.”

### Notes on №9

- |    |    |                         |               |                        |
|----|----|-------------------------|---------------|------------------------|
| 9. | A: | Nǐmen nǚháizi jǐsui le? | 你们女孩子<br>几岁了？ | How old is your girl?  |
|    | B: | Tā bāsui le.            | 她八岁了。         | She's eight years old. |

**-sui**: In the traditional Chinese system of giving ages, a person is one **-sui** old at birth and becomes another **-sui** old on the New Year's following his birth. A baby born the day before New Year's would thus be two **-sui** old on the day after his birth. Most Chinese, however, have now switched to the Western style of computing age and use **-sui** just as we use years old.

The word **-sui** like the word **-hào**, is a bound word showing what kind of thing a number is counting.

In a date or address you are listing a number and use **èr** for 2, while in giving an age you are counting an amount of something and use **liǎng**: **liǎngsui**, "two years old."

## Notes on №10

10. A: *Nǐmen nánháizi dōu jǐsui le?* 你们男孩子都几岁了? How old are your boys?
- B: *Yíge jiǔsui le, yíge liùsui le.* 一个九岁了, 一个六岁了。 One is nine, and one is six.

The word *dōu* is used when “both” or “all” would probably not be used in English, namely, when expecting different information about each of the things (or persons) being discussed. “All” tends to be collective, asking or telling about something the members of a group have in common. *Dōu* can be distributive, asking or telling something about the members of a group as individuals.

*Yí, qí, bá*: In the spoken language of Peking, the basic High tones of *yī*, *qī* and *bā* usually change to Rising tones before Falling-tone words (such as *-hào*, *yüè*, and *-sui*). This change is most common when the complete number given has only one digit. When there are two or more digits, the *qī* and *bā* of numbers ending in 7 and 8 are more likely to have Rising tones than the *yī* of numbers ending in 1 (which is usually in the High tone).

Compare:

<i>shíqīhào</i>	the 17th
十七号	
<i>shíyīyüè</i>	November
十一月	

In all cases, the High tone is more likely to be kept in rapid speech. You may also encounter speakers who never make changes in the tones of *yī*, *qī* and *bā*.

Remember that, in the digit-by-digit form of giving the year, the numbers 1, 7, and 8 keep their basic High tones: *yījībāliùnián* 1986.

## Notes on additional required vocabulary

Days	qiántiān	zuótiān	jīntiān	míngtiān	hòutiān
	前田	昨天	今天	明天	后天
Years	qiānnián	qùnián	jīnnián	míngnián	hòunián
	千年	去年	今年	名年	后年

In the Chinese system of expressing relative time in terms of days and years, only one pair of terms is not parallel: **zuótiān** “yesterday,” and **qùnián** “last year.”

 **Note**

added by Eric Streit with the explanations given by a Chinese native about the drills I and the use of **suìshù** 岁数 and **Niánjì** 年纪

- **suìshù** 岁数 and **Niánjì** 年纪 usually and mostly refer to OLDER people that you ask for. **suìshù** 岁数 is very spoken though. And less polite.
- For kids especially, you only need to do 多大了? **duó dà le?** or 几岁了? **jǐ suì le?**
- with 几岁了? neither **suìshù** 岁数 nor **Niánjì** 年纪.

## Drills

### Response Drill

According to the cues, give an answer to each **shi...de** question.

1. Qǐngwèn, tā shì zài nǎr shēngde?  
请问，他/她是在哪儿生的？  
May I ask, where was he/she born?

Cue Dézhōu  
德州  
Texas

Tā shì zài Dézhōu shēngde.  
他/她是在德州生的。  
He/she was born in Texas.

2. Qǐngwèn, nǐ àiren shì zài nǎr shēngde?  
请问，你爱人是在哪儿生的？  
May I ask, where was your spouse born?

Cue Jiāzhōu  
加州  
California

Tā shì zài Jiāzhōu shēngde.  
他/她是在加州生的。  
He/she was born in California.

3. Qǐngwèn, tā àiren shì zài nǎr shēngde?  
请问，他/她爱人是在哪儿生的？  
May I ask, where was his/her spouse born?

Cue Shànghǎi  
上海  
Shànghǎi

Tā shì zài Shànghǎi shēngde.



他/她是在上海生的。

He/she was born in Shànghǎi.

4. Qǐngwèn, nǐ hái'izi shì zài nǎr shēngde?

请问，你孩子是在哪儿生的？

May I ask, where was your child born?

Cue

Sichuān

四川

Sichuān

Tā shì zài Sichuān shēngde.

他/她是在四川生的。

He/she was born in Sichuān

5. Qǐngwèn, nǐmen nǚhái'izi shì zài nǎr shēngde?

请问，你们女孩子是在哪儿生的？

May I ask, where was your daughter born?

Cue

Běijīng

北京

Běijīng

Tā shì zài Běijīng shēngde.

她是在北京生的。

She was born in Běijīng.

6. Qǐngwèn, nǐmen nánhái'izi shì zài nǎr shēngde?

请问，你们男孩子是在哪儿生的？

May I ask, where was your son born?

Cue

Māsàzhūsāi zhōu (Mázhōu)

马萨诸塞州

Massachusetts

Tā shì zài Māsàzhūsāi zhōu shēngde.

他是在我住在马萨诸塞州生的。

He was born in Massachusetts.

7. Qǐngwèn, Zēng xiānsheng shì zài nǎr shēngde?

请问，曾先生是在哪儿生的？

May I ask, where was Mr. Zēng born?

Cue

Niǔ Yūē

纽约

New York

Tā shì zài Niǔ Yūē shēngde.

他是在纽约生的。

He was born in New York.

## Substitution drill

Transform the question according to the model.

1. Qǐngwèn, nǐ shénme shíhou zǒu?  
请问，你是什么时候走？  
May I ask, when are you leaving?

Cue něitiān  
哪天  
what day

Qǐngwèn, nǐ něitiān zǒu?  
请问，你哪天走？  
May I ask, what day are you leaving?

2. Qǐngwèn, nǐ něitiān zǒu?  
请问，你哪天走？  
May I ask, what day are you leaving?

Cue jǐyüè  
几月  
what month

Qǐngwèn, nǐ jǐyüè zǒu?  
请问，你几月走？  
May I ask, what month are you leaving?

3. Qǐngwèn, nǐ jǐyüè zǒu?  
请问，你几月走？  
May I ask, what month are you leaving?

Cue jǐhào  
几号  
what day of the month

Qǐngwèn, nǐ jǐhào zǒu?  
请问，你几号走？  
May I ask, what day of the month are you leaving?

4. Qǐngwèn, nǐ jǐhào zǒu?  
请问，你几号走？  
May I ask, what day of the month are you leaving?

Cue nǐnián  
哪年  
what year

Qǐngwèn, nǐ nǐnián zǒu?  
请问，你哪年走？  
May I ask, what year are you leaving?

5. Qǐngwèn, nǐ nǐnián zǒu?  
请问，你哪年走？  
May I ask, May I ask, what year are you leaving?

Cue jǐyüè jǐhào  
几月几号  
what month and what day of the month

Qǐngwèn, nǐ jǐyüè jǐhào zǒu?  
请问，你几月几号走？  
May I ask, what month, what day of the month are you leaving?

6. Qǐngwèn, nǐ jǐyüè jǐhào zǒu?  
请问，你几月几号走？  
May I ask, what month, what day of the month are you leaving?

Cue xīngqījǐ  
星期几  
what day of the week

Qǐngwèn, nǐ xīngqījǐ zǒu?  
请问，你星期几走？  
May I ask, what day of the week are you leaving?

## Substitution drill

Transform the statement according to the model.

1. Wǒmen xīngqīyī zǒu.

我们星期一走。

We are leaving on Monday.

Cue

xīngqīèr

星期二

Tuesday

Wǒmen xīngqīèr zǒu.

我们星期二走。

We are leaving on Tuesday.

2. Wǒmen xīngqīèr zǒu.

我们星期二走。

We are leaving on Tuesday.

Cue

xīngqīsān

星期三

Wednesday

Wǒmen xīngqīsān zǒu.

我们星期三走。

We are leaving on Wednesday.

3. Wǒmen xīngqīsān zǒu.

我们星期三走。

We are leaving on Wednesday.

Cue

xīngqīsì

星期四

Thursday

Wǒmen xīngqīsì zǒu.

我们星期四走。

We are leaving on Thursday.

4. Wǒmen xīngqīsì zǒu.  
我们星期四走。  
We are leaving on Thursday.

Cue xīngqījǐ  
星期几  
What day of the week

Wǒmen xīngqījǐ zǒu?  
我们星期几走？  
What day of the week are you leaving?

5. Wǒmen xīngqījǐ zǒu?  
我们星期几走？  
What day of the week are you leaving?

Cue xīngqīwǔ  
星期五  
Friday

Wǒmen xīngqīwǔ zǒu.  
我们星期五走。  
We are leaving on Friday.

6. Wǒmen xīngqīwǔ zǒu.  
我们星期五走。  
We are leaving on Friday.

Cue xīngqītiān  
星期天  
Sunday

Wǒmen xīngqītiān zǒu.  
我们星期天走。  
We are leaving on Sunday.

7. Wǒmen xīngqītiān zǒu.  
我们星期天走。  
We are leaving on Sunday.

Cue

xīngqīliù

星期六

Saturday

Wǒmen xīngqīliù zǒu.

我们星期六走。

We are leaving on Saturday.

8.

Wǒmen xīngqīliù zǒu.

我们星期六走。

We are leaving on Saturday.

Cue

xīngqīyī

星期一

Monday

Wǒmen xīngqīyī zǒu.

我们星期一走。

We are leaving on Monday.

## Response drill

According to the cues, give a response to each question.

1. Nǐ hái'zǐ shì nǎinián shēngde?

你孩子是哪天生的？

What year was your child born?

Cue 1971

Tā shì yījiūqīyīnián shēngde.

他/她是一九七一年生的。

He/she was born in 1971.

2. Lǐ xiānsheng shì nǎinián shēngde?

李先生是哪年生的？

What year was Mr. Lǐ born?

Cue 1944

Tā shì yījiūsìsìnián shēngde.

他是一九四四年生的。

He was born in 1944.

3. Nǐ dìdì shì nǎinián shēngde?

你弟弟是哪年生的？

What year was your younger brother born?

Cue 1940

Tā shì yījiūsìlíngnián shēngde.

他是一九四零年生的。

He was born in 1940.

4. Nèige hái'zǐ shì nǎinián shēngde?

那个孩子是哪年生的？

What year was that child born?

Cue 1967



Tā shì yījiùliùqīnián shēngde.

他/她是一九六七年生的。

He/she was born in 1967.

5. Zhèige nánháizi shì něinián shēngde?

这个男孩子是哪年生的？

What year was this boy born?

Cue 1968

Tā shì yījiùliùbānián shēngde.

他/她是一九六八生的。

He was born in 1968.

6. Nèige rén shì něinián shēngde?

那个人是哪年生的？

What year was that person born?

Cue 1927

Tā shì yījiùèrqīnián shēngde.

他/她是一九二七年生的。

He/she was born in 1927.

7. Tā shì něinián shēngde?

他/她是哪年生的？

What year was he/she born?

Cue 1933

Tā shì yījiūsānsānnián shēngde.

他/她是一九三三年生的。

He/she was born in 1933.

## Response drill

According to the cues, give a response to each question.

1. Tā shì jǐ yuè shēng de?  
他/她是几月生的?  
What month was he/she born?

Cue èryuè  
二月  
February

Tā shì èryuè shēng de.  
他/她是二月生的。  
He/she was born in February.

2. Tā ài ren shì jǐ yuè shēng de?  
他/她爱人是几月生的?  
What month was his/her spouse born?

Cue wǔ yuè  
五月  
May

Tā shì wǔ yuè shēng de.  
他/她是五月生的。  
He/she was born in May.

3. Zhāng tóngzhì shì jǐ yuè shēng de?  
张同志是几月生的?  
What month was Comrade Zhāng born?

Cue sì yuè  
四月  
April

Tā shì sì yuè shēng de.  
他/她是四月生的。  
He/she was born in April.

4. Wáng tóngzhì shì jǐ yuè shēngde?

王同志是几月生的？

What month was Comrade Wāng born?

Cue shíyī yuè  
十一月  
November

Tā shì shíyī yuè shēngde.

他/她是十一月生的。

He/she was born in November.

5. Nǐ àiren shì jǐ yuè shēngde?

你爱人是几月生的？

What month was your spouse born?

Cue bā yuè  
八月  
August

Tā shì bā yuè shēngde.

他/她是八月生的。

He/she was born in August.

6. Nǐ gēge shì jǐ yuè shēngde?

你哥哥是几月生的？

What month was your older brother born?

Cue shíèr yuè  
十二月  
December

Tā shì shíèr yuè shēngde.

他是十二月生的。

He was born in December.

7. Tā mèimei shì jǐ yuè shēngde?

他/她妹妹是几月生的？

What month was your younger sister born?

Cue

liù yuè

六月

June

Tā shì liù yuè shēng de.

她是六月生的。

She was born in June.

## Expansion drill

According to the cues, give a response to each statement.

1. Tā shì yíyuè shēngde.  
他/她是一月生的。  
He/she was born in January.

Cue yíhào  
一号  
first

Tā shì yíyuè yíhào shēngde.  
他/她是一月一号生的。  
He/she was born in January first.

2. Tā shì yíyuè shēngde.  
他/她是一月生的。  
He/she was born in January.

Cue shíyīhào  
十一号  
11th

Tā shì yíyuè shíyīhào shēngde.  
他/她是一月十一号生的。  
He/she was born on the 11th of January.

3. Tā shì yíyuè shēngde.  
他/她是一月生的。  
He/she was born in January.

Cue èrshíliùhào  
二十六号  
26th

Tā shì yíyuè èrshíliùhào shēngde.  
他/她是一月二十六号生的。  
He/she was born on the 26th of January.

4. Tā shì yíyuè shēngde.  
他/她是一月上的。  
He/she was born in January.

Cue qīhào  
七号  
7th

Tā shì yíyuè qīhào shēngde.  
他/她是一月七号生的。  
He/she was born on the 7th of January.

5. Tā shì yíyuè shēngde.  
他/她是一月生的。  
He/she was born in January.

Cue shísihào  
十四号  
14th

Tā shì yíyuè shísihào shēngde.  
他/她是一月十四号生的。  
He/she was born on the 14th of January.

6. Tā shì yíyuè shēngde.  
他/她是一月生的。  
He/she was born in January.

Cue èrshibāhào  
二十八号  
28th

Tā shì yíyuè èrshibāhào shēngde.  
他/她是一月二十八号生的。  
He/she was born on the 28th of January.

7. Tā shì yíyuè shēngde.  
他/她是一月生的。  
He/she was born in January.

Cue

shíhào

十号

10th

Tā shì yíyuè shíhào shēngde.

他/她是一月十号生的。

He/she was born on the 10th of January.

## Response drill

According to the cues, give a response to each question.

1. Nǐmen nǚhāizi jǐsui le?

你们女孩子几岁了？

How old is your daughter?

Cue 5

Tā wǔsui le.

她五岁了。

She is 5.

2. Tāmen nánhāizi jǐsui le?

他们男孩子几岁了？

How old is their boy?

Cue 11

Tā shíyīsui le.

他十一岁了。

He is 11.

3. Hú tàitai nǚhāizi jǐsui le?

胡太太女孩子几岁了？

How old is Mrs. Hú's daughter?

Cue 13

Tā shí sānsui le.

她十三岁了。

She is 13.

4. Tā mèimei jǐsui le?

他/她妹妹几岁了？

How old is his/her younger sister?

Cue 7



Tā qīsuì le.

她七岁了。

She is 7.

5. Nǐ nánháizi jǐsuì le?

你男孩子几岁了？

How old is your boy?

Cue 6

Tā liùsuì le.

他六岁了。

He is 6.

6. Nǐ nǚháizi jǐsuì le?

你女孩子几岁了？

How old is your daughter?

Cue 4

Tā sìsuì le.

她四岁了。

She is 4.

7. Nèige nánháizi jǐsuì le?

那个男孩子几岁了？

How old is that boy?

Cue 8

Tā bāsuì le.

他八岁了。

He is 8.

## Response drill

According to the cues, give a response to each question.

1. Tā duó dà le?  
他/她多大了?  
How old is he/she?

Cue 35

Tā sānshiwǔ le.  
他/她三十五了。  
He/she is 35.

2. Nǐ gēge duó dà le?  
你哥哥多大了?  
How old is your older brother?

Cue 44

Tā sishisi le.  
他四十四了。  
He is 44.

3. Nǐ dìdì duó dà le?  
你弟弟多大了?  
How old is your younger brother?

Cue 30

Tā sānshí le.  
他三十了。  
He is 30.

4. Tā jiějie duó dà le?  
他/她姐姐多大了?  
How old is his/her older sister?

Cue 47

Tā sishiqī le.

她四十七了。

She is 47.

5. Nǐ mèimei duó dà le?

你妹妹多大了？

How old is your younger sister?

Cue 32

Tā sānshèr le.

她三十二了。

She is 32.

6. Tā àiren duó dà le?

他/她爱人多大了？

How old is his/her spouse?

Cue 28

Tā èrshibā le.

他/她二十八了。

He/she is 28.

7. Wáng tóngzhì duó dà le?

王同志多大了？

How old is Comrade Wáng?

Cue 41

Tā sishiyī le.

他/她四十一了。

He/she is 41.

## Response drill

According to the cues, give a response to each question.

1. Nín mǔqīn duō dà suīshù le?  
您母亲多大岁数了?  
How old is your mother?

Cue 65

Tā liùshiwǔsui le.

她六十五岁了。

She is 65.

2. Nín fùqīn duō dà suīshù le?  
您父亲多大岁数了?  
How old is your father?

Cue 67

Tā liùshiqīnsuī le.

他六十七岁了。

He is 67.

3. Tā jiějie duō dà suīshù le?  
他/她姐姐多大岁数了?  
How old is his/her older sister?

Cue 46

Tā sìshíliùsui le.

他四十六岁了。

She is 46.

4. Tā gēge duō dà suīshù le?  
他/她哥哥多大岁数了?  
How old is his/her older brother?

Cue 44

Tā sishìsìsùì le.

他四十四岁了。

He is 44.

5. Zhāng xiānshēng duō dà suìshù le?

张先生多大岁数了？

How old is Mr. Zhāng?

Cue 72

Tā qīshíèrsùì le.

他七十二岁了。

He is 72.

6. Wáng tàitai duō dà suìshù le?

王太太多大岁数了？

How old is Mrs. Wáng?

Cue 59

Tā wǔshíjiǔsùì le.

她五十九岁了。

She is 59.

7. Wáng tàitai mèimei duō dà suìshù le?

王太太妹妹多大岁数了？

How old is Mrs. Wáng's younger sister?

Cue 58

Tā wǔshíbāsùì le.

她五十八岁了。

She is 58.

## Substitution drill

Substitute **shàngge yuè**, “last month” (May), **zhèige yuè**, “this month” (June), or **xiàge yuè**, “next month” (July), according to the month mentioned in the speaker’s sentence.

1. Tā shì wǔ yuè lái de.

他/她是五月来的。

He/she came in May.

Où. Tā shì shàngge yuè lái de.

哦。他/她是上个月来的。

Oh. He/she came last month.

2. Tā qī yuè lái.

他/她七月来。

He/she is coming in July.

Où. Tā xiàge yuè lái.

哦。他/她下个月来。

Oh. He/she is coming next month.

3. Tā liù yuè lái.

他/她六月来。

He/she is coming in June.

Où. Tā zhèige yuè lái.

哦。他/她这个月来。

Oh. He/she is coming this month.

4. Tā shì liù yuè lái de.

他/她是六月来的。

He/she is came in June.

Où. Tā shì zhèige yuè lái de.

哦。他/她这个月来的。

Oh. He/she came this month.

5. Tā qī yuè zǒu.

他/她七月走。

He/she is leaving in September.

Où. Tā xiàge yuè zǒu.

哦。他/她下个月走。

Oh. He/she is leaving next month.

6. Tā shì wǔ yuè dào de.

他/她是五月到的。

He/she arrived in May.

Où. Tā shì shàngge yuè dào de.

哦。他/她是上个月到的。

Oh. He/she is arrived last month.

7. Tā shì liù yuè zǒu de.

他/她是六月走的。

He/she left on June.

Où. Tā shì zhèige yuè zǒu de.

哦。他/她是这个月走的。

Oh. He/she left this month.

## Transformation drill

Each of the speaker's statements is the answer to a question. After hearing each answer, ask the question which could have prompted the response.

1. Tā shì yījiūsānwǔnián shēngde.

他/她是一九三五年生的。

He/she was born in 1935.

Tā shì nǎinián shēngde?

他/她是哪年生的？

What year was he/she born?

2. Tā shì sìyuè lái de.

他/她是四月来的。

He/she came in April.

Tā shì jǐyuè lái de?

他/她是几月来的？

What month did he/she come?

3. Tā shì xīngqīwǔ zǒude.

他/她是星期五走的。

He/she left on Friday.

Tā shì xīngqījǐ zǒude?

他/她是星期几走的？

What day of the week did he/she leave?

4. Tā shì qīhào dào de.

他/她是七号到的。

He/she has arrived on the seventh.

Tā shì jǐhào dào de?

他/她是几号到的？

What day of the month did he/she arrive?

5. Tā shì yījiūqīsìnián lái de.

他/她是一九七四年来的。

He/she has come in 1974.



Tā shì nǎinián lái de?

他/她是哪年来的？

What year did he/she come?

6. Tā shì xīngqītiān zǒu de.

他/她是星期天走的。

He/she has left on Sunday.

Tā shì xīngqījǐ zǒu de?

他/她是星期几走的？

What day did he/she leave.

7. Tā shì jiǔyuè shēng de.

他/她是九月生的。

He/she was born in September.

Tā shì jǐyuè shēng de?

他/她是几月生的？

What month was he/she born?

## Unit 6

### Introduction

#### Topics covered in this unit

1. Duration phrases
2. The marker **le** for completion.
3. The “double **le**” construction.
4. The marker **-guo**.
5. Action verbs.
6. State verbs.

#### Material you will need

1. The C-1 and P-1 tapes, the Reference List and Reference Notes.
2. The C-2 and P-2 tapes, the Workbook.
3. The 6D-1 tape.

## References

### Reference List

1. A: Nǐ zhù duó jiǔ?  
你住多久?  
How long are you staying?  
B: Wǒ zhù yínián.  
我住一年。  
I'm staying one year.
2. A: Nǐ tàitai zhù duó jiǔ?  
你太太住多久?  
How long is your wife staying?  
B: Tā zhù liǎngtiān.  
她住两天。  
She is staying two days.
3. A: Nǐ tàitai zài Xiānggǎng zhù duó jiǔ?  
你太太在香港住多久?  
How long is your wife staying in Hong Kong?  
B: Wǒ xiǎng tā zhù liǎngtiān.  
我想她住两天。  
I think she is staying two days.
4. A: Nǐ xiǎng zhù duò jiǔ?  
你想住多久?  
How long are you thinking of staying?  
B: Wǒ xiǎng zhù yínián.  
我想住一年。  
I'm thinking of staying one year.
5. A: Nǐ xiǎng zài Táiwān zhù duó jiǔ?  
你想在台湾住多久?  
How long are you thinking of staying in Taiwan?  
B: Wǒ xiǎng zhù bāge yuè.  
我想住八个月。  
I'm thinking of staying eight months.
- 6.<sup>a</sup> A: Nǐ péngyou xiǎng zhù duó jiǔ?  
你朋友想住多久?  
How long is your friend thinking of staying?

7. B: Tā xiǎng zhù liǎngge xīngqī.  
他想住两个星期。  
He is thinking of staying two weeks.
- A: Nǐ lái le duō jiǔ le?  
你来了多久了?  
How long have you been there?
- B: Wǒ lái le sāntiān le.  
我来了三天了。  
I have been here three days.
8. A: Nǐ tàitai zài Xiānggǎng zhù le duō jiǔ?  
你太太在香港住了多久?  
How long did your wife stay in Hong Kong?
- B: Tā zhù le liǎngtiān.  
她住了两天。  
She stayed two days.
9. A: Tā lái le ma?  
他来了吗?  
Did he come?
- B: Lái le, tā lái le.  
来了，他来了。  
Yes, he came.
10. A: Tā lái le ma?  
他来了吗?  
Did he come?
- B: Méi lái, tā méi lái.  
没来，他没来。  
No, he didn't come.
11. A: Nǐ cóngqián lái guo ma?  
你从前来过吗?  
Have you ever been here before?
- B: Wǒ cóngqián méi lái guo.  
我从前没来过。  
I have never been here before.

<sup>a</sup>This exchange occurs on the C-1 tape only.

## Vocabulary

qù	去	to go
Niǔ Yūē	纽约	New York
cóngqián	从前	in the past
duó jiǔ	多久	how long
-guo	—过	experiential marker
xiǎng	想	to think that, to want to, would you like to
Xiānggǎng	香港	Hong Kong
xīngqī	星期	week
zhù	住	to live somewhere

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1

1. A: *Nǐ zhù duó jiǔ?* 你住多久？ How long are you staying?  
 B: *Wǒ zhù yìnián.* 我住一年。 I'm staying one year.

Expressions like *duó jiǔ*, “how long,” and *yìnián* “one year,” called duration phrases, come after the verb.

#### Note

“One day” is *yìtiān*. The tone on *yī* changes to Falling before a High-tone.

Notice the contrast with time-when phrases, like *shénme shíhou*, “when,” and *jīnnián* “this year,” which comes before the verb.

<i>Nǐ</i>	<i>shénme shíhou</i>	<i>zǒu ?</i>		When are you leaving?
你	什么时候	走？		
<i>Nǐ</i>		<i>zhù</i>	<i>duó jiǔ?</i>	How long are you staying?
你		住	多久？	

If a duration phrase is used with the verb *zhù*, this phrase preempts the position after the verb; and any place phrase, like *zài Běijīng*, must come before the verb.

<i>Wǒ</i>		<i>zhù</i>	<i>zài Běijīng.</i>	I'm living in <i>Běijīng</i> .
我		住	在北京。	
<i>Nǐ</i>	<i>zài Běijīng</i>	<i>zhù</i>	<i>duó jiǔ?</i>	How long are you staying in <i>Běijīng</i> ?
你	在北京	住	多久？	

**Yìnián:** In telling how many years (giving an amount) no counter is used. The tone on *yī*, “one,” changes to Falling before a Rising tone.

**Notes on №2**

- |    |                           |         |                                |
|----|---------------------------|---------|--------------------------------|
| 2. | A: Nǐ tàitai zhù duó jiǔ? | 你太太住多久？ | How long is your wife staying? |
|    | B: Ta zhù liǎngtiān.      | 她住两天。   | She is staying two days.       |

**Liǎngtiān:** -tiān, “day,” like -nián, “year,” is used without a counter. When telling how many of something, the number 2 takes the form liǎng. (See Unit 3, notes on Nos. 3–4.)

Notes on №3–4

3.	A: Nǐ tàitai zài Xiānggǎng zhù duō jiǔ? 你太太在香港住多久?	How long is your wife staying in Hong Kong?
	B: Wǒ xiǎng tā zhù liǎngtiān. 我想她住两天。	I think she is staying two days.
4.	A: Nǐ xiǎng zhù duō jiǔ? 你想住多久?	How long are you thinking of staying?
	B: Wǒ xiǎng zhù yìnián. 我想住一年。	I'm thinking of staying one year.

The verb *xiǎng*, “to think that,” “to want to,” “would like to,” may be used as a main verb or as an auxiliary verb. As a main verb it means “to think that.” It is used this way in the answer of exchange 3 and in the following examples.

Wǒ xiǎng tā míngtiān lái. w哦向他明天来。	I think he is coming tomorrow.
Wǒ xiǎng tā bú qù. 我想他不去。	I think he is not going.

When *xiǎng* is used as a main verb meaning “to think that,” it is not made negative. This may be a special problem for English speakers who are used to saying “I don’t think he is going.”

In Chinese, it is: “I think he is **not going**.” *Wǒ xiǎng tā bú qù.*

When *xiǎng* is used as an auxiliary verb, it means, “to want to,” “would like to.” It is used this way in exchange 4, which could also be translated as, “How long would you like to stay?”

Here are other examples:

Nǐ xiǎng zǒu ma? 你想走马?	Would you like to leave? OR Do you want to go?
Wǒ bù xiǎng zǒu. 我不想走。	I don’t want to leave.
Nǐ xiǎng zài Táiběi gōngzuò ma? 你想在台北工作马?	Do you want to work in Taipei?



Notes on №5–6

5. A: *Nǐ xiǎng zài Táiwān zhù duó jiǔ?* 你想在台湾住多久?  
 B: *Wǒ xiǎng zhù bāge yuè.* 我想住八个月。  
 How long are you thinking of staying in Taiwan?  
 I'm thinking of staying eight months.
6. A: *Nǐ péngyou xiǎng zhù duó jiǔ?* 你朋友想住多久?  
 B: *Tā xiǎng zhù liǎngge xīngqī.* 他想住两个星期。  
 How long is your friend thinking of staying?  
 He is thinking of staying two weeks.

You already know that *yinián* and *yitiān* are used without counters. The words for “month” and “week,” however, are used with counters.

Compare:

<i>sāntiān</i>	3 days
三天	
<i>sānnián</i>	3 years
三年	
<i>sānge xīngqī</i>	3 weeks
三个星期	
<i>sānge yuè</i>	3 months
三个月	

**Notes on №7**

7.	A: Nǐ lái le duō jiǔ le?	你来了多久了？	How long have you been there?
	B: Wǒ lái le sān tiān le.	我来了三天了。	I have been here three days.

**le...le**, “up until now,” “so far”: The use of completed-action **le** after the verb and of new-situation **le** after the duration phrase tells you how long the activity has been going on and that it is still going on. The answer could also have been translated “I have been here three days so far.” This pattern is sometimes called “double **le**.”

Notice that when **le** is in the middle of a sentence (in this case, because it is followed by a duration phrase), we write it attached to the verb before it: **lái le duō jiǔ le**.

Notes on №8

8.	A: Nǐ tàitai zài Xiānggǎng zhùle duō jiǔ?	你太太在香港住了多久？	How long did your wife stay in Hong Kong?
	B: Tā zhùle liǎngtiān.	她住了两天。	She stayed two days.

**Completion le:** Here you see the marker **le** used to indicate one aspect, completion. Compare a sentence with one **le** to a sentence with two **le**'s:

Wǒ zài nàr zhùle sāntiān.	I stayed there three days.
我在那儿住了三天。	
Wǒ zài nàr zhùle sāntiān le.	I have been here (stayed here) for three days now (so far).
我在那儿住了三天了。	

Completion **le** is used with verbs that describe actions or processes, not with verbs that describe a state or condition, or a continuing situation. The following sentences, describing states or ongoing situations, have past-tense verbs in English but no **le** in Chinese.

Nèige shíhou tāmen zhǐ yǒu liǎngè háizi.	At that time they had only two children.
那个时候他们只有两个孩子。	
Tā qùnián bú zài Shànghǎi, zài Běijīng.	He wasn't in Shànghǎi last year; he was in Běijīng.
他去年不在上海，在北京。	

**Verb types in Chinese:** In studying some languages, it is important to learn whether a noun is masculine, feminine, or neuter. In Chinese, it is important to learn whether a verb is an action, state, or process verb. These three verb categories are meaning (semantic) groups. A verb is a member of one group or another depending on the meaning of the verb. For instance, “running” and “dancing” are actions; “being good” and “being beautiful” are states; and “getting sick” and “melting” are processes. In Chinese, grammatical rules are applied differently to each semantic verb category. For the most part, you have learned only action and state verbs in this course; so these comments will be confined to those two verb categories. (See Unit 8 of this module for process verbs,)

**Action verbs:** These are verbs which describe physical and mental activities. The easiest to classify are verbs of movement such as “walking,” “running,” and “riding,” however, action verbs also include verbs with not too much motion, such as “working” and “writing,” and verbs with no apparent motion, such as “studying.” One test for determining if a verb is an action is asking “What did he do?” “He arrived,” “He spoke,” and “He listened” are answers which contain action verbs. “He knew” “He wanted” and “He is here” are answers which contain state verbs, not action verbs. Some of the action verbs you have learned are:

dào (to arrive)	lái (to come)
到	来
gōngzuò (to work)	zhù (to live, to stay)
工作	住

**State verbs:** These verbs describe qualities, conditions, and states. All adjectival verbs, such as *hǎo* “to be good,” and *jiǔ*, “to be long (in time),” are state verbs. Emotions, such as “being happy” and “being sad,” are expressed with state verbs. “Knowing,” “liking,” “wanting,” and “understanding,” which may be called mental states, are also expressed with state verbs. Also, all auxiliary verbs, such as *xiǎng*, “to want to,” “would like to,” are state verbs. Here are some of the state verbs:

dà to be large	shì to be
大	是
duì to be correct	jiào to be called
对	叫
xìng to be surnamed	zài to be at
性	在
xiǎng to want to	zhīdào to know
想	直到

**Aspect and verb types:** Not every aspect marker in Chinese may be used with all types of verbs. Completion *le* does not occur with state verbs. It does occur with action verbs.

ACTION	Tā yǐjīng dào le.	He has already arrived.
	他已经到了。	
	Tā gōngzuòle yínián.	He worked one year.
	他工作了一年。	
	Tā lái le ma?	Did he come?
	他来了吗？	
STATE	Tā qùnián bú zài zhèr.	He wasn't here last year.
	他去年不在这儿。	
	Tā zuótiān xiǎng qù.	Yesterday he wanted to go.
	他昨天想去。	
Tā zuótiān bú zhīdào.	He didn't know yesterday.	
他昨天不知道。		

Notes on №9–10

9. A: Tā lái le ma? 他来了吗? Did he come?  
 B: Lái le, tā lái le. 来了, 他来了。 Yes, he came.
10. A: Tā lái le ma? 他来了吗? Did he come?  
 B: Méi lái, tā méi lái. 没来, 他没来。 No, he didn't come.

Compare the two possible interpretations of the question Tā lái le ma? and the answers they receive:

Completion le					
Tā		lái	le	ma?	Did she come?
他		来	了	马?	
Tā		lái	le.		She came.
他		来	了。		
Tā	méi	lái			She didn't come.
他	没	来。			

Combined le						
Tā			lái	le	ma?	Has he come?
他			来	了	马?	
Tā			lái	le.		She has come. OR She's here.
他			来	了。		
Tā	hái	méi	lái.			She hasn't come yet.
他	还	没	来。			

The first question, with completion le, asks only if the action took place. The second question, with combined le asks both whether the action has been completed and whether the resulting new situation still exists.

Notes on №11

11.	A:	Nǐ cóngqián lái guo ma?	你从前来过吗？	Have you ever been here before?
	B:	Wǒ cóngqián méi lái guo.	我从前没来过。	I have never been here before.

The aspect marker **-guo** means literally “to pass over,” “to cross over. The implication is that an event took place and then ceased at some time in the past.

It may help you to conceptualize **-guo** in terms of a bridge. The whole bridge is the event. The marker **-guo** stresses the fact that not only have you crossed over the bridge but at present you are no longer standing on it.

The meaning of **-guo** changes slightly depending on what type of verb it is used with: action or process, (**-guo** may not be used with state verbs.) With an action verb, **-guo** means that the action took place and then ceased at some time before the present. With a process verb, **-guo** means that the process took place and that the state which resulted from the process ended at some time before the present.

Remember that aspect markers like **le** and **-guo** are used only when the speaker feels it necessary to stress some feature or aspect of an event. **le** is used to stress finishing, or completion, **-guo** is used to stress that a situation occurred in the past and was “over” or “undone,” before the time of speaking (that is, the absence of that situation followed the situation).

Let’s contrast **-guo** with completion **le**: both **le** and **-guo** express completion, but **-guo** stresses that an action is no longer being performed, or that a state resulting from a process no longer exists.

For example, **Tā lái le.** means “He came,” or “He has come,” not indicating whether or not he is still there.

But **Tā lái guo** means “He came” with the specification that he is not there anymore—that is, he came and left.

One of the uses of the aspect marker **-guo**, is in sentences which express experience or having experienced something at least once in the past, that is, “to have had the experience of doing something.” This is how **-guo** is used in exchange 11. In a question, the marker **-guo** can be reflected by the English word “ever,” and in a negative statement by “never.”

Nǐ	cóngqián		lái	-guo	ma?	Have you <b>ever</b> been (come) here before?
你	从		来	过	吗？	
Nǐ	cóngqián	méi	lái	-guo		I have <b>never</b> been (come) here before.
你	从	没	来	过		
Nǐ	cóngqián		lái	-guo		I have been (come) here before
你	从		来	过		

The negative of **Tā lái le.** does not include a **le**, but the negative of **Tā lái guo.** does have a **-guo**. The negative adverb **méi** is used to negate both completion **le** and **-guo**.

Tā		lái	le.
他		来	了。

He came.			
Tā	méi	lái	
他	没	来	
He didn't come.			
Tā		lái	-guo.
他		来	过。
He came (He was here).			
Tā	méi	lái	-guo.
他	没	来	过。
He hasn't been here.			

## Drills

### Response drill

#### Respond according to the cue.

1. Zhāng xiānsheng zhù duó jiǔ?  
张先生住多久?  
How long is Mr. Zhāng staying?

Cue yíge yuè  
一个月  
one month

Zhāng xiānsheng zhù yíge yuè.  
张先生住一个月。  
Mr. Zhāng is staying one month.

2. Wáng xiǎojiě zhù duó jiǔ?  
王小姐住多久?  
How long is Miss Wáng staying?

Cue liǎngge xīnqī  
两个星期  
two weeks

Wáng xiǎojiě zhù liǎngge xīnqī.  
王小姐住两个星期。  
Miss Wáng is staying two weeks.

3. Hú tàitai zhù duó jiǔ?  
胡太太住多久?  
How long is Mrs. Hú staying?

Cue sānge yuè  
三个月  
three months

Hú tàitai zhù sānge yuè.



胡太太住三个月。

Mrs. Hú is staying three months.

4. Tā zhù duó jiǔ?

他/她住多久？

How long is he/she staying?

Cue

sìge xīngqī

四个星期

four weeks

Tā zhù sìge xīngqī.

他/她住四个星期。

He/she is staying four weeks.

5. Tā tàitai zhù duó jiǔ?

他/她太太住多久？

How long is his wife staying?

Cue

liǎngge xīngqī

两个星期

two weeks

Tā tàitai zhù liǎngge xīngqī.

他太太住两个星期。

His wife is staying two weeks.

6. Lǐ xiǎojiě zhù duó jiǔ?

李小姐住多久？

How long is Miss Lǐ staying?

Cue

wǔge yuè

五个月

five months

Lǐ xiǎojiě zhù wǔge yuè.

李小姐住五个月。

Miss Lǐ is staying five months.

7. Tā xiānsheng zhù duó jiǔ?

她先生住多久？

How long is her husband staying?

Cue

liùge xīngqī

六个星期

six weeks

Tā xiānsheng zhù liùge xīngqī.

她先生住六个星期。

Her husband is staying six weeks.

## Response drill

### Respond according to the cue.

1. Zhāng tóngzhì zhù duó jiǔ?  
张同志住多久？  
How long is Comrade Zhāng staying?

Cue sāntiān  
三天  
three days

Zhāng tóngzhì zhù sāntiān.  
张同志住三天。  
Comrade Zhāng is staying three days.

2. Tā mǔqīn zhù duó jiǔ?  
他/她母亲住多久？  
How long is his/her mother staying?

Cue yìnián  
一年  
one year

Tā mǔqīn zhù yìnián.  
他/她母亲住一年。  
His/her mother is staying one year.

3. Tā fùqīn zhù duó jiǔ?  
他/她父亲住多久？  
How long is his/her father staying?

Cue wǔtiān  
五天  
five days

Tā fùqīn zhù wǔtiān.  
他/她父亲住五天。  
His/her father is staying five days.



Cue

sānnián

三年

three years

Tā zhù sānnián.

他/他住三年。

He/she is staying three years.

## Response drill

### Respond according to the cue.

1. Tā mǔqīn zhù duó jiǔ?  
他/她母亲住多久?  
How long is his/her mother staying?

Cue liǎngge yuè  
两个月  
two months

Tā mǔqīn zhù liǎngge yuè.  
他/她母亲住两个月。  
His/her mother is staying two months.

2. Tā mèimei zhù duó jiǔ?  
他/她妹妹住多久?  
How long is his/her younger sister staying?

Cue yíge xīngqī  
一个星期  
one week

Tā mèimei zhù yíge xīngqī.  
他/她妹妹住一个星期。  
His/her younger sister is staying one week.

3. Zhāng tàitai zhù duó jiǔ?  
张太太住多久?  
How long is Mrs. Zhāng staying?

Cue jiǔtiān  
九天  
nine days

Zhāng tàitai zhù jiǔtiān.  
张太太住九天。  
Mrs. Zhāng is staying nine days.

4. Tā gēge zhù duó jiǔ?  
他/她哥哥住多久?  
How long is his/her older brother staying?

Cue sige xīngqī  
四个星期  
four weeks

Tā gēge zhù sige xīngqī.  
他/她哥哥住四个星期。  
His/her older brother is staying four weeks.

5. Wáng xiānsheng zhù duó jiǔ?  
王先生住多久?  
How long is Mr. Wáng staying?

Cue yíge yuè  
一个月  
one month

Wáng xiānsheng zhù yíge yuè.  
王先生住一个月。  
Mr. Wáng is staying one month.

6. Tā dìdi zhù duó jiǔ?  
他/她弟弟住多久?  
How long is his/her younger brother staying?

Cue yínián  
一年  
one year

Tā dìdi zhù yínián.  
他/她弟弟住一年。  
His/her younger brother is staying one year.

7. Tā jiějie zhù duó jiǔ?  
他/她姐姐住多久?  
How long is his/her older sister staying?

Cue

shítiān

十天

ten days

Tā jiějie zhù shítiān.

他/她姐姐住十天。

His/her older sister is staying ten days.



## Expansion drill

Expand the response according to the model and the cue.

1. Zhāng tàitai de gēge zhù duó jiǔ?

张太太的哥哥住多久？

How long is Mrs. Zhāng's older brother staying?

Cue

Xiānggǎng

香港

Hong Kong

Zhāng tàitai de gēge zài xiānggǎng zhù duó jiǔ?

张太太的哥哥在香港住多久？

How long is Mrs. Zhāng's older brother staying in Hong Kong?

2. Jiāng xiānsheng de didi zhù duó jiǔ?

江先生的弟弟住多久？

How long is Mr. Jiāng's younger brother staying?

Cue

Guǎngzhōu

广州

Guǎngzhōu

Jiāng xiānsheng de didi zài Guǎngzhōu zhù duó jiǔ?

江先生的弟弟在广州多久？

How long is Mr. Jiāng's younger brother staying in Guǎngzhōu?

3. Zēng xiǎojiě de mèimei zhù duó jiǔ?

曾小姐的妹妹住多久？

How long is Miss Zēng's younger sister staying?

Cue

Zhōngguó

中国

China

Zēng xiǎojiě de mèimei zài Zhōngguó zhù duó jiǔ?

曾小姐的妹妹在中国住多久？

How long is Miss Zēng's younger sister staying in China?

4. Chén tóngzhì de jiějie zhù duó jiǔ?

陈同志的姐姐住多久？

How long is comrade Chén's older sister staying?

Cue

Shānghǎi

上海

Shānghǎi

Chén tóngzhì de jiějie zài Shānghǎi zhù duó jiǔ?

陈同志的姐姐在上海住多久？

How long is comrade Chén's older sister staying in Shānghǎi?

5. Qián tóngzhì de àiren zhù duó jiǔ?

钱同志的爱人住多久？

How long is comrade Qián's spouse staying?

Cue

Měiguó

美国

America

Qián tóngzhì de àiren zài Měiguó zhù duó jiǔ?

钱同志的爱人在美国住多久？

How long is comrade Qián's spouse staying in America?

6. Cáo xiǎojiě de fùqin zhù duó jiǔ?

曹小姐的父亲住多久？

How long is Miss Cáo's father staying?

Cue

Qīngdǎo

青岛

Qīngdǎo

Cáo xiǎojiě de fùqin zài Qīngdǎo zhù duó jiǔ?

曹小姐的父亲在青岛住多久？

How long is Miss Cáo's father staying in Qīngdǎo?

7. Xià xiāngsheng de mǔqin zhù duó jiǔ?

夏先生的母亲住多久？

How long is Mr. Xià's mother staying?

Cue

Běijīng

北京

Běijīng

Xià xiāngshengde mǔqīn zài Běijīng zhù duó jiǔ?

夏先生的母亲在北京住多久？

How long is Mr. Xia's mother staying in Běijīng?

## Transformation drill

Transform the sentence according to the model.

1. Tā zhù jǐtiān?

他/她住几天？

How many days is he/she staying?

Tā xiǎng zhù jǐtiān?

他/她想住几天？

How many days is he/she planning on staying?

2. Hú xiānsheng zhù jǐge yuè?

胡先生住几个月？

How many months is Mr. Hú staying?

Hú xiānsheng xiǎng zhù jǐge yuè?

胡先生想住几个月？

How many months is Mr. Hú planning on staying?

3. Wáng tàitai zhù jǐge xīngqī?

王太太住几个星期？

How many weeks is Mrs. Wáng staying?

Wáng tàitai xiǎng zhù jǐge xīngqī?

王太太想住几个星期？

How many weeks is Mrs. Wáng planning on staying?

4. Tā xiānsheng zhù jǐnián?

她先生住几年？

How many years is her husband staying?

Tā xiānsheng xiǎng zhù jǐnián?

她先生想住几年？

How many years is her husband planning on staying?

5. Zhōu xiǎojiě zhù jǐge yuè?

周小姐住几个月？

How many months is Miss Zhōu staying?

Zhōu xiǎojiě xiǎng zhù jǐge yuè?

周小姐想住几个月？

How many months is Miss Zhōu planning on staying?

6. Wǒ fùqin zhù jǐge xīngqī?

我父亲住几个星期？

How many weeks is my father staying?

Wǒ fùqin xiǎng zhù jǐge xīngqī?

我父亲想住几个星期？

How many weeks is my father planning on staying?

7. Tā mèimei zhù jǐtiān?

他/她妹妹住几天？

How many days is hi/her younger sister staying?

Tā mèimei xiǎng zhù jǐtiān?

他/她妹妹想住几天？

How many days is hi/her younger sister planning on staying?

## Expansion drill

Expand the sentence according to the model.

1. Tā zhù yíge xīngqī.

他/她住一个星期。

He/she is staying one week.

Wǒ xiǎng tā zhù yíge xīngqī.

我想他/她住一个星期。

I think he/she is staying one week.

2. Tā zhù liǎngnián.

他/她住两年。

He/she is staying two years.

Wǒ xiǎng tā zhù liǎngnián.

我想他/她住两年。

I think he/she is staying two years.

3. Tā zhù sānge yuè.

他/她住三个月。

He/she is staying three months.

Wǒ xiǎng tā zhù sānge yuè.

我想他/她住三个月。

I think he/she is staying three months.

4. Tā zhù liǎngge xīngqī.

他/她住两个星期。

He/she is staying two weeks.

Wǒ xiǎng tā zhù liǎngge xīngqī.

我想他/她住两个星期。

I think he/she is staying two weeks.

5. Tā zhù qītiān.

他/她住七天。

He/she is staying seven days.

Wǒ xiǎng tā zhù qītiān.

我想他/她住七天。

I think he/she is staying seven days.

6. Tā zhù sinián.

他/她住十年。

He/she is staying four years.

Wǒ xiǎng tā zhù sinián.

我想他/她住十年。

I think he/she is staying four years.

7. Tā zhù liùge yuè.

他/她住六个月。

He/she is staying six months.

Wǒ xiǎng tā zhù liùge yuè.

我想他/她住六个月。

I think he/she is staying six months.

## Transformation drill

Transform the sentence according to the model.

1. Tā zhù yíge xīngqī.

他/她住一个星期。

He/she is staying one week.

Tā zhùle yíge xīngqī.

他/她住了一个星期。

He/she stayed one week.

2. Mǎ tóngzhì zhù yínián.

马同志住一年。

Comrade Mǎ is staying one year.

Mǎ tóngzhì zhùle yínián.

马同志住了一年。

Comrade Mǎ stayed one year.

3. Wáng tóngzhì zhù sìge yuè.

王同志住四个月。

Comrade Wáng is staying four months.

Wáng tóngzhì zhùle sìge yuè.

王同志住了四个月。

Comrade Wáng stayed four months.

4. Zēng tóngzhì zhù wǔtiān.

曾同志住五天。

Comrade Zēng is staying five days.

Zēng tóngzhì zhùle wǔtiān.

曾同志住了五天。

Comrade Zēng stayed five days.

5. Wǒ zhù liǎngge xīngqī.

我住两个星期。

I'm staying two weeks.



Wǒ zhùle liǎngge xīngqī.

我住了两个星期。

I stayed two weeks.

6. Tā háizi zhù liùtiān.

他/她孩子住六天。

His/her children are staying six days.

Tā háizi zhùle liùtiān.

他/她孩子住了六天。

His/her children stayed six days.

7. Tā mèimei zhù liǎngnián.

他/她妹妹住两年。

His/her younger sister is staying two years.

Tā mèimei zhùle liǎngnián.

他/她妹妹住了两年。

His/her younger sister stayed two years.

## Transformation drill

Transform the sentence according to the model.

1. Tā zhùle sāntiān.

他/她住了三天。

He/she stayed three days

Tā zhùle sāntiān le.

他/她住了三天了。

He/she has stayed three days.

2. Wǒ zhùle yíge xīngqī.

我住了一个星期。

I stayed one week.

Wǒ zhùle yíge xīngqī le.

我住了一个星期了。

I have stayed one week.

3. Tā fùqīn zhùle liǎngge yuè.

他/她父亲住了两个月。

His/her father stayed two months.

Tā fùqīn zhùle liǎngge yuè le.

他/她父亲住了两个月了。

His/her father has stayed two months.

4. Tā jiějie zhùle shíyītiān.

他/她姐姐住了十一天。

His/her older sister stayed eleven days.

Tā jiějie zhùle shíyītiān le.

他/她姐姐住了十一天了。

His/her older sister has stayed eleven days.

5. Wáng xiānsheng zhùle yìnián.

王先生住了一年。

Mr. Wáng stayed one year.

Wáng xiānsheng zhùle yìnián le.

王先生住了一年了。

Mr. Wáng has stayed one year.

6. Wáng tàitai zhùle sānge xīngqī.

王太太住了三个星期。

Mrs. Wáng stayed three weeks.

Wáng tàitai zhùle sānge xīngqī le.

王太太住了三个星期了。

Mrs. Wáng has stayed three weeks.

7. Hú xiǎojiě zhùle qītiān.

胡小姐住了七天。

Miss Hú stayed seven days.

Hú xiǎojiě zhùle qītiān le.

胡小姐住了七天了。

Miss Hú has stayed seven days.

## Transformation drill

Respond by adding **xiǎng zhù**, or **zhùle** + duration phrase + **le** to each statement, according to the cue.

1. Tā zhù yītiān.

他/她住一天。

He/she is staying one day.

Cue

hái měi lái

还没来

didn't come yet

Tā xiǎng zhù yītiān.

他/她想住一天。

He/she is planning on staying one day.

2. Tā zhù yītiān.

他/她住一天。

He/she is staying one day.

Cue

yǐjīng zǒu le

已经走了

already left

Tā zhùle yītiān.

他/她住了一天。

He/she stayed one day.

3. Tā zhù yītiān.

他/她住一天。

He/she is staying one day.

Cue

hái zài zhèr

还在这儿

already here

Tā zhùle yītiān le.

他/她住了一天了。

He/she has stayed one day.

4. Tā zhù liǎngge xīngqī.  
他/她住两个星期。  
He/she is staying two weeks.

Cue yǐjīng zǒu le  
已经走了  
already left

Tā zhùle liǎngge xīngqī.  
他/她住了两个星期。  
He/she stayed two weeks.

5. Tā zhù sāntiān.  
他/她住三天。  
He/she is staying three days.

Cue hái méi lái  
还没来  
didn't come yet

Tā xiǎng zhù sāntiān.  
他/她想住三天。  
He/she is planning of staying three days.

6. Tā zhù yìnián.  
他/她住一年。  
He/she is staying one year.

Cue hái zài zhèr  
还在这儿  
already here

Tā zhùle yìnián le.  
他/她住了一年了。  
He/she has stayed one year.

7. Tā zhù wǔge xīngqī.  
他/她住五个星期。  
He/she is staying five weeks.

Cue

yǐjīng zǒu le

已经走了

already left

Tā zhùle wǔge xīngqī.

他/她住了五个星期。

He/she stayed five weeks.

## Transformation drill

### Transform the sentence according to the model.

1. Tā xīngqīyī lái, xīngqīsān zǒu.  
他/她星期一来，星期三走。  
He/she is coming on Monday, leaving on Wednesday.

Tā xiǎng zhù liǎngtiān.  
他/他想住两天。  
He/she is planning on staying two days.

2. Tā yīyuè lái, sìyuè zǒu.  
他/她一月来，四月走。  
He/she is coming on January, leaving on April.

Tā xiǎng zhù sāngè yuè.  
他/她想住三个月。  
He/she is planning on staying three months.

3. Tā wǔyuè lái, qīyuè zǒu.  
他/她五月来，七月走。  
He/she is coming on May, leaving on September.

Tā xiǎng zhù liǎngge yuè.  
他/她想住两个月。  
He/she is planning on staying four months.

4. Tā yīhào lái, liùhào zǒu.  
他/她一号线来，六号走。  
He/she is coming the first of the month, leaving the sixth.

Tā xiǎng zhù wǔtiān.  
他/她想住五天。  
He/she is planning on staying five days.

5. Tā liùyuè lái, shíyuè zǒu.  
他/她六月来，十月走。  
He/she is coming on June, leaving on October.

Tā xiǎng zhù sìge yuè.

他/她想住四个月。

He/she is planning on staying four months.

6. Tā yījiǔqīliùnián lái, yījiǔqībānián zǒu.

他/她一九七六年来，一九七八年走。

He/she is coming in 1976, leaving in 1978.

Tā xiǎng zhù liǎngnián.

他/她想住两年。

He/she is planning on staying two years.

7. Tā xīngqīwǔ lái, xiàge xīngqīyī zǒu.

他/她星期五来，下个星期一走。

He/she is coming on Friday, leaving next Monday .

Tā xiǎng zhù sāntiān.

他/她想住三天。

He/she is planning on staying three days.



## Transformation drill

Transform the sentence according to the model.

1. Tā shì èrhào láide, sìhào zǒude.

他/她是二号来的，四号走的。

He/she came on the second, left on the fourth.

Tā zhùle liǎngtiān.

他/她住了两天。

He/she stayed two days.

2. Tā shì yījiùqīyīnián láide, yījiùqīsìnián zǒude.

他/她是一九七一年来的，一九七四年走的。

He/she came in 1971, left in 1974.

Tā zhùle sānnián.

他/她住了三年。

He/she stayed three years.

3. Tā shì sānyuè láide, wǔyuè zǒude.

他/她是三月来的，五月走的。

He/she came in April, left in May.

Tā zhùle liǎngge yuè.

他/她住了两个月。

He/she stayed two months.

4. Tā shì xīngqīèr láide, xīngqīliù zǒude.

他/她是星期二来的，星期六走的。

He/she came on Tuesday, left on Saturday.

Tā zhùle sìtiān.

他/她住了四天。

He/she stayed four days.

5. Tā shì jiǔhào láide, shíyīhào zǒude.

他/她是九号来的，十一号走的。

He/she came on the ninth, left on the eleventh.

Tā zhùle liǎngtiān.

他/她住了两天。

He/she stayed two days.

6. Tā shì zuótiān lái de, jīntiān zǒu de.

他/她是昨天来的，今天走的。

He/she came yesterday , left today.

Tā zhùle yìtiān.

他/她住了一天。

He/she stayed one day.

7. Tā shì shàngge yuè sānshíyíhào lái de, zhèige yuè wǔhào zǒu de.

他/她是上个月三十一号来的，这个月五号走的。

He/she came the 31st last month, left on the 5th this month.

Tā zhùle wǔtiān.

他/她住了五天。

He/she stayed five days.

## Transformation drill

Transform the sentence according to the model.

1. Tā míngtiān bù lái.  
他/她明天不来。  
He/she isn't coming tomorrow.

Cue zuótiān  
昨天  
yesterday

Tā zuótiān méi lái.  
他/她昨天没来。  
He/she didn't come yesterday.

2. Tā hòutiān bù zǒu.  
他/她后天不走。  
He/she isn't leaving the day after tomorrow.

Cue qiántiān  
前天  
the day before yesterday

Tā qiántiān méi zǒu.  
他/她前天没走。  
He/she didn't leave the day before yesterday.

3. Tā míngtiān bù lái.  
他/她明天不来。  
He/she isn't coming tomorrow.

Cue qùnián  
去年  
last year

Tā qùnián méi lái.  
他/她去年没来。  
He/she didn't come last year.

4. Tā xiàge yuè bù zǒu.  
他/她下个月不走。  
He/she isn't leaving next month.

Cue shàngge yuè  
上个月  
last month

Tā shàngge yuè méi zǒu.  
他/她上个月没走。  
He/she didn't leave last month.

5. Tā xiàge xīngqī bù lái.  
他/她下个星期不来。  
He/she isn't coming next week.

Cue shàngge xīngqī  
上个星期  
last week

Tā shàngge xīngqī méi lái.  
他/她上个星期没来。  
He/she didn't come last week.

6. Tā hòutiān bù lái.  
他/她后年不来。  
He/she isn't coming the day after tomorrow.

Cue qiánnián  
前年  
the day before yesterday

Tā qiánnián méi lái.  
他/她前年没来。  
He/she didn't come the day before yesterday.

7. Tā jīntiān bù zǒu.  
他/她今天不走。  
He/she isn't leaving today.

Cue

jīntiān

今天

today

Tā jīntiān méi zǒu.

他/她今天没走。

He/she didn't leave today.

## Transformation drill

Transform the sentence according to the model.

1. Tā lái le ma?

他/她来了吗？

Did he/she come?

Tā lái guo ma?

他/她来过吗？

Has he/she ever been here?

2. Tā àiren lái le ma?

他/她爱人来了吗？

Did his/her spouse come?

Tā àiren lái guo ma?

他/她爱人来过吗？

Has his/her spouse been here?

3. Tā mǔqin lái le ma?

他/她母亲来了吗？

Did his/her mother come?

Tā mǔqin lái guo ma?

他/她母亲来过吗？

Has his/her mother ever been here?

4. Hú tóngzhi lái le ma?

胡同志来了吗？

Did Comrade Hú come?

Hú tóngzhi lái guo ma?

胡同志来过吗？

Has Comrade Hú ever been here?

5. Tā dìdì lái le ma?

他/她弟弟来了吗？

Has his/her younger brother come?

Tā dìdì lái guo ma?

他/她弟弟来过吗？

Did his/her younger brother ever been here?

6. Wáng Dànián lái le ma?

王大年来了吗？

Did Wáng Dànián come?

Wáng Dànián lái guo ma?

王大年来过吗？

Has Wáng Dànián ever been here?

7. Zhào tóngzhì lái le ma?

赵同志来了吗？

Did Comrade Zhào come?

Zhào tóngzhì lái guo ma?

赵同志来过吗？

Has Comrade Zhào ever been here?

## Response drill

Give a negative response to each question.

1. Wáng xiǎojiě lái le ma?

王小姐来了吗？

Did Miss Wáng come?

Wáng xiǎojiě méi lái.

王小姐没来。

Miss Wáng didn't come.

2. Lín xiānsheng lái le ma.

林先生来了吗？

Did Mr. Lín come?

Lín xiānsheng méi lái.

林先生没来。

Mr. Lín didn't come.

3. Liú tàitai lái le ma?

刘太太来了吗？

Did Mrs. Liú come?

Liú tàitai méi lái.

刘太太没来。

Mrs. Liú didn't come.

4. Tā lái le ma?

他/她来了吗？

Did he/she come?

Tā méi lái.

他/她没来。

He/she didn't come.

5. Huáng xiānsheng lái le ma?

黄先生来了吗？

Did Mr. Huáng come?



Huāng xiānsheng méi lái.

黄先生没来。

Mr. Huáng didn't come.

6. Chén xiǎojiě lái le ma?

陈小姐来了吗？

Did Miss Chén come?

Chén xiǎojiě méi lái.

陈小姐没来。

Miss Chén didn't come.

7. Sūn tàitai lái le ma?

孙太太来了吗？

Did Mrs. Sūn come?

Sūn tàitai méi lái.

孙太太没来。

Mrs. Sūn didn't come.

## Response drill

Give a negative response to each question.

1. Tā lái guo ma?

他/她来过吗？

Has he/she ever been here?

Tā méi lái guo.

他/她没来过。

He/she has never been here.

2. Tā ài ren lái guo ma?

他/她爱人来过吗？

Has his/her spouse ever been here?

Tā ài ren méi lái guo.

他/她爱人没来过。

His/her spouse has never been here.

3. Tā nán hái zǐ lái guo ma?

他/她男孩子来过吗？

Has his/her boy ever been here?

Tā nán hái zǐ méi lái guo.

他/她男孩子没来过。

His/her boy has never been here.

4. Tā men hái zǐ dōu lái guo ma?

他们孩子都来过吗？

Have their children ever been here?

Tā men hái zǐ dōu méi lái guo.

他们孩子都没来过。

Their children have never been here.

5. Tā dì dì lái guo ma?

他/她弟弟来过吗？

Has his/her younger brother ever been here?

Tā dìdi méi láiguò.

他/她弟弟没来过。

His/her younger brother has never been here.

6. Tā jiějie láiguò ma?

他/她姐姐来过吗？

Has his/her older sister ever been here?

Tā jiějie méi láiguò.

他/她姐姐没来过。

His/her sister has never been here.

7. Tā mǔqīn láiguò ma?

他/她母亲来过吗？

Has his/her mother ever been here?

Tā mǔqīn méi láiguò.

他/她母亲没来过。

His/her mother has never been here.

## **Unit 7**

### **Introduction**

#### **Topics covered in this unit**

1. Where someone works.
2. Where and what someone has studied.
3. What languages someone can speak.
4. Auxiliary verbs.
5. General objects.

#### **Material you will need**

1. The C-1 and P-1 tapes, the Reference List and Reference Notes.
2. The C-2 and P-2 tapes, the Workbook.
3. The TD-1 tape.

## References

### Reference List

1. A: **Nǐn zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?**  
您在哪里工作？  
Where do you work?  
B: **Wǒ zài Měiguó Guówùyüàn gōngzuò.**  
我在美国国务院工作。  
I work with the State Department.
2. A: **Nǐn zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?**  
您在哪里工作？  
Where do you work?  
B: **Wǒ shì xüesheng.**  
我是学生。  
I'm a student.
3. A: **Nǐn lái zuò shénme?**  
您来做什么？  
What did you come here to do?  
B: **Wǒ lái niàn shū.**  
我来念书。  
I came here to study.
4. A: **Òu, wǒ yě shì xüesheng.**  
哦，我也是学生。  
Oh, I'm a student too.  
B: **Qǐngwèn, nǐ niàn shénme?**  
请问，你念什么？  
May I ask, what are you studying?
4. A: **Wǒ niàn lìshǐ.**  
我念历史。  
I'm studying history.  
A: **Kē xiānsheng, nǐ niàn shénme?**  
柯先生，你念什么？  
What are you studying, Mr. Cook?
5. B: **Wǒ zài zhèlǐ xüé Zhōngwén.**  
我在这里学中文。  
I'm studying Chinese here.
6. B: **Qǐngwèn, nǐ xüéguo Yīngwén ma?**

7.           A:           Xūéguo  
              B:           Qǐngwèn, nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?  
                  请问，你会说英文吗？  
                  May I ask, have you ever studied English?  
              A:           Xuéguo.  
                  学过。  
                  Yes.  
              B:           Qǐngwèn, nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?  
                  请问，你会说英文吗？  
                  May I ask, can you speak English?  
              A:           Wǒ huì shuō yídiǎn.  
                  我会说一点。  
                  I can speak a little.
8.           A:           Nǐ tàitai yě huì shuō Zhōngguo huà ma?  
                  你太太也会说中国话吗？  
                  Can your wife speak Chinese too?  
              B:           Bú huì, tā bú huì shuō.  
                  不会，她不会说。  
                  No, she can't.
9.           A:           Nǐde Zhōngguo huà hěn hǎo.  
                  你的中国话很好。  
                  Your Chinese is very good.  
              B:           Nǎli, nǎli. Wǒ jiù shuō yídiǎn.  
                  哪里，哪里。我就说一点。  
                  Not at all, not at all. I can speak only a little.
10.          A:           Nǐ shì zài nǎli xuéde?  
                  你是在哪里学的？  
                  Where did you study?  
              B:           Wǒ shì zài Huáshèngdùn xuéde.  
                  我是在华盛顿学的。  
                  I studied in Washington.
11.          B:           Nǐ shì zài dàxué xuéde Yīngwén ma?  
                  你是在大学学的英文吗？  
                  Did you study English at college?  
              A:           Shìde, wǒ shì zài Táiwān Dàxué xuéde Yīngwén.  
                  是的，我是在台湾大学学的英文。  
                  Yes, I studied English at Taiwan University.

## Vocabulary

jīngxué	经学	Confucian classics
Rìwén	日文	Japanese language
wénxué	文学	literature
zhèngzhìxué	政治学	political science
nán	难	to be difficult
róngyì	容易	to be easy
dàxué	大学	university
huà	话	language, words
Huáshèngdùn	华盛顿	Washington
huì	会	to know how to, to can
jīngjìxué	经济学	economics
lìshǐ	历史	history
Měiguó Guówùyüàn	美国国务院	U.S. Department of State
nán	难	to be difficult
niàn (shū)	念书	to study
shuō (huà)	说话	to speak, to talk
xué	学	to study
xuéshēng (xuésheng)	学生	student
xuéxí (xuéxi)	学习	to study, to learn (PRC)
yídiǎn	一点	a little
Yīngwén	英文	English
Zhōngwén	中文	Chinese
zuò	做	to do
shénme dìfāng	什么地方	where, what place

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1–2

1.	A: <i>Nín zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?</i>	您在哪里工作？	Where do you work?
	B: <i>Wǒ zài Měiguó Guówùyüàn gōngzuò.</i>	我在美国国务院工作。	I work with the State Department.
2.	A: <i>Nín zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?</i>	您在哪里工作？	Where do you work?
	B: <i>Wǒ shì xuésheng.</i>	我是学生。	I'm a student.

*Zài Měiguó Guówùyüàn gōngzuò* means either “work at the State Department” (i.e., at main State in Washington, D.C.) or “work in the organization of the State Department” (no matter where assigned). Here the expression is translated loosely as “work with the State Department,” meaning “in the organization.”



Notes on №3–4

3.	A: <i>Nín lái zuò shénme?</i>	您来做什么？	What did you come here to do?
	B: <i>Wǒ lái niàn shū.</i>	我来念书。	I came here to study.
4.	A: <i>Ò, wǒ yě shì xuésheng.</i>	哦，我也是学生。	Oh, I'm a student too.
	B: <i>Qǐngwèn, nǐ niàn shénme?</i>	请问，你念什么？	May I ask, what are you studying?
	B: <i>Wǒ niàn lìshǐ.</i>	我念历史。	I'm studying history.

**Purpose:** When *lái*, “to come,” is followed by another verb, the second verb expresses the purpose of the subject’s coming. The “purpose of coming” may be emphasized by the *shi...de* construction, with the marker *shi* before the verb *lái*.

<i>Wǒ shì lái niàn shūde.</i>	I came to study.
我是来念书的。	

**Niàn shū:** *Niàn* by itself means “to read aloud.” When followed by an object, the expression means “to study.” *Shū* is “book(s),” but *niàn shū* simply means “to study.” *Shū* is used as a general object, standing for whatever is being studied.

**Niàn lìshǐ:** When you are talking about studying a particular subject, *niàn* is followed by the name of that subject rather than by the general object *shū*.

To have the meaning “to study,” *niàn* must be followed by either the general object *shū* or a specific object such as the name of a subject.

**Verb types:** *Zuò*, “to do,” and *niàn (shū)*, “to study,” are action verbs. Both are made negative with *bu* when referring to actions not yet finished. Both may take completion *le* or its negative *méi*.

<i>Tā bú niàn shū.</i>	He doesn't study.
他不念书。	
<i>Tā méi niàn shū.</i>	He didn't study.
他每年念书。	
<i>Tā yǐjīng niàn shù le.</i>	He has already studied.
他已经念书了。	

Notes on №5–6

5.	A: Kē xiānsheng, nǐ niàn shénme?	柯先生，你念什么？	What are you studying, Mr. Cook?
	B: Wǒ zài zhèlǐ xué zhōngwén.	我在这里学中文。	I'm studying Chinese here.
6.	A: Qǐngwèn, nǐ xuéguo Yīngwén ma?	请问，你学过英文吗？	May I ask, have you ever studied English?
	B: Xuéguo	学过。	Yes.

Xué, “to study” an action verb): You will recognize **xué** from the word for “student,” **xuésheng**. **Xué** may refer to acquiring either knowledge or a skill. For example, you can **xué** history, economics, a language, piano, and tennis. On the other hand, **niàn** is used for “study” in the sense of taking a course or courses in a field of knowledge. **Niàn** is not used for a skill.

In some contexts, the verb **xué** means “to learn.” The following sentence may be interpreted two ways, depending on the situation.

<p>Wǒ zài Měiguó yǐjīng xuéguo.</p> <p>我在美国已经学过。</p>	I learned it in America.(e.g., how to use chopsticks)
	OR
	I studied it in America. (e.g., the Chinese language)

**Zhōngwén** is used for either the Chinese spoken language or the written language, including literature. In general, use **xué** for “learning” to speak Chinese and **niàn** for “studying” Chinese literature.

Notes on №7–8

7.	A: Qǐngwèn, nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?	请问, 你会说英文吗?	May I ask, can you speak English?
	B: Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎn.	我会说一点。	I can speak a little.
8.	A: Nǐ tàitai yě huì shuō Zhōngguó huà ma?	你太太也会说中国话吗?	Can your wife speak Chinese too?
	B: Bú huì, tā bú huì shuō.	不会, 她不会说。	No, she can't.

Huì, “to know how to,” “can,” is an auxiliary verb. It is used before the main verb to express an attitude toward the action or to express the potential of action. Xiǎng, “to want to,” “would like to,” is also an auxiliary verb. “Should,” “must,” and “may” are other examples of auxiliary verbs. All auxiliary verbs in Chinese are state verbs, which means that bù is always used to make them negative. Auxiliary verbs never take the aspect marker le for completed action, regardless of whether you are talking about past, present, or future.

Tā qùnián bú huì shuō Yīngwén.	He couldn't speak English last year.
他去年不会说英文。	

When the marker le is used, it is the aspect marker for new situations.

Tā qùnián bú huì shuō Yīngwén, xiànzài huì le,	Last year he couldn't speak English, but now he can.
他去年不会说英文, 现在会了。	

Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎn, “I can speak a little”: The word yìdiǎn, literally “a dot,” functions as a noun. It is used in a sentence to mean “a little bit” where a noun object, such as Yīngwén, “English,” might be used.

Yìdiǎn may not be used directly after an auxiliary verb, which must be followed by another verb.

Shuō, “to speak,” “to talk,” is another example of a verb which must always have an object. Shuō must be followed by either:

1. the general object huà, “words,” in which case the meaning of shuō huà is simply “to speak,” “to talk,” as in:

Tā hái méi shuō huà.	He hasn't yet spoken.
他还没说话。	

OR

2. a specific object such as the name of a language.

Bú huì: The short yes/no answer to a question containing the auxiliary verb huì is formed with huì rather than with the main verb.

**Zhōngguo huà**: This expression refers only to the spoken language, in contrast to **Zhōngwén**, which refers to both the spoken and written language.

**Notes on №9**

9.	A: Nǐ de Zhōngguó huà hěn hǎo.	你的中国话很好。	Your Chinese is very good.
	B: Náli, náli. Wǒ jiù shuō yìdiǎn.	哪里，哪里。我就说一点。	Not at all, not at all. I can speak only a little.

Literally, *náli* means “where.” As a reply to a compliment, we have translated *náli* as “not at all.” In China, it has traditionally been considered proper and a matter of course to deny any compliment received, no matter how much truth there is to it. Many people still regard *xièxie* “thank you,” as an immodest reply to a compliment, since that would amount to agreeing that the compliment was completely correct.

*Jiù*, “only”: As was noted in Unit 3, notes on Nos. 8–9, *jiù* meaning “only” is not as widely understood as *zhǐ*. The last sentence in exchange 9 could just as well be *Wǒ zhǐ huì shuō yìdiǎn*.

## Notes on №10–11

11. A: *Nǐ shì zài dàxué xuéde Yīngwén ma?* 你是在大学的英文吗?  
Did you study English at college?
- B: *Shìde, wǒ shì zài Táiwān Dàxué xuéde Yīngwén.* 是的, 我是在台湾大学的英文。  
Yes, I studied English at Taiwan University.

In the Peking dialect of Standard Chinese, which is the model for grammatical patterns presented in this course, the *-de* of a *shi...de* construction comes between the verb and its object. The object, therefore, is outside the *shi...de* construction. Compare “I studied here” with “I studied English here”:

However, you may hear some Standard Chinese speakers who place the object inside the *shi...de* construction.

<i>Wǒ</i>	<i>shì</i>	<i>zài zhèr</i>	<i>xué</i>	<i>-de.</i>	
我	是	在这儿	学	-的。	
<i>Wǒ</i>	<i>shì</i>	<i>zài zhèr</i>	<i>xué</i>	<i>-de</i>	<i>Yīngwén.</i>
我	是	在这儿	学	-的	英文。

## Drills

### Response drill

1. Tā zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?  
他/她在哪里工作?  
Where does he/she work?

Cue Guówùyuàn  
国务院  
Department of State

Tā zài Guówùyuàn gōngzuò.  
他/她在国务院工作。  
He/she works with the Department of State.

2. Tā zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?  
他/她在哪里工作?  
Where does he/she work?

Cue yóuzhèngjú  
邮政局  
post office

Tā zài yóuzhèngjú gōngzuò.  
他/她在邮政局工作。  
He/she works at the post office.

3. Tā zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?  
他/她在哪里工作?  
Where does he/she work?

Cue yínháng  
银行  
bank

Tā zài yínháng gōngzuò.

他/她在银行工作。

He/she works at the bank.

4. Tā zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?

他/她在哪里工作？

Where does he/she work?

Cue

Wǔguānchù

武官处

defense attache office

Tā zài Wǔguānchù gōngzuò.

他/她在武官处工作。

He/she works at the defense attache office.

5. Tā zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?

他/她在哪里工作？

Where does he/she work?

Cue

Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn

国宾大饭店

Ambassador Hotel

Tā zài Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn gōngzuò.

他/她在国宾大饭店工作。

He/she works at the Ambassador Hotel.

5. Tā zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?

他/她在哪里工作？

Where does he/she work?

Cue

Běijīng Dàfàndiàn

北京大饭店

Běijīng Grand Hotel

Tā zài Běijīng Dàfàndiàn gōngzuò.

他/她在北京大饭店工作。

He/she works at the Běijīng Grand Hotel.

7. Tā zài nǎlǐ gōngzuò?



他/她在哪里工作？

Where does he/she work?

Cue

Mínzú Fàndiàn

民族饭店

Nationalities Hotel

Tā zài Mínzú Fàndiàn gōngzuò.

他/她在族饭店工作。

He/she works at the Nationalities Hotel.

## Expansion drill

1. Tā shì xuésheng, tā xué zhōngwén.  
他/她是学生，他/她学中文。  
He/she is a student, he/she studies Chinese.

Cue zhèlǐ  
这里  
here

Tā shì xuésheng, tā zài zhèlǐ xué zhōngwén.  
他/她是学生，他/她在这里学中文。  
He/she is a student, he/she studies Chinese here.

2. Tā shì xuésheng, tā xué zhōngguó huà.  
他/她是学生，他/她学中国话。  
He/she is a student, he/she studies Chinese.

Cue nàlǐ  
那里  
there

Tā shì xuésheng, tā zài nàlǐ xué zhōngguó huà.  
他/她是学生，他/她在那里学中国话。  
He/she is a student, he/she studies Chinese there.

3. Tā shì xuésheng, tā nián shénme?  
他/她是学生，他/她念什么？  
He/she is a student, what does he/she study?

Cue zhèlǐ  
这里  
here

Tā shì xuésheng, tā zài zhèlǐ nián shénme?  
他/她是学生，他/她在这里念什么？  
He/she is a student, what does he/she study here?

4. Tā shì xuésheng, tā nián lìshǐ.

他/她是学生，他/她念历史。

He/she is a student, he/she studies history.

Cue

náli?

哪里

where?

Tā shì xuésheng, tā zài nǎlǐ niǎn lìshǐ?

他/她是学生，他/她在哪里念历史？

He/she is a student, where does he/she study history?

5.

Tā shì xuésheng, tā niǎn wénxué.

他/她是学生，他/她念文学。

He/she is a student, he/she studies literature.

Cue

zhèlǐ

这里

here

Tā shì xuésheng, tā zài zhèlǐ niǎn wénxué.

他/她是学生，他/她这里念文学。

He/she is a student, he/she studies literature here.

6.

Tā shì xuésheng, tā xué fǎwén.

他/她是学生，他/她学法文。

He/she is a student, he/she studies French.

Cue

nàlǐ

那里

there

Tā shì xuésheng, tā zài nàlǐ xué fǎwén.

他/她是学生，他/她在那里学法文。

He/she is a student, he/she studies French there.

7.

Tā shì xuésheng, tā xué shénme?

他/她是学生，他/她学什么？

He/she is a student, what does he/she study?

Cue

zhèlǐ

这里

here

Tā shì xuésheng, tā zài zhèlǐ xué shénme?

他/她是学生，他/她在这里学什么？

He/she is a student, what does he/she study here?

## Response drill

1. Qǐngwèn, tā niàn shénme?  
请问，他/她念什么？  
May I ask, what is he/she studying?

Cue jīngjìxué  
经济学  
economics

Tā niàn jīngjìxué.  
他/她念经济学。  
He/she studies economics.

2. Qǐngwèn, Wáng Dànián niàn shénme?  
请问，王大年念什么？  
May I ask, what is Wáng Dànián studying?

Cue wénxué  
文学  
literature

Tā niàn wénxué.  
他念文学。  
He studies literature.

3. Qǐngwèn, Fāng xiǎojiě niàn shénme?  
请问，方小姐念什么？  
May I ask, what is Miss Fāng studying?

Cue zhōngguó wénxué  
中国文学  
Chinese literature

Tā niàn zhōngguó wénxué.  
她念中国文学。  
She studies Chinese literature.

4. Qǐngwèn, tā mèimei niàn shénme?

请问，他/她妹妹念什么？

May I ask, what is his/her younger sister studying?

Cue

zhèngzhixué

政治学

political science

Tā niàn zhèngzhixué.

她念政治学。

She studies political science.

5. Qǐngwèn, tā àiren niàn shénme?

请问，他/她爱人念什么？

May I ask, what is his/her spouse studying?

Cue

lìshǐ

历史

history

Tā niàn lìshǐ.

他/她念历史。

He/she studies history.

6. Qǐngwèn, Sūn Huìrán niàn shénme?

请问，孙蕙然念什么？

May I ask, what is Sūn Huìrán studying?

Cue

zhōngguó lìshǐ

中国历史

Chinese history

Tā niàn Zhōngguó lìshǐ.

她念中国历史。

She studies Chinese history.

7. Tā nánháizi niàn shénme?

请问，他/她男孩子念什么？

May I ask, what is his/her boy studying?

Cue

jīngjixuè

经济学

economics

Tā niàn jīngjixué.

他念经济学。

He/she studies economics.

## Transformation drill

1. Wáng xiānsheng niàn lìshǐ.

王先生念历史。

Mr. Wáng is studying history.

Wáng xiānsheng lái niàn lìshǐ.

王先生来念历史。

Mr. Wáng is coming to study history.

2. Mǎ xiānsheng niàn wénxué.

马先生念文学。

Mr. Mǎ is studying literature.

Mǎ xiānsheng lái niàn wénxué.

先生来念文学。

Mr. Mǎ is coming to study literature.

3. Zhāng xiānsheng niàn jīngjìxué.

张先生念经济学。

Mr. Zhāng is studying economics.

Zhāng xiānsheng lái niàn jīngjìxué.

张先生来念经济学。

Mr. Zhāng is coming to study economics.

4. Lǐ xiānsheng niàn Rìwén.

李先生念日文。

Mr. Lǐ is studying the Japanese language.

Lǐ xiānsheng lái niàn Rìwén.

李先生来念日文。

Mr. Lǐ is coming to study the Japanese language.

5. Tā niàn lìshǐ.

他/她念历史。

He/she is studying history.

Tā lái niàn lìshǐ.



他/她来念历史。

He/she is coming to study history.

6. Hú xiānsheng niàn Yīngwén.

胡先生念英文。

Mr. Hú is studying English.

Hú xiānsheng lái niàn Yīngwén.

胡先生来念英文。

Mr. Hú is coming to study English.

7. Chén xiānsheng niàn Fàwén.

陈先生念法文。

Mr. Chén is studying French.

Chén xiānsheng lái niàn Fàwén.

陈先生来念法文。

Mr. Chén is coming to study French.

## Response drill

1. Sūn tóngzhì lái zuò shénme?

孙同志来做什么？

What did Comrade Sūn come to do?

Cue

gōngzuò

工作

to work

Tā lái gōngzuò.

他/她来工作。

He/she is coming to work.

2. Mǎ tóngzhì lái zuò shénme?

马同志来做什么？

What did Comrade Mǎ come to do?

Cue

niàn shū

念书

to study

Tā lái niàn shū.

他/她来念书。

He/she is coming to study.

3. Chén tóngzhì lái zuò shénme?

陈同志来做什么？

What did Comrade Chén come to do?

Cue

xué rìwén

学日文

to study Japanese

Tā lái xué Rìwén.

他/她来学日文。

He/she is coming to study Japanese.

4. Tā lái zuò shénme?

他/她来做什么？

What did he/she come to do?

Cue

niàn lìshǐ

念历史

to study history

Tā lái niàn lìshǐ.

他/她来念历史。

He/she is coming to study history.

5. Huáng xiānsheng lái zuò shénme?

黄先生来做什么？

What did Mr. Huáng come to do?

Cue

niàn zhèngzhìxué

念政治学

to study political science

Tā lái niàn zhèngzhìxué.

他来念政治学。

He is coming to study political science.

6. Qián tóngzhì lái zuò shénme?

钱同志来做什么？

What did Comrade Qián come to do?

Cue

xué yīngwén

学英文

to study English

Tā lái xué Yīngwén.

他/她来学英文。

He/she is coming to study English.

7. Tā lái zuò shénme?

他/她来做什么？

What did he/she come to do ?

Cue

gōngzuò

工作

to work

Tā lái gōngzuò.

他/她来工作。

He/she is coming to work.

## Response drill

1. Qǐngwèn, tā lái niàn shū ma?

请问，他/她来念书吗？

May I ask, did he/she come to study?

Dui le, tā lái niàn shū.

对了，他/她来念书。

Yes, he/she came to study.

2. Qǐngwèn, tā lái niàn Zhōngwén ma?

请问他/她来念中文吗？

May I ask, did he/she come to study Chinese?

Dui le, tā lái niàn Zhōngwén.

对了，他/她来念中文。

Yes, he/she came to study Chinese.

3. Qǐngwèn, tā lái niàn jīngjìxué ma?

请问，他/她来念经济学吗？

May I ask, did he/she come to study economics?

Dui le, tā lái niàn jīngjìxué.

对了，他/她来念经济学。

Yes, he/she came to study economics.

4. Qǐngwèn, tā mèimei lái niàn Yīngwén ma?

请问他/她妹妹来念英文吗？

May I ask, did his/her younger sister come to study English?

Dui le, tā lái niàn Yīngwén.

对了，她来念英文。

Yes, she came to study English.

5. Qǐngwèn, Chén xiānsheng lái niàn zhèngzhìxué ma?

请问，陈先生来念政治学吗？

May I ask, did Mr. Chén come to study political science?

Dui le, tā lái niàn zhèngzhìxué.

对了，他来念政治学。

Yes, he came to study political science.

6. Qǐngwèn, Wáng xiānsheng lái xué Fǎwén ma?

请问，王先生来学法文吗？

May I ask, did Mr. Wáng come to learn French?

Duì le, tā lái xué Fǎwén.

对了，他来学法文。

Yes, he came to learn French.

7. Qǐngwèn, Zhāng xiǎojiě lái xué Rìwén ma?

请问，张小姐来学日文吗？

May I ask, did Miss Zhāng come to learn Japanese?

Duì le, tā lái xué Rìwén.

对了，她来学日文。

Yes, she came to learn Japanese.

## Response drill

1. Tā shì zài dàxué xūede zhōngwén ma?

他/她是在大学学的中文吗？

Did he/she study Chinese in college?

Shìde, tā shì zài dàxué xūede Zhōngwén.

是的，他/她是在大学学的中文。

Yes, he/she studied Chinese in college.

2. Tā shì zài Měiguó xūede zhōngwén ma?

他/她是在美国学的中文吗？

Did he/she learn Chinese in America?

Shìde, tā shì zài Měiguó xūede Zhōngwén.

是的，他/她是在美国学的中文。

Yes, he/she learned Chinese in America.

3. Tā shì zài Táiwān Dàxué niànde yīngwén ma?

他/她是在台湾大学念的英文吗？

Did he/she study English in Taiwan?

Shìde, tā shì zài Táiwān Dàxué niànde Yīngwén.

是的，他/她是在台湾大学念的英文。

Yes, he/she studied English in Taiwan.

4. Tā shì zài Měiguó niànde lìshǐ ma?

他/她是在美国念的历史吗？

Did he/she study history in America?

Shìde, tā shì zài Měiguó niànde lìshǐ.

是的，他/她是在美国念的历史。

Yes, he/she studied history in America.

5. Tā shì zài Jiāzhōu niànde zhèngzhìxué ma?

他/她是在加州念的政治学吗？

Did he/she study political science in California?

Shìde, tā shì zài Jiāzhōu niànde zhèngzhìxué.

是的，他/她是在加州念的政治学。

Yes, he/she studied political science in California.

6. Tā shì zài Zhōngguó niǎnde Zhōngguó wénxué ma?

他/她是在中国念的中国文学吗？

Did he/she study Chinese literature in China?

Shìde, tā shì zài Zhōngguó niǎnde Zhōngguó wénxué.

是的，他/她是在中国念的中国文学。

Yes, he/she studied Chinese literature in China.

7. Tā shì zài Huáshèngdùn niǎnde jīngjixué ma?

他/她是在华盛顿念的经济学吗？

Did he/she study economics in Washington?

Shìde, tā shì zài Huáshèngdùn niǎnde jīngjixué.

是的，他/她是在华盛顿念的经济学。

Yes, he/she studied economics in Washington.

### Note

All these sentences could be translated with “is coming” instead of “did come”.



## Response drill

Give negative responses to all the questions, and complete your answers according to the cues.

1. Tā shì zài Zhōngguó xuéde Zhōngguó huà ma?

他/她是在中国学的中国话吗？

Did he/she study Chinese in China?

Cue

Měiguó

美国

America

Bú shì, tā shì zài Měiguó xuéde Zhōngguó huà.

不是，他/她是在美国学的中国话。

No, he/she studied Chinese in America.

2. Tā shì zài Měiguó niànde Fàwén ma?

他/她是在美国念的法文吗？

Did he/she study French in America.

Cue

Jiānádà

加拿大

Canada

Bú shì, tā shì zài Jiānádà niànde Fàwén.

不是，他/她是在加拿大念的法文。

No, he/she studied French in Canada.

3. Tā shì zài Táiwān Dàxué niànde zhēngzhixué ma?

他/她是在台湾大学念的政治学吗？

Did he/she study political science at Taiwan University?

Cue

Měiguó Dàxué

美国大学

American University

Bú shì, tā shì zài Měiguó Dàxué niànde zhēngzhixué.

不是，他/她是在美国大学念的政治学。

No, he/she studied political science in American University.

4. Tā shì zài Yīngguó niànde Yīngguó wénxué ma?

他/她是在英国念的英国文学吗？

Did he/she study English literature in England?

Cue

Měiguó Dàxué

美国大学

American University

Bú shì, tā shì zài Měiguó Dàxué niànde Yīngguó wénxué.

不是，他/她是在美国大学念的英国文学。

No, he/she studied English literature in American University.

5. Tā shì zài Jiāzhōu niànde jīngjìxué ma?

他/她是在加州念的经济学吗？

Did he/she study economics in California?

Cue

Táiwān Dàxué

台湾大学

Taiwan University

Bú shì, tā shì zài Táiwān Dàxué niànde jīngjìxué.

不是，他/她是在台湾大学念的经济学。

No, he/she studied economics in a Taiwan University.

6. Tā shì zài Zhōngguó niànde Zhōngguó lìshǐ ma?

他/她是在中国念的中国历史吗？

Did he/she study Chinese history in China?

Cue

Jiāzhōu Dàxué

加州大学

University of California

Bú shì, tā shì zài Jiāzhōu Dàxué niànde Zhōngguó lìshǐ.

不是，他/她是在加州大学念的中国历史。

No, he/she studied Chinese history in the California university.

7. Tā shì zài Jiānádà niànde Zhōngwén ma?

他/她是在加拿大念的中文吗？

Did he/she study the Chinese language in Canada?

Cue

Táiwān

台湾

Taiwan

Bú shì, tā shì zài Táiwān niànde Zhōngwén.

不是，他/她是在台湾念的中文。

No, he/she studied the Chinese language in Taiwan.

## Response drill

Give negative or affirmative responses to all the questions according to the cues.

1. Tā shì zài Huáshèngdùn xuéde Zhōngguó huà ma?

他/她是在华盛顿学的中国话吗？

Did he/she study Chinese in Washington?

Cue

Huáshèngdùn

华盛顿

Washington

Shìde, tā shì zài Huáshèngdùn xuéde Zhōngguó huà.

是的，他/她是在华盛顿学的中国话。

he/she studied Chinese in Washington.

2. Tā shì zài Táiwān Dàxué niànde Zhōngguó lìshǐ ma?

他/她是在台湾大学念的中国历史吗？

Did he/she study Chinese history in Taiwan University?

Cue

Měiguó Dàxué

美国大学

American University

Bù shì, tā shì zài Měiguó Dàxué niànde Zhōngguó lìshǐ.

不是，他/她是在美国大学念的中国历史。

No, he/she studied Chinese history at American University.

3. Tā shì zài dàxué xuéde Zhōngwén ma?

他/她是在大学学的中文吗？

Did he/she learn Chinese in college?

Cue

dàxué

大学

college

Shìde, tā shì zài dàxué xuéde Zhōngwén.

是的，他/她是在大学学的中文。

Yes, he/she learned Chinese in college.

4. Tā shì zài Táiwān Dàxué niǎnde Zhōngguó wénxué ma?  
他/她是在台湾大学念的中国文学吗?  
Did he/she study Chinese literature at Taiwan University?

Cue Jīāzhōu Dàxué  
加州大学  
University of California

Bú shì, tā shì zài Jīāzhōu Dàxué niǎnde Zhōngguó wénxué.  
不是，他/她是在加州大学念的中国文学。  
No, he/she studied Chinese literature at the University of California.

5. Tā shì zài Měiguó Dàxué niǎnde wénxué ma?  
他/她是在美国大学念的文学吗?  
Did he/she study literature at American University?

Cue Měiguó Dàxué  
美国大学  
American University

Shìde, tā shì zài Měiguó Dàxué niǎnde wénxué.  
是的，他/她是在美国大学念的文学。  
Yes, he/she studied literature at American University

6. Tā shì zài Jīāzhōu Dàxué niǎnde zhèngzhìxué ma?  
他/她是在加州念的政治学吗?  
Did he/she study political science at the University of California?

Cue Táiwān Dàxué  
台湾大学  
University of Taiwan

Bú shì, tā shì zài Táiwān Dàxué niǎnde shèngzhìxué.  
不是，他/她是在台湾大学念的政治学。  
No, he/she studied political science at Taiwan University.

7. Tā shì zài Fàguó niǎnde Fàwén ma?  
他/她是在法国念的法文吗?  
Did he/she study French in France?

Cue

Měiguó

美国

America

Bú shì, tā shì zài Měiguó niànde Fàwén.

不是，他/她是在美国念的法文。

No, he/she studied French in University of America.

## Substitution drill

1. Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?

你会说英文吗？

Can you speak English?

Cue

Déwén

德文

German

Nǐ huì shuō Déwén ma?

你会说德文吗？

Can you speak German?

2. Nǐ huì shuō Déwén ma?

你会说德文吗？

Can you speak German?

Cue

Rìwén

日文

Japanese

Nǐ huì shuō Rìwén ma?

你会说日文吗？

Can you speak Japanese?

3. Nǐ huì shuō Rìwén ma?

你会说日文吗？

Can you speak Japanese?

Cue

Fàwén

法文

French

Nǐ huì shuō Fàwén ma?

你会说法文吗？

Can you speak French?

4. Nǐ huì shuō Fàwén ma?

你会说法文吗？

Can you speak French?

Cue

Zhōngguo huà

中国话

Chinese (language)

Nǐ huì shuō Zhōngguo huà ma?

你会说中国话吗？

Can you speak Chinese?

5. Nǐ huì shuō Zhōngguo huà ma?

你会说中国话吗？

Can you speak Chinese?

Cue

Déguo huà

德国话

German (language)

Nǐ huì shuō Déguo huà ma?

你会说德国话吗？

Can you speak German?

6. Nǐ huì shuō Déguo ma?

你会说的国话吗？

Can you speak German?

Cue

Èguo huà

俄国话

Russian (language)

Nǐ huì shuō Èguo huà ma?

你会说俄国话吗？

Can you speak Russian?



## Combination drill

1. Wǒ xué Zhōngwén.

我学中文。

I'm studying Chinese.

Cue

Rìwén

日文

Japanese

Wǒ xué Zhōngwén, wǒ yě xué Rìwén.

我学中文，我也学日文。

I'm studying Chinese, and I'm studying Japanese too.

2. Wǒ xué Fǎwén.

我学法文。

I'm studying French.

Cue

tā

他/她

he/she

Wǒ xué Fǎwén, tā yě xué Zhōngwén.

我学中文，他/她也学中文。

I'm studying French, and he/she is studying Chinese too.

3. Tā xué Fǎwén.

他/她学法文。

He/she is studying French.

Cue

Déwén

德文

German

Tā xué Fǎwén, tā yě xué Déwén.

他/她学法文，他/她也学德文。

He/she is studying French, and he/she is studying German too.

4. Wǒ xué Fǎwén.

我学法语。

I'm studying French.

Cue

tā

他/她

he/she

Wǒ xué Fǎwén, tā yě xué Fǎwén.

我学法语，他/她也学法语。

I'm studying French, and he/she is studying French too.

5.

Wǒ xué zhèngzhìxué.

我学政治学。

I'm studying political science.

Cue

tā

他/她

he/she

Wǒ xué zhèngzhìxué, tā yě xué zhèngzhìxué.

我学政治学，他/她也学政治学。

I'm studying political science, and he/she is studying political science too.

6.

Wǒ xué zhèngzhìxué.

我学政治学。

I'm studying political science.

Cue

jīngjìxué

经济学

economics

Wǒ xué zhèngzhìxué, wǒ yě xué jīngjìxué.

我学政治学，我也学经济学。

I'm studying political science, and I'm studying economics too.

7.

Wǒ xué wénxué.

我学文学。

I'm studying literature.

Cue

lǐshǐ

历史

history

Wǒ xué wénxué, wǒ yě xué lìshǐ.

我学文学，我也学历史。

I'm studying literature, and I'm studying history too.

## Combination drill

- Lín xiānsheng zài Huáshèngdùn. Tā xuéguo Fàwén.  
林先生在美国。他学过法文。  
Mr. Lín was in Washington. He studied French.

Lín xiānsheng zài Huáshèngdùn xuéguo Fàwén.  
林先生在美国学过法文。  
Mr. Lín studied French in Washington.
- Huáng xiǎojiě zài Měiguó. Tā niànguo zhèngzhixué.  
黄小姐在美国。她念过政治学。  
Miss Huáng was in America. She studied political science.

Huáng xiǎojiě zài Měiguó niànguo zhèngzhixué.  
黄小姐在美国念过政治学。  
Miss Huáng studied political science in America.
- Liú tàitai zài Jiāzhōu Dàxué. Tā niànguo jīngjixué.  
刘太太在加州大学。她念过经济学。  
Mrs. Liú was in the University of California. She studied economics.

Liú tàitai zài Jiāzhōu Dàxué niànguo jīngjixué.  
刘太太在加州大学念过经济学。  
Mrs. Liú studied economics at the University of California.
- Sòng xiānsheng zài Měiguó. Tā niànguo lìshǐ.  
宋先生在美国。他念过历史。  
Mr. Sòng was in America. He studied history.

Sòng xiānsheng zài Měiguó niànguo lìshǐ.  
宋先生在美国念过历史。  
Mr. Sòng studied history in America.
- Tā zài Běijīng. Tā xuéguo Zhōngwén.  
他/她在北京。他/她学过中文。  
He/she was in Běijīng. He/she learned Chinese.

Tā zài Běijīng xuéguo zhōngwén.

他/她在北京学过中文。

He/she learned Chinese in Běijīng.

6. Sūn xiǎojiě zài Jiānádà. Tā niànguo Yīngguo wénxué.

孙小姐在加拿大。他念英国文学。

Miss Sūn was in Canada. She studied English.

Sūn xiǎojiě zài Jiānádà niànguo Yīngguo wénxué.

孙小姐在加拿大念过英国文学。

Miss Sūn studied English in Canada.

7. Tā zài Zhōngguo. Tā niànguo Zhōngguo wénxué.

他/她在中国。他/她念过中国文学。

He/she was in China. He/she studied Chinese literature.

Tā zài Zhōngguo niànguo Zhōngguo wénxué.

他/她在中国念过中国文学。

He/she studied Chinese literature in China.

## Response drill

Give an affirmative or a negative response to each question, according to the cues.

1. Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?

你会说英文吗？

Can you speak English?

Cue

xuéguo

学过

have studied

Wǒ huì shuō yídiǎn.

我会说一点。

I can speak a little.

2. Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?

你会说英文吗？

Can you speak English?

Cue

méi xuéguo

没学过

haven't studied

Wǒ bú huì shuō.

我不会说。

I can't speak it.

3. Nǐ huì shuō Zhōngwén ma?

你会说中文吗？

Can you speak Chinese?

Cue

xuéguo

学过

have studied

Wǒ huì shuō yídiǎn.

我会说一点。

I can speak Chinese a little.

4. Tā huì shuō Déwén ma?  
他/她会说法文吗?  
Can he/speak German?

Cue méi xuéguo  
没学过  
haven't studied

Tā bù huì shuō.  
他/她不会说。  
He cannot speak it.

5. Nǐ huì shuō Rìwén ma?  
你会说日文吗?  
Can you speak Japanese?

Cue xuéguo  
学过  
have studied

Wǒ huì shuō yídiǎn.  
我会说一点。  
I can speak Japanese a little.

6. Tā huì shuō Yīngguó huà ma?  
他/她会说法国话吗?  
Can he/she speak English?

Cue xuéguo  
学过  
have studied

Tā huì shuō yídiǎn.  
他/她会说法文一点。  
He/she can speak a little.

7. Nǐ huì shuō Fàwén ma?  
你会说法文吗?  
Can you speak French?

Cue

méi xuéguo

没学过

haven't studied

Wǒ bú huì shuō.

我不会说。

I cannot speak it.



## Response drill

Give an affirmative or a negative response to each question, according to the cues.

1. Tā huì shuō Zhōngguó huà ma?  
他/她会讲中国话吗？  
Can he/she speak Chinese?

Cue xūéguo  
学过  
have studied

Huì, tā huì shuō Zhōngguó huà.  
会，他/她会讲中国话。  
Yes, he/she can speak Chinese.

2. Tā huì shuō Zhōngguó huà ma?  
他/她会讲中国话吗？  
Can he/she speak Chinese?

Cue méi xūéguo  
没学过  
haven't studied

Bú huì, tā bú huì shuō Zhōngguó huà.  
不会，他/她会讲中国话。  
No, he/she cannot speak Chinese.

3. Tā àiren huì shuō Fàwén ma?  
他/她爱人会说法文吗？  
Can his/her spouse speak French?

Cue xūéguo  
学过  
have studied

Huì, tā àiren huì shuō Fàwén.  
会，他/她爱人会说法文。  
Yes, his/her spouse can speak French.

4. Tā fùqīn huì shuō Rìwén ma?  
他/她父亲会说日文吗?  
Can his/her mother speak Japanese?

Cue méi xuéguo  
没学过  
haven't studied

Bú huì, tā fùqīn bú huì shuō Rìwén.  
不会，他父亲不会说日文。  
No, his/her mother cannot speak Japanese.

5. Lǐ tóngzhì huì shuō Déwén ma?  
李同志会说德文吗?  
Can Comrade Lǐ speak German?

Cue méi xuéguo  
没学过  
haven't studied

Bú huì, Lǐ tóngzhì bú huì shuō Déwén.  
不会，李同志不会说德文。  
No, Comrade Lǐ cannot speak German.

6. Wáng tóngzhì huì shuō Yīngwén ma?  
王同志会说英文吗?  
Can Comrade Wáng speak English?

Cue xuéguo  
学过  
have studied

Huì, Wáng tóngzhì huì shuō Yīngwén.  
会，王同志会说英文。  
Yes, Comrade Wáng can speak English.

7. Chén tóngzhì huì shuō Fǎwén ma?  
陈同志会说法文吗?  
Can Comrade Chén speak French?

Cue

xuéguo

学过

have studied

Huì, Chén tóngzhì huì shuō Fǎwén.

会，陈同志会说法文。

Yes, Comrade Chén can speak French.

## Unit 8

### Introduction

#### Topics covered in this unit

1. More on duration phrases.
2. The marker **le** for new situations in negative sentences.
3. Military titles and branches of service.
4. The marker **ne**.
5. Process verbs.

#### Material you will need

1. The C-1 and P-1 tapes, the Reference List and Reference Notes.
2. The C-2 and P-2 tapes, the Workbook.
3. The 8D-1 tape.

## References

### Reference List

1. A: Nǐ jīntiān hái yǒu kè ma?  
你今天还有课吗？  
Do you have any more classes today?  
B: Méiyǒu kè le.  
没有课了。  
I don't have any more classes.
2. A: Nǐ cóngqián niàn Yīngwén niànle duō jiǔ?  
你从前念英文念了多久？  
How long did you study English?  
B: Wǒ niàn Yīngwén niànle liùnián.  
我念英文念了六年。  
I studied English for six years.
3. A: Nǐ xiànzài niàn shénme ne?  
你现在念什么呢？  
What are you studying now?  
B: Wǒ niàn Fǎwén ne.  
我念法文  
I'm studying French.
4. A: Nǐ niàn Fǎwén niànle duō jiǔ le?  
你念法文了多久了？  
How long have you studying French?  
B: Wǒ niànle yìnián le.  
我念了一年了。  
I've have been studying it for one year.
5. A: Nǐ huì xiě Zhōngguó zì ma?  
你会写中国字吗？  
Can you write Chinese characters?  
B: Huì yídiǎn.  
会一点。  
I can a little.
6. A: Qùnián wǒ hái bú huì xiě.  
去年我还不会写。  
Last year, I couldn't write them.

- A: Xiànzài wǒ huì xiě yìdiǎn le.  
现在我会写一点了。  
Now, I can write a little.
7. A: Nǐ fùqīn shì jūnrén ma?  
你父亲是军人吗？  
Is your father a military man?
- B: Shì, tā shì hǎijūn jūnguān.  
是，他是海军军官。  
Yes, he is a naval officer.
8. B: Wǒ jīntiān bù lái le.  
我今天不来了。  
I'm not coming today.
- B: Wǒ bìng le.  
我病了。  
I'm sick.
9. A: Jīntiān hǎo le méiyǒu?  
今天好了没有？  
Are you better today? (Are you recovered?)
- B: Jīntiān hǎo le.  
今天好了。  
Today I'm better.

## Vocabulary

kōngjūn	空军	Air Force
lùjūn	陆军	army
shìbīng	事兵	enlisted man
zuò shì	做事	to work
Déwén	德文	German language
bìng	病	to become ill
Déwén	德文	German language
Fǎwén	法文	French language
hǎijūn	海军	navy
jūnguān	军官	military officer
jūnrén	军人	military person
kè	课	class
xiě	写	to write
zì	字	character

## Reference Notes

## Notes on №1

1.	A:	Nǐ jīntiān hái yǒu kè ma?	你今天还有课吗？	Do you have any more classes today?
	B:	Měiyǒu kè le.	没有课了。	I don't have any more classes.

**Hái**, “additionally,” “also”: You have already learned the word **hái** used as an adverb meaning “still.” In this exchange you learn a second way to use **hái**.

Nǐ hái xiǎng zǒu ma?	Do you still want to leave?
你还想走马？	
Nǐ hái yào xué shénme?	What else do you want to study?
你还要学什么？	

**Méi you...le**: You will remember that in the negative of a completed action, **méi** or **méiyǒu** replaces the completion marker **le**—is never used together with it.

Tā		lái	le.	He came.
他		来	了。	
Tā	méi(you)	lái.		He did not come.
他	没有	来		

In the sentence **Méiyǒu kè le**, **le** is a new-situation marker, and **méiyǒu** is simply the negative of the full verb **yǒu**. (Remember that the verb **yǒu** is always made negative with **méi**, never with **bù**.)

Tā		yǒu kè	le.	Now he has class. [Due to a change in the schedule, he now has class at this time.]
他		有课	了。	
Tā	méi-	yǒu kè	le.	He doesn't have any more classes.
他	没	有课	了。	

**Bù...le/méiyǒu...le**: When the marker **le** for new situations is used with a negative verb, there are two possible meanings:

- one is that something that was supposed to happen is now not going to happen.
- the other is that something that was happening is not happening anymore.

Thus the following sentence is ambiguous:

Tā bù lái le.	He is not coming now. [Either he was expected to come but changed his mind, or he used to come at this time but now has stopped.]
他不来了。	

In the context of a conversation, the meaning of the sentence would become clear.



Here are more examples with the “anymore” meaning:

Tā bú niàn shū le. 他不念书了。	He is not going to study anymore.[He will no longer attend college.]
Tā bú shì wǒ de péngyou le. 他不是我的朋友了。	He is not my friend anymore.
Méi you le. 没有了。	There is no more.

Notes on №2

2. A: *Nǐ cóngqián niàn Yīngwén niàn-le duó jiǔ?* 你从前念英文念了多久?  
 B: *Wǒ niàn Yīngwén niànle liùnián.* 我念英文念了六年。
- How long did you study English?  
 I studied English for six years.

**More on duration:** In Unit 6 of this module, you learned to express duration in a sentence with no object (*Wǒ zài Xiāngǎng zhùle liùge yuè le.*). In this unit, you learn one way to express the duration of an activity which involves using both a verb and an object (e.g. “studying economics”). In such cases, the verb appears twice in the sentence: first when the object is stated, and again when the duration is stated.

<i>Tā niàn jīngjìxué, niànle yìnián.</i>	He studied economics for one year.
他念经济学，念了一年了。	
<i>Tā xué Zhōngguó huà, xuéle sānge yuè le.</i>	He has been studying Chinese for three months.
他学中国画，学了三个月了。	

Notice that aspect markers do not occur after the first verb in each sentence, but only after the second verb and at the end of the second sentence.

### Notes on №3

- |    |    |                            |          |                            |
|----|----|----------------------------|----------|----------------------------|
| 3. | A: | Nǐ xiànzài niàn shénme ne? | 你现在念什么呢？ | What are you studying now? |
|    | B: | Wǒ niàn Fǎwén ne.          | 我念法文     | I'm studying French.       |

Ne is an aspect marker used to emphasize the fact that something is in progress. With action verbs, ne indicates that the action is going on.

With state verbs, ne shows that the state exists. With some process verbs, ne indicates that the process is going on. Ne may not be used with certain process verbs. (See also notes on No. 8, about verbs.)

Notes on №4–5

4.	A: <i>Nǐ niàn Fǎwén niànle duó jiǔ le?</i>	你念法文念了多久了?	How long have you studying French?
	B: <i>Wǒ niànle yìnián le.</i>	我念了一年了。	I've have been studying it for one year.
5.	A: <i>Nǐ huì xiě Zhōngguó zì ma?</i>	你会写中国字吗?	Can you write Chinese characters?
	B: <i>Huì yìdiǎn.</i>	会一点。	I can a little.

*Xiě Zhōngguó zì*: The verb *xiě*, “to write” can occur with specific objects, such as *Zhōngguó zì*, as well as with the general object *zì*. The combination *xiě zì* can mean either “to write characters” or simply “to write.”

<i>Tā xiǎng xué Zhōngguó zì.</i>	He wants to learn to write Chinese characters.
他想学中国字。	
<i>Xiǎo dìdì sìsuì le, yǐjīng huì xiě zì le.</i>	Little younger brother is four years old and already can write.
小弟弟四岁了，已经会写字了。	

In the reply *Huì yìdiǎn*, *huì* is used as a main verb—not as an auxiliary verb, as in the question.

As a main verb, *huì* means “to have the skill of,” “to have the knowledge of,” “to know.”

<i>Wǒ huì Yīngwén.</i>	I know English.
我会英文。	

Notes on №6

6.	A: Qùnián wǒ hái bú huì xiě.	去年我还不 会写。	Last year, I couldn't write them.
	B: Xiànzài wǒ huì xiě yídiǎn le.	现在我会写 一点了。	Now, I can write a little.

Qùnián wǒ hái bú huì xiě.: Notice that here it is the auxiliary verb **huì**, not the verb **xiě**, that is made negative. Auxiliary verbs such as **huì** and **xiǎng** are STATE verbs and so are made negative with the prefix **bù**, regardless of whether the context is past, present, or future.

Xiànzài wǒ huì xiě yídiǎn le.: The marker used is **le** for new situations. It is always placed at the end of a sentence.

The time word **xiànzài** comes at the beginning of the sentence here. Most time words of more than one syllable may come either **before** or **after** the **subject**, but in either case **before the verb**.

## Notes on №7–8

7.	A: Nǐ fùqīn shì jūnrén ma?	你父亲是军人吗？	Is your father a military man?
	B: Shì, tā shì hǎijūn jūnguān.	是，他是海军军官。	Yes, he is a naval officer.
8.	A: Wǒ jīntiān bù lái le.	我今天不来了。	I'm not coming today.
	B: Wǒ bìng le.	我病了。	I'm sick.

The verb **bìng**, “to get sick,” “to become ill,” is a process verb; that is the activity described includes some changes in the situation. Process verbs tell of an action which has caused a change from one state to another, as from whole to broken (“to break”) and from frozen to melted (“to melt”). **Bìng** is typical of process verbs: not only is an action described (coming down with an illness) but also a resulting state (being ill). Because of this typical combination, process verbs are sometimes thought of as combining the semantic characteristics of action and state verbs.

One of the main purposes of talking about verbs in terms of action, state, and process is to draw attention to the fact that the Chinese way of expressing something may not correspond to the English.

For instance,

“I am sick” in Chinese is **Wǒ bìng le**. (“I have gotten sick”). For “I am not sick,” you say **Wǒ méi bìng**. (“I didn’t get sick”).

Process verbs are always made negative with **méi** regardless of whether you are referring to past, present, or future.

Nǐ bìng le méiyǒu?	Are you sick?
你病了没有？	
Méiyǒu. Wǒ méi bìng.	No. I’m not sick.
没有。我没病。	

(State verbs are always made negative with **bù**.)

Another reason for putting verbs into categories according to the type of meaning is to discover how verbs behave in sentences. Knowing whether a verb is in the action, state, or process category, you will know what aspect markers and negatives may be used with that verb. In the following charts, an X mark means that this combination of verb and aspect occurs in the language.

		Aspect Markers		
		Completion <b>le</b>	Combined <b>le</b>	New-situation <b>le</b>
Verbs	Action	X	X	X
	State			X
	Process	X	X	X

**Examples:**<sup>6</sup>

<sup>6</sup>Most of the time you can figure out from a verb’s meaning the semantic category in which that verb belongs. However, process verbs may not be so predictable.

Action	Tā zuótiān gōngzuò le. 他昨天工作了。	He worked yesterday. (completion le)
	Tā yǐjīng lái le. 他已经来了。	
	Gēge xiànzài niàn dàxué le. 哥哥现在上大学了。	Older brother goes to college now. (new-situation le) <sup>a</sup>
State	Tā xiànzài huì xiě zì le. 他现在会写字了。	
	Process	Tā zuótiān bìng le. 他昨天病了。
Process	Tā xiànzài bìng le. 他现在病了。	He is sick.(combined le)
	Tā bìng le yíge yuē le. 他病了一个月了。	

<sup>a</sup>In affirmative sentences containing action verbs, the marker le for new situations is used to describe a change in a general habit.

		Verbs		
		Action	State	Process
Negation	bù	X	X	
	méi(you)—negation of completion le	X		X
	hái méi—negation of combined le	X		X

**Examples:**

Action	Tā bú niàn shū. 他不念书。	He doesn't (isn't going to) study
	Tā méi niàn shū. 他没念书。	
	Tā hái méi niàn shū. 他还没念书。	He hasn't studied yet,
State	Tā qùnián bù xiǎng niàn shū. 他去年不想念书。	
	Process	Tā jīntiān méi bìng. 他今天没病。
Process	Tā hái méi hǎo. 他还没好。	He hasn't yet recovered.

Notice that only action verbs use the whole range of negatives to mark the negative of future or present action, completed action, or new situations. State verbs use the negative prefix **bù** even when referring to past states. Process verbs use the negative prefix **méi** even when referring to something in the present.

If you find a verb occurring with a negative or an aspect marker you had not expected, you might discuss with your teacher how the verb behaves in terms of these charts. You might discover that what you thought was a state verb is actually a process verb, or vice versa.

### Notes on №9

9. A: <i>Jīntiān hǎo le méiyóu?</i>	今天好了没有？	Are you better today? (Are you recovered?)
B: <i>Jīntiān hǎo le.</i>	今天好了。	Today I'm better.

*Jīntiān hǎo le.*: *Hǎo* is one of many state verbs which can become process verbs. When such a verb becomes a process verb, it takes on a different meaning. While the state verb *hǎo* means “to be good” or “to be well,” the process verb *hǎo* means “to get better,” “to recover.” Compare these sentences:

<i>Tā hǎo.</i>	He's in good health.
他好。	
<i>Tā zuótiān bìng le. Tā jīntiān yǐjīng hǎo le.</i>	Yesterday he became sick. Today he is already recovered.
他昨天病了。他今天已经好了。	

The difference between the state verb *hǎo* and the process verb *hǎo* is even more evident in negative sentences. State verbs, as you remember, are made negative only with *bù*. Process verbs are made negative only with *méi* or *hái méi*.

<i>Tā bù hǎo.</i>	He's not good. [He's not a good person.]
他不好。	
<i>Tā hái méi hǎo.</i>	He hasn't yet recovered. [He is still sick.]
他还没好。	

It can be difficult to remember that *bìng* and *hǎo*, sometimes translated as “to be sick” and “to be better,” are actually process verbs in Chinese, not state verbs.

The English sentence “I am better (recovered)” translates as *Wǒ hǎo le*. (“I have become well”) and would be incorrect without the *le*.

*Jīntiān hǎo le méiyóu?* Questions may be formed from statements containing completion *le* or combined *le* by adding *méiyóu* at the end of the statements.

You will learn more about forming questions in the first unit of the next module.

<i>Tā lái le méiyóu?</i>	Did he come?
他来了没有？	
<i>Nǐ hǎo le méiyóu?</i>	Are you recovered (from your illness)?
你好了没有？	



## Drills

### Response drill

- Tā jīntiān hái yǒu kè ma?  
他/她今天还有课吗?  
Does he have any more class today?

Tā méiyǒu kè le.  
他/她没有课了。  
He doesn't have any more classes.
- Tā jīntiān hái lái ma?  
他/她今天还来吗?  
Is he/she still coming today?

Tā bù lái le.  
他/她不来了。  
He/she is not coming.
- Tā xiànzài hái huì shuō Zhōngguó huà ma?  
他/她现在还会说中国话吗?  
Does he/she still speak Chinese now?

Tā bú huì shuō Zhōngguó huà le.  
他/她不会说中国话了。  
He/she can't speak Chinese anymore.
- Tā xiànzài hái yǒu Zhōngguó shū ma?  
他/她现在还有中国书吗?  
Does he/she still have Chinese books now?

Tā méiyǒu Zhōngguó shū le.  
他/她没有中国书了。  
He/she has no more Chinese books anymore.
- Tā hái niàn lìshǐ ma?

他/她还念历史吗？

Does he/she still study history?

Tā bú niàn lìshǐ le.

他/她不念历史了。

He/she doesn't study history anymore.

6. Tā xiànzài hái zài kōngjūn gōngzuò ma?

他/她现在还在空军工作吗？

Is he/she still working in the Air Force?

Tā bú zài kōngjūn gōngzuò.

他/她不在空军工作。

He/she does not work in the Air Force anymore.

7. Tā xiànzài hái xiǎng zǒu ma?

他/她现在还想走吗？

Does he/she still want to leave now?

Tā bù xiǎng zǒu le.

他/她不想走了。

He/she doesn't want to go anymore.

## Expansion drill

1. Tā cóngqián niàn lìshǐ.

他/她从前念历史。

He/she formerly studied history.

Tā cóngqián niàn lìshǐ, xiànzài bú niàn le.

他/她从前念历史，现在不念了。

He/she formerly studied history, but now he/she doesn't anymore.

2. Tā cóngqián niàn shū.

他/她从前念书。

He/she used to study.

Tā cóngqián niàn shū, xiànzài bú niàn le.

他/她从前念书，现在不念了。

He/she used to study, now he/she doesn't anymore.

3. Tā cóngqián zài lùjūn zuò shì.

他/她从前在陆军做事。

He/she used to be in the Army.

Tā cóngqián zài lùjūn zuò shì, xiànzài bú zài lùjūn zuò shì le.

他/她从前在陆军做事，现在不在陆军做事了。

He/she used to be in the Army, but he/she doesn't anymore.

4. Tā cóngqián bú huì.

他/她从前不会。

He/she used to not.

Tā cóngqián bú huì, xiànzài huì le.

他/她从前不会，现在会了。

He/she used to not, but now he/she does.

5. Tā cóngqián bù zhīdào.

他/她从前不知道。

He/she never knew before.

Tā cóngqián bù zhīdào, xiànzài zhīdào le.

他/她从前不知道，现在知道了。

He/she never knew before, but he/she knows now.

6. Tāde Zhōngwén cóngqián bù hěn hǎo.

他/她中文从前不很好。

He/she wasn't very good at Chinese.

Tāde Zhōngwén cóngqián bù hěn hǎo, xiànzài hěn hǎo le.

他/她中文从前不很好，现在很好了。

He/she wasn't very good at Chinese, but he/she is now.

7. Tā cóngqián huì shuō Fàguó huà.

他/她从前会说法国话。

He/she used to speak French.

Tā cóngqián huì shuō Fàguó huà, xiànzài bú huì le.

他/她从前会说法国话，现在不会了。

He/she used to speak French, now he/she doesn't.

## Transformation drill

1. Tā niànguo zhèngzhixué.

他/她念过政治学。

He/she has studied political science.

Cue

duó jiǔ

多久

how long

Tā niàn zhèngzhixué, niànle duó jiǔ?

他/她念政治学，念了多久？

How long did he/she study political science?

2. Tā niànguo jīngjixué.

他/她念过经济学。

He/she has studied economics.

Cue

jǐnián

几年

how many years

Tā niàn jīngjixué, niànle jǐnián?

他/她念经济学，念了几年？

How many years did he/she study economics?

3. Tā niànguo Zhōngguó wénxué.

他/她念过中国文学。

He/she has studied literature.

Cue

duó jiǔ

多久

how long

Tā niàn Zhōngguó wénxué, niànle duó jiǔ?

他/她念中国文学，念了多久？

How long did he/she study literature?

4. Tā xūéguo Rìwén.

他/她学过日文？

He/she has learned Japanese.

Cue

jǐge yuè

几个月

how many months

Tā xué Rìwén, xuéle jǐge yuè?

他/她学日文，学了几个月？

How many months did he/she learn Japanese?

5.

Tā zài kōngjūn zuòguo shì.

他/她在空军做过事。

He/she has worked in the Air Force.

Cue

duó jiǔ

多久

how long

Tā zài kōngjūn zuò shì, zuòle duó jiǔ?

他/她在空军做事，做了多久？

How long did he/she work in the Air Force?

6.

Tā niànguo Zhōngguo lìshǐ.

他/她念过中国历史。

He/she has studied Chinese history.

Cue

duó jiǔ

多久

how long

Tā niàn Zhōngguo lìshǐ, niànle duó jiǔ?

他/她念中国历史，念了多久？

How long did he/she study history?

7.

Tā niànguo Yīngguo wénxué.

他/她念过英国文学。

He/she has studied English literature.

Cue

jīnián

几年

how many years

Tā niàn Yīngguó wénxué, niànle jǐnián?

他/她念英国文学，念了几年？

How many years did he/she study literature?





他/她现在在海军做事。

He/she is now working in the Navy.

Cue

jǐnián

几年

how many years

Tā zài hǎijūn zuò shì, zuòle jǐnián le?

他/她在海军做事，作了几年了？

How many years has he been working in the Navy?

5.

Tā xiànzài xué Zhōngguó huà.

他/她现在学中国话。

He/she is learning Chinese now.

Cue

duō jiǔ

多久

how long

Tā xué Zhōngguó huà, xuéle duō jiǔ le?

他/她中国话，学了多久了？

How long has he/she been learning Chinese?

6.

Tā xiànzài zài lùjūn zuò shì.

他/她现在在陆军做事。

He/she is working in the Army now.

Cue

jǐnián

几年

how many years

Tā zài lùjūn zuò shì, zuòle jǐnián le?

他/她在陆军做事，作了几年了？

How many years has he/she been working in the Army?

7.

Tā xiànzài zài yínháng zuò shì.

他/她现在在银行做事。

He/she is working in a bank now.

Cue

jǐnián

几年

how many years

Tā zài yínháng zuò shì, zuò le jǐ nián le?

他/她在银行做事，作了几年了？

How many years has he/she been working in the bank?

## Transformation drill

1. Tā xiànzài hái niàn lìshǐ ne.

他/她现在还念历史呢。

He/she is still studying history.

Cue

duó jiǔ

多久

how long

Tā niàn lìshǐ, hái xiǎng niàn duó jiǔ?

他/她念历史，还想念多久？

How much longer is he/she going to study history?

2. Tā xiànzài hái niàn Zhōngguó wénxué ne.

他/她现在还念中国文学呢。

He/she is still studying Chinese literature.

Cue

duó jiǔ

多久

how long

Tā niàn Zhōngguó wénxué, hái xiǎng niàn duó jiǔ?

他/她念中国历史，还想念多久？

How much longer is he/she going to study Chinese literature?

3. Tā xiànzài hái xué Rìwén ne.

他/她现在还学日文呢。

He/she is still learning Japanese.

Cue

jǐge yuè

几个月

how many months

Tā xué Rìwén, hái xiǎng xué jǐge yuè?

他/她学日文，还想学几个月？

How much longer is he/she going to learn Japanese?

4. Tā xiànzài hái zài lùjūn zuò shì ne.

他/她现在还在陆军做事呢。

He/she is still working for the Army.

Cue

duó jiǔ

多久

how long

Tā zài lùjūn zuò shì, hái xiǎng zuò duó jiǔ?

他/她在陆军做事，还想做多久？

How long is he/she going to work in the army?

5. Tā xiànzài hái xué Zhōngguó huà ne.

他/她现在还学中国话呢。

He/she is still learning Chinese.

Cue

duó jiǔ

多久

how long

Tā xué Zhōngguó huà, hái xiǎng xué duó jiǔ?

他/她学中国话，还想学多久？

How long is he/she going to learn Chinese?

6. Tā xiànzài hái niàn zhèngzhìxué ne.

他/她现在还念政治学呢。

He/she is still studying political science.

Cue

duó jiǔ

多久

how long

Tā niàn zhèngzhìxué, hái xiǎng niàn duó jiǔ?

他/她念政治学，还想念多久？

How long is he/she going to study political science?

7. Tā xiànzài hái niàn jīngjìxué ne.

他/她现在还念经济学呢。

He/she is still studying economics.

Cue

duó jiǔ

多久

how long

Tā niàn jīngjìxué, hái xiǎng niàn duō jiǔ?

他/她念经济学，还想念多久？

How long is he/she going to study economics?

## Transformation drill

1. Tā xiànzài niàn lìshǐ.

他/她现在念历史。

He is studying history now.

Tā niàn lìshǐ, niànle duó jiǔ le?

他/她念历史，念了多久了？

How long has he studied history?

2. Tā niànguo lìshǐ.

他/她念过历史。

He studied history.

Tā niàn lìshǐ, niànle duó jiǔ?

他/她念历史，念了对久？

How long did he study history?

3. Tā xiànzài hái niàn lìshǐ.

他/她现在还念历史。

He/she is still studying history.

Tā niàn lìshǐ, hái xiǎng niàn duó jiǔ?

他/她念历史，还想念多久？

How long does he/she plan to study history?

4. Tā xiànzài niàn Zhōngguó wénxué.

他/她现在念中国文学。

He/she is now studying Chinese literature.

Tā niàn Zhōngguó wénxué, niànle duó jiǔ le?

他/她念中国文学，念了多久了？

How long has he/she been studying Chinese literature?

5. Tā niànguo Zhōngguó wénxué.

他/她念过中国文学。

He/she has studied Chinese literature.

Tā niàn Zhōngguó wénxué, niànle duó jiǔ?

他/她念中国文学，念了多久？

How long did he/she study Chinese literature?

6. Tā zìnzài hái niàn Rìwén.

他/她现在还念日文。

He/she is still studying Japanese.

Tā niàn Rìwén# hái xiǎng niàn duó jiǔ?

他/她念日文，还想念多？

How long does he/she plan to study Japanese?

7. Tā niànguò Rìwén.

他/她念过日文。

He/she has studied Chinese.

Tā niàn Rìwén, niànle duó jiǔ?

他/她念日文，念了多久？

How long has he/she been studying Japanese?

8. Tā xuéguò Yīngwén.

他/她学过英文。

He/she has learned English.

Tā xué Yīngwén, xuéle duó jiǔ?

他/她学英文，学了多久？

How long has he/she been learning English?

9. Tā xiànzài hái xué Yīngwén.

他/她现在还学英文。

He/she is still learning English.

Tā xué Yīngwén, hái xiǎng xué duó jiǔ?

他/她学英文，还想学多久？

How long does he/she plan to learn English.

10. Tā xiànzài zài kōngjūn zuò shì.

他/她现在在空军做事。

He/she now works for the Air Force.

Tā zài kōngjūn zuò shì, zuòle duó jiǔ le?

他/她在空军做事，做了多久了？

how long has he/she been working for the Air Force?



## Expansion drill

1. Wǒ xiě zì le.

我写字了。

I wrote.

Wǒ xiě zì le, tā méi xiě zì.

我写字了，他/她没写字。

I wrote, he/she didn't write.

2. Wǒ dǒng le.

我懂了。

I understood.

Wǒ dǒng le, tā méi dǒng.

我懂了，他/她没懂。

I understood, he/she didn't.

3. Wǒ lái le.

我来了。

I came.

Wǒ lái le, tā méi lái.

我来了，他/她没来。

I came, he/she didn't.

4. Wǒ zǒu le.

我走了。

I left.

Wǒ zǒu le, tā méi zǒu.

我走了，她没走。

I left, he/she didn't.

5. Wǒ zuò le.

我坐了。

I sat.

Wǒ zuò le, tā méi zuò.

我坐了，她没坐。

I sat, he/she didn't.

6. Wǒ tīng le.

我聽了。

I listened.

Wǒ tīng le, tā méi tīng.

我聽了，他/她沒聽。

I listened, he/she didn't.

7. Wǒ xué le.

我學了。

I learned.

Wǒ xué le, tā méi xué.

我學了，她沒學。

I learned, he/she didn't.

## Response drill

1. Tā xiě le ma?  
他/她写了吗?  
Did he/she write?

Tā hái méi xiě.  
他/她还没写。  
He/she still hasn't written.

2. Tā lái le ma?  
他/她来了吗?  
Did he/she come?

Tā hái méi lái.  
他/她还没来。  
He/she still hasn't come.

3. Tā hǎo le ma?  
他/她好了吗?  
Did he/she get better?

Tā hái méi hǎo.  
他/她还没好。  
He/she still hasn't got better.

4. Tā dǒng le ma?  
他/她懂了吗?  
Did he/she understand?

Tā hái méi dǒng.  
他/她还没懂。  
He/she still hasn't understood.

5. Tā zǒu le ma?  
他/她走了吗?  
Did he/she leave?

Tā hái méi zǒu.

他/她还没走。

He/she still hasn't left?

6. Tā tīng le ma?

他/她听了吗？

Did he/she listen?

Tā hái méi tīng.

他/她还没听。

He/she still hasn't listened?

7. Tā xué le ma?

他/她学了吗？

Did he/she learn?

Tā hái méi xué.

他/她还没学。

He/she still hasn't learned.

## Response drill

1. Tā cóngqián bú huì xiě Zhōngguó zì. Xiànzài ne?

他/她从前不会写中国字。现在呢？

In the past he/she couldn't write Chinese characters. And now?

Tā hái bú huì xiě Zhōngguó zì.

他/她还不会写中国字。

He/she still can't write Chinese characters.

2. Tā cóngqián bù xiǎng xué Rìwén. Xiànzài ne?

他/她从前不想学日文。现在呢？

In the past he/she didn't want to learn Japanese. And now?

Tā hái bù xiǎng xué Rìwén.

他/她还不想学日文。

He/she still doesn't want to learn Japanese.

3. Tā cóngqián bú niàn lìshǐ. Xiànzài ne?

他/她从前不念历史。现在呢？

In the past he/she didn't learn history. And now?

Tā hái bú niàn lìshǐ.

他/她还不念历史。

He/she still doesn't learn history.

4. Tā cóngqián bù dǒng Fǎwén. Xiànzài ne?

他/她从前不懂法文。现在呢？

In the past he/she didn't understand French. And now?

Tā hái bù dǒng Fǎwén.

他/她还不董法文。

He/she still doesn't understand French.

5. Tāmen cóngqián méiyǒu hái zi. Xiànzài ne?

他/她们从前没有孩子。现在呢？

In the past he/she didn't have children. And now?

Tāmen hái méiyǒu hái zi.

他/她们还没有孩子。

He/she still doesn't have any children.

6. Tā cóngqián bú huì shuō Déguó huà. Xiànzài ne?

他/她从前不会说德国话。现在呢？

In the past he/she couldn't speak German. And now?

Tā hái bú huì shuō Déguó huà.

他/她还不会说德国话。

He/she still doesn't speak German.

7. Tā cóngqián bù xiǎng xué Yīngwén. Xiànzài ne?

他/她从前不想学英文。现在呢？

In the past he/she didn't want to learn English. And now?

Tā hái bù xiǎng xué Yīngwén.

他/她还不学英文。

He/she still doesn't want to learn English.

## Transformation drill

1. Tā cóngqián bú huì xiě Zhōngguó zì.

他/她从前不会写中国字。

In the past, he/she couldn't write Chinese characters.

Cue now he/she can

Tā cóngqián bú huì xiě, xiànzài huì xiě le.

他/她从前不会写，现在会写了。

In the past, he/she couldn't write, now he/she can.

2. Tā cóngqián huì xiě Zhōngguó zì.

他/她从前会写中国字。

In the past he/she could write Chinese characters

Cue no longer

Tā cóngqián huì xiě, xiànzài bú huì xiě le.

他/她从前会写，现在不会写了。

In the past he/she could write, now he/she can't.

3. Tā cóngqián bú huì xiě Zhōngguó zì.

他/她从前不会写中国字。

In the past he/she couldn't write Chinese characters.

Cue still can't

Tā cóngqián bú huì xiě, xiànzài hái bú huì xiě.

他/她从前不会写，现在还不会写。

In the past he/she couldn't write, now he/she still can't.

4. Tā cóngqián bù dǒng Fǎwén.

他/她从前不懂法文。

In the past he/she didn't understand French.

Cue now he/she can

Tā cóngqián bù dǒng, xiànzài dǒng le.

他/她从前不懂，现在懂了。

In the past he/she didn't understand, now he/she can.

5. Tā cóngqián dǒng Fàwén.

他/她从前懂法文。

In the past he/she did understand French.

Cue no longer

Tā cóngqián dǒng, xiànzài bù dǒng le.

他/她从前懂，现在不懂了。

In the past he/she did understand, now he/she cannot anymore.

6. Tā cóngqián bù dǒng Fàwén.

他/她从前不懂法文。

In the past he/she didn't understand French.

Cue still can't

Tā cóngqián bù dǒng, xiànzài hái bù dǒng.

他/她从前不懂，现在还不懂。

In the past he/she didn't understand, now he/she still can't.

7. Tā cóngqián bù xiǎng xué Yīngwén.

他/她从前不想学英文。

In the past he/she didn't want to learn English.

Cue now he/she does

Tā cóngqián bù xiǎng xué, xiànzài xiǎng xué le.

他/她从前不想学，现在想学了。

In the past he/she didn't want to learn, now he/she wants to.

8. Tā cóngqián xiǎng xué Yīngwén.

他/她从前想学英文。

In the past he/she did want to learn English.

Cue no longer

Tā cóngqián xiǎng xué, xiànzài bù xiǎng xué le.

他/她从前想学，现在不想学了。



In the past he/she did want to learn, now he/she doesn't want to anymore.'

9. Tā cóngqián bù xiǎng xué Yīngwén.

他/她从前不想学英文。

In the past he/she didn't want to learn English.

Cue still doesn't

Tā cóngqián bù xiǎng xué, xiànzài hái bù xiǎng xué.

他/她从前不想学，现在还不学？。

In the past he/she didn't want to learn, now he/she still doesn't want to.

10. Tā cóngqián bú niàn lìshǐ.

他/她从前不念历史。

In the past he/she didn't study history.

Cue now he/she does

Tā cóngqián bú niàn, xiànzài niàn le.

他/她从前不念，现在念了。

In the past he/she didn't study, now she does study.

11. Tā cóngqián niàn lìshǐ.

他他/她从前念历史。

In the past he/she did study history.

Cue no longer

Tā cóngqián niàn, xiànzài bú niàn le.

他/她从前念，现在不念了。

In the past he/she did study, now he/she doesn't anymore.

12. Tā cóngqián bú niàn lìshǐ.

他/她从前不念历史。

In the past he/she didn't study history.

Cue still doesn't

Tā cóngqián bú niàn, xiànzài hái bú niàn.

他/她从前不念，现在还不念。

In the past he/she didn't study, now he/she still doesn't.



---

# Chapter 3. Module 3: Money

The Money Module (MON) will provide you with the skills needed to exchange moneys make simple purchases, and discuss your purchases in Chinese.

Before starting this module, you must take and pass the BIO Criterion Test. Prerequisites to units 4 and 5 of this module are tapes 5 and 6. Numbers resource module and tapes 3 and 4, Time and Dates resource module.

The Criterion Test will focus largely on this module, but material from ORN, BIO and associated resource modules may also be included.

## Objectives

Upon successful completion of this module, the student should be able to:

1. Comprehend the numbers 1 through 99,999 including those numbers used In money expressions, and say them in Chinese when given English equivalents.
2. Give the English equivalent for any Chinese sentence in the MON Target Lists.
3. Say any Chinese sentence in the MON Target Lists when cued with its English equivalent.
4. Give the Chinese names, when given the English, for fifteen items to be bought .
5. Say that he wants to make a purchases, find out if the item is sold, ask to see it, find out the price, ask to see other similar items and either make the purchase or say he does not want to buy the item.
6. Talk in Chinese about the items he bought, the quantity he bought, the size and color of the items , and the price (cost) (including a comparison of his purchases with other Items).
7. Ask for change (specific denominations).
8. Say he wants to change money into local currency, find out where to change it, ask what the current exchange rate is, and complete the exchange using cash or traveler's checks.

## Unit 1 Target List

1. Wǒ xiǎng mǎi Yīngwén bào.

我想买英文报。

I would like to buy an English-language newspaper.

Hǎo. Jiù zài zhèlǐ.

好。就在这里。

Fine. They are right here.

2. Zhège bào duōshao qián?

这个报多少钱？

How much is this newspaper?

Zhège bào wǔkuài qián yīfèn.

这个报五块钱一份。

This newspaper is five dollars a copy.

3. Zhèlǐ yǒu Měiguó zázhi meiyǒu?

这里有美国杂志没有？

Are there any American magazines here?

Zhèlǐ méiyǒu Měiguó zázhi.

这里没有美国杂志。

There aren't any American magazines here.

4. Nǐmen zhèlǐ mài Měiguó shū bu mài?

你们这里卖美国书不卖？

Do you sell American books here?

Duìbuqǐ, Měiguó shū wǒmen bú mài.

对不起，美国书我们不卖。

I'm sorry, we don't sell American books.

5. Bào, zázhi, yìgòng duōshao qián?

报，杂志一共多少钱？

How much are the newspaper and magazine altogether?

Yìgòng sānshiwǔkuài qián.

一共三十五块钱。

Altogether, it's thirty-five dollars.

6. Zhè liǎngzhāng dìtú duōshao qián?

这两张地图多少钱？

How much are these two maps?

Sānshìèrkuài qián.

三十二块钱。

Thirty-two dollars.

7. Zhège duōshao qián? Sānshikuài qián yìběn.

这个多少钱？三十块钱一本。

How much is this one? Thirty dollars a copy.

Hǎo, wǒ mǎi yìběn.

好，我买一本。

Fine, I'll buy one.

*Additional required vocabulary (not presented on P-I and P-I tapes)*

8. yífèn (r) bàozhǐ

一份(儿)报纸

one newspaper

9. yìzhī bǐ

一支笔

one pen

10. yìzhāng zhǐ

一张纸

one piece of paper

11. yìběn zìdiǎn

一本字典

one dictionary

12. Hànyīng zìdiǎn

汉英词典

Chinese-English dictionary

13. Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn  
英汉词典  
English-Chinese dictionary

14. huàxué  
化学  
chemistry

15. shùxué  
数学  
mathematics

## Unit 2 Target List

1. Zhèige diǎnxin duōshao qián yìjīn?

这个小的点心多少钱一斤？

How much is this kind of pastry per catty?

Bā máo qián yìjīn.

八毛钱一斤。

Eighty cents a catty.

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ liǎngjīn.

请你给我两斤。

Please give me two catties.

2. Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme?

您还要点儿什么？

What else do you want?

Wǒ bú yào shénme le.

我不要什么了。

I don't want anything else.

3. Qìshuǐ duōshao qián yìpíng?

汽水多少钱一瓶？

How much per bottle is the soda?

Liǎng máo wǔ.

两毛五

Twenty-five cents.

4. Zhè shì sānkuài qián.

这是三块钱。

Here's 3 dollars.

Zhǎo nǐ liù máo wǔ fēn qián.

找你六毛五分钱。

Here's sixty-five cents change.

Xièxie. Zài jiàn.

谢谢。再见。

Thanks you. Good-bye.

5. Nèige dà píngguǒ duōshao qián?

那个大苹果多少钱？

How much are those large apples.

Dàde sì máo wǔ fēn qián yì jīn.

大的四毛五分钱一斤。

The large ones are forty-five cents a catty.

Qǐng gěi wǒ sān jīn nèige xiǎode.

请给我三斤那个小的

Please give me three catties of the small ones.

Hǎo. Sān jīn yí kuài líng wǔ.

好。三斤一块令五。

Certainly. Three catties are \$1.05.

6. júzi

橘子

oranges, tangerines

7. pǐjiǔ

啤酒

beer

8. yíkuài féizào

一块肥皂

one bar of soap

9. zuò mǎimai

做买卖

to do business

10. dàrén

大人

adult

11. xiǎoháizi



小孩子  
child

## Unit 3 Target List

1. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ kànkàn nèige huāpíng.

请你给我看看那个花瓶。

Please give me that vase to look at.

Nèige? Zhèige lánde háishi zhèige hóngde?

哪个？这个蓝的还是这个红的？

Which one? This blue one or this red one?

Nèi liǎngge dōu gěi wǒ kànkàn, hǎo ma?

那两个都给我看看，好吗？

Give me both of them to look at. All right?

2. Zhèi liǎngge xuésheng, nèige hǎo?

这两个学生，哪个好？

Which of these two students is better?

Sīmǎ Xìn hǎo.

司马信好。

Sīmǎ Xìn is better.

3. Nèige hóng huāpíng zhēn hǎokàn.

哪个红花瓶真好看。

That red vase is really beautiful.

Nín yǒu dà yìdiǎnrde ma?

您有大一点儿的吗？

Do you have one little larger?

Yǒu. Nǐ kàn zhèige zěnmeyàng?

有。你看这个怎么样？

We do. What do you think of this one?

Hěn hǎo. Hǎo, qǐng gěi wǒ liǎngge ba.

很好。好，请给我两个吧。

It's very nice. Okay, how about giving me two, please.

4. Nèige lánde tài guì le.

那个蓝得太贵了。

That blue one is too expensive.

Wǒ yào hóngde. Hóngde piányi.

我要红的. 红的便宜

I want the red one. The red one is cheaper.

5. bái

白

to be white

6. hēi

黑

to be black

7. huáng

黄

to be yellow, to be brown

8. lǜ

绿

to be to be green

9. jiù

旧

to be old, to be used, to be worn

10. xīn

新

to be new

11. gāo

高

to be tall

12. ǎi

矮

to be short (of stature)

13. gāoxìng

高兴

to be happy

14. nánkàn

难看

to be ugly

15. yībǎ yǔsǎn

一把雨伞

one umbrella

16. kàn

看

to read, to look at, to visit

## Unit 4 Target List

1. Wǒmen jiālìde dōngxi, yǒude dào le, yǒude hái méi dào.

我们家里的东西，有的到了，有的还没到。

Some of our household things have arrived, and some haven't arrived yet.

2. Tāmen màide pánziwǎn, yǒude zhēn hǎokàn.

他们卖的盘子碗，有的真好看。

Some of the dishes they sell are really beautiful.

Kěshi guì yídiǎn.

可是贵一点。

But they are a little expensive.

3. Wǒ mǎide nàxiē pánziwǎn dōu bú tài guì.

我买的那些盘子碗都不太贵。

All those dishes I bought were not too expensive.

Guìde wǒ méi mǎi.

贵的我没买。

I didn't buy the expensive ones.

4. Nín mǎi shénme le?

您买什么了？

What did you buy?

Wǒ mǎile shíge dà pánzi.

我买了十个大盘子。

I bought ten large plates.

5. Nǐde fǎnwǎn shì shénme yánsède?

你的饭碗是什么颜色的？

What color are your rice bowls?

Shì lánde.

是蓝的。

They're blue ones.

Wǒ yě xīhuān lánde.

我也喜欢蓝的。

I like blue ones too.

6. Nǐde zhège chábēi hěn hǎo. Shì zài shénme dìfang mǎide?

你的这个茶杯很好。是在什么地方买的？

This teacup of yours is very nice. Where was it bought?

Shì zài Dìyī Gōngsī mǎide.

是在第一公司买的。

It was bought at the First Company.

7. yíge bīngxiāng

一个冰箱

one refrigerator

8. yízhāng dìtǎn

一张地毯

one rug

9. yíge shūjiàzi

一个书架子

one bookcase

10. yíbǎ yǐzi

一把椅子

one chair

11. yízhāng zhuōzi

一张桌子

one table

## Unit 5 Target List

1. Máfán nǐ, wǒ zhèr yǒu yībǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhǐpiào.

那烦你，我这儿有一百块美金的旅行支票。

Sorry to bother you. I have one hundred U.S. dollars in traveler's checks here.

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ huànhuan.

请你给我换换。

Please change it for me.

2. Nǐ yào zěnmě huàn?

你要怎么换？

How do you want to change it?

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ liǎngzhāng wǔkuàide bā.

请你给我两张五块的把。

How about giving me two fives?

3. Nǐmen shōu Měijīn ma?

你们收美金吗？

Do you accept U.S. currency?

Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen bù shōu Měijīn.

对不起，我们不受美金。

I'm sorry. We don't accept U.S. currency.

4. Zhèr yǒu méiyǒu yínháng?

这儿有没有银行？

Is there a bank?

Yǒu. Yínháng jiù zài nàr.

有。银行在那儿。

There is. The bank is right over there.

5. Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài zhèr huàn qián?

请问，是不是在这儿换钱？

May I ask, is it here that I change money?

Shì, shì zài zhèr huàn.

是，是在这儿换。

Yes, you change here.

6. Jīntiānde páijià shì duōshao?

今天的牌价是多少？

What is today's exchange rate?

Jīntiānde páijià shì yíkuài Mèijīn huàn yíkuài jiǔmáo liù Rénmínbì.

今天的牌价是一块美金换一块九毛六人民币。

Today's exchange rate is one U.S. dollar to one dollar and ninety-six cents in People currency.

7. Xièxie.

谢谢。

Thank you.

8. Búkèqì.

不客气。

You are welcome.

9. yíge diànshàn

一个电扇

one electric fan

10. yíge diànshì

一个电视

one television

11. yíge shōuyīnjī

一个收音机

one radio

12. yíge zhōng

一个钟

one clock

13. yíge shǒubiǎo

一个手表

one wristwatch



## Unit 6 Target List

1. Nǐmen zhèlǐ kěyǐ huàn Měijīn ma?

你们这里可以换美金吗？

Can U.S. currency be changed here?

Duibuqǐ, bù kěyǐ. Nín děi zài Táiwān Yínháng huàn.

对不起，不可以。您得在台湾银行换。

I'm sorry, that's not possible. You must change it at the Bank of Taiwan.

Yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén, jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?

银行几点中开门，几点中关门？

What time does the bank open, and what time does it close?

Jiǔdiǎn zhōng kāi mén, sāndiǎn bàn guān mén.

九点中开门，三点半关门。

It opens at nine o'clock and close at three-thirty.

Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì.

我要换一点台币。

I want to change some money into Taiwan currency.

Hǎo. Yíkuài Měijīn huàn sānshíbākuài Táibì.

好。一块美金换三十八块台币。

Certainly. One U.S. dollar is thirty-eight dollars in Taiwan currency.

Qǐng nǐ děngyíděng. Wǒ jiù lái.

请你等一等。我就来。

Please wait a moment. I'll be right back.

Qǐng gěi wǒ diǎn xiǎo piàozi, xíng bu xíng?

请给我点小票子，行不行？

Please give me some small bills. Would that be all right?

Méi shenme.

没什么。

It's nothing.

zǎochēn (zǎochén)

早晨

early morning

zǎoshàng (zǎoshàng)

早上

morning

shàngwǔ (shàngwu)

上午

forenoon, morning

zhōngwǔ (zhōngwu)

中午

noon

xiàwǔ (xiàwu)

下午

afternoon

wǎnshàng (wǎnshàng)

晚上

evening

yèlǐ

夜里

night

bànyè

半夜

midnight

jiàn

见

to meet

mámahūhū

马马虎虎

so-so, fair

# Unit 1

## References

### Reference List

- A: Zhèli yǒu Yīngwén bào ma?  
这里有英文报吗?  
Are there any English-language newspapers here?

B: Yǒu. Jiù zài nàli.  
有。就在那里  
Yes. They're right over there.
- A: Zhèli yǒu Yīngwén bào meiyǒu?  
这里有英文报没有?  
Are there any English-language newspapers here?

B: Yǒu. Jiù zài nàli.  
有。就在那里。  
Yes. They're right there.
- A: Wǒ xiǎng mǎi Yīngwén bào.  
我想买英文报。  
I would like to buy English-language newspaper.

B: Hǎo. Jiù zài zhèli.  
好。就在那里。  
Fine. They're right here.
- A: Zhège duōshǎo qián?  
这个多少钱?  
How much is this one?

B: Wǔkuài qián.  
五块钱。  
Five dollars.
- A: Zhège Zhōngwén bào duōshǎo qián?  
这个中文报多少钱?  
How much is the Chinese-language newspaper?

B: Sānkuài qián yí fèn.  
三块钱一份。  
Three dollars a copy.
- A: Nǐmen zhèli mài Měiguó zázhi bu mài?

你们这里卖美国杂志不卖？

Do you sell American magazines here?

B: **Mài. Wǒmen zhèli mài.**

卖。我们这里卖。

Yes, we sell them here.

7. A: **Zhège duōshao qián?**

这个多少钱？

How much is this one?

B: **Sānshikuài qián yībēn.**

三十块钱一本。

Thirty dollars a copy.

A: **Hǎo, wǒ mǎi yībēn.**

好。我买一本。

Fine, I'll buy one.

8. A: **Nǐmen zhèli yǒu Měiguó shū meiyǒu?**

你们这里有美国书没有？

Do you have American books here?

B: **Duìbuqǐ, Měiguó shū wǒmen bú mài.**

对不起，美国书我们不卖。

I'm sorry, we don't sell American books here.

9. A: **Bào, zázhì, yíòng duōshao qián?**

报、杂志、一共多少钱？

How much are the newspaper, the magazine altogether?

B: **Bào wǔkuài, zázhì sānshikuài.**

报无怪；杂志三十块。

The newspaper is five dollars; the magazine is thirty dollars.

B: **Yíòng sānshiwǔkuài qián.**

一共三十五块钱。

Altogether, it's thirty-five dollars.

10. A: **Nǐmen zhèli mài dìtú bù mài?**

你们这里卖地图不卖？

Do you sell maps here?

B: **Mài. Zài nǎli.**

卖。在那里。

We do. They are other here.

11. A: **Nín xiǎng mǎi shénme dìtú?**

您想买什么地图？

What kind of map would you like to buy?

B: **Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìzhāng Táiběi dìtú.**

我想买一张台北地图。

I would like to buy a map of Taipei.

12. A: Zhèzhāng Táiběi dìtú duōshao qián?

这张台北地图多少钱？

How much is this map of Taipei?

B: Shíèrkuài qián.

十二块钱。

Twelve dollars.

## Vocabulary

yīfèn (r) bàozhǐ	一份(儿)报纸	one newspaper
yīzhī bǐ	一支笔	one pen
yīzhāng zhǐ	一张纸	one piece of paper
yīběn zìdiǎn	一本字典	one dictionary
Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn	汉-英字典	Chinese-English dictionary
Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn	英-汉字典	English-Chinese dictionary
huàxué	化学	chemistry
shùxué	数学	mathematics
bào (yīfèn)	报 (一份)	newspaper
bàozhǐ (yīfèn)	报纸 (一份)	newspaper
-běn	一本	volume
bǐ (yīzhī)	笔 (一支)	pen
dìtú (yīzhāng)	地图(一张)	map
duìbuqǐ	对不起	I'm sorry
duōshǎo	多少	how much, how many
-fèn (r)	一份(儿)	copy
jiù	就	right, exactly (with reference to space)
-kuài	一块	dollar (in context)
mǎi	买	to buy
mài	卖	to sell
qián	钱	money
shū (yīběn)	书 (一本)	book
xiǎng	想	to want to
xiǎngyixiǎng	想一想	to think it over
yīgòng	一共	altogether
zázhì (yīběn)	杂志(一本)	magazine
-zhāng	一张	(counter for flat things, tables, paper, pictures, etc ...)
zhǐ (yīzhāng)	纸(一张)	paper
-zhī	一支	(counter for straight, stick-like objects)
zìdiǎn (yīběn)	字典(一本)	dictionary

## Reference Notes

## Notes on № 1

1. A: Zhèli yǒu Yīngwén bào ma?  
 这里有英文报吗?  
 Are there any English-language newspapers here?
- B: Yǒu. Jiù zài nàli.  
 有。就在那里  
 Yes. They're right over there.

**Zhèli yǒu:** The Chinese verb **yǒu** sometimes means “to have” and sometimes means “to be” in the sense of “to exist”. In exchange 1, **yǒu** has the latter meaning. With this meaning, it often translates into English as “there is/are.”

**Topic-comment sentences:** The subject of a Chinese sentence need not be the person who performs an action or experiences a state. Often, the relation ship between the subject and the rest of the sentence is looser and can be analyzed as topic-comment.

A topic is a word or phrase at the beginning of a sentence which sets the scene for the rest of the sentence. The topic is a starting point for understanding a sentence, giving background information and establishing the perspective for listeners. For this reason, time and place phrases are often used as topics.

Zhèli	yǒu	Yīngwén bào.
这里	有	月恩温饱。
Here	there are	English-language newspapers.

A comment is the rest of the sentence which follows the topic. Here are some examples:

	Bǐ, tā yǒu; zhǐ, tā méiyǒu . 笔, 他有; 纸, 他没有。	He has a pen; he doesn't have paper. (literally, “Pen he has; paper he doesn't”)
A:	Nǐ shì nǎr? 你是哪儿?	Where are you calling from?
B:	Wǒ shì Táiwān Dàxué. 我是台湾大学。	Taiwan University
	Zhèzhāng dìtú mài shíkuài qián. 这张地图卖是块钱。	As for this map, they sell it for ten dollars.

Clearly, the last two examples are meaningful only when the relationship between the initial nouns/pronouns and verbs is understood to be one of topic-comment, not the usual subject-predicate relation of actor-action.

While there is no single rule that tells you when to use topic-comment sentences in Chinese, some helpful generalizations can be made. These generalizations will be discussed as example-sentences appear in the Reference lists.

Jiù zài nàlǐ, “They are right over here”: You have learned *jiù* as “only,” a synonym of *zhǐ*. In exchange 1, you see another use of *jiù*: “right,” “exactly,” “precisely.” This word is often used to describe “right” where something is, and is followed by *zài*, “in/on.”

## Notes on № 2

2. A: Zhèlǐ yǒu Yīngwén bào meiyǒu?  
 这里有英文报没有？  
 Are there any English-language newspapers here?
- B: Yǒu. Jiù zài nàlǐ.  
 有。就在那里。  
 Yes. They're right there.

**Yǒu...méiyǒu:** The first sentence in exchange 2 is a yes/no-choice question. This type of question is formed “by explicitly offering the listener a choice between an affirmative and a negative answer. The negative alternative is tacked onto the end of the sentence. Similar questions exist in English. But the English question would be an impatient one, while the Chinese question is an ordinary one:

Zhèlǐ yǒu Yīngwén bào méiyǒu?

**Are there** any English-language newspaper here, or **aren't there**?

**Neutral tones:** Whether or not a syllable is pronounced in the Neutral tone often depends on the speed of speech and the mood the speaker is trying to convey. In informal conversation between native speakers, there are many more Neutral tones than in the more careful, deliberate speech of a language teacher speaking to foreign student. (Bear this point in mind when you find a discrepancy between the textbook marking of a word and the pronunciation of that word on tape.)

Most syllables in any stretch of spoken Chinese are neither completely “Neutral”(i. e., with no audible change in pitch for the duration of the syllable) nor completely “full” in length and amplitude. These syllables will usually be somewhere in between the two extremes.

Zhèlǐ yǒu Yīngwén bào meiyǒu? Are there any English-language newspapers here?

Zhèlǐ yǒu Yīngwén bào méiyǒu?

Often a syllable will not Bound like a full tone. But if you ask “Then is this syllable in the Neutral tone?” the answer will be “No, not exactly.” There is no distinct dividing line between a syllable with a tone and a syllable in the Neutral tone. Very often, the most helpful answer to the question “Should this be pronounced in the Neutral tone?” is “Pronounce it the way you hear it.” The language is taught in terms of four tones, but your ears hear more.



## Notes on № 3

3. A: Wǒ xiǎng mǎi Yīngwén bào.  
 我想买英文报。  
 I would like to buy English-language newspaper.
- B: Hǎo. Jiù zài zhèlǐ.



好。就在那里。

Fine. They're right here.

The auxiliary verb **xiǎng** is sometimes translated as “would like to” or “to want to.” Here are some examples of translations you have learned for **xiǎng**:

Wǒ xiǎng mǎi Yīngwén bào. 我想买英文报。	I'm thinking of buying an English-language newspaper.  OR  I would like to buy an English-language newspaper.  OR  I want to buy an English-language newspaper.
Wǒ xiǎng tā xiǎng míngtiān zǒu. 我想他想明天走。	I think he is planning to leave tomorrow.
Wǒ hěn xiǎng niàn shú. 我很想念书。	I very much want to study.
Wǒ bú tài xiǎng qù. 我不太想去。	I don't want to go very much. (“tài” meaning “too,” “excessively,” appears in Unit 3)

#### Notes on № 4

4. A: Zhège duōshao qián?

这个多少钱？

How much is this one?

B: Wǔkuài qián.

五块钱。

Five dollars.

**Zhège duōshao qián?** In Chinese sentences that ask for and give prices, the word **shì** is usually omitted.

**Shì** reappears, however, in negative and contrastive sentences: **Zhège bú shì sikuài qián, shì wǔkuài qián.** “This (item) isn't four dollars; it's five dollars.”

**Wǔkuài qián** literally means “five dollars money.” The counter **-kuài**, “dollars,” indicates the units of the general class “money” that are being counted (i.e., dollars as opposed to cents.)

#### Notes on № 5

5. A: Zhège Zhōngwén bào duōshao qián?

这个中文报多少钱？

How much is the Chinese-language newspaper?

B: Sānkuài qián yí fēn.

三块钱一份。

Three dollars a copy.

Notice in the sentence *Zhège Zhōngwén bào duōshao qián?* that the general counter *-ge* is used rather than the specific counter *-fèn*, “copy.” The counter *-ge* is often used in talking about the **KIND** of thing. In this case the question is about the price of ea newspaper as a publication, not about the price of a copy. The specific counter would be used to talk about a particular concrete object, as in a sentence like: “This copy of the China Post is torn.”

*Yìfèn*: In Chinese, when you talk about the unit price of an item, the unit is a counter. Notice that *yìfèn* comes at the end of the sentence, just as “copy” does in English.

### Notes on № 6

6. A: *Nǐmen zhèli mài Měiguó zázhi bu mài?*

你们这里卖美国书不卖？

Do you sell American magazines here?

B: *Mài. Wǒmen zhèli mài.*

卖。我们这里卖。

Yes, we sell them here.

*Mài*, “to sell,” differs from the word *mǎi*, “to buy,” only in its tone.

*Nǐmen zhèli*, “your place here,” literally, “you here”: Use *Nǐmen zhèli* when talking to someone who represents a stores a bank, or other institutions. By putting *zhèli* (*zhèr*), “here,” or *nàli* (*nàr*), “there,” after a person's name or a pronoun, you make a phrase referring to a place associated with the person. For example, *nǐ nàli* means “over there where you are now,” and *wǒ zhèli* means “here where I am now.” Use these phrases when you want to express the idea of an item being close to a person (not necessarily ownership).

*Nǐ nàli yǒu bǐ méiyǒu?* Do you have a pen over there? (i.e., Is there a pen over there where you are?)

This kind of phrase is also used to mean a person's home: *nǐ nàli*, “your place” (used when the speaker is not at “your house”); *wǒ zhèli*: “my place” (used when the speaker is at home.)

A: *Chén xiǎojiě zài nàli?* Where is Miss *Chén*?

B: *Tā zài Liú tàitai nàli* She is at Mrs. *Liú* house.

*Nǐmen zhèli mài Měiguó zázhi bu mài?* In this sentence, *Nǐmen zhèli* is used as a topic. Literally, the sentence means: “As for your place here, are American magazines sold?”

### Notes on № 7

7. A: *Zhège duōshao qián?*

这个多少钱？

How much is this one?

B: *Sānshikuài qián yīběn.*

三十块钱一本。

Thirty dollars a copy.

A: Hǎo, wǒ mǎi yīběn.  
好。我买一本。  
Fine, I'll buy one.

The counter **běn**, “volume”, “copy,” is used for both books and magazines.

### Notes on № 8

8. A: Nǐmen zhèlǐ yǒu Měiguó shū meiyǒu?  
你们这里有美国书没有？  
Do you have American books here?  
B: Duìbuqǐ, Měiguó shū wǒmen bú mài.  
对不起，美国书我们不卖。  
I'm sorry, we don't sell American books here.

**Duìbuqǐ**, literally means “unable to face (you).” This word is used to say “I’m sorry” when you bump into a person, arrive late, and so on. It is not the word for “I’m sorry” when you sympathize with someone else's misfortune (e.g., when a relative dies.)

**Měiguó shū wǒmen bú mài.**: In this sentence, **Měiguó shū**, the object of the verb **mài**, occurs at the beginning, in topic position. Here the order of the sentence element is : topic - subject - verb. Some speakers of English use the same word order. Compare:

Měiguó shū	wǒmen	bú mài.
美国书	我们	不买。
American books	we	don't sell.

Notice that **bú mài** is not the ending of a yes/no-choice question. The phrase keeps its tones in this sentence.

### Notes on № 9

9. A: Bào, zázhì, yìgòng duōshǎo qián?  
报、杂志、一共多少钱？  
How much are the newspaper, the magazine altogether?  
B: Bào wǔkuài, zázhì sānshikuài.  
报无怪、杂志三十块。  
The newspaper is five dollars; the magazine is thirty dollars.  
B: Yìgòng sānshiwǔkuài qián.  
一共三十五块钱。  
Altogether, it's thirty-five dollars.

**Yìgòng**, “altogether,”: In totaling something up, the items being totaled begin the sentence, in topic position, and are followed by the adverb **Yìgòng**.

In many situations you will hear prices given without the word **qián**.

## Notes on № 10-11

10. A: *Nǐmen zhèlǐ mài dìtú bù mài?*  
你们这里卖地图不卖?  
Do you sell maps here?
- B: *Mài. Zài nàlǐ.*  
卖。在那里。  
We do. They are other here.
11. A: *Nín xiǎng mǎi shénme dìtú?*  
您想买什么地图?  
What kind of map would you like to buy?
- B: *Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yìzhāng Táiběi dìtú.*  
我想买一张台北地图。  
I would like to buy a map of Taipei.

*shénme dìtú* literally means “what map.” In exchange 11, this phrase is used to mean “what kind of map.”

*yìzhāng*: the counter *-zhāng* is used for flat objects. Literally, *yìzhāng Táiběi dìtú* means “one sheet Taipei map.” In exchange 11, the phrase is translated as “a map of Taipei.”

## Notes on № 12

12. A: *Zhèzhāng Táiběi dìtú duōshǎo qián?*  
这张台北地图多少钱?  
How much is this map of Taipei?
- B: *Shíèrkuài qián.*  
十二块钱。  
Twelve dollars.

*Zhèzhāng dìtú*: compare the two phrases which follow.

<i>zhè</i>		<i>-zhāng</i>	<i>dìtú</i>	this map
这		张	地图	
<i>zhè</i>	<i>liǎng</i>	<i>-zhāng</i>	<i>dìtú</i>	these two maps
这	两	张	地图	

In the first phrase, the counter *-zhāng* does not have a number in front of it. In effect, the number 1 was dropped after the specifier *zhè*. Notice that when a specifier and a number occur together in Chinese, the word order is just like English: *Zhè liǎngzhāng dìtú*, “these two maps.”

13.	<i>yífèn (r) bàozhǐ</i>	一份(儿)报纸	one newspaper
14.	<i>yìzhī bǐ</i>	一支笔	one pen

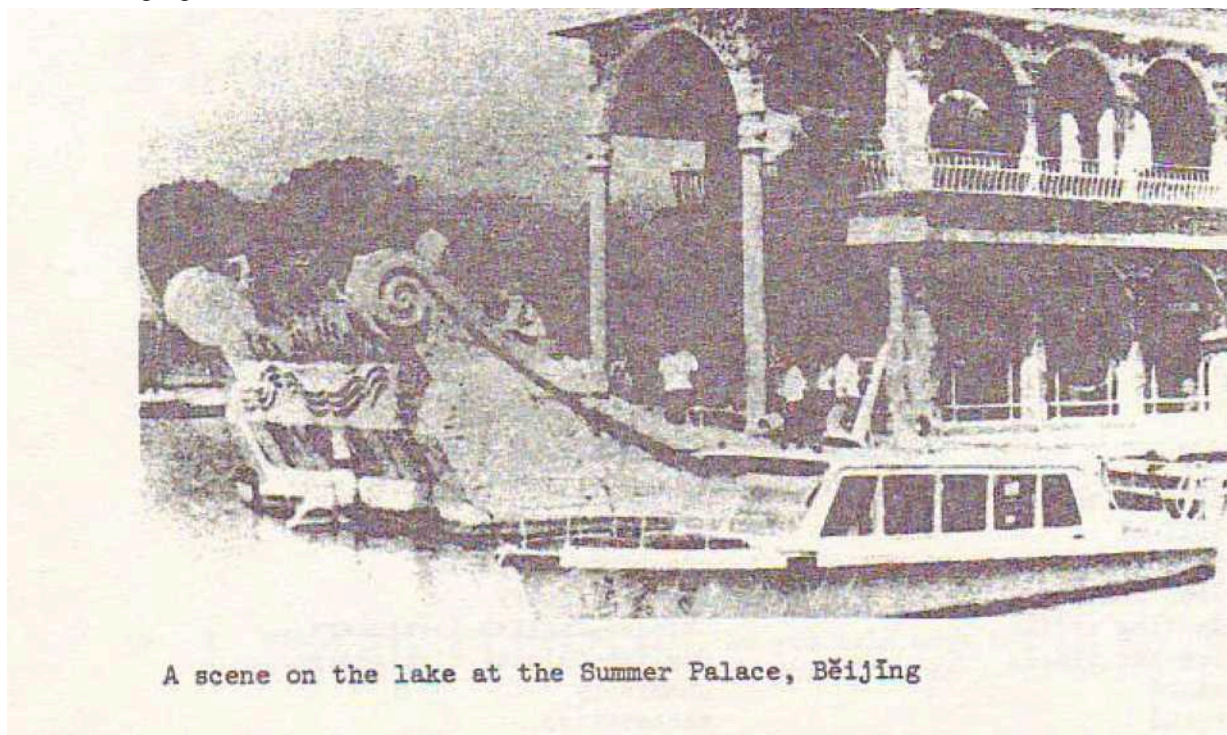
15.	yìzhāng zhǐ	一张纸	one piece of paper
16.	yìběn zìdiǎn	一本字典	one dictionary
17.	Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn	汉英字典	Chinese-English dictionary
18.	Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn	英汉字典	English-Chinese dictionary
19.	huàxué	化学	chemistry
20.	shùxué	数学	mathematics

### Notes on additional required vocabulary:

bàoziǐ and bào, two words for “newspaper,” are interchangeable.

Yìzhī bǐ: The counter for pens, -zhī, is the counter for straight, stick-like objects.

Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn, Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn: The word for “Chinese” in these expressions comes from the Han Dynasty (206 B.C. to A.D. 219.) Hàn is often used in titles to refer to the Chinese people and their language.



A scene on the lake at the Summer Palace, Běijīng

## Drills

### Transformation drill

Transform the question according to the model.

1. Zhèlì yǒu Yīngwén bào ma?

这里有英文报吗？

Do you have any English-language news-paper here?

Zhèlì yǒu Yīngwén bào meiyǒu ?

这里有英文报没有？

Do you have any English-language news-paper here (or not)?

2. Zhèlì yǒu Zhōngwén bào ma?

这里有中文报吗？

Do you have any Chinese-language news-paper here?

Zhèlì yǒu Zhōngguó bào meiyǒu?

这里有中文报没有？

Do you have any Chinese-language news-paper here (or not)?

3. Zhèlì yǒu Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn ma?

这里有英汉字典吗？

Do you have any Chinese-English dictionary here?

Zhèlì yǒu Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn meiyǒu?

这里有中文报没有？

Do you have any Chinese-English dictionary here (or not)?

4. Zhèlì yǒu Měiguó shū ma?

这里有中文书吗？

Do you have any English-language book here?

Zhèlì yǒu Měiguó shū meiyǒu?

这里有中文报没有？

Do you have any English-language book here (or not)?

5. Nàlì yǒu Zhōngwén zázhi ma?

那里有中文杂志吗？

Do you have any Chinese-language magazine here?

Nàli yǒu Zhōngwén zázhi meiyou?

这里有中文报没有？

Do you have any Chinese-language magazine here (or not)?

6. Nàli yǒu Zhōngguó dìtú ma?

那里有中国地图吗？

Do you have a map of China here?

Nàli yǒu Zhōngguó dìtú meiyou?

这里有中文报没有？

Do you have a map of China here (or not)?

7. Nàli yǒu Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn ma?

那里有英汉字典吗？

Do you have any English-Chinese dictionary here?

Nàli yǒu Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn meiyou?

这里有中文报没有？

Do you have any English-Chinese dictionary here (or not)?

## Transformation drill

Transform the statement according to the model.

1. Yīngwén bào zài wǒ zhèlǐ.

英文报在我这里。

The English-language newspaper is over here by me.

Wǒ zhèlǐ yǒu Yīngwén bào.

我这里有听闻报。

Over here by me is an English-language newspaper.

2. Zhōngguó dìtú zài nǐmen zhèlǐ ma?

中国地图在你们这里吗？

Do you have a map of China here?

Nǐmen zhèlǐ yǒu Zhōngguó dìtú ma?

你们这里有中国地图吗？

Do you have maps of China here?

3. Měiguó zázhì zài zhèlǐ.

美国杂志在这里。

The American magazines are over here.

Zhèlǐ yǒu Měiguó zázhì.

这里有美国杂志。

Over here are the American magazines.

4. Hàn-yīng zìdiǎn zài nàlǐ.

汉英字典在那里。

The Chinese-English dictionary is over there.

Nàlǐ yǒu Hàn-yīng zìdiǎn.

那里有汉英字典。

Over there are the Chinese-English dictionaries.

5. Zhōngwén bào zài zhèlǐ.

中文报在这里。

The Chinese newspapers are over here.



Zhèlì yǒu Zhōngwén bào.

这里有中文报。

Over here are the Chinese newspapers.

6. Zhōngwén zìdiǎn zài tā nàlǐ.

中文字典在他那里。

The Chinese dictionaries are over there by him.

Tā nàlǐ yǒu Zhōngwén zìdiǎn.

他那里有中文字典。

Over there by him are the Chinese dictionaries

7. Zhōngguó lìshǐ shū zài wǒmen zhèlǐ.

中国历史书在我们这里。

The Chinese history books are over here by us.

Wǒmen zhèlì yǒu Zhōngguó lìshǐ shū.

我们这里有中国历史书。

Over here by us are the history books.

## Response drill

Answer the questions according to the cue.

1. Zheige duoshao qian?

这个多少钱？

How much is this?

Cue \$5

Zheige wukuai qian.

这个五块钱。

This is five dollars.

2. Nèige duoshao qian?

那个多少钱？

How much is that?

Cue \$2

Nèige liǎngkuài qian.

那个两块钱。

That is 2 dollars.

3. Zhèběn duoshao qian?

这本多少钱？

How much is this book?

Cue \$40

Zhèběn sìshikuàiqián.

这本四十块钱。

This is 40 dollars a volume.

4. Nèizhāng duoshao qian?

那张多少钱？

How much is that copy?

Cue \$7

Neizhāng qikuài qian.

呢张七块钱。

That is 7 dollars a copy.

5. Zhèifèn duōshao qián?

这份多少钱？

How much is this copy?

Cue \$12

Zhèifèn shíèrkuài qián.

这份十二块钱。

This is 12 dollars a copy.

6. Nèiběn duōshao qián?

那本多少钱？

How much is that volume?

Cue \$20

Nèiběn èrshikuài qián.

那本而是块钱。

That is 20 dollars a volume.

7. Zhèifèn duōshao qián?

这份多少钱？

How much is this copy?

Cue \$4

Zhèifèn sikuài qián.

这份四块钱。

This is 4 dollars a copy.

## Transformation drill

Transform the question using the appropriate measure word.

1. Zhèige zidiǎn duōshao qián?

这个字典多少钱？

How much is this (kind of) dictionary?

Zhèiběn zidiǎn duōshao qián?

这本字典多少钱？

How much is this dictionary?

2. Nèige dìtú duōshao qián?

那个地图多少钱？

How much is that (kind of) magazine?

Zhèiběn zázhi duōshao qián?

这本杂志多少钱？

How much is this magazine?

4. Nèige bào duōshao qián?

那个报多少钱？

How much is that (kind of) newspaper?

Nèifèn bào duōshao qián?

那份报多少钱？

How much is that newspaper?

5. Zhèige lìshǐ shū duōshao qián?

这个历史书多少钱？

How much is this (kind of) history book?

Zhèiběn lìshǐ shū duōshao qián?

这本历史书多少钱？

How much is this history book?

6. Nèige Yīngwén bào duōshao qián?

那个英文报多少钱？

How much is that (kind of) English newspaper?

Nèifèn bào duōshao qián?

那份报多少钱？

How much is that newspaper?

7. Zhèige Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn duōshao qián?

这个汉英字典多少钱？

How much is this (kind of) Chinese-English dictionary?

Zhèiběn Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn duōshao qián?

这本汉英字典多少钱？

How much is this Chinese-English dictionary?

## Transformation drill

Transform the question using the appropriate measure word.

1. Bào duōshao qián?

报多少钱？

How much is this news-paper?

Cue

fèn

分

copy

Yí fèn bào duōshao qián?

一分报多少钱？

How much is one news-paper?

2. Zìdiǎn duōshao qián?

字典多少钱？

How much is this dictionary?

Cue

běn

本

volume

Yìběn zìdiǎn duōshao qián?

一本字典多少钱？

How much is one volume?

3. Dìtú duōshao qián?

地图多少钱？

How much is this map?

Cue

zhāng

张

sheet

Yìzhāng dìtú duōshao qián?

一张地图多少钱？

How much is one piece?

4. Zázhi duōshao qián?  
杂志多少钱?  
How much is this magazine?

Cue bēn  
本  
volume

Yībēn zázhi duōshao qián?  
一本杂志多少钱?  
How much is one copy?

5. Zhōngguó dìtú duōshao qián?  
中国地图多少钱?  
How much is this map of China?

Cue zhāng  
张  
sheet

Yìzhāng dìtú duōshao qián?  
一张地图多少钱?  
How much is one copy?

6. Shū liùkuài qián.  
书六块钱。  
This book is 6 dollars.

Cue bēn  
本  
volume

Yībēn shū liùkuài qián.  
一本书六块钱。  
One volume is 6 dollars.

7. Yīng-Hàn zidiǎn bākuài qián.  
英汉字典八块钱。  
This Chinese-English dictionary is 8 dollars.

Cue

běn

本

volume

Yīběn Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn bākuài qián.

一本英汉字典八块钱。

One volume is 8 dollars.



## Response drill

Answers the questions according to the cue.

1. Tā xiǎng mǎi dìtú ma?  
他/她想买地图吗?  
Is he thinking of buying maps?

Cue 3

Dui le, tā xiǎng mǎi sānzhāng dìtú.  
对了, 他/她想买三张地图。  
Right; he is thinking of buying 3 maps.

2. Tā xiǎng mǎi shū ma?  
他/她想买书吗?  
Is he thinking of buying books?

Cue 1

Dui le, tā xiǎng mǎi yìběn shū.  
对了, 他/她想买一本书。  
Right; he is thinking of buying one book.

3. Tā xiǎng mǎi zìdiǎn ma?  
他/她想买字典吗?  
Is he thinking of buying dictionaries?

Cue 2

Dui le, tā xiǎng mǎi liǎngběn zìdiǎn.  
对了, 他/她想买两本字典。  
Right; he is thinking of buying 2 dictionaries.

4. Tā xiǎng mǎi Zhōngwén bào ma?  
他/她想买中文报吗?  
Is he thinking of buying Chinese newspapers?

Cue 1

Dui le, tā xiǎng mǎi yí fèn Zhōngwén bào.

对了，他/她想买一份中文报。

Right; he is thinking of buying one Chinese newspaper.

5. Tā xiǎng mǎi Měiguó zázhi ma?

他/她想买美国杂志吗？

Is he thinking of buying American magazines?

Cue 1

Dui le, tā xiǎng mǎi yiběn Měiguó zázhi.

对了，他/她想买一本美国杂志。

Right; he is thinking of buying one American magazine.

6. Tā xiǎng mǎi Jīngjixué ma?

他/她想买经济学吗？

Is he thinking of buying economics?

Cue 4

Dui le, tā xiǎng mǎi sìběn Jīngjixué.

对了，他/她想买四本经济学。

Right; he is thinking of buying 4 economics.

7. Tā xiǎng mǎi Zhèngzhixué ma?

他/她想买政治学吗？

Is he thinking of buying political science?

Cue 2

Dui le, tā xiǎng mǎi liǎngběn Zhèngzhixué.

对了，他/她想买两本政治学。

Right; he is thinking of buying 2 political sciences.

## Response drill

Answer the questions according to the cue.

1. Zhège bào sānkuài qián.

这个报三块钱。

This newspaper is 3 dollars.

Cue 1

Hǎo, wǒ mǎi yí fèn.

好，我买一份。

Fine; I'll buy a copy.

2. Zhège zìdiǎn qīkuài qián.

这个字典七块钱。

This dictionary is 7 dollars.

Cue 2

Hǎo, wǒ mǎi liǎng běn.

好，我买两本。

Fine; I'll buy 2 copies.

3. Nàge zázhì sānshíkuài qián.

那个杂志三十块钱。

That magazine is 30 dollars.

Cue 1

Hǎo, wǒ mǎi yí běn.

好，我买一本。

Fine; I'll buy one copy.

4. Zhège Yīngwén bào wǔkuài qián.

这个英文报五块钱。

This English newspaper is 5 dollars.

Cue 1

Hǎo, wǒ mǎi yí fèn.

好，我买一份。

Fine; I'll buy one copy.

5. *Nàge dìtú shíèrkuài qián.*

那个地图十二块钱。

That map is 12 dollars.

Cue 3

*Hǎo, wǒ mǎi sānzhāng.*

好，我买三张。

Fine; I'll buy 3 copies.

6. *Nàge Hànyīng zìdiǎn wǔshikuài qián.*

那个汉英字典五十块钱。

That Chinese-English dictionary is 50 dollars.

Cue 2

*Hǎo, wǒ mǎi liǎngběn.*

好，我买两本。

Fine; I'll buy 2 copies.

7. *Zhège Táiběi dìtú shíwǔkuàiqián.*

这个台北地图十五块钱。

This map of Taipei is 15 dollars.

Cue 1

*Hǎo, wǒ mǎi yīzhāng.*

好，我买一张。

Fine; I'll buy one copy.

## Transformation drill

Transform the statement using the appropriate measure word.

1. Zhèifèn bào duōshao qián?

这份报多少钱？

How much is this newspaper?

Zhèige bào duōshao qián yīfèn?

这个报多少钱一份？

How much is this newspaper per copy?

2. Zhèiběn zidiǎn wǔshikuài qián.

这本字典五十块钱。

This dictionary is 50 dollars.

Zhèige zidiǎn wǔshikuài qián yīběn.

这个字典五十块钱一本。

This dictionary is 50 dollars a copy.

3. Zhèizhāng dìtú duōshao qián?

这张地图多少钱？

How much is this map?

Zhèige dìtú duōshao qián yīzhāng?

这个地图多少钱一张？

How much is this map per copy?

4. Zhèiběn Měiguó shū wǔkuài qián.

这本美国书五块钱。

This book is 5 dollars.

Zhèige Měiguó shū wǔkuài qián yīběn.

这个美国书五块钱一本。

This American book is 5 dollars a copy.

5. Zhèifèn Yīngwén bào duōshao qián?

这份英文报多少钱？

How much is English newspaper?

Zhèige Yīngwén bào duōshao qián yí fèn?

这个英文报多少钱一份？

How much is this English newspaper?

6. Zhèiběn zázhi liǎngkuài qián.

这本杂志两块钱。

This magazine is 2 dollars.

Zhèige zázhi liǎngkuài qián yí běn.

这个杂志两块钱一本。

This magazine is 2 dollars a copy.

7. Zhèiběn Hàn-Yīng zidiǎn duōshao qián?

这本汉英字典多少钱？

How much is this Chinese-English dictionary?

Zhèige Hàn-Yīng zidiǎn duōshao qián yí běn?

这个汉英字典多少钱一本？

How much is this Chinese-English dictionary per copy?

## Response drill

Answer the questions according to the cue.

1. Zhègè zázhi duōshao qián?

这个杂志多少钱？

How much is this magazine ?

Cue \$30

Zhègè zázhi sānshikuài qián yīběn.

这个杂志三十块钱一本。

Thirty dollars a copy.

2. Nàgè Táiběi dìtú duōshao qián?

那个台北地图多少钱？

How much is this map of Taipei?

Cue \$12

Nàgè Táiběi dìtú shíèrkuài qián yìzhāng.

那个台北地图十二块前一张。

Twelve dollars a piece.

3. Zhègè Zhōngwén bào duōshao qián?

这个中文报多少钱？

How much is this Chinese newspaper?

Cue \$3

Zhègè Zhōngwén bào sānkuài qián yífèn.

这个中文报三块钱一份。

Three dollars a copy.

4. Nàgè Měiguó zázhi duōshao qián?

那个美国杂志多少钱？

How much is this American magazine?

Cue \$30

Nàgè Měiguó zázhi sānshikuài qián yīběn.

那个美国杂志三十块钱一本。

Thirty dollars a copy.

5. Zhège Yīngwén bào duōshao qián?

这个英文报多少钱？

How much is this English newspaper?

Cue \$5

Zhège Yīngwén bào wǔkuài qián yīfèn.

这个英文报五块钱一份。

Five dollars a copy.

6. Nàge Hànyīng zìdiǎn duōshao qián?

那个汉英字典多少钱？

How much is this Chinese-English dictionary?

Cue \$42

Nàge Hànyīng zìdiǎn sìshìèrkuài qián yīběn.

那个汉英字典四十二块钱一本。

Forty two dollars a copy.

7. Zhège Táiwān dìtú duōshao qián?

这个台湾地图多少钱？

How much is this map of Taiwan?

Cue \$10

Zhège dìtú shíkuài qián yīzhāng.

这个地图十块钱一张。

Ten dollars a copy.



## Transformation drill

Transform the statement using **meiyou?**.

2. Nǐmen zhèlǐ yǒu Zhōngwén zázhì ma?  
你们这里有中文杂志吗？  
Do you have English-language newspaper here?

Nǐmen zhèlǐ yǒu Zhōngwén zázhì meiyou?  
你们这里有中文杂志没有？  
Do you have English-language newspapers here?

3. Nǐmen zhèlǐ mài Táiběi dìtú ma?  
你们这里买台北地图吗？  
Do you sell maps of Táiběi here?

Nǐmen zhèlǐ mài Táiběi dìtú bu mài?  
你们这里买台北地图不买？  
Do you sell maps of Táiběi here?

4. Nǐmen zhèlǐ yǒu Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn ma?  
你们这里汉英字典吗？  
Do you have Chinese-English dictionaries?

Nǐmen zhèlǐ yǒu Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn meiyou?  
你们这里有汉英字典没有？  
Do you have Chinese-English dictionaries here?

5. Nǐmen zhèlǐ mài Zhōngwén bào ma?  
你们这里买中文报吗？  
Do you sell Chinese newspapers?

Nǐmen zhèlǐ mài Zhōngwén bào bu mài?  
你们这里买中文报不买？  
Do you sell Chinese newspapers here?

6. Nǐmen zhèlǐ yǒu Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn ma?  
你们这里有英汉字典吗？  
Do you have English-Chinese dictionaries?

Nǐmen zhèlǐ yǒu Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn meiyou.

你们这里有英汉字典没有？

Do you have English-Chinese dictionaries here?

7. Nǐmen zhèlǐ mǎi Zhōngwén bào ma?

你们这里买中文报吗？

Do you sell Chinese newspapers?

Nǐmen zhèlǐ mǎi Zhōngwén bào bu mai?

你们这里买中文报不买？

Do you sell Chinese newspapers here?

## Response drill

Answer the questions according to the cue.

1. Nǐmen zhèlǐ yǒu Měiguó shū meiyǒu?  
你们这里有美国书没有？  
Do you have American books here?

Cue méiyǒu  
没有  
no

Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen méiyǒu.  
对不起，我们没有。  
I'm sorry, we don't.

2. Nǐmen zhèlǐ yǒu Zhōngguó dìtú meiyǒu?  
你们这里有中国地图没有？  
Do you have a map of America?

Cue yǒu  
有  
yes

Yǒu, zài nàlǐ.  
有，在那里。  
Yes, there.

3. Nǐmen zhèlǐ yǒu Zhōngguó lìshǐ meiyǒu?  
你们这里有中国历史没有？  
Do you have Chinese history?

Cue méiyǒu  
没有  
no

Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen méiyǒu.  
对不起，我们没有。  
I'm sorry, we don't.

3. Nǐmen zhèlǐ yǒu Zhōngwén bào meiyǒu?

你们这里有中文报没有？

Do you have Chinese newspapers?

Cue yǒu  
有  
yes

Yǒu, zài nàlǐ.

有，在那里。

Yes, there.

4. Nǐmen zhèlǐ yǒu Měiguó zázhì meiyǒu?

你们这里有美国杂志没有？

Do you have American magazines?

Cue méiyǒu  
没有  
no

Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen méiyǒu.

对不起，我们没有。

I'm sorry, we don't.

5. Nǐmen zhèlǐ yǒu Yīngwén shū meiyǒu?

你们这里有英文书没有？

Do you have English books?

Cue yǒu  
有  
yes

Yǒu zài nàlǐ.

有，在那里。

Yes, there.

## Transformation drill

Transform the statement according to the model.

1. Bào duōshao qián?

报多少钱？

How much is this newspaper?

Cue

zázhì

杂志

magazine

Bào, zázhì yìgòng duōshao qián?

报，杂志一共多少钱？

How much are the newspaper and the magazine altogether?

2. Dìtú duōshao qián?

地图多少钱？

How much is this map?

Cue

zìdiǎn

字典

dictionary

Dìtú, zìdiǎn yìgòng duōshao qián?

地图，字典一共多少钱？

How much are the map and the dictionary altogether?

3. Zázhì duōshao qián?

杂志多少钱？

How much is this magazine?

Cue

bào

报

newspaper

Zázhì, bào yìgòng duōshao qián?

杂志，报一共多少钱？

How much are the magazine and the newspaper altogether?

4. Zìdiǎn duōshǎo qián?

字典多少钱？

How much is this dictionary?

Cue

dìtú

地图

map

Zìdiǎn, dìtú yìgòng duōshǎo qián?

字典，地图一共多少钱？

How much are the dictionary and the map altogether?

5. Bào duōshǎo qián?

报多少钱？

How much is this newspaper?

Cue

zázhì

杂志

magazine

Bào, zázhì yìgòng duōshǎo qián?

报，杂志一共多少钱？

How much are the newspaper and the dictionary altogether?

6. Dìtú duōshǎo qián?

地图多少钱？

How much is this map?

Cue

zìdiǎn

字典

dictionary

Dìtú, zìdiǎn yìgòng duōshǎo qián?

地图，字典一共多少钱？

How much are the map and the dictionary altogether?

7. Zázhì duōshǎo qián?

杂志多少钱？

How much is magazine?

Cue

bào

报

newspaper

Zázhì, bào yìgòng duōshao qián?

杂志，报一共多少钱？

How much are the magazine and the newspaper altogether?

## Response drill

Answer the questions according to the cue.

1. Tā xiǎng mǎi shénme dìtú?

他/她想买什么地图？

What kind of map is he/she thinking of buying?

Cue

Táiběi

台北

Taipei

Tā xiǎng mǎi yìzhāng Táiběi dìtú.

他/她想买一张台北地图。

he/she is thinking of buying a map of Taipei.

2. Tā xiǎng mǎi shénme zìdiǎn?

他/她想买什么字典？

What kind of dictionary is he/she thinking of buying?

Cue

Hàn-Yīng

汉英

Chinese-English

Tā xiǎng mǎi yìběn Hān-Yīng zìdiǎn.

他/她想买一本汉英字典。

he/she is thinking of buying a Chinese-English dictionary.

3. Tā xiǎng mǎi shénme bào?

他/她想买什么报？

What kind of newspaper is he/she thinking of buying?

Cue

Zhōngwén

中文

Chinese

Tā xiǎng mǎi yí fèn Zhōngwén bào.

他/她想买一份中文报。

he/she is thinking of buying an Chinese (language) newspaper.



4. Tā xiǎng mǎi shénme shū?  
他/她想买什么书?  
What kind of book is he/she thinking of buying?

Cue Měiguó  
美国  
American

Tā xiǎng mǎi Yīběn Měiguó shū.  
他/她想买一本美国书。  
he/she is thinking of buying an American (language) book.

5. Tā xiǎng mǎi shénme dìtú?  
他/她想买什么地图?  
What kind of map is he/she thinking of buying?

Cue Táiwān  
台湾  
Taiwan

Tā xiǎng mǎi yìzhāng Táiwān dìtú.  
他/她想买一张台湾地图。  
he/she is thinking of buying a map of Taiwan.

6. Tā xiǎng mǎi shénme zázhì?  
他/她想买什么杂志?  
What kind of magazine is he/she thinking of buying?

Cue Měiguó  
美国  
American

Tā xiǎng mǎi yìběn Měiguó zázhì.  
他/她想买一本美国杂志。  
he/she is thinking of buying an American (language) magazine.

7. Tā xiǎng mǎi shénme shū?  
他/她想买什么书?  
What kind of book is he/she thinking of buying?

Cue

Yīngwén

英文

English

Tā xiǎng mǎi yìběn Yīngwén shū.

他/她想买一本英文书。

he/she is thinking of buying an English (language) book.

## Unit 2

### References

#### Reference List

1. A: **Wǒ xiǎng mǎi diǎnr diǎnxin.**  
我想买点儿点心。  
I'm going to buy some pastries.
2. A: **Zheige xiǎo diǎnxin duōshao qián yìjīn?**  
这个小点心多少钱一斤？  
How much are these small pastries per catty?  
  
B: **Bāmáo qián yìjīn.**  
八毛钱一斤。  
Eighty cents a catty.
3. A: **Gěi wǒ liǎngjīn.**  
给我两斤。  
Give me two catties.
4. A: **Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ liǎngjīn.**  
请李给我两斤。  
Please give me two catties.
5. B: **Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme?**  
您还要点儿什么？  
What else do you want?  
  
A: **Wǒ hái yào qìshuǐ.**  
我还要汽水  
I want some soda.
6. A: **Duōshao qián yìpíng?**  
多少钱一平？  
How much is it per bottle?

B: Liǎngmáo wǔfēn qián.

两毛五分钱。

It's twenty-five cents.

7. A: Zhèi shì sānkuài qián.

这是三块钱。

Here's three dollars.

B: Zhǎo nǐ liùmáo wǔfēn qián.

找你牛六毛五分钱。

Here's sixty-five cents (in) change.

A: Xièxie. Zàijiàn.

谢谢。再见。

Thank you. Good-bye

B: Zàijiàn.

再见。

Good-bye

8. A: Dà píngguǒ duōshao qián yìjīn?

大苹果多少钱一斤

How much are the large apples per catty?

B: Dàde sìmáo wǔfēn qián yìjīn.

大的四毛五分钱一斤。

The large ones are forty-five cents a catty.

9. A: Xiǎode duōshao qián yìjīnq?

小的多少钱一斤？

How much per catty are the small ones?

B: Sānmáo wǔ.

三毛五。

Thirty-five cents.

10. A: Qǐng gěi wǒ sānjīn nèige xiǎode.

请给我三斤那个小的。

Please give me three catties of the small ones.

B: Hǎo. Sānjīn yíkuài líng wǔ.  
好。三经一块零五。  
Certainly. Three catties are \$1.05.

11. B: Nín hái yào shénme?  
您还要什么?  
What else do you want?

A: Wǒ búyào shénme le.  
我不要什么了。  
I don't want anything else.

## Vocabulary

júzi	橘子	oranges, tangerines
píjiǔ	啤酒	beer
yíkuài féizào	一块肥皂	one bar of soap
zuò mǎimai	做买卖	to do business
dàrén	大人	adult
xiǎoháizi	小孩子	child
dà	大	to be large
-de	的	marker of modification
diǎnr	点儿	a little, some
diǎnxīn (yíkuài, yìjīn)	点心 (— 块, 一斤)	pastry, snack
-fēn	分	cent
gěi	给	to give
hái	还	also, additionally
-jīn	斤	catty (1.1 pound)
-kuài	块	piece (counter)
líng	零	zero
mǎimai	买卖	business
-máo	毛	dime
-píng	瓶	bottle
píngguǒ	苹果	apple
qǐng	请	please
qìshuǐ	汽水	soda, carbonated soft drink
xiǎo	小	to be small
xiǎoháizi	小孩子	child
yào	要	to want
zàijiàn	再见	good-bye
zhǎo	找	to give change
zuò mǎimai	做买卖	to do business
gōngxiāo hézuòshè	供销合作社	supply and marketing cooperative



## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1

1. A: **Wǒ xiǎng mǎi diǎnr diǎnxin.**

**我想买点儿点心。**

I'm going to buy some pastries.

**Diǎnr:** The word **yìdiǎnr** (or **yìdiǎn**) is a combination of the number **yī**, “one,” and the counter **diǎn**, “a dot”, “a little bit.” The number **yī** is often toneless, or, in this case, dropped when its meaning is “a” rather than “one”.

The **Běijīng** version of this word, written **diǎnr** or **yìdiǎnr** is actually pronounced as if written **diǎr** or **yìdiǎr**. These words rhyme with the English “tar.”



**Notes on №2**

2. A: *Zheige xiǎo diǎnxin duōshao qián yìjīn?*

这个小点心多少钱一斤？

How much are these small pastries per catty?

B: *Bāmáo qián yìjīn.*

八毛钱一斤。

Eighty cents a catty.

A *jīn* is a unit of weight, usually translated as “catty.” In most parts of China a *jīn* equals 1.1 pound.

*Bāmáo* i You must use the equivalent of “eight dimes” to say “eighty cents.” It is wrong to say *bāshifēn* for “eighty cents.”

Notes on №3-4

3. A: **Gěi wǒ liǎngjīn.**  
 给我两斤。  
 Give me two catties.

4. A: **Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ liǎngjīn.**  
 清李给我两斤。  
 Please give me two catties.

Indirect object: Notice that the indirect object, **wǒ**, precedes the direct object, **liǎngjīn**, just as “me” precedes “two catties” in English.

Gěi	wǒ	liǎngjīn.
给	我	两斤。
Give	me	two catties.

Polite request: A blunt imperative in Chinese has the same word order as a command in English: (**nǐ**), verb, indirect object, direct object. To make a polite request in Chinese, start off with **qǐng**, “please,” or **qǐng nǐ** “please you.” More literally **qǐng** means “to ask,” “to request,” but the idiomatic equivalent of **qǐng** and **qǐng nǐ** is “please.” Here are the three types of imperatives.

		gěi	wǒ	liǎngjīn.	Give me two catties.
		#/.	我	两斤。	
Qǐng		gěi	wǒ	liǎngjīn.	Please give me two catties OR Give me two catties, please.
清		给	我	两斤。	
Qǐng	nǐ	gěi	wǒ	liǎngjīn.	
清	你	给	我	两斤。	

**Notes on №5**

5. B: **Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme?**

**您还要点儿什么？**

What else do you want?

A: **Wǒ hái yào qìshuǐ.**

**我还要汽水**

I want some soda.

**Hái**: in exchange 5, **hái** something like “in addition”: “What do you want a little of in addition?” Since **hái** is an adverb, it is placed before the verb.

**Qìshuǐ**, “soda,” refers to a carbonated soft drink, not to club soda.

## Notes on №6

6. A: Duōshao qián yíping?

多少钱一瓶？

How much is it per bottle?

B: Liǎngmáo wǔfēn qián.

两毛五分钱。

It's twenty-five cents.

Tone change for *yī*: The number 1, *yī*, changes tone when followed by another syllable. When followed by a syllable with a Falling tone, *yī* has a Rising tone. When followed “by syllables with High, Rising, or Low tones, has a Falling tone.

High Tone follows	Rising Tone follows	Low Tone follows	Falling Tone follows
yìjīn	yíping	yībēn	yífēn
一斤	一平	一本	一分
yìzhāng	yímáo	yídiǎn	yíkuài
一张	一毛	一点	一块
yìzhī	yínián		yíyuè
一支	一年		一月
yìtiān			
一天			

*Liǎngmáo wǔfēn qián*: Notice that “twenty-five cents” is expressed in Chinese as dimes plus cents: “two dimes and five cents.”

### Notes on №7

7. A: Zhèi shì sānkuài qián.  
这是三块钱。  
Here's three dollars.
- B: Zhǎo nǐ liùmáo wǔfēn qián.  
找你六毛五分钱。  
Here's sixty-five cents (in) change.
- A: Xièxie. Zàijiàn.  
谢谢。再见。  
Thank you. Good-bye
- B: Zàijiàn.  
再见。  
Good-bye

**Zhèi:** In the first sentence of exchange 7, **zhèi** is used without an attached counter. A specifier was also used without a counter in **Nèi shì Míngzú Fàndiàn**. “That's the Nationalities Hotel.”

The verb **zhǎo** means “to give change.” **Zhǎo nǐ liùmáo wǔfēn qián** means something like “I'm giving you sixty-five cents in change.”

### Notes on №8-9

8. A: *Dà píngguǒ duōshao qián yìjīn?*

大苹果多少斤？

How much are the large apples per catty?

B: *Dàde sì máo wǔ fēn qián yìjīn.*

大的四毛五分钱一斤。

The large ones are forty-five cents a catty.

9. A: *Xiǎode duōshao qián yìjīn?*

小的多少钱一斤？

How much per catty are the small ones?

B: *Sānmáo wǔ.*

三毛五。

Thirty-five cents.

The words *dàde* and *xiǎode* are translated as “large ones” and “small ones.” The nonspecific noun “ones” may be used because the specific thing being talked about (apples) was mentioned in an earlier sentence. The marker *-de* shows that *dà* and *xiǎo* modify a noun mentioned earlier in the conversation. Like their English translations “big ones” and “small ones,” *dàde* and *xiǎode* act as nouns.

*Sānmáo wǔ* is an abbreviated way of giving a price. The last unit of money (In this case, *fēn* “cent”) and the word for “money,” *qián* are left out. The unit omitted is always the next unit below the unit which is expressed. For instance, “three dollars and fifty cents” is *sānkuài wǔ*.

You know that the unit omitted is *máo* “dimes,” because it is the next unit below *kuài*, “dollars.” A one-unit price such as “three dollars” or “cents” can never be abbreviated this way, because there would be no way of determining the unit marker omitted.

## Notes on №10

10. A: **Qǐng gěi wǒ sānjīn nèige xiǎode.**

请给我三斤那个小的。

Please give me three catties of the small ones.

B: **Hǎo. Sānjīn yikuài líng wǔ.**

好。三斤一块零五。

Certainly. Three catties are \$1.05.

**Sānjīn nèige xiǎode:** The elements of this phrase appear in the following order: number, counter, specifier, noun, (in Chinese, units of measure, like **jīn**, act as counters.) Earlier, you learned phrases whose element a appeared in a different order: specifier, number, counter, noun, (**zhèi liǎngzhāng dìtú**). In both cases, the word order for the constructions is the same in Chinese and English.

sān	-jīn		nèige		xiǎode
三	斤		那个		小的。
three	catties	of	those		small ones

nèi	sān		-jīn		xiǎode
那	三		斤		小的。
those	three		catties	of	small ones

**Zèige** is translated as “those” in the first sentence of exchange 10. Strictly speaking, **nèige** can refer only to one item, since **-ge** is the counter for units. The apples, however, are regarded collectively as one category of things.

**Yikuài líng wǔ:** In a price, the word **líng** is always used for a “zero” in the dimes position. In **yikuài líng wǔ**, **líng** appears in the “dimes” place, so you know that **wǔ** must refer to cents.

Notes on №11

11. B: *Nín hái yào shénme?*

您还要什么？

What else do you want?

A: *Wǒ búyào shénme le.*

我不要什么了。

I don't want anything else.

**Bú yào shenme:** The unstressed (and often toneless) word *shenme* corresponds to the indefinite pronoun “anything” in negative sentences.

<i>Nǐ</i>	<i>yào</i>	<i>shénme?</i>	<i>Wǒ</i>	<i>bú yào</i>	<i>shénme</i>
你	要	什么？	我	不要	什么。
You	want	what thing?	I	don't want	anything.

This construction is commonly used to say “I don't want (I'm not buying, I'm not reading) anything MUCH.”

<i>Nǐ mǎi shénme?</i>	What are you buying?
你买什么？	
<i>Wǒ bù mǎi shenme, zhǐ mǎi yí fèn bào.</i>	I'm not buying anything much; I'm just buying a newspaper.
我不买什么，只买一份报。	

**Le:** In the second sentence of exchange 11, new situation *le* is used in a negative sentence. The sentence says that NOW Mr. Andersen does not want anything (while before, of course, he did want things.)

12.	<i>júzi</i>	橘子	oranges
13.	<i>píjiǔ</i>	啤酒	beer
14.	<i>yíkuài fěizào</i>	一块肥皂	one bar of soap
15.	<i>zuò mǎimai</i>	做买卖	to do business
16.	<i>dàren</i>	大人	adult
17.	<i>xiǎoháizi</i>	小孩子	child

 Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

**Júzi:** In earlier modules, this word would have been written *júzi*. Starting in the Money Module, the umlaut (") will be written only after **n** and **l**, following the normal spelling rule in Pinyin romanization. You will have to remember that the letter **u** after **j**, **q**, **x**, and **y** is pronounced as if it were written *ü*.

**Yíkuài fěizào:** The counter used for soap is *-kuài*. It literally means “a lump” but is also translated as a “piece.”

**Zuò mǎimai,** “to do business/trade”



Tā lái zuò mǎimai le.

他在做买卖了。

He has come to do business.

Dàren, “adult,” literally, “big person”

Tā yǐjīng shì dàren le.

他已经是大人了。

He is already an adult.

**Xiǎoháizi:** Although **háizi** means “child,” the expression more commonly used is **xiǎoháizi**, literally, “small child.”

## Drills

### Expansion drill

1. zhèige diǎnxin duōshao qián?

这个点心多少钱？

How much are these pastries?

Zhèige diǎnxin duōshao qián yìjīn?

这个点心多少钱一斤？

How much are these pastries per catty?

2. Zhèige qìshuǐ duōshao qián?

这个汽水多少钱？

How much are these sodas?

Zhèige qìshuǐ duōshao qián yìpíng?

这个汽水多少钱一瓶？

How much are these sodas per bottle?

3. Nèige píngguǒ duōshao qián?

那个苹果多少钱？

How much are that apples?

Nèige píngguǒ duōshao qián yìjīn?

那个苹果多少钱一斤？

How much are that apples per catty?

4. Nèige júzi duōshao qián?

那个橘子多少钱？

How much are that oranges?

Nèige júzi duōshao qián yìjīn?

那个橘子多少钱一斤？

How much are that oranges per catty?

5. Nèige píjiǔ duōshao qián?

那个啤酒多少钱？

How much are that beers?

Nèige píjiǔ duōshao qián yìpíng?

那个啤酒多少钱一瓶？

How much are that beers per bottle?

6. Zhèige fěizào duōshao qián?

这个肥皂多少钱？

How much are these bars of soap?

Zhèige fěizào duōshao qián yìjīn?

这个肥皂多少钱一斤？

How much are this soap per bar?

7. Dà píngguǒ duōshao qián?

大苹果多少钱？

How much are the big apples?

Dà píngguó duōshao qián yìjīn?

大苹果多少钱一斤？

How much are the big apples per catty?

## Response drill

1. Zhèige xiǎo diǎnxin bāmáo qián yījīn.

这个小点心八毛钱一斤。

These little pastries are eighty cents per catty.

Cue

liǎng

两

2

Hǎo. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ liǎngjīn.

好。请你给我两斤。

Fine .Please give me two catties.

2. Zhèige xiǎo píngguǒ sānmáo qián yījīn.

这个小苹果三毛钱一斤。

These small apples are 30 cents per catty.

Cue

liǎng

两

2

Hǎo. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ liǎngjīn.

好。请你给我两斤。

Fine .Please give me two catties.

3. Nèige qìshuǐ yīmáo èr yīpíng.

那个汽水一毛二一瓶。

That soda is 12 cent per bottle.

Cue

sān

三

3

Hǎo. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ sānpíng.

好。请你给我三瓶。

Fine .Please give me 3 bottles.

4. Zhèige dà píngguǒ sì máoliù yījīn.

这个大苹果四毛六一斤。

These big apples are 46 cents per catty.

Cue yī  
—  
1

Hǎo. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ yìjīn.

好。请你给我一斤。

Fine .Please give me one catty.

5. Nèige Zhōngguó dìtú liǎngkuài wǔ yìzhāng.

那个中国地图两块五一张。

These map of China is 2,5 dollars piece.

Cue yī  
—  
1

Hǎo. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ yìzhāng.

好。请你给我一张。

Fine .Please give me one copy.

6. Zhèige pǐjiǔ liǎngmáo wǔ yìpíng.

这个啤酒两毛五一瓶。

These beer is 25 cents per bottle.

Cue sì  
四  
4

Hǎo. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ sìpíng.

好。请你给我四瓶。

Fine .Please give me 4 bottles.

7. Nèige Xīnhuá Zìdiǎn yíkuài liǎngmáo wǔ yìběn.

那个新华字典一块两毛五一本。

This Xīnhuá dictionary is 25 cents per volume.

Cue yī

—  
1

Hǎo. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ yīběn.

好。请你给我一本。

Fine .Please give me one volume.

## Expansion drill

1. Zhèige pǐjiǔ hěn hǎo.

这个啤酒很好。

This beer is very good.

Zhèige pǐjiǔ hěn hǎo. Duōshao qián yìpíng?

这个啤酒很好。多少钱一瓶？

This beer is very good. How much is it per bottle?

2. Zhèige júzi hěn hǎo.

这个橘子很好。

This orange is very good.

Zhèige júzi hěn hǎo. Duōshao qián yìjīn?

这个橘子很好。多少钱一斤？

This orange is very good. How much is it per catty?

3. Nèige píngguǒ hěn hǎo.

那个苹果很好。

That apple is very good.

Nèige píngguǒ hěn hǎo. Duōshao qián yìjīn?

那个苹果很好。多少钱一斤？

That apple is very good. How much is it per catty?

4. Zhèige fěizào hěn hǎo.

这个肥皂很好。

This soap is very good.

Zhèige fěizào hěn hǎo. Duōshao qián yíkuài?

这个肥皂很好。多少钱一块？

This soap is very good. How much is it per bar?

5. Nèige zìdiǎn hěn hǎo.

那个字典很好。

That dictionary is very good.

Nèige zìdiàn hěn hǎo. Duōshao qián yìběn?

那个字典很好。多少钱一本？

That dictionary is very good. How much is it per volume?

6. Zhèige qìshuǐ hěn hǎo.

这个汽水很好。

This soda is very good.

Zhèige qìshuǐ hěn hǎo. Duōshao qián yìpíng?

这个汽水很好。多少钱一瓶？

That map is very good. How much is it per bottle?

7. Nèige dìtú hěn hǎo.

那个地图很好。

That map is very good.

Nèige dìtú hěn hǎo. Duōshao qián yìzhāng?

那个地图很好。多少钱一张？

That map is very good. How much is it per copy?



## Response drill

1. Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme?

您还要点儿什么？

What else would you like?

Cue

qìshuǐ

汽水

soda

Wǒ hái yào liǎngpíng qìshuǐ.

我还要两瓶汽水。

I would like two bottles of soda too.

2. Nín hái yǒu shénme?

您还有什么？

What else do you have?

Cue

píjiǔ

啤酒

beer

Wǒ hái yǒu liǎngpíng píjiǔ.

我还有两瓶啤酒。

I have two bottles of beer too.

3. Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme?

您还要点儿什么？

What else would you like?

Cue

fěizào

肥皂

soap

Wǒ hái yào liǎngkuài fěizào.

我还要两块肥皂。

I would like 2 bars of soap too.

4. Nín hái yǒu shénme?

您还有什么？

What else do you have?

Cue

dítú

地图

map

Wǒ hái yǒu liǎngzhāng dìtú.

我还有两张地图。

I have 2 maps too.

5. Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme?

您还要点儿什么？

What else would you like?

Cue

júzi

橘子

orange

Wǒ hái yào liǎngjīn júzi.

我还要两斤橘子。

I would like 2 catties of oranges too.

6. Nín hái yǒu shénme?

您还有什么？

What else do you have?

Cue

zìdiǎn

字典

dictionary

Wǒ hái yǒu liǎngběn zìdiǎn.

我还有两本字典。

I have 2 dictionaries volumes too.

7. Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme?

您还要点儿什么？

What else would you like?

Cue

diǎnxìn

电信

pastry

Wǒ hái yào liǎngjīn diǎnzīn.

我还要两斤点心。

I would like 2 catties of pastries too.

## Transformation drill

1. Dà píngguǒ duōshao qián?  
大苹果多少钱?  
How much are the big apples?

Cue máo  
毛  
dimes

Dàde jǐmáo qián yìpíng?  
大的几毛钱一瓶?  
How much (how many dimes) are the big ones per bottle?

2. Dà júzi duōshao qián?  
大橘子多少钱?  
How much are the big oranges?

Cue máo  
毛  
dimes

Dàde jǐmáo qián yìjīn?  
大的几毛钱一斤?  
How much (how many dimes) are the begones per catty?

3. Xiǎo zìdiǎn duōshao qián?  
小字典多少钱?  
How much are the small dictionaries?

Cue kuài  
块  
dollars

Xiǎode jǐkuài qián yìběn?  
小的几块钱一本?  
How much (how many dollars) are the small ones per volume?

4. Dà dìtú duōshao qián?

大地图多少钱？

How much are the big maps?

Cue

máo

毛

dimes

Dàde jǐmáo qián yìzhāng?

小的几毛钱一张？

How much (how many dimes) are the big ones per copy?

6. Dà zìdiǎn duōshao qián?

大字典多少钱？

How much are the big dictionaries?

Cue

kuài

块

dollars

Dàde jǐkuài qián yìběn?

大的几块钱一本？

How much (how many dollars) are the big ones per volume?

7. Xiǎo diǎnxīn duōshao qián?

小点心多少钱？

How much are the small pastries?

Cue

máo

毛

dimes

Xiǎode jǐmáo qián yìjīn?

小的几毛钱一斤？

How much (how many dimes) are small ones per catty?

## Response drill

1. Dàde duōshao qián yījīn?  
大的多少钱一斤?  
How much are the big ones per catty?

Cue 45¢

Dàde simáo wúfēn qián yījīn.  
大的四毛钱一斤。  
The big ones are 45 cents a catty.

2. Xiǎode duōshao qián yījīn?  
小的多少钱一斤?  
How much are the small ones per catty?

Cue 35¢

Xiǎode sānmáowūfen yījīn.  
小的三毛五分一斤。  
The small ones are 35 cents a catty.

3. Xiǎode duōshao qián yīkuài?  
小的多少钱一块?  
How much are the small ones per bar?

Cue 25¢

Xiǎode liǎngmáowūfēn qián yīkuài.  
小的两毛五分钱一块。  
The small ones are 25 cents per bar.

4. Dàde duōshao qián yīzhāng?  
大的多少钱一张?  
How much are the big ones per copy?

Cue 2.15\$

Dàde liǎngkuài yīmáo wūfēn qián yīzhāng.

大的两块一毛五分钱一张。

The big ones are 2.15 dollars per copy.

5. Xiǎode duōshao qián yìběn?

小的多少钱一本？

How much are the small ones per volume?

Cue 1.25\$

Xiǎode yíkuài liǎngmáo wǔfēn qián yìběn.

小的一块两毛五分钱一本。

The small ones are 1.25 dollar per volume.

6. Xiǎode duōshao qián yìjīn?

小的多少钱一斤？

How much are the small ones per catty?

Cue 85¢

Xiǎode bāmáo wǔfēn qián yìjīn.

小的八毛五分钱一斤。

The small ones are 85 cents a catty.

7. Dàde duōshao qián yìjīn?

大的多少钱一斤？

How much are the big ones per catty?

Cue 45¢

Dàde sìmáo wǔfēnqián yìjīn.

大的四毛五分钱一斤。

The big ones are 45 cents a catty.

## Response drill

1. *Dà píngguǒ jǐmáo qián yìjīn?*  
大苹果几毛钱一斤？  
How much are the big apples per catty? (how many dimes)

Cue 46¢

*Dà píngguǒ sìmáo liùfēn qián yìjīn.*

大苹果四毛六分前一斤。

The big apples are 46 cents per catty.

2. *Xiǎo diǎnxīn jǐmáo qián yìjīn?*  
小点心几毛钱一斤？  
How much are the small pastries per catty?

Cue 80¢

*Xiǎo diǎnxīn bāmáo qián yìjīn.*

小点心八毛钱一斤。

The small pastries are 80 cents per catty.

3. *Zhōngguó píjiǔ jǐmáo qián yìpíng?*  
中国啤酒几毛钱一瓶？  
How much are the Chinese beer per bottle?

Cue 25¢

*Zhōngguó píjiǔ liǎngmáo wǔfēn qián yìpíng.*

中国啤酒两毛五分钱一瓶。

The Chinese beer is 25cents per bottle.

4. *Zhōngguó dìtú jǐmáo qián yìzhāng?*  
中国字典几块钱一本？  
How much are map of China per copy?

Cue 50¢

*Zhōngguó dìtú wǔmáo qián yìzhāng?*



中国地图五毛钱一张。

The map of China is 50 cents per copy.

5. Xīnhuá zìdiǎn jǐkuài qián yīběn?

新华字典几毛钱一本？

How much are new dictionaries per volume?

Cue 1.25\$

Xīnhuá zìdiǎn yīkuài liǎngmáo wǔfēn qián yīběn.

新华字典两毛五分钱一本。

The new dictionaries are 1 dollar 25 cents per volume.

6. Xiǎo píngguǒ jǐmáo qián yìjīn?

小苹果几毛钱一斤？

How much are small apples per catty?

Cue 30¢

Xiǎo píngguǒ sānmáo qián yìjīn.

小苹果三毛钱一斤。

The small apples are 30 cents per catty.

7. Dà júzi jǐmáo qián yìjīn?

大橘子几毛钱一斤？

How much are the big oranges per catty?

Cue 40¢

Dà júzi sìmáo qián yìjīn.

大橘子四毛钱一斤。

The big oranges are 40 cents per catty.

## Transformation drill

1. Wǒ yào nèige xiǎode.  
我要那个小的。  
I want those small ones.

Cue liǎngjīn  
两斤  
two catties

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ liǎngjīn nèige xiǎode.  
请给我  
Please, give me 2 catties of those small ones.

2. Wǒ yào nèige dàde.  
我要那个大的。  
I want the big ones.

Cue sìjīn  
四斤  
four catties

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ sìjīn nèige dàde.  
请给我  
Please, give me four catties of those big ones.

3. Wǒ yào zhèige xiǎode.  
我要这个小的。  
I want those small ones.

Cue sānzhāng  
三张  
three copies

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ sānzhāng zhèige xiǎode.  
请给我  
Please, give me three copies of these small ones.

4. Wǒ yào zhèige dàde.

我要这个大的。

I want the big ones.

Cue

liǎngzhāng

两张

two copies

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ liǎngzhāng zhèige dàde.

请给我

Please, give me two copies of these big ones.

5.

Wǒ yào nèige xiǎode.

我要那个小的。

I want those small ones.

Cue

yījīn

一斤

one catty

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ yījīn nèige xiǎode.

请给我

Please, give me one catty of those small ones.

6.

Wǒ yào zhèige dàde.

我要这个大的。

I want the big ones.

Cue

wǔjīn

五斤

five catties

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ wǔjīn zhèige dàde.

请给我

Please, give me five catties of these big ones.

7.

Wǒ yào nèige xiǎode.

我要那个小的。

I want those small ones.

Cue

liùjīn

六斤

six catties

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ liùjīn nèige xiǎode.

请给我

Please, give me six catties of those small ones.

## Response drill

For your answers, use specific counters with **liǎng**.

1. Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme?  
您还要点儿什么?  
What else would you like?

Cue píngguǒ  
苹果  
apple

Wǒ hái yào liǎngjīn píngguǒ.  
我还要两斤苹果。  
I would like 2 catties of apples.

2. Nín hái yǒu shénme?  
您还有什么?  
What else do you have?

Cue qìshuǐ  
汽水  
soda

Wǒ hái yǒu liǎngpíng qìshuǐ.  
我还要两斤汽水。  
I would like 2 bottles of soda.

3. Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme?  
您还要点儿什么?  
What else would you like?

Cue diǎnxīn  
点心  
pastry

Wǒ hái yào liǎngjīn diǎnxīn.  
我还要两斤点心。  
I would like 2 catties of pastries.

4. Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme?

您还要点儿什么？

What else would you like?

Cue

júzi

橘子

orange

Wǒ hái yào liǎngjīn júzi.

我还要两斤橘子。

I would like 2 catties of oranges.

5. Nín hái yǒu shénme?

您还有什么？

What else do you have?

Cue

fèizào

肥皂

soap

Wǒ hái yǒu liǎngkuài fèizào.

我还要两快肥皂。

I would like 2 bar of soap.

6. Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme?

您还要点儿什么？

What else would you like?

Cue

dìtú

地图

map

Wǒ hái yào liǎngzhāng dìtú.

我还要两张地图。

I would like 2 maps.

7. Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme?

您还要点儿什么？

What else would you like?

Cue

píngguǒ

苹果

apple

Wǒ hái yào liǎngjīn píngguǒ.

我还要两斤苹果。

I would like 2 catties of apples.

## Response drill

Give affirmative response to all questions.

1. Nín hái yào diǎnr shénme?

您还要点儿什么？

What else would you like?

Wǒ bú yào shénme le.

我不要什么了。

I don't want anything else.

2. Nín hái yǒu shénme?

您还有什么？

What else do you have?

Wǒ méiyǒu shénme le.

我没有什么了。

I don't have anything else.

3. Tā hái yào diǎnr shénme?

他/她还要点儿什么？

What else would he/she like?

Tā bú yào shénme le.

他/她不要什么了。

He/she doesn't want anything else.

4. Tā hái yǒu shénme?

他/她还有什么？

What else does he/she have?

Tā méiyǒu shénme le.

他/她没有什么了。

He/she doesn't have anything else.

5. Wáng xiānsheng hái yào diǎnr shénme?

王先生还要点儿什么？

what else would Mr. Wáng like?



Wáng xiānsheng bú yào shénme le.

王先生不要什么了。

Mr. Wáng doesn't want anything else.

6. Hú tàitai hái yǒu shénme?

胡太太还有什么？

What does Mrs. Hú have?

Hú tàitai méiyǒu shénme le.

胡太太没有什么了。

Mrs. Hú doesn't have anything else.

7. Lǐ xiānsheng hái yào diǎnr shénme?

李先生还要点儿什么？

What else would Mr. Lǐ like?

Lǐ xiānsheng bú yào shénme le.

李先生不要什么了。

Mr. Lǐ doesn't want anything else.

## Unit 3

### References

#### Reference List

(in Běijīng)

1. A: Qǐng ni gěi wǒ kànkàn nèige huāpíng.  
请你给我看看那个花瓶？  
Please give me that vase to look at.
2. B: Nèige? Zhèige lán de, háishi zhèige hóng de?  
哪个？这个兰的，还是这个红的？  
Which one? This blue one or this red, one?
3. A: Nèi liǎngge dōu gěi wǒ kànkàn, hǎo ma?  
那两个都给我看看，好吗？  
Give me both of them to look at. All right?  
B: Hǎo.  
好。  
Certainly.
4. A: Lán de tài guì le.  
蓝的太贵了。  
The blue one is too expensive.
5. A: Wǒ mǎi hóng de ba. Hóng de piányi.  
我买红的把。红的便宜。  
I'll buy the red one, I guess. The red one is cheaper.  
B: Èng, hóng de piányi.  
恩恩，红的便宜。  
Mm, the red one is cheaper.
6. C: Zhèi liǎngge xuésheng, nǐige hǎo?  
这两个学生，哪个好？  
Which of these two students is better?  
D: Sīmǎ Xìn hǎo.  
司马信好。

Sīmǎ Xīn is better.

7. A: Nǐ yǒu dà yīdiǎnrde ma?  
你有大一点儿的吗?  
Do you have one a little larger?  
B: Yǒu. Nín kàn zhèige zěnmeyàng?  
有。您看这个怎么样?  
We do. What do you think of this one?
8. A: Zhèige dàde zhēn hǎokàn.  
这个大的真好看。  
This large one is really nice looking.
9. A: Hǎo, wǒ mǎi dàde ba.  
好我买大的把。  
Okay, I'll buy the large one, I guess.  
B: Nín yào jǐge?  
您要几个?  
How many do you want?  
A: Qǐng gěi wǒ liǎngge ba.  
请给我两个把。  
How about giving me two, please.

Additional required vocabulary (not presented on C-I and P-I tapes)

10. bái  
白  
to be white
11. hēi  
黑  
to be black
12. huáng  
黄  
to be yellow, to be brown
13. lǜ  
绿  
to be green

14. jiù  
旧  
to be old, to be used, to be worn

15. xīn  
新  
to be new

16. gāo  
高  
to be tall

17. ǎi  
矮  
to be short (of stature)

18. gāoxìng  
高兴  
to be happy

19. nánkàn  
难看  
to be ugly

20. yībǎ yǔsǎn  
一把雨伞  
one umbrella

21. kàn  
看  
to read, to look at, to visit

## Vocabulary

ǎi	矮	to be short (of stature)
-bǎ	把	counter for things with handles
bái	白	to be white
gāo	高	to be tall
gāoxìng	高兴	to be happy
guì	贵	to be expensive
háishi	还是	or
hǎo	好	to be better
hǎokàn	好看	to be beautiful, to be nice looking
hēi	黑	to be black
hóng	红	to be red
huáng	黄	to be yellow, to be brown
huāpíng	花瓶	vase
jiù	旧	to be old, to be used, to be worn
kàn	看	to think (express an opinion)
kànkàn	看看	to read, to look at, to visit, to look at
lán	蓝	to be blue
lǜ	绿	to be green
nánkàn	难看	to be ugly
piányi	便宜	to be inexpensive, to be cheap
tài	太	too (excessive)
xīn	新	to be new
yǔǎn	雨伞	umbrella
zěnmeyàng	怎么样	to be how, how is ___?
zhēn	真	really

## Reference Notes

## Notes on №1

1. A: **Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ kànkàn nèige huāpíng.**

请你给我看看那个花瓶？

Please give me that vase to look at.

Reduplication of action verbs: In the sentence above, the action verb **kàn** appears in reduplicated form: **kànkàn** [stress on first syllable; second syllable unstressed, usually toneless]. The reduplicated verb could also have been formed with **yī** between the two syllables: **kànyīkàn**, literally, “to look one look.” **kànyīkàn** or **kàn** is used when you want to say “to have/take a look (at something.)”

Many but not all, action verbs may be reduplicated, Of the verbs you learned, **niàn**, **shuō**, **fīng**, **xiě**, and **xiǎng** may be reduplicated this way.

Reduplication is another way of indicating aspect.

 **Note**

The aspect marker **-guo**, **le**, and **ne** have already been introduced. For the meaning of the word “aspect,” see BIO, Unit 4.

By using a reduplicated verb, you express the INDEFINITENESS of an action. Use a reduplicated verb when the duration or extent of an action or the amount verb object is indefinite. For example, saying **Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ kànkàn** indicate an indefinite duration for the action of looking at the vase.

There are several reasons for using a reduplicated verb to indicate finite action. In the Reference List sentence above, a speaker asks permission to look at something; therefore, his request must be tentative and undemanding,

Reduplicated verbs are not commonly used with the aspect marker **le** (perhaps because stressing both the indefiniteness and the completion of action would not be consistent). When completion **le** does occur with reduplicated verb, the marker is placed after the first half of that verb before the second half. The second half of the reduplicated verb then resembles an object, as in “looked one look” or “thought a thought.”

**Wǒ kànle kàn nèige huāpíng.**

我看了看内个花瓶。

I looked at that vase.

**kàn** and **xiǎng** are the two verbs you have learned which may take **le** when reduplicated.

To make a reduplicated verb negative (with **bù** or **méi**) would be as wrong as saying in English “I don't look at it a little.” To say that an action was not performed, is habitually not performed, or will not be performed, use the simple form of the verb, not the reduplicated form:

**Zhèifèn bào, wǒ hái méiyǒu kàn.**

这份报，我还没又看。

I haven't read this paper yet.

**Wǒ bú kàn Zhōngwén bào.**

我不堪中文报。

I don't read Chinese newspapers.

Wǒ bú kàn zhèige.

我不堪这诶个。

I'm not going to read this.

The objects of reduplicated action verbs cannot be indefinite. For example, it is wrong to say because *Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ kànkàn yige huāpíng*, because *yige huāpíng* “a vase,” is indefinite—which vase is not known. However, reduplicated verbs may have noun objects which are specified, like “that vase.”

### Example 3.1. Examples

Niànnian shū, kànkàn bào dōu hěn hǎo.

年年书，看看报都很好。

Studying a little and reading a little are both nice.

Tā jiù shì shuōshuo.

他就是说说。

He's just talking.

Nǐ tīngtīng tā shuō shénme.

你听听他说什么。

Listen to what he is saying.

Tā tiāntiān dōu kànkàn shū, xiěxiě zì.

他天天都看看书，写写字。

Every day he reads a little and writes characters a bit.

Nǐ xiǎngxiǎng tā xìng shénme.

你想想他姓什么。

Try to think what his surname is.

### Note

Notice that in some of the examples the verb *kàn* means “to read,” not “to look at.”

**Notes on №2**

2. B: Nèige? Zhèige lán de, háishi zhèige hóng de?  
 哪个? 这个兰的, 还是这个红的?  
 Which one? This blue one or this red, one?

Háishi means “or.” In a choice-type question without Háishi, both choices must include a verb; but in & question containing Háishi, the second verb may be omitted.

Nǐ	yào	zhèige		yào	nèige?
你	要	着这个		要	那个?
Nǐ	yào	zhèige	háishi	yào	nèige?
你	要	这个	还是	要	那个?
Nǐ	yào	zhèige	háishi		nèige?
你	要	这个	还是		那个?



## Notes on №3

3. A: **Nèi liǎngge dōu** gěi wǒ kànkàn, hǎo ma?  
 那两个都给我看看，好吗？  
 Give me both of them to look at. All right?
- B: **Hǎo.**  
 好。  
 Certainly.

The word order of the first sentence is determined by the adverb **dōu**. Normally, an object in a Chinese sentence follows the verb. But any object referred to by **dōu** must come before **dōu**. And **dōu** itself, because it is an adverb, must precede the verb. Therefore, the object **nèi liǎngge** has been moved to the initial topic position in the sentence above. Compare:

		<b>Gěi wǒ kànkàn</b>	<b>nèi liǎngge.</b>
		给我看看	那两个
<b>Nèi liǎngge</b>	<b>dōu</b>	<b>gěi wǒ kànkàn.</b>	
那两个	都	给我看看	

### Notes on №4

4. A: **Lánde tài guì le.**  
**蓝的太贵了。**  
The blue one is too expensive.

**Le:** The speaker is using new-situation 1a to reinforce the meaning of **tài**, “too.” The new situation is the fact that the price is more than the speaker expected.

Notes on №5

5. A: *Wǒ mǎi hóngde ba. Hóngde piányi.*  
 我买红的把。红的便宜。  
 I'll buy the red one, I guess. The red one is cheaper.
- B: *Èng, hóngde piányi.*  
 恩恩，红的便宜。  
 Mm, the red one is cheaper.

*Piányi*: The **n** in this word is not pronounced but gives a nasal quality the vowels around it.

The English comparative form “cheaper” has been used for the basic form *Piányi* in the translation of exchange 5. The Chinese says, in effect, “It’s the red one that’s cheap.” But adjectival verbs usually should be understood as comparatives.

<i>Něige piányi?</i>
哪个便宜？
Which one is cheaper?
<i>Hóngde piányi ma?</i>
红的便宜吗？
Is the red one cheaper?
<i>Hóngde piányi.</i>
红的便宜。
The red one is cheaper.

However, when preceded by adverbs (including the negative adverb *bù*), adjectival verbs generally lose their comparative meaning.

<i>Zhèige yě piányi.</i>
这个也便宜。
This one is cheap too.
<i>Zhèige bù piányi.</i>
这个不便宜。
This one isn't cheap.

When no other adverb is appropriate, an adjectival verb may be made non-comparative by the addition of an unstressed *hěn*. Since its function is simply to show that the verb is not comparative, it does not have the emphatic sense of stressed *hěn* or English “very.”

<i>Zhèige</i>		<i>piányi.</i>
这个		便宜。
This one is		cheaper.
<i>Zhèige</i>	<i>hěn</i>	<i>piányi.</i>
这个	很	便宜。

This one is		cheap.
Zhèige	HĚN	piányi.
这个	很	便宜。
This one is	very	cheap.

Èng is actually pronounced /#g/, or like the nasal uh in “uh-huh.”

## Notes on №6

6. C: Zhèi liǎngge xuésheng, nǐge hǎo?

这两个学生，哪个好？

Which of these two students is better?

D: Sīmǎ Xìn hǎo.

司马信好。

Sīmǎ Xìn is better.

Zhèi liǎngge xuésheng, nǐge hǎo? Compare this Chinese sentence with an English translation:

Zhèi liǎngge xuésheng,	nǐge	hǎo?
这两个学生	哪个	好？
[Of] these two students,	which	is better?

In both English and Chinese, the items being compared begin the sentence, In topic position. This word order is required in Chinese but is somewhat unusual in English.

## Notes on №7

7. A: *Nǐ yǒu dà yīdiǎnrde ma?*  
 你有大一点儿的吗？  
 Do you have one a little larger?
- B: *Yǒu. Nín kàn zhèige zěnmeyàng?*  
 有。您看这个怎么样？  
 We do. What do you think of this one?

**Dà yīdiǎnrde:** An adjectival verb used in a comparison is often followed by the word *yīdiǎn(r)*: *dà yīdiǎn*, “larger by a little bit.” Notice that the marker *-de* comes at the end of the modifying phrase: *dà yīdiǎnrde*, “one that is larger by a little bit,” but that the modified noun which would follow is omitted.

**Kàn:** The verb *kàn* means “to look at.” *Nín kàn*, therefore, can simply mean “Look.” Often, however, *kàn* is used to express an opinion and is best translated as “in your/my/his/her view” or, even more idiomatically, by the verb “think.”

*Nín kàn, huāpíng jiù zài nàr.*

您看，花瓶就在那儿。

Look, the vase is right over there.

*Wǒ kàn zhèige huāpíng tài guì.*

我看这个花瓶太贵。

I think this vase is too expensive.

*Zhèige zěnmeyàng?* does not contain the verb *shì*. Likewise, an answer to this question would not include *shì*. Compare the Chinese and English versions of these sentences:

<i>Zhèige</i>	<i>zěnmeyàng?</i>
这个	怎么样？
This	is how?
<i>Zhèige</i>	<i>hěn hǎo.</i>
这个	很好。
This	is good.

Notes on №8-9

8. A: Zhèige dàde zhēn hǎokàn.  
这个大的真好看。  
This large one is really nice looking.
9. A: Hǎo, wǒ mǎi dàde ba.  
好我买大的把。  
Okay, I'll buy the large one, I guess.
- B: Nín yào jǐge?  
您要几个?  
How many do you want?
- A: Qǐng gěi wǒ liǎngge ba.  
请给我两个把。  
How about giving me two, please.

**Ba:** You have learned that **ba** can be used as the marker for a question which expresses supposition about an answer, requiring confirmation from the listener: *Nǐ shì Wèi Shàoxiào ba?* “You are Major Weiss, aren’t you?” In exchange 9, **ba** is used as the marker for a tentative statement or imperative. The marker **ba** makes statements less certain and requests less blunt. Like **ma**, **ba** is always placed at the end of a sentence.

Wǒ mǎi bái de.		I'll buy the white one.
我买白的。		
Wǒ mǎi bái de	ba.	I'll buy the white one, I guess.
我买白的	吧。	
Qǐng gěi wǒ liǎngge.		Give me two, please.
请给我两个。		
Qǐng gěi wǒ liǎngge	ba.	How about giving me two, please.
请给我两个	吧。	

## Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

Colors: Adjectival verbs of color behave somewhat differently than other adjectival verbs, such as *guī* and *dà*. To say in Chinese that something is in a certain color, such as blue, you say that it is “a blue one.”

Zhèige huāpíng shì lán de.

这个花瓶是蓝的。

This vase is blue.

Nèiběn shū shì hēi de.

那本书是黑的。

That book is black.

Adjectival verbs: As you learned in BIO, adjectival verbs are state verbs and as such can be made negative only with *bù*. If the marker *le* is used in a sentence whose verb is adjectival, the marker is new-situation *le*. (See BIO, Unit 8, Reference Notes on №7-8.)

Zuótiān wǒ kànle hěn duō huāpíng. Dōu bú guì.

昨天我看了很多花瓶。都不贵。

Yesterday I saw a lot of vases. None of them were expensive.

Nǐde hái zi hěn gāo le!

你的孩子很高了。

Your son is tall now.

Like many other state verbs, adjectival verbs may become process verbs. When this happens, the verb meaning often changed. (See BIO, Unit 8, Reference Notes on №9.)

Wǒde yǔsǎn jiù le.

我的雨伞旧了。

My umbrella **has become** old.

Tiān hēi le.

天黑了。

The sky **has become** black (has darkened).

*Jiù* is the verb “to be old,” “to be used,” “to be worn,” as opposed to *xīn*, “to be new.” *Jiù* is not used to mean old in years, or aged.

 Note

The verb *lǎo* means “to be old in years.” *Niánqīng* means “to be young.”

*ǎi* is the verb “to be short (in stature)” as opposed to *gāo*, “to be tall.” *ǎi* is not used to mean “short in length.”



 **Note**

The verb **duǎn** means “to be short in length.” **Cháng** means “to be long.”

**Nánkàn**, “to be ugly,” literally, “to be hard to look at”: this is a very blunt way to describe unattractiveness.

## Vocabulary Booster

### Colors

What color paper do you want?	I want _____
Nǐ yào shénme yánsède zhǐ?	Wǒ yào _____ de
你要什么颜色的之纸？	我要_____的。

beige	mǐhuáng	米黄
black	hēi	黑
blue	lán	蓝
brown	zōngsè, kāfēisè, hèsè, shēn huáng	棕色, 咖啡色, 褐色, 深黄
gold	jīnhuáng	金黄
gray	huī	灰
green	lǜ	绿
orange	júhuáng, júhóng	桔黄, 橘红
pink	fěnhóng	粉红
purple	zǐ	紫
red	hóng	红
silver	yínbái	银白
white	bái	白
yellow	huáng	黄
light blue	qiǎn lán	浅蓝
light green	qiǎn lǜ	浅绿
light red	qiǎn hóng	浅红
dark blue	shēn lán	深蓝
dark green	shēn lǜ	深绿
dark red	shēn hóng	深红

Different kinds of:

blue			
lán	tiānlán	天蓝	sky blue
	hǎilán	海蓝	sea blue
green			
lǜ	cǎolǜ	草绿	grass green

	píngguǒlǜ	苹果绿	apple green
	cuilǜ	翠绿	emerald green
	mòlǜ	魔绿	ink green, blackish green
red			
hóng	dàhóng	大红	bright red, scarlet
	zhūhóng	朱红	vermilion
	méiguīhóng	玫瑰红	rose red

And one more interesting Chinese color: qīng, green, blue, black.

## Drills

### Expansion drill

Here is a new expression you will need in the exercise: **nèibǎ yǔsǎn**.

1. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ nèige huāpíng.

请你给我那个花瓶。

Please give me that vase.

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ kànkàn nèige huāpíng.

请你给我看看那个花瓶。

Please give me that vase to look at.

2. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ nèige lǜde.

请你给我那个绿的。

Please give me that green one.

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ kànkàn nèige lǜde.

请你给我看看那个绿的。

Please give me that green one to look at.

3. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ nèibǎ yǔsǎn.

请你给我那把雨伞。

Please give me that umbrella.

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ kànkàn nèibǎ yǔsǎn.

请你给我看看那把雨伞。

Please give me that umbrella to look at.

4. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ nèibǎ dàde.

请你给我那把大的。

Please give me that big one.

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ kànkàn nèibǎ dàde.

请你给我看看那把大的。

Please give me that big one to look at.

5. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ nèiběn zidiǎn.

请你给我那本字典。

Please give me that dictionary.

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ kànkàn nèiběn zìdiǎn.

请你给我看看那本字典。

Please give me that dictionary to look at.

6. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ nèiběn guide.

请你给我那本贵的。

Please give me that expensive one.

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ kànkàn nèiběn guide.

请你给我看看那本贵的。

Please give me that expensive one to look at.

7. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ nèizhāng dìtú.

请你给我那张地图。

Please give me that map.

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ kànkàn nèizhāng dìtú.

请你给我看看那张地图。

Please give me that map to look at.

## Transformation and Expansion drill

1. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ kànkàn nèi liǎngge lán-de.

请你给我看看那两个蓝的。

Please give me those two blue ones to look at.

Nèi liǎngge lán-de dōu gěi wǒ kànkàn, hǎo ma?

那两个蓝的都给我看看，好吗？

Give me both of those blue ones to look at. All right?

2. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ kànkàn nèi liǎngge hóng-de.

请你给我看看那两个红的。

Please give me those two red ones to look at.

Nèi liǎngge hóng-de dōu gěi wǒ kànkàn, hǎo ma?

那两个红的都给我看看，好吗？

Give me both of those red ones look at. All right?

3. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ nèi liǎngge bái-de.

请你给我看那两个白的。

Please give me those two white ones to look at.

Nèi liǎngge bái-de dōu gěi wǒ kànkàn, hǎo ma?

那两个白的都给我看看，好吗？

Give me both of those white ones look at. All right?

4. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ kànkàn nèi liǎngge dà-de.

请你给我看看那两个大的。

Please give me those two big ones to look at.

Nèi liǎngge dà-de dōu gěi wǒ kànkàn, hǎo ma?

那两个大的都给我看看，好吗？

Give me both of those big ones look at. All right?

5. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ nèi liǎngge xiǎo-de.

请你给我看那两个小的。

Please give me those two small ones to look at.

Nèi liǎngge xiǎo-de dōu gěi wǒ kànkàn, hǎo ma?

那两个小的都给我看看，好吗？

Give me both of those small ones look at. All right?

6. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ kànkàn nèi liǎngge guìde.

请你给我看看那两个贵的。

Please give me those two expensive ones to look at.

Nèi liǎngge guìde dōu gěi wǒ kànkàn, hǎo ma?

那两个贵的都给我看看，好吗？

Give me both of those expensive ones look at. All right?

7. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ kànkàn nèi liǎngge piányide.

请你给我看看那两个便宜的。

Please give me those two cheap ones to look at.

Nèi liǎngge piányide dōu gěi wǒ kànkàn, hǎo ma?

那两个便宜的都给我看看，好吗？

Give me both of those cheap ones look at. All right?

## Response drill

1. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ kànkàn.

请你给我看看。

Please give it to me to look at.

Cue

lán, bái

蓝, 白

blue, white

Něige? Nèige lán de, háishi nèige bái de?

那个蓝的, 还是那个白的?

Which one? That blue one or that white one?

2. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ kànkàn.

请你给我看看。

Please give it to me to look at.

Cue

lán, lǜ

蓝, 绿

blue, green

Něige? Nèige lán de, háishi nèige lǜ de?

那个蓝的, 还是那个绿的?

Which one? That blue one or that green one?

3. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ kànkàn.

请你给我看看。

Please give it to me to look at.

Cue

hóng, huáng

红, 黄

red, yellow

Něige? Nèige hóng de, háishi nèige huáng de?

那个红的, 还是那个黄的?

Which one? That red one or that yellow one?

4. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ kànkàn.



请你给我看看。

Please give it to me to look at.

Cue

dà, xiǎo

大, 小

big, small

Něige? Nèige dàde, háishi nèige xiǎode?

那个大的, 还是那个小的?

Which one? That big one or that small one?

5. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ kànkàn.

请你给我看看。

Please give it to me to look at.

Cue

guì, piányi

贵, 便宜

expensive, cheap

Něige? Nèige guìde, háishi nèige piányide?

那个贵的, 还是那个便宜的?

Which one? That expensive one or that cheap one?

6. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ kànkàn.

请你给我看看。

Please give it to me to look at.

Cue

huāpíng, yǔsǎn

花瓶, 雨伞

vase, umbrella

Něige? Nèige huāpíng, háishi nèige yǔsǎn?

那个花瓶, 还是那个雨伞?

Which one? That vase or that umbrella?

7. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ kànkàn.

请你给我看看。

Please give it to me to look at.

Cue

dìtú, zìdiǎn

地图，字典

map, dictionary

Něige? Nèige dìtú, háishi nèige zidiǎn?

那个地图，还是那个字典？

Which one? That map or that dictionary?

## Expansion drill

1. Lánde tài guì le.

蓝的太贵了。

That blue one is too expensive.

Cue

hóng

红

red

Lánde tài guì le. Wǒ mǎi hóngde ba.

蓝的太贵了。我买红的吧。

The blue one is too expensive. I'll buy the red one, I guess.

2. Lǜde tài guì le.

绿的太贵了。

That green one is too expensive.

Cue

bái

白

white

Lǜde tài guì le. Wǒ mǎi báide ba.

绿的太贵了。我买白的吧。

The green one is too expensive. I'll buy the white one, I guess.

3. Dàde tài guì le.

大的太贵了。

That big one is too expensive.

Cue

xiǎo

小

small

Dàde tài guì le. Wǒ mǎi xiǎode ba.

大的太贵了。我买小的吧。

The big ones are too expensive. I'll buy the small ones, I guess.

4. Dà píngguǒ tài guì le.

大苹果太贵了。

The big apples one is too expensive.

Cue

xiǎo

小

small

Dà píngguǒ tài guì le. Wǒ mǎi xiǎo píngguǒ ba.

大苹果太贵了。我买小苹果吧。

The big apples are too expensive. I'll buy the small ones, I guess.

5.

Nèige tài guì le.

那个太贵了。

That one is too expensive.

Cue

zhèige

这个

this/these

Nèige tài guì le. Wǒ mǎi zhèige ba.

那个太贵了。我买这个吧。

That one is too expensive. I'll buy the this one, I guess.

6.

Zhèige tài guì le.

这个太贵了。

This one is too expensive.

Cue

nèige

那个

that/those

Zhèige tài guì le. Wǒ mǎi nèige ba.

这个太贵了。我买那个吧。

This one is too expensive. I'll buy the that one, I guess.

7.

Huángde tài guì le.

黄的太贵了。

The yellow one is too expensive.

Cue

lù

绿

green

Huángde tài guì le. Wǒ mǎi lǜde ba.

黄的太贵了。我买绿的吧。

The yellow one is too expensive. I'll buy the green one, I guess.

## Expansion drill

1. Hóngde piányi.

红的便宜。

The red one is cheaper.

Hóngde piányi yidiǎnr. Wǒ mǎi hóngde ba.

红的便宜一点儿。我买红的吧。

The red one is a little cheaper. I'll buy the red one, I guess.

2. Lánde piányi.

蓝的便宜。

The blue one is cheaper.

Lánde piányi yidiǎnr. Wǒ mǎi lánde ba.

蓝的便宜一点儿。我买蓝的吧。

The blue one is a little cheaper. I'll buy the blue one, I guess.

3. Huángde piányi.

黄的便宜。

The yellow one is cheaper.

Huángde piányi yidiǎnr. Wǒ mǎi huángde ba.

黄的便宜一点儿。我买黄的吧。

The yellow one is a little cheaper. I'll buy the yellow one, I guess.

4. Xiǎode piányi.

小的便宜。

The small one is cheaper.

Xiǎode piányi yidiǎnr. Wǒ mǎi xiǎode ba.

小的便宜一点儿。我买小的吧。

The small one is a little cheaper. I'll buy the small one, I guess.

5. Lǜde piányi.

绿的便宜。

The green one is cheaper.

Lǜde piányi yidiǎnr. Wǒ mǎi lǜde ba.

绿的便宜一点儿。我买绿的吧。

The green one is a little cheaper. I'll buy the green one, I guess.

6. Báide piányi.

白的便宜。

The white one is cheaper.

Báide piányi yidiǎnr. Wǒ mǎi báide ba.

白的便宜一点儿。我买白的吧。

The white one is a little cheaper. I'll buy the white one, I guess.

7. Zhèige piányi.

这个便宜。

This one is cheaper.

Zhèige piányi yidiǎnr. Wǒ mǎi zhèige ba.

这个便宜一点儿。我买这个吧。

This one is a little cheaper. I'll buy this one, I guess.

## Transformation drill

1. Zhèi liǎngběn shū shì wǒde.

这两本书是我的。

These two books are mine.

Cue

hǎo

好

good

Zhèi liǎngde shū, nǎiběn hǎo?

这两的书，哪本好？

Which of these two books is better?

2. Zhèi liǎngkuài fēizào shì wǒde.

这两快肥皂是我的。

These two bars of soap are mine.

Cue

piányi

便宜

cheap

Zhèi liǎngkuài fēizào, nǎikuài piányi?

这两个肥皂，哪块便宜？

Which of these two bars of soap is better?

3. Zhèi liǎngzhāng dìtú shì wǒde.

这两张地图是我的。

These two maps are mine.

Cue

guì

贵

expensive

Zhèi liǎngzhāng dìtú, nǎizhāng guì?

这两张地图，哪张贵？

Which of these two maps is better?

4. Zhèi liǎngbǎ yǔsǎn shì wǒde.



这两把雨伞是我的。

These two umbrellas are mine.

Cue

hǎokàn

好看

good looking

Zhèi liǎngbǎ yǔsǎn, nǎibǎ hǎokàn?

这两把雨伞，哪把好看？

Which of these two umbrellas is better?

5. Zhèi liǎngge xuésheng shì wǒde.

这两个学生是我的。

These two students are mine.

Cue

hǎo

好

good

Zhèi liǎngge xuésheng, nèige hǎo?

这两个学生，哪个好？

Which of these two students is better?

6. Zhèi liǎngběn zìdiǎn shì wǒde.

这两本字典是我的。

These two dictionaries are mine.

Cue

hǎo

好

good

Zhèi liǎngběn zìdiǎn, nǎiběn hǎo?

这两本字典，哪本好？

Which of these two dictionaries is better?

7. Zhèi liǎnfēn bào shì wǒde.

这两分报是我的。

These two newspapers are mine.

Cue

guì

贵

expensive

Zhè liǎngfèn bào, nǎifèn guì?

这两分报，哪分贵？

Which of these two newspapers is better?

## Expansion drill

1. Zhèige tài guì le.

这个太贵了。

This one is too expensive.

Zhèige tài guì le. Nǐ yǒu piányi yìdiǎnrde ma?

这个太贵了。你有便宜一点儿的吗？

This one is too expensive. Do you have one a little cheaper?

2. Zhèiběn tài xiǎo le.

这本太小了。

This one is too small.

Zhèiběn tài xiǎo le. Nǐ yǒu dà yìdiǎnrde ma?

这本太小了。你有大一点儿的吗？

This one is too small. Do you have one a little bigger?

3. Zhèizhāng tài dà le.

这张太大了。

This one is too big.

Zhèizhāng tài dà le. Nǐ yǒu xiǎo yìdiǎnrde ma?

这张太大了。你有小一点儿的吗？

This one is too big. Do you have one a little smaller?

4. Zhèipíng tài xiǎo le.

这瓶太小了。

This one is too small.

Zhèipíng tài xiǎo le. Nǐ yǒu dà yìdiǎnrde ma?

这瓶太小了。你有大一点儿的吗？

This one is too small. Do you have one a little bigger?

5. Zhèige tài dà le.

这个太大了。

This one is too big.

Zhèige tài dà le. Nǐ yǒu xiǎo yìdiǎnrde ma?

这个太大了。你有小一点儿的吗？

This one is too big. Do you have one a little smaller?

6. Zhèipíng tài xiǎo le.

这瓶太小了。

This one is too small.

Zhèipíng tài xiǎo le. Nǐ yǒu dà yìdiǎnrde ma?

这瓶太小了。你有大一点儿的吗？

This one is too small. Do you have one a little bigger?

7. Zhèige tài dà le.

这个太大了。

This one is too big.

Zhèige tài dà le. Nǐ yǒu xiǎo yìdiǎnrde ma?

这个太大了。你有小一点儿的吗？

This one is too big. Do you have one a little smaller?

8. Zhèibǎ tài guì le.

这把太贵了。

This one is too expensive.

Zhèibǎ tài guì le. Nǐ yǒu piányi yìdiǎnrde ma?

这把太贵了。你有便宜一点儿的吗？

This one is too expensive. Do you have one a little cheaper?

9. Zhèikuài tài dà le.

这块太大了。

This one is too big.

Zhèikuài tài dà le. Nǐ yǒu xiǎo yìdiǎnrde ma?

这块太大了。你有大一点儿的吗？

This one is too big. Do you have one a little smaller?

## Response drill

1. Zhèige dàde hǎokàn ma?

这个大的好看吗？

Is this large one nice looking?

Zhèige dàde zhēn hǎokàn.

这个大的真好看。

This large one is really nice looking.

2. Nèige xiǎode hǎokàn ma?

哪个晓得好看吗？

Is that small one nice looking?

Nèige xiǎode zhēn hǎokàn.

那个小的真好看。

That small one is really nice looking.

3. Zhèige lán de guì ma?

这个蓝的贵吗？

Is this blue one expensive?

Zhèige lán de zhēn guì.

这个蓝的真贵。

That blue one is really expensive.

4. Nèibǎ yǔsǎn hǎokàn ma?

哪把雨伞好看吗？

Is that umbrella nice looking?

Nèibǎ yǔsǎn zhēn hǎokàn.

哪把雨伞真好看。

That umbrella is really nice looking.

5. Zhèige huāpíng dà ma?

这个花瓶大吗？

Is this vase big?

Zhèige huāpíng zhēn dà.

阿和个花瓶真大。

This vase is really big.

6. Nèizhāng zhōngguó dìtú hǎokàn ma?

那张中国地图好看吗？

Is that map of China good looking?

Nèizhāng zhōngguó dìtú zhēn hǎokàn.

那张中国地图真好看。

That map of China is really nice looking.

7. Zhèběn zìdiǎn guì ma?

这本字典贵吗？

Is this dictionary expensive?

Zhèběn zìdiǎn zhēn guì.

这本字典真贵。

That dictionary is really expensive.

## Response drill

1. Nèige hǎokàn?

哪个好看？

Which one is better looking?

Zhèige hǎokàn yidiǎnr.

这个好看一点儿。

This one is a little better looking.

2. Nèige hǎokàn ma?

那个好看吗？

Is that one nice looking?

Nèige zhēn hǎokàn.

那个真好看。

That one is really nice looking.

3. Nèiběn piányi?

哪本便宜？

Which one is cheaper?

Zhèiběn piányi yidiǎnr.

这本便宜一点儿。

This one is a little cheaper.

4. Nèiběn piányi ma?

那本便宜吗？

Is that one cheaper?

Nèiběn zhēn piányi.

那本真便宜。

That one is really cheaper.

5. Nèibǎ guì?

哪把贵？

Which one is more expensive?

Zhèibǎ guì yidiǎnr.

这把贵一点儿。

This one is a little more expensive.

6. Nèibǎ dàde guì ma?

那把大的贵吗？

Is that big one more expensive?

Nèibǎ dàde zhēn guì.

那把大的真贵。

That big one is really expensive.

7. Nèizhāng hǎo?

哪张好？

Which one is better?

Zhèizhāng hǎo yìdiǎnr.

这张好一点儿。

This one is a little better.



## Response drill

1. Nín kàn zhèige dàde zěnmeyàng? Zhēn hǎo.

您看这个大的怎么样？真好。

What do you think of this large one? It's really nice.

Hǎo, wǒ mǎi dàde.

好，我买大的。

Okay, I'll buy the large one.

2. Nín kàn nèige lán de zěnmeyàng? Zhēn hǎo.

您看那个蓝的怎么样？真好。

What do you think of this blue one? It's really nice.

Hǎo, wǒ mǎi lán de.

好，我买蓝的。

Okay, I'll buy the blue one.

3. Nín kàn zhèige hóng de zěnmeyàng? Zhēn hǎo.

您看这个红的怎么样？真好。

What do you think of this yellow one? It's really nice.

Hǎo, wǒ mǎi hóng de.

好，我买红的。

Okay, I'll buy the yellow one.

4. Nín kàn nèige xiǎode zěnmeyàng? Zhēn hǎokàn.

您看那个小的怎么样？真好。

What do you think of this small one? It's really nice.

Hǎo, wǒ mǎi xiǎode.

好，我买小的。

Okay, I'll buy the small one.

5. Nín kàn zhèiběn zázhì zěnmeyàng? Zhēn hǎo.

您看这本杂志怎么样？真好。

What do you think of this magazine? It's really nice.

Hǎo, wǒ mǎi zhèiběn.

好，我买这本。

Okay, I'll buy this magazine.

6. Nín kàn nèige huāpíng zěnmeyàng? Zhēn hǎo.

您看那个花瓶怎么样？真好。

What do you think of this vase? It's really nice.

Hǎo, wǒ mǎi nèige.

好，我买那个。

Okay, I'll buy that vase.

7. Nín kàn zhèibǎ yǔsǎn zěnmeyàng? Zhēn hǎo.

您看这把雨伞怎么样？真好。

What do you think of this umbrella? It's really nice.

Hǎo, wǒ mǎi zhèibǎ.

好，我买这把。

Okay, I'll buy this umbrella.

## Response drill

1. Nín yào jǐge?  
您要几个?  
How many do you want?

Cue èr  
—  
—  
two

Qǐng gěi wǒ liǎngge ba.  
请给我两个吧。  
How about giving me two, please.

2. Nín yào jǐběn?  
您要几本?  
How many do you want?

Cue sì  
四  
four

Qǐng gěi wǒ sìběn ba.  
请给我四本吧。  
How about giving me four volumes, please.

3. Nín yào jǐfēn?  
您要几分?  
How many do you want?

Cue yī  
—  
one

Qǐng gěi wǒ yīfēn ba.  
请给我一分吧。  
How about giving me one copy, please.

4. Nín yào jǐzhāng?

您要几张？

How many do you want?

Cue

shí

十

ten

Qǐng gěi wǒ shízhāng ba.

请给我十张吧。

How about giving me ten copies, please.

5. Nín yào jǐbǎ?

您要几把？

How many do you want?

Cue

èr

二

two

Qǐng gěi wǒ liǎngbǎ ba.

请给我两把吧。

How about giving me two pieces, please.

6. Nín yào jǐpíng?

您要几瓶？

How many do you want?

Cue

sān

三

three

Qǐng gěi wǒ sānpíng ba.

请给我三瓶吧。

How about giving me three bottles, please.

7. Nín yào jǐkuài?

您要几块？

How many do you want?

Cue

wǔ

五

five

Qǐng gěi wǒ wǔkuài ba.

请给我五块吧。

How about giving me five bars, please.

## Unit 4

### Reference List

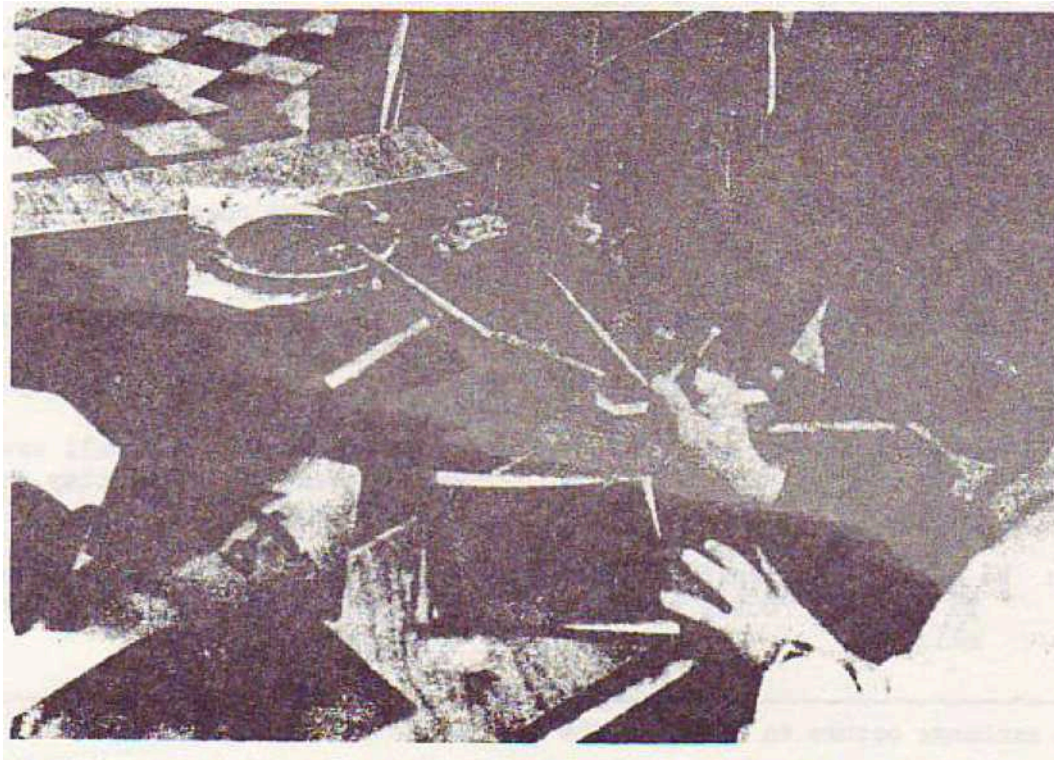
1. A: Nǐ jiālǐde dōngxi dōu dào le ma?  
你家里的东西都到了吗?  
Have all your household things arrived?
- B: Yǒude dào le, yǒude hái méi dào.  
有的到了, 有的还没到。  
Some have arrived, and some haven't arrived yet.
2. C: Zhèxiè zázhi nǐ kàn le ma?  
这些杂志你看了吗?  
Have you read these magazines?
- D: Zhèxiè zázhi, yǒude wǒ kàn le, yǒude hái méi kàn.  
这些杂志, 有的我看了, 有的还没看。  
Some of these magazines I've read, and some I haven't read yet.
3. B: Zuótiān wǒ mǎile yìdiǎn pánziwǎn.  
昨天我买了一点盘子碗。  
Yesterday I bought some dishes.
- 4<sup>a</sup>. A: Nín mǎi shénme le?  
您买什么了?  
What did you buy?
- B: Wǒ mǎi fǎnwǎn le.  
我买饭碗了。  
I bought rice bowls.
5. A: Nǐ mǎile duóshao?  
你买了多少?  
How many did you buy?
- B: Wǒ mǎile shíge fǎnwǎn, shíge dà pánzi.  
我买了十个饭碗, 十个大盘子。  
I bought ten rice bowls and ten large plates.
6. A: Nàxiè pánziwǎn  
shi 是蓝的。  
They're blue ones.
- A: À, wǒ yě xǐhuan lán de.  
哦, 我也喜欢蓝的。  
Oh, I like blue ones too.

- 7.<sup>b</sup> A: Shi zài shénme dìfang mǎide?  
是在什么地方买的?  
Where were they bought?
- B: Shi zài Dìyī Gōngsī mǎide.  
是在第一宫四买的。  
They were bought at the First Company.
8. B: Tāmen mǎide dōngxi zhēn hǎo.  
他们买的東西真好。  
The things they sell are really nice.
9. B: Tāmen mǎide pānziwǎn, yǒude zhēn hǎokàn. Kěshi guì yìdiǎn.  
他们买的盘子碗，有的真好看。  
Some of the dishes they sell are really beautiful. But they are a little expensive.
10. B: Wǒ mǎide nàxiē pānziwǎn dōu bù tài guì. Guìde wǒ méi mǎi.  
我买的那些盘子碗都不太贵。贵的我没买。  
All those dishes I bought were not too expensive. I didn't buy the expensive ones.
11. B: Nǐde zhège chábēi hěn hǎo. Shi zài shénme dìfang mǎide?  
你的这个茶杯很好。是在什么地方买的?  
This teacup of yours is very nice. Where was it bought?
- A: Yě shì zài Dìyī Gōngsī mǎide.  
也是在第一宫四买的。  
It was bought at the First Company too.
12. yíge bīngxiāng  
一个冰箱  
one refrigerator
13. yízhāng dìtǎn  
一张地毯  
one carpet, rug
14. yíge shūjiàzi  
一个书架子  
one bookcase
15. yíbǎ yǐzi  
一把椅子  
one chair
16. Yízhāng zhuōzi  
一张桌子  
one table

<sup>a</sup>This exchange occurs on the P-1 tape only.

<sup>b</sup>This exchange does not occur until №11 on the P-1 tape.

**Figure 3.1. Writing suspicious characters on red paper at Chinese New Year's. People buy these decorations to hang on doors.**





## Vocabulary

à	哦	Oh!
bīngxiāng	冰箱	refrigerator
chábēi	茶杯	teacup
dìtǎn (yì zhāng)	地毯 (一张)	rug
Dìyī Gōngsī	第一公司	the First Company (department store In Taipei)
dōngxi	东西	thing
fǎnwǎn	饭碗	rice bowl
gōngsī	公司	company
kěshi	可是	but
nèixie	那些	those
pánzi	盘子	plate
pánziwǎn	盘子碗	dishes
shūjiàzi	书架子	bookcase
wǎn	碗	bowl
-xie (-xiē)	些	counter for an indefinite plural number of things
xǐhuan	喜欢	to like
yánsè	颜色	color
yīzu (yìbǎ)	一族 (一把)	chair
yǒude	有的	some
zhèxiē	这些	these
zhuōzi (yìzhāng)	桌子	table
cháyè	茶叶	tea (literally, "tea leaves")

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1-2

1.	A:	Nǐ jiālǐde dōngxi dōu dào le ma?
		你家里的东西都到了吗？
		Have all your household things arrived?
	B:	Yǒude dào le,yǒude hái méi dào.
		有的到了，有的还没到。
		Some have arrived, and some haven't arrived yet.
2.	C:	Zhèxiè zázhi nǐ kàn le ma?
		这些杂志你看了吗？
		Have you read these magazines?
	D:	Zhèxiè zázhi, yǒude wǒ kàn le, yǒude hái méi kàn.
		这些杂志，有的我看了，有的还没看。
		Some of these magazines I've read, and some I haven't read yet.

**Yǒude:** Like its English equivalent “some,” **yǒude** may be used either with the noun it modifies, as in **yǒude dōngxi**, “some things,” or by itself, when the noun it modifies is obvious from the context.

Yǒude	dōngxi	dào le.	Some	things	have arrived.
有的	东西	到了。			
Yǒude		dào le.	Some		have arrived.
有的		到了。			

Neither **yǒude** nor a noun modified by that word can follow the verb. When **yǒude** is the grammatical object of the verb, it must precede the subject, in topic position.

Yǒude	wǒ	mài le.
有的	我	买了。
Some	I	sold.

The counter **-xie** is added to the specifiers **zhè**, “this,” and **nà**, “that,” to make the plural specifiers **zhèxiè**, “these,” and **nàxiè**, “those.” These plural specifiers are used only when the number of items is not mentioned. “These apples” is **zhèxiè píngguǒ**, but “these TWO apples” is **zhè liǎngge píngguǒ**, without the **-xie**.

In **zhèxiè zázhi**, **-xie** acts as a counter for an indefinite number of items. You might think of the phrase as meaning “a bunch of.”

zhè	-běn	zázhi	this magazine
这	本	杂志	
zhè	-xie	zázhi	that bunch of/ those magazines

这	些	杂志	
---	---	----	--

Zhèxiē zázhì, yǒude...: In the last sentence in exchange 2, *yǒude* is the topic of *wǒ kàn le* and *wǒ hái mei kàn*. *Zhèxiē zázhì*, “these magazines,” is the topic of the whole sentence, naming the set of items from which “some” were selected.

Zhèxiē zázhì,	yǒude	kàn le...
这些杂志	有的	看了。。。。
[Of] these magazines,	[there are] some	I have read...

## Notes on №3-5

3. B: **Zuótiān wǒ mǎile yìdiǎn pánziwǎn.**  
 昨天我买了一点盘子碗。  
 Yesterday I bought some dishes.
4. A: **Nín mǎi shénme le?**  
 您买什么了?  
 What did you buy?
- B: **Wǒ mǎi fǎnwǎn le.**  
 我买饭碗了。  
 I bought rice bowls.
5. A: **Nǐ mǎile duóshǎo?**  
 你买了多少?  
 How many did you buy?
- B: **Wǒ mǎile shíge fǎnwǎn, shíge dà pánzi.**  
 我买了十个饭碗，十个大盘子。  
 I bought ten rice bowls and ten large plates.

The noun **zuótiān**, “yesterday,” is a time word. Time words are placed Before or after the subject but always before the verb. In No. 3, **zuótiān** appears in the topic position, before the subject, instead of directly before the verb.

Adverbs such as **yě**, “also”; **hái**, “still”; **zhǐ**, “only”; and **jiù**, “only” also precede verbs. But these words cannot be placed before the subject.

<b>Tā zuótiān bù zài.</b>	He wasn't here yesterday.
他昨天布菜。	
<b>Zuótiān wǒ méi kàn bào.</b>	I didn't read the paper yesterday.
昨天我没看报。	
<b>Tā yě lái.</b>	He is also coming.
他也来。	

**Le:** The sentences in No. 3 and No. 5 focus on how many items the sentence object refers to. Such sentences have AMOUNT OBJECTS. In sentences with amount objects, completion **le** immediately follows the verb. This rule applies likewise to duration sentences, which involve AMOUNTS of time.

<b>Wǒ mǎile shíge fǎnwǎn.</b>	I bought ten rice bowls.
我买了十个饭碗。	
<b>Wǒ zhùle shíge yuè.</b>	I stayed ten months.
我住了是个月。	

New-situation **le** may be added to both examples, with the meaning “so far.”

<b>Wǒ mǎile shíge fǎnwǎn le.</b>	I have bought ten rice bowls (so far)
----------------------------------	---------------------------------------

我买了诗歌饭碗了。	
Wǒ zhùle shíge yuē le.	I have stayed ten months (so far).
我住了是个月了。	

The sentences in exchange 4 focus on WHAT the sentence object refers to, not on how many. Such sentences have NONAMOUNT OBJECTS. In sentences with nonamount objects, completion follows the object at the end of the sentence.

Wǒ mǎi			fànwǎn	le.	I bought rice bowls.
我买			饭碗	了。	
Wǒ mǎi	-le	shíge	fànwǎn.		I bought ten rice bowls.
我买	了	十个	饭碗。		

Duōshao, or jǐge, and yidiǎn are amount objects, since they ask or answer “how many.”

Nǐ mǎile duōshao/jǐge?		How many did you buy?
你买了多少/几个？		
Wǒ mǎile yidiǎn.		I bought a little.
我买了一点。		

Shénme is a nonamount object, since it asks “what.”

Nǐ mǎi shénme le?		What did you buy?
你买什么了？		

To some speakers, the question and answer Nǐ mǎi shénme?Wǒ mǎile fànwǎn are acceptable.

**Variation in speech:** Individual variations in language usage among speakers of Chinese always seem to be a headache for students. You may have already heard your teachers say “This way is right, but that way is right too.” In writing this course, the practice has been not to give only one “right” way to say things but rather to point out major differences in usage that you are likely to find.

Chinese speakers with different backgrounds and experience frequently have varying opinions about what is acceptable speech, sometimes feeling quite strongly about what is “correct.” There will inevitably be instance when even two of your teachers disagree about the acceptable way to express a thought. In such cases, the social differences in the situations which the teachers are envisioning would probably make different speech appropriate in each situation.

Bather than trying to find “the right way” to say something, try to associate the different ways of expressing a thought with their social contexts. AND, adjust your speech to the people you are speaking with. In this way, you will learn as much as possible, and your speech will be accepted by a wide range of people.

## Notes on №6

6. A: **Nàxiē pánziwǎn shì lán de.**  
 那些盘子碗是蓝的。  
 They're blue ones.
- A: **À, wǒ yě xǐhuan lán de.**  
 哦，我也喜欢蓝的。  
 Oh, I like blue ones too.

**Shì lán de:** In English, you would probably describe the color of the shes by saying “They’re blue.” In Chinese, you say “They’re blue ones,” **lán de**, turning the color word into a noun by adding the marker **-de**. Notice that the question uses the same pattern:

Nàxiē pánziwǎn	shì	shénme yánsè	-de?
那些盘子碗	是	什么颜色	的？
Those dishes	are	what color	ones?

## Notes on №7

7. A: Shi zài shénme dìfang mǎide?  
是在什么地方买的?  
Where were they bought?
- B: Shi zài Dìyī Gōngsī mǎide.  
是在第一宫四买的。  
They were bought at the First Company.

**Shénme dìfang** means, literally, “what place.” This expression is often used instead of **nǎr** or **náli** when asking about a specific location.

**Shì zài shénme dìfang mǎide?** is translated into English with a passive verb: “were bought.” The sentence must be translated this way because no subject is mentioned—the sentence does not state who did the buying. In Chinese, the verb form remains the same whether or not the subject is mentioned.

Wǒ	shì	zài	Dìyī Gōngsī	mǎide	chábēi.	I bought the cups at the First Company.
我	是	在	第一公司	买的	茶杯。	
	Shì	zài	Dìyī Gōngsī	mǎide.		They were bought at the First Company.
	是	在第	一公司	买	的。	
Chábēi	shì	zài	Dìyī Gōngsī	mǎide.		The cups were bought at the First Company.
茶杯	是	在	第一公司	买	的。	

## Notes on №8

8. B: Tāmen mǎide dōngxi zhēn hǎo.  
 他们买的东西真好。  
 The things they sell are really nice.

Tāmen mǎide dōngxi: This noun phrase consists of a noun, dōngxi, “things,” preceded by the clause which modifies it, tāmen mǎide, “(which) they sell.”

Tāmen mǎide	dōngxi
他们买的	东西
The things	[which] they sell

In Chinese, modifying clauses, like all other modifiers, precede the element which is modified. In English, modifying clauses follow the modified element often beginning with “who,” “which,” “that,” and so on.

Tā shuōde huà wǒ dōu bù dǒng.	I don't understand anything he says.
他说的话我都不懂。	
Tā xiěde zì zhēn hǎokàn.	The characters he writes are really beautiful.
他写的字真好看。	
Nǐ mǎide píngguǒ hěn piányi.	The apples that you bought are really cheap.
你买的苹果很便宜。	
Tā xiěde shū wǒ hěn xiǎng kàn.	I really want to read the book which he wrote.
他写的书我很想看。	



## Notes on №9-11

9. B: Tāmen mǎide pánziwǎn, yǒude zhēn hǎokàn. Kěshi guì yìdiǎn.  
 他们买的盘子碗，有的真好看。  
 Some of the dishes they sell are really beautiful. But they are a little expensive.
10. B: Wǒ mǎide nàxiē pánziwǎn dōu bú tài guì. Guìde wǒ méi mǎi.  
 我买的那些盘子碗都不太贵。贵的我没买。  
 All those dishes I bought were not too expensive. I didn't buy the expensive ones.
11. B: Nǐde zhège chábēi hěn hǎo. Shì zài shénme dìfang mǎide?  
 你的这个茶杯很好。是在什么地方买的？  
 This teacup of yours is very nice. Where was it bought?
- A: Yě shì zài Dìyī Gōngsī mǎide.  
 也是在第一宫四买的。  
 It was bought at the First Company too.

Nǐde zhège chábēi, wǒ mǎide nàxiē pánziwǎn: Possessives always precede specifiers in Chinese, and modifying clauses usually precede specifiers.

This is the opposite of English word order for the same elements. Compare:

nǐde	zhège	chábēi	
你的	这个	茶杯	
	this	teacup	of yours

wǒ mǎide	nàxiē	pánziwǎn	
我买的	那些	盘子碗	
	those	dishes	[which] I bought

## Vocabulary booster

### Things in Classroom

calendar by the day	rìlì	日历
calendar by the month	yuèlì	月历
calendar by the year	niánlì	年历
chair	yǐzi	椅子
chalk	fěnbǐ	粉笔
chalkboard	hēibǎn	黑板
chalkboard eraser	(hēi)bǎncā(r)	黑板橡皮擦
desk	xiězítái, shūzhuō(r)	桌子
desk lamp	táidēng	台灯
eraser (pencil)	xiàngpí cā (qiānbǐ)	橡皮擦 (铅笔)
globe	dìqiú	地球
map	dìtú	地图
notebook (bound pages)	bǐjìběn(r)	笔记本 (装订页)
notebook (loose-loaf)	huóyējìāzi	笔记本 (散装)
notes	bǐjì	笔记
pencil sharpener	zhuànbǐdāo# juànbǐdāo	卷笔刀
ruler	chǐzi	尺子
stapler	dìngshūjī	订书机
student	xuéshēng	学生
table	zhuōzi	桌子
teacher	lǎoshī	老师
textbook	kèběn(r), jiàokēshū	课本, 教科书
typewriter	dǎzìjī	打字机

## Drills

### Transformation drill

1. Nèige dōngxi dào le ma?

那个东西到了吗？

Has that thing arrived?

Nèixie dōngxi dōu dào le ma?

那些东西都到了吗？

Have all those things arrived?

2. Nèibǎ yǐzi lái le ma?

哪把椅子来了吗？

Is that chair here?

Nèixie yǐzi dōu lái le ma?

那些椅子都来了吗？

Are all those chairs here?

3. Nèige shūjiàzi dào le ma?

那个书架子到了吗？

Has that bookcase arrived?

Nèixie shūjiàzi dōu dào le ma?

那些书架子都到了吗？

Have all those bookcases arrived?

4. Nèiběn shū dào le ma?

那本书到了吗？

Has that book arrived?

Nèixie shū dōu dào le ma?

那些书都到了吗？

Have all those books arrived?

5. Nèizhāng dìtú lái le ma?

那张地图来了吗？

Is that map here?

Nèixie ditú dōu lái le ma?

那些地图都来了吗？

Are all those maps here?

6. Nèiběn zìdiǎn dào le ma?

那本字典到了吗？

Has that dictionary arrived?

Nèixie zìdiǎn dōu dào le ma?

那些字典都到了吗？

Have all those things arrived?

7. Nèiběn zázhì lái le ma?

那本杂志来了吗？

Is that magazine here?

Nèixie zázhì dōu lái le ma?

那些杂志都来了吗？

Are all those magazines here?

## Expansion drill

1. Dàde wǒ méi mǎi.

大的我没买。

I didn't buy the big ones.

Dàde wǒ dōu méi mǎi.

大的我都没买。

I didn't buy any of the big ones.

2. Nèixie shū wǒ méi kàn.

那些书我没看。

I didn't read those books.

Nèixie shū wǒ dōu méi kàn.

那些书我都没念。

I didn't read any of those books.

3. Lánde wǒ méi mǎi.

蓝的我没买。

I didn't buy the blue ones.

Lánde wǒ dōu méi mǎi.

蓝的我都没买。

I didn't buy any of the blue ones.

4. Nèixie shū wǒ méi niàn.

那些书我没念。

I didn't study those books.

Nèixie shū wǒ dōu méi niàn.

那些书我都没念。

I didn't study any of those books.

5. Xiǎode wǒ méi mǎi.

小的我没买。

I didn't buy the small ones.

Xiǎode wǒ dōu méi mǎi.

小的我都没买。

I didn't buy any of the small ones.

6. Zhèixie dìtǎn wǒ méi mǎi.

这些地毯我没买。

I didn't buy those carpets.

Zhèixie dìtǎn wǒ dōu méi mǎi.

这些地毯我都没买。

I didn't buy any of those carpets.

7. Dà zhuōzi wǒ méi mǎi.

大桌子我没买。

I didn't buy the big tables.

Dà zhuōzi wǒ dōu méi mǎi.

大桌子我都没买。

I didn't buy any of the big tables.

## Response drill

1. Nǐ jiālǐde dōngxi dōu dào le ma?  
你家里的东西都到了吗?  
Have all your household things arrived?

Yǒude dào le, yǒude hái méi dào.  
有的到了，有的还没到。  
Some have arrived, and some haven't arrived yet.

2. Nèixie zázhì nǐ dōu kàn le ma?  
那些杂志你都看了吗?  
Did you read any of those magazines?

Yǒude kàn le, yǒude hái méi kàn.  
有的看了，有的还没看。  
Some I read, some I haven't read yet.

3. Nǐde péngyǒu dōu lái le ma?  
你的朋友都来了吗?  
Have all your friend arrived?

Yǒude lái le, yǒude hái méi lái.  
有的来了，有的还没来。  
Some are here, some haven't come yet.

4. Nèixie dìtǎn nǐ dōu mǎi le ma?  
那些地毯你都买了吗?  
Did you buy any of those carpets?

Yǒude mǎi le, yǒude hái méi mǎi.  
有的买了，有的还没买。  
Some I bought, some I haven't yet.

5. Zhèxiē shū nǐ dōu niàn le ma?  
这些书你都念了吗?  
Did you study any of those books?

Yǒude niàn le, yǒude hái méi niàn.

有的念了，有的还没念。

Some I studied, some I haven't yet.

6. Nǐmen háizi dōu zǒu le ma?

你们孩子都走了吗？

Have all your children arrived?

Yǒude zǒu le, yǒude hái méi zǒu.

有的走了，有的还没走。

Some left, some haven't left yet.

7. Nèixie shūjiàzi nǐ dōu mǎi le ma?

那些书架子你都买了么？

Did you buy any of those bookcases?

Yǒude mǎi le, yǒude hái méi mǎi.

有的买了，有的还没买。

Some I bought, some I haven't bought yet.



## Response drill

1. Nǐ jiālǐde dōngxi dōu dào le ma?  
你家里的东西都到了吗?  
Have all your household things arrived?

Cue dōu  
都  
all

Dōu dào le.  
都到了。  
All of them have arrived.

2. Nèixie zázhi nǐ dōu kàn le ma?  
那些杂志你都看了吗?  
Have you looked at all those magazines?

Cue yǒude  
有的  
some

Yǒude kàn le, yǒude hái méi kàn.  
有的看了，有的还没看。  
Some of them I have looked at, some of them I haven't looked at yet.

3. Nèixie bào nǐ dōu kàn le ma?  
那些报你都看了吗?  
Have you looked at all those newspapers?

Cue dōu  
都  
all

Dōu kàn le.  
都看了。  
I have looked at all of them.

4. Nèi sānběn shū nǐ dōu niàn le ma?

那三本书你都念了吗？

Have you studied all those 3 books?

Cue dōu  
都  
all

Dōu niàn le.

都念了。

I studied them all.

5. Nǐ péngyǒu dōu lái le ma?

你朋友都来了吗？

Have your friends all arrived?

Cue yǒude  
有的  
some

Yǒude lái le, yǒude hái méi lái.

有的来了，有的还没来。

Some already arrived, some haven't arrived yet.

6. Zhuōzi, yǐzi dōu mǎi le ma?

桌子，椅子都买了吗？

The tables, the chairs, did you buy them all?

Cue dōu  
都  
all

Dōu mǎi le.

都买了。

I bought them all.

7. Zhèngzhìxué nǐ dōu niàn le ma?

政治学你都念了马？

Have you study all the political science books?

Cue yǒude

有的

some

Yǒude niàn le, yǒude hái méi niàn.

有的念了，有的还没念。

Some I studied, some I haven't yet.

## Response drill

1. Tā mǎi shénme le?  
他/她买什么了?  
What did he buy?

Cue pánziwǎn  
盘子碗  
dishes

Tā mǎi pánziwǎn le.  
他/她买盘子碗了。  
He bought dishes.

2. Wáng tóngzhì mǎi shénme le?  
王同志买什么了?  
What did comrade Wáng buy?

Cue yǔsǎn  
雨伞  
umbrella

Wáng tóngzhì mǎi yǔsǎn le.  
王同志买雨伞了。  
Comrade Wáng bought an umbrella.

3. Nǐ mǎi shénme le?  
What did you buy?

Cue dìtǎn  
地毯  
carpet

Wǒ mǎi dìtǎn le.  
我买地毯了。  
I bought a carpet.

4. Hú tóngzhì mǎi shénme le?

胡同志买什么了？

What did comrade Hú buy?

Cue

zhuōzi

桌子

table

Hú tóngzhì mǎi zhuōzi le.

胡同志买桌子了。

Comrade Hú bought a table.

5. Tā dìdì mǎi shénme le?

他/她弟弟买什么了？

What did his/her younger brother buy?

Cue

huāpíng

花瓶

vase

Tā dìdì mǎi huāpíng le.

他/她弟弟买花瓶了。

His/her older younger brother bought a vase.

6. Tā mǔqīn mǎi shénme le?

他/她母亲买什么了？

What did his/her mother buy?

Cue

yǐzi

椅子

chair

Tā mǔqīn mǎi yǐzi le.

他/她母亲买椅子拉。

His/her mother bought a chair.

7. Tā àiren mǎi shénme le?

他/她爱人买什么了？

What did his/her spouse buy?

Cue

shūjiàzi

书架子

bookcase

Tā àiren mǎi shūjiàzi le.

他/她爱人买书架子了。

His/her lover bought a bookcase.

## Response drill

1. Zhāng tàitai mǎi shénme le?

张太太买什么了？

What did Mrs. Zhāng buy?

Cue

shíge fǎnwǎn

十个饭碗

ten rice bowls

Zhāng tàitai mǎile shíge fǎnwǎn.

张太太买了十个饭碗。

Mrs Zhāng bought ten rice bowls.

2. Wáng tóngzhì mǎi shénme le?

王同志买什么了？

What did Comrade Wáng buy?

Cue

liǎngbǎ yǐzi

两把椅子

two chairs

Wáng tóngzhì mǎile liǎngbǎ yǐzi.

王同志买了两把椅子。

Mr. Wáng bought two chairs.

3. Hú xiānsheng mǎi shénme le?

胡先生买什么了？

What did Mr. Hú buy?

Cue

yìzhāng zhuōzi

一张桌子

one table

Hú xiānsheng mǎile yìzhāng zhuōzi.

胡先生买了一张桌子。

Mr. Hú bought one table.

4. Lǐ xiānsheng mǎi shénme le?

李先生买什么了？

What did Mr. Lǐ buy?

Cue

yíge shūjiàzi  
一个书架子  
one bookcase

Lǐ xiānsheng mǎile yíge shūjiàzi.

李先生买了一个书架子。

Mr. Lǐ bought one bookcase.

5. Lǐ tàitai mǎi shénme le?

李太太买什么了？

What did Mrs. Lǐ buy?

Cue

yízhāng dìtǎn  
一张地毯  
one carpet

Lǐ tàitai mǎile yízhāng dìtǎn.

李太太买了一张地毯。

Mrs. Lǐ bought one carpet.

6. Hú tàitai mǎi shénme le?

胡太太买什么了？

What did Mrs. Hú buy?

Cue

sìge chábēi  
四个茶杯  
four tea cups

Hú tàitai mǎile sìge chábēi.

胡太太买了四个茶杯。

Mrs. Hú bought four tea cups.

7. Wáng xiānsheng mǎi shénme le?

王先生买什么了？

What did Mr. Wáng buy?

Cue

sānge pánzi



三个盘子

three plates

Wáng xiānsheng mǎile sānge pánzi.

万先生买了三个盘子。

Mr. Wáng bought four plates.

## Transformation drill

1. Tā mǎi dà pánzi le.  
他/她买大盘子了。  
He bought large dishes.

Cue duōshao  
多少  
how many

Tā mǎile duōshao dà pánzi?  
他/她买了多少大盘子？  
How many large dishes did he/she buy?

2. Tā mǎi píngguǒ le.  
他/她买苹果了。  
He bought apples.

Cue jǐ  
几  
how many

Tā mǎile jǐge píngguǒ?  
他买了几个苹果？  
How many apples did he/she buy?

3. Wáng tàitai mǎi huāpíng le.  
王太太买花瓶了。  
Mrs. Wáng bought vases.

Cue jǐ  
几  
how many

Wáng tàitai mǎile jǐge huāpíng?  
王太太买了几个花瓶？  
How many vases did Mrs. Wáng buy?

4. Zhāng xiānsheng mǎi shūjiàzi le.

张先生买书架子。

Mr. Zhāng bought bookcases.

Cue

duōshao

多少

how many

Zhāng xiānsheng mǎile duōshao shūjiàzi?

张先生买了多少书架子？

How many bookcases did Mr. Zhāng buy?

5.

Hú tàitai mǎi yǐzi le.

胡太太买椅子了。

Mrs. Hú bought chairs.

Cue

jǐ

几

how many

Hú tàitai mǎile jǐbǎ yǐzi?

胡太太买了几把椅子？

How many chairs did Mrs. Hú buy?

6.

Zhāng tàitai mǎi féizào le.

张太太买肥皂了。

Mrs. Zhāng bought soap.

Cue

duōshao

多少

how many

Zhāng tàitai mǎile duōshao féizào?

张太太买了多少肥皂？

How many bars of soap did Mrs. Zhāng buy?

7.

Wú tàitai mǎi dìtǎn le.

吴太太买地毯了。

Mrs. Wú bought carpets.

Cue

jǐ

几

how many

Wǔ tàitai mǎile jǐzhāng dìtǎn?

吴太太买了几张地毯？

How many carpets did Mrs. Wǔ buy?

## Response drill

1. Tā mǎi shénme le?  
他/她买了什么了?  
What did he/she buy?

Cue fǎnwǎn  
饭碗  
rice bowls

Tā mǎi fǎnwǎn le.  
他/她买饭碗了。  
He/she bought rice bowls.

2. Tā mǎi shénme le?  
他/她买了什么了?  
What did he/she buy?

Cue shíge fǎnwǎn  
十个饭碗  
ten rice bowls

Tā mǎile shíge fǎnwǎn.  
他/她买了十个饭碗。  
He/she bought ten rice bowls.

3. Tā mǎi shénme le?  
他/她买了什么了?  
What did he/she buy?

Cue yìdiǎnr pánziwǎn  
一点儿盘子碗  
some dishes

Tā mǎile yìdiǎnr pánziwǎn.  
他/她买了一点儿盘子碗。  
He/she bought some dishes.

4. Wáng tóngzhi mǎi shénme le?

王同志买了什么了？

What did Comrade Wáng buy?

Cue

yǔsǎn

雨伞

umbrella

Wáng tóngzhì mǎi yǔsǎn le.

王同志买雨伞了。

Comrade Wáng bought an umbrella.

5. Wáng tóngzhì mǎi shénme le?

王同志买了什么了？

What did Comrade Wáng buy?

Cue

liǎngbǎ yǐzi

两把椅子

two chairs

Wáng tóngzhì mǎile liǎngbǎ yǐzi.

万通之买了两把椅子。

Comrade Wáng bought two chairs.

6. Tā mǎi shénme le?

他/她买了什么了？

What did he/she buy?

Cue

sìzhāng dìtǎn

四张地毯

four carpets

Tā mǎile sìzhāng dìtǎn.

他/她买了四张地毯。

He/she bought four carpets.

7. Hú tóngzhì mǎi shénme le?

胡同志买了什么了？

What did Comrade Hú buy?

Cue

yidiǎn júzi

一点橘子

some oranges

Hú tóngzhì mǎile yidiǎn júzi.

胡同志买了一点橘子。

Comrade Hú bought some oranges.

## Response drill

1. Nèixie shì shénme yánsède?

那些什么颜色的？

What color are those?

Cue

lán

蓝

blue

Nèixie shì lán de.

那些是蓝的。

Those are blue.

2. Dìtǎn shì shénme yánsède?

地毯是什么颜色的？

What color are the carpets?

Cue

hóng

红

red

Dìtǎn shì hóng de.

地毯是红的。

The carpet is red.

3. Shūjiàzi shì shénme yánsède?

书架子是什么颜色的？

What color are the bookcases?

Cue

huáng

黄

yellow

Shūjiàzi shì huáng de.

书架子是黄的。

The bookcase is yellow.

4. Nèibǎ yǐzi shì shénme yánsède?



哪把椅子是什么颜色的？

What color are that chair?

Cue

bái

白

white

Nèibǎ yǐzi shì báide.

哪把椅子是白的。

That chair is white.

5. Nǐde zhuōzi shì shénme yánsède?

你的桌子是什么颜色的？

What color are his/her carpet?

Cue

hóng

红

red

Tāde dìtǎn shì hóngde.

他的地毯是白的。

His/her carpet is red.

7. Dàde shì shénme yánsède?

大的是什么颜色的？

What color are the big ones?

Cue

lán

蓝

blue

Dàde shì lánde.

大的是懒得。

The big one is blue.

## Expansion drill

1. Pánzi shì shénme yánsède?  
盘子是什么颜色的?  
What color is the plate? (are the plates)

Cue that

Nèige pánzi shì shénme yánsède?  
那个盘子是什么颜色的?  
What color is that plate?

2. Zhuōzi shì shénme yánsède?  
桌子是什么颜色的?  
What color is the table?

Cue those

Nèixie zhuōzi shì shénme yánsède?  
那些桌子是什么颜色的?  
What color is those tables?

3. Yǐzi shì shénme yánsède?  
椅子是什么颜色的?  
What color is the chair?

Cue this

Zhèibǎ yǐzi shì shénme yánsède?  
这把椅子是什么颜色的?  
What color is this chair?

4. Shūjiàzi shì shénme yánsède?  
书架子是什么颜色的?  
What color is the bookcase?

Cue these

Zhèixie shūjiàzi shì shénme yánsède?

这些书架子是什么颜色的？

What color are these bookcases?

5. Dìtǎn shì shénme yánsède?

地毯是什么颜色的？

What color is the carpet?

Cue that

Nèizhāng dìtǎn shì shénme yánsède?

那张地毯是什么颜色的？

What color is that carpet?

6. Huāpíng shì shénme yánsède?

花瓶是什么颜色的？

What color is the vase?

Cue those

Nèixie huāpíng shì shénme yánsède?

那些花瓶是什么颜色的？

What color is these vases?

7. Yǔsǎn shì shénme yánsède?

雨伞是什么颜色的？

What color is the umbrella?

Cue this

Zhèibǎ yǔsǎn shì shénme yánsède?

这把雨伞是什么颜色的？

What color is this umbrella?

## Transformation drill

1. Shi Zhōngguó shū.

是中国书。

It's a Chinese book.

Cue

mǎi

买

to buy

Tā mǎide shū shì zhōngguó shū.

他/她买的书是中国书。

The book he/she bought (is buying) is a Chinese book.

2. Shi měiguó zhuōzi.

是美国桌子。

It's an American table.

Cue

xǐhuan

喜欢

to want

Tā xǐhuande zhuōzi shì Měiguó zhuōzi.

他/她喜欢的桌子是美国桌子。

The table he/she like is an American table.

3. Shi Riběn shūjiàzi.

是日本书架子。

It's a Japanese bookcase.

Cue

mǎi

买

to buy

Tā mǎide shūjiàzi shì Riběn shūjiàzi.

他/她书架子是日本书架子。

The bookcase he/she bought is a Japanese bookcase.

4. Shi Yīngguó zàzhì.

是英国杂志。

It's an English magazine.

Cue

kàn

看

to read

Tā kànde zázhi shì Yīngguó zázhi.

他/她看的杂志是英国杂志。

The magazine he/she look at is an English magazine.

5. Shi Zhōngguó pánzi.

是中国盘子。

It's a Chinese plate.

Cue

xǐhuan

喜欢

to want

Tā xǐhuande pánzi shì Zhōngguó pánzi.

他/她喜欢的盘子是中国盘子。

The plate he/she like is a Chinese plate.

6. Shi Fàguó ditǎn.

是法国地毯。

It's a French carpet.

Cue

mǎi

买

to buy

Tā mǎide ditǎn shì Fàguó ditǎn.

他/她买的地毯是法国地毯。

The carpet he/she bought is a French carpet.

7. Shi Qīngdǎo píjiǔ.

是青岛啤酒。

It's a beer from Qīngdǎo.

Cue

mǎi

买

to buy

Tā mǎide pǐjiǔ shì Qīngdǎo pǐjiǔ.

他/她买的啤酒是青岛啤酒。

The beer he/she bought is a beer from Qīngdǎo.

## Transformation drill

1. Tā mǎide chábēi zhēn guì.  
他/她买的茶杯真贵。  
The teacups he/she sells are really expensive.

Tā mǎide chábēi shì guìde.  
他/她买的茶杯是故意的。  
The teacups he sells are expensive ones.

2. Tā mǎide féizào zhēn hǎo.  
他/她买的肥皂真好。  
The soap he/she sells are very good.

Tā mǎide féizào shì hǎode.  
他/她买的肥皂是好的。  
The soaps he/she sells are expensive ones.

3. Tā mǎide dìtǎn zhēn dà.  
他/她买的地毯真大。  
The maps he/she sells are very big.

Tā mǎide dìtǎn shì dàde.  
他/她买的地毯是大的。  
The carpets he/she sells are good ones.

4. Tā mǎide dìtǎn zhēn guì.  
他/她买的地毯真贵。  
The carpets he/she sells are very expensive.

Tā mǎide dìtǎn shì guìde.  
他/她买的地毯是贵的。  
The carpets he/she sells are expensive ones.

5. Tā mǎide yǐzi zhēn xiǎo.  
他/她买的椅子真小。  
The chairs he/she sells are very small.

Tā mǎide yǐzi shì xiǎode.

他/她买的椅子是小的。

The chairs he/she sells are small ones.

6. Tā mǎide pánzi zhēn piányi.

他/她买的盘子真便宜。

The plates he/she sells are very cheap.

Tā mǎide pánzi shì piányide.

他/她买的盘子是便宜的。

The plates he/she sells are cheap ones.

7. Tā mǎide fǎnwǎn zhēn hǎo.

他/她买的饭碗真好。

The bowls he/she sells are very good.

Tā mǎide fǎnwǎn shì hǎode.

他/她买的饭碗是好的。

The bowls he/she sells are good ones.



## Expansion and expansion drill

1. Tā mǎi shū le.

他/她买书了。

He/she bought books.

Cue

piányi

便宜

cheap

Tā mǎide shū zhēn piányi.

他/她书真便宜。

The books he/she bought are really cheap.

2. Tā mǎi shū le.

他/她买书了。

He/she bought books.

Cue

piányide

便宜的

cheap ones

Tā mǎide shū shì piányide.

他/她书是便宜的。

The books he/she bought are cheap ones.

3. Tā kàn shū le.

他/她看书了。

He/she bought books.

Cue

Zhōngguó shū

中国书

American books

Tā kànde shū shì Zhōngguó shū.

他/她书是中国书。

The books he/she looked at are Chinese books.

4. Zhào xiānsheng kàn ditú le.

赵先生看地图了。

Mr. *Zhào* looked at maps.

Cue

dà

大

big

*Zhào xiānsheng kànde dìtú zhēn dà.*

赵先生看的地图真大。

The maps Mr. *Zhào* looked at are really big.

5. *Zhōu tàitai mǎi dìtǎn le.*

周太太买地毯了。

Mrs. *Zhōu* bought carpets.

Cue

guì

贵的

expensive ones

*Zhōu tàitai mǎide dìtǎn shì guìde.*

周太太买的地毯是贵的。

he carpets Mrs. *Zhōu* bought are expensive ones.

6. *Zhāng xiānsheng mǎi zhuōzi le.*

张先生买桌子了。

Mr. *Zhāng* bought tables.

Cue

Měiguó zhuōzi

美国桌子

American tables

*Zhāng xiānsheng mǎide zhuōzi shì Měiguó Zhuōzi.*

张先生买的桌子是美国桌子。

The tables Mr. *Zhāng* bought are American tables.

7. *Tā mǎi shūjiàzi le.*

他/她买书架子了。

He/she bought bookcases.

Cue

hǎo

好  
good

Tā mǎide shūjiàzi zhēn hǎo.

他/她书架子真好。

The bookcases he/she bought are really good.

## Expansion drill

1. Tāmen mǎide pánziwǎn zhēn hǎokàn.

他们买的盘子碗真好看。

The dishes they bought (are buying) are really beautiful.

Cue

guì

贵

expensive

Tāmen mǎide pánziwǎn zhēn hǎokàn, kěshi guì yìdiǎn.

他/她们买的盘子碗真好看，可是贵一点。

The dishes they bought (are buying) are really beautiful, but they are a bit expensive.

2. Zhāng xiānsheng mǎide yǔsǎn zhēn hǎokàn.

张先生买的雨伞真好看。

The umbrellas Mr. Zhāng bought (is buying) are really nice looking.

Cue

xiǎo

小

small

Zhāng xiānsheng mǎide yǔsǎn zhēn hǎokàn, kěshi xiǎo yìdiǎn.

张先生买的雨伞真好看，可是小一点。

The umbrellas Mr. Zhāng bought (is buying) are really good looking, but they are a bit smaller.

3. Wáng tàitai mǎide ditàn hěn hǎokàn.

王太太买的地毯很好看。

The carpets Mrs. Wáng bought (is buying) are really nice looking.

Cue

dà

大

big

Wáng tàitai mǎide ditàn hěn hǎokàn, kěshi dà yìdiǎn.

王太太买的地毯很好看，可是大一点。

The carpets Mrs. Wáng bought (is buying) are really beautiful, but they are a bit bigger.

4. Wōmen mǎide shūjiǎzi bù hǎokàn.

我们买的书架子不好看。

The bookcases we bought (are buying) aren't good looking.

Cue piányi  
便宜  
cheap

Wǒmen mǎide shūjiǎzi bù hàokàn, kěshi piányi yidiǎn.

我们买的书架子不好看，可是便宜一点。

The tables we bought (are buying) aren't good looking, but they are a bit cheaper.

5. Hú xiānsheng mǎide chábēi zhēn hàokàn.

胡先生买的茶杯真好看。

The tea cups Mr. Hú bought (is buying) are really good looking.

Cue guì  
贵  
expensive

Hú xiānsheng mǎide chábēi zhēn hàokàn, kěshi guì yidiǎn.

胡先生买的茶杯真好看，可是贵一点。

The tea cups Mr. Hú bought (is buying) are really beautiful, but they are a bit expensive.

6. Tā mǎide huāpíng bù hàokàn.

他/她买的花瓶不好看。

The vases he/she bought (is buying) aren't good looking.

Cue piányi  
便宜  
cheap

Tā mǎide huāpíng bù hàokàn, kěshi piányi yidiǎn.

他/她买的花瓶不好看，可是便宜一点。

The vases he/she bought (is buying) aren't good looking, but they are a bit cheaper.

7. Lǐ tàitai mǎide zhuōzi hěn hàokàn.

李太太买的桌子很好看。

The tables Mrs. Lǐ bought (is buying) are really good looking.

Cue guì

贵

expensive

Lǐ tàitai mǎide zhuōzi hěn hǎokàn, kěshi guì yidiǎn.

李太太买的桌子很好看，可是贵一点。

The tables Mrs. **Lǐ** bought (is buying) are really beautiful, but a bit expensive.

## Expansion drill

1. Tāde pánziwǎn tài guì.

他/她的盘子碗太贵。

His/her dishes are too expensive.

Tāde nèixie pánziwǎn dōu bú tài guì.

他/她的那些盘子碗都不太贵。

All those dishes of his/her are not too expensive.

2. Tāde zhuōzi tài dà.

他/她的桌子太大。

His/her table is too big.

Tāde nèixie zhuōzi dōu bú tài dà.

他/她的那些桌子都不太大。

All those tables of his/her are not too big.

3. Wǒde yǐzi tài piányi.

我的椅子太便宜。

My chair is too cheap.

Wǒde nèixie yǐzi dōu bú tài piányi.

我的那些椅子都不太便宜。

All those chairs of mine are not too cheap.

4. Wáng xiānshengde dìtǎn tài guì.

王先生的地毯太贵。

Mr. Wáng's carpet is too expensive.

Wáng xiānshengde nèixie dìtǎn dōu bú tài guì.

王先生的那些地毯都不太贵。

All those Mr. Wáng's carpets are not too expensive.

5. Wáng tàitāide yǔsǎn tài hǎo.

王太太的雨伞太好。

Mrs. Wáng's umbrella is too good.

Wáng tàitāide nèixie yǔsǎn dōu bú tài hǎo.

王太太的那些雨伞都不太好。

All those Mrs. Wáng's umbrellas are not too good.

6. Hú tàitai de shūjiàzi tài xiǎo.

胡太太的书架子太小。

Mrs. Hú's bookcase is too small.

Hú tàitai de nèixie shūjiàzi dōu bú tài xiǎo.

胡太太的那些书架子都不太小。

All those Mrs. Hú's bookcases are not too small.

7. Tāde huāpíng tài hǎokàn.

他/她的花瓶太好看。

His/her vase is too good looking.

Tāde nèixie huāpíng dōu bú tài hǎokàn.

他/她的那些花瓶都不好看。

All those vases of his/her are not too good looking.



## Expansion drill

1. Nǐde chábēi hěn hǎo.

你的茶杯很好。

Your teacup is very nice.

Nǐde zhèige chábēi hěn hǎo. Shì zài shénme dìfang mǎide?

你的这个茶杯很好。是在什么地反复买的？

This teacup of yours is very nice. Where did you buy it?

2. Tāde pánzi hěn hǎo.

他/她的盘子很好。

Hi/her plate is very nice.

Tāde zhèige pánzi hěn hǎo. Shì zài shénme dìfang mǎide?

他/她的这个盘子很好。是在什么地反复买的？

The plate of his/her is very nice. Where did he/she buy it?

3. Zhāng tóngzhìde zhuōzi hěn hǎo.

张同志的桌子很好。

Comrade Zhāng's table is very nice.

Zhāng tóngzhìde zhuōzi hěn hǎo. Shì zài shénme dìfang mǎide?

张同志的桌子很好。是在什么地反复买的？

Comrade Zhāng's table is very nice. Where did he/she buy it? is very nice.

4. Wáng tóngzhìde fànwǎn hěn hǎo.

王同志的饭碗很好。

Comrade Wáng's bowl is very nice.

Wáng tóngzhìde zhèige fànwǎn hěn hǎo. Shì zài shénme dìfang mǎide?

王同志的这个饭碗很好。是在什么地反复买的？

Comrade Wáng's bowl is very nice. Where did he/she buy it ?

5. Mǎ tóngzhìde shūjiàzi hěn hǎo.

马同志的书架子很好。

Comrade Mǎ's bookcase is very nice.

Mǎ tóngzhìde zhèige shūjiàzi hěn hǎo. Shì zài shénme dìfang mǎide?

马同志的这个书架子很好。是在什么地反复买的？

Comrade Mǎ's bookcase is very nice. Where did he/she buy it ?

6. Lǐn tóngzhìde dìtǎn hěn hǎo.

林同志的地毯很好。

Comrade Lǐn's carpet is very nice.

Lǐn tóngzhìde zhège dìtǎn hěn hǎo. Shì zài shénme dìfang mǎide?

林同志的这个地毯很好。是在什么地反复买的？

Comrade Lǐn's carpet is very nice. Where did he/she buy it ?

7. Lǐ tóngzhìde yǐzi hěn hǎo.

李同志的椅子很好。

Comrade Lǐ's chair is very nice.

Lǐ tóngzhìde zhège yǐzi hěn hǎo. Shì zài shénme dìfang mǎide?

李同志的这个椅子很好。是在什么地反复买的？

Comrade Lǐ's chair is very nice. Where did he/she buy it ?

## Unit 5

### Reference List

1. A: Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ liǎngzhāng wǔkuàide.  
请你给我两张五块的。  
Please give me two fives.
2. B: Máfān nǐ, wǒ zhèr yǒu yīzhāng shíkuàide.  
麻烦你，我这儿有一张十块的。  
Sorry to bother you,# have a ten here.
3. B: Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ Huànhuàn.  
请你给我换换。  
Please change it for me.
4. C: Nín yào zěnmě huàn?  
您要怎么换？  
How do you want to change it?  
B: Qǐng gěi wǒ liǎngzhāng wǔkuàide ba.  
请给我两张五块的吧。  
How about giving me two fives, please.
- 5.<sup>a</sup> B: Xièxie.  
谢谢。  
Thank you.  
C: Bú kèqì.  
不客气。  
You're welcome.
6. D: Nǐmen shōu Měijīn ma?  
你们受美金吗？  
Do you accept U.S. currency?  
E: Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen bù shōu.  
对不起，我们不受。  
I'm sorry, we don't.
7. D: Zài nǎr huàn ne? Zhèr yǒu méiyǒu yínháng?  
在那儿换呢？这人有没有银行？  
Well, where do I change it? Is there a bank here?  
E: Yǒu. Yínháng jiù zài nàr.  
有。银行就在那儿。

8. D: There is. The bank is right over there.  
Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài zhèr huàn qián?  
请问，是不是在这儿换钱？  
May I ask, is it there that I can change money?  
F: Shì, shì zài zhèr huàn.  
是，是在这儿换。  
Yes, you change it here.
9. F: Nǐ yào huàn duōshao?  
你要换多少？  
How much do you want to change?  
D: Wǒ zhèr yǒu yībǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.  
我这儿有一百块美金的旅行支票。  
I have one hundred U.S. dollars in traveller's checks here.
10. D: Jīntiānde páijià shì duōshao?  
今天的牌价是多少？  
What is today's exchange rate?  
F: Yīkuài měijīn huàn yīkuài jiǔmáo liù Rénmínbì.  
一块美金换一块九毛六人民币。  
One U.S. dollar to one dollar and ninety-six cents in People's currency.
11. yíge diànshàn  
一个电扇  
one electric fan
12. yíge diànshì  
一个电视  
one television
13. yíge shōuyīnjī  
一个收音机  
one radio
14. yíge zhōng  
一个钟  
one clock
15. yíge shǒubiǎo  
一个手表  
one wristwatch

<sup>a</sup>This exchange occurs on the C-1 tape only

## Vocabulary

bú kèqì	不客气	you're welcome
diànshàn	电扇	electric fan
diànshì	电视	television
huàn	换	to change, to exchange
lǚxíng	旅行	travel
lǚxíng zhīpiào (yìzhāng)	旅行支票 (一张)	traveler's check
máfan nǐ	麻烦你	sorry to bother you
Měijīn	美金	United States currency
páijià	牌价	exchange rate
Rénmínbì	人民币	People's currency (RMB)
shòu	受	to accept, to receive
shǒubiǎo	手表	wristwatch
shōuyīnjī	收音机	radio
zěnmē	怎么	how
zhīpiào	支票	a check (e.g. banker's or personal)
zhōng	钟	clock
Yǒuyí Shāndiàn	友货商店	Friendship Department Store (in Běijīng)

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1

1. A: **Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ liǎngzhāng wǔkuàide.**  
**请你给我两张五块的。**  
Please give me two fives.

**Liǎngzhāng wǔkuàide** refers to two 5-dollar BILLS. The marker **-de** at the end of **wǔkuàide** indicates that the phrase modifies an understood noun. In another context, the noun might be a different one. If the speaker says **liǎngge wǔkuàide** in a store, the phrase might refer to two ITEMS, that is, two items that cost five dollars. In earlier units, similar uses of **-de** were translated as “ones”: **dàde**, “big ones.”

## Notes on №2

2. B: **Máfan nǐ, wǒ zhèr yǒu yìzhāng shíkuaide.**  
**麻烦你，我这儿有一张十块的。**  
Sorry to bother you, # have a ten here.

**Máfan nǐ** : is a verb meaning “bother,” or “annoy,” The expression **máfan nǐ** means “I’m bothering you.” It is translated In No. 2 as “Sorry to bother you.”

**Wǒ zhèr yǒu yìzhāng shíkuaide** : Word for word, this would be “I-here there-is one-sheet 10-dollar-things” or, a little more smoothly, “Here where I am, there is a 10-dollar bill.”

## Notes on №3

3. B: Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ Huànhuan.  
 请你给我换换。  
 Please change it for me.

**Gěi wǒ:** In No. 3 the verb **gěi** is used prepositionally to mean “for.” Prepositional verbs and their objects come before the main verb in a sentence. Notice that while **gěi wǒ** precedes the main verb in Chinese, “for me” follows the verb in English.

gěi wǒ	huànhuan
给我	换换
for me	change it

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ kànkàn nǐde nàiběn shū.
请你给我看看你的那本书。
Please let me look at that book of yours.
Tā gěi mèimei mǎile yīge diànshàn.
他给妹妹买了一个电扇。
He bought an electric fan for his younger sister.
Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ xiě nǐde dìzhǐ.
请你给我写 你的地址。
Please write your address for me.

**Huànhuan:** The reduplication of **huàn** in No. 3 makes the request milder and more polite, (See Unit 3, notes on No. 1.)



## Notes on №4

4. C: **Nín yào zěnmē huàn?**  
**您要怎么换？**  
How do you want to change it?
- B: **Qǐng gěi wǒ liǎngzhāng wǔkuàide ba.**  
**请给我两张五块的吧。**  
How about giving me two fives, please.

**Zěnmē**, “How,” “in what way”: In Chinese, adverbs precede verbs. Notice that the adverb **zěnmē** is placed immediately before the main verb **huàn**, while in English “how” begins the sentence.

## Notes on №5

5.     B:     Xièxie.  
          谢谢。  
          Thank you.
- C:     Bú kèqi.  
          不客气。  
          You're welcome.

**Bú kèqi** is an idiom meaning “don't be polite.” It is used like the English “You're welcome.” In English, you accept thanks; in Chinese, you modestly decline thanks.

## Notes on №6-7

6. D: Nǐmen shōu Měijīn ma?  
你们受美金吗？  
Do you accept U.S. currency?
- E: Duibuqǐ, wǒmen bù shōu.  
对不起，我们不受。  
I'm sorry, we don't.
7. D: Zài nǎr huàn ne? Zhèr yǒu méiyǒu yínháng?  
在那儿换呢？这人有没有银行？  
Well, where do I change it? Is there a bank here?
- E: Yǒu. Yínháng jiù zài nàr.  
有。银行就在那儿。  
There is. The bank is right over there.

The marker **ne** at the end of *Zài nǎr huàn ne?* indicates that the question follows from the sentence before it. The marker **ne** is often used at the end a question which almost automatically follows the preceding sentence in a conversation: *Wǒ hǎo, nǐ ne?* OR *Zài nǎr huàn ne?* Normally, you do not use a sentence ending with **ne** to start a new conversation.

### Note

This use of **ne** is different from the use of **ne** to indicate ongoing action or a continuing state : *Tā xiànzài nián shū ne.* (See BIO, Unit 8, note on №3.)

**Yǒu méiyǒu** You have already learned one way to form a yes/no-choice question with the negative choice tacked onto the end of the sentence. The second question In exchange 7 illustrates a second way# the negative choice comes immediately after the affirmative choice. Both patterns ere common. Compare:

Zhèr	yǒu		yínháng	méiyǒu?
这儿	有		银行	没有？
Zhèr	yǒu	méiyǒu	yínháng?	
这儿	有	没有	银行？	
I there a bank here?				

## Notes on №8

8. D: Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài zhèr huàn qián?  
 请问，是不是在这儿换钱？  
 May I ask, is it there that I can change money?
- F: Shì, shì zài zhèr huàn.  
 是，是在这儿换。  
 Yes, you change it here.

**Shì bu shì** is used to form a yes/no-choice question about something than the main verb of a sentence. In this case, the question is about the phrase **zài zhèr**. Here is a comparison between the Chinese and a literal English version of the yes/no-choice question:

Shì bu shì	zài zhèr huàn qián?
是不是	在这儿换钱？
Is it or isn't it	here that I change money?

Notice that the affirmative choice in **Shì bu shì** has a tone, while the negative does not.

The answer to a **Shì bu shì** question starts with **shì** for “yes,” or **bú shì** for “no.”

Shì zài zhèr huàn.
是在这儿换。
Is it here that you change it?
Bú shì zài zhèr huàn.
不是在这儿换。
It isn't here that you change it.

In exchange 8, the **shì** for “yes” is emphasized and so has its tone:

Shì, shì zài zhèr huàn.
是，是在这儿换。
Yes, it IS here that you change it.

Notice that the place phrase **zài zhèr** precedes the main verb **huàn**. In Chinese, the order of phrases is TIME, PLACE, ACTION.

Wǒ	qùnián	zài Jiāzhōu	nián shū.
我	去年	在加州	念书。
Last year I studied in California.			
Tā	xiànzài	zài yínháng	huàn qián ne.
他	现在	在银行	换钱呢。
He is changing money at the bank now.			

## Notes on №9

9. F: Nǐ yào huàn duōshao?  
你要换多少?  
How much do you want to change?
- D: Wǒ zhèr yǒu yībǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.  
我这儿有一百块美金的旅行支票。  
I have one hundred U.S. dollars in traveller's checks here.

**Yībǎikuài měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào:** In this phrase the traveller's check, **lǚxíng zhīpiào** is being described as worth one hundred dollars in U.S. currency, **Yībǎikuài měijīn**. The amount of money is made into a descriptive phrase by the addition of the marker of modification **-de**.

yībǎikuài měijīnde	lǚxíng zhīpiào
一百块美金的	旅行支票
which is worth \$100 U.S.	traveler's check

## Notes on №10

10. D: Jíntiānde páijià shì duōshǎo?  
今天的牌价是多少？  
What is today's exchange rate?
- F: Yíkuài měijīn huàn yíkuài jiǔmáo liù Rénmínbì.  
一块美金换一块九毛六人民币。  
One U.S. dollar to one dollar and ninety-six cents in People's currency.

**Huàn:** In the second sentence of exchange 10, the verb **huàn** is used to equate amounts of money in two different currencies. The verb can be translated fairly literally as “can be exchanged for”: “One U#S\_ dollar can be exchanged for one dollar and ninety-six cents in People’s currency.”

**Rénmínbì:** **Rénmínbì** means “people” and **bì** is the word for “currency.”

**Rénmínbì** (“sometimes abbreviated as RME) is the official name for PRC currency.

## Drills

### Response drill

1 Nǐ yào zěnmě huàn?  
你要怎么换?  
How do you want to change it?

Cue 5 ones

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ wǔzhāng yíkuàide.  
请你给我五张一块的。  
Please give me five ones.

2 Nǐ yào zěnmě huàn?  
你要怎么换?  
How do you want to change it?

Cue 2 fives

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ liǎngzhāng wǔkuàide.  
请你给我两张五块的。  
Please give me two fives.

3 Nǐ yào zěnmě huàn?  
你要怎么换?  
How do you want to change it?

Cue 10 tens

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ shízhāng shíkuàide.  
请你给我十张十块的。  
Please give me ten tens.

4 Nǐ yào zěnmě huàn?  
你要怎么换?  
How do you want to change it?

Cue 4 ones

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ wǔzhāng yíkuàide.

请你给我五张一块的。

Please give me five ones.

5 Nǐ yào zěnmě huàn?

你要怎么换？

How do you want to change it?

Cue 10 ones

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ shízhāng yíkuàide.

请你给我十张十块的。

Please give me ten ones.

6 Nǐ yào zěnmě huàn?

你要怎么换？

How do you want to change it?

Cue 5 tens

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ wǔzhāng shíkuàide.

请你给我五张一块的。

Please give me five ones.

7 Nǐ yào zěnmě huàn?

你要怎么换？

How do you want to change it?

Cue 2 fives

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ liǎngzhāng wǔkuàide.

请你给我两张五块的。

Please give me two fives.



## Substitution drill

1 Nǐmen shōu Měijīn ma?

你们受美金吗？

Do you accept U.S. currency?

Cue

Dìyī Gōngsī

第一公司

First Company

Dìyī Gōngsī shōu Měijīn ma?

第一公司受美金吗？

Does the First Company accept U.S. currency?

2 Dìyī Gōngsī shōu měijīn ma?

第一公司受美金吗？

Does the First Company accept U.S. currency?

Cue

Jīnrì Gōngsī

今日公司

Today's company

Jīnrì Gōngsī shōu Měijīn ma?

今日公司受美金吗？

Does the Today's company accept U.S. currency?

3 Jīnrì Gōngsī shōu měijīn ma?

今日公司受美金吗？

Does the Today's company accept U.S. currency?

Cue

Yuǎndōng Gōngsī

遠東公司

Far East company

Yuǎndōng Gōngsī shōu Měijīn ma?

遠東公司受美金吗？

Does the Far East company accept U.S. currency?

4 Yuǎndōng Gōngsī shōu měijīn ma?

遠東公司受美金嗎？

Does the Far East company accept U.S. currency?

Cue

Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn

遠山大飯店

East mountain big Hotel

Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn shōu Měijīn ma?

遠山大飯店受美金嗎？

Does the East Mountain big Hotel accept U.S. currency?

5

Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn shōu měijīn ma?

遠山大飯店受美金嗎？

Does the East Mountain big Hotel accept U.S. currency?

Cue

Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn

國賓大飯店

Ambassador Hotel

Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn shōu Měijīn ma?

國賓大飯店受美金嗎？

Does the Ambassador Hotel accept U.S. currency?

6

Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn shōu měijīn ma?

國賓大飯店受美金嗎？

Does the Ambassador Hotel accept U.S. currency?

Cue

nǐmen zhèlǐ

你們這裡

here by you

Nǐmen zhèlǐ shōu Měijīn ma?

你們這裡受美金嗎？

Do you here accept U.S. currency?

## Response drill

- 1 Duibuqǐ, wǒmen bù shōu Měijīn.  
对不起，我们不受美金。  
I'm sorry, we don't accept U.S. currency.

Cue nǎr  
哪儿  
there

Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr kěyǐ huàn ne?  
请问，在哪儿可以换呢？  
May I ask, where can I change it?

- 2 Duibuqǐ, wǒmen bù shōu Měijīn.  
对不起，我们不受美金。  
I'm sorry, we don't accept U.S. currency.

Cue yínháng  
银行  
bank

Qǐngwèn, zhèr yǒu meiyǒu yínháng?  
请问，在哪儿有没有银行？  
May I ask, is there a bank here?

- 3 Duibuqǐ, wǒmen bù shōu Rénmínbì.  
对不起，我们不受人民币。  
I'm sorry, we don't accept people's currency.

Cue nǎr  
哪儿  
there

Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr kěyǐ huàn ne?  
请问，在哪儿可以换呢？  
May I ask, where can I change it?

- 4 Duibuqǐ, wǒmen bù shōu Táibì.

对不起，我们不受台币。

I'm sorry, we don't accept Taiwan dollars.

Cue yínháng  
银行  
bank

Qǐngwèn, zhèr yǒu meiyǒu yínháng?

请问，在哪儿有没有银行？

May I ask, is there a bank here?

5 Duibuqǐ, wǒmen bù shōu lǚxíng zhīpiào.

对不起，我们不受旅行支票。

I'm sorry, we don't accept traveller's check.

Cue nǎr  
哪儿  
there

Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr kěyǐ huàn ne?

请问，在哪儿可以换呢？

May I ask, where can I change it?

6 Duibuqǐ, wǒmen bù shōu zhīpiào.

对不起，我们不受支票。

I'm sorry, we don't accept checks.

Cue yínháng  
银行  
bank

Qǐngwèn, zhèr yǒu meiyǒu yínháng?

请问，在哪儿有没有银行？

May I ask, is there a bank here?

7 Duibuqǐ, wǒmen bù shōu Měijīn zhīpiào.

对不起，我们不受美金支票。

I'm sorry, we don't accept American checks.

Cue nǎr

哪儿

there

Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr kěyǐ huàn ne?

请问，在哪儿可以换呢？

May I ask, where can I change it?

## Substitution drill

1 Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài zhèlǐ huàn qián?

请问，是不是在这里换钱？

May I ask, is it here that I change money?

Cue

zhège yínháng

这个银行

this bank

Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài zhège yínháng huàn qián?

请问，是不是在这个银行换钱？

May I ask, is it at this bank that I change money?

2 Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài zhège yínháng huàn qián?

请问，是不是在这个银行换钱？

May I ask, is it at this bank that I change money?

Cue

nǐmen zhèlǐ

你们这里

here at our place

Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài nǐmen zhèlǐ huàn qián?

请问，是不是在你们这里换钱？

May I ask, is it here at your place that I change money?

3 Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài nǐmen zhèlǐ huàn qián?

请问，是不是在你们这里换钱？

May I ask, is it here at your place that I change money?

Cue

zhège yínháng

这个银行

this bank

Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài zhège yínháng huàn qián?

请问，是不是在这个银行换钱？

May I ask, is it at this bank that I change money?

4 Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài zhège yínháng huàn qián?

请问，是不是在这个银行换钱？

May I ask, is it at this bank that I change money?

Cue

Táiwān Yínháng

台湾银行

bank of Taiwan

Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài Táiwān Yínháng huàn qián?

请问，是不是在台湾银行换钱？

May I ask, is it at the bank of Taiwan that I change money?

5

Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài Táiwān Yínháng huàn qián?

请问，是不是在台湾银行换钱？

May I ask, is it at the bank of Taiwan that I change money?

Cue

tā nàlǐ

他/她那里

there at his/her place

Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài tā nàlǐ huàn qián?

请问，是不是在他/她那里换钱？

May I ask, is it at his/her place that I change money?

6

Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài tā nàlǐ huàn qián?

请问，是不是在他/她那里换钱？

May I ask, is it at his/her place that I change money?

Cue

nǐmen zhèlǐ

你们这里

here at our place

Qǐngwèn, shì bu shì zài nǐmen zhèlǐ huàn qián?

请问，是不是在你们这里换钱？

May I ask, is it here at your place that I change money?

## Expansion drill

1 Wǒ zhèr yǒu lǚxíng zhīpiào.

我这儿有旅行支票。

I have traveler's checks here.

Cue 100

Wǒ zhèr yǒu yībǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

我这儿有一百块美金的旅行支票。

I have one hundred U.S. dollars in traveler's checks here.

2 Wǒ zhèr yǒu lǚxíng zhīpiào.

我这儿有旅行支票。

I have traveler's checks here.

Cue 350

Wǒ zhèr yǒu sānbǎi wǔshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

我这儿有五十块美金的旅行支票。

I have three hundred fifty U.S. dollars in traveler's checks here.

3 Wǒ zhèr yǒu lǚxíng zhīpiào.

我这儿有旅行支票。

I have traveler's checks here.

Cue 200

Wǒ zhèr yǒu liǎngbǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

我这儿有两百块美金的旅行支票。

I have two hundred U.S. dollars in traveler's checks here.

4 Wǒ zhèr yǒu lǚxíng zhīpiào.

我这儿有旅行支票。

I have traveler's checks here.

Cue 70

Wǒ zhèr yǒu qīshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.



我这儿有七十快美金的旅行支票。

I have seventy U.S. dollars in traveler's checks here.

5 Wǒ zhèr yǒu lǚxíng zhīpiào.

我这儿有旅行支票。

I have traveler's checks here.

Cue 90

Wǒ zhèr yǒu jiǔshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

我这儿有九十快美金的旅行支票。

I have ninety U.S. dollars in traveler's checks here.

6 Wǒ zhèr yǒu lǚxíng zhīpiào.

我这儿有旅行支票。

I have traveler's checks here.

Cue 840

Wǒ zhèr yǒu bābǎi sìshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

我这儿有四十快美金的旅行支票。

I have height hundred forty U.S. dollars in traveler's checks here.

7 Wǒ zhèr yǒu lǚxíng zhīpiào.

我这儿有旅行支票。

I have traveler's checks here.

Cue 540

Wǒ zhèr yǒu wǔbǎi sìshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

我这儿有四十快美金的旅行支票。

I have five hundred forty U.S. dollars in traveler's checks here.

## Expansion drill

1 Wǒ zhèr yǒu yìzhāng shíkuài de Rénmínbì.

我这儿有一张十块的人民币。

I have one 10-dollar bill of People's currency here.

Wǒ zhèr yǒu yìzhāng shíkuài de Rénmínbì. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ huàn huán.

我这儿有一张十块的人民币。请你给我换换。

I have one 10-dollar bill of People's currency here. Please change it for me.

2 Wǒ zhèr yǒu yìzhāng wǔkuài de Rénmínbì.

我这儿有一张五块的人民币。

I have one 5-dollar bill of People's currency here.

Wǒ zhèr yǒu yìzhāng wǔkuài de Rénmínbì. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ huàn huán.

我这儿有一张五块的人民币。请你给我换换。

I have one 5-dollar bill of People's currency here. Please change it for me.

3 Wǒ zhèr yǒu yìzhāng wǔshíkuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

我这儿有一张五十块美金的旅行支票。

I have one-50 dollar of American traveler's check here.

Wǒ zhèr yǒu yìzhāng wǔshíkuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ huàn huán.

我这儿有一张五十块美金的旅行支票。请你给我换换。

I have one-50 dollar of American traveler's check here. Please change it for me.

4 Wǒ zhèr yǒu yìzhāng èrshíkuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

我这儿有一张二十块美金的旅行支票。

I have one-20 dollar of American traveler's check here.

Wǒ zhèr yǒu yìzhāng èrshíkuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ huàn huán.

我这儿有一张二十块美金的旅行支票。请你给我换换。

I have one-20 dollar of American traveler's check here. Please change it for me.

5 Wǒ zhèr yǒu yìzhāng yìbǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

我这儿有一张一百块美金的旅行支票。

I have one-100 dollar of American traveler's check here.

Wǒ zhèr yǒu yìzhāng yìbǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ huàn huán.

我这儿有一张一百块美金的旅行支票。请你给我欢欢。

I have one-100 dollar of American traveler's check here. Please change it for me.

6 Tā zhèr yǒu liǎngzhāng, èrshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

他/她这儿有两张二十块旅行支票。

I have two-20 dollar of American traveler's check here.

Tā zhèr yǒu liǎngzhāng èrshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. Qǐng ni gěi wo huànhuan.

他/她这儿有两张二十块旅行支票。请你给我欢欢。

I have two-20 dollar of American traveler's check here. Please change it for me.

7 Tā zhèr yǒu liǎngzhāng, wǔshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

他/她这儿有两张五十块旅行支票。

I have two-50 dollar of American traveler's check here.

Tā zhèr yǒu liǎngzhāng wǔshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. Qǐng ni gěi wo huànhuan.

他/她这儿有两张五十块旅行支票。请你给我欢欢。

I have two-50 dollar of American traveler's check here. Please change it for me.

## Transformation drill

1 Tā huàn duōshao qián?  
他/她换多少钱?  
How much money is he/she changing?

Cue want

Tā yào huàn duōshao qián?  
他/她要换多少钱?  
How much money does he want to change?

2. Tā huàn yībǎikuài Měijīn.  
他/她换一百块美金。  
He/she is changing one hundred U.S. dollars.

Cue did

Tā huànle yībǎikuài Měijīn.  
他/她换了一百块美金。  
He changed one hundred U.S. dollars.

3. Tā huàn yībǎikuài Měijīn.  
他/她换一百块美金。  
He/she is changing one hundred U.S. dollars.

Cue has done so far

Tā huànle yībǎikuài Měijīn le.  
他/她换了一百块美金了。  
He has changed one hundred U.S. dollars so far.

4. Tā huàn duōshao qián?  
他/她换多少钱?  
How much money is he/she changing?

Cue did

Tā huànle duōshao qián?

他/她换了多少钱？

How much money did he/she change?

5. Tā huàn wǔshikuài Měijīn.

他/她换五十块美金。

He/she is changing 50 U.S. dollars.

Cue want

Tā yào huàn wǔshikuài Měijīn.

他/她要换五十块美金。

He/she want to change 50 U.S. dollars.

6. Tā huàn sìshikuài Měijīn.

他/她换四十快美金。

He/she is changing 40 U.S. dollars.

Cue did

Tā huànle sìshikuài Měijīn.

他/她换了四十快美金。

He/she changed 40 dollars.

7. Tā huàn Měijīn.

他/她换美金。

He/she is changing U.S. currency.

Cue has done so far

Tā huànle Měijīn le.

他/她换了美金了。

He/she has change U.S. currency so far.

## Response drill

Use **liáng-** for all your responses.

- 1 Tā mǎi shénme le?  
他/她买什么了?  
What did he buy?

Cue shōuyīnjī  
收音机  
radio

Tā mǎile liǎngge shōuyīnjī.  
他/她买了两个收音机。  
He/she bought two radios.

- 2 Tā mǎi shénme le?  
他/她买什么了?  
What did he buy?

Cue diànshì  
电视  
television

Tā mǎile liǎngge diànshì.  
他/她买了两个电视。  
He/she bought two televisions.

- 3 Tā mǎi shénme le?  
他/她买什么了?  
What did he buy?

Cue píngguǒ  
苹果  
apple

Tā mǎile liǎngge píngguǒ.  
他/她买了两个苹果。  
He/she bought two apples.

4 Tā mǎi shénme le?  
他/她买什么了?  
What did he buy?

Cue yǐzi  
椅子  
chair

Tā mǎile liǎngbǎ yǐzi.  
他/她买了两把椅子。  
He/she bought two chairs.

5 Tā mǎi shénme le?  
他/她买什么了?  
What did he buy?

Cue chábēi  
茶杯  
tea cup

Tā mǎile liǎngge chábēi.  
他/她买了两个茶杯。  
He/she bought two tea cups.

6 Tā mǎi shénme le?  
他/她买什么了?  
What did he buy?

Cue wǎn  
碗  
bowl

Tā mǎile liǎngge wǎn.  
他/她买了两个碗。  
He/she bought two bowls.

7 Tā mǎi shénme le?  
他/她买什么了?  
What did he buy?

Cue

zhuōzi

桌子

table

Tā mǎile liǎngzhāng zhuōzi.

他/她买了两张桌子。

He/she bought two tables.



## Response drill

- 1 Qǐngwèn, wǒde nàběn zhèngzhìxué zài nǐ zhèlǐ ma?  
请问，我的那本政治學在你这里吗？  
May I ask, is that political science book of mine over by you?

Cue tā  
他/她  
his/her

Bú zài wǒ zhèlǐ, zài tā nàlǐ.  
不在我这里，在他/她那里。  
It's not over by me; it's over by him/her.

- 2 Qǐngwèn, wǒde nàběn jīngjìxué zài nǐ zhèlǐ ma?  
请问，我的那本經濟學在你这里吗？  
May I ask, is that economics book of mine over by you?

Cue tā  
他/她  
his/her

Bú zài wǒ zhèlǐ, zài tā nàlǐ.  
不在我这里，在他/她那里。  
It's not over by me; it's over there by him/her;

- 3 Qǐngwèn, wǒde nàběn Zhōngwén shū zài nǐ nàlǐ ma?  
请问，我的那本中文書在你那里吗？  
May I ask, is that Chinese book of mine over there by you?

Cue Wáng Tàitai  
王太太  
Mrs. Wáng

Bú zài wǒ zhèlǐ, zài Wáng Tàitai nàlǐ.  
不在我这里，在王太太那里。  
It's not over by me; it's over by Mrs. Wáng.

- 4 Qǐngwèn, wǒde nàběn zázhi zài nǐ nàlǐ ma?

请问，我的那本杂志在你那里吗？

May I ask, is that magazine of mine over there by you?

Cue

Lǐ Xiānsheng

李先生

Mr. Lǐ

Bú zài tā nàlǐ, zài wǒ zhèlǐ.

不在他/她那里，在我这里。

It's not over there by him/her; it's over by me.

5

Qǐngwèn, wǒde nàfèn Zhōngwén bào zài nǐ zhèlǐ ma?

请问，我的哪分中文报在你这里吗？

May I ask, is that Chinese newspaper of mine over by you?

Cue

tā

他/她

his/her

Bú zài wǒ zhèlǐ, zài tā nàlǐ.

不在我这里，在他/她那里。

It's not over by me; it's over there by him/her;

6

Qǐngwèn, wǒde nàzhāng Táiwān dìtú zài nǐ zhèlǐ ma?

请问，我的那张台湾地图在你这里吗？

May I ask, is that map of mine over by you?

Cue

tā

他/她

his/her

Bú zài wǒ zhèlǐ, zài tā nàlǐ.

不在我这里，在他/她那里。

It's not over by me; it's over there by him/her;

7

Qǐngwèn, wǒde nàfèn Yīngwén bào zài nǐ nàlǐ ma?

请问，我的哪分英文报在你那里吗？

May I ask, is that English newspaper of mine over there by you?

Cue

Wǔ Xiǎojiě

吴小姐

Miss Wū

Bú zài wǒ zhèlǐ, zài Wū Xiǎojiě nàlǐ.

不在我这里，在吴小姐那里。

It's not over by me; it's over there by Mrs. Wū.

## Unit 6

### Reference List

1. A: Qǐngwèn, nǐmen zhèlǐ kěyǐ huàn měijīn ma?  
请问，你们这里可以换美金吗？  
May I ask, can U.S. currency be changed here?  
B: Duìbuqǐ, bù kěyǐ.  
对不起，不可以。  
I'm sorry, that's not possible.
2. A: Lǚxíng zhīpiào ne?  
旅行支票呢？  
How about traveler's checks?  
B: Yě bù kěyǐ. Nín děi zài Táiwān Yínháng huàn.  
也不行。得在台湾银行换。  
That's not possible either. You have to change them at the bank of Taiwan.
3. A: Yínháng shénme shíhòu kāi mén?  
银行什么时候开门？  
When does the bank open?  
B: Jiǔdiǎn zhōng kāi mén.  
九点钟开门。  
It opens at nine o'clock.
4. A: Jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?  
几点钟关门？  
What time does it close?  
B: Sāndiǎn zhōng guān mén.  
三点钟关门。  
It closes at three o'clock.
5. A: Xiànzài jǐdiǎn zhōng? hái kěyǐ huàn ba?  
现在几点钟？还可以换吗？  
What time is it now? I may still change money, I suppose.  
B: Xiànzài liǎngdiǎn bàn. hái kěyǐ huàn.  
现在两点半。还可以换。  
It's half past two now. You may still change money.
6. A: Wǒ yào huàn yídiǎn Táibì. Zhè shì yībǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.  
我要换一点台币。阿和是一百块旅行支票。  
I want to change some money into Taiwan currency. Here are one hundred U.S. dollars in traveller's checks.

- C: Hǎo. Yíkuài Měijīn huàn sānshíbākuài Tāibì.  
好。一块美金换三十八块台币。  
Certainly. One U.S. dollar is thirty-eight dollars in Taiwan currency.
7. A: Zhè shì wǔzhāng èrhíkuaide lǚxíng zhǐpiào.  
这是五张美金二十块的旅行支票。  
Here are five 20-dollar traveller's checks.
- C: Qǐng nín děngyíděng. Wǒ jiù lái.  
请您等一等。  
Please, wait a moment. I'll be right back.
8. A: Wǒ yào diǎn xiǎo piàozi. Zhèzhāng yībǎikuàide qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ huàn huàn, xíng bu xíng?  
我要点小票子。这张一百块的请你给我换换，行不行？  
I would like some small bills. Please change this 100-dollar bill for me. Would that be all right?
- C: Xíng. Gěi nǐ jiǔzhāng shíkuàide, liǎngzhāng wǔkuàide.  
行。给你九张十块的，两张五块的。  
All right. I'll give you nine tens and two fives.
9. A: Máfán nǐ le.  
麻烦你了。  
Sorry to bother you.
- C: Méi shénme.  
没什么。  
It's nothing.

## Vocabulary

bàn	半	half
bànyè	半夜	midnight
děi	得	must
děng	等	to wait
děngyíděng	等一等	to wait a moment
-diǎn	-点	counter for hours on the clock
gěi	给	for
guān	关	to close
guān mén	关门	to close (for the business day); to close down, to go out of business
jiàn	见	to meet
jǐdiǎn zhōng	几点钟	what hour, what time
jiù	就	immediately (with reference to time)
kāi	开	to open
kāi mén	开门	to open (for the business day); to open for business
kéyi	可以	may, can, to be permitted
mámahūhū	马马虎虎	so-so, fair
méi shénme	门	door
piàozi (yìzhāng)	票子 (一张)	bills (currency)
shàngwǔ (shàngwu)	上午	forenoon, morning
Táibì	台北	Taiwan currency (NT\$)
wǎnshàng (wǎnshàng)	晚上	evening
xiàwǔ (xiàwu)	下午	afternoon
xíng	行	to be all right
yèli	夜里	night
zǎochen (zǎochén)	早晨	early morning
zǎoshàng (zǎoshàng)	早上	morning
zhōng	中	o'clock
zhōngwǔ (zhōngwu)	中午	noon
kāishǐ	开始	to start, to begin
yǒude shíhòu	有的时候	sometimes
-táng	堂	(counter for class periods)

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1

1. A: Qǐngwèn, nǐmen zhèlǐ kěyǐ huàn měijīn ma?  
请问，你们这里可以换美金吗？  
May I ask, can U.S. currency be changed here?
- B: Duìbuqǐ, bù kěyǐ.  
对不起，不可以。  
I'm sorry, that's not possible.

**Kěyǐ** is the auxiliary verb “may,” “can.” It is often used, to here, to say what is permitted by the rules of a particular organization. It is often best translated by the English word “can” rather than by “may.”

Like all auxiliary verbs, **kěyǐ** is a state verb and therefore can be made negative only with **bù**.

**Nǐmen zhèlǐ** is a place phrase acting as topic. The first sentence in exchange 1 could be translated more literally as “As for your place here, may one change American currency?”

## Notes on №2

2. A: Lǚxíng zhīpiào ne?  
旅行支票呢？  
How about traveler's checks?
- B: Yě bù kěyǐ. Nín děi zài Táiwān Yínháng huàn.  
也不可以。得在台湾银行换。  
That's not possible either. You have to change them at the bank of Taiwan.

**Děi**, “must,” “have to”: Unlike many other auxiliary verbs, **děi** cannot be made negative.<sup>1</sup> Also, it is not used in short answers or short question. For the question form of **děi**, it is wrong to say **děi bu děi**; instead, use **shì bu shì děi**, “is it (true) that... must” (or use **yòng bu yòng**, “Is it necessary to...”).

**Děi** is a colloquial northern Chinese word which is not necessarily used or understood in all parts of China. In particular, **děi** is heard infrequently in Taiwan. When speaking with Chinese who do not use **děi**, you may substitute an expression with a similar meaning. In many sentences, you can substitute **yào**, “should,” “must”; in other sentences, you can use **bìxū**, “must.”

<sup>1</sup>To say “must not,” use **qiānwàn bié**, “by no means must”: **Nǐ qiānwàn bié qù**, “You must not go.” To say “need not,” use **bù bì** or **bù yòng**: **Nǐ bù bì qù**, “You need not (don't have to) go,” OR **Nǐ bù yòng lái**, “You need not (don't have to) come.”



## Notes on №3-4

3. A: Yínháng shénme shíhou kāi mén?  
银行什么时候开门?  
When does the bank open?
- B: Jiǔdiǎn zhōng kāi mén.  
九点钟开门。  
It opens at nine o'clock.
4. A: Jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?  
几点钟关门?  
What time does it close?
- B: Sāndiǎn zhōng guān mén.  
三点钟关门。  
It closes at three o'clock.

**Kāi mén, guān mén:** The words **kāi** and **guān** mean “to open” and “to close.” **Mén** means “door.” In referring to business hours, **kāi** and **guān** are always followed by **mén**. The only exception is that **mén** may be omitted in a sentence if the word was included earlier in the conversation, as in the following example:

Yínháng sāndiǎn zhōng guān mén. 银行三点钟关门。	The bank closes at three o'clock.
Xiànzài yǐjīng guān le. 现在已经关了。	It's already closed now.

The phrases **kāi mén** and **guān mén** may also mean “to be open” and “to be closed.” That is, they may refer to states as well as to actions of opening and closing.<sup>2</sup>

Yínháng hái kāi mén ba? 银行还开门吧?	The bank is still open, I suppose?
------------------------------------	------------------------------------

**Jiǔdiǎn zhōng:** The word for “clock” is **zhōng**, and **diǎn** (literally, “a dot”) is the counter for hours on the clock. In time expressions, **zhōng** corresponds to “o'clock.” As is the case for “o'clock” in English, **zhōng** may be omitted.

Jiǔdiǎn (zhōng). 九点 (种) 。	It's nine (o'clock).
------------------------------	----------------------

**Jǐdiǎn zhōng:** Notice that questions about clock time are formed with **jǐ-**, not with **duōshao**, since the answers involve small numbers.

<sup>2</sup>The phrase **guān mén** can also refer to going out of business.

## Notes on №5

5. A: Xiànzài jǐdiǎn zhōng? hái kěyǐ huàn ba?  
 现在几点钟？还可以换吧？  
 What time is it now? I may still change money, I suppose.
- B: Xiànzài liǎngdiǎn bàn. hái kěyǐ huàn.  
 现在两点半。还可以换。  
 It's half past two now. You may still change money.

**Ba** is used in exchange 5 to mark a question expressing the speaker's supposition about the answer. Here is another example:

Yínháng hái kāi mén ba? 银行还开门吧？	The bank is still open, I suppose?  OR The bank is still open, isn't it?
------------------------------------	---

**Bàn**: Liǎngdiǎn bàn may be translated as “half past two,” or “two-thirty.” Notice that, literally, the expression is “two dots half,” with the number bàn after the counter diǎn. In Chinese, “two-thirty” may be said with or without zhōng:

liǎngdiǎn bàn 两点半	OR	liǎngdiǎn bàn zhōng
----------------------	----	---------------------

## Notes on №6

6. A: Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. Zhè shì yìbǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhǐpiào.  
我要换一点台币。阿和是一百块旅行支票。  
I want to change some money into Taiwan currency. Here are one hundred U.S. dollars in traveller's checks.
- C: Hǎo. Yíkuài Měijīn huàn sānshíbākuài Táibì.  
好。一块美金换三十八块台币。  
Certainly. One U.S. dollar is thirty-eight dollars in Taiwan currency.

**Huàn Táibì:** The verb **huàn** really means “to exchange, that is, to replace one thing with another. **Huàn** sets up an equivalence between the two items being exchanged but does not indicate the direction of the exchange (i.e., which item the speaker starts with and which he ends up with). In the middle of someone's stay in Taiwan, we assume that the phrase **huàn Táibì** refers to changing some money INTO Taiwan currency. At the end of a stay in Taiwan, we would guess that the phrase refers to changing money FROM Taiwan currency. Only the context indicates whether to translate **huàn** as “change into” or as “change from.”<sup>3</sup>

<sup>3</sup>The English verb “rent” is similar: The sentence “I want to rent an apartment” could mean either “I have an apartment to rent TO someone” or “I want to find an apartment to rent FROM someone.”

## Notes on №7

7. A: Zhè shì wǔzhāng èrhikuàide lǚxíng zhǐpiào.  
这是五张美金二十块的旅行支票。  
Here are five 20-dollar traveller's checks.
- C: Qǐng nín děngyíděng. Wǒ jiù lái.  
请您等一等。  
Please, wait a moment. I'll be right back.

**Děngyíděng** is a reduplicated verb with a toneless **yī**, “one,” inserted. Notice that here the second **děng** keeps its tone. Compare this to the type of reduplication you saw in Unit 3: **kànkàn**, **kànyikan**. As you learned previously, reduplication has the effect of making the verb more tentative.

**Jiù** is used in the last sentence of exchange 7 to indicate how soon the action will happen: “immediately,” “right away.”

**Lái**: The last sentence in the exchange is said as the teller turns away from the counter to go to a desk behind it. In this context, the verb **lái** can be understood as “come back.”

## Notes on №8-9

8. A: Wǒ yào diǎn xiǎo piàozi. Zhèzhāng yībǎikuàide qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ huàn huàn, xíng bu xíng?  
我要点小票子。这张一百块的请你给我换换，行不行？  
I would like some small bills. Please change this 100-dollar bill for me. Would that be all right?
- C: Xíng. Gěi nǐ jiǔzhāng shíkuàide, liǎngzhāng wǔkuàide.  
行。给你九张十块的，两张五块的。  
All right. I'll give you nine tens and two fives.
9. A: Máfán nǐ le.  
麻烦你了。  
Sorry to bothered you.
- C: Méi shénme.  
没什么。  
It's nothing.

**Méi shénme:** A literal translation of this expression is “There isn’t anything,” presumably meaning “What I did wasn’t anything.”

## Notes on Additional Vocabulary

zǎochen (zǎochén)	早晨	early morning
zǎoshang (zǎoshàng)	早上	morning
shàngwǔ (shàngwu)	上午	forenoon; morning
zhōngwǔ (zhōngwu)	中午	noon
xiàwǔ (xiàwu)	下午	afternoon
wǎnshang (wǎnshàng)	晚上	evening
yèli	夜里	night
hànyè	寒夜	midnight
jiàn	见	to meet
mámahūhū	马马虎虎	so-so, fair

In Chinese, clock time is usually preceded by a time-of-day, or part-of-the-day, word; **zǎoshang qīdiǎn zhōng**, “seven o’clock in the morning.” Notice that the word order of elements in the Chinese phrase is the opposite of the English translation:

zǎoshang	bā diǎn zhōng
早上	八点钟
seven o’clock	in the morning

Here are more examples of clock-time phrases;

zǎoshàng bādiǎn zhōng	8:00 a.m.
早上八点钟	
shàngwǔ shídiǎn zhōng	10:00 a.m.
上午十点钟	
xiàwǔ sìdiǎn bàn zhōng	4:30 p.m.
下午四点半中	
wǎnshàng qīdiǎn bàn zhōng	7:30 p.m.
晚上七点半中	

Remember that **zhōng** may be left off. In short answers, however, the full form is usually used.

Time of day words	Translations
zǎochen	early morning
早晨	
zǎoshang	morning [general term] (full daylight until near noon)
早上	

Time of day words	Translations
shàngwǔ 上午	forenoon (normal working hours until noon)
zhōngwǔ 中午	
xiàwǔ 下午	afternoon (noon until the end of the business day)
wǎnshang 晚上	
bànyè 半夜	midnight
yèli 夜里	
	night (until sunrise)

The hours of **zǎoshang** and **shàngwǔ** overlap. Although **zǎoshang** can refer to the whole morning, **shàngwǔ** is often used instead when talking about the morning hours of the normal business day (9 a.m. [or perhaps 8 a.m.] until noon). Even in a business context, times before 8 a.m. are always referred to as **zǎoshang**.

**Xiàwǔ** ends and **wǎnshang** begins at the end of the business day, when a person returns home.

**Wǎnshang** in the city may last until as late as midnight, while in the country **yèli** may begin at 10 p.m.

**Yèli** sounds a bit old-fashioned to some speakers, who prefer to use **wǎnshang** for both “evening” and “tonight.” **Wǎnshang** is also used to mean “during the night” (i.e., during sleeping hours).

**Jiàn**, literally, “to see,” means “to meet (with someone),” “to see I someone)”

**Zàijiàn**. Good-bye. (See you again.)

**Míngtiān jiàn**, See you tomorrow.

**Wǒmen kěyǐ jiùdiǎn zhōng jiān**. We can meet at nine o’clock.

**Mámahūhū**, “so-so,” “fair,” “not so bad,” “not so good”: Literally, this word means “horse-horse-tiger-tiger.”

**Jīntiān zěnmeyàng?** How is it today?

**Mámahūhū**. So-so.

## Drills

### Substitution drill

Answer to the questions according to the cue.

1 Qǐngwèn, nǐmen zhèlǐ kěyǐ huàn Měijīn ma?

请问，你们这里换美金吗？

May I ask, can U.S. currency be changed here?

Cue

Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn

遠山大飯店

Yuánshān hotel

Qǐngwèn, Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn kěyǐ huàn Měijīn ma?

请问，遠山大飯店可以换美金吗？

May I ask, can U.S. currency be changed at the Yuánshān Hotel?

2 Qǐngwèn, Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn kěyǐ huàn Měijīn ma?

请问，遠山大飯店换美金吗？

May I ask, can U.S. currency be changed the Yuánshān Hotel?

Cue

tāmen nàlǐ

他/她们那里

there

Qǐngwèn, tāmen nàlǐ kěyǐ huàn Měijīn ma?

请问，他/她们那里可以换美金吗？

May I ask, can U.S. currency be changed there?

3 Qǐngwèn, tāmen nàlǐ kěyǐ huàn Měijīn ma?

请问，他/她们那里换美金吗？

May I ask, can U.S. currency be changed there?

Cue

Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn

国宾大飯店

Ambassador Hotel

Qǐngwèn, Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn kěyǐ huàn Měijīn ma?



请问，国宾大饭店可以换美金吗？

May I ask, can U.S. currency be changed at the Ambassador Hotel?

4 Qǐngwèn, Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn kéyi huàn Měijīn ma?

请问，国宾大饭店换美金吗？

May I ask, can U.S. currency be changed at the Ambassador Hotel?

Cue zhège yínháng  
这个银行  
this bank

Qǐngwèn, zhège yínháng kéyi huàn Měijīn ma?

请问，这个音行可以换美金吗？

May I ask, can U.S. currency be changed at this bank?

5 Qǐngwèn, zhège yínháng kéyi huàn Měijīn ma?

请问，这个银行换美金吗？

May I ask, can U.S. currency be changed at this bank?

Cue nàge fàndiàn  
那个饭店  
that hotel

Qǐngwèn, nàge fàndiàn kéyi huàn Měijīn ma?

请问，那个饭店可以换美金吗？

May I ask, can U.S. currency be changed at that hotel?

6 Qǐngwèn, nàge fàndiàn kéyi huàn Měijīn ma?

请问，那个饭店换美金吗？

May I ask, can U.S. currency be changed at that hotel?

Cue nǐmen zhèlǐ  
你们这里  
here

Qǐngwèn, nǐmen zhèlǐ kéyi huàn Měijīn ma?

请问，你们这里可以换美金吗？

May I ask, can U.S. currency be changed here?

7 Qǐngwèn, nǐmen zhèlǐ kéyi huàn Měijīn ma?

请问，你们这里换美金吗？

May I ask, can U.S. currency be changed here?

Cue

Guóbin Dàfàndiàn

国宾大饭店

Ambassador Hotel

Qǐngwèn, Guóbin Dàfàndiàn kěyǐ huàn Měijīn ma?

请问，国宾大饭店可以换美金吗？

May I ask, can U.S. currency be changed at the Ambassador Hotel?

## Transformation and Expansion drill

Give an answer according to the model.

- 1    **Nín děi zài Táiwān Yínháng huàn.**  
您得在台湾银行换。  
You must change it at the Bank of Taiwan.

**Hǎo, wǒ zài Táiwān Yínháng huàn.**  
好，我台湾银行在换。  
Fine, I'll change it at the Bank of Taiwan.

- 2    **Nín děi zài Yuànshān Dàfàndiàn huàn.**  
您得在远山大饭店换。  
You must change it at the Yuànshān hotel.

**Hǎo, wǒ zài Yuànshān Dàfàndiàn huàn.**  
好，我在远山大饭店换。  
Fine, I'll change it at the Yuànshān hotel.

- 3    **Nín děi zài Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn huàn.**  
您得在国宾大饭店换。  
You must change it at the Ambassador Hotel.

**Hǎo, wǒ zài Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn huàn.**  
好，我在国宾大饭店换。  
Fine, I'll change it at the Ambassador Hotel.

- 4    **Nín děi zài Měiguó Yínháng huàn.**  
您得在美国银行换。  
You must change it at Bank of America.

**Hǎo, wǒ zài Měiguó Yínháng huàn.**  
好，我在美国银行换。  
Fine, I'll change it at the Bank of America.

- 5    **Nín děi zài Táiwān Yínháng huàn.**  
您得在台湾银行换。  
You must change it at Bank of Taiwan.

Hǎo, wǒ zài Táiwān Yínháng huàn.

好，我在台湾银行换。

Fine, I'll change it at the Bank of Taiwan.

6 Nín děi zài zhège yínháng huàn.

您得在这个银行换。

You must change it at this bank.

Hǎo, wǒ zài zhège yínháng huàn.

好，我在这个银行换。

Fine, I'll change it at this bank.

7 Nín děi zài Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn huàn.

您得在国宾大饭店换。

You must change it at the Ambassador Hotel.

Hǎo, wǒ zài Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn huàn.

好，我在国宾大饭店换。

Fine, I'll change it at the Ambassador Hotel.

## Transformation drill

Answer according to the model.

1 Qǐngwèn, yínháng shénme shíhou kāi mén?

请问，银行什么时候开门？

May I ask, when does the bank open?

Qǐngwèn, yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?

请问，银行几点钟开门？

May I ask, at what time does the bank open?

2 Qǐngwèn, Jīnrì Gōngsī shénme shíhou guān mén?

请问，今日公司什么时候关门？

May I ask, when does the Today's company store close?

Qǐngwèn, Jīnrì Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?

请问，今日公司几点钟关门？

May I ask, at what time does the Today's company close?

3 Qǐngwèn, Yuǎndōng Gōngsī shénme shíhou kāi mén?

请问，遠東公司什么时候开门？

May I ask, when does open?

Qǐngwèn, Yuǎndōng Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?

请问，遠東公司几点钟开门？

May I ask, at what time does the Far East company open?

4 Qǐngwèn, Dìyī Gōngsī shénme shíhou kāi mén?

请问，第一公司什么时候开门？

May I ask, when does the First Company store open?

Qǐngwèn, Dìyī Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?

请问，第一宫四几点钟开门？

May I ask, at what time does the First Company store open?

5 Qǐngwèn, Táiwān Yínháng shénme shíhou guān mén?

请问，台湾银行什么时候关门？

May I ask, when does close?

Qǐngwèn, Táiwān Yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?

请问，台湾银行几点钟关门？

May I ask, at what time does the Bank of Taiwan close?

6 Qǐngwèn, yóuzhèngjú shénme shíhou kāi mén?

请问，邮政局什么时候开门？

May I ask, when does the post office open?

Qǐngwèn, yóuzhèngjú jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?

请问，邮政局几点钟开门？

May I ask, at what time does the post office open?

7 Qǐngwèn, Dìyī Gōngsī shénme shíhou guān mén?

请问，一公司什么时候关门？

May I ask, when does the First Company store close?

Qǐngwèn, Dìyī Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?

请问，第一宫四几点钟关门？

May I ask, at what time does the First Company store close?

## Response drill

Give affirmative response to all questions using **Duì le** and according to the model.

1 Nín yào huàn qián ma?

您要换钱吗？

Do you want to change money?

Cue

yínháng

银行

bank

Duì le. Qǐngwèn, yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?

对了。请问，银行几点钟开门？

Right. May I ask, at what time does the bank open?

2 Nín yào mǎi dōngxi ma?

您要买东西吗？

Do you want to buy things?

Cue

Jīnrì Gōngsī

今日公司

Today's company store

Duì le. Qǐngwèn, Jīnrì Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?

对了。请问，今日公司几点钟开门？

Right. May I ask, at what time does the Today's company store open?

3 Nín yào huàn qián ma?

您要换钱吗？

Do you want to change money?

Cue

Táiwān Yínháng

台湾银行

Bank of Taiwan

Duì le. Qǐngwèn, Táiwān Yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?

对了。请问，台湾银行几点钟开门？

Right. May I ask, at what time does the bank of Taiwan open?

4 Nín yào mǎi yǔsǎn ma?

年要买雨伞吗？

Do you want to buy an umbrella?

Cue

Dìyī Gōngsī

第一宫四

First Company store

Duì le. Qǐngwèn, Dìyī Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?

对了。请问，第一公司几点钟开门？

Right. May I ask, at what time does First Company store open?

5 Nín yào mǎi pánziwǎn ma?

您要买盘子碗吗？

Do you want to buy dishes?

Cue

Yuǎndōng Gōngsī

远东公司

Far East company store

Duì le. Qǐngwèn, Yuǎndōng Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?

对了。请问，远东公司几点钟开门？

Right. May I ask, at what time does Far East company store open?

6 Tā yào mǎi diànshì ma?

他/她要买电视吗？

Does he/she want to buy a television?

Cue

nàge gōngsī

那个东西

that company store

Duì le. Qǐngwèn, nàge gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?

对了。请问那个公司几点钟开门？，

Right. May I ask, at what time does that company store open?

7 Nín yào mǎi shōuyīnjī ma?

您要买收音机吗？

Do you want to buy a radio?



Cue

Jīnrì Gōngsī

今日公司

Today's company store

Duì le. Qǐngwèn, Jīnrì Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?

对了。请问，今日公司几点钟开门？

Right. May I ask, at what time does the Today's company store open?

## Expansion drill

Answer according to the model.

1 Hái kéyì huàn ma?

还可以换马？

May I still change it?

Xiānzài jǐdiǎn zhōng? Hái kéyì huàn ma?

现在几点钟？还可以换马？

What time is it now? May I still change it?

2 Hái kéyì mǎi ma?

还可以买吗？

May I still buy it?

Xiānzài jǐdiǎn zhōng? Hái kéyì mǎi ma?

现在几点钟？还可以买吗？

What time is it now? May I still buy it?

3 Hái kéyì huàn ma?

还可以换马？

May I still change it?

Xiānzài jǐdiǎn zhōng? Hái kéyì huàn ma?

现在几点钟？还可以换马？

What time is it now? May I still change it?

4 Hái kéyì mǎi ma?

还可以买吗？

May I still buy it?

Xiānzài jǐdiǎn zhōng? Hái kéyì mǎi ma?

现在几点钟？还可以买吗？

What time is it now? May I still buy it?

5 Hái kéyì huàn ma?

还可以换马？

May I still change it?

Xiānzài jǐdiǎn zhōng? Hái kéyì huàn ma?

现在几点钟？还可以换吗？

What time is it now? May I still change it?

6 Hái kéyì mǎi ma?

还可以买吗？

May I still buy it?

Xiānzài jǐdiǎn zhōng? Hái kéyì mǎi ma?

现在几点钟？还可以买吗？

What time is it now? May I still buy it?

7 Hái kéyì mǎi ma?

还可以买吗？

May I still buy it?

Xiānzài jǐdiǎn zhōng? Hái kéyì mǎi ma?

现在几点钟？还可以买吗？

What time is it now? May I still buy it?

## Expansion drill

In your responses, assume that closing time is seven o'clock.

1 Xiànzài wǔdiǎn bàn.

现在五点半。

It's five-thirty.

Xiànzài wǔdiǎn bàn, hái méi guān mén.

现在五点半，还没关门。

It's five-thirty; they haven't closed yet.

2 Xiànzài qīdiǎn bàn.

现在七点半。

It's seven-thirty

Xiànzài qīdiǎn bàn, yǐjīng guān mén le.

现在七点半，还没关门。

It's seven-thirty; they have already closed.

3 Xiànzài liùdiǎn zhōng.

现在六点半。

It's six-thirty.

Xiànzài liùdiǎn zhōng, hái méi guān mén.

现在六点半，还没关门。

It's six-thirty; they haven't closed yet.

4 Xiànzài qīdiǎn bàn.

现在七点半。

It's seven-thirty.

Xiànzài qīdiǎn bàn, yǐjīng guān mén le.

现在七点半，还没关门。

It's seven-thirty; they haven't closed yet.

5 Xiànzài sìdiǎn bàn.

现在四点半。

It's four-thirty.

Xiànzài sìdiǎn bàn, hái méi guān mén.

现在四点半，还没关门。

It's six-thirty; they haven't closed yet.

6. Xiànzài bādiǎn zhōng.

现在八点半。

It's eight-thirty.

Xiànzài bādiǎn zhōng, yǐjīng guān mén le.

现在八点半，还没关门。

It's eight-thirty; they haven't closed yet.

7. Xiànzài liùdiǎn bàn.

现在六点半。

It's six-thirty.

Xiànzài liùdiǎn bàn, hái méi guān mén.

现在六点半，还没关门。

It's six-thirty; they haven't closed yet.

## Expansion drill

Give a statement according to the cue.

1 Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì.

我要换一点台币。

I want to change a little money into Taiwan currency.

Cue 100

Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. Zhè shì yìbǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

我要换一点台币。这是一百块美金的旅行支票。

I want to change a little money into Taiwan currency. Here are one hundred U.S. dollars in traveler's checks.

2 Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì.

我要换一点台币。

I want to change a little money into Taiwan currency.

Cue 20

Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. Zhè shì èrshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

我要换一点台币。这是二十块美金的旅行支票。

I want to change a little money into Taiwan currency. Here are twenty U.S. dollars in traveler's checks.

3 Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì.

我要换一点台币。

I want to change a little money into Taiwan currency.

Cue 40

Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. Zhè shì sìshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

我要换一点台币。这是四十快美金的旅行支票。

I want to change a little money into Taiwan currency. Here are forty U.S. dollars in traveler's checks.

4 Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì.

我要换一点台币。

I want to change a little money into Taiwan currency.

Cue 30

Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. Zhè shì sānshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

我要换一点台币。这是三十快美金的旅行支票。

I want to change a little money into Taiwan currency. Here are thirty U.S. dollars in traveler's checks.

5 Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì.

我要换一点台币。

I want to change a little money into Taiwan currency.

Cue 50

Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. Zhè shì wǔshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

我要换一点台币。这是五十块美金的旅行支票。

I want to change a little money into Taiwan currency. Here are fifty U.S. dollars in traveler's checks.

6 Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì.

我要换一点台币。

I want to change a little money into Taiwan currency.

Cue 70

Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. Zhè shì qīshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

我要换一点台币。这是其快美金的旅行支票。

I want to change a little money into Taiwan currency. Here are seventy U.S. dollars in traveler's checks.

7 Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì.

我要换一点台币。

I want to change a little money into Taiwan currency.

Cue 80

Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎn Táibì. Zhè shì bāshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

我要换一点台币。这是八十快美金的旅行支票。

I want to change a little money into Taiwan currency. Here are eighty U.S. dollars in traveler's checks.

## Expansion drill

Answer to all questions according to the cue.

- 1 Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì.  
我要换一点儿人民币。  
I want to change a little money into People's currency.

Cue yībǎi  
一百  
100

Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. Zhè shì yìbǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

我要换一点儿人民币。这是一百块旅行支票。

I want to change a little money into People's currency. Here are one hundred U.S. dollars in traveler's checks.

- Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì.  
我要换一点儿人民币。  
I want to change a little money into People's currency.

Cue yībǎi  
一百  
100

Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. Jīntiānde páijià shì duōshao?

我要换一点儿人民币。今天牌价是多少？

I want to change a little money into People's currency. What is today's exchange rate?

- 2 Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì.  
我要换一点儿人民币。  
I want to change a little money into People's currency.

Cue èrshí  
二十  
20

Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. Zhè shì èrshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

我要换一点儿人民币。这是二十块旅行支票。

I want to change a little money into People's currency. Here are twenty U.S. dollars in traveler's checks.



3 Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì.

我要换一点儿人民币。

I want to change a little money into People's currency.

Cue

páijià

牌价

exchange rate

Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. Jīntiānde páijià shì duōshǎo?

我要换一点儿人民币。今天牌价是多少？

I want to change a little money into People's currency. What is today's exchange rate?

4 Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì.

我要换一点儿人民币。

I want to change a little money into People's currency.

Cue

liùshí

六十

60

Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. Zhè shì liùshíkuài měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

我要换一点儿人民币。这是六十快旅行支票。

I want to change a little money into People's currency. Here are sixty U.S. dollars in traveler's checks.

5 Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì.

我要换一点儿人民币。

I want to change a little money into People's currency.

Cue

páijià

牌价

exchange rate

Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. Jīntiānde páijià shì duōshǎo?

我要换一点儿人民币。今天牌价是多少？

I want to change a little money into People's currency. What is today's exchange rate?

6 Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì.

我要换一点儿人民币。

I want to change a little money into People's currency.

Cue

bāshí

八十

80

Wǒ yào huàn yìdiǎnr Rénmínbì. Zhè shì bāshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpào.

我要换一点儿人民币。这是八十快旅行支票。

I want to change a little money into People's currency. Here are eighty U.S. dollars in traveler's checks.

## Expansion drill

### Transform the sentence according to the cue.

1 Zhèi shì wǔzhāng lǚxíng zhīpiào.

这是五张旅行支票。

Here are five traveler's checks.

Cue 20

Zhèi shì wǔzhāng èrshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

这是五张美金的旅行支票。

Here are give 20-dollar U.S. traveler's checks.

2 Nèi shì liǎngzhāng lǚxíng zhīpiào.

那是两张旅行支票。

There, are two traveler's checks.

Cue 10

Nèi shì liǎngzhāng shíkuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

那是两张美金的旅行支票。

There, are give 10-dollar U.S. traveler's checks.

3 Zhèi shì yīzhāng lǚxíng zhīpiào.

这是一张旅行支票。

Here is one traveler's checks.

Cue 100

Zhèi shì yīzhāng yībǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

这是一张美金的旅行支票。

Here are give 100-dollar U.S. traveler's checks.

4 Zhèi shì sānzhāng lǚxíng zhīpiào.

这是三张旅行支票。

Here are three traveler's checks.

Cue 20

Zhèi shì sānzhāng èrshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

这是三张美金的旅行支票。

Here are give 20-dollar U.S. traveler's checks.

5 Nèi shì sìzhāng lǚxíng zhīpiào.

那是四张旅行支票。

There, are four traveler's checks.

Cue 50

Nèi shì sìzhāng wǔshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

那是四张美金的旅行支票。

There, are give 50-dollar U.S. traveler's checks.

6 Nèi shì liùzhāng lǚxíng zhīpiào.

那是六张旅行支票。

There, are six traveler's checks.

Cue 10

Nèi shì liùzhāng shíkuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

那是六张美金的旅行支票。

There, are give 10-dollar U.S. traveler's checks.

7 Zhèi shì sānzhāng lǚxíng zhīpiào.

这是三张旅行支票。

Here are three traveler's checks.

Cue 20

Zhèi shì sānzhāng èrshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

这是三张美金的旅行支票。

Here are give 20-dollar U.S. traveler's checks.

## Expansion drill

Transform the statement according to the model.

1 Wǒ yào diǎnr xiǎo piàozi.

我要点儿小票子。

I want some small bills.

Wǒ yào diǎnr xiǎo piàozi. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ huànhuan.

我要点儿小票子。请你给我欢欢。

I want some small bills. Please change this for me.

2 Zhèi shì èrshikuài Měijīndè lǚxíng zhīpiào.

只是二十块美金的旅行支票。

Here are 20 U.S. dollars in traveler's checks.

Zhèi shì èrshikuài Měijīndè lǚxíng zhīpiào. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ huànhuan.

这是二十块美金的旅行支票。

Here are 20 U.S. dollars in traveler's checks. Please change this for me.

3 Wǒ yào diǎnr xiǎo piàozi.

我要点儿小票子。

I want some small bills.

Wǒ yào diǎnr xiǎo piàozi. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ huànhuan.

我要点儿小票子。请你给我欢欢。

I want some small bills. Please change this for me.

4 Zhèi shì yībǎikuài Měijīndè lǚxíng zhīpiào.

这是一百块美金的旅行支票。

Here are 100 U.S. dollars in traveler's checks.

Zhèi shì yībǎikuài Měijīndè lǚxíng zhīpiào. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ huànhuan.

这是一百块美金的旅行支票。

Here are 100 U.S. dollars in traveler's checks. Please change this for me.

5 Zhèi shì wǔshikuài Měijīndè lǚxíng zhīpiào.

这是五十块美金的旅行支票。

Here are 50 U.S. dollars in traveler's checks.

Zhèi shì wǔshikuài měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ huànhuan.

这是五十块美金的旅行支票。

Here are 50 U.S. dollars in traveler's checks. Please change this for me.

6 Wǒ yào diǎnr xiǎo piàozi.

我要点儿小票子。

I want some small bills.

Wǒ yào diǎnr xiǎo piàozi. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ huànhuan.

我要点儿小票子。请你给我换换。

I want some small bills. Please change this for me.

7 Zhèi shì èrshikuài měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

这是二十块美金的旅行支票。

Here are 20 U.S. dollars in traveler's checks.

Zhèi shì èrshikuài měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ huànhuan.

这是二十块美金的旅行支票。

Here are 20 U.S. dollars in traveler's checks. Please change this for me.

## Expansion drill

Expand the statement according to the cue.

1. Qǐng nín gěi wǒ huàn huàn.

请你给我换换。

Please change this for me.

Cue

èrshí

二十

20

Qǐng nín gěi wǒ huàn huàn. Zhè shì èrshíkuài měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào

请你给我换换。

Please change this for me. Here are twenty U.S. dollars in traveler's checks.

2. Qǐng nín gěi wǒ huàn huàn.

请你给我换换。

Please change this for me.

Cue

xiǎo piàozi

小票子

small bills

Qǐng nín gěi wǒ huàn huàn. Wǒ yào diǎnr xiǎo piàozi.

请你给我换换。

Please change this for me. I want some small bills.

3. Qǐng nín gěi wǒ huàn huàn.

请你给我换换。

Please change this for me.

Cue

páijià

牌价

exchange rate

Qǐng nín gěi wǒ huàn huàn. Jīntiānde páijià shì duōshao?

请你给我换换。

Please change this for me. What is today's exchange rate?

4. Qǐng nín gěi wo huànhuan.

请你给我换换。

Please change this for me.

Cue

yībǎi

一百

100

Qǐng nín gěi wo huànhuan. Zhèi shì yībǎikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

请你给我换换。

Please change this for me. Here are one hundred U.S. dollars in traveler's checks.

5. Qǐng nín gěi wo huànhuan.

请你给我换换。

Please change this for me.

Cue

xiǎo piàozi

小票子

small bills

Qǐng nín gěi wo huànhuan. Wǒ yào diǎnr xiǎo piàozi.

请你给我换换。

Please change this for me. I want some small bills.

6. Qǐng nín gěi wo huànhuan.

请你给我换换。

Please change this for me.

Cue

páijià

牌价

exchange rate

Qǐng nín gěi wo huànhuan. Jīntiānde páijià shì duōshao?

请你给我换换。

Please change this for me. What is today's exchange rate?

7. Qǐng nín gěi wo huànhuan.

请你给我换换。

Please change this for me.



Cue

wǔshí

五十

50

Qǐng nín gěi wǒ huànhuan. Zhè shì wǔshikuài Měijīnde lǚxíng zhīpiào.

请你给我换换。

Please change this for me. Here are fifty U.S. dollars in traveler's checks.

## Expansion drill

Transform the statement according to the cue.

1 Yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?

At what time does the bank open?

Cue

shàngwǔ

上午

in the morning

Yínháng shàngwǔ jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?

银行上午几点钟开门？

At what time in the morning does the bank open?

2 Yóuzhèngjú bādiǎn bàn kāi mén.

At what time does the post office open?

Cue

zǎoshang

早上

early morning

Yóuzhèngjú zǎoshang bādiǎn bàn kāi mén.

邮政局早上八点半开门。

The post office opens at 8 o'clock in the morning.

3 Yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?

At what time does the bank close?

Cue

xiàwǔ

下午

in the afternoon

Yínháng xiàwǔ jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?

银行下午几点钟关门？

At what time in the afternoon does the bank close?

4 Yuǎndōng Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?

At what time does the Far East company store open?

Cue

zǎoshang

早上

early morning

Yuǎndōng Gōngsī zǎoshang jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?

远东公司早上几点钟开门？

At what time early morning does the Far East company store open?

5

Dìyī Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?

At what time does the First Company store close?

Cue

wǎnshang

晚上

in the evening

Dìyī Gōngsī wǎnshang jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?

第一公司晚上几点钟关门？

At what time in the evening does the First Company store close?

6

Táiwān Yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?

At what time does the Bank of Taiwan open?

Cue

zǎoshang

早上

early morning

Táiwān Yínháng zǎoshang jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?

台湾银行早上几点钟开门？

At what time early morning does the Bank of Taiwan open?

7

Táiwān Yínháng sāndiǎn zhōng guān mén?

At what time does the Bank of Taiwan close?

Cue

xiàwǔ

下午

in the evening

Táiwān Yínháng xiàwǔ sāndiǎn zhōng guān mén?

台湾银行下午几点钟关门？

At what time in the afternoon does the Bank of Taiwan close?

## Response drill

Answer to the questions according to the cue.

- 1 Yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?  
银行几点钟开门?  
At what time does the bank open?

Cue 9 a.m.

Yínháng shàngwǔ jiǔdiǎn zhōng kāi mén.  
银行上午九点钟开门。  
The bank opens at nine o'clock in the morning.

- 2 Yóuzhèngjú jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?  
有真据几点钟关门?  
At what time does the post office close?

Cue 5 p.m.

Yóuzhèngjú xiàwǔ wǔdiǎn zhōng guān mén.  
有真据下午五点钟关门。  
The post office closes at 5 o'clock p.m.

- 3 Yuǎndōng Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?  
远东公司几点钟关门?  
At what time does Far East Company store close?

Cue 10 p.m.

Yuǎndōng Gōngsī wǎnshàng shídiǎn zhōng guān mén.  
远东公司晚上十点钟关门。  
The Far East company store closes at 10 o'clock p.m.

- 4 Jīnrì Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?  
今日公司几点钟开门?  
At what time does Today's Company store open?

Cue 8 a.m.

Jīnrì Gōngsī zǎoshàng bādiǎn zhōng kāi mén.

今日公司早上八点中开门。

The Far East company store opens at 8 o'clock a.m.

5 *Táiwān Yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?*

台湾银行几点钟开门？

At what time does Bank of Taiwan open?

Cue 9 a.m.

*Táiwān Yínháng zǎoshang jiǔdiǎn zhōng kāi mén.*

台湾银行早上九点钟开门。

The Bank of Taiwan opens at 9 o'clock a.m.

6 *Dìyī Gōngsī jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?*

第一公司几点钟关门？

At what time does the First Company store close?

Cue 10 p.m.

*Dìyī Gōngsī wǎnshang shídiǎn zhōng guān mén.*

第一公司晚上十点钟关门。

The First Company store closes at 10 o'clock p.m.

7 *Nàge yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?*

那个银行几点钟关门？

At what time does that bank close?

Cue 3 p.m.

*Nàge yínháng xiàwǔ sāndiǎn zhōng guān mén.*

那个银行下午三点钟关门。

That bank closes at 3 o'clock p.m.



---

# Chapter 4. Module 4: Directions

## *Student Textbook*

The Directions Module (DIR) will provide you with the skills needed to ask for and understand directions to any place indoors or outdoors, to give simple directions, to understand and give addresses, and to describe relative locations.

Before starting the module, you must take and pass the MON Criterion Test.

The Criterion Test will focus largely on this module, but material from ORN, BIO, MON, and associated resource modules may also be included.

## Objectives

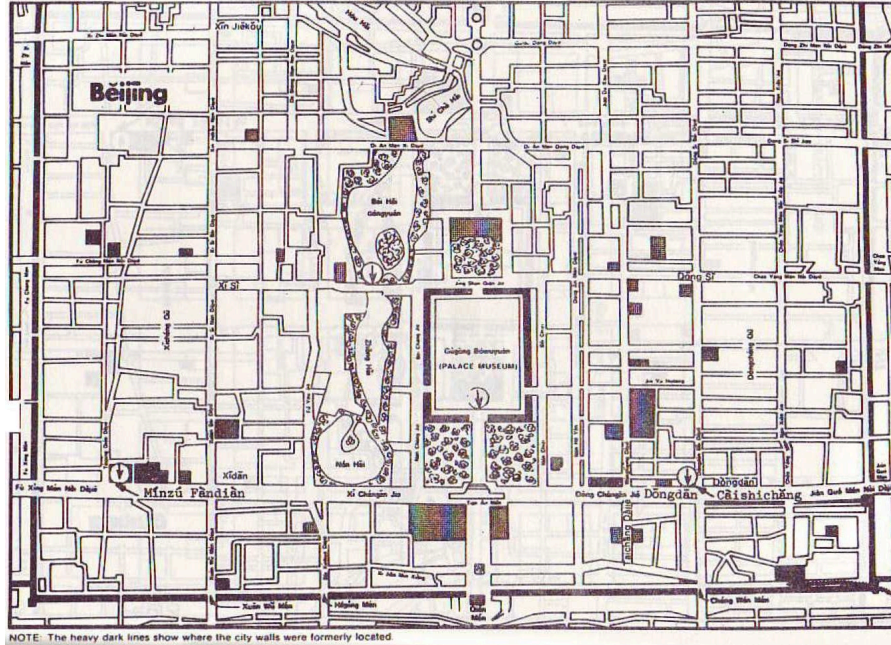
Upon successful completion of this module, the student should, he able to:

1. Give the English equivalent for any Chinese sentence in the DIR Target Lists.
2. Say any Chinese sentence in the DIR Target Lists when cued with its English equivalent.
3. Ask for directions to a location in a city, to a place in a building, or to a specific address,
4. Comprehend directions well enough to trace the route on a city map or a floor plan.
5. Demonstrate understanding of directions by restating at least part of them step by step.
6. Distinguish between Beijing and Taipei expressions for directions by matching expressions to the cities in which they would be used.
7. Direct someone (using single-sentence directions) to various places in a building by describing a route marked on a floor

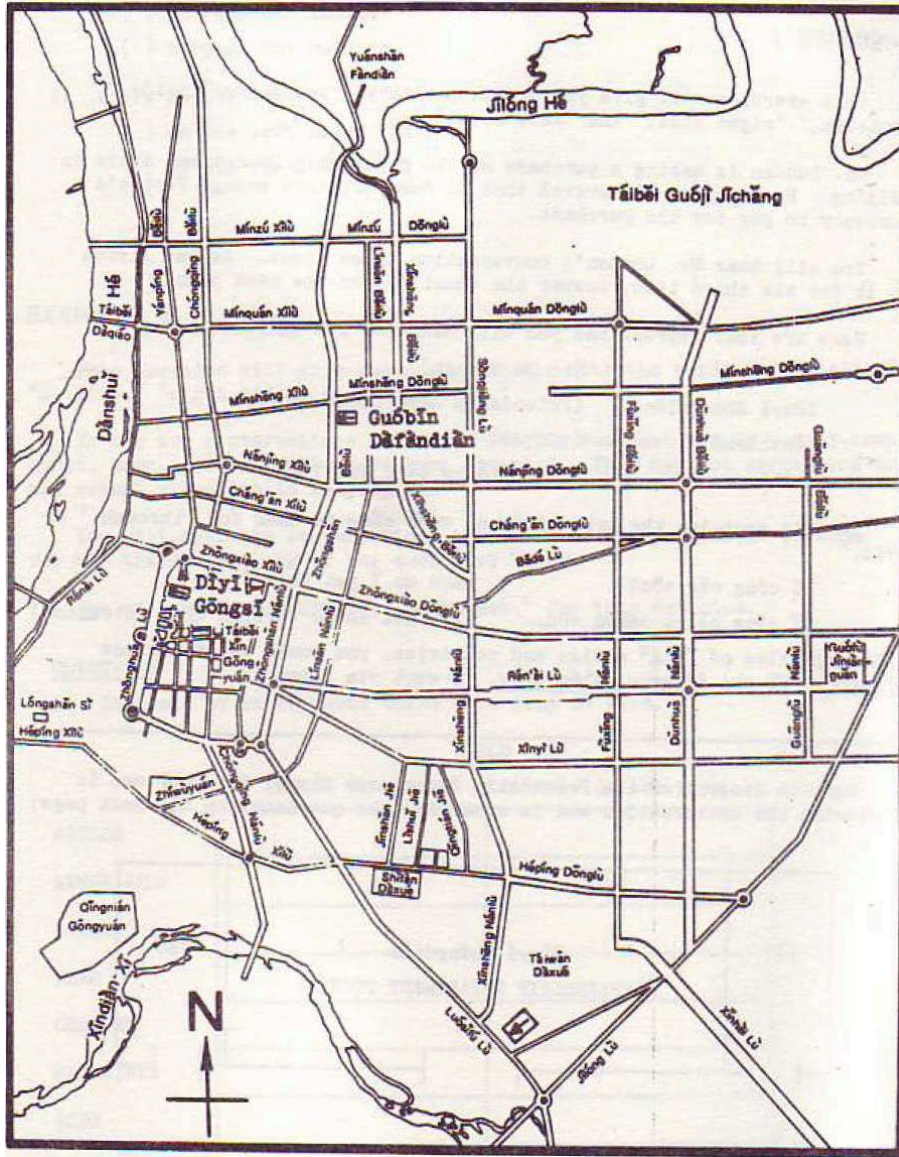


# Images

## Běijīng



## Táiběi



## Unit 1 Target List

1. Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao Huáměi Kāfēitīng?  
你知道不知道华美咖啡厅？  
Do you know of the Huáměi Coffeehouse?
0. Bù zhīdao.  
不知道。  
No, I don't.
2. Dào kāfēitīng qù, zěnmē zǒu?  
到咖啡厅去，怎么走？  
How do I get to the coffeehouse?
0. Cóng zhèlǐ wàng zuǒ zǒu. Dào le lùkǒu zài wàng yòu zǒu, jiù dào le.  
从这里往左走。到了路口再往右走，就到了。  
From here you go to the left. When you have reached the intersection, then you go to the right, and then you're there.
3. Cóng zhèlǐ dào yínháng qù, wǒ xiān wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu duì?  
从这里到银行去，我先往右走，对不对？  
To get from here to the bank, I first go to the right. Is that correct?
0. Bú shì, cóng zhèlǐ yìzhí zǒu.  
不是，从这里一直走。  
No, from here you go straight.
4. Ránhòu, dào le lùkǒu, zài wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì?  
然后，到了路口，再往左走，对不对？  
After that, when I have reached the intersection, then I go to the left. Is that correct?
0. Duì le.  
对了。  
That's correct.
0. Hǎo, wǒ zhīdao le. Xièxie.  
好。我知道了。谢谢。  
Good. I've got it now. Thank you,

5. fānguǎnzi  
饭馆子  
restaurant (Taipei)

6. fānguǎnr  
饭馆儿  
restaurant (Běijīng)

7. shāngdiàn  
商店  
store, shop (Taipei)

8. pùzi  
铺子  
store,shop (Běijīng)

9. xuéxiào  
学校  
school

10. fángzi  
房子  
house

11. xiàng  
向  
towards

## Unit 2 Target List

1. Nǐ zhīdao Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn shì bu shì zài zhèr fùjìn?

你知道动荡电影院是不是在这儿附近？

Do you know whether the **Dōngdān** Movie Theater is in this area?

Shì.

是。

Yes.

2. Cóng zhèr dào Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn qù, zěnmē zǒu?

从这儿到动荡电影院去，怎么走？

How do I get from here to the **Dōngdān** Movie Theater?

Chūle zhèige fàndiàn wǎng dōng zǒu.

出了这个饭店往东走。

When you have gone out of the hotel, walk to the east.

Dào le dìèrge lùkǒu, běibianr shì Dōngdān Càishichǎng.

到了第二个路口，北边儿是动荡菜市场。

When you have reached the second intersection, on the north side is the **Dōngdān** Market.

Nánbianr shì Dōngdān Gōngyuán.

南边儿是动荡公园。

On the south side is **Dōngdān** Park.

Diànyǐngyuàn jiù zài Dōngdān Càishichǎngde xībianr.

电影院在动荡菜市场的西边儿。

The movie theater is just on the west side of the **Dōngdān** Market.

3. Qù kàn diànyǐng yǐqián, wǒ xiān qù kàn yige péngyou.

去看电影以前，我先去看一个朋友。

Before I go to see the movie, I am first going to visit a friend.

4. Fàndiàn lǐbianr yǒu meiyǒu mǎi tāngde?

饭店里边儿有没有买汤的？

Is there a place to buy candy in the hotel?

Yǒu. Yǒu yige xiǎomàipù. Zài nèibianr.

有。有一个小买铺。在那边儿。

Yes. There's a variety shop. It's over there.

5. wàibianr (wàibian)

外边儿

outside

6. yǐhòu

以后

after

7. yòubianr (yòubian)

右边儿

right side

8. zuǒbianr (zuǒbian)

左边儿

left side

9. xiǎoxué

小学

elementary school

10. zhōngxué

中学

middle school (the equivalent of Junior and senior high school)

## Unit 3 Target List

1. Nǐ chūqu a!

你出去阿！

Oh, you're going out!

Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi jǐběn shū.

我想出去买几本书。

I thought I would go out to buy a few books.

2. Láojià, nǎr yǒu mǎi shūde?

劳驾，那儿有买书的？

Excuse me, where is there a place to buy books?

Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē yǒu yige Xīnhuá Shūdiàn, hěn dà.

王府井大街有一个新华书店，很大。

There is a New China Bookstore on Wángfǔjǐng Boulevard that is very large.

3. Láojià, Xīnhu Shūdiàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma?

劳驾，新华书店离这儿远吗？

Excuse me. Is the New China Bookstore far from here?

Bù yuǎn, hěn jìn.

不远，很近。

It's not far; it's very close.

4. Zěnmē qù? Zǒuzhe qù kěyǐ ma?

怎么去。走着去可以吗？

How do I go? Is it possible to get there by walking?

Zǒuzhe qù kěyǐ.

走着去可以。

It's possible to get there by walking.

5. Zǒu duó yuǎn?

走多远？

How far do I go?

Zǒu bù yuǎn, lùdōngde dìyīge dàlóu jiù shì Xīnhuá Shūdiàn.

走不远，路东的第一个大楼就是新华书店。

Go a short distance, and the first building on the east side of the street is the New China Bookstore,

6. Dǎo Xīnhuá Shūdiàn qù, zěnmě zǒu?

到新华书店去，怎么走？

How do I get to the New China Bookstore?

Cóng dàmén chūqu, cháo běi guǎi, jiù shì Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē.

从大门出去，朝北拐，就是王府井大街。

You go out the entrance, turn to the north, and that's Wángfǔjǐng Boulevard.

7. Láojià, nèige dàlóu shì Xīnhuá Shūdiàn ma?

劳驾，那个大楼是新华书店吗？

Excuse me, is that building the New China Bookstore?

Shì.

是。

Yes.

8. zhuǎn

轉

to turn

9. chūlai

出来

to come out

10. lùxī

路西

the west side of the street

11. lùběi

路北

the north side of the street

12. lùnán

路南

the south side of the street

13. bǎihuò gōngsī



百货公司

department store

14. Bǎihuò Dàlóu

百货大楼

name of a department store in Beijing

15. shàngbianr (shàngbian)

上边儿 (上边)

above; the top, the upper part

16. xiàbianr (xiàbian)

下边儿 (下边)

below, under; the bottom, the lower part

17. dìxia

地下

underneath; the underneath

18. zhōngjiānr (zhōngjiàn)

中间儿 (中间儿)

the middle, the space in between

19. pángbiānr (pángbiān)

旁边儿 (旁边)

beside, next to, alongside of; the side

## Unit 4 Target List

1. Qǐngwèn, cāntīng zài nǎlǐ?

请问，餐厅在哪里？

May I ask, where is the dining room?

Zuò diàntī dào èrlóu.

坐点梯到二楼。

Take the elevator to the second floor.

Xiàle diàntī, jiù kànjian le.

下了电梯，就看见了。

When you have gotten off the elevator, then you'll see it.

2. Qǐngwèn, nǐmen zhèlǐ yǒu meiyǒu lǐfǎde dìfāng?

请问，你们这里有没有理发的地方？

May I ask, is there a place to get a haircut here?

Yǒu. Xià lóu, zuǒbian jiù shì.

有。下楼，左边就是。

Yes, go downstairs, and it's (just) on the left.

3. Jǐlóu mǎi dìtú?

几楼买地图？

On what floor are maps sold?

Èrlóu.

二楼。

The second floor.

Zěnmē zǒu?

怎么走？

How do I get there (go)?

Wǎng hòu yìzhí zǒu, Shàng lóu, yòubian jiù shì mǎi dìtúde.

往后一直走。上楼，右边就是卖地图的。

Go straight to the back. Go up the stairs, and the map department is (just) on the right.

4. Xīshǒujiān zài nǎlǐ?

洗手间在哪里？

Where is the washroom?

Zài nàlǐ. Wǎng lǐ zǒu, jiù kànjiàn le.

在那里。往里走；就看见了。

It's over there. Go all the way in, and then you'll see it.

5. qián

前

front, ahead

6. duìmiàn (duìmiàn)

对面 (对面儿)

the side facing; across from, opposite, facing

7. zhèbian (zhèbian)

这边 (这边儿)

this way, this side

8. nàbian (nèbian)

那边 (那边儿)

that way, that side

9. lóutī

楼梯

staircase, stairway, stairs

10. zǒuláng

走廊

corridor

11. cèsuǒ

厕所

toilet, rest room

12. jìn

进

to enter

13. -tou

头

end (occurs in place words)

14. -mian(r)

面

surface (occurs in place words)

## Unit 5 Target List

11. Duibuqǐ.

对不起。

Excuse me.

Nī yǒu shénme shì a?

里有什么是阿？

What can I do for you?

2. Nǐ zhǎo shénme dìfang?

你找什么地方？

What place are you looking for?

Wǒ zhǎo Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn, Wǔshísiàng.

我找南京东路一段，五十四巷。

I am looking for Lane 54 of Nánjīng East Road, Section 1.

3. Nǐ wàng nàbian zǒu.

你往那边走。

You go that way.

Guò sāntiáo jiē, jiù shì Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn.

过三条街，就是南京东路一段。

Cross three streets, and that's Nánjīng East Road, Section 1.

Dào le Yíduàn yǐhòu, qǐng zài wèn biéren ba.

到了一段以后请再问别人把。

After you have gotten to Section 1, please ask someone else.

4. Qǐngwèn, Wǔlòng zài nǎlǐ?

请问，五弄在哪里？

May I ask, where is Alley 5?

Nǐ zài wàng qián zǒu yídiǎn.

你再往前走一点。

You walk (straight) ahead a little farther.

Yòubian diyīge lùkǒu jiù shì Wǔlòng.

右边第一个路口就是五弄。

The first intersection on the right is Alley 5.

5. Qǐngwèn zhètiáo lù shì shénme lù?

请问这条路是什么路？

May I ask, what road is this?

Zhè shì Zhōngshān Běilù.

这是中山北路。

This is Zhōngshān North Road.

Òu, wǒ zǒucùo le.

欧，我走错了。

Oh, I went the wrong way,

6. hú tong (hú tongr)

胡同

a narrow street, a lane (Běijīng)

7. mén (ménr)

门 (门儿)

gate, door

8. mén kǒu (mén kǒur)

门口 (门口了)

doorway, gateway, entrance

9. qiáo

桥

bridge

10. tiānqiáo

天桥

pedestrian overpass

11. dìxià rénxíngdào

地下人行道

pedestrian underground walkway

# Unit 1

## References

### Reference List

1. A: Nǐ dào nǎlǐ qù?  
你到哪里去?  
Where are you going?  
B: Wǒ dào kāfēitīng qù.  
我到咖啡厅去。  
I'm going to a coffeehouse
2. B: Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao Huáměi Kāfēitīng?  
你知道不知道华美咖啡厅?  
Do you know of the Huáměi Coffeehouse?  
A: Bù zhīdao.  
不知道。  
No, I don't.
3. A: Dào nǎlǐ qù, zěnmě zǒu?  
到哪里去, 怎么走?  
How do I get there?
4. C: Cóng zhèlǐ wǎng zuǒ zǒu.  
从这里往左走。  
From here you go to the left.
5. C: Dào le lùkǒu, zài wǎng yòu zǒu.  
到了路口, 再往右走。  
When you have reached the intersection, then you go to the right.
6. C: Dào le lùkǒu, zài wǎng yòu zǒu, jiù dào le.  
到了路口, 再往右走, 就到了。  
When you have reached the intersection, then you go to the right, and then you're there.
7. A: Wǒ xiān wǎng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì?  
我先往左走, 对不对?  
First I go to the left. Is that correct?  
C: Duì le.  
对了。  
That's correct.
8. A: Ránhòu ne?

然后呢？

And after that?

C: Ránhòu, dào le lùkǒu, zài wàng yòu.

然后，到了路口，再往右。

After that, when you have reached the intersection, then you go to the right.

A: Hǎo, wǒ zhīdao le. Xièxie.

好，我知道了。

Good, I've got it now. Thank you.

9. A: Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèlǐ dào yínháng qù, wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu duì?

请问，从这里到银行去，往右走，对不对？

May I ask, to get from here to the bank you go to the right. Is that correct?

B: Bú shì, cóng zhèlǐ yìzhí zǒu.

不是，从这里一直走。

No, from here you go straight.

10. fànguǎnzi (fànguǎnr)

饭馆子 (饭馆儿)

restaurant

11. shāngdiàn

商店

store, shop (Taipei)

12. pùzi

铺子

store, shop (Běijīng)

13. xuéxiào

学校

school

14. fángzi

房子

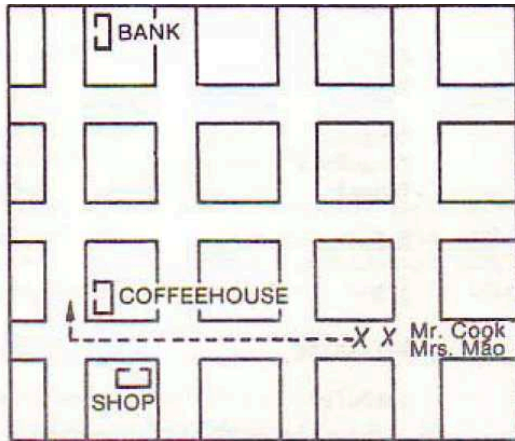
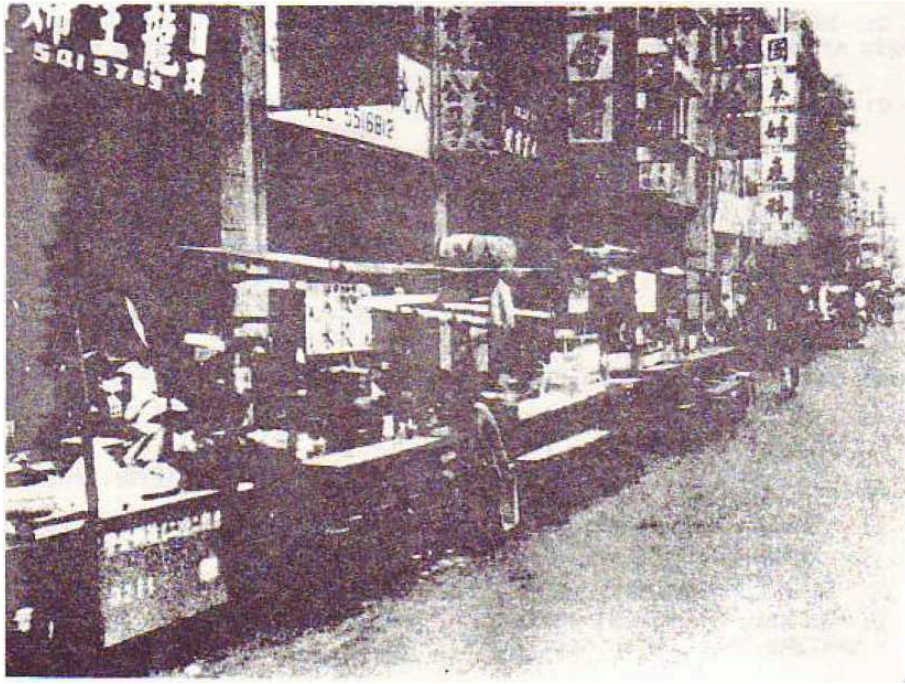
house

15. xiàng

向

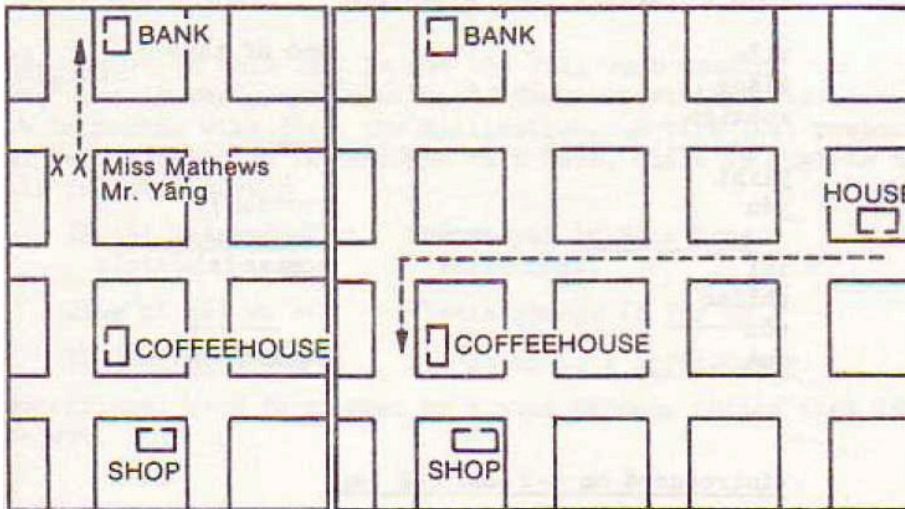
towards





DISPLAY II

DISPLAY IV



## Vocabulary

cóng	从	from
dào	到	to, towards
duì	对	to be correct
fànguǎnr	饭馆儿	restaurant (Běijīng)
fànguǎnzi	饭馆子	restaurant (Taipei)
fángzi	房子	house
Huáměi Kāfēitīng	华美咖啡厅	Huáměi Coffeehouse (Taipei)
jiù	就	then
kāfēitīng	咖啡厅	coffeehouse
lùkǒu(r)	路口	intersection
pùzi	铺子	store, shop (Běijīng)
qù	去	to go
ránhòu	然后	afterwards, after that
shāngdiàn	商店	store, shop (Taipei)
wàng (wǎng)	往	to, towards
xiān	先	first; ahead of time
xiàng	向	towards
xuéxiào	学校	school
yìzhí	一直	straight
yòu	右	right (direction)
zài	再	then (in commands)
zhīdao	知道	to know
zǒu	走	to go
zuǒ	左	left (direction)
fāngbian	方便	to be convenient
hái bù yíding	还不一定	not yet certain
jīngguo	经过	by way of, via
kāi xué	开学	school starts (literally, “open school”)

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1

1. A: Nǐ dào nǎlǐ qù?  
你到哪里去?  
Where are you going?
- B: Wǒ dào kāfēitīng qù.  
我到咖啡厅去。  
I'm going to a coffeehouse

Qù is used as the verb "to go" when there is a destination implied or stated, as in "going to the country" and "going somewhere." The verb zǒu, "to leave," is used for sentences such as "I'm going (leaving) now," Wǒ xiànzài zǒu le. Wǒ xiànzài qù le means "I'm going there now," implying the destination "there."

Wǒ dào Shànghǎi qù.

我到上海去。

I am going to Shànghǎi

Tā yě qù.

他/她也去。

He is going there too.

Because qù is an action verb, it is made negative with bù except when you are talking about completed action. Here are some examples of qù used, in various aspects:

Tā bú qù.

他不去。

He is not going.

Tā zuótiān méi qù.

他/她昨天没去。

He did not go yesterday. (COMPLETED ACTION)

Tā xiànzài bú qù le.

他/她现在不去了。

Now he is not going. (Originally, he was going to go. NEW SITUATION)

Tā méi qùguo.

他/她没去过。

He has never gone there.

**Dào...qù:** In this exchange **dào** is not the full verb meaning "to arrive," but is the prepositional verb "to." The prepositional verb phrase beginning with **dào** indicates the destination. Notice that prepositional verb phrases in Chinese precede the main verb, while in English they usually follow the verb.

Tā zài Xiānggǎng zhùle sāntiān.

他/她在香港住了三天。

She stayed in Hong Kong three days.

Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ huàn huàn.

请你给我换换。

Please change it for me.

Wǒ dào kāfēitīng qù.

我到咖啡厅去。

I'm going to a coffeehouse.

A prepositional verb is always followed by a noun or noun phrase that is its object.

**Kāfēitīng.** "coffeehouse"<sup>11</sup>: Some people say that the coffeehouse was a European concept first adopted by the Japanese and then transplanted to Taiwan. Coffeehouses in Taiwan are comfortable, leisurely places where a person can linger over a cup of something and talk with a friend for hours, to a background of recorded light music. Some coffeehouses have become quite cosmopolitan, offering a dozen kinds of coffee in addition to a variety of fruit drinks and soft drinks. Sometimes there may also be a short menu including items such as fried rice, noodles, sandwiches, hamburgers, and ice cream.

## Notes on №2

2. B: Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao Huáměi Kāfēitīng?  
你知道不知道华美咖啡厅？  
Do you know of the Huáměi Coffeehouse?
- A: Bù zhīdao.  
不知道。  
No, I don't.

The verb **zhīdao** means “to know” or “to know of.” Another verb, **rènshi**, also translates into English as “to know,” but in the sense of “to be acquainted with,” “to recognise.”

Notice that in the affirmative the verb **zhīdao** ends in a Neutral tone, while in the negative it ends in a Falling tone (**bù zhīdao**).

The verb **zhīdao** is a state verb. State verbs describe qualities or conditions (**dà** “to be large”; **guì**, “to be expensive”). Knowing (**zhīdao**), wanting (**xiǎng** or **yào**), and liking (**xǐhuan**) are all considered states. As a state verb, **zhīdao** can only be made negative with **bù** (never **méi**). **Zhīdao** can be used with the marker **le** for new situations.

Tā yǐqián bù zhīdao zěnmē dào zhèr lái, xiànzài zhīdao le

他/她以前不知道怎么到这儿来，现在知道了。

He didn't know how to get here before, but now he knows,

Tā qùnián hái bù zhīdao tā yǐhòu yào dào Zhōngguó qù.

他/她去年还不指导他/她以后要到中国去。

Last year he didn't know that he would later be going to China.

**Huáměi**: **Huá** means “glorious,” It is one of the syllables often used to refer to China. The syllable **měi** “beautiful,” is used in compounds to refer to America (as in **Měiguó**).

**Notes on №3**

3. A: **Dào nàlǐ qù, zěnmē zǒu?**  
**到哪里去，怎么走？**  
 How do I get there?

Earlier, you learned the verb **zǒu** as “to leave.” In the sentence above, **zǒu** means “to go” in the sense of, “to go by way of,” to take a route.” **Zǒu** also means “to walk.”

**Tā hái méi zǒu, hái zài zhèr kàn bào ne**

**他/她没走，还在在儿看报了。**

He hasn't left yet. He is still here reading the paper.

**Wǒmen zǒu zhèige mén yě kěyǐ.**

**我们走这个门也可以。**

We can also go through this door.

**Háizi hái bú huì zǒu.**

**孩子不会走。**

The baby can't yet walk.

**Dào nàlǐ qù, zěnmē zǒu?** This sentence consists of a topic, **dào nàlǐ qù** “to go to that place,” followed by a question about that topic, **zěnmē zǒu** “how do I go?” Both the topic and the question have the structure of full sentences:

<b>Dào</b>	<b>nàlǐ</b>	<b>qù,</b>	<b>zěnmē</b>	<b>zǒu?</b>
<b>到</b>	<b>那里</b>	<b>去</b>	<b>怎么</b>	<b>走</b>
To	there	go,	how	go?

Translated as “to go,” **qù** focuses on the destination, while **zǒu** focuses on the route taken to get there.

## Notes on №4

4. C: **Cóng zhèlì wàng zuǒ zǒu.**  
**从这里往左走。**  
 From here you go to the left.

**Cóng**, “from”: Unlike the other prepositional verbs you have learned, **cóng** is only rarely used as a full verb in modern Chinese. Most frequently it is used prepositionally.

**Wàng**, “to,” “towards”: The prepositional verbs **wàng** and **dào** may both be translated as “to.” **Wàng**, however, means simply “towards” or “in the direction of,” while **dào** implies eventual arrival at a destination. **Wàng** may also be pronounced **wǎng**.

Notice that two prepositional verb phrases occur before the main verb.

PREPOSITIONAL VERB AND NOUN	PREPOSITIONAL VERB AND NOUN	MAIN VERB
<b>Cóng zhèlì</b>	<b>wàng zuǒ</b>	<b>zǒu.</b>
<b>从这里</b>	<b>往左</b>	<b>走</b>

### Notes on №5

5. C: Dào le lù kǒu, zài wàng yòu zǒu.

到了路口，再往右走。

When you have reached the intersection, then you go to the right.

Lù kǒu, “intersection”: Literally, this word means “road opening.”

Completion **-le** in the sentence above marks completed action but not past tense. It shows the completion of one action in the sentence in relation to another but does not indicate whether that action is past, present, or future. In the English translation, the time relationship between the two actions is indicated by the word “when”: “When you have reached the intersection, then you go to the right.” In a more formal style, the sentence could be translated as “Having reached the intersection, you go to the right.”

The adverb **zài** is used for “then” in commands and suggestions. It usually indicates the next step in a suggested sequence of actions, as in “First you go left, and then, when you have reached the intersection, you go right.”



### Notes on №6

6. C: **Dào le lù kǒu, zài wǎng yòu zǒu, jiù dào le.**  
**到了路口，再往右走，就到了。**  
When you have reached the intersection, then you go to the right, and then you're there.

**Jiù**; You have learned that **jiù** can mean “right,” “precisely,” “just” referring to where something is, as in **jiù zài zhèlǐ**, “They’re right here.”

You also know that it can mean “immediately,” “right away,” as in **Wǒ jiù lái**, “I’ll be right back.” A third, meaning was introduced: “only,” a synonym of **zhǐ**, as in **Jiù yǒu wǒ fùqīn, mǔqīn**, “There’s only my father and mother.” Now you see **jiù** used to mean “then.” It stresses the immediacy of one thing happening after another: “and then right away.”

You have learned two words that may be translated as “then”: **zài** and **jiù**. However, the two words are not used interchangeably. **Jiù** is used to stress how soon one event happened after another. **Zài** is used to stress how two actions are to be sequenced in time.

The marker **le** in **Jiù dào le** is combined **le**.

### Notes on №7

7. A: Wǒ xiān wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì?  
我先往左走，对不对？  
First I go to the left. Is that correct?
- C: Duì le.  
对了。  
That's correct.

**Xiān**, “first,” is an adverb. It must therefore come after the subject and before the verb, as in **Nǐ xiān zǒu**, “You go first,” (in English “first” may be placed either before the subject or after the verb, as in “First you I go” and “You go first.” But in Chinese **xiān** must be placed between the subject and the verb.)

**Dìyī** also means “first,” but **dìyī** and **xiān** are not interchangeable. **Dìyī** modifies nouns, whereas **xiān** modifies verbs. **Dìyī** refers to the first in a sequence, in other words, the “number one” something-or-other. **Xiān** refers to doing something first, before doing a second thing.

**Duì bu duì**: This phrase is used when you expect your listener to agree with you but want to make sure.

### Notes on №8

8. A: Ránhòu ne?  
然后呢?  
And after that?
- C: Ránhòu, dào le lùkǒu, zài wǎng yòu.  
然后, 到了路口, 再往右。  
After that, when you have reached the intersection, then you go to the right.
- A: Hǎo, wǒ zhīdao le. Xièxie.  
好, 我知道了。  
Good, I've got it now. Thank you.

**Ránhòu**, “(and) after that”: When giving directions or describing a contemplated series of steps, **ránhòu** is often followed by **zài**.

Wǒ yào dào Xiānggǎng qù sāntiān, ránhòu zài qù Shānghǎi.

我要到香港去三天, 然后再去上海。

I'm going to Hong Kong for three days, and then go to **Shānghǎi**.

**Zhīdao le** means “I know now” in the sense of “Before, I didn't know how to get there, but now I know.” (The expression is translated into more idiomatic English as “I've got it now.”) The state verb **zhīdao** plus new-situation **le** indicate a change from not knowing to knowing. Here is another example of **zhīdao** and new-situation **le**:

Wǒ cóngqián bù zhīdao tā zhù zài nǎlǐ, xiànzài zhīdao le.

我从前不知道他/她住在哪里, 现在知道了。

Before, I didn't know where he lived, but now, I know.

**Notes on №9**

9.     A:     Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèlǐ dào yínháng qù, wǎng yòu zǒu, duì bu duì?  
          请问，从这里到银行去，往右走，对不对？  
          May I ask, to get from here to the bank you go to the right. Is that correct?
- B:     Bú shì, cóng zhèlǐ yìzhí zǒu.  
          不是，从这里一直走。  
          No, from here you go straight.

**Bú shì:** Notice that the question in exchange 9 is not answered with **bú duì**. The expression **bú duì** is as rude in Chinese as “you’re wrong” is in English (except when a teacher is correcting a student).

## Notes on additional vocabulary

10.	fànguǎnzi (fànguǎnr) 饭馆子 (饭馆儿) restaurant
11.	shāngdiàn 商店 store, shop (Taipei)
12.	pùzi 铺子 store, shop (Běijīng)
13.	xuéxiào 学校 school
14.	fāngzi 房子 house
15.	xiàng 向 towards

**Fànguǎnzi**, “restaurant”: **Fàndiàn** refers to either a restaurant or a hotel. **Fànguǎnzi** means “restaurant.” The usual **Běijīng** version of this word is **fànguǎnr** (pronounced as if written **fànguǎr**). The ending -r is used frequently in Beijing but in Taiwan is rarely used by Taiwanese speakers of Standard Chinese.

Adding -r to a syllable usually causes the pronunciation of the base syllable to change. It will be easier and more practical for you to examine is each -r word as it is introduced in the course of study.

You have already learned the word **yidiǎnr**, which is actually pronounced **yidiǎr**. From the examples **yidiǎnr** and **fànguǎnr** you can see that when -r is added to a syllable that ends with n, the /n/ sound disappears | completely.

Although adding -r causes pronunciation changes in most syllables, these changes are not represented in the Pinyin system of romanization. Pinyin spelling rules state that the ending -r should simply be tacked on the (at) the end of a syllable, regardless of whether or not the pronunciation of the base syllable is changed by this addition.

**Xiàng**, “towards”: The prepositional verb **xiàng** may be used in most of the same ways that **wàng** is used. You will probably hear **wàng** (**wǎng**) more frequently than the literary-sounding **xiàng**.

Dào le lùkǒu, xiàng zuǒ zǒu.

到了路口，先左走。

When you get to the intersection, go to the left,

## Drills

### Expansion drill

Expand the statement according to the model and the cue.

- 1 Tā qù.  
他/她去。  
He/she is going.

Cue xuéxiào  
学校  
school

Tā dào xuéxiào qù.  
他/她到学校去。  
He/she is going to school.

- 2 Wáng Tóngzhì qù.  
王同志去。  
Comrade Wáng is going.

Cue Jiānádà  
加拿大  
Canada

Wáng Tóngzhì dào Jiānádà qù.  
王同志到加拿大去。  
Comrade Wáng is going to Canada.

- 3 Tā lái.  
他/她来。  
He/she is coming.

Cue zhèlǐ  
这里  
here

Tā dào zhèlǐ lái.

他/她到这里去。

He/she is coming here.

4 Lǐ Xiānsheng qù.

李先生去。

Mr. Lǐ is coming.

Cue

xuéxiào

学校

school

Lǐ Xiānsheng dào xuéxiào qù.

李先生到学校去。

Mr. Lǐ is going to school.

5 Chén Nǚshì lái.

陳女是来。

Mrs. Chén is going.

Cue

Běijīng

北京

Peking

Chén Nǚshì dào Běijīng qù.

陳女是到北京去。

Mrs. Chén is going to Běijīng.

6 Gāo Tóngzhì qù.

高同志去。

Comrade Gāo is going.

Cue

yóuzhèngjú

邮政局

post office

Gāo Tóngzhì dào yóuzhèngjú qù.

高同志到邮政局去。

Comrade Gāo is going to the post office.

7 Sūn Fūren qù.

孫夫人去。

Mrs. Sūn is going.

Cue

náli

哪里

where

Sūn Fūren dào nali qù?

孫夫人到哪里去？

Where is going Mrs. Sūn?



## Response drill

Answer to all the questions according to the cue.

- 1 Tā dào nǎlǐ qù?  
他/她 到哪里去?  
Where is he/she going?

Cue nàge fànguǎnzi  
那个饭馆子  
that restaurant

Tā dào nàge fànguǎnzi qù.  
他/她 到那个饭馆子去。  
He/she is going to that restaurant.

- 2 Chén Xiānsheng dào nǎlǐ qù?  
陳先生到哪里去?  
Where is Mr. Chén going?

Cue Táiwān Yínháng  
台湾银行  
the Bank of Taiwan

Chén Xiānsheng dào Táiwān Yínháng qù.  
陳先生台湾到台湾银行去。  
Mr. Chén is going to the Bank of Taiwan.

- 3 Jiāng Tàitai dào nǎlǐ qù?  
江太太到哪里去?  
Where is Mrs. Jiāng going?

Cue xuéxiào  
学校  
school

Jiāng Tàitai dào xuéxiào qù.  
蔣太太到学校去。  
Mrs. Jiāng is going to school.

4 Zhāng Xiǎojiě dào nǎlǐ qù?  
張小姐到哪里去？  
Where is Miss Zhāng going?

Cue nàge fànguǎnzi  
那个饭馆子  
that restaurant

Zhāng Xiǎojiě dào nàge fànguǎnzi qù.  
張太太到那个饭馆子去。  
Miss Zhāng is going to that restaurant.

5 Gāo Xiānsheng dào nǎlǐ qù?  
高先生到哪里去？  
Where is Mr. Gāo going?

Cue wǔguānchù  
武官處  
military attaché office

Gāo Xiānsheng dào wǔguānchù qù.  
高先生到武官處去。  
Mr. Gāo is going to the military attaché office.

6 Liú Xiānsheng dào nǎlǐ qù?  
劉先生到哪里去？  
Where is Mr. Liú going?

Cue Huáměi Kāfēitīng  
华美咖啡厅  
Huáměi Café

Liú Xiānsheng dào Huáměi Kāfēitīng qù.  
劉先生到华美咖啡厅去。  
Mr. Liú is going to Huáměi Café.

7 Lín Nǚshì dào nǎlǐ qù?  
林奴是到哪里去？  
Where is Mrs. Lín going?

Cue

Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn

国宾大饭店

Ambassador Hotel

Lín Nǚshì dào Guóbīn Dàfàndiàn qù.

林奴是到国宾大饭店去。

Mrs. Lín is going to the ambassador Hotel.

## Transformation drill

Transform the question according to the model.

1 Nǐ zhīdao nèige shāngdiàn ma?

你知道那个商店吗？

Do you know of that store?

Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao nèige shāngdiàn?

你知道不知道那个商店？

Do you know of that store or not?

2 Nǐ zhīdao nèige xuéxiào ma?

你知道那个学校吗？

Do you know of that school?

Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao nèige xuéxiào?

你知道不知道那个学校？

Do you know about that school or not?

3 Tā zhīdao Táiwān Yínháng ma?

他/她知道台湾银行吗？

Does he/she know about the Bank of Taiwan?

Tā zhīdao bu zhīdao Táiwān Yínháng?

他/她知道不知道台湾银行？

Does he/she know about the Bank of Taiwan or not?

4 Lín Xiānsheng zhīdao nèige shāngdiàn ma?

林先生直到那个商店吗？

Does Mr. Lín know about that store?

Lín Xiānsheng zhīdao bu zhīdao nèige shāngdiàn?

林先生知道不知道那个商店？

Does Mr. Lín know about that store or not?

5 Wáng Tàitai zhīdao zhège fānguǎnzi ma?

王太太直到这个饭馆子吗？

Does Mrs. Wáng know about this restaurant?

Wáng Tàitai zhīdao bu zhīdao zhège fànguǎnzi?

王太太知道不知道这个饭馆子？

Does Mrs. Wáng know about this restaurant or not?

6 Yáng Xiǎojiě zhīdao Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn ma?

楊小姐知道远山大饭店吗？

Does Miss Yáng know about the Yuánshān hotel?

Yáng Xiǎojiě zhīdao bu zhīdao Yuánshān Dàfàndiàn?

楊小姐知道不知道远山大饭店？

Does Miss Yáng know about the Yuánshān hotel or not?

7 Zhào Xiānsheng zhīdao Jīnrì Gōngsī ma?

趙先生知道今日公司吗？

Does Mr. Zhào know about the Jīnrì company?

Zhào Xiānsheng zhīdao bu zhīdao Jīnrì Gōngsī?

趙先生知道不知道今日公司？

Does Mr. Zhào know about the Jīnrì company or not?

## Response drill

Answer to all the questions according to the model and the cue.

1 Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao Huáměi Kāfēitīng?

你知道不知道华美咖啡厅？

Do you know of the Huáměi Coffeehouse?

Cue yes

Zhīdao, Huáměi Kāfēitīng zài wǒmen nàr.

知道，华美咖啡厅在我们那儿。

Yes, the Huáměi Coffeehouse is over there by us.

2 Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao Huáměi Kāfēitīng?

你知道不知道华美咖啡厅？

Do you know of the Huáměi Coffeehouse?

Cue no

Duibuqǐ, wǒ bù zhīdao.

对不起，我不知道。

I'm sorry, I don't know [it].

3 Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao Dìyī Gōngsī?

你知道不知道第一东四？

Do you know about the First Company?

Cue no

Duibuqǐ, wǒ bù zhīdao.

对不起我不知道。

I'm sorry, I don't know [it].

4 Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao wǔguānchù?

你知道不知道武官处？

Do you know about the military attaché office?

Cue yes

Zhīdao, wǔguānchù zài wǒmen nàr.

知道，武官處在我們那兒。

Yes, the military attaché office is in our place.

5 Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao Táiwān Dàxué?

你知道不知道台灣大學？

Do you know about the University of Taiwan?

Cue no

Duibuqǐ, wǒ bù zhīdao.

对不起，我不知道。

I'm sorry, I don't know [it].

6 Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao Měiguó Xīnwénchù?

你知道不知道美國新聞社？

Do you know about the American news office?

Cue yes

Zhīdao, Měiguó Xīnwénchù zài wǒmen nàr.

知道，美國新聞社在我們那兒。

Yes, the American news office is in our place.

7 Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao nàge fànguǎnzi?

你知道不知道那個飯館子？

Do you know about that restaurant?

Cue no

Duibuqǐ, wǒ bù zhīdao.

对不起，我不知道。

I'm sorry, I don't know [it].

## Expansion drill

Create the question corresponding to the statement, according to the model.

1 Dào nàlǐ qù.

到那里去。

Go there.

Qǐngwèn, dào nàlǐ qù, zěnmē zǒu?

请问到哪里去，怎么做走？

May I ask, how do I get there?

2 Dào fànguǎnzi qù.

到饭馆子去。

Go to the restaurant.

Qǐngwèn, dào fànguǎnzi qù, zěnmē zǒu?

请问，到饭馆子去，怎么走？

May I ask, how do I get to the restaurant?

3 Dào yóuzhèngjú qù.

到邮政局去。

Go to the post office.

Qǐngwèn, dào yóuzhèngjú qù, zěnmē zǒu?

请问，到有镇距去，怎么做走？

May I ask, how do I get to the post office?

4 Dào shāngdiàn qù.

到商店去。

Go to the store.

Qǐngwèn, dào shāngdiàn qù, zěnmē zǒu?

请问，到商店去，怎么做走？

May I ask, how do I get to the store?

5 Dào Táiwān Dàxué qù.

到台湾大学去。

Go to the University of Taiwan.



Qǐngwèn, dào Táiwān Dàxué qù, zěnmē zǒu?

请问，到台湾大学去，怎么做走？

May I ask, how do I get to the University of Taiwan?

6 Dào Měiguó Xīnwénchù qù.

到美国新闻出去。

Go to the American news office.

Qǐngwèn, dào Měiguó Xīnwénchù qù, zěnmē zǒu?

请问，到美国新闻出去，怎么走？

May I ask, how do I get to the American news office?

7 Dào Huáměi Kāfēitīng qù.

到华美咖啡厅去。

Go to the Huáměi Café.

Qǐngwèn, dào Huáměi Kāfēitīng qù, zěnmē zǒu?

请问，到华美咖啡厅去，怎么走？

May I ask, how do I get to the Huáměi Café?

## Transformation drill

Transform the question according to the model.

- 1 Nǐ zhīdao dào Huáměi Kāfēitīng qù zěnmē zǒu ma?  
你知道到华美咖啡厅去怎么走吗？  
Do you know how to get to the Huáměi Coffeehouse?

Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao dào Huáměi Kāfēitīng qù zěnmē zǒu?  
你知道不知道到华美咖啡厅去怎么走？  
Do you know how to get to the Huáměi Coffeehouse or not?

- 2 Nǐ zhīdao dào Táiwān Yínháng qù zěnmē zǒu ma?  
你之知道到台湾银行去怎么走吗？  
Do you know how to get to the Bank of Taiwan?

Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao dào Táiwān Yínháng qù zěnmē zǒu?  
你知道不知道道到台湾银行去怎么走？  
Do you know how to get to the Bank of Taiwan or not?

- 3 Nǐ zhīdao dào nàge fànguǎnzi qù zěnmē zǒu ma?  
你之知道到那个饭馆子去怎么走吗？  
Do you know how to get to that restaurant?

Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao dào nàge fànguǎnzi qù zěnmē zǒu?  
你知道不知道道到那个饭馆子去怎么走？  
Do you know how to get to that restaurant or not?

- 4 Nǐ zhīdao dào nèige shāngdiàn qù zěnmē zǒu ma?  
你之知道到那个商店去怎么走吗？  
Do you know how to get to that store?

Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao dào nèige shāngdiàn qù zěnmē zǒu?  
你知道不知道道到那个商店去怎么走？  
Do you know how to get to that store or not?

- 5 Nǐ zhīdao dào nàge xuéxiào qù zěnmē zǒu ma?  
你之知道到那个学校去怎么走吗？  
Do you know how to get to that school?

Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao dào nàge xuéxiào qù zěnmě zǒu?

你知道不知道道到那个学校去怎么走？

Do you know how to get to that school or not?

6 Nǐ zhīdao dào kāfēitīng qù zěnmě zǒu ma?

你之知道到咖啡厅去怎么走吗？

Do you know how to get to the café?

Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao dào kāfēitīng qù zěnmě zǒu?

你知道不知道道到咖啡厅去怎么走？

Do you know how to get to the café or not?

7 Nǐ zhīdao dào wǔguānchù qù zěnmě zǒu ma?

你之知道到武官處去怎么走吗？

Do you know how to get to the military attaché office?

Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao dào wǔguānchù qù zěnmě zǒu?

你知道不知道道到武官處去怎么走？

Do you know how to get to the military attaché office or not?

## Expansion drill

Expand the statement according to the model and the cue.

1 Xiān wàng zuǒ zǒu, zài wàng yòu zǒu.

先往左走，在往右走。

First go to the left; then go to the right.

Cue

lùkǒu

路口

intersection

Xiān wàng zuǒ zǒu, dào le lùkǒu zài wàng yòu zǒu.

先往左走，到了路口再往右走。

First go to the left; when you get to the corner, go to the right.

2 Xiān wàng yòu zǒu, zài wàng zuǒ zǒu.

先往右走，在往左走。

First go to the right; then go to the left.

Cue

Dūnhuà Lù

敦化路

Dūnhuà road

Xiān wàng yòu zǒu, dào le Dūnhuà Lù zài wàng zuǒ zǒu.

先往右走，到了敦化路再往左走。

First go to the right; when you get to the Dūnhuà boulevard, go to the left.

3 Xiān yìzhí zǒu, zài wàng zuǒ zǒu.

先一直走，在往左走。

First go straight ahead; then go to the left.

Cue

Zhōngshān Běilù

中山北路

Zhōngshān north road

Xiān yìzhí zǒu, dào le Zhōngshān Běilù zài wàng zuǒ zǒu.

先一直走，到了中山北路再往左走。

First go straight ahead; when you get to the Zhōngshān north road, go to the left.

4 Xiān wàng zuǒ zǒu, zài wàng yòu zǒu.

先往左走，在往右走。

First go to the left; then go to the left.

Cue

dièrge lùkǒu

第二个路口

second intersection

Xiān wàng zuǒ zǒu, dào le dièrge lùkǒu zài wàng yòu zǒu.

先往左走，到了第二个路口再往右走。

First go to the left; when you get to second intersection, go to the right.

5 Xiān wàng yòu zǒu, zài wàng zuǒ zǒu.

先往右走，在往左走。

First go to the right; then go to the right.

Cue

disānge lùkǒu

第三个路口

third intersection

Xiān wàng yòu zǒu, dào le disānge lùkǒu zài wàng zuǒ zǒu.

先往右走，到了第三个路口再往左走。

First go to the right; when you get to the third intersection, go to the left.

6 Xiān yìzhí zǒu, zài wàng yòu zǒu.

先一直走，在往右走。

First go straight ahead; then go to right.

Cue

Zhōnghuá Lù

中华路

Zhōnghuá road

Xiān yìzhí zǒu, dào le Zhōnghuá Lù zài wàng yòu zǒu.

先一直走，到了中华路再往右走。

First go straight ahead; when you get to the Zhōnghuá road, go to the right.

7 Xiān wàng zuǒ zǒu, zài wàng yòu zǒu.

先往左走，在往右走。

First go to the left; then go to right.

Cue

Rénài Lù

仁爱路

Rénài road

Xiān wàng zuǒ zǒu, dào le Rénài Lù zài wàng yòu zǒu.

先往左走，到了仁爱路再往右走。

First go to the left; when you get to the Rénài road, go to the right.

## Expansion drill

Expand the question according to the model and the cue.

- 1 Cóng zhèlǐ yìzhí zǒu, duì bu duì?  
从这里一直走，对不对？  
You go straight from here. Is that correct?

Cue nàlǐ  
那里  
there

Cóng zhèlǐ dào nàlǐ qù, yìzhí zǒu, duì bu duì?  
从这里到哪里去一直走，对不对？  
To get from here to there you go straight. Is that correct?

- 2 Cóng zhèlǐ wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì?  
从这里往左走，对不对？  
You go to the left from here. Is that correct?

Cue nǐ jiā  
你家  
your home

Cóng zhèlǐ dào nǐ jiā qù, wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì?  
从这里到你家去，往左走，对不对？  
To get from here to your home, you go to the left. Is that correct?

- 3 Cóng zhèlǐ yìzhí zǒu, duì bu duì?  
从这里一直走，对不对？  
You go straight ahead from here. Is that correct?

Cue fànguǎnzi  
饭馆子  
restaurant

Cóng zhèlǐ dào fànguǎnzi qù, yìzhí zǒu, duì bu duì?  
从这里到饭子去，一直走，对不对？  
To get from here to the restaurant, you go straight ahead. Is that correct?

4 Cóng zhèlǐ wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu duì?

从这里往右走，对不对？

You go to the right from here. Is that correct?

Cue

kāfēitīng

咖啡厅

café

Cóng zhèlǐ dào kāfēitīng qù, wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu duì?

从这里到咖啡厅去，往右走，对不对？

To get from here to the café you go to the right. Is that correct?

5 Cóng zhèlǐ wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì?

从这里往左走，对不对？

You go to the left from here. Is that correct?

Cue

yóuzhèngjú

有镇距

post office

Cóng zhèlǐ dào yóuzhèngjú qù, wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì?

从这里到有镇距去，往左走，对不对？

To get from here to the post office you go the left. Is that correct?

6 Cóng zhèlǐ yìzhí zǒu, duì bu duì?

从这里一直走对不对？

You go straight ahead from here. Is that correct?

Cue

wǔguānchù

武官處

military attaché office

Cóng zhèlǐ dào wǔguānchù qù, yìzhí zǒu, duì bu duì?

从这里到武官處去，一直走，对不对？

To get from here to military attaché office you go straight ahead. Is that correct?

7 Cóng zhèlǐ wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu duì?

从这里往右走，对不对？

You go to the right from here. Is that correct?



Cue

xuéxiào

学校

school

Cóng zhèlǐ dào xuéxiào qù, wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu duì?

从这里到学校去，往右走，对不对？

To get from here to the school, you go to the right. Is that correct?

## Response drill

Answer to all the questions according to the model and the cue.

1 Wǒ zhīdao Huáměi Kāfēitīng.

我知道华美咖啡厅。

I know of the Huamei Coffeehouse.

Cue

yǒu

右

right

Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèlǐ dào Huáměi Kāfēitīng qù wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu duì?

请问，从这里到华美咖啡飞艇去往右走，对不对？

May I ask, you go to the right to get to the Huamei Coffeehouse. Is that correct?

2 Wǒ zhīdao nàge fànguǎnzi.

我知道那个饭馆子。

I know of that restaurant.

Cue

zuǒ

左

left

Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèlǐ dào nàge fànguǎnzi qù wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì?

请问，从这里到那个饭馆子去往左走，对不对？

May I ask, you go to the left to get to the restaurant. Is that correct?

3 Wǒ zhīdao nàge yóuzhèngjú.

我知道右镇距。

I know of that post office.

Cue

yǒu

右

right

Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèlǐ dào nàge yóuzhèngjú qù wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu duì?

请问，从这里到那个右镇距去往右走，对不对？

May I ask, you go to the right to get to the post office. Is that correct?

4 Wǒ zhīdao Táiwān Yínháng.  
我知道台湾银行。  
I know of the Bank of Taiwan.

Cue zuǒ  
左  
left

Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèlì dào Táiwān Yínháng qù wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì?  
请问，从这里到台湾银行去往左走，对不对？  
May I ask, you go to the left to get to the Bank of Taiwan. Is that correct?

5 Wǒ zhīdao wǔguānchù.  
我知道武官處。  
I know of the military attaché office.

Cue yìzhí  
一直  
straight ahead

Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèlì dào wǔguānchù qù wàng yìzhí zǒu, duì bu duì?  
请问，从这里到武官處去往一直走，对不对？  
May I ask, you go straight ahead to get to military attaché office. Is that correct?

6 Wǒ zhīdao Měiguó xuéxiào.  
我知道美国学校。  
I know of the American school

Cue zuǒ  
左  
left

Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèlì dào Měiguó xuéxiào qù wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì?  
请问，从这里到学校去往左走，对不对？  
May I ask, you go to the left to get to the school. Is that correct?

7 Wǒ zhīdao nàge shāngdiàn.  
我知道那个商店。  
I know of that store.

Cue

yízhí

一直

straight ahead

Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèlǐ dào nàge shāngdiàn qù wàng yízhí zǒu, duì bu duì?

请问，从这里到那个商店去一直走，对不对？

May I ask, you go straight ahead to get to the store. Is that correct?

## Response drill

Answer to all the questions according to the model and the cue.

- 1 Wǒ zhīdao Huáměi Kāfēitīng.  
我知道华美咖啡厅。  
I know of the Huáměi Coffeehouse.

Cue yǒu  
右  
right

Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèlǐ dào Huáměi Kāfēitīng qù wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu duì?  
请问，从这里到华美咖啡飞艇去往右走，对不对？  
May I ask, you go to the right to get to the Huáměi Coffeehouse. Is that correct?

- 2 Wǒ zhīdao nàge fànguǎnzi.  
我知道那个饭馆子。  
I know of that restaurant.

Cue zuǒ  
左  
left

Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèlǐ dào nàge fànguǎnzi qù wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì?  
请问，从这里到那个饭馆子去往左走，对不对？  
May I ask, you go to the left to get to the restaurant. Is that correct?

- 3 Wǒ zhīdao nàge yóuzhèngjú.  
我知道右镇距。  
I know of that post office.

Cue yǒu  
右  
right

Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèlǐ dào nàge yóuzhèngjú qù wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu duì?  
请问，从这里到那个右镇距去往右走，对不对？  
May I ask, you go to the right to get to the post office. Is that correct?

4 Wǒ zhīdao Táiwān Yínháng.  
我知道台湾银行。  
I know of the Bank of Taiwan.

Cue zuǒ  
左  
left

Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèlì dào Táiwān Yínháng qù wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì?  
请问，从这里到台湾银行去往左走，对不对？  
May I ask, you go to the left to get to the Bank of Taiwan. Is that correct?

5 Wǒ zhīdao wǔguānchù.  
我知道武官處。  
I know of the military attaché office.

Cue yìzhí  
一直  
straight ahead

Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèlì dào wǔguānchù qù wàng yìzhí zǒu, duì bu duì?  
请问，从这里到武官處去往一直走，对不对？  
May I ask, you go straight ahead to get to military attaché office. Is that correct?

6 Wǒ zhīdao Měiguó xuéxiào.  
我知道美国学校。  
I know of the American school

Cue zuǒ  
左  
left

Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèlì dào Měiguó xuéxiào qù wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì?  
请问，从这里到学校去往左走，对不对？  
May I ask, you go to the left to get to the school. Is that correct?

7 Wǒ zhīdao nàge shāngdiàn.  
我知道那个商店。  
I know of that store.

Cue

yízhí

一直

straight ahead

Qǐngwèn, cóng zhèlǐ dào nàge shāngdiàn qù wàng yízhí zǒu, duì bu duì?

请问，从这里到那个商店去一直走，对不对？

May I ask, you go straight ahead to get to the store. Is that correct?

## Unit 2

### References

#### Reference List

1. A: **Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn shì bu shì zài zhèr fùjìn?**  
东单电影院是不是在这儿附近？  
Is the **Dōngdān** Movie Theater in this area?  
B: **Shì. Zài zhèr fùjìn.**  
是。在这儿附近。  
Yes. It's in this area.
2. A: **Nǐ zhīdao diànyǐngyuàn fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu yínháng?**  
你知道电影园附近有没有银行？  
Do you know whether there is a bank in the vicinity of the theater?  
B: **Yǒu. Diànyǐngyuàn fùjìn yǒu (yige) yínháng.**  
有。电影园附近有（一个）银行。  
Yes. There is a bank in the vicinity of the movie theater.
3. A: **Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao yínháng shénme shíhòu guān mén?**  
你知道不知道银行什么时候关门？  
Do you know at what time the bank closes?
4. A: **Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù, zěnmě zǒu?**  
从这儿到那儿去，怎么走？  
How do I get there from here?  
B: **Chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng dōng zǒu.**  
出了这个饭店往东走。  
When you have gone out of the hotel, walk to the east.
5. B: **Dào le dìèrge lùkǒu, běibianr shì Dōngdān Càishichǎng, Nánbianr shì Dōngdān Gongyán.**  
到了第二个路口儿，北边儿是东单菜市场，南边儿是东单公园。  
When you have reached the second intersection, on the north side is the **Dōngdān** Market. On the south side is **Dōngdān** Park.
6. B: **Diànyǐngyuàn jiù zài Dōngdān Càishichǎngde xībianr.**  
电影园就在东单菜市场的西边儿？  
The movie theater is just on the west side of the **Dōngdān** Market.
7. A: **Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng dōng zǒu, duì bu duì?**  
我出了这个饭店往东走，对不对？

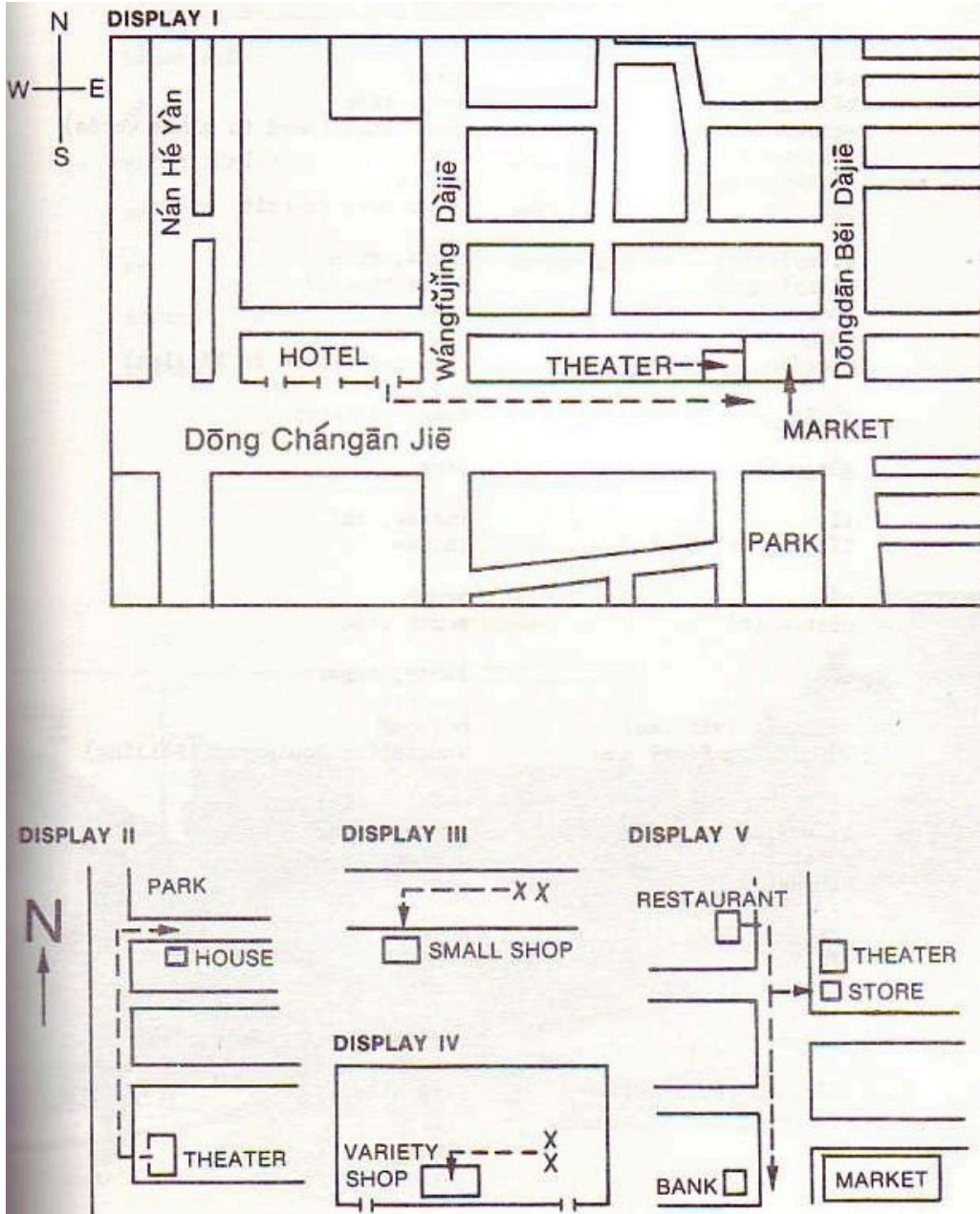


- When I have gone out of the hotel, I walk to the east. Is that correct?
- B: Dui le.  
对了。  
That's correct.
8. A: Hǎo, běibianr shì Dōngdān Càishichǎng. Nánbianr ne?  
好，北边儿是东单菜市场。南边儿呢？  
Okay, on the north side is the Dōngdān Market. How about on the south side?
- B: Nánbianr shì Dōngdān Gōngyuán.  
南边儿是东单菜市场。  
On the south side is Dōngdān Park,
9. A: Diànyǐngyuán jiù zài càishichǎngde xībianr shì bu shì?  
电影园就在菜市场的西边儿是不是？  
The movie theater is just on the west side of the market, is that it?
- B: Shì.  
是。  
Yes.
10. A: Qù kàn diànyǐng yǐqián wǒ xiǎn qù kàn yíge péngyou.  
去看电影以前我想去看一个朋友。  
Before I go to see the movie, I am first going to visit a friend.
11. A: Fàndiàn lǐbianr yǒu meiyǒu mào tángde?  
饭店里边儿有没有糖的？  
Is there a place to buy candy in the hotel?
- B: Yǒu. Yǒu yíge xiǎomàibù. Zài nàibiānr.  
有。有一个小卖部。在那边儿。  
Yes. There's a variety shop. It's over there.
12. wàibianr (wàibian)  
外边儿 (外边)  
outside
13. yǐhòu  
以后  
after
14. yòubianr (yòubian)  
右边儿 (右边)  
right aide
15. zuǒbianr (zuǒbian)  
左边儿 (左边)  
left side
16. xiǎoxué  
小学

17. elementary school  
zhōngxué  
中学  
middle school (the equivalent of junior and senior high school)

# Maps

Figure 4.1. Maps for C-1 Tape



## Vocabulary

běi	北	north
běibian(r)	北边 (儿)	north side
-bianr (-bian)	-边 (-边儿)	side, edge (used in place words)
càishichǎng	菜市场	market
chū	出	to go out, to exit
diànyǐng(r)	电影	movie, film
diànyǐngyuàn	电影院	movie theater
dōng	东	east
dōngbian(r)	东边 (儿)	east side
Dōngdān	东单	a neighborhood in Běijīng
fùjìn	附近	area, vicinity
gōngyuán	公园	park
lǐ	里	inside, in
lǐbianr (lǐbian)	里边儿 (里边)	inside
nán	南	south
nánbian(r)	南边儿 (南边)	south side
táng	糖	candy, sugar
wàibianr (wàibian)	外边儿 (外边)	outside
Wāngfǔjǐng Dàjiē	王赴京大街	Wāngfǔjǐng Boulevard (Běijīng)
xī	西	west
xiǎomàibù	小卖部	variety shop
xiǎoxué	小学	elementary school
xībian(r)	西边 (儿)	west side
yǐhòu	以后	after
yǐqián	以前	before
yòubianr (yòubian)	右边儿 (右边)	right side
zhōngxué	中学	middle school (the equivalent of junior and senior high school)
zuǒbianr (zuǒbian)	左边儿 (左边)	left side
bànshìchù	办事处	office
gòu	够	to be enough

guòle lùkǒu	过了路口儿	having passed the intersection
nà	那	well, then
rè	热	to be hot
zǒuzou	走走	to take a walk
zuìhǎo	最好	it would be best that



## Reference Notes

## Notes on №1

1. A: **Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn shì bu shì zài zhèr fùjìn?**  
 东单电影院是不是在这儿附近？  
 Is the **Dōngdān** Movie Theater in this area?
- B: **Shì. Zài zhèr fùjìn.**  
 是。在这儿附近。  
 Yes. It's in this area.

**Dōngdān** is the name of a district in Beijing to the east and south of the Palace Museum (**Gùgōng Bowuyuàn**), at the intersection of **Dōng Chángān Jiē** and **Dōngdān Běi Dàjiē**. (See map of **Běijīng** preceding the Target Lists.)

Literally, **diànyǐngyuàn** means “electric-shadow hall.”

**Zhèr fùjìn** has the structure of a possessive phrase:

<b>zhèr</b>	<b>(-de)</b>	<b>fùjìn</b>
这儿	的	附近
here	's	vicinity)

(The marker **-de** is often omitted in phrases of relative location.)

**Notes on №2**

2. A: Nǐ zhīdao diànyǐngyuàn fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu yínháng?  
 你知道电影园附近有没有银行?  
 Do you know whether there is a bank in the vicinity of the theater?
- B: Yǒu. Diànyǐngyuàn fùjìn yǒu (yige) yínháng.  
 有。电影园附近有 (一个) 银行。  
 Yes. There is a bank in the vicinity of the movie theater.

Nǐ zhīdao yǒu meiyǒu yínháng could also be translated as “Do you know if there’s a bank...?” When you want to ask “whether/if” in Chinese, use a yes/no-choice question.

Wǒ bù zhīdao	tā lái bu lái.
我不知道	他来不来
I don't know	whether/if he's coming.

Notice that in English the beginning of the first sentence in exchange 2 is in question form: “Do you know...” But the Chinese is in statement form: Nǐ zhīdao... To be perfectly logical, the Chinese would use either the question form nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao... or nǐ zhīdao...ma? But if these forms were used, the sentence would sound awkward, or even ungrammatically, to many speakers.

## Notes on №3

3. A: Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao yínháng shénme shíhou guān mén?

你知道不知道银行什么时候关门？

Do you know at what time the bank closes?

Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao: To ask “Do you know...?” in a question-word question, nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao and nǐ zhīdao...ma? are preferred. Nǐ zhīdao may also occur, especially in long or complex questions.

Nǐ	zhīdao	bu zhīdao	tā zài nǎr?
你	知道	不知道	他/她在哪儿？
You	know	or not	he is where?
Do you know where he is?			

Nǐ	zhīdao	tā zài nǎr	ma?
你	知道	她在哪儿	吗？
You	know	he is where?	
Do you know where he is?			



### Notes on №4

4. A: **Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù, zěnmē zǒu?**  
**从这儿到那儿去，怎么走？**  
How do I get there from here?
- B: **Chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng dōng zǒu.**  
**出了这个饭店往东走。**  
When you have gone out of the hotel, walk to the east.

**Chū**, “to go out,” “to exit.” This verb is usually not used alone, but is followed by an object (**chū mén**, “go out the door”) or used in compound verbs such as **chūqu**, “to go out.” (Compound verbs are introduced in the next unit.) To say that you are going out without specifying the place, you may use **Wǒ zǒu le**, “I’m leaving.”

**Zhèige**: In the second sentence in exchange 4, **zhèige** is unstressed. It is translated as “the” not as this. In Chinese, unstressed **zhèige** and **nèige** are used more frequently than “this” and “that” are used in English. It is often better to translate **zhèige** or **nèige** as “the.” (Remember, however, that the is not always expressed by a word in Chinese, as in **Yínháng shénme shíhou guān mén?** “What time does the bank close?”)

Notes on №5

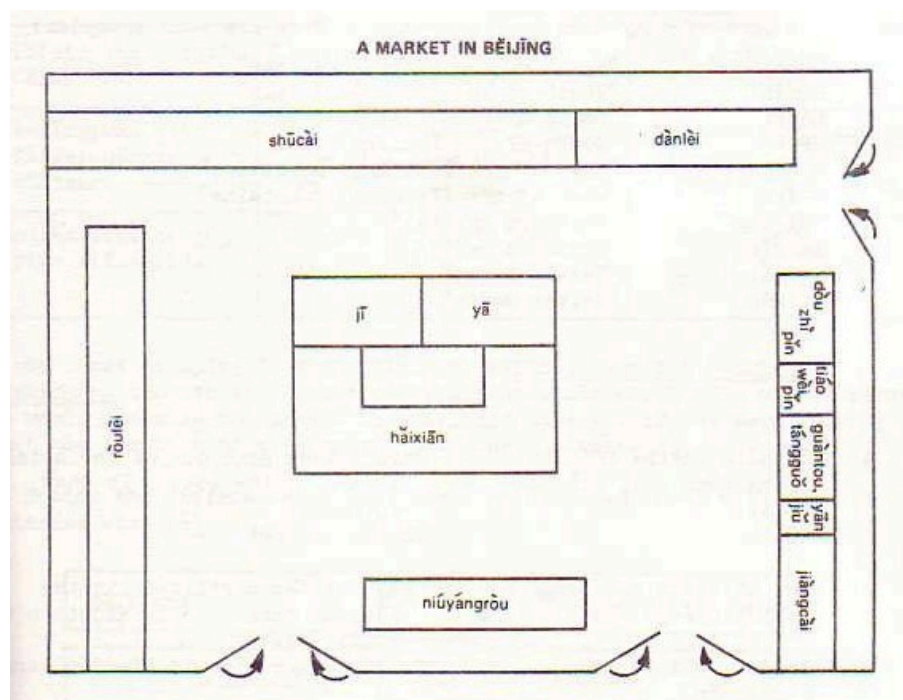
5. B: [Dào le dì èr ge lù kǒu er, běi biān er shì dōng dān cài shì chǎng, nán biān er shì dōng dān gōng yuán.](#)  
 到了第二个路口儿，北边儿是东单菜市场，南边儿是东单公园。  
 When you have reached the second intersection, on the north side is the [Dōngdān](#) Market. On the south side is [Dōngdān](#) Park.

The element **-bianr** (**-bian**) means side. When it is added to a direction word, the word becomes a place name. For instance, **běibianr** is a noun and names a place, as in **Diànyǐngyuàn zài nèige fāndiàn běibianr**, “The movie theater is on the north side of that hotel?” **Běi**, on the other hand, names a direction, and is the form usually used with **wàng**, “towards”: **Nǐ wàng běi zǒu**, “You go to the north.” The other direction words (**dōng**, **nár**, **xī**, **zuǒ**, end **yòu**) may also be used as the name of a place (in combination with **-bianr**) and as the name of a direction. Remember that the ending **-bianr** is pronounced as if it were written **-biar**. (See Unit 1, Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary.)

**Běibianr**, **nánbianr**: These location words are nouns (acting as topics) in Chinese. They are translated into English as prepositional phrases (acting as adverbs).

**Gōngyuán** literally means “public garden.” (Notice the difference in tone between **yuán**, “garden,” and **yuàn**, “hall,” as in **diànyǐngyuàn** “movie hall.”)

**Càishichǎng**: Below, in the diagram of a large **càishichǎng** in Beijing you will find the following sections: **shūcài** (vegetables), denial (eggs, including chicken eggs, duck eggs, salted duck eggs, and “thousand-year-old” eggs), **dòuzhípǐn** (bean products like bean curd, dried bean curd, bean-curd skin, deep-fried bean curd, “smelly” bean curd, fermented bean curd, bean noodles, fermented black beans, etc.), **tiáowèipǐn** (spices and flavorings), **guǎntóu** (canned goods), **tàngguǒ** (candy), **yān** (cigarettes), **jiǔ** (wines and liquors), **jiàngcài** (pickled vegetables), **niúyáng ròu** (beef and lamb, available mostly to Muslims), **ròulèi** (pork, pork ribs, ground pork, and pork lard), **jī** (chicken), **yā** (duck), and **hǎixiān** (seafood).



## Notes on №6

6. B: Diànyǐngyuàn jiù zài Dōngdān Càishìchǎngde xībianr.

电影院就在东单菜市场的西边儿？

The movie theater is just on the west side of the Dōngdān Market.

Jiù, right, exactly,” just: In earlier material this word was translated as “right.” In this sentence, Jiù is translated as “just,” to avoid confusion with the direction right (yòu).

Dōngdān Càishìchǎngde xībianr, “the west side of the Dōngdān Market,” or, more literally, the “Dōngdān Markets west side.” Notice that this long modifying phrase is marked with -de, in contrast to zhèr fùjìn.

Direction words: The conventional Chinese order for the points on the compass is dōng, nán, xī, běi, “east, south, west, north.” Direction names are a part of many Chinese place names. Here are some examples:

Húběi	湖北	North of the (Dòngtíng) lake
Húnán	湖南	South of the (Dòngtíng) lake
Héběi	河北	North of the (Yellow) river
Hénán	河南	South of the (Yellow) river
Shāndōng	山东	East of the (Tàiháng) mountains
Shānxī	山西	West of the (Tàiháng) mountains
Běijīng	北京	“Northern capital”
Nánjīng	南京	“Southern capital”
Táibǎi	台北	“Taiwan North”
Táinán	台南	“Taiwan South”

Notes on №7-9

7. A: **Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng dōng zǒu, duì bu duì?**  
 我出了这个饭店往东走，对不对？  
 When I have gone out of the hotel, I walk to the east. Is that correct?
- B: **Duì le.**  
 对了。  
 That's correct.
8. A: **Hǎo, běibianr shì Dōngdān Càishichǎng. Nánbianr ne?**  
 好，北边儿是东单菜市场。南边儿呢？  
 Okay, on the north side is the **Dōngdān** Market. How about on the south side?
- B: **Nánbianr shì Dōngdān Gōngyuán.**  
 南边儿是东单菜市场。  
 On the south side is **Dōngdān** Park,
9. A: **Diànyǐngyuàn jiù zài càishichǎngde xībianr shì bu shì?**  
 电影园就在菜市场的西边儿是不是？  
 The movie theater is just on the west side of the market, is that it?
- B: **Shì.**  
 是。  
 Yes.

Location words, and **shì**, **yǒu**, and **zài**: **Shì**, **yǒu**, and **zài** are translated into English as some form of the verb “to be.” The English translations may mask the differences in meaning among the three verbs. **Shì** is used for identity, **zài** is used for location; and **yǒu** is used for existence.

	Reference list translation	Literal translation
<b>Běibianr shì Dōngdān Càishichǎng.</b>	On the north side is the <b>Dōngdān</b> Market.	The north side is the <b>Dōngdān</b> Market.
<b>Diànyǐngyuàn zài Càishichǎngde xībianr.</b>	The movie theater is on the west side of the market.	The movie theater is located on the market's west side.
<b>Fàndiàn lǐbianr yǒu yige xiǎomàibù.</b>	There's a variety shop in the hotel.	Inside the hotel exists a variety shop.

In the first example, it is possible to say **Běibianr shì Dōngdān Càishichǎng** because the market occupies the whole north side of the street. You would probably not phrase the sentence this way if you were talking about the location of a telephone booth or a newsstand.

Notice the difference in word order between sentences with **shì** and sentences with **zài**.

<b>Běibianr</b>	<b>shì</b>	<b>Dōngdān Càishichǎng.</b>
<b>Dōngdān Càishichǎng</b>	<b>zài</b>	<b>běibianr.</b>

**Notes on №10**

10. A: **Qù kàn diānyǐng yǐqián wǒ xiān qù kàn yíge péngyou.**  
**去看电影以前我想去看一个朋友。**  
 Before I go to see the movie, I am first going to visit a friend.

**Qù kàn:** The verb **qù**, like the verb **lái**, is frequently followed by phrase expressing the purpose of the action.

**Yǐqián**, “before”: Notice that in Chinese **yǐqián** comes at the end of the clause, while in English “before” comes at the beginning.

<b>kàn diānyǐng</b>	<b>yǐqián</b>
before	I see the movie

**Yíge:** When the word **yíge** is stressed., it means “one.” When the word is unstressed or toneless, it means “a” or “an.”

Notes on №11

11. A: Fàndiàn lǐbianr yǒu meiyǒu mài tángde?  
饭店里边儿有没有糖的？  
Is there a place to buy candy in the hotel?
- B: Yǒu. Yǒu yige xiǎomàibù. Zài nèbianr.  
有。有一个小卖部。在那边儿。  
Yes. There's a variety shop. It's over there.

Fàndiàn lǐbianr yǒu...? This question illustrates another way in which sentences containing *zài* and you may differ: *Zài* allows the noun to be placed at the beginning of the sentence, making the noun DEFINITE. *Yǒu* allows the noun to be placed at the end of the sentence, making the noun INDEFINITE. In English, “a/an” and “the” express the idea of indefinite and definite. In Chinese, word order is used to express the same idea.

Xiǎomàibù zài fàndiàn lǐbianr.

小麦不在饭店里边儿。

The variety shop is in the hotel

Fàndiàn lǐbianr yǒu (yige) xiǎomàibù.

饭店里边儿有（一个）小麦不。

Inside the hotel there is a variety shop.

Unless otherwise specified, a noun before the verb is never indefinite:

Cāntīng zài nǎr?

餐厅在哪儿？

Where is the dining room?

Cāntīng zài zhèr.

餐厅在这儿。

The dining room is here.

An indefinite noun is normally placed after the verb:

Nǎr yǒu cāntīng?

哪儿有餐厅？

Where is there a dining room?

Zhèr yǒu cāntīng.

这儿有餐厅。

There is a dining room here.

Mài tángde, “a place to buy candy,” or, more literally, “one that sells candy”: The noun modified by this phrase has been left off the end of the phrase. This expression is understood to refer to either the

person who does something or the place where something is done. *Mài tángde* could be translated in exchange 11 as “candy seller” or “candy counter.” In some other context it might refer to a “candy store” or a “candy department.” (Notice that the English asks where you can BUY something, but the Chinese equivalent asks where something is SOLD.)

*Xiǎomàibù*, “variety shop,” is a small shop inside a building. In a museum the shop would sell cigarettes, sweet buns, and soda. In a hotel it would sell a wide variety of goods, including souvenirs, soap, thermoses, socks, fruit, bread, and wine.

12.	wàibianr (wàibian)	外边儿 (外边)	outside
13.	yǐhòu	以后	after
11.	yòubianr (yòubian)	右边儿 (右边)	right side
15.	zuǒbianr (zuǒbian)	左边儿 (左边)	left side
16 .	xiǎoxué	小学	elementary school
17.	zhōngxué	中学	middle school (the equivalent of junior and senior high school)

## Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

12.	wàibianr (wàibian) 外边儿 (外边) outside
13.	yǐhòu 以后 after
14.	yòubianr (yòubian) 右边儿 (右边) right side
15.	zuǒbianr (zuǒbian) 左边儿 (左边) left side
16.	xiǎoxué 小学 elementary school
17.	zhōngxué 中学 middle school (the equivalent of junior and senior high school)

Yǐhòu, “after,” is used in the same position in a sentence as yǐqián, “before.”

Tā mǎile dōngxi yǐhòu, zài qù kàn péngyou.

他/她买了东西以后，在去看朋友。

After he has bought some things, he will go to see a friend.

In the Money Module, Unit 4, you learned that completion *le* is placed directly after the verb if the amount of the sentence object is specified, but is placed at the end of the sentence if the amount is not stated.

AMOUNT UNSPECIFIED	Wǒ mǎi fǎnwǎn le.
	我买了饭碗了
	I bought rice bowls
AMOUNT SPECIFIED	Wǒ mǎile shíge fǎnwǎn.
	我买了是个饭碗。
	I bought ten rice bowls.

In the example for *yǐhòu*, *le* is used in another setting, the dependent clause of a sentence. In this case, the marker *le* is placed directly after the verb, whether or not the amount of the object is stated.



Mǎile shū yǐhòu, tā jiù zǒu le.

买了书以后，他/她就走了。

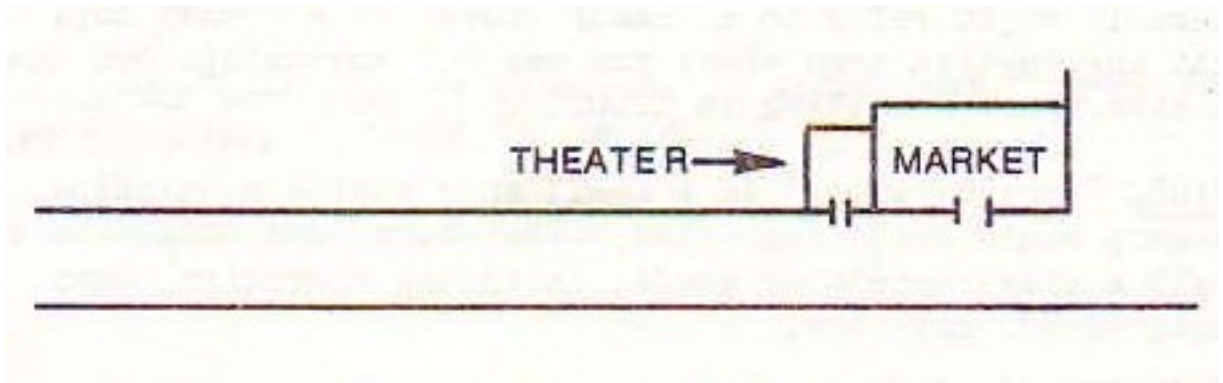
After he bought the books, he left.

Mǎile wǔběn shū yǐhòu, tā jiù zǒu le.

买了五本书以后，他/她就走了。

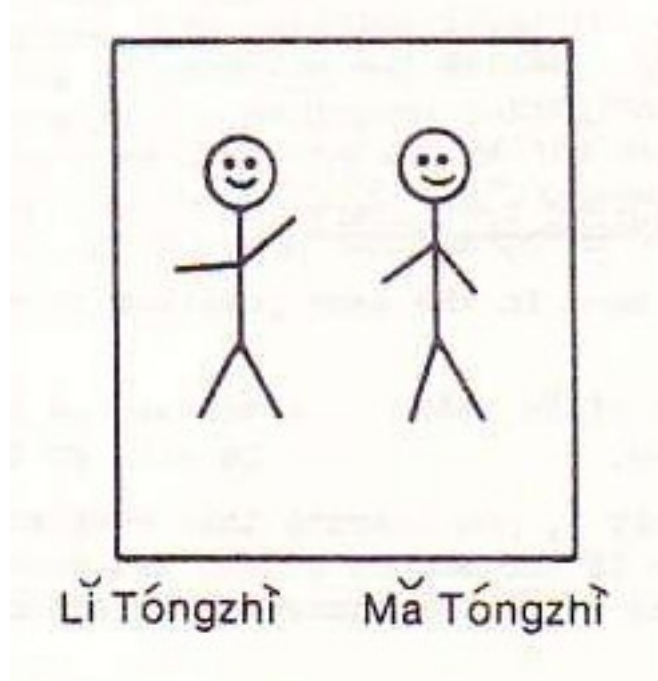
After he bought five books, he left.

**Zuǒbian, yòubian:** In English, we generally assign left and right from the point of view of the observer: “As you look at the two buildings, the movie theater will be on the (your) left, and the market will be on the (your) right.” It is common for Chinese to assign left and right from the point of view of the object itself. For instance, the theater shown below might be described in Chinese as being on the right side of the market.

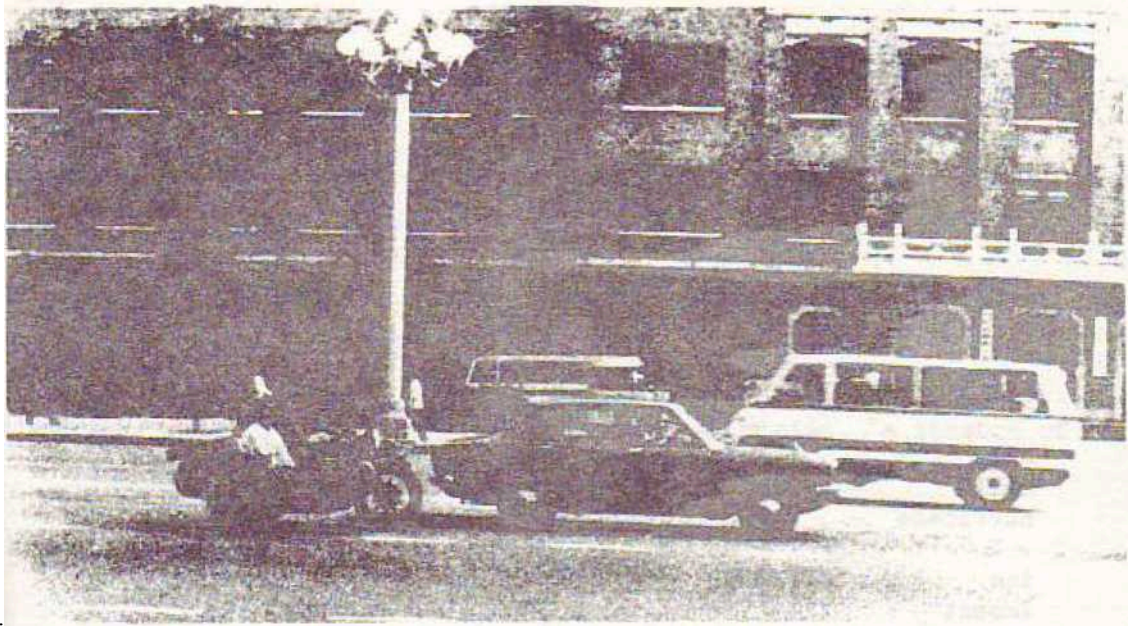


From the point of view of the market, with the entrance as its “front side,” the theater is indeed located on the market's right.

The same difference shows up in describing the relative locations of people or places in a photograph. In English, most people would say that Comrade **Lǐ** is to the left of Comrade **Hè**. in the picture below. In Chinese, many people would say **Lǐ Tóngzhì zài Mǎ Tóngzhìde yòubian**.

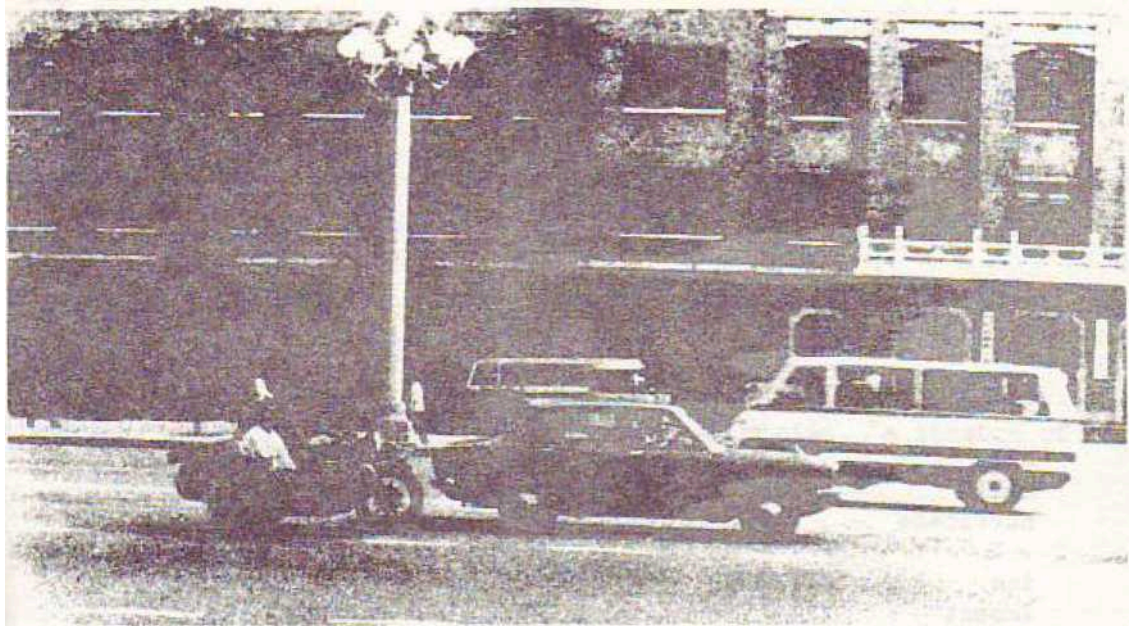


Of course, the way of assigning left and right varies with speakers of both languages and with different situa-



tions.

**Xiǎoxué, zhōngxué:** “primary school,” “high school” (literally, “small study,” “middle study”): In the PRC and in Taiwan, primary school (*xiǎoxué*) includes grades one through six. Junior high school has grades one through three, and senior high school also has grades one through three.



Beijing street scene

## Vocabulary Booster

### Things in Nature

kōngqì	空气	air
dòngwù	动物	animal
hǎitān	海滩	beach
niǎo (yìzhī, yíge)	鸟	bird
guànmùcōng (yíkuài, yípiàn, “a stretch of”)	灌木丛	bushes
shāndòng	山洞	cave
yún (yìduǒ, yípiàn, yícéng)	云	cloud
shāmò (yípiàn, “a stretch of”)	沙漠	desert
lùshuǐ (yìdī, “a drop of”)	露水	dew
dìqiú	地球	earth [the planet]
dìzhèn (yíci)	地震	earthquake
huǒ	火	fire
huā (yìduǒ, yìzhī)	花	flower
wù	雾	fog
shùlínzi (yíge, yípiàn, “a stretch of”)	树林子	forest
cǎo (yìgēn)	草	grass
dìshàng	地上	ground, on the
báozi (yíli báozi, “a hailstone”; yìchǎng, yìzhèn báozi, “a hail-storm”)	雹子	hail
xiǎo shān (yíci, yìchǎng)	小山	hill
qiūlíng (yípiàn, “a stretch of”)	丘陵	hills
jùfēng (yíci, yìchǎng)	飓风	hurricane
bīng	冰	ice
chóngzi	虫子	insect
kūnchóng	昆虫	insects [scientific term]
dǎo, hǎidǎo	岛	island [in the sea]
hú	湖	lake
shǎndiàn	闪电	lightning
cǎodi (yíkuài, yípiàn)	草甸	meadow

yuèliang, yuèqiú	月亮	moon [astronomical term]
shān (yízuò)	山	mountain
ní, níbā	泥	mud
hǎi	海	ocean
xiǎo lù (yìtiáo)	小路	path
shítou zǐ (yíli, yíge)		pebble
xíngxīng (yìkē)	行星	planet
zhíwù	植物	plant
yǔ (yìchǎng)	雨	rain
cǎihóng (yídào)	彩虹	rainbow
hé (yídào)	河	river
yánshí	岩石	rock
hǎi	海	sea
tiān, tiānkōng	天空	sky
xuě (yìchǎng; yìdūi, “a pile of”)	雪	snow
xīngxīng (yìkē), héngxīng (yìkē) [astronomical term]	行星	star
shítou (yíkuài)	石头	stone
bàofēngyǔ (yìchǎng, yíci)	暴风雨	storm
xiǎo hé, xiǎo xī (yìtiáo)	小河	stream
tàiyang	太阳	sun
rìchū (yíci)	日出	sunrise
rìluò (yíci)	日落	sunset
yángguāng	阳光	sunshine
léi	雷	thunder
shù (yìkē)	树	tree
táifēng (yíci, yìchǎng)	台风	typhoon
shāngǔ	山谷	valley
huǒshān (yízuò)	火山	volcano
pùbù	瀑布	waterfall
fēng	风	wind
shùlínzi (yíge, yípiàn, “a stretch of”)	树林子	woods

## Drills

### Expansion Drill

Create a question according to the cue..

1 Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn zài zhèr fùjìn.

东单电影院在这儿附近。

The Dōngdān Theater is in this area.

Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn shì bu shì zài zhèr fùjìn?

东单电影院是不是在这儿附近？

Is the Dōngdān Theater in this area?

2 Wáng Tóngzhì jiā zài zhèr fùjìn.

王同志家在这儿附近。

Wáng's comrade family is in this area.

Wáng Tóngzhì jiā shì bu shì zài zhèr fùjìn?

王同志家是不是在这儿附近？

Is Wáng's comrade family in this area?

3 Nǐ péngyou jiā zài nèr fùjìn.

你朋友家在那儿附近。

Your friend is in that area.

Nǐ péngyou jiā shì bu shì zài nèr fùjìn?

你朋友家是不是在那儿附近？

Is your friend in that area?

4 Běijīng Fàndiàn zài zhèr fùjìn.

北京饭店在这儿附近。

The restaurant Běijīng is in this area.

Běijīng Fàndiàn shì bu shì zài zhèr fùjìn?

北京饭店是不是在这儿附近？

Is the restaurant Běijīng in this area?

5 Nèige shāngdiàn zài zhèr fùjìn.

那个商店在这儿附近。

That store is in this area.

Nèige shāngdiàn shì bu shì zài zhèr fùjìn?

那个商店是不是在这儿附近？

Is that store in this area?

6 Nèige xuéxiào zài zhèr fùjìn.

那个学校在这儿附近。

That school is in this area.

nèige xuéxiào shì bu shì zài zhèr fùjìn?

那个学校在是不是这儿附近？

Is that school in this area?

7 Nèige fànguǎnr zài zhèr fùjìn.

那个饭馆儿在这儿附近。

That restaurant is in this area.

Nèige fànguǎnr shì bu shì zài zhèr fùjìn?

那个饭馆儿是不是在这儿附近？

Is that restaurant in this area?



## Transformation Drill

Transform the statement according to the cue.

1 Diànyǐngyuàn fùjìn yǒu yínháng ma?

电影院附近有银行吗？

Is there a bank in the vicinity of the movie theater?

Diànyǐngyuàn fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu yínháng?

电影院附近有没有银行？

Is there a bank in the vicinity of the movie theater?

2 Càishìchǎng fùjìn yǒu yínháng ma?

菜市场附近有银行吗？

Is there a bank in the vicinity of the vegetable market?

Càishìchǎng fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu yínháng?

菜市场附近有没有银行？

Is there a bank in the vicinity of the vegetable market?

3 Tā jiā fùjìn yǒu gōngyuán ma?

他/她家附近有公园吗？

Is there a park in the vicinity of your home?

Tā jiā fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu gōngyuán?

他/她家附近有没有公园？

Is there a park in the vicinity of your home?

4 Nèige xuéxiào fùjìn yǒu fànguǎnr ma?

那个学校附近有饭馆儿吗？

Is there a restaurant in the vicinity of that school?

Nèige xuéxiào fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu fànguǎnr?

那个学校附近有没有饭馆儿？

Is there a restaurant in the vicinity of that school?

5 Nèige fànguǎnr fùjìn yǒu shāngdiàn ma?

那个饭馆附近有商店吗？

Is there a store in the vicinity of that restaurant?

Nèige fànguǎnr fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu shāngdiàn?

那个饭馆附近有没有商店？

Is there a store in the vicinity of that restaurant?

6 Nèige shāngdiàn fùjìn yǒu yínháng ma?

那个商店附近有银行吗？

Is there a bank in the vicinity of the store?

Nèige shāngdiàn fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu yínháng?

那个商店附近有没有银行？

Is there a store in the vicinity of the bank?

7 Dōngdān Càishichǎng fùjìn yǒu shāngdiàn ma?

东单菜市场附近有商店吗？

Is there a store in the vicinity of the **Dōngdān** vegetable market

Dōngdān Càishichǎng fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu shāngdiàn?

东单菜市场附近有没有商店？

Is there a store in the vicinity of the **Dōngdān** vegetable market



## Transformation Drill

### Transform the statement according to the cue.

1 Diànyǐngyuàn fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu yínháng?

电影院附近有没有银行？

Is there a bank in the vicinity of the movie theater?

Yínháng shì bu shì zài diànyǐngyuàn fùjìn?

Is the bank in the vicinity of the movie theater?

2 Dōngdān fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu cài shìchǎng?

东单附近有没有菜市场？

Is there a vegetable market in the vicinity of Dōngdān?

Cài shìchǎng shì bu shì zài dōngdān fùjìn?

菜市场是不是在东单附近？

Is the vegetable market in the vicinity of Dōngdān?

3 Gōngyuán fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu xuéxiào?

公园附近有没有学校？

Is there a school in the vicinity of the park?

Xuéxiào shì bu shì zài gōngyuán fùjìn?

学校是不是在公园附近？

Is the school in the vicinity of the park?

4 Nàr fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu lǐfāde?

那儿附近有没有剪头的？

Is there a place where hair is cut in that vicinity?

Lǐfāde shì bu shì zài nàr fùjìn?

剪头的是不是在那儿附近？

Is the place where hair is cut one that vicinity?

5 Běijīng Fàndiàn fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu diànyǐngyuàn?

北京饭店附近有没有电影院？

Is there a movie theater in the vicinity of the Běijīng restaurant?

Diànyǐngyuàn shì bu shì zài Běijīng Fàndiàn fùjìn?

电影院是不是在北京饭店附近？

Is the movie theater in the vicinity of the Běijīng restaurant?

6 Nèige shāngdiàn fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu yínháng?

那个商店附近有没有银行？

Is there a bank in the vicinity of that store?

Yínháng shì bu shì zài nèige shāngdiàn fùjìn?

银行是不是在那个商店附近？

Is the bank in the vicinity of that store?

7 Nǐ jiā fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu xuéxiào?

你家附近有没有学校？

Is there a school in the vicinity of your home?

Xuéxiào shì bu shì zài nǐ jiā fùjìn?

学校是不是在你家附近？

Is the school in the vicinity of your home?

## Response Drill

Give a response to all questions according to the cue.

- 1 Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn shì bu shì zài zhèr fùjìn?  
 东单电影院是不是在这儿附近附近?  
 Is the Dōngdān Theater in this area?

Cue **bù shì**  
**不是**  
 no

Bú zài zhèr fùjìn. Zhèr fùjìn méiyǒu diànyǐngyuàn.  
 不在这儿附近。这儿附近没有电影院。  
 Not around here. There's no movie theater in this area.

- 2 Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn shì bu shì zài zhèr fùjìn?  
 东单电影院是不是在这儿附近附近?  
 Is the Dōngdān Theater in this area?

Cue **shì**  
**是**  
 yes

Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn shì zài zhèr fùjìn.  
 东单电影院是在这儿附近。  
 The Dōngdān Theater is in this area.

- 3 Dōngdān Càishíchǎng shì bu shì zài zhèr fùjìn?  
 东单菜市场是不是在这儿附近附近?  
 Is the Dōngdān vegetable market in this area?

Cue **shì**  
**是**  
 yes

Dōngdān Càishíchǎng shì zài zhèr fùjìn.  
 东单菜市场是在附近。  
 The Dōngdān vegetable market is in this area.

4 Dōngdān Gōngyuán shì bu shì zài zhèr fùjìn?  
东单公园是不是在这儿附近附近?  
Is the Dōngdān park in this area?

Cue   bù shì  
  不是  
  no

Bú zài zhèr fùjìn. Zhèr fùjìn méiyǒu gōngyuán.  
不在这儿附近。这儿附近没有公园。  
Not around here. There's no park in this area.

5 Xiǎomàibù shì bu shì zài zhèr fùjìn?  
小卖部是不是在这儿附近附近?  
Is the variety shop in this area?

Cue   shì  
  是  
  yes

Xiǎomàibù shì zài zhèr fùjìn.  
小卖部是在这儿。  
The variety shop is in this area.

6 Mài tángde shì bu shì zài zhèr fùjìn?  
卖糖的是不是在这儿附近附近?  
Is the place where they sell candies in this area?

Cue   bù shì  
  不是  
  no

Bú zài zhèr fùjìn. Zhèr fùjìn méiyǒu mài tángde.  
不在这儿附近。这儿附近没有糖的。  
Not around here. There's no place where they sell candies in this area.

7 Běijīng Fàndiàn shì bu shì zài zhèr fùjìn?  
北京饭店是不是在这儿附近附近?  
Is the Běijīng restaurant in this area?

Cue

shì

是

yes

Běijīng Fàndiàn shì zài zhèr fùjìn.

北京饭店是在这儿附近。

The Běijīng restaurant is in this area.

## Transformation Drill

Transform the statement according to the model.

1 Nǐ zhīdao yínháng shénme shíhou kāi mén ma?

你知道银行什么时候开门吗？

Do you know at what time the bank opens?

Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao yínháng shénme shíhou kāi mén?

你知道不知道银行什么时候开门？

Do you know at what time the bank opens?

2 Nǐ zhīdao yínháng zài nǎli ma?

你知道银行在那里吗？

Do you know if the bank is there?

Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao yínháng zài nǎli ma?

你知道不知道银行在那里？

Do you know if the bank is there?

3 Tā zhīdao nèige fànguǎnzi shì shéide ma?

她知道那个饭馆子是谁的吗？

Does he/she know whom belongs this restaurant?

Tā zhīdao bu zhīdao nèige fànguǎnzi shì shéide ma?

他/她指导不知道那个饭馆子是谁的？

Does he/she know whom belongs this restaurant?

4 Lǐ Tóngzhì zhīdao nǐ yǒu duōshao qián ma?

李同志知道你有多少钱吗？

Does Comrade Lǐ know how much money you have?

Lǐ Tóngzhì zhīdao bu zhīdao nǐ yǒu duōshao qián ma?

李同志直到不知道你有多少钱？

Does Comrade Lǐ know how much money you have?

5 Fāng Xiānsheng zhīdao nǐ shénme shíhou lái ma?

方先生知道你什么时候来吗？

Does Mr. Fāng know when you are leaving?

Fāng Xiānsheng zhīdào bu zhīdào nǐ shénme shíhòu lái ma?

方先生知道不知道你什么时候来？

Does Mr. Fāng know when you are leaving?

6 Nǐ àiren zhīdào mài tángde xìng shénme ma?

你爱人知道卖糖的姓什么？

Does your spouse know which is the name of the place where they sell candies.

Nǐ àiren zhīdào bu zhīdào mài tángde xìng shénme ma?

你爱人知道不知道卖糖的姓什么？

Does your spouse know which is the name of the place where they sell candies.

7 Tā àiren zhīdào Sūn Tóngzhì shénme shíhòu gōngzuò ma?

他/她爱人知道孙同志什么时候工作？

Does his/her spouse know when Comrade Sūn is working?

Tā àiren zhīdào bu zhīdào Sūn Tóngzhì shénme shíhòu gōngzuò ma?

他/她爱人知道不知道孙同志什么时候工作？

Does his/her spouse know when Comrade Sūn is working?

## Expansion Drill

Transform the statement according to the model and the cue.

- 1 Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù.  
从这儿到那儿去？  
Go from here to there.

Cue zěnmē  
怎么  
how

Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù zěnmē zǒu?  
从这儿到那儿去怎么走？  
How do you go from here to there?

- 2 Cóng Dōngdān Gōngyuán dào diànyǐngyuàn qù.  
从东单公园到电影院去。  
Go from Dōngdān Park to the movie theater.

Cue dōng  
东  
East

Cóng Dōngdān Gōngyuán dào diànyǐngyuàn qù, wàng dōng zǒu, duì bu duì?  
从东单公园到电影院去，往东走，对不对？  
To go from Dōngdān Park to the movie theater, I go to the east. Right?

- 3 Cóng Dōngdān Gōngyuán dào cài shì chǎng qù.  
从东单公园到菜市场去。  
Go from Dōngdān park to the vegetable market.

Cue qián  
前  
ahead

Cóng Dōngdān Gōngyuán dào cài shì chǎng qù, wàng qián zǒu, duì bu duì?  
从东单公园到菜市场去，往前走对不对？  
To go from Dōngdān park to the vegetable market, I go straight ahead. Right?



4 Cóng Chángān Jiē dào Sānlǐtún qù.

从长安街到三里屯去。

Go from Chángān road to Sānlǐtún.

Cue zěnmē  
怎么  
how

Cóng Chángān Jiē dào Sānlǐtún qù zěnmē zǒu?

从长安街到三里屯去，怎么走？

How go from Chángān road to Sānlǐtún?

6 Cóng Guānghuá Lù dào Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē qù.

从光华路到王府井大街去。

Go from Guānghuá road to Wángfǔjǐng boulevard.

Cue běi  
北  
North

Cóng Guānghuá Lù dào Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē qù, wàng běi zǒu, duì bu duì?

从光华路到王府井大街去，往北走对不对？

To go from Guānghuá road to Wángfǔjǐng boulevard, I go to the North. Right?

5 Cóng Qiánmén Dàjiē dào Rìtán Lù qù.

从前门大街到日坛路去。

Go from Qiánmén road to Temple Road.

Cue xī  
西  
West

Cóng Qiánmén Dàjiē dào Rìtán Lù qù, wàng xī zǒu, duì bu duì?

从前门大街到日坛路去，往西走对不对？

To go from Qiánmén road to Temple Road, I go to the West. Right?

7 Cóng Chángān Jiē dào Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē qù.

从长安街到王府井大街去。

Go from Chángān road to Wángfǔjǐng boulevard.

Cue

yòu

右

right

Cóng Chángān Jiē dào Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē qù, wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu duì?

从长安街到王府井大街去，往右走对不对？

To go from Chángān road to Wángfǔjǐng boulevard, I go to the right. Right?

## Substitution Drill

Transform the statement according to the model and the cue.

- 1 Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng dōng zǒu, duì bu duì?  
我出了这个饭店往东走，对不对？  
After I come out of that hotel, I go to the East. Right?

Cue xī  
西  
West

Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng xī zǒu, duì bu duì?  
我出了这个饭店往西走，对不对？  
After I come out of that hotel, I go to the west. Right?

- 2 Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng xī zǒu, duì bu duì?  
我出了这个饭店往西走，对不对？  
After I come out of that hotel, I go to the West. Right?

Cue nán  
南  
South

Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng nán zǒu, duì bu duì?  
我出了这个饭店往南走，对不对？  
After I come out of that hotel, I go to the South. Right?

- 3 Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng nán zǒu, duì bu duì?  
我出了这个饭店往南走，对不对？  
After I come out of that hotel, I go to the South. Right?

Cue běi  
北  
North

Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng běi zǒu, duì bu duì?  
我出了这个饭店往北走，对不对？  
After I come out of that hotel, I go to the North. Right?

- 4 Wǒ chūle zhège fàndiàn wàng běi zǒu, duì bu duì?  
我出了这个饭店往北走，对不对？  
After I come out of that hotel, I go to the North. Right?

Cue zuǒ  
左  
left

Wǒ chūle zhège fàndiàn wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì?  
我出了这个饭店往左走，对不对？  
After I come out of that hotel, I go to the left. Right?

- 5 Wǒ chūle zhège fàndiàn wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì?  
我出了这个饭店往左走，对不对？  
After I come out of that hotel, I go to the left. Right?

Cue nèibian  
那边  
this way

Wǒ chūle zhège fàndiàn wàng nèibian zǒu, duì bu duì?  
我出了这个饭店往那边走，对不对？  
After I come out of that hotel, I go this way. Right?

- 6 Wǒ chūle zhège fàndiàn wàng nèibian zǒu, duì bu duì?  
我出了这个饭店往那边走，对不对？  
After I come out of that hotel, I go this way. Right?

Cue yòu  
右  
right

Wǒ chūle zhège fàndiàn wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu duì?  
我出了这个饭店往右走，对不对？  
After I come out of that hotel, I go to the right. Right?

- 7 Wǒ chūle zhège fàndiàn wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu duì?  
我出了这个饭店往右走，对不对？  
After I come out of that hotel, I go to the Right. Right?

Cue

dōng

东

East

Wǒ chūle zhèige fàndiàn wàng dōng zǒu, duì bu duì?

我出了这个饭店往东走，对不对？

After I come out of that hotel, I go to the East. Right?

## Expansion Drill

Transform the statement according to the model and the cue.

1 Zuǒbianr shì diànyǐngyuàn.

左边儿是电影院。

To the left is the movie theater.

Cue

Dōngdān Càishichǎngde

东单菜市场

Dōngdān market

Dōngdān Càishichǎngde zuǒbianr shì diànyǐngyuàn.

东单菜市场的左边儿是电影院。

To the left of the Dongdan Market is the movie theater.

2 Yòubianr yǒu shāngdiàn.

右边儿有商店。

To the right is a store.

Cue

zhèige fàndiàn

这个饭店

this restaurant

Zhèige fàndiànde yòubianr yǒu shāngdiàn.

这个饭店的右边儿有商店。

To the right of this restaurant is a store.

3 Zuǒbianr shì mài tángde.

左边儿是卖糖的。

To the right is a place where they sell candies.

Cue

xiǎomàibù

小卖部

variety shop

Xiǎomàibùde zuǒbianr shì mài tángde.

小卖部的左边儿是卖糖的。

To the right of the variety shop is a place where they sell candies.

4 Wàibianr yǒu màibào de.

外边儿有卖报的。

There is place where they sell newspaper outside.

Cue

gōngyuán

公园

park

Gōngyuán de wàibianr yǒu màibào de.

公园的外边儿有卖报的。

There is place where they sell newspaper outside the park.

5 Zuǒbianr yǒu fàndiàn.

左边儿有饭店。

To the left is a restaurant.

Cue

càishìchǎng

菜市场

vegetable market

Càishìchǎng de zuǒbianr yǒu fàndiàn.

菜市场的左边儿有饭店。

To the left of the vegetable market is a restaurant.

6 Yòubianr yǒu mài táng de.

右边儿有卖糖的。

To the right is a place where they sell candies.

Cue

diànyǐngyuàn

电影院

movie theater

Diànyǐngyuàn de yòubianr yǒu mài táng de.

电影院的右边儿有卖糖的。

To the right of the movie theater is a place where they sell candies.

7 Wàibianr shì shāngdiàn.

外边儿是商店。

There is the store outside.

Cue

fàndiàn

饭店

restaurant

Fàndiàn de wàibiān r shì shāngdiàn.

饭店的外边儿是商店。

There is the store outside the restaurant.



## Transformation Drill

Transform the statement according to the model and the cue.

1 Càishichǎngde xībianr yǒu diànyǐngyuàn.

菜市场的西边儿有电影院。

To the west of the market is a movie theater.

Nèige diànyǐngyuàn jiù zài càishichǎngde xībianr.

那个电影院就在菜市场的西边儿。

That movie theater is to the west of the market.

2 Diànyǐngyuànde wàibianr yǒu mài bào de.

电影院的外边儿有卖报的。

Outside the movie theater is a place which sells newspaper.

Nèige mài bào de jiù zài diànyǐngyuànde wàibianr.

那个卖报的就在电影院的外边儿。

That place which sells newspaper is right outside the movie theater.

3 Gōngyuán de lǐbianr yǒu mài qìshuǐ de.

公园的里边儿有卖汽水的。

Inside the park is a place which sells sodas.

Nèige mài qìshuǐ de jiù zài gōngyuán de lǐbianr.

那个卖汽水的就在公园的里边儿。

That place which sells sodas is right inside the park.

4 Xuéxiàode dōngbianr yǒu yínháng.

学校的东边儿有银行。

To the North of the school is a bank.

Nèige yínháng jiù zài xuéxiàode dōngbianr.

那个银行就在学校的东边儿。

That bank is right to the North of the school.

5 Fànguǎnr nánbianr yǒu shāngdiàn.

饭馆儿南边儿有商店。

To the South of the restaurant is a store.

Nèige shāngdiàn jiù zài fànguǎnr nánbianr.

那个商店就在饭馆儿南边儿。

That store is right to South of the restaurant.

6 Yínhángde yòubianr yǒu fànguǎnr.

银行的右边儿有饭馆儿。

to the right of the bank is a restaurant.

Nèige fànguǎnr jiù zài yínhángde yòubianr.

那个饭馆儿就在银行的右边儿。

That restaurant is right to the right of the bank .

7 Fàndiànde běibianr yǒu diànyǐngyuàn.

饭店的北边儿电影院。

To the North of the restaurant is a movie theater.

Nèige diànyǐngyuàn jiù zài fàndiànde běibianr.

那个电影院就在饭店的北边儿。

That movie theater is right to the North of the restaurant.

## Combination Drill

Transform the statement according to the model.

- 1 

Tā qù kàn diànyǐng. Tā qù kàn yige péngyou.  
他/她去看电影。他/她去看一个朋友。  
He/she goes to see a movie. He goes to visit a friend.

Qù kàn diànyǐng yǐqián, tā xiān qù kàn yige péngyou.  
去看电影以前他/她先去看一个朋友。  
Before he/she goes to see a movie, he first goes to visit a friend.
- 2 

Tā qù xué Zhōngguó huà. Tā qù mǎi yiběn shū.  
他/她去学中国花。他/她去买一本书。  
He/she goes to learn Chinese literature. He/she goes to buy a book.

Qù xué Zhōngguó huà yǐqián, tā xiān qù mǎi yiběn shū.  
去学中国花以前他/她先去买一本书。  
Before he/she goes to learn Chinese literature, he/she first goes to buy a book.
- 3 

Tā qù mǎi shū. Tā qù huàn yìdiǎnr qián.  
他/她去买书。他/她去换一点儿钱。  
He/she goes to buy a book. He/she goes to change some money.

Qù mǎi shū yǐqián, tā xiān qù huàn yìdiǎnr qián.  
去买书以前他/她先去买换一点儿钱。  
Before he/she goes to buy a book, he/she first goes to change some money.
- 4 

Tā qù kàn diànyǐng. Tā qù mǎi táng.  
他/她去看电影。他/他去买糖的。  
He/she goes to watch a movie. He/she goes to buy candies.

Qù kàn diànyǐng yǐqián, tā xiān qù mǎi táng.  
看电影以前他/她先去卖糖。  
Before he/she goes to see a movie, he/she first goes to buy candies.
- 5 

Tā qù gōngzuò. Tā qù kàn Zhào Tàitai.  
他/她去工作。他/她去看赵太太。  
He/she goes to work. He/she goes to see Mrs. Zhào.

Qù gōngzuò yǐqián, tā xiān qù kàn Zhào Tàitai.

去工作以前他/她先去看赵太太。

Before he/she goes to work, he/she first goes to see Mrs. **Zhào**.

6 Tā qù Měiguó. Tā qù niàn Yīngwén.

他/她去美国。他/她 去年英文。

He/she goes to America. He/she goes to learn English.

Qù Měiguó yǐqián, tā xiān qù niàn Yīngwén.

去美国以前他/她先去年英文。

Before he/she goes to America, he/she first goes to learn English.

7 Tā qù kàn Lín Xiānsheng. Tā qù mǎi yìdiǎnr diǎnxīn.

他/她去看林先生。他/她去买一点儿点心。

He/she goes to see Mr. **Lín**. He/she goes to buy some pastries.

Qù kàn Lín Xiānsheng yǐqián, tā xiān qù mǎi yìdiǎnr diǎnxīn.

去看林先生以前他/她先去买一点儿点心。

Before he/she goes to see Mr **Lín**, he/she first goes to buy some pastries.

## Transformation Drill

Transform the statement according to the model.

- 1 Qù kàn diànyǐng yǐqián, tā xiān qù kàn péngyou.  
去看电影以前，他/她先去看朋友。  
Before going to the cinema, he/she goes to see his/her friends.

Tā kàn péngyou yǐhòu, qù kàn diànyǐng.  
他/她看朋友以后，去看电影。  
After seeing his/her friends, he/she goes to the movies.

- 2 Qù xué Zhōngguó huà yǐqián, tā xiān qù mǎi shū.  
去学中国画以前，他/她先去买书。  
Before going to learn Chinese painting, he/she goes to buy a book.

Tā mǎi shū yǐhòu, qù xué Zhōngguó huà.  
他/她买书以后，去学中国画。  
After buying a book, he/she goes to learn Chinese painting.

- 3 Qù mǎi shū yǐqián, tā xiān qù huàn qián.  
去买书以前，他/她先去换钱。  
Before going to buy a book, he/she goes to change money.

Tā huàn qián yǐhòu, qù mǎi shū.  
他/她换钱以后，去买书。  
After changing money, he/she goes to buy books.

- 4 Qù kàn diànyǐng yǐqián, tā xiān qù mǎi táng.  
去看电影以前，他/她先去买糖。  
Before going to the cinema, he/she goes to buy candy.

Tā mǎi táng yǐhòu, qù kàn diànyǐng.  
他/她买糖以后，去看电影。  
After buying candy, he/she goes to the cinema.

- 5 Qù gōngzuò yǐqián, tā xiān qù kàn Zhào Tàitai.  
去工作以前，他/她先去看看太太。  
Before going to work, he/she goes to see Zhao's wife.

Tā kàn Zhào Tàitai yǐhòu, qù gōngzuò.

他/她看着太太以后，去工作。

After seeing Zhào's wife, he/she goes to work.

6 Qù niàn lìshǐ yǐqián, tā xiān qù niàn Yīngwén.

去年历史以前，他/她先去年英文。

Before he/she goes to learn history, he/she goes to learn English.

Tā niàn Yīngwén yǐhòu, qù niàn lìshǐ.

他/她念英文以后，去念历史。

After learning English, he/she goes to study history.

7 Qù kàn Lǐ Xiānsheng yǐqián, tā xiān qù mǎi diǎnxīn.

去看李先生以前，他/她先去买点心。

Before going to see Mr. Lǐ, he/she goes to buy snacks.

Tā mǎi diǎnxīn yǐhòu, qù kàn Lǐ Xiānsheng.

他/她买点心以后，去看李先生。

After buying dim sum, he/she goes to see Mr Lǐ.

## Response Drill

Give a response to all questions according to the cue.

- 1 Zhèr yǒu meiyǒu mài tángde?  
这儿有没有糖的？  
Is there any sugar here?

Cue lǐbianr  
里边儿  
inside

Yǒu, mài tángde zài lǐbianr.  
有，卖糖的在里边儿。  
Yes, the candy seller is inside.

- 2 Xiǎomàibù nàr yǒu meiyǒu mài qìshuǐde?  
小卖部那儿有没有买汽水的？  
Is there a soft drink at the kiosk?

Cue zuǒbianr  
左边儿  
to the left

Yǒu, mài qìshuǐde zài zuǒbianr.  
有，卖汽水的在左边儿。  
Yes, the soft drink vendor is on the left.

- 3 Xuéxiào nàr yǒu meiyǒu mài Yīngwén zìdiǎnde?  
学校那儿有没有买英文字典的？  
Is there an English dictionary at the school?

Cue dōngbianr  
东边儿  
to the North

Yǒu, mài Yīngwén zìdiǎnde zài dōngbianr.  
有，卖英文字典的在东边儿。  
Yes, the English dictionary seller is on the east side.

- 4 Nàr yǒu meiyǒu mǎi júzide?  
那儿有没有买橘子的？  
Is there a shop for oranges?

Cue yòubianr  
右边儿  
to the right

Yǒu, mǎi júzide zài yòubianr.  
有，卖橘子的在右边儿。  
Yes, the orange seller is on the right.

- 5 Gōngyuán fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu mǎi zázhìde?  
公园附近有没有买杂志的？  
Are there any magazines near the park?

Cue nánbianr  
南边儿  
to the South

Yǒu, mǎi zázhìde zài nánbianr.  
有，卖杂志的在南边儿。  
Yes, the magazine vendor is to the south.

- 6 Fàndiàn fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu mǎi dìtúde?  
饭店附近有没有买地图的？  
Is there a map shop near the restaurant?

Cue xībianr  
西边儿  
to the East

Yǒu, mǎi dìtúde zài xībianr.  
有，卖地图的在西边儿。  
Yes, the map seller is to the west.

- 7 Cǎishìchǎnglǐ yǒu meiyǒu mǎi pījiǔde?  
菜市场有没有买啤酒的？  
Is there a beer vendor in the food market?



Cue

nèibianr

那边儿

over there

Yǒu, mài pǐjiǔde zài nèibianr.

有，卖啤酒的在那边儿。

Yes, the beer vendor is over there.

## Unit 3

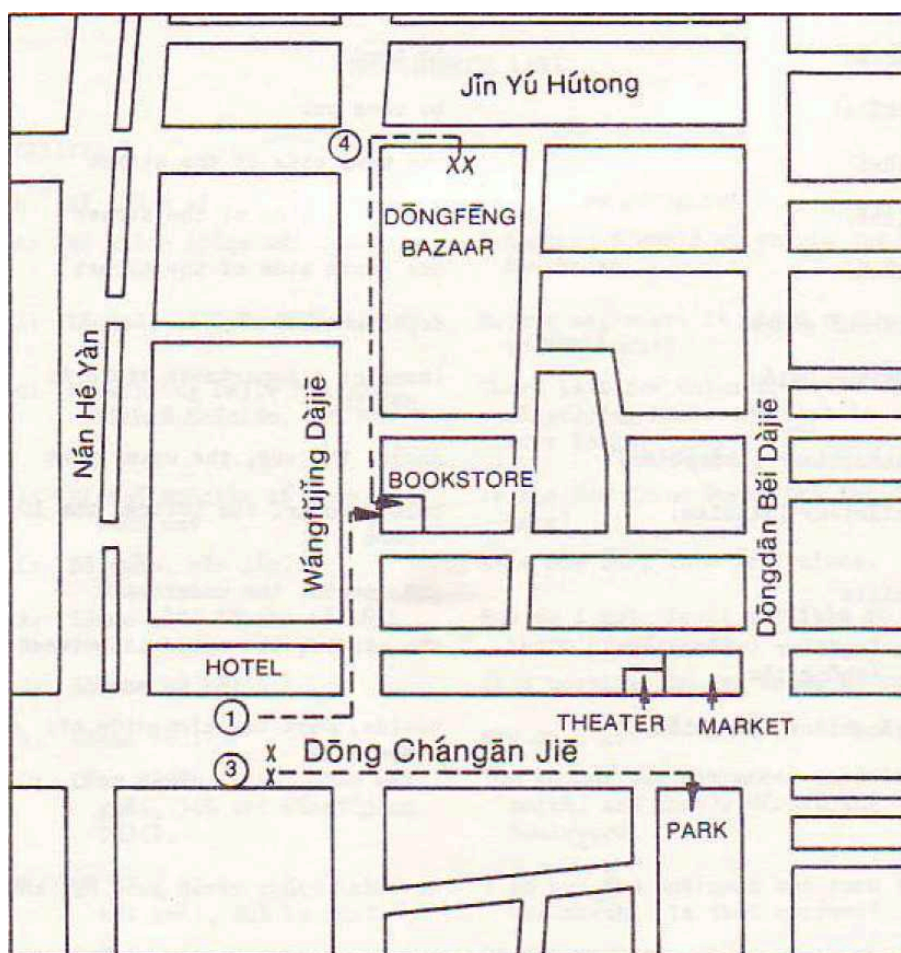
### References

#### Reference List

1. B: Nǐ chūqu a!  
你出去阿！  
Oh, you're going out!  
A: Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi rìběn shū.  
我想出去买日本书。  
I thought I would go out to buy a few books.
2. A: Láojià, nǎr yǒu mǎi shūde?  
劳驾，哪儿有买书的？  
Excuse me, where is there a place to buy books?  
C: Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē yǒu yige Xīnhuá Shūdiàn, hěn dà.  
王府井大街有一个新华书店，很大。  
There is a New China Bookstore on Wángfǔjǐng Boulevard that is very large.
3. A: Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma?  
新华书店离这儿远吗？  
Is the New China Bookstore far from here?  
C: Bù yuǎn, hěn jìn.  
不远很近。  
It's not far; it's very close.
4. A: Zěnmē qù? Zǒuzhe qù kényi ma?  
怎么去？走着去可以吗？  
How do I go? Is it possible to get there by walking?  
C: Zǒuzhe qù kényi.  
走着去可以。  
It's possible to get there by walking.
5. A: Zěnmē qù?  
怎么去？  
How do I go?  
C: Cóng dàmen chūqu, cháo běi guǎi, jiù shì Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē.  
从大门出去超被拐，就是王府井大街。  
You go out the entrance, turn to the north, and that's Wángfǔjǐng Boulevard.
6. A: Wǒ cóng dàmen chūqu, cháo běi guǎi, duì bu duì?

		我从大门出去，超北拐，对不对？
		I go out the entrance and turn to the north. Is that correct?
	C:	Duì le.
		对了。
		That's correct.
7.	A:	Zǒu duó yuǎn?
		走多远？
		How far do I go?
	C:	Zǒu bù yuǎn, lùdōngde dìyīge dàlóu jiù shì Xīnhuá Shūdiàn.
		走不远，路东的第一个大楼就是新华书店。
		Go a short distance, and the first building on the east side of the street is the New China Bookstore.
8.	A:	Láojià, nèige dàlóu shì Xīnhuá Shūdiàn ma?
		劳驾，那个是新华书店吗？
		Excuse me, is that building the New China Bookstore?
	D:	Shì.
		是
		Yes.
9.		zhuǎn
		转
		to turn
10.		chūlai
		出来
		to come out
11.		lùxī
		路西
		the west side of the street
12.		lùběi
		路北
		the north side of the street
13.		lùnán
		路南
		the south side of the street
11.		bǎihuò gōngsī
		百货公司
		department store
15.		Bǎihuò Dàlóu
		百货大楼
		name of a department store in Běijīng
16.		shàngbianr (shàngbian)

17. 上边儿 (上边)  
above, the top, the upper part  
xiàbianr (xiàbian)
16. 下边儿 (下边)  
below, under, the bottom, the lower part  
dìxia
19. 地下  
underneath; the underneath  
zhōngjiānr (zhōngjiānr) (zhōngjiān)
20. 中间二 (中间)  
the middle, the space in between  
pángbiānr (pángbián)
- 旁边儿 (旁边)  
beside, next to, alongside of; the side

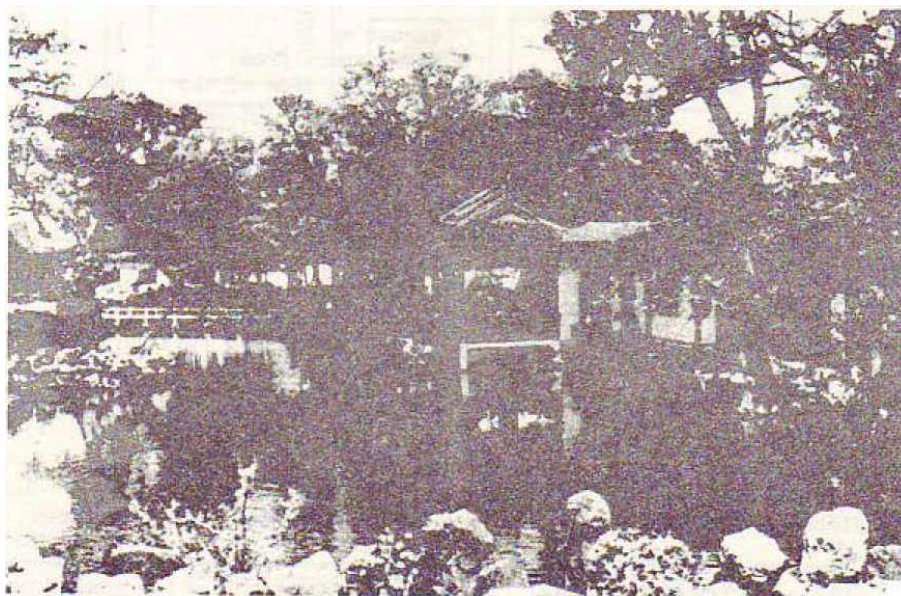




## Vocabulary

Bǎihuò Dàlóu	百货大楼	name of a department store in Běijīng
bǎihuò gōngsī	百货公司	department store
cháo	朝	to, towards
chūlai	出来	to come out
chūqu	出去	to go out
dàjiē	大街	boulevard
dàlóu	大楼	building
dàmén(r)	大门	entrance
dìxia	地下	underneath; the underneath
duó yuǎn	多远	how far
guǎi	拐	to turn
jǐ-	几	a few
jǐge	几个	several
jìn	近	to be close, to be near
láojià	劳驾	excuse me
lí	离	from, apart from
lùběi	路北	the north side of the street
lùdōng	路东	the east side of the street
lùnán	路南	the south side of the street
lùxī	路西	the west side of the street
pángbiānr (pángbiān)	旁边儿 (旁边)	beside, next to, alongside of; the side
shàngbianr (shàngbian)	上边儿 (上边)	above, the top, the upper part
shūdiàn	书店	bookstore
xiàbianr (xiàbian)	下边儿 (下边)	below, under; the bottom, the lower part
Xīnhuá Shūdiàn	新华书店	New China Bookstore (Běijīng)
yíge	一个	a, an
yuǎn	远	to be far
zhōngjiānr (zhōngjiàn) (zhōngjiān)	中间儿 (中间)	the middle, the space in between
zhuǎn	转	to turn
zǒuzhe	走着	walking
dài biǎo	戴表	to wear a watch

Hàn-Rì zìdiǎn	汉日字典	Chinese-Japanese dictionary
niàn	年	to be pronounced, to be read as
Rì-Hàn zìdiǎn	日汉字点	Japanese-Chinese dictionary
yíjiàn yīshàng	一件以上	a piece of clothing
zǎo	早	to be early
zǒu dào	走到	to walk to



## Reference Notes

## Notes on №1

1. B: Nǐ chūqu a!  
你出去阿！  
Oh, you're going out!
- A: Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi rìběn shū.  
我想出去买日本书。  
I thought I would go out to buy a few books.

**Chūqu**, “to go out (away from the speaker)”: The verb **chū** means “to go/come out,” “to exit,” in the sense of leaving an area. **Chū** must be followed either by the name of the place being left (as in **chūle zhèige fāndiàn**) or by the verb **lái** or **qù** used as a DIRECTIONAL ENDING. When **lái** or **qù** follows, the verb indicates not only that the person exits but also that the person exits towards or corresponds to the English “going out,” and **chūlái** to “coming out.”

Tā zǎoshang jiù chūqu le.

他早上就出去了。

He went out this morning

Tā zài nèige shāngdiànli mǎi cài yǐjīng sānshífēn zhōng le!

他在那个商店里买菜已经三十分钟了。

He has been in that shop buying groceries for thirty minutes already, and hasn't come out yet!

When the verbs **lái** and **qù** are used as unstressed and toneless.

**Nǐ chūqu a!** Sometimes this expression might be used as a greeting. Instead of saying “hello” when greeting a friend or acquaintance, the Chinese state the obvious. For example, if you (**Ān Dàwèi**) drop in unexpectedly on a Chinese friend, probably the first thing he will say **fā 0! Ān Dàwèi! Nǐ lái le! Qǐng jìn**, “Oh! **Ān Dàwèi!** You have come! Please come in.” Or if you run an errand and then return, you will probably be greeted with **Huílái le**, “You're back.” A friend of yours who runs into you downtown may say **Nǐ yě dào zhèr lái le**. “You have come here too.” In Chinese these remarks are a common form of greeting.

**Jībēn**: The bound word **jǐ-** means “a few” It is unstressed and often toneless. When stressed, **jǐ** is the question word “how many.”

Tā mǎile jībēn shū. Or (jībēn)

他买了几本书。

He bought a few books.

Tā mǎile jībēn shū?

他买了几本书？

How many books did he buy?

Intonation and context will often help you decide which **jǐ-** is being used.



**Chūqù mǎi jīběn shū** : The phrase following the verb **chūqù** indicates the purpose of going out. Purpose expressions often follow the verbs **lái**, **qù**, and their compounds.

## Notes on №2

2. A: **Láojià, nǎr yǒu mǎi shūde?**  
**劳驾，哪儿有买书的？**  
Excuse me, where is there a place to buy books?
- C: **Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē yǒu yige Xīnhuá Shūdiàn, hěn dà.**  
**王府井大街有一个新华书店，很大。**  
There is a New China Bookstore on **Wángfǔjǐng** Boulevard that is very large.

**Láojià** is a **Běijīng** expression used when asking a person to do something -In exchange 2, a person is being asked to give directions.) Speakers of Chinese from other areas of China would probably use **qǐng wèn**.

**Hěn dà**, (It is) very big: Notice that in the English translation two Chinese sentences have been combined. Literally, the Chinese means “On **Wángfǔjǐng** Boulevard there is a New China Bookstore. It is very large.” Chinese punctuation rules allow two sentences to be separated by a comma instead of a period if the relationship between the sentences is considered very close.

**Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē**: The **Wángfǔjǐng** Boulevard area is a major shopping district in Beijing. **Bǎihuò Dàlóu** (a state-owned department store), **Dōngfēng Shìchǎng** (a large enclosed market), bookstores, antique shops, and hotels are found there.

## Notes on №3

3. A: Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma?  
新华书店离这儿远吗?  
Is the New China Bookstore far from here?
- C: Bù yuǎn, hěn jìn.  
不远很近。  
It's not far; it's very close.

**Lí:** The prepositional verb **lí** means “from” in the sense of “to be apart from.” Like other prepositional verb phrases, a phrase containing **lí** precedes the main verb—in this case, the adjectival verb **yuǎn**, “to be far.”

Xīnhuá Shūdiàn	lí	zhèr	yuǎn ma?
新华	离	这儿	远吗?
New China Bookstore	from	here	far?

“Is the New China Book store far from here?”

Unlike other prepositional verbs, **lí** cannot be made negative. You cannot say that one point is “not apart” from another. You say that two points are “not close to each other” or “not far from each other.”

Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr bú jìn.

新华书店离这儿不近。

Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr bù yuǎn.

新华书店离这儿不远。

**Cóng** and **lí** are both translated as “from.” ; is used with the point of origin, and **lí** is used with the distance between two points.

**Notes on №4**

4. A: *Zěnme qù? Zǒuzhe qù kěyǐ ma?*  
 怎么去？走着去可以吗？  
 How do I go? Is it possible to get there by walking?
- C: *Zǒuzhe qù kěyǐ.*  
 走着去可以。  
 It's possible to get there by walking.

*Zěnme qù?* looks very much like *zěnme zǒu* which asks about what route you should take. *Zěnme qù?* asks about your means of transportation,

*Zǒuzhe* “walking”: When the marker *-zhe* is added to an action verb, the verb form corresponds to the English *-ing*. The *-zhe* puts the focus on action continuing for some time. Because of this, *-zhe* is called a marker of DURATION.

*Tā xuéze jiù bù xiǎng xuéle.*

他学者就不想学了。

He was studying and studying it, and the, he didn't want to study it anymore.

In the sentence *Zǒuzhe qù kěyǐ*, the marker *-zhe* is attached to one verb (*zǒu*) to modify another verb (*qù*). This indicates that the action of the verb to which *-zhe* is added occurs simultaneously with the action of the verb modified. The action of “walking” modifies the action of “going there.” The phrase can be understood as “walkingly go.”

 **Note**

Because the two actions amount to one action for all practical purposes, this may be one of the more difficult examples for the marker *-zhe*.

Learn this sentence as a whole for now.

Here are some other examples:

*Tā měitiān chīzhe fàn kàn diànshì.*

它每天吃着饭看电视。

Every day he watches television while eating.

*Nǐ shēngzhe bìng hái zuò shì!*

你生着病还做事。

You work even while you're sick!

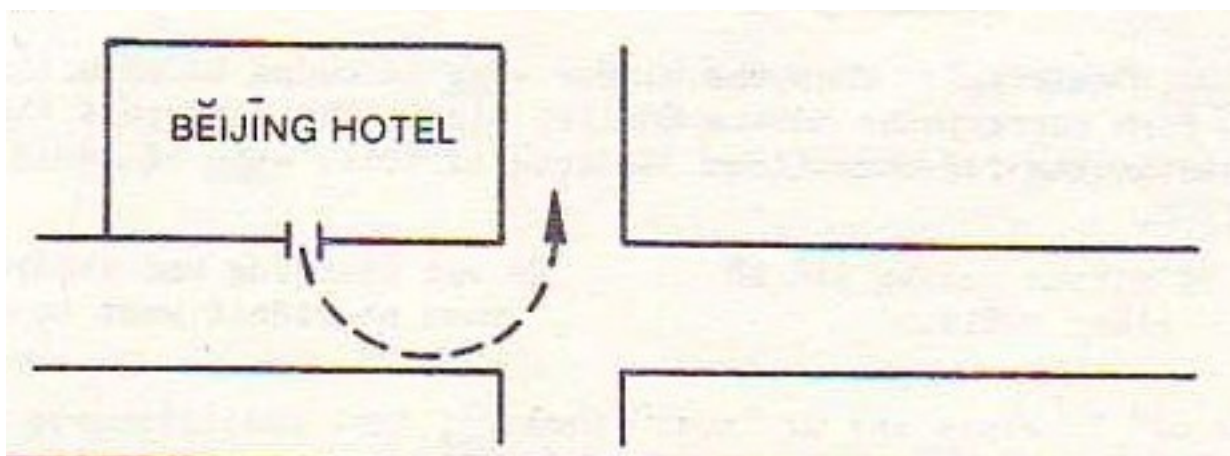
Notes on №5

5. A: **Zěnme qù?**  
**怎么去?**  
 How do I go?
- C: **Cóng dànmén chūqu, cháo běi guǎi, jiù shì Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē.**  
**从大门出去超被拐，就是王府井大街。**  
 You go out the entrance, turn to the north, and that's **Wángfǔjǐng** Boulevard.

**Cháo:** The prepositional verb **cháo** literally meaning “facing towards,” is used in **Běijīng**.

**Guǎi,** “to turn”: The verb **guǎi** usually refers to a 90-degree turn, but you can see below that it is used in exchange 5 to refer to a 180-degree turn. In English we would break up the directions into three steps, saying “You go out the entrance, turn left, and turn left again at the corner.” In Chinese, if the building you are leaving is on a corner, going along one side and then turning the corner may be thought of as a single step.

BĚIJĪNG HOTEL



**Jiù shì** literally means “(that) is precisely” or “right there is.” Here you see **Jiù** uses to mean “right,” “just,” “precisely”: “You go out the entrance, turn to the north, and that’s **Wángfǔjǐng** Boulevard right there.”

## Notes on №6-7

6. A: **Wǒ cóng dà mén chū qù, cháo běi guǎi, duì bu duì?**  
**我从大门出去，超北拐，对不对？**  
 I go out the entrance and turn to the north. Is that correct?
- C: **Duì le.**  
**对了。**  
 That's correct.
7. A: **Zǒu duō yuǎn?**  
**走多远？**  
 How far do I go?
- C: **Zǒu bù yuǎn, lù dōng de dì yī ge dà lóu jiù shì Xīn huá Shū diàn.**  
**走不远，路东的第一个大楼就是新华书店。**  
 Go a short distance, and the first building on the east side of the street is the New China Bookstore.

**Duō yuǎn:** The question “how far” is formed like the questions **duō dà** “how old,” and **duō Jiǔ**, “how long.”

**Zǒu bù yuǎn:** Notice that there are two verbs in this phrase. The first verb indicates the action, and the second verb indicates the extent of the action. (The Transportation Module includes notes about how to modify verbs.)

**Lù dōng**, the “east side of the street”: This word is a short form. The directions **-nán**, **-xī**, and **-běi** may also be used in similar short forms. The long form of **-lù dōng** is **lù dōng bian**.

Notice that on the east side of the street comes at the end of a phrase in English, while in Chinese **lù dōng de** begins the phrase.

<b>lù dōng de</b>	<b>dì yī ge dà lóu</b>	
	the first building	on the east

**Notes on №8**

8.     A:     Láojià, nèige dǎlóu shì Xīnhuá Shūdiǎn ma?  
          劳驾，那个是新华书店吗？  
          Excuse me, is that building the New China Bookstore?
- D:     Shì.  
          是  
          Yes.

## Notes on Additional Vocabulary

9.	zhuǎn	转	to turn
10.	chūlai	出来	to come out
11.	lùxī	路西	the west side of the street
12.	lùběi	路北	the north side of the street
13.	lùnán	路南	the south side of the street
11.	bǎihuò gōngsī	百货公司	department store
15.	Bǎihuò Dàlóu	百货大楼	name of a department store in Běijīng
16.	shàngbianr (shàngbian)	上边儿 (上边)	above, the top, the upper part
17.	xiàbianr (xiàbian)	下边儿 (下边)	below, under, the bottom, the lower part
16.	dìxia	地下	underneath; the underneath
19.	zhōngjiānr (zhōngjiàn) (zhōngjiān)	中间儿 (中间)	the middle, the space in between
20.	pángbiānr (pángbián)	旁边儿 (旁边)	beside, next to, alongside of; the side



**Zhuǎn**, “to turn,” “to make a turn”: The verb **guǎi**, “to turn,” is usually preceded by directions such as north/south or left/right, **Zhuǎn** is more frequently used to talk about turning to the rear.

<b>xiàng hòu zhuǎn</b>
<b>向后转</b>
turn around (literally, towards the back turn)

**Zhuǎn** is also the verb to use for turn when speaking of going from one street to another.

<b>Cóng Dàlǐ Jiē zhuǎndào Héping Dōnglù.</b>
<b>从大理解转到和平东路。</b>
From Dali street turn onto <b>Héping</b> East Road.

**Guǎi** cannot be used this way.

**Chūlai**, “to come out,” is made up of the verb **chū**, to exit, plus the verb **lái** used as a directional ending. This ending tells you that the action is towards the speaker.

**Bǎihuò gōngsī**, department store (literally, hundred-goods company): This term is used for large department stores. Smaller stores that sell a variety of merchandise are called **bǎihuòdiàn** or **bǎihuò shāngdiàn**.

**Bǎihuò Dàlóu**, literally, “Hundred-Goods Building”: There is only one store in **Běijīng** with this name; therefore the phrase is used as a proper name. The general term for a large Western-style department store is **bǎihuò gōngsī**.

**Shàngbianr** can mean the top side/surface, the top part/area, or a place which is above/up. When used after another noun, **Shàngbianr** may be translated as “on,” “on top of,” “above,” or “over.”

**Xiàbianr**, “the bottom,” “the lower part”; “under,” “below”

<b>Wǒ zài tiānqiáo xiàbianr děng nǐ.</b>
<b>我在天桥下边儿等你。</b>
I’ll wait for you under the overpass.

**Dǐxia**, “the underneath”; “underneath”

<b>Shū zài zhuōzi dǐxia.</b>
<b>书在桌子地下。</b>
The books are underneath the table.
<b>Zhèige dàlóude dǐxia diànyǐng yuàn, shàngmian yǒu fànguǎn hé shāngdiàn.</b>
<b>这个大楼的地下电影原，上面有房管和商店。</b>
The underneath of this building is a movie theater, and above there is a restaurant and a store.

**Zhōngjiānr**, “the middle,” “the space in between”

<b>Wǒde zhuōzi zài wǒ wūzide zhōngjiānr.</b>
<b>我的桌子在我屋子的中间儿</b>
My table is in the middle of my room.
<b>Zuǒbianr shì yíge fāndiàn, yòubianr shì yíge càishichǎng, zhōngjiānr nèige dàlóu jiù shì wǒ zhùde dìfang.</b>

左边儿是一个饭店，右边儿是一个菜市场，中间那个大楼就是我住的地方。

On the left there's a hotel; on the right there's a market; and the building in between is where I live.

Pángbiānr, “beside,” “next to,” “alongside of”; “the side”

Wǒ jiù zhù zài tāmen jiā pángbiānr.

我就住在他们家旁边儿。

I live right next to their place.

Tā pángbiānr nèige rén jiù shì Wáng Lìguó.

他旁边儿那个人就是王李国。

The man beside him is Wáng Lìguó.

## Drills

### Expansion Drill

Expand the statement according to the model.

1 Wǒ xiǎng mǎi jǐběn shū.

我想买几本书。

I would like to buy several books.

Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi jǐběn shū.

我想出去买几本书。

I would like to go out and buy several books.

2 Wǒ xiǎng kàn yíge péngyou.

我想看一个朋友。

I would like to see a friend.

Wǒ xiǎng chūqu kàn yíge péngyou.

我想出去看一个朋友。

I would like to go out and see a friend.

3 Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yífen bào.

我想买一份报。

I would like to buy a newspaper.

Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi yífen bào.

我想出去买一份报。

I would like to go out and buy a newspaper.

4 Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yídiǎn pánziwǎn.

我想买一点盘子碗盘。

I would like to buy some dishes.

Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi yídiǎn pánziwǎn.

我想出去买一点盘子碗盘。

I would like to go out and buy some dishes.

5 Wǒ xiǎng kàn yíge Zhōngguo péngyou.

我想看一个中国朋友。

I would like to see a Chinese friend.

Wǒ xiǎng chūqu kàn yíge Zhōngguo péngyou.

我想出去看一个中国朋友。

I would like to go out and see a Chinese friend.

6 Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi jikuài féizào.

我想出去买几块肥皂。

I would like to buy a few bars of soap.

Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi jikuài féizào.

我想出去买几块肥皂。

I would like to go out and buy a few bars of soap.

7 Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yibǎ yǔsǎn.

我想买一把雨伞。

I would like to buy an umbrella.

Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi yibǎ yǔsǎn.

我想出去买一把雨伞。

I would like to go out and buy an umbrella.

## Expansion Drill

Expand the statement according to the model and the cue.

- 1 Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi jǐběn shū.  
我想出去买几本书。  
I thought I would go out to buy a few books.

Cue mài shūde  
麦书的  
(where they) sell books

Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi jǐběn shū. Qǐngwèn, nǎr yǒu mài shūde?  
我想出去买几本书。清文，哪儿有麦书的？  
I thought I would go out to buy a few books. May I ask, where is there a place to buy books?

- 2 Wǒ xiǎng chūqu kàn yíge diànyǐng.  
我想出去看一个电影。  
I thought I would go out to see a movie.

Cue hǎo diànyǐng  
好电影  
good movie

Wǒ xiǎng chūqu kàn yíge diànyǐng. Qǐngwèn, nǎr yǒu hǎo diànyǐng?  
我想出去看一个电影。清文，哪儿有好电影？  
I thought I would go out to .May I ask, where is there a place to see a good film?

- 3 Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi diǎnr júzi.  
我想出去买点儿橘子。  
I thought I would go out to buy some oranges.

Cue cài shìchǎng  
菜市场  
market

Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi diǎnr júzi. Qǐngwèn, nǎr yǒu cài shìchǎng?  
我想出去买点儿橘子。清文，哪儿有菜市场？  
I thought I would go out to .May I ask, where is there a market?

- 4 Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi diǎnr táng.  
我想出去买点儿糖。  
I thought I would go out to buy some candy.
- Cue mài tángde  
麦糖的  
(where they) sell candies
- Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi diǎnr táng. Qǐngwèn, nǎr yǒu mài tángde?  
我想出去买点儿糖。清文，哪儿有麦糖的？  
I thought I would go out to .May I ask, where is there a place to buy candies?
- 5 Wǒ xiǎng chūqu huàn diǎnr Měijīn.  
我想出去换点儿美金。  
I thought I would go out to change some US currency.
- Cue yínháng  
银行  
bank
- Wǒ xiǎng chūqu huàn diǎnr Měijīn. Qǐngwèn, nǎr yǒu yínháng?  
我想出去换点儿美金。。清文，哪儿有银行？  
I thought I would go out to .May I ask, where is there a bank?
- 6 Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi jige huāpíng.  
我想出去买几个花瓶。  
I thought I would go out to buy a vase.
- Cue mài huāpíngde  
麦花瓶的  
(where they) sell vases
- Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi jige huāpíng. Qǐngwèn, nǎr yǒu mài huāpíngde?  
我想出去买几个花瓶。清文，哪儿有麦花瓶的？  
I thought I would go out to .May I ask, where is there a place to buy vases?
- 7 Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi diǎnr féizào.  
我想出去买点儿肥皂。  
I thought I would go out to buy some soap.

Cue

xiǎomàibù

小麦部

variety shop

Wǒ xiǎng chūqu mǎi diǎnr féizào. Qǐngwèn, nǎr yǒu xiǎomàibù?

我想出去买点儿肥皂。清文，哪儿有小麦部？

I thought I would go out to .May I ask, where is there a variety shop?

## Transformation Drill

Transform the statement according to the model.

1 Xīnhuá shūdiàn lí zhèr yuǎn bu yuǎn?

新华书店离这儿远不远？

Is the New China Bookstore far from here?

Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma?

新华书店离这儿远吗？

Is the New China Bookstore far from here?

2 Dōngdān Gōngyuán lí zhèr yuǎn bu yuǎn?

东单公园离这儿远不远？

Is the Dōngdān park far from here?

Dōngdān Gōngyuán lí zhèr yuǎn ma?

东单公园离这儿远吗？

Is the Dōngdān park far from here?

3 Càishichǎng lí zhèr yuǎn bu yuǎn?

菜市场离这儿远不远？

Is the market far from here?

Càishichǎng lí zhèr yuǎn ma?

菜市场离这儿远吗？

Is the market far from here?

4 Diànyǐngyuàn lí zhèr yuǎn bu yuǎn?

电影院离这儿远不远？

Is the movie theater far from here?

Diànyǐngyuàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma?

电影院离这儿远吗？

Is the movie theater far from here?

5 Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē lí zhèr yuǎn bu yuǎn?

王府井大街离这儿远不远？

Is the Wángfǔjǐng boulevard far from here?



Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē lí zhèr yuǎn ma?

王府井大街离这儿远吗？

Is the Wángfǔjǐng boulevard far from here?

6 Běijīng Fàndiàn lí zhèr yuǎn bu yuǎn?

北京饭店离这儿远不远？

Is the Peking Restaurant far from here?

Běijīng Fàndiàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma?

北京饭店离这儿远吗？

Is the Peking Restaurant far from here?

7 Xuéxiào lí zhèr yuǎn bu yuǎn?

学校离这儿远不远？

Is the school far from here?

Xuéxiào lí zhèr yuǎn ma?

学校离这儿远吗？

Is the school far from here?

## Expansion Drill

Expand the statement according to the model.

1 Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma?

新华书店离这儿远吗？

Is the New China Bookstore far from here?

Xīnhuá shūdiàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma? Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù, zěnmē zǒu?

新华书店离这儿远吗？从这儿到那儿怎么去？

Is the New China Bookstore far from here? How do you get there from here?

2 Wāngfǔjǐng Dàjiē lí zhèr yuǎn ma?

王府井大街离这儿远吗？

Is Wāngfǔjǐng boulevard far from here?

Wāngfǔjǐng Dàjiē lí zhèr yuǎn ma? Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù, zěnmē zǒu?

王府井大街离这儿远吗？从这儿到那儿怎么去？

Is Wāngfǔjǐng boulevard far from here? How do you get there from here?

3 Dōngdān Gōngyuán lí zhèr yuǎn ma?

东单公园离这儿远吗？

Is Dōngdān park far from here?

Dōngdān Gōngyuán lí zhèr yuǎn ma? Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù, zěnmē zǒu?

东单公园离这儿远吗？从这儿到那儿怎么去？

Is Dōngdān park far from here? How do you get there from here?

4 Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma?

东单电影院离这儿远吗？

Is the Dōngdān movie theater far from here?

Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma? Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù, zěnmē zǒu?

东单电影院离这儿远吗？从这儿到那儿怎么去？

Is the Dōngdān movie theater far from here? How do you get there from here?

5 Dōngdān Càishìchǎng lí zhèr yuǎn ma?

东单菜市场离这儿远吗？

Is the Dōngdān market far from here?

Dōngdān Càishìchǎng lí zhèr yuǎn ma? Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù, zěnmě zǒu?

东单菜市场离这儿远吗？从这儿到那儿怎么去？

Is the Dōngdān market far from here? How do you get there from here?

6 Běijīng Fàndiàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma?

北京饭店离这儿远吗？

Is the Peking restaurant far from here?

Běijīng Fàndiàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma? Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù, zěnmě zǒu?

北京饭店离这儿远吗？从这儿到那儿怎么去？

Is the Peking restaurant far from here? How do you get there from here?

7 Xuéxiào lí zhèr yuǎn ma?

学校离这儿远吗？

Is the school far from here?

Xuéxiào lí zhèr yuǎn ma? Cóng zhèr dào nàr qù, zěnmě zǒu?

学校离这儿远吗？从这儿到那儿怎么去？

Is the school far from here? How do you get there from here?

## Response Drill

Give an response according to the model.

1 Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma?

新华书店离这儿远吗？

Is the New China Bookstore far from here?

Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr bù yuǎn, hěn jìn.

新华书店离这儿不远，很近。

The New China Bookstore isn't far from here. It's quite close.

2 Yóuzhèngjú lí zhèr jìn ma?

邮政局离这儿近吗？

Is the post office nearby [close to here]?

Yóuzhèngjú lí zhèr bú jìn, hěn yuǎn.

邮政局离这儿不近，很远。

The post office isn't nearby. It's quite faraway.

3 Dōngdān Càishichǎng lí nàr yuǎn ma?

东单离那儿远吗？

Is the Dōngdān market far from here?

Dōngdān Càishichǎng lí nàr bù yuǎn, hěn jìn.

东单离那儿不远，很近。

The Dōngdān market isn't far from there, it's quite close.

4 Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn lí zhèr jìn ma?

东单电影院离这儿近吗？

Is the Dōngdān movie theater nearby?

Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn lí zhèr bú jìn, hěn yuǎn.

东单电影院离这儿不近，很远。

The Dōngdān movie theater isn't nearby, it's quite faraway.

5 Dōngdān Gōngyuán lí nàr yuǎn ma?

东单公园离那儿远吗？

Is the Dōngdān park far from here?

Dōngdān Gōngyuán lí nàr bù yuǎn, hěn jìn.

东单公园离这儿不远，很近。

The Dōngdān park isn't far from there, its quite close.

6 Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē lí zhèr jìn ma?

王府井大街离这儿近吗？

Is the Wángfǔjǐng boulevard nearby?

Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē lí zhèr bú jìn, hěn yuǎn.

王府井大街离这儿不近，很远。

The Wángfǔjǐng boulevard isn't far from here, it's quite close.

7 Xiǎomàibù lí zhèr yuǎn ma?

小卖部离这儿远吗？

Is the variety shop far from here?

Xiǎomàibù lí zhèr bù yuǎn, hěn jìn.

小卖部离这儿不远，很近。

The variety shop isn't far from here, it's quite close.

## Response Drill

Give affirmative response to all questions.

1 Nèige gōngyuán lí zhèr yuǎn ma?

那个公园离这儿远吗？

Is that park far from here?

Nèige gōngyuán lí zhèr bù yuǎn, wǒmen kéyǐ zǒuzhe qù.

那个公园离这儿不远，我们可以走着去。

That park isn't far from here, we can walk.

2 Nèige yóuzhèngjú lí zhèr jìn ma?

那个邮政局离这儿近吗？

Is that post office nearby?

Nèige yóuzhèngjú lí zhèr hěn jìn, wǒmen kéyǐ zǒuzhe qù.

那个邮政局离这儿近

That post office is very close to here, e can walk.

3 Nèige xuéxiào lí zhèr yuǎn ma?

那个学校离这儿远吗？

Is the school far from here?

Nèige xuéxiào lí zhèr bù yuǎn, wǒmen kéyǐ zǒuzhe qù.

那个学校离这儿不远，我们可以走着去。

That school is not far from here, , we can walk.

4 Nèige cài shì chǎng lí zhèr jìn ma?

那个菜市场离这儿近吗？

Is the market nearby?

Nèige cài shì chǎng lí zhèr hěn jìn, wǒmen kéyǐ zǒuzhe qù.

那个菜市场离这儿很近，我们可以走着去。

That market is nearby, we can walk.

5 Nèige dì fāng lí zhèr yuǎn ma?

那个地方离这儿远吗？

Is this place far from here?

Nèige dìfāng lí zhèr bù yuǎn, wǒmen kéyǐ zǒuzhe qù.

那个地方离这儿不远，我们可以走着去。

That place is not far from here, we can walk.

6 Nèige shūdiàn lí zhèr yuǎn ma?

那个书店离这儿远吗？

Is that bookshop far from here?

Nèige shūdiàn lí zhèr bù yuǎn, wǒmen kéyǐ zǒuzhe qù.

那个书店离这儿不远，我们可以走着去。

That bookstore is not far from here, we can walk.

7 Nèige shāngdiàn lí zhèr jìn ma?

那个商店离这儿近吗？

Is that store nearby?

Nèige shāngdiàn lí zhèr hěn jìn, wǒmen kéyǐ zǒuzhe qù.

那个商店离这儿很近，我们可以走着去。

That store is nearby, we can walk.

## Response Drill

Give a response to all questions according to the model.

1 Nǐ cóng dànmén chūqu, cháo běi guǎi, jiù shì.

你从大门出去，朝北拐，就是。

You go out the entrance, turn to the north, and that's it.

Wǒ cóng dànmén chūqu, cháo běi guǎi, duì bu duì?

我从大门出去，朝北拐，对不对？

I go out the entrance and turn to the north. Is that correct?

2 Wǒ cóng dànmén chūqu, cháo běi guǎi, duì bu duì?

我从大门出去，朝北拐，对不对？

I go out the entrance and turn to the north. Is that correct?

Duì le. Nǐ cóng dànmén chūqu, cháo běi guǎi, jiù shì.

对了。你从大门出去，朝北拐，就是。

That's correct. You go out the entrance, turn to the north, and that's it.

3 Nǐ cóng Xīnhuá Shūdiàn chūqu, cháo dōng guǎi, jiù shì.

你从新华书店出去，朝东拐，就是。

You go out the Xīnhuá bookstore and turn to the west, and that's it.

Wǒ cóng Xīnhuá Shūdiàn chūqu, cháo dōng guǎi, duì bu duì?

我从新华书店出去，朝东拐，对不对？

I go out the Xīnhuá bookstore and turn to the west. Is that correct?

4 Wǒ cóng diànyǐngyuàn chūqu, cháo nán guǎi, duì bu duì?

我从电影院，朝南拐，对不对？

I go out the movie theater and turn to the south. Is that correct?

Duì le. Nǐ cóng diànyǐngyuàn chūqu, cháo nán guǎi, jiù shì.

对了。你从电影院除去，朝南拐，就是。

That's correct. You go out the movie theater and turn to the south, and that's it.

5 Nǐ cóng cài shìchǎng chūqu, cháo xī guǎi, jiù shì.

你从菜市场，朝西拐，就是。

You go out the market and turn to the east, and that's it.



Wǒ cóng cài shì chǎng chūqu, cháo xī guǎi, duì bu duì?

我从菜市场出去，朝西拐，对不对？

I go out the market and turn to the east. Is that correct?

6 Wǒ cóng gōng yuán chūqu, cháo zuǒ guǎi, duì bu duì?

我从公园，朝左拐，对不对？

I go out the park, and turn to the left. Is that correct?

Duì le. Nǐ cóng gōng yuán chūqu, cháo zuǒ guǎi, jiù shì.

对了。你从公园除去，朝左快，就是。

That's correct. You go out the park, and turn to the left, and that's it.

7 Nǐ cóng xiǎo mài bù chūqu, cháo yòu guǎi, jiù shì.

你从小卖部，朝拐，就是。

You go out the variety shop and turn to the right, and that's it.

Wǒ cóng xiǎo mài bù chūqu, cháo yòu guǎi, duì bu duì?

我从小卖部除去，朝右拐，对不对？

I go out the variety shop and turn to the right. Is that correct?

## Response Drill

Give affirmative response to all questions.

1 Nǐ xiànzài chūqu mǎi bào ma?

你现在出去买报吗？

Are you going out now to buy a newspaper?

Cue

běi

北

north

Duì le, wǒ cóng dàmen chūqu, cháo běi guǎi, jiù yǒu mài bàode, duì bu duì?

对了，我从大门出去，朝北拐，就有麦报的，对不对？

That's right. I go out the entrance, turn to the north, and there's a place that sells newspapers. Is that correct?

2 Nǐ jīntiān chūqu mǎi shū ma?

你今天出去买书吗？

Are you going out today to buy a book?

Cue

xī

西

west

Duì le, wǒ cóng dàmen chūqu, cháo xī guǎi, jiù yǒu mài shūde, duì bu duì?

对了，我从大门出去，朝西拐，就麦书的，对不对？

That's right. I go out the entrance, turn to the west, and there is a place that sells books. Is that correct?

3 Nǐ xiànzài chūqu mǎi píngguǒ ma?

你现在出去买苹果吗？

Are you going out now to buy apples?

Cue

dōng

东

east

Duì le, wǒ cóng dàmen chūqu, cháo dōng guǎi, jiù yǒu mài píngguǒde, duì bu duì?#####  
#####

That's right. I go out the entrance, turn to the east, and there is a place that sells apples. Is that correct?

4 Nǐ jīntiān shàngwǔ chūqu mǎi pánziwǎn ma?

你今天上午出去买盘子碗吗？

Are you going out this evening to buy dishes?

Cue yòu  
右  
right

Dui le, wǒ cóng dàmen chūqu, cháo yòu guǎi, jiù yǒu mài pánziwǎnde, duì bu duì?

对了，我从大门出去，朝右拐，就麦盘子碗的，对不对？

That's right. I go out the entrance, turn to the right and there is a place that sells dishes. Is that correct?

5 Nǐ jīntiān zǎoshang chūqu mǎi zázhì ma?

你今天早上出去买杂志吗？

Are you going out this morning to buy a magazine?

Cue nán  
南  
south

Dui le, wǒ cóng dàmen chūqu, cháo nán guǎi, jiù yǒu mài zázhìde, duì bu duì?

对了，我从大门出去，朝南拐，就麦杂志的，对不对？

That's right. I go out the entrance, turn to the south and there is a place that sells magazines. Is that correct?

6 Nǐ xiànzài chūqu mǎi júzi ma?

你现在出去买橘子吗？

Are you going out now to buy oranges?

Cue zuǒ  
左  
left

Dui le, wǒ cóng dàmen chūqu, cháo zuǒ guǎi, jiù yǒu mài júzide, duì bu duì?

对了，我从大门出去，朝左拐，就麦橘子的，对不对？

That's right. I go out the entrance, turn to the left, and there is a place that sells oranges. Is that correct?

- 7 Nǐ jīntiān chūqu mǎi píjiǔ ma?  
你今天出去买啤酒吗？  
Are you going out today to buy beer?

Cue xī  
西  
west

Duì le, wǒ cóng dàmen chūqu, cháo xī guǎi, jiù yǒu mài píjiǔde, duì bu duì?

对了，我从大门出去，朝西拐，就麦啤酒的，对不对？

That's right. I go out the entrance, turn to the west, and there is a place that sells beer. Is that correct?

## Response Drill

Give affirmative or negative response to all questions according to the cue.

1 Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr hěn jìn.

里这儿很近。

The New China Bookstore is quite close by.

Cue

Zǒu duó yuǎn?

走多远？

How far do I go?

Zǒuzhe qù kéyì ma? Zǒu duó yuǎn?

走着可以吗？走多远？

Can I walk? How far do I have to go?

2 Xīnhuá Shūdiàn lí zhèr hěn jìn.

里这儿很近。

The New China Bookstore is quite closely.

Cue

Zěnmē zǒu?

怎么走？

How do I go?

Zǒuzhe qù kéyì ma? Zěnmē zǒu?

着可以吗？怎么走？

Can I walk? How do I go?

3 Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē lí zhèr hěn jìn.

里这儿很近。

The Wángfǔjǐng Boulevard is quite close by.

Cue

Zǒu duó yuǎn?

走多远？

How far do I go?

Zhǒuzhe qù kéyì ma? Zǒu duó yuǎn?

走着可以吗？走多远？

Can I walk? How far do I have to go?

4 Xiǎomàibù lí zhèr hěn jìn.

里这儿很近。

The variety shop is quite close by.

Cue Zěnmē zǒu?

怎么走？

How do I go?

Zhǒuzhe qù kéyǐ ma? Zěnmē zǒu?

走着可以吗？怎么走？

Can I walk? How do I go?

5 Dōngdān Gōngyuán lí zhèr hěn jìn.

里这儿很近。

The Dōngdān park is quite close by.

Cue Zǒu duó yuǎn?

走多远？

How far do I go?

Zhǒuzhe qù kéyǐ ma? Zǒu duó yuǎn?

走着可以吗？走多远？

Can I walk? How far do I have to go?

6 Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn lí zhèr hěn jìn.

里这儿很近。

The Dōngdān movie theater is quite close by.

Cue Zěnmē zǒu?

怎么走？

How do I go?

Zhǒuzhe qù kéyǐ ma? Zěnmē zǒu?

走着可以吗？怎么走？

Can I walk? How do I go?

7 Mínhú Fàndiàn lí zhèr hěn jìn.

里这儿很近。

The Mínhú store is quite close by.

Cue

Zǒu duó yuǎn?

走多远？

How far do I go?

Zhóuzhe qù kěyǐ ma? Zǒu duó yuǎn?

走着可以吗？走多远？

Can I walk? How far do I have to go?

## Response Drill

**Give a response to all questions according to the model.**

1 Tā jīntiān chūlai mǎi shū le ma?

他/她今天出来买书吗？

Did he/she come out to buy books today?

Cue

bù

不

no

Tā jīntiān méi chūlai mǎi shū.

他/她今天没出来买书。

He didn't come out to buy books today.

2 Nǐ jīntiān shàngwǔ chūqu le ma?

你今天上午出去吗？

Did you go out this evening?

Cue

shì

是

yes

Wǒ jīntiān shàngwǔ chūqu le.

我今天上午出去了。

I went out this morning.

3 Nǐ kànguo nèige diànyǐng ma?

你看过那个电影吗？

Have you ever seen that movie?

Cue

bù

不

no

Wǒ méi kànguo nèige diànyǐng.

我没看过那个电影。

I haven't seen that movie.





Cue

hái méi

还没

not yet

Tā hái méi chūlai ne.

他/她还没出来呢。

He/she hasn't come out yet.

## Unit 4

### References

#### Reference List

1. A: **Qǐngwèn, cāntīng zài jǐlóu?**  
请问，餐厅在几楼？  
May I ask, on what floor is the dining room?  
B: **Zài èrlóu.**  
在二楼。  
It's on the second floor.
2. A: **Òu, wǒ zuò diàntī dào èrlóu. Xiàle diàntī wàng nǎbian zǒu?**  
哦，我做电梯到二楼。下了电梯往哪边走？  
Oh, I take the elevator to the second floor. When I have gotten off the elevator, which way do I go?  
B: **Xiàle diàntī, zhuǎn yòu zǒu, jiù shì cāntīng.**  
下了电梯，转右走，就是餐厅。  
When you have gotten off the elevator, go to the right, and that's the restaurant.
3. A: **Qǐngwèn, nimen zhèli yǒu meiyǒu lǐfāde dìfang?**  
请问，你们这里有没有剪头的地方？  
May I ask, is there a place to get a haircut here?
4. C: **Yǒu. Cóng zhèli wàng zuǒ zǒu. Xià lóu jiù kànjiàn le.**  
有。从这里往左走。下楼就看见了。  
Yes. From here you go to the left. Go downstairs, and then you'll see it.  
A: **Wǒ xiān cóng zhèli wàng zuǒ zǒu. Ránhòu xià lóutī jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì?**  
我先从这里往左走。然后下楼梯就看见了，是不是？  
From here I first go to the left. After that, when I have gone downstairs, I'll see it. Is that it?  
C: **Shì.**  
是。  
Yes.
5. A: **Jǐlóu mǎi dìtù?**  
几楼买地图？  
On what floor are maps sold?  
D: **Èrlóu.**  
二楼。  
The second floor.

- A: **Zěnmē zǒu?**  
**怎么走？**  
 How do I get there (go)?
- D: **Wǎng hòu yìzhí zǒu. Shàng lóu, yòubian jiù shì mài dìtúde.**  
**往后一直走。上楼，右边就是卖地图的。**  
 Go straight to the back. Go upstairs, and the map department is (just) on the right.
6. A: **Wǒ xiān wǎng hòu yìzhí zǒu, shàng lóu, zuǒbian jiù shì, shì bu shì?**  
**我先往后一直走，上楼，左边就是，是不是？**  
 First, I go straight to the back. Then, I go upstairs. And the map that department is on the left. Is that it?
- D: **Bú shì. Yòubian jiù shì mài dìtúde.**  
**不是。右边就是卖地图的。**  
 No, the map department is (just) on the right.
7. A: **Xǐshǒujiān zài shénme dìfang?**  
**洗手间在什么地方？**  
 Where is the washroom?
- E: **Zài nàlǐ. Wǎng lǐ zǒu, zài yòubian.**  
**在那里。往里走，在右边。**  
 It's over there. Go all the way in, and it's on the right.
8. **qián**  
**前**  
 front, ahead
9. **duìmian (duìmiàn)**  
**对面 (对面儿)**  
 the side facing; across from, opposite, facing
10. **zhèbian (zhèbianr)**  
**这边 (这边儿)**  
 this way, this side
11. **nàbian (nèibianr)**  
**哪边 (哪边儿)**  
 that way, that side
12. **lóutī**  
**楼梯**  
 staircase, stairway, stairs
13. **zǒuláng**  
**走廊**  
 corridor
14. **cèsuǒ**  
**厕所**

15.	toilet, rest room jin 进
16.	to enter -tou -市
17.	end (occurs in place words) -mian(r) -面 (儿) surface (occurs in place words)

## Vocabulary

cāntīng	餐厅	dining room
cèsuǒ	厕所	toilet, rest room
diàntī	电梯	elevator
duìmiàn (duìmiàn)	对面 (对面儿)	the side facing; across from, opposite, facing
hòu	后	back
hòubian (hòubian)	后边 (后边儿)	the back side
jǐlóu	几楼	what floor
jìn	近	to enter
kànjian	看见	to see
lǐfǎ	剪头	to cut hair
lǐfǎ de dìfāng	剪头地方	a place where hair is cut
-lóu	-楼	floor, story of the building
lóutī	楼梯	staircase, stairway, stairs
-mian(r)	-面 (儿)	surface (occurs in place words)
nǎbian (něibian)	哪边 (哪边儿)	which way, which side
nàbian (nèibian)	那边 (那边儿)	that way, that side
qián	前	front, ahead
shàng	上	to go up
shàng lóu	上楼	to go, to come upstairs
-tou	-市	end (occurs in place words)
xià	下	to go down
xià lóu	下楼	to go/come downstairs
xǐshǒujiān	洗手间	washroom
zhèbian (zhèbian)	这边 (这边儿)	this way, this side
zǒuláng	走廊	corridor
zuò	坐	to ride (prepositional word)
bàngōngshì	办公室	office
wàng	忘	to forget
yàoshi	要是	if
yībēi	一杯	a cup of

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1

1. A: Qǐngwèn, cāntīng zài jǐlóu?  
请问，餐厅在几楼？  
May I ask, on what floor is the dining room?
- B: Zài èrlóu.  
在二楼。  
It's on the second floor.

**Cāntīng** is the word for the dining room of a hotel, A dining room in a house is a **fàntīng**, and an independent restaurant is a **fànguǎnzi** (**fànguǎnr**).

**Jǐlóu** is the question “what floor,” more literally, “what-number floor.”

Notes on №2

2. A: **Òu, wǒ zuò diàntī dào èrlóu. Xiàle diàntī wàng nǎbian zǒu?**  
**哦，我做电梯到二楼。下了电梯往哪边走？**  
 Oh, I take the elevator to the second floor. When I have gotten off the elevator, which way do I go?
- B: **Xiàle diàntī, zhuǎn yòu zǒu, jiù shì cāntīng.**  
**下了电梯，转右走，就是餐厅。**  
 When you have gotten off the elevator, go to the right, and that's the restaurant.

**Zuò diàntī:** The verb **zuò**, literally to sit, is also used for “to ride” or “to go via” some means of transportation (car, plane, boat, train, etc.). Thus the phrase **zuò diàntī** means “to ride the elevator.”

**Èrlóu:** For the number of a floor in a building, the word for “two” is **èr**, rather than **liǎng**.

**Dào èrlóu:** This **dào** is the main verb, meaning “to reach,” “to get to.” Literally, the first sentence in exchange 2 means “riding the elevator reach the second floor.” The verb **dào** is commonly used instead of **dào... qù**, “to go to...,” for naming several places to be passed through. Here is another example:

**Wǒ xiān dào Běijīng, ránhòu zài dào Shěnyáng.**

**我先到北京，然后在到沈阳。**

I'm going to **Běijīng** first, and then to **Shěnyáng**.

Notice that the verb “go” is used in the English translation of this sentence, although the Chinese says “reach.”

**Wàng nǎbian zǒu;** To ask the question “Go which way?” in Chinese, you say literally “Towards where go?” **Wàng nǎbian (nǎli, nǎr) zǒu?** To say “Come this way and Go that way,” you use the same pattern: **Wàng zhèbian (zhèli, zhèr) lái** and **Wàng nàbian (nàli, nàr) qù.**



Notes on №3-4

3. A: Qǐngwèn, nǐmen zhèlǐ yǒu méiyǒu lǐfǎde dìfāng?  
 请问，你们这里有没有剪头的地方？  
 May I ask, is there a place to get a haircut here?
4. C: Yǒu. Cóng zhèlǐ wàng zuǒ zǒu. Xià lóu jiù kànjiàn le.  
 有。从这里往左走。下楼就看见了。  
 Yes. From here you go to the left. Go downstairs, and then you'll see it.
- A: Wǒ xiān cóng zhèlǐ wàng zuǒ zǒu. Ránhòu xià lóutī jiù kànjiàn le, shì bu shì?  
 我先从这里往左走。然后下楼梯就看见了，是不是？  
 From here I first go to the left. After that, when I have gone downstairs, I'll see it. Is that it?
- C: Shì.  
 是。  
 Yes.

Lǐfǎde dìfāng means, literally, a place where they cut hair. Note that Lǐfǎ is also pronounced lǐfà.

 Note

An independent barbershop is called a lǐfǎguǎn, “hair-cutting establishment”

Xià lóu literally means “descend from an upper story.” The English phrase “go/come downstairs” looks at the same action from another point of view : descend **to** a lower story.

The verb kànjian, to see, is called a **COMPOUND VERB OF RESULT**, You have already learned about compound verbs made up of a verb indicating motion (such as chū, “to exit”) followed by a verb indicating direction (lái or qù); chūqu, chūlai. Now you see, in exchanges 3 and 4, a compound verb made up of an action verb (kàn, “to look”) and a verb expressing the result of that action (jiàn, “to perceive”). Kànjian can be understood as “to look with the result of perceiving,” that is, to see. Contrast kàn with kànjian :

Wǒ kànle kěshì méi kànjiàn.

我看了可是没看见。

I looked but I didn't see.

Here are other examples of compound verbs of result containing the verbs tīng, “to listen” and kàn :

Tā gēn nǐ shuō huà ne. Nǐ tīngjian le méiyǒu?

他跟你说话呢。你听见了没有？

She is talking to you. Did you hear her?

Kànjian dìyíge lùkǒu, wǎng zuǒ guǎi.

看见第一个路口，往左拐。

Take your first left. (literally, “When you see the first intersection, then left.”)

(Additional characteristics and uses of compound verbs of result will be explained when examples occur in the unit Reference Lists.)

Notes on №5-6

5. A: **Jǐlóu mǎi dìtú?**  
几楼买地图？  
On what floor are maps sold?
- D: **Èrlóu.**  
二楼。  
The second floor.
- A: **Zěnnme zǒu?**  
怎么走？  
How do I get there (go)?
- D: **Wǎng hòu yìzhí zǒu. Shàng lóu, yòubian jiù shì mǎi dìtúde.**  
往后一直走。上楼，右边就是卖地图的。  
Go straight to the back. Go upstairs, and the map department is (just) on the right.
6. A: **Wǒ xiān wǎng hòu yìzhí zǒu, shàng lóu, zuǒbian jiù shì, shì bu shì?**  
我先往后一直走，上楼，左边就是，是不是？  
First, I go straight to the back. Then, I go upstairs. And the map that department is on the left. Is that it?
- D: **Bú shì. Yòubian jiù shì mǎi dìtúde.**  
不是。右边就是卖地图的。  
No, the map department is (just) on the right.

**Jǐlóu mǎi dìtú?** looks as if it should mean “What floor sells maps?” Actually, **Jǐlóu** is a place-word topic, which is translated into English with a prepositional phrase: “on what floor” Then a subject is added: “On what floor do they sell maps?” Or the verb is put into passive tense: “On what floor are maps sold?”

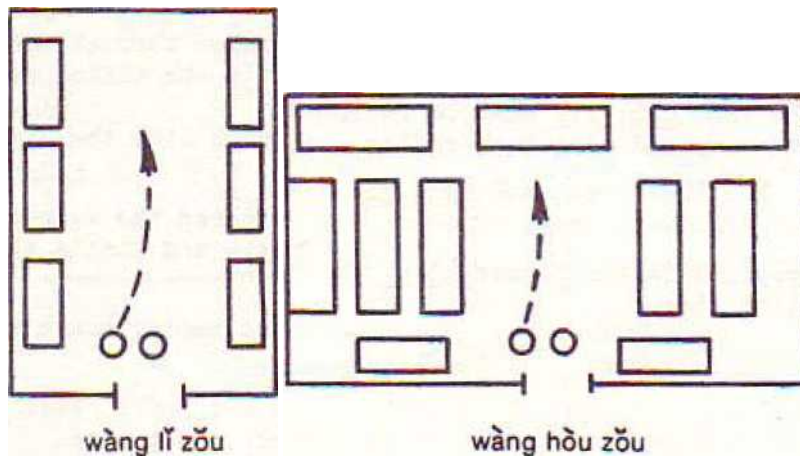
**Shàng lóu** means, literally, “ascend to an upper story,” that is, “go/come upstairs.”

**Notes on №7**

7. A: Xīshǒujiān zài shénme dìfang?  
 洗手间在什么地方?  
 Where is the washroom?
- E: Zài nàlǐ. Wǎng lǐ zǒu, zài yòubian.  
 在那里。往里走，在右边。  
 It's over there. Go all the way in, and it's on the right.

Literally, *xīshǒujiān* means a “wash-hands room,” which sometimes contains only a sink. In a house, the *xīshǒujiān*, meaning literally “take-a-bath room,” may contain only a bathtub. The politest way to ask about a bathroom is to use *xīshǒujiān*. However, this Westernized way of asking may not be understood everywhere in China. To be sure you are directed to a room with a toilet, use the more specific word *cèsuǒ*, “toilet,” “rest room”: *Qǐngwèn, cèsuǒ zài nàlǐ?* “May I ask, where is the toilet?”

*Wàng lǐ* means, literally, “towards the inside.” In English, you say go “to the back,” whatever the shape of the room. In Chinese, you say *wàng lǐ zǒu* for a narrow one-corridor room and *wàng hòu zǒu* for a wide room.



## Notes on Additional Vocabulary

8.	qián 前 front, ahead
9.	duìmian (duìmiàn) 对面 (对面儿) the side facing; across from, opposite, facing
10.	zhèbian (zhèbianr) 这边 (这边儿) this way, this side
11.	nàbian (nèbianr) 哪边 (哪边儿) that way, that side
12.	lóutī 楼梯 staircase, stairway, stairs
13.	zǒuláng 走廊 corridor
14.	cèsuǒ 厕所 toilet, rest room
15.	jìn 进 to enter
16.	-tou -市 end (occurs in place words)
17.	-mian(r) -面 (儿) surface (occurs in place words)

**Duimiàn** is a place word. It is a noun. Like other nouns, **duimiàn** can be modified by a **de** phrase. For example:

Diànyǐngyuàn zài gōngyuán de duìmiàn.

电影院在公园的对面。

The theater is across from the park. (literally : “The chapter is at the park's facing side.”)

**Zǒuláng** : Originally, this word referred to an open, roofed corridor along the side of a building. It now refers also to hallways inside a building,

Guòle zhège zǒuláng jiù shì cāntīng.

过了这个走廊就是餐厅。

When you have passed through this corridor, that's the dining room.

The verb *jìn*, “to enter,” functions in a sentence much like the verb *chū*, “to exit.”

Jìnle zhège dàmen, wàng yòu zǒu, jiù shì cāntīng .

进了这个大门，往右走，就时常听。

When you have entered the main door, go to the right, and that's the dining room.

Like the verb *chū*, *jìn* must be followed either by a word naming the place entered or by a directional ending such as *qù* or *lǎi*.

Nǐ jìnqu, wàng zuǒ zǒu, jiù shì mǎi bào de.

你进去，往左走，就是买报的。

Go in and go to the left. That's where they sell newspapers.

(An exception is the phrase *Qǐng jìn*, “Please come in,” which does not need the ending *-lai*)

The syllable *-tou*, “end,” may be added to a direction word such as *hòu*, “back,” to change it into a place word, *hòutou*, “back.” One-syllable direction words like *lǐ* and *hòu* may be used after *wàng*, towards. In most other situations, you must use a place word made up of the direction word and an ending such as *-bian(r)*, *-tou*, or *-mian(r)*.

The syllable *-tou* does not combine with as many words as *-bian(r)* and *-mian(r)* do. For instance, *-tou* does not combine with “left” and “right.” (See the chart below.) Forms ending in *-tou* are especially common in *Běijīng*.

The syllable *-mian(r)*, “surface,” may also be added to a direction word to make a place word. Notice that while this syllable combines with more forms than *-tou* does, *-mian(r)* is not as common as *-bian(r)*.

#### DIRECTION NAMES

#### PLACE NAMES

dōng	dōngbian(r)		
nán	nánbian(r)		
xī	xībian(r)		
běi	běibian(r)		
lǐ	lǐbian(r)	lǐtou	lǐmian(r)
wài	wàibian(r)	wàitou	wàimian(r)
qián	qiánbian(r)	qiántou	qiánmian(r)
hòu	hòubian(r)	hòutou	hòumian(r)
zuǒ	zuǒbian(r)		zuǒmian(r)
yòu	yòubian(r)		yòumian(r)
shàng	shàngbian(r)	shàngtou	shàngmian(r)
xià	xiàbian(r)	xiàtou	xiàmian(r)
	pángbiān(r)		

## Vocabulary booster

### Buildings and Institutions

apartment	gōngyùlóu	公寓楼
auditorium	dàlǐtáng	大礼堂
bank	yínháng	银行
bar	jiǔbā	酒吧
bus station (long distance)	chángtúqìchēzhàn	长途汽车站
cafeteria	zìzhùcāntīng	自助餐厅
castle	chéngbǎo	城堡
church	jiàotáng	教堂
company	gōngsī	公司
court	fǎyuàn	法院
dormitory	sùshè	宿舍
exhibit hall	zhǎnlǎnguǎn	展览馆
factory	chǎngfáng / gōngchǎng	厂房 / 工厂
farm	nóngchǎng	农场
fire department	xiǎofángduì	消防队
gas station	jiāyóuzhàn, qìyóuzhàn	加油站 / 汽油站
gymnasium	tǐyùguǎn	体育馆
hospital	yīyuàn	医院
hotel	lǚguǎn, lǚshè, fàndiàn (a large, modern hotel with a restaurant; also means restaurant)	旅馆, 旅社, 饭店
library	túshūguǎn	图书馆
market	shìchǎng	市场
memorial hall	jìniàntáng	纪念堂
mosque	qīngzhēnsì	清真寺
motel	qìchē lǚguǎn	汽车旅馆
movie theater	diànyǐngyuàn	电影院
museum	bówùguǎn	博物馆
observatory	tiānwéntái	天文台
office building	bàngōnglóu	办公楼
organization	jīgòu	机构

pagoda	bǎotǎ	宝塔
palace	gōngdiàn	宫殿
parking lot	tíngchēchǎng	停车场
pavilion	tíngzi	亭子
police station	jǐngchájú (Táiwān); gōngānjú (PRC)	警察局 / 公安局
post office	yóujú, yóuzhèngjú	邮局, 邮正局
prison	jiānyù	监狱
railroad station	huóchēzhàn	火车站
ranch	mùchǎng	牧场
residence	zhùzhái	住宅
restaurant	fànguǎnzi, fànguǎnr, fàndiàn	房管子, 房管儿, 饭店
school	xuéxiào	学校
shop	shāngdiàn	商店
single-story (flat) house	píngfángzi	平房子
skyscraper	mótiān dàshà (mótiān dàxià)	摩天大厦, 摩天大厦
stadium	tǐyùchǎng	体育场
supermarket	chāojīshìchǎng	超级市场
television station	diànshìtái	电视台
temple	miào	庙
theater	jùchǎng; xìyuàn (old word)	剧场; 戏院
villa	biéshù	别墅

## Drills

### Substitution Drill

Transform the statement according to the cue.

1 Qǐngwèn, cèsuǒ zài jǐlóu?

请问, 厕所在几楼?

May I ask, on what floor is the toilet?

Cue

mài shūde

卖书的



a place where they sell books

Qǐngwèn, mài shūde zài jǐlóu?

请问，卖书的在几楼？

May I ask, on what floor are books sold?

2 Qǐngwèn, mài shūde zài jǐlóu?

请问，卖书的在几楼？

May I ask, on what floor are books sold?

Cue mài píjiǔde

卖啤酒的

a place where they sell beer

Qǐngwèn, mài píjiǔde zài jǐlóu?

请问，卖啤酒的在几楼？

May I ask, on what floor is beer sold?

3 Qǐngwèn, mài píjiǔde zài jǐlóu?

请问，卖啤酒的在几楼？

May I ask, on what floor is beer sold?

Cue mài tángde

卖糖的

a place where they sell candies

Qǐngwèn, mài tángde zài jǐlóu?

请问，卖糖的在几楼？

May I ask, on what floor are candies sold?

4 Qǐngwèn, mài tángde zài jǐlóu?

请问，卖糖的在几楼？

May I ask, on what floor are candies sold?

Cue xiǎomàibù

小卖部

variety shop

Qǐngwèn, xiǎomàibù zài jǐlóu?

请问，小卖部在几楼？

May I ask, on what floor is the variety shop?

5 Qǐngwèn, xiǎomàibù zài jǐlóu?

请问，小卖部在几楼？

May I ask, on what floor is the variety shop?

Cue cèsuǒ  
厕所  
toilettes

Qǐngwèn, cèsuǒ zài jǐlóu?

请问，厕所在几楼？

May I ask, on what floor are the toilettes?

6 Qǐngwèn, cèsuǒ zài jǐlóu?

请问，厕所在几楼？

May I ask, on what floor is the toilet?

Cue mài huāpíngde  
卖花瓶的  
a place where they sell vases

Qǐngwèn, mài huāpíngde zài jǐlóu?

请问，卖花瓶的在几楼？

May I ask, on what floor are vases sold?

## Transformation Drill

Transform the statement according to the model and the cue.

- 1 Qǐngwèn, cāntīng zài jǐlóu?  
请问，餐厅在几楼？  
May I ask, on what floor is the dining room?

Cue èr  
二  
second

Qǐngwèn, cāntīng zài èrlóu, duì bu duì?  
请问，餐厅在二楼，对不对？  
May I ask, the dining room is on the second floor. Is that correct?

- 2 Qǐngwèn, cèsuǒ zài jǐlóu?  
请问厕所在几楼？  
May I ask, on what floor are the toilettes?

Cue sān  
三  
third

Qǐngwèn, cèsuǒ zài sānlóu, duì bu duì?  
请问厕所在三楼，对不对？  
May I ask, the toilettes are on the third floor. Is that correct?

- 3 Qǐngwèn, mài tángde zài jǐlóu?  
请问，卖糖的在几楼？  
May I ask, on what floor are candies sold?

Cue wǔ  
五  
fifth

Qǐngwèn, mài tángde zài wǔlóu, duì bu duì?  
请问，卖糖的在五楼，对不对？  
May I ask, the candies seller is on the fifth floor. Is that correct?

4 Qǐngwèn, mài shūde zài jǐlóu?  
请问，卖书的在几楼？  
May I ask, on what floor are books sold?

Cue sì  
四  
fourth

Qǐngwèn, mài shūde zài sìlóu, duì bu duì?  
请问，卖书的在四楼，对不对？  
May I ask, the bookseller is on the fourth floor. Is that correct?

5 Qǐngwèn, mài huāpíngde zài jǐlóu?  
请问，卖花瓶的在几楼？  
May I ask, on what floor are vases sold?

Cue liù  
六  
sixth

Qǐngwèn, mài huāpíngde zài liùlóu, duì bu duì?  
请问，卖花瓶的在六楼，对不对？  
May I ask, the vases seller is on the sixth floor. Is that correct?

6 Qǐngwèn, mài yǔsǎnde zài jǐlóu?  
请问，卖雨伞的在几楼？  
May I ask, on what floor are umbrella sold?

Cue sān  
三  
third

Qǐngwèn, mài yǔsǎnde zài sānlóu, duì bu duì?  
请问，卖雨伞的在三楼，对不对？  
May I ask, the umbrellas seller is on the third floor. Is that correct?

7 Qǐngwèn, mài fěizàode zài jǐlóu?  
请问，卖肥皂的在几楼？  
May I ask, on what floor are soap sold?

Cue

èr

—

second

Qǐngwèn, mài féizàode zài èrlóu, duì bu duì?

请问，卖肥皂的在二楼，对不对？

May I ask, the soap seller is on the second floor. Is that correct?

## Expansion Drill

Expand the statement according to the model and the cue.

1 Wǒ yào mǎi shū.

我要买书。

I want to buy a book.

Cue

shūdiàn

书店

bookstore

Wǒ yào mǎi shū. Qǐngwèn, zhèr fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu shūdiàn?

我要买书。请问，这儿附近有没有书店？

I want to buy a book. May I ask, is there a bookstore around here?

2 Wǒ yào mǎi táng.

我要买糖。

I want to buy candies.

Cue

mài tángde

卖糖的

a place where they sell candies

Wǒ yào mǎi táng. Qǐngwèn, zhèr fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu mài tángde?

我要买糖。请问，这儿附近有没有卖糖的？

I want to buy candies. May I ask, is there a place where I can buy candies nearby?

3 Wǒ yào mǎi dìtú.

我要买地图。

I want to buy maps.

Cue

shūdiàn

书店

bookstore

Wǒ yào mǎi dìtú. Qǐngwèn, zhèr fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu shūdiàn?

我要买地图。请问，这儿附近有没有书店？

I want to buy maps. May I ask, is there a place where I can buy maps nearby?

4 Wǒ yào huàn qián.  
我要换钱。  
I want to change money.

Cue yínháng  
银行  
bank

Wǒ yào huàn qián. Qǐngwèn, zhèr fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu yínháng?  
我要换钱。请问，这儿附近有没有银行？  
I want to change money. May I ask, is there place where I can change money nearby?

5 Wǒ yào kàn diànyǐng.  
我要看电影。  
I want to watch a movie.

Cue diànyǐngyuàn  
电影院  
movie theater

Wǒ yào kàn diànyǐng. Qǐngwèn, zhèr fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu diànyǐngyuàn?  
我要看电影请问，这儿附近有没有电影院？  
I want to watch a movie. May I ask, is there a movie theater nearby?

6 Wǒ yào mǎi bào.  
我要买报。  
I want to buy a newspaper.

Cue mǎi bàode  
卖报的  
a place where they sell newspapers

Wǒ yào mǎi bào. Qǐngwèn, zhèr fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu mǎi bàode?  
我要买报。请问，这儿附近有没有卖报的？  
I want to buy a newspaper. May I ask, is there a place where I can buy a newspaper nearby?

7 Wǒ yào mǎi féizào.  
我要买肥皂。  
I want to buy a bar of soap.

Cue

shāngdiàn

商店

store

Wǒ yào mǎi féizào. Qǐngwèn, zhèr fùjìn yǒu meiyǒu shāngdiàn?

我要买肥皂。请问，这儿附近有没有商店？

I want to buy a bar of soap. May I ask, is there a place where I can buy soap nearby?



## Transformation Drill

Transform the statement according to the model and the cue.

1 Jǐlóu mài dìtú?

几楼卖地图？

On what floor are maps sold?

Cue

Èrlóu

二楼

second floor

Èrlóu yǒu meiyǒu mài dìtúde?

二楼有没有卖地图的？

On the second floor is there a place where maps are sold?

2 Jǐlóu mài huāpíng?

几楼卖花瓶？

On what floor are vases sold?

Cue

Sānlóu

三楼

third floor

Sānlóu yǒu meiyǒu mài huāpíngde?

三楼有没有卖花瓶的？

On the third floor is there a place where vases are sold?

3 Jǐlóu mài táng?

几楼卖糖？

On what floor are candies sold?

Cue

Wǔlóu

五楼

fifth floor

Wǔlóu yǒu meiyǒu mài tángde?

五楼有没有卖糖的？

On the fifth floor is there a place where maps are sold?

4 Jǐlóu mài pánziwǎn?  
几楼卖盘子晚？  
On what floor are dishes sold?

Cue Sānlóu  
三楼  
third floor

Sānlóu yǒu meiyǒu mài pánziwǎnde?  
三楼没有卖盘子晚的？  
On the third floor is there a place where dishes are sold?

5 Jǐlóu mài féizào?  
几楼卖肥皂？  
On what floor is soap sold?

Cue Sìlóu  
四楼  
fourth floor

Sìlóu yǒu meiyǒu mài féizàode?  
四楼没有卖肥皂的？  
On the fourth floor is there a place where soap is sold?

6 Jǐlóu mài zázhì?  
几楼卖杂志？  
On what floor are magazines sold?

Cue Liùlóu  
六楼  
sixth floor

Liùlóu yǒu meiyǒu mài zázhìde?  
六楼没有卖杂志的？  
On the sixth floor is there a place where magazines are sold?

7 Jǐlóu mài yǔsǎn?  
几楼卖雨伞？  
On what floor are umbrellas sold?

Cue

Wǔlóu

无漏

fifth floor

Wǔlóu yǒu meiyǒu mài yǔsǎnde?

无漏没有卖雨伞的？

On the fifth floor is there a place where umbrellas are sold?

## Expansion Drill

Expand the statement according to the model and the cue.

1 Nín zuò diàntī dào èrlóu.

您坐电梯到二楼。

Take the elevator to the second floor.

Cue

nèibian

那边

over there

Òu, zuò diàntī dào èrlóu, xiàle diàntī, wàng nèibian zǒu, duì bu duì?

哦坐电梯到二楼，下了电梯，往那边走对不对？

Oh, I take the elevator to the second floor. After I have gotten off the elevator, I go that way. Is that correct?

2 Nín zuò diàntī dào sìlóu.

您坐电梯到四楼。

Take the elevator to the fourth floor.

Cue

yòu

右

on the right

Òu, zuò diàntī dào sìlóu, xiàle diàntī wàng yòu zǒu, duì bu duì?

哦坐电梯到四楼，下了电梯往右走，对不对？

Oh, I take the elevator to the fourth floor. After I have gotten off the elevator, I go that way. Is that correct?

3 Nín zuò diàntī dào wǔlóu.

您坐电梯到五楼。

Take the elevator to the fifth floor.

Cue

zuǒ

左

on the left

Òu, zuò diàntī dào wǔlóu, xiàle diàntī wàng zuǒ zǒu, duì bu duì?

哦坐电梯到五楼，下了电梯，往左走对不对？

Oh, I take the elevator to the fifth floor. After I have gotten off the elevator, I go that way. Is that correct?

4 Nín zuò diàntī dào liùlóu.

您坐电梯到六楼。

Take the elevator to the sixth floor.

Cue

yízhí

一直

straight ahead

Òu, zuò diàntī dào liùlóu, xiàle diàntī yízhí zǒu, duì bu duì?

哦坐电梯到六楼，下了电梯，一直走对不对？

Oh, I take the elevator to the sixth floor. After I have gotten off the elevator, I go that way. Is that correct?

5 Nín zuò diàntī dào sānlóu.

您坐电梯到三楼。

Take the elevator to the third floor.

Cue

wǎng yòu yízhí

往右一直

go right

Òu, zuò diàntī dào sānlóu, xiàle diàntī wǎng yòu yízhí zǒu, duì bu duì?

哦坐电梯到三楼，下了电梯，往右一直，对不对？

Oh, I take the elevator to the third floor. After I have gotten off the elevator, I go that way. Is that correct?

6 Nín zuò diàntī dào qīlóu.

您坐电梯到七楼。

Take the elevator to the seventh floor.

Cue

nèibian

那边

other there

Òu, zuò diàntī dào qīlóu, xiàle diàntī wǎng nèibian zǒu, duì bu duì?

哦坐电梯到七楼，下了电梯，往那边走对不对？

Oh, I take the elevator to the seventh floor. After I have gotten off the elevator, I go that way. Is that correct?

7 Nín zuò diàntī dào èrlóu.

您坐电梯到二楼。

Take the elevator to the second floor.

Cue

zuǒbian

左边

on the right

Òu, zuò diàntī dào èrlóu, xiàle diàntī wàng zuǒbian zǒu, duì bu duì?

哦坐电梯到二楼，下了电梯，往左边走对不对？

Oh, I take the elevator to the second floor. After I have gotten off the elevator, I go that way. Is that correct?

## Expansion Drill

Expand the statement according to the model and the cue.

1 Wǒ xiān cóng zhèlǐ wàng yòu zǒu.

我先从这里往右走。

First, I go from here to the right.

Cue

xià lóu

下楼

downstairs

Wǒ xiān cóng zhèlǐ wàng yòu zǒu. Ránhòu xià lóu jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì?

我想从这里往右走。然后下楼就看见了，是不是？

First, I go from here to the right. Then I go downstairs, and I'll see it. Right?

2 Wǒ xiān cóng zhèlǐ wàng zuǒ zǒu.

我先从这里往左走。

First, I go from here to the left.

Cue

shàng lóu

上楼

upstairs

Wǒ xiān cóng zhèlǐ wàng zuǒ zǒu. Ránhòu shàng lóu jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì?

我先从这里往左走。然后上楼就看见了，是不是？

First, I go from here to the left. Then I go upstairs, and I'll see it. Right?

3 Wǒ xiān cóng zhèlǐ wàng hòu zǒu.

我先从这里往后走。

First, I go back from here.

Cue

xià lóu

下楼

downstairs

Wǒ xiān cóng zhèlǐ wàng hòu zǒu. Ránhòu xià lóu jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì?

我先从这里往后走。然后下楼看见了，是不是？

First, I go back from here. Then I go downstairs, and I'll see it. Right?

4 Wǒ xiān cóng zhèlǐ wàng nàbian zǒu.

我先从这里往那边走。

First, I go from here over there.

Cue shàng lóu

上楼

upstairs

Wǒ xiān cóng zhèlǐ wàng nàbian zǒu. Ránhòu shàng lóu jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì?

我先从这里往那边走。然后上楼就看见了,是不是?

First, I go from here over here. Then I go downstairs, and I'll see it. Right?

5 Wǒ xiān cóng zhèlǐ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu.

我先从这里往后一直走。

First, I go straight from here onwards.

Cue xià lóu

下楼

downstairs

Wǒ xiān cóng zhèlǐ wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu. Ránhòu xià lóu jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì?

我先从这里往后一直走。然后下楼看见了,是不是?

First, I go straight from here onwards. Then I go downstairs, I'll see it. Right?

6 Wǒ xiān cóng zhèlǐ wàng yòu yìzhí zǒu.

我先从这里往右一直走。

First, I go straight from here to the right.

Cue shàng lóu

上楼

upstairs

Wǒ xiān cóng zhèlǐ wàng yòu yìzhí zǒu. Ránhòu shàng lóu jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì?

我先从这里往右一直走。然后上楼就看见了,是不是?

First, I go straight from here to the right. Then I go upstairs, I'll see it. Right?

7 Wǒ xiān cóng zhèlǐ wàng zuǒ yìzhí zǒu.

我先从这里往左一直走。

First, I go straight from here to the left.



Cue

xià lóu

下楼

downstairs

Wǒ xiān cóng zhèlǐ wàng zuǒ yìzhí zǒu. Ránhòu xià lóu jiù kànjiàn le, shì bu shì?

我先从这里往左一直走。然后下楼就看见了，是不是？

First, I go straight from here to the left, I'll see it. Right?

## Transformation Drill

Transform the statement according to the model.

1 Xiàle diàntī wàng yòu zǒu jiù shì mài dìtúde.

下了电梯往右走就是卖地图的。

The map department is [just] to the right when you get off the elevator.

Duibuqǐ, xiàle diàntī wàng nǎbian zǒu jiù shì mài dìtúde?

对不起，下了电梯往哪边走就是卖地图的？

Excuse me, once I get off the elevator, which way is the map department?

2 Xiàle diàntī wàng zuǒ zǒu jiù shì mài shūde.

下了电梯往左走就是卖书的。

The map bookstore is [just] to the left when you get off the elevator.

Duibuqǐ, xiàle diàntī wàng nǎbian zǒu jiù shì mài shūde?

对不起，下了电梯往哪边走就是卖书的？

Excuse me, once I get off the elevator, which way is the bookstore?

3 Xiàle diàntī wàng hòu zǒu jiù shì mài huāpíngde.

下了电梯往后走就是卖花瓶的。

The store which sells vases is [just] backwards when you get off the elevator.

Duibuqǐ, xiàle diàntī wàng nǎbian zǒu jiù shì mài huāpíngde?

对不起，下了电梯往哪边走就是卖花瓶的？

Excuse me, once I get off the elevator, which way is the store which sells vases?

4 Xiàle diàntī wàng yòu yìzhí zǒu jiù shì mài yǔsǎnde.

下了电梯往右一直走就是卖雨伞的。

The store which sells umbrellas is [just] to the right when you get off the elevator.

Duibuqǐ, xiàle diàntī wàng nǎbian zǒu jiù shì mài yǔsǎnde?

对不起，下了电梯往哪边走就是卖雨伞的？

Excuse me, once I get off the elevator, which way is the store which sells umbrellas?

5 Xiàle diàntī wàng zuǒ yìzhí zǒu jiù shì mài tángde.

下了电梯往左一直走就是卖糖的。

The store which sells candies is [just] to the left when you get off the elevator.

Duibuqǐ, xiàle diàntī wàng nǎbian zǒu jiù shì mài tángde?

对不起，下了电梯往哪边走就是卖糖的？

Excuse me, once I get off the elevator, which way is the store which sells candies?

6 Xiàle diàntī wàng nǎbian yìzhí zǒu jiù shì mài pánziwǎnde.

下了电梯往那边一直走就是卖盘子晚的。

The store which sells dishes is just other there all the way when you get off the elevator.

Duibuqǐ, xiàle diàntī wàng nǎbian zǒu jiù shì mài pánziwǎnde?

对不起，下了电梯往哪边走就是卖盘子晚的？

Excuse me, once I get off the elevator, which way is the store which sells dishes?

7 Xiàle diàntī wàng hòu yìzhí zǒu jiù shì mài zìdiǎnde.

下了电梯往后一直走就是卖字典的。

The store which sells dictionaries is just backwards when you get off the elevator.

Duibuqǐ, xiàle diàntī wàng nǎbian zǒu jiù shì mài zìdiǎnde?

对不起，下了电梯往哪边走就是卖字典的？

Excuse me, once I get off the elevator, which way is the store which sells dictionaries?

## Response Drill

Create a question in relation of the statement, and according to the model.

1 Nǐ wàng hòu yízhí zǒu, shàng lóu, zuǒbian jiù shì.

你往后一直走，上楼，左边就是。

Go straight to the back, up the stairs, and it's on the left.

Hǎo, wǒ wàng hòu yízhí zǒu, shàng lóu wàng zuǒ zǒu, jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì?

好，我往后一直走，就看见了，是不是？

Okay, I go directly to the back, upstairs and to the left, and I'll see it, right?

2 Nǐ wàng hòu yízhí zǒu, shàng lóu, yòubian jiù shì.

你往后一直走，上楼，右边就是。

You go straight back, go upstairs, and it's on the right.

Hǎo, wǒ wàng hòu yízhí zǒu, shàng lóu, wàng yòu zǒu, jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì?

好，我往后一直走，上楼，往右走，就看见了，是不是？

Okay, I'll go straight back, go upstairs, go to the right, and I'll see it, right?

3 Nǐ wàng hòu yízhí zǒu, xià lóu, zuǒbian jiù shì.

你往后一直走，下楼，左边就是。

You go straight back, down the stairs, and it's on the left.

Hǎo, wǒ wàng hòu yízhí zǒu, xià lóu, wàng zuǒbian zǒu, jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì?

好，我往后一直走，下楼，往左边走就看见了，是不是？

Okay, I'll go straight back, down the stairs, go to the left and I'll see it, right?

4 Nǐ wàng hòu yízhí zǒu, xià lóu, yòubian jiù shì.

你往后一直走，下楼，右边就是。

You go straight back, down the stairs, and it's on the right.

Hǎo, wǒ wàng hòu yízhí zǒu, xià lóu, wàng yòubian zǒu, jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì?

好，我往后一直走，下楼，往右边走就看见了，是不是？

Okay, I'll go straight back, go downstairs, go to the right and I'll see it, right?

5 Nǐ wàng hòu yízhí zǒu, shàng lóu, duìmiàn jiù shì.

你往后一直走，上楼，对面就是。

You go straight back, go upstairs, and it is opposite.

Hǎo, wǒ wàng hòu yízhí zǒu, shàng lóu, yízhí zǒu, jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì?

好，我往后一直走，上楼，一直走就看见了，是不是？

Okay, I'll keep walking back, upstairs, and I'll see it as soon as I keep walking, right?

6 Nǐ wàng hòu yízhí zǒu, shàng lóu, yòubian jiù shì.

你往后一直走，上楼，右边就是。

You go straight back, go upstairs, it's on the right.

Hǎo, wǒ wàng hòu yízhí zǒu, shàng lóu, wàng yòubian zǒu, jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì?

好，我往后一直走，上楼，往右边走就看见了，是不是？

Okay, I'll go straight back, go upstairs, go to the right and I'll see it, right?

7 Nǐ wàng hòu yízhí zǒu, xià lóu, duìmiàn jiù shì.

你往后一直走，下楼，对面就是。

You go straight back, down the stairs, it's on the opposite.

Hǎo, wǒ wàng hòu yízhí zǒu, xià lóu, yízhí zǒu, jiù kànjian le, shì bu shì?

好，我往后一直走，下楼，一直走就看见了，是不是？

Okay, I'll keep walking back, down the stairs, and I'll see it as soon as I keep walking, right?

## Substitution Drill

Transform the statement according to the model and the cue.

- 1 Xìshǒujiān zài shénme dìfang?  
洗手间在什么地方？  
Where is the washroom?

Cue Cèsuǒ  
厕所  
toilettes

Cèsuǒ zài shénme dìfang?  
厕所在什么地方？  
Where are the toilettes?

- 2 Cèsuǒ zài shénme dìfang?  
厕所在什么地方？  
Where are the toilettes?

Cue lóutī  
楼梯  
escalator

Lóutī zài shénme dìfang?  
楼梯在什么地方？  
Where is the escalator?

- 3 Lóutī zài shénme dìfang?  
楼梯在什么地方？  
Where is the lift?

Cue diàntī  
电梯  
lift

Diàntī zài shénme dìfang?  
电梯在什么地方？  
Where is the lift?

4 Diàntī zài shénme dìfang?  
电梯在什么地方?  
Where is the elevator?

Cue mài bàode  
卖报的  
the store which sells newspapers

Mài bàode zài shénme dìfang?  
卖报的在什么地方?  
Where is the store which sells newspapers?

5 Mài bàode zài shénme dìfang?  
卖报的在什么地方?  
Where is the store which sells newspapers?

Cue mài yǔsǎnde  
卖雨伞的  
the store which sells umbrellas

Mài yǔsǎnde zài shénme dìfang?  
卖雨伞的在什么地方?  
Where is the store which sells umbrellas?

6 Mài yǔsǎnde zài shénme dìfang?  
卖雨伞的在什么地方?  
Where is the store which sells umbrellas?

Cue cāntīng  
餐厅  
the restaurant

Cāntīng zài shénme dìfang?  
餐厅在什么地方?  
Where is the restaurant?

## response Drill

Answer to all the questions according to the cue.

- 1 Qǐngwèn, xǐshǒujiān zài shénme dìfang?  
请问，洗手间在什么地方？  
May I ask, where is the washroom?

Cue lóutī pángbiān  
楼梯旁边  
beside the staircase

Zài nàlǐ, zài lóutī pángbiān.  
在那里，在楼梯旁边。  
It's there, beside the staircase.

- 2 Qǐngwèn, cèsuǒ zài shénme dìfang?  
请问，厕所在什么地方？  
May I ask, where are the toilets?

Cue lóutī yòubian  
楼梯右边  
to the right of the stairs

Zài nàlǐ, zài lóutī yòubian.  
在那里，在楼梯右边。  
It's there, to the right of the stairs.

- 3 Qǐngwèn, lóutī zài shénme dìfang?  
请问，楼梯在什么地方？  
May I ask, where is the elevator?

Cue hòubian  
后边  
in the back

Zài nàlǐ, zài hòubian.  
在那里，在后边。  
It's there, in the back.



- 4 Qǐngwèn, cāntīng zài shénme dìfang?  
请问，餐厅在什么地方？  
May I ask, where is the restaurant?

Cue zuǒbian  
左边  
on the left

Zài nàlǐ, zài zuǒbian.  
在那里，在左边。  
It's there, on the left.

- 5 Qǐngwèn, mài huāpíngde zài shénme dìfang?  
请问，卖花瓶的在什么地方？  
May I ask, where is the store which sells vases?

Cue diàntī pángbiān  
电梯旁边  
next to the elevator

Zài nàlǐ, zài diàntī pángbiān.  
在那里，在电梯旁边。  
It's there, next to the elevator#

- 6 Qǐngwèn, mài féizàode zài shénme dìfang?  
请问，卖肥皂的在什么地方？  
May I ask, where is the store which sells soap?

Cue lóutī pángbiān  
楼梯旁边  
by the stairs.

Zài nàlǐ, zài lóutī pángbiān.  
在那里，在楼梯旁边。  
It's there, by the stairs.

- 7 Qǐngwèn, mài pánziwǎnde zài shénme dìfang?  
请问，卖盘子晚的在什么地方？  
May I ask, where is the store which sells dishes?

Cue

lóutī zuǒbian

楼梯左边

on the left of the stairs

Zài nàlǐ, zài lóutī zuǒbian.

在那里，在楼梯左边。

It's there, on the left of the stairs.

## Unit 5

### References

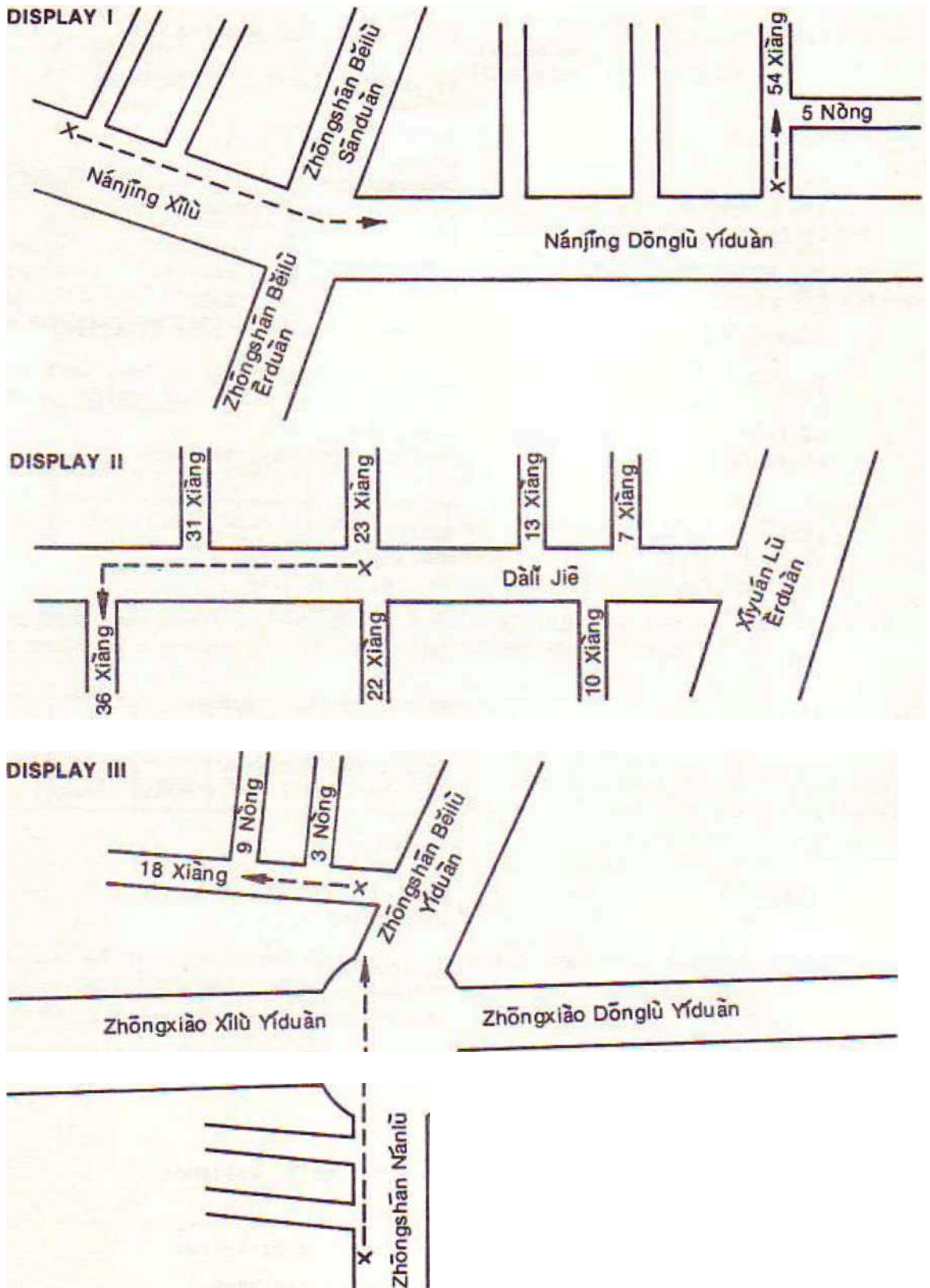
#### Reference List

1. A: Duibuqǐ.  
对不起。  
Excuse me.  
B: Nǐ yǒu shénme shì a?  
你有什么事啊？  
What can I do for you?
2. A: Qǐngwèn, zhè tiáolù shì shénme lù?  
请问，这条路是什么路？  
May I ask, what road is this?  
B: Zhè shì Nánjīng Xīlù,  
这是南京西路。  
This is Nánjīng West Road.
3. B: Nǐ zhǎo shénme dìfang?  
你找什么地方？  
What place are you looking for?  
A: Wǒ zhǎo Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn, wūshìsì xiàng.  
我找南京东路一段，五十四巷。  
I am looking for Lane 54 of Nánjīng East Road, Section 1.
4. C: Wǒ zhǎo Zhongshān Běilù.  
我找中山北路。  
I am looking for Zhōngshān North Road.
5. B: Nǐ zǒucùo le. Zhè shì Nánjīng Xīlù.  
你走错了。这是南京西路。  
You went the wrong way. This is Nánjīng West Road.  
B: Nǐ wǎng nàbian zǒu.  
你往那边走。  
You go that way.  
B: Guò sāntiáo jiē, jiù shì Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn.  
过三条街，就是南京东路一段。  
Cross three streets, and that's Nánjīng East Road, Section 1.
6. A: Òu, wǒ zǒucùo le.

- 哦，我往走错了。  
Oh, I went the wrong way.
- A: Nǐ shuō wǒ wàng nàbian zǒu.  
你说我往那边走。  
You say I should go that way.
- A: Guò sāntiáo jiē, jiù shì Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn, shì bu shì?  
过三条街,就是南京东路一段, 是不是?  
Cross three streets, and that's Nánjīng East Road, Section 1. Is that it?
- B: Shì.  
是。  
Yes.
7. B: Dào le Yíduàn yǐhòu, qǐng zài wèn biéren ba.  
到了一段以后,请在问别人吧。  
After you have gotten to Section 1, please ask someone else.
- A: Hào. Xièxie.  
好。谢谢。  
All right. Thanks.
8. A: Qǐngwèn, Wǔnòng zài nǎlǐ?  
请问,武隆在哪里?  
May I ask, where is Alley 5?
- D: Nǐ zài wǎng qián zǒu yídiǎn.  
你在往前走一点。  
You walk (straight) ahead a little farther.
- D: Yòubian dìyīge lùkǒu jiù shì Wǔnòng.  
右边第一个路口就是五弄。  
The first intersection on the right is Alley 5.
9. A: Wǒ zài wǎng qián zǒu yídiǎn. Wǔnòng zài yòubian, shì bu shì?  
我在往前走一点。五弄在右边, 是不是?  
I go ahead a little bit farther; Alley 5 is on the right side. Is that it?
- D: Shì. Yòubian dìyīge lùkǒu jiù shì.  
是。右边第一个路口就是。  
Yes, It's the first intersection on the right.
10. hú tong (hú tòng r)  
胡同 (胡同儿)  
a narrow street, a lone (Beijing)
11. mén (mén r)  
门 (门儿)  
gate, door
12. mén kǒu (mén kǒu r)

	门口 (儿)	
	doorway, gateway, entrance	
13.	qiáo	
	桥	
	bridge	
14.	tiānqiáo	
	天桥	
	pedestrian overpass	
15.	dìxià xíng rén dào	
	地下行人道	
	pedestrian underground walkway	

Maps



NOTE: The lanes and alleys on these map are fictional, but the streets are real. See Reference Notes for a description of the Taipei street-numbering system.

## Vocabulary

biéren	别人	another person, another else
cuò	错	to make a mistake, to be wrong
dàmén(r)	大门	gate
-dào	到	route, path
dìxià	地下	underground
dìxià xíng rén dào	地下行人道	pedestrian underground walkway
-duàn	段	section, bloc
guò	过	to cross, to pass
hútong (hútòng)	胡同 (胡同儿)	a narrow street, a lane (Běijīng)
lòng	弄	alley
mén(r)	门 (门儿)	gate, door
ménkǒu(r)	门口 (儿)	doorway, gateway, entrance
nǎ-	哪个	which?
nǎge	哪个	which?
Nánjīng Dōnglù	南京东路	Nánjīng East Road
Nánjīng Xīlù	南京西路	Nánjīng West Road
nòng	弄	alley (Táiwān)
qiáo	桥	bridge
shì	事	matter, affair, business
tiānqiáo	天桥	pedestrian overpass
-tiáo	-条	counter for long, winding things
wèn	问	to ask
xiàng	巷	lane
xíng rén	行人	pedestrian
zhǎo	找	to look for
Zhōngshān Běilù	中山北路	Zhōngshān North Road
zǒucùò le	走错了	to have gone the wrong way
bān jiā	搬家	to move one's residence
dàgài	大概	probably
huí	回	the opposite direction
zǒuguò le	走过了	to have walked past

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1

1. A: Duibuqǐ.  
对不起。  
Excuse me.
- B: Nǐ yǒu shénme shì a?  
你有什么事啊？  
What can I do for you?

**Shì**: This noun has a very abstract meaning that does not translate easily into English. Some of its commoner translations are “matter,” “business,” “affair” and “thing.” You have learned that **dōngxī** can also mean “thing.” **Dōngxī** is used to refer to tangible things, while **shì** refers to abstract matters.

When used to answer someone who is asking for help, the question **Nǐ yǒu shénme shì a?** is an offer of help.

Nǐ	yǒu	shénme	shì a?
你	有	什么	事阿？
You	have	what	problem?

"What's your problem?" i.e., "What can I do for you?"

The same question (without the softening a.) might be rather rude if it is directed to a person who is wandering around an office building.

Nǐ	yǒu	shénme	shì?
你	有	什么	事？
You	have	what	business?

"What business do you have (here)?" i.e., "What are you doing here?"



Notes on №2

2. A: Qǐngwèn, zhè tiáolù shì shénme lù?  
 请问，这条路是什么路？  
 May I ask, what road is this?
- B: Zhè shì Nánjīng Xīlù,  
 这是南京西路。  
 This is Nánjīng West Road.

Zhè- is the way zhèi-, “this,” is pronounced outside of Běijīng, From this point on in these course materials, the forms zhè-, this, nà-, that, and nǎ-, which, will be used for all non-Běijīng speakers.

 Note

Actually, Běijīng speakers do use zhè-, nà- in certain contexts, especially when reading aloud. But in ordinary conversation they mostly use zhèi-, nèi- and nǎi-.

In a conversation, you should use these forms if another person uses them.

-tiáo is a counter for long, twisting things, such as roads, rivers, fish, and dragons.

In English you say “What road is this?” In Chinese you say “What road is this road?” Zhèitiáo lù shì shénme lù? You may not leave out the last word, lù.

Nánjīng Xīlù: In Guǎngzhǒu, Shànghǎi, Táipei, and many other cities, the street direction is given after the street name.

Nánjīng Xīlù
南京西路
Nánjīng West Road

In Beijing, the street direction is given before the street name.

Xī Chángān Jiē
西昌港街
West Chángān Street

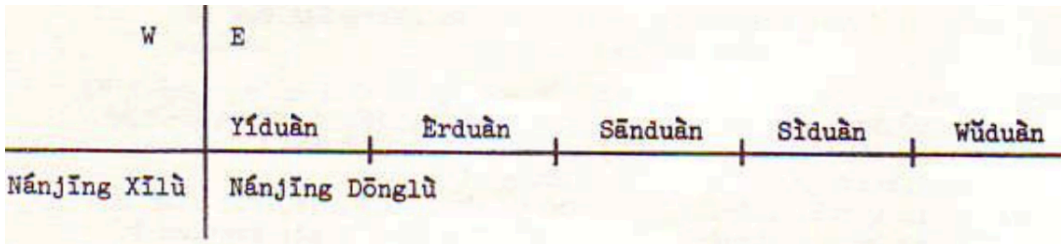
**Notes on №3**

3. B: Nǐ zhǎo shénme dìfang?  
你找什么地方?  
What place are you looking for?
- A: Wǒ zhǎo Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn, wūshì sì xiàng.  
我找南京东路一段，五十四巷。  
I am looking for Lane 54 of Nánjīng East Road, Section 1.

Zhǎo, “to look for,” “to try to find”

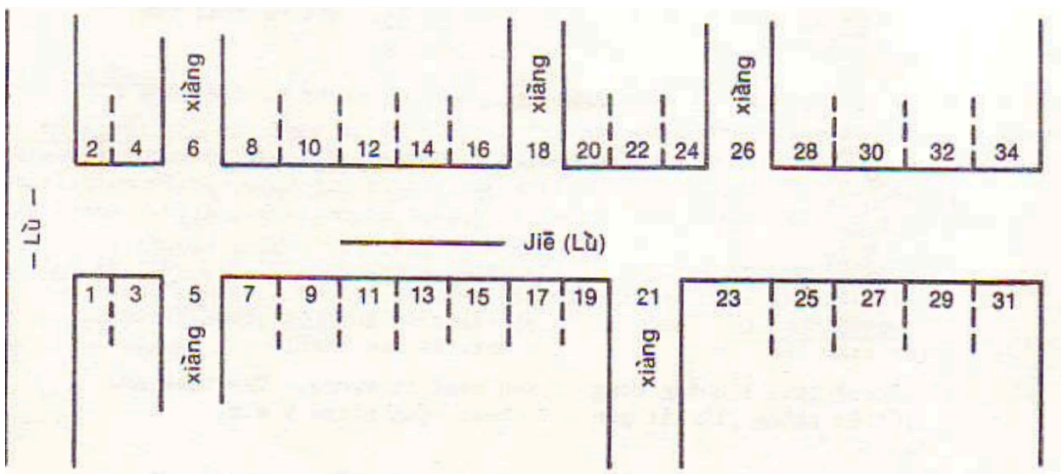
Nǐ zhǎo shéi?
你找谁?
Who are you looking for?
Tā shì bù shì zhǎo gōngzuò?
他是不是找工作?
Is he looking for work?

Yíduàn: Streets that are divided into North and South or East and West in Taipei may also be divided into sections.



The sections of a street, like the floors of a building, are numbered yī, èr, sān, and so on, and do not need the prefix di-.

Xiàng: Lanes in Taipei are numbered as if they were houses. You can find your way to a certain lane by observing the numbers of the houses on the same side of the street. Even numbers are on one side, and odd numbers are on the other.



Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn, Wūshisixiàng, East Road, Section 1, Lane In giving a Chinese address, you go from larger to smaller areas, mentioning the lane after the road. In English, however, the address begins with the smaller area: “Lane 54, Nánjīng East Road, Section 1.”

### Notes on №5

5. B: Nǐ zǒucuò le. Zhè shì Nánjīng Xīlù.  
你走错了。这是南京西路。  
You went the wrong way. This is Nánjīng West Road.
- B: Nǐ wǎng nàbian zǒu.  
你往那边走。  
You go that way.
- B: Guò sāntiáo jiē, jiù shì Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn.  
过三条街,就是南京东路一段。  
Cross three streets, and that's Nánjīng East Road, Section 1.

Zǒucuò le is a compound verb of result. Zǒucuò le is literally zǒu, “to walk,” and cuò, to be wrong/mistaken/erroneous: “to have walked with the result of being wrong.”

The marker le is used in I'm wrong, Wǒ cuò le. Notice that the marker is also used for the compound verb zǒucuò le.

The syllable -cuò may be used with result. For instance, there

Guò, “to cross,” “to pass” : This word can refer to time as well as to space.

Guòle zhèige lùkǒu, zài wǎng qián zǒu bù yuǎn, jiù dào nèige xuéxiào le.

过了这个路口,在往前走不远,就到那个学校了。

After you have crossed this intersection, then go a little farther ahead, and you'll be at the school.

Notes on №6

- 6 A: Òu, wǒ zǒucùò le.  
哦，我往走错了。  
Oh, I went the wrong way.
- A: Nǐ shuō wǒ wàng nàbian zǒu.  
你说我往那边走。  
You say I should go that way.
- A: Guò sāntiáo jiē, jiù shì Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn, shì bu shì?  
过三条街,就是南京东路一段, 是不是?  
Cross three streets, and that's Nánjīng East Road, Section 1. Is that it?
- B: Shì.  
是。  
Yes.

**Nǐ shuō**: In exchange 6, **shuō** means “to say that.” You have already learned another meaning; “to speak, (a language).” (The should in the translation of the second sentence captures the meaning of the Chinese directions, which are stronger than a statement but weaker than a command.)

**Guò sāntiáo jiē**, “cross three streets” ; In English you would probably say go three blocks, but in Chinese directions are usually given in terms of streets. The word **lùkǒu**, intersection, is also used: **guò jǐge lùkǒu**, “go a few blocks.”

**Notes on №7**

7. B: Dào le Yíduàn yǐhòu, qǐng zài wèn biéren ba.  
到了一段以后，请在问别人吧。  
After you have gotten to Section 1, please ask someone else.
- A: Hào. Xièxie.  
好。谢谢。  
All right. Thanks.

**Zài**, “and then”: In exchange 7, the adverb **zài** is used for the second action in a sequence. It is not easily translated into English.

Notes on №8-9

8. A: Qǐngwèn, Wǔnòng zài nǎlǐ?  
 请问，武隆在哪里？  
 May I ask, where is Alley 5?
- D: Nǐ zài wǎng qián zǒu yídiǎn.  
 你在往前走一点。  
 You walk (straight) ahead a little farther.
- D: Yòubian dìyíge lùkǒu jiù shì Wǔnòng.  
 右边第一个路口就是五弄。  
 The first intersection on the right is Alley 5.
9. A: Wǒ zài wǎng qián zǒu yídiǎn. Wǔnòng zài yòubian, shì bu shì?  
 我在往前走一点。五弄在右边，是不是？  
 I go ahead a little bit farther; Alley 5 is on the right side. Is that it?
- D: Shì. Yòubian dìyíge lùkǒu jiù shì.  
 是。右边第一个路口就是。  
 Yes, It's the first intersection on the right.

Nòng, “alley,” has an alternate pronunciation: lòng.

In order of increasing size, streets in Taipei are named nòng, “alley,” xiàng, “lane,” jiē, “street,” and lù, “road.” In Běijīng, a large street is called jiē, street, or dàjiē, “boulevard,” and a small street is called hùtong, “alley.” Unlike alleys in Taipei, alleys in Běijīng usually have names rather than numbers.

Nǐ zài wǎng qián zǒu yídiǎn : Here, zài has a new meaning: m“ore/again/ farther/in addition.” The combination of the adverb zài before the verb and yídiǎn after the verb means “a little more,” “a little farther.” Here are some other examples:

Nǐ zài chī yídiǎnr ba!
你在吃一点儿吧！
Have some more!
Nǐ zài zuò yíhuǐr ba!
你在坐一会儿吧！
Sit awhile longer, why don't you? (Invitation to a guest to stay longer)
Zài gěi wǒ yíge ba!
在给我一个吧！
Give me another more (one more).
Zài gěi wǒ liǎnge ba!
在给我两个吧！
give me two more.

Qián by itself may be used only in certain special phrases. One of these is wǎng qián... (followed by a verb like zǒu). The term qiánbian (qiánbianr ) means “directly in front of.” To say “in front of the door” or “up front,” you must use a place word (qiánbian, qiántou, qiánmian).

There are several single-syllable direction words like **qián** which you may use after **wàng**. In most other contexts, though, a longer form, a place word, must be used.

wàng	qián	zǒu BUT zài	qiánbian (qiántou, qiánmian)
	hòu		hòubian (hòutou, hòumian)
	shàng		shàngbian (shàngtou, shàngmian)
	xià		xiàbian (xiàtou, xiàmian)
	zuǒ		zuǒbian (zuǒtou, zuǒmian)
	yòu		yòubian (yòutou, yòumian)
	lǐ		lǐbian (lǐtou, lǐmian)
	wài		wàibian (wàitou, wàimian)
	dōng		dōngbian (dōngtou, dōngmian)
	nán		nánbian (nántou, nánmian)
	xī		xībian (xītou, xīmian)
	běi		běibian (běitou, běimian)



## Notes on Additional Vocabulary

10.	<b>hútong (hútòng)</b> 胡同 (胡同儿) a narrow street, a lone (Beijing)
11.	<b>mén (ménr)</b> 门 (门儿) gate, door
12.	<b>ménkǒu (ménkǒur)</b> 门口 (儿) doorway, gateway, entrance
13.	<b>qiáo</b> 桥 bridge
14.	<b>tiānqiáo</b> 天桥 pedestrian overpass
15.	<b>dìxià xíng rén dào</b> 地下行人道 pedestrian underground walkway

**Mén:** In addition to meaning “door,” this word also means “gate.” The word **dà mén** may also be used to refer to a main gate, as well as a main door.

**Tiānqiáo** literally means “sky bridge.”

**Guò le zhè ge tiānqiáo, jiù shì Dì yī Gōng sī.**

过了这个天桥，就是第一公司。

When you have crossed this pedestrian overpass, that's the First Company.

**Dìxià xíng rén dào** literally means “underground pedestrian route.”

**Chū le zhè ge dìxià xíng rén dào, wàng yòu zǒu, jiù shì mǎi bào de.**

出了这个地下行人道，往右走，就是买报的。

When you have come out of this pedestrian underground walkway, go to the right, and that's where they sell newspapers.



## Drills

### Transformation Drill

Transform the question according to the model and the cue.

1 Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì shénme lù?

请问，这条路是什么路？

May I ask, what road is this?

Cue

Nánjīng Dōnglù

南京东路

Nánjīng East Road

Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì Nánjīng Dōnglù ma?

请问，这条路是南京东路吗？

May I ask, is this Nánjīng East Road?

2 Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì shénme lù?

请问，这条路是什么路？

May I ask, what road is this?

Cue

Zhōngshān Běilù

中山北路

Zhōngshān North Road

Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì Zhōngshān Běilù ma?

请问，这条路是中山北路吗？

May I ask, is this Zhōngshān North Road?

3 Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì shénme lù?

请问，这条路是什么路？

May I ask, what road is this?

Cue

Xīnshēng Nánlù

中山南路

Zhōngshān South Road

Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì Xīnshēng Nánlù ma?

请问，这条路是中山南路吗？

May I ask, is this Zhōngshān South Road?

4 Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì shénme lù?

请问，这条路是什么路？

May I ask, what road is this?

Cue

Nánjīng Xīlù

南京西路

West Nánjīng Road

Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì Nánjīng Xīlù ma?

请问，这条路是南京西路吗？

May I ask, is this West Nánjīng Road?

5 Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì shénme lù?

请问，这条路是什么路？

May I ask, what road is this?

Cue

Xīnshēng Běilù

新生北路

Xīnshēng North Road

Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì Xīnshēng Běilù ma?

请问，这条路是新生北路吗？

May I ask, is this Xīnshēng North Road?

6 Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì shénme lù?

请问，这条路是什么路？

May I ask, what road is this?

Cue

Zhōnghuá Lù

中华路

Zhōnghuá Road

Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì Zhōnghuá Lù ma?

请问，这条路是中华路吗？

May I ask, is this Zhōnghuá road?

7 Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì shénme lù?

请问，这条路是什么路？

May I ask, what road is this?

Cue

Shànghǎi Lù

上海路

Shanghai Road

Qǐngwèn, zhètiáo lù shì Shànghǎi Lù ma?

请问，这条路是上海路吗？

May I ask, is this Shanghai Road?

## Transformation Drill

Create a question from the statement according to the model.

1 Zhè shì Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn.

这是南京东路一断。

This is Nánjīng East Road, Section 1.

Duibuqǐ, zhè shì Nánjīng Dōnglù jǐduàn?

对不起，这是南京东路几断？

Excuse me, what section of Nánjīng East Road is this?

2 Zhè shì Zhōngshān Běilù Èrduàn.

这是中山北路二断。

This is Zhōngshān North Road, Section 2.

Duibuqǐ, zhè shì Zhōngshān Běilù jǐduàn?

对不起，这是中山北路几断？

Excuse me, what section of Zhōngshān North Road is this?

3 Zhè shì Xīnshēng Nánlù Yíduàn.

这是新生南路一断。

This is Xīnshēng South Road, Section 1.

Duibuqǐ, zhè shì Xīnshēng Nánlù jǐduàn?

对不起，这是新生南路几断？

Excuse me, what section of Xīnshēng South Road is this?

4 Zhè shì Rénài Lù Sānduàn.

这是仁爱路三断。

This is Rénài Road, Section 3.

Duibuqǐ, zhè shì Rénài Lù jǐduàn?

对不起，这是仁爱路几断？

Excuse me, what section of Rénài Road is this?

5 Zhè shì Hángzhōu Nánlù Yíduàn.

这是杭州南路一断。

This is Hangzhou South Road, Section 1.

Duibuqǐ, zhè shì Hángzhōu Nánlù jǐduàn?

对不起，这是杭州南路几断？

Excuse me, what section of Hangzhou South Road is this?

6 Zhè shì Héping Xīlù Èrduàn.

这是和平西路二断。

This is West Héping Road, Section 2.

Duibuqǐ, zhè shì Héping Xīlù jǐduàn?

对不起，这是和平西路几断？

Excuse me, what section of West Héping Road is this?

7 Zhè shì Nánjīng Xīlù Yīduàn.

这是南京西路一断。

This is West Nánjīng Road, Section 1.

Duibuqǐ, zhè shì Nánjīng Xīlù jǐduàn?

对不起，这是南京西路几断？

Excuse me, what section of West Nánjīng Road is this?

## Response Drill

Answer to all questions according to the model and cue.

1 Nǐ zhǎo Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn ma?

你找南京东路 断吗？

Are you looking for Nánjīng East Road, Section 1?

Cue

1
—
1

Shì, wǒ zhǎo Nánjīng Dōnglù Yíduàn Wǔxiàng.

是，我找

Yes, I'm looking for Lane 5 of Nánjīng East Road, Section 1.

2 Nǐ zhǎo Zhōngshān Běilù Èrduàn ma?

你找中山北路 断吗？

Are you looking for Zhōngshān North Road, Section 2?

Cue

18
十八
18

Shì, wǒ zhǎo Zhōngshān Běilù Èrduàn Shíbáxiàng.

是，我找

Yes, I'm looking for Lane 18 of Zhōngshān North Road, Section 2.

3 Nǐ zhǎo Héping Xīlù Yíduàn ma?

你找和平西路 断吗？

Are you looking for West Héping Road, Section 1?

Cue

6
六
6

Shì, wǒ zhǎo Héping Xīlù Yíduàn Liùxiàng.

是，我找

Yes, I'm looking for Lane 6 of West Héping Road, Section 1.



- 4 Nǐ zhǎo Xīnshēng Nánlù Sānduàn ma?  
你找新生南路 断吗？  
Are you looking for Xīnshēng South Road, Section 3?

Cue 4  
四  
4

Shì, wǒ zhǎo Xīnshēng Nánlù Sānduàn Sìxiàng.  
是，我找  
Yes, I'm looking for Lane 4 of Xīnshēng South Road, Section 3.

- 5 Nǐ zhǎo Zhōngshān Nánlù Èrduàn ma?  
你找中山南路 断吗？  
Are you looking for Zhōngshān South Road, Section 2?

Cue 14  
十四  
14

Shì, wǒ zhǎo Zhōngshān Nánlù Èrduàn Shísixiàng.  
是，我找  
Yes, I'm looking for Lane 14 of Zhōngshān South Road, Section 2.

- 6 Nǐ zhǎo Rénài Lù Sānduàn ma?  
你找仁爱路 断吗？  
Are you looking for Rénài Road, Section 3?

Cue 9  
九  
9

Shì, wǒ zhǎo Rénài Lù Sānduàn Jiǔxiàng.  
是，我找  
Yes, I'm looking for Lane 9 of Rénài Road, Section 3.

- 7 Nǐ zhǎo Zìyóu Lù Yíduàn ma?  
你找自由路 断吗？  
Are you looking for Freedom Road, Section 1?

Cue

11

十一

11

Shì, wǒ zhǎo Zìyóu Lù Yídùan Shíyīxiàng.

是，我找

Yes, I'm looking for Lane 11 of Freedom Road, Section 1.

## Transformation Drill

Transform the statement according to the model and the cue.

1 Nǐ wàng nàbian zǒu.

你往那边走。

Go that way.

Cue

sān

三

3

Hǎo, wǒ wàng nàbian zǒu, guò sāntiáo jiē jiù shì, duì bu duì?

号，我往那边走，过三条街就是，对不对？

Okay, I go that way, and after crossing three streets that's it. Is that correct?

2 Nǐ wàng yòu zǒu.

你往右走。

Go to the right.

Cue

liǎng

两

2

Hǎo, wǒ wàng yòu zǒu, guò liǎngtiáo jiē jiù shì, duì bu duì?

号，我往右走，过两条街就是，对不对？

Okay, I go to the right, and after crossing 2 streets that's it. Is that correct?

3 Nǐ wàng dōng zǒu.

你往东走。

Go to the East.

Cue

sì

四

4

Hǎo, wǒ wàng dōng zǒu, guò sìtiáo jiē jiù shì, duì bu duì?

号，我往东走，过四条街就是，对不对？

Okay, I go to the East, and after crossing 4 streets that's it. Is that correct?

4 Nǐ wàng Xī zǒu.

你往西走。

Go to the West.

Cue yī

—

1

Hǎo, wǒ wàng Xī zǒu, guò yítiáo jiē jiù shì, duì bu duì?

号，我往西走，过一条街就是，对不对？

Okay, I go to the West, and after crossing 1 streets that's it. Is that correct?

5 Nǐ wàng nán zǒu.

你往南走。

Go to the South.

Cue wǔ

五

5

Hǎo, wǒ wàng nán zǒu, guò wǔtiáo jiē jiù shì, duì bu duì?

号，我往南走，过五条街就是，对不对？

#Okay, I go to the South, and after crossing 5 streets that's it. Is that correct?

6 Nǐ wàng běi zǒu.

你往北走。

Go to the North.

Cue liǎng

两

2

Hǎo, wǒ wàng běi zǒu, guò liǎngtiáo jiē jiù shì, duì bu duì?

号，我往北走，过两条街就是，对不对？

Okay, I go to the North, and after crossing 2 streets that's it. Is that correct?

7 Nǐ wàng zuǒ zǒu.

你往左走。

Go to the left.

Cue

sì

四

4

Hǎo, wǒ wàng zuǒ zǒu, guò sìtiáo jiē jiù shì, duì bu duì?

号，我往左走，过四条街就是，对不对？

Okay, I go to the left, and after crossing 4 streets that's it. Is that correct?

## Transformation Drill

Transform the statement according to the model.

1 Wǎng qián zǒu yídiǎn. Wǔnòng zài yòubian.

往前走一点。五弄在右边。

Go ahead a bit, and Alley 5 is on the right.

Wǒ zài wǎng qián zǒu yídiǎn. Wǔnòng zài yòubian, shì bu shì?

我在往前走一点。五弄在右边，是不是？

I go a bit farther ahead, and Alley 5 is on the right. Is that it?

2 Wǎng nàbian zǒu yídiǎn. Liùnòng zài zuǒbian.

往那边走一点。六弄在左边。

Go a little bit that way, and Alley 6 is on the left.

Wǒ zài wǎng nàbian zǒu yídiǎn. Liùnòng zài zuǒbian, shì bu shì?

我在往那边走一点。六弄在左边，是不是？

I go a bit that way and Alley 6 is on the left. Is that it?

3 Wǎng dōng zǒu yídiǎn. Sānnòng zài yòubian.

往东走一点。三弄在右边。

Go a bit to the east, and Alley 3 is on the right.

Wǒ zài wǎng dōng zǒu yídiǎn. Sānnòng zài yòubian, shì bu shì?

我在往东走一点。三弄在右边，是不是？

I go a bit to the east, and Alley 3 is on the right. Is that it?

4 Wǎng qián zǒu yídiǎn. Shínnòng zài yòubian.

往前走一点。十弄在右边。

Go a bit forward, and Alley 10 is on the right.

Wǒ zài wǎng qián zǒu yídiǎn. Shínnòng zài yòubian, shì bu shì?

我在往前走一点。十弄在右边，是不是？

I go a bit forward, and Alley 10 is on the right. Is that it?

5 Wǎng xī zǒu yídiǎn. Shíèrnòng zài zuǒbian.

往西走一点。十二弄在左边。

Go a bit to the West, and Alley 12 is on the left.

Wǒ zài wàng xī zǒu yídiǎn. Shíèrnòng zài zuǒbian, shì bu shì?

我在往西走一点。十二弄在左边，是不是？

I go a bit to the West, and Alley 12 is on the left. Is that it?

6 Wàng nán zǒu yídiǎn. Shíqīnòng zài zuǒbian.

往南走一点。十七弄在左边。

Go a bit to the South, and Alley 17 is on the right.

Wǒ zài wàng nán zǒu yídiǎn. Shíqīnòng zài zuǒbian, shì bu shì?

我在往南走一点。十七弄在左边，是不是？

I go a bit to the South, and Alley 17 is on the left. Is that it?

7 Wàng běi zǒu yídiǎn. Bānòng zài zuǒbian.

往北走一点。八弄在左边。

Go a bit to the North, and Alley 8 is on the left.

Wǒ zài wàng běi zǒu yídiǎn. Bānòng zài zuǒbian, shì bu shì?

我在往北走一点。八弄在左边，是不是？

I go a bit to the North, and Alley 8 is on the left. Is that it?

## Transformation Drill

Transform the statement according to the model and the cue.

1 Wǒ zài wǎng qián zǒu yídiǎn. Wǔnòng zài yòubian, duì bu duì?

我在往前走一点。五弄在右边，对不对？

I go a bit farther ahead, and Alley 5 is on the right. Is that correct?

Cue

dìyíge

第一个

first

Wǒ zài wǎng qián zǒu yídiǎn. Yòubian dìyíge lùkǒu jiù shì Wǔnòng, duì bu duì?

我在往前走一点。右边第一个路口就是五弄，对不对？

I go a bit farther ahead, and the first intersection on the right is Alley 5. Is that correct?

2 Wǒ zài wǎng zuǒ zǒu yídiǎn. Sānnòng zài zuǒbian, duì bu duì?

我在往左走一点。三弄在左边，对不对？

I go a bit to the left, and Alley 3 is on the left. Is that correct?

Cue

dìsìge

第四个

fourth

Wǒ zài wǎng zuǒ zǒu yídiǎn. Zuǒbian dìsìge lùkǒu jiù shì Sānnòng, duì bu duì?

我在往左走一点。左边第四个路口就是三弄，对不对？

I go a bit to the left, and the fourth intersection on the left is Alley 3. Is that correct?

3 Wǒ zài wǎng qián zǒu yídiǎn. Liùnòng zài yòubian, duì bu duì?

我在往前走一点。六弄在右边，对不对？

I go a bit farther ahead, and Alley 6 is on the right. Is that correct?

Cue

dìèrge

第二个

second

Wǒ zài wǎng qián zǒu yídiǎn. Yòubian dìèrge lùkǒu jiù shì Liùnòng, duì bu duì?

我在往前走一点。右边第二个路口就是六弄，对不对？

I go a bit farther ahead, and the second intersection on the right is Alley 6. Is that correct?



5 Wǒ zài wàng xī zǒu yídiǎn. Wǔnòng zài yòubian, duì bu duì?

我在往西走一点。五弄在右边，对不对？

I go a bit to the West, and Alley 5 is on the left. Is that correct?

Cue

dìyíge

第一个

first

Wǒ zài wàng xī zǒu yídiǎn. Yòubian dìyíge lùkǒu jiù shì Wǔnòng, duì bu duì?

我在往西走一点。右边第一个路口就是五弄，对不对？

I go a bit to the West, and the first intersection on the right is Alley 5. Is that correct?

6 Wǒ zài wàng dōng zǒu yídiǎn. Qīnòng zài zuǒbian, duì bu duì?

我在往东走一点。七弄在左边，对不对？

I go a bit to the East, and Alley 7 is on the left. Is that correct?

Cue

dìsìge

第四个

fourth

Wǒ zài wàng dōng zǒu yídiǎn. Zuǒbian dìsìge lùkǒu jiù shì Qīnòng, duì bu duì?

我在往东走一点。左边第四个路口就是七弄，对不对？

I go a bit to the East, and the fourth intersection on the right is Alley 7. Is that correct?

7 Wǒ zài wàng qián zǒu yídiǎn. Liùnòng zài yòubian, duì bu duì?

我在往前走一点。六弄在右边，对不对？

I go a bit farther ahead, and Alley 6 is on the right. Is that correct?

Cue

dìwǔge

第五个

fifth

Wǒ zài wàng qián zǒu yídiǎn. Yòubian dìwǔge lùkǒu jiù shì Liùnòng, duì bu duì?

我在往前走一点。右边第五个路口就是六弄，对不对？

I go a bit farther ahead, and the fifth intersection on the left is Alley 6. Is that correct?

## Transformation Drill

Transform the statement according to the model and the cue.

- 1 Tā cóngqián zhù zài nèige hùtong.  
他从前住在那个胡同。  
He used to live on that alley.

Cue nián  
年  
year

Tā cóngqián zài nèige hùtong zhùle jǐnián?  
他从前在那个胡同住了几年？  
How many years did he live on that alley?

- 2 Wǒ fùqin cóngqián zhù zài Guānghuá Lù.  
我父亲从前住在光华路。  
My father used to live at Guānghuá Road.

Cue nián  
年  
year

Nǐ fùqin cóngqián zài Guānghuá Lù zhùle jǐnián?  
你父亲在光华路住了几年？  
How many years did your father live at Guānghuá Road?

- 3 Tā gēge shàngge yuè zhù zài nèige fàndiàn.  
他/她哥哥上个月住在那个饭店。  
His older brother stayed at that hotel last month.

Cue tiān  
天  
day

Tā gēge shàngge yuè zài nèige fàndiàn zhùle jǐtiān?  
他/她哥哥上个月在那个饭店住了几天？  
How many days did his older brother stay at that hotel last month?

- 4 Tā jiějie qùnián zhù zài péngyou jiā.  
她/她姐姐去年住在朋友家。  
Her/his sister stayed at a friend's house last year.

Cue yuè  
月  
month

Tā jiějie qùnián zài péngyou jiā zhùle jǐge yuè?  
她/她姐姐去年在朋友家住了几个月？  
How many months did her/his sister stay at a friend's house last year?

- 5 Wáng Tóngzhì cóngqián zhù zài zhèige hùtong.  
王同志从前住在这个胡同。  
Comrade Wáng used to live on this alley.

Cue nián  
年  
year

Wáng Tóngzhì cóngqián zài zhèige hùtong zhùle jǐnián?  
王同志从前在这个胡同住了几年？  
How many years did Comrade Wáng live in that alley?

- 6 Zhāng Tóngzhì qùnián zhù zài nèige hùtong.  
张同志去年住在那个胡同。  
Comrade Zhāng lived on that alley last year.

Cue yuè  
月  
month

Zhāng Tóngzhì qùnián zài nèige hùtong zhùle jǐge yuè?  
张同志去年在那个胡同住了几个月？  
How many months did Comrade Zhāng live on that alley?

- 7 Tāmen cóngqián zhù zài Sānlitún.  
他们从前住在三里屯。  
They used to live in Sanlitun.

Cue

nián

年

year

Tāmen cóngqián zài Sānlitún zhù le jǐ nián?

他们从前在三里屯住了几年？

How many years did they live in Sanlitun.

## Response Drill

Answer to all the questions according to the model and the cue.

1 Nǐ zhǎo shénme dìfang?

你找什么地方？

What place are you looking for?

Cue

Nánjīng Lù

南京路

Nánjīng Road

Wǒ zhǎo Nánjīng Lù.

我找南京路。

I'm looking for Nánjīng Road.

2 Nǐ zhǎo shénme lù?

你找什么路？

What road are you looking for?

Cue

Zhōngshān Lù

中山路

Zhōngshān Road

Wǒ zhǎo Zhōngshān Lù.

我找中山路。

I'm looking for Zhōngshān Road.

3 Nǐ zhǎo shénme?

你找什么？

What are you looking for?

Cue

nèiběn shū

那本书

this book

Wǒ zhǎo nèiběn shū.

我找那本书。

I'm looking for this book.

4 Nǐ zhǎo shéi?  
你找谁?  
Whom are you looking for?

Cue Wáng Xiānsheng  
王先生  
comrade Wáng

Wǒ zhǎo Wáng Xiānsheng.  
我找王先生。  
I'm looking for comrade Wáng.

5 Nǐ zhǎo shénme dìfang?  
你找什么地方?  
What place are you looking for?

Cue Wǔguānchù  
武官处  
defense attache's office.

Wǒ zhǎo Wǔguānchù.  
我找武官处。  
I'm looking for the defense attache's office.

6 Nǐ zhǎo shéi?  
你找谁?  
Whom are you looking for?

Cue Hú Měilíng  
胡美玲  
Hú Měilíng

Wǒ zhǎo Hú Měilíng.  
我找胡美玲。  
I'm looking for Hú Měilíng.

7 Nǐ zhǎo shénme?  
你找什么?  
What are you looking for?

Cue

yìzhāng Táiběi dìtú

一张台北地图

Taipei map

Wǒ zhǎo yìzhāng Táiběi dìtú.

我找一张台北地图。

I'm looking for a mp of Taipei.





---

# Chapter 5. Module 5: Transportation

Student Textbook

## Objectives

Upon successful completion of this module, the student should be able to

1. Give the English equivalent for any Chinese sentence in the TRN Target Lists.
2. Say any Chinese sentence in the TRN Target Lists when cued with its English equivalent.
3. Use the bus system: find out which buses go to a specific destination, at what times they leave, how often they run, where to buy tickets, where to change buses (if necessary), when the last bus of the day leaves, and where his stop is.
4. Take a taxi: hail one, tell the driver where to go, and use commands such as “hurry,” “slow down,” and “stop here.”
5. Use the train system: find out which trains go to a specific destination, at what times they leave, when and where to buy tickets, whether or not tickets are available for a train leaving on a specific date at a specific time, the distance to the destination, the duration of the train trip to that place, which platform the train leaves from, what to do with luggage, and whether or not the train has a dining car.
6. Take a plane: reserve a ticket for a certain date and time; find out whether or not the flight is direct, the duration of the flight, and traveling time to the airport; and arrange for transportation to the airport.
7. Describe in detail a trip (taken in the past or planned for the future): places visited (which places and what they are like), traveling companions, transportation for the trip, length of stay, number of previous trips to the same places.

## Unit 1 Target List

1. **Dào Xīméndīng qù, zuò jǐlù chē?**  
**到西門町去，坐幾路車？**  
What bus do you take to get to **Xīméndīng**?

**Zuò Shíbālù.**

**坐十八路。**

Take Number 18.

2. **Shíbālù chē duō bu duo?**  
**十八路車多不多？**  
Are there many Number 18 buses?

**Bù hěn duō.**

**不很多。**

Not very many.

3. **Měi gé jǐfēn zhōng yǒu yìbān chē?**  
**每隔幾分鐘有一班車？**  
How often is there a bus?

4. **Wǒ měige Xīngqīliù dōu qù kàn diànyǐng.**  
**我每個星期六都去看電影。**  
I go to see a movie every Saturday.

5. **Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?**  
**最後一班車是幾點鐘？**  
What time is the last bus?

6. **Zhèbān chē shì bu shì qù Xīméndīng?**  
**這班車是不是去西門町？**  
Does this bus go to **Xīméndīng**?

**Shì. Shàng chē ba!**

**是。上車吧！**

Yes. Get on!

7. **Dào Xīméndīngde shíhou, qǐng gàosong wǒ.**

到西門町的時候，請告訴我。

When we get to *Xīméndīng*, please tell me.

8. *Wǒ shì bu shì zài zhèlǐ xià chē?*

我是不是在這裏下車？

Is it here that I get off?

*Bú shì. Xià yízhàn.*

不是。下一站。

No The next stop.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

9. *shàng-*

上

last, previous (something)

10. *tóu-*

頭

first (something)

11. *gàosu*

告訴

to tell, to inform (alternate pronunciation for *gàosong*)

12. *shǎo*

少

to be few

13. *xià chē*

下車

to get off the bus; “Out, please!”

14. *yǒu(de) shíhou*

有(的)時候

sometimes

15. *chéng*

城

city

## Unit 2 Target List

1. Dào zhǎnlǎnguǎn yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到展覽館有沒有直達車？

Is there a direct bus to the exhibition hall?

Měiyǒu. Zuò Yīlù chē, zuò dào Xīdān huàn chē.

沒有。坐一路車，坐到西單換車。

№ Take the Number 1 bus; take it to Xīdān and change buses.

2. Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào?

咱們在哪兒買票？

Where do we buy tickets?

Zài chēshàng mǎi piào.

在車上買票。

We buy tickets on the bus.

3. Hǎo, xiànzài zǒu ba!

好，現在走吧。

Okay, let's go now!

4. Èi! Zánmen bú shì zuòguò zhàn le ba?

誒！咱們不是坐過站了吧？

Hey! Haven't we gone past our stop?

Hái méi ne. Xià yízhàn cái xià chē.

還沒呢。下一站才下車。

Not yet. We don't get off until the next stop.

5. Láojià, Shíwǔlù qìchēzhàn zài nǎr?

勞駕，十五路汽車站在哪兒？

Excuse me, where is the Number 15 bus stop?

Jiù zài nèige lùkǒushàng.

就在那個路口兒上。

It's (just) on that corner.

6. gōnggòng qìchē

公共汽車

public bus (local)

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

7. -li

裏

in (locational ending)

8. -shang

上

on

9. shàng bān

上班

to start work, to go to work

10. xià bān

下班

to get off from work, to leave work

## Unit 3 Target List

1. Wǒ yào zuò jìchéngchē dào huǒchēzhàn qù.

我要計程車到火車站去。

I want to take a taxi to the train station.

2. Wǒ zhǐ yǒu zhè liǎngjiàn xíngli.

我只有這兩件行李。

I have only these two suitcases.

Hǎo, wǒ ba xíngli fàng zai qiánbian.

好，我把行李放在前邊。

Okay, I'll put the suitcases in front.

3. Nǐ kāide tài kuài le!

你開得太快了！

You are driving too fast!

4. Tā kāi chē, kāide bú kuài.

他開車，開得不快。

He doesn't drive fast.

5. Wǒmen yǒu shíjiān, lái de jí.

我們有時間，來得及。

We have time. We can make it in time.

6. Qǐng màn yídiǎn kāi.

請慢一點開。

Please drive a little slower.

7. Bié kāi nàme kuài!

別開那麼快！

Don't drive so fast!

8. Qǐng ni zài qiánbian nèige yínháng tīng yíxià.

請你在前邊那個銀行聽一下。

Please stop at that bank up ahead for a moment.

9. Bú yòng zhǎo le.

不用找了。

Keep the change.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

10. chūzū qìchē

出租汽車

taxi (PRC)

11. lái bù jí

來不及

can't make it in time

12. qìchē

汽車

car, motor vehicle

13. zhè me

這麼

so, to this extent, in this way

14. zèn me

怎麼

so, to this extent, in this way



## Unit 4 Target List

1. Wǒ xiǎng qù Tánán wán jǐtiān.

我想去臺南玩幾天。

I'm thinking of going to Tainan to relax for a few days.

2. Nǐ shuō shì zuò huǒchē qu hǎo ne, háishi zuò Gōnglùjú qu hǎo e?

你說是坐火車去好呢，還是坐公路局去好呢？

Would you say it's better to go by train or to go by bus?

Zuò huǒchē qu hǎo. Dào Tánán qù zuò Gōnglùjú bú dà fāngbian.

坐火車去好。到臺南去坐公路局不大方便。

It's better to go by train. To go to Tainan, it's not very convenient to take the bus.

3. Zuò huǒchē děi xiān mǎi piào ma?

坐火車得先買票嗎？

If I take the train, is it necessary to buy tickets ahead of time?

Nǐ zuìhǎo liǎngsāntiān yǐqián qù mǎi piào.

你最好兩三天以前去買票。

It would be best for you to go to buy your tickets two or three days ahead of time.

Zuò Gōnglùjú ne?

坐公路局呢？

And if I take the bus?

Bú bì xiān mǎi piào.

不必先買票。

It's not necessary to buy tickets ahead of time.

4. Nǐ yào zuò shénme shíhoude chē?

你要做什麼時候的車？

What train do you want to take?

Wǒ yào zuò shàngwǔde chē.

我要坐上午的車。

I want to take a morning train.

5. Duìbuqǐ, shàngwǔde piào dōu màiwán le.

對不起，上午的票都賣完了。

I'm sorry, the tickets for the morning trains are all sold out.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

6. chuán

船

boat, ship

7. dìtiě

地鐵

subway (abbreviation for dìxià tiědào)

8. dìxià huǒchē

地下火車

underground train, subway

9. wán (wǎnr)

玩(兒)

to play, to relax, to enjoy oneself

10. -wán

完

to be finished (occurs in compound verbs of result)

## Unit 5 Target List

1. Wǒ xiǎng dào Nánjīng qù kànkàn.

我想到南京去看看。

I would like to go to Nánjīng to look around.

Nǐ jìhua nǐtiān qù?

你計劃哪天去？

What day do you plan to go?

Míngtiān huòshì hòutiān qù dōu kěyǐ.

明天或是後天去都可以。

Tomorrow and (or) the day after are both possible.

2. Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu duō yuǎn?

上海離南京有多遠。

How far is Shanghai from Nánjīng?

Yǒu liǎngbǎiwǔshíduō gōnglǐ.

有兩百五十多公里。

It's over 250 kilometers.

3. Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu duōshao shíhou?

坐火車要走多少時候。

How long does it take to go by train?

Yào zǒu sìge bàn xiǎoshí.

要走四個半小時。

It takes four and a half hours.

4. Zhè shì wǒ dìyīcì dào Nánjīng qù. Yìqián méi qùguo.

這是我第一次到南京去。以前沒去過。

This will be the first time I have gone to Nánjīng. I haven't gone there before.

5. Bànge xiǎoshí gòu le.

半個小時夠了。

Half an hour is enough.

6. Wǒ xīwang xiàwǔ líkāi zhèr.

我希望下午離開這兒。

I hope to leave here in the afternoon.

Shísāndiǎn líng wǔfēn yǒu yí tàng tèkuài.

十三點零五分有一趟特快。

There's an express at 1305.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

7. **dāsuan**  
打算  
to plan to
  
8. **huòzhě (huòzhe)**  
或者  
or (alternate form of **huòshi**)
  
9. **yǐhòu**  
以後  
afterwards, later on, in the future
  
10. **zhōngtóu**  
鐘頭  
hour (alternate word for **xiǎoshi**)

## Unit 6 Target List

1. Huǒchē jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?

火車幾點鐘開？

What time does the train leave?

Shíbādiǎn wūshíwǔfēn fā chē.

十八點五十五分發車。

It departs at 1855.

2. Qǐng nǐ bǎ nǐde hùzhào hé lǚxíngzhèng gěi wo.

請你把你的護照和旅行證給我。

Please give me your passport and travel permit.

3. Dào Shànghǎi qùde chē zài dìjǐ zhàntái?

到上海取得車在第幾站臺？

On which platform is the train to Shànghǎi?

4. Bú yòng jí. Hái zǎo ne. Nǐ xiān zài zhèige jiēdàishì xiūxi xiūxi.

不用急。還早呢。你先在這個接待室休息休息。

No need to be anxious. It's still early. First, rest a bit in this waiting room.

5. Wǒ zhèijiàn xíngli zěnmé bàn? Shì bu shì kényi náshàng chē qu?

我這件行李怎麼辦？是不是可以拿上車去。

What should I do about this suitcase of mine? May I take it onto the train?

Kéyi bǎ xíngli náshàng chē qu.

可以把行李拿上車去。

You may take the suitcase onto the train.

6. Zhèibān chē yǒu cānchē ba?

這班車有餐車吧？

This train has a dining car, I suppose?

Yǒu. Yǒu Zhōngcān, yě yǒu Xīcān.

有。有中餐，也有西餐。

Yes. There's Chinese food and there's also Western food.

Hǎojíle.

好極了。

Great.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

7. bān

搬

to move

8. náshangqu

拿上去

to take up

9. náshanglai

拿上來

to bring up

10. áxiaqu

拿下去

to take down

11. náxialai

拿下來

to bring down

12. pǎo

跑

to run

13. wǎn

晚

to be late

14. yuètái

月臺

train platform (alternate word for [zhàntái](#), more common in Taiwan)

## Unit 7 Target List

1. Lǎo Sòng, zěnmeyàng? Máng ne?  
老宋，怎麼樣？忙呢？  
Song, how are things going? Are you busy?

Bù zěnmé máng.  
不怎麼忙。  
Not especially busy.
2. Qǐng ni gěi wo dìng yìzhāng fēijī piào.  
請你給我訂一張飛機票。  
Please reserve a plane ticket for me.
3. Piào dìnghǎo le.  
票訂好了。  
The ticket has been reserved.

Něibān fēijī? Jǐdiǎn zhōng qǐfēi?  
哪班飛機？幾點鐘起飛？  
Which flight? What time does it take off?
4. Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Guǎngzhōu ma?  
這班飛機直飛廣州嗎？  
Does this flight go directly to **Guǎngzhōu**?
5. Cóng Sānlitún dào fēijīchǎng yào duōshao shíjiān?  
從三里屯到飛機場要多少時間？  
How much time does it take to go from **Sānlitún** to the airport?
6. Rúguǒ wǒ bādiǎn zhōng líkāi jiā, láidejí ba?  
如果我八點鐘離開家，來得及吧？  
If I leave home at eight o'clock, I can make it in time. Right?
7. Qǐng ni pài ge chē lái jiē wo, sòng wo dào fēijīchǎng qu.  
請你派個車來接我，送我到飛機場去。  
Please send a car to pick me up and take me to the airport.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

8. **hǎo le**  
好了  
to be satisfactorily completed
9. **lǚguǎn**  
旅館  
hotel
10. **shuōhǎo le**  
說好了  
to have come to an agreement (about something); (something) has been agreed on
11. **xiǎnghǎo le**  
想好了  
to have reached a conclusion (about something); (something) has been thought out
12. **yàoshi**  
要是  
if (alternate word for **rúguǒ**)
13. **zuòhǎo le**  
做好了  
to have finished doing (something); (something) has been finished



## Unit 8 Target List

1. Hǎo jiǔ méi jiàn, nín chū mén le ba?  
好久沒見，您出門了吧？  
I haven't seen you in a long time. You have been away, I suppose?
2. Nín wèishénme gāng huílai yòu qù le ne?  
您為什麼剛回來又去了呢？  
Why did you go again when you had just come back from there?

Wǒ zhècì dào Guǎngzhōu qù shì yīnwei wǒ yǒu yige hěn hǎode péngyou cóng Xiānggǎng lái.  
我這次到廣州去是因為我有一個很好的朋友從香港來。  
This time I went to **Guǎngzhōu** because I had a very good friend coming there from Hong Kong.
3. Wǒmen yǒu yìnián méi jiàn le.  
我們有一年沒見了。  
We had not seen each other for a year.

Tā qǐng wǒ péi ta yìqǐ qù lǚxíng.  
她請我陪她一起去旅行。  
She asked me to accompany her (in her) travels.
4. Sānge yuè yǐqián tā hái bù zhīdào néng bu néng lái.  
三個月以前她還不知道能不能來。  
Three months ago she didn't know yet whether she would be able to come or not.
5. Nǐmen dōu qùguo shénme dìfang?  
你們都去過什麼地方？  
What places did you go to?
6. Hángzhōu gēn Sūzhōu zhēn shì piàoliang.  
杭州跟蘇州真是漂亮。  
**Hángzhōu** and **Sūzhōu** are really beautiful.
7. Yǒu jīhuì wǒ yào zài qù yíci.  
有機會我要再去一次。  
If I have the chance, I would like to go again.
8. Zhèixiē dìfang nǐ dōu qùguo le ba?

這些地方你都去過了吧？

You have gone to all those places, I suppose?

Méi dōu qùguo.

沒都去過。

I haven't been to all of them.

9. huí guó

回國

to return to one's native country

10. huí jiā

回家

to come/go home

11. huíqu

回去

to go back

#### ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

12. rènao

熱鬧

to be lively/bustling/noisy

13. yǒu yìsi

有意思

to be interesting

14. méi(yǒu) yìsi

沒(有)意思

to be uninteresting

15. suǒyǐ (suóyǐ)

所以

therefore, so

# Unit 1

## References

### Reference List

- A: **Dào Xīméndīng qù, zuò jǐlù chē?**  
到西門町去，坐幾路車？  
What bus do you take to get to **Xīméndīng**?

B: **Zuò Shíbālù.**  
坐十八路。  
Take Number 18.
- A: **Shíbālù chē duō bu duo?**  
十八路車多不多？  
Are there many Number 18 buses?

B: **Bù hěn duō.**  
不很多。  
Not very many.
- A: **Měi gé duōshao shíhou yǒu yìbān chē?**  
每隔多少時候有一班車。  
How much time is there between buses?

B: **Měi gé èrshífēn zhōng yǒu yìbān.**  
每隔二十分鐘有一班。  
There's one every twenty minutes.
- C: **Wǒ měige Xīngqīliù dōu qù kàn diànyǐng.**  
我每個星期六都去看電影。  
I go to see a movie every Saturday.
- A: **Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?**  
最後一班車是幾點鐘？  
What time is the last bus?

B: **Shíyīdiǎn shífēn.**  
十一點十分。  
Eleven-ten.  
**十一點十分。**
- D: **Zhèbān chē shì bu shì qù Xīméndīng?**  
這班車是不是去西門町？  
Does this bus go to **Xīméndīng**?

E: Shì. Shàng chē ba!

是。上車吧！

Yes, Get on!

7. A: Dào Xīméndīngde shíhou, qǐng gàosong wǒ.

到西門町的時候，請告訴我。

When we get to Xīméndīng, please tell me.

F: Hǎo.

好。

Okay.

8. A: Háiyǒu jǐzhàn dào Xīméndīng?

還有幾站到西門町？

How many more stops are there to (before) Xīméndīng?

F: Xià yízhàn jiù shì Xīméndīng.

下一站就是西門町。

The next stop is Xīméndīng.

#### ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

9. shàng-

上

last, previous (something)

shàng-

10. tóu-

頭

first (something)

11. gàosu

告訴

to tell, to inform (alternate pronunciation for gàosong)

12. shǎo

少

to be few

13. xià chē

下車

to get off the bus; "Out, please!"

14. yǒu(de) shíhou

有(的)時候

sometimes

15. chéng

城  
city

## Vocabulary

-bān	班	(counter for regularly scheduled trips of buses, planes, subways, trains, etc.)
chē	車	vehicle, bus, car
chéng	城	city
duō	多	to be many
-fēn	分	a minute
gàosong	告誦	to tell, to inform
gàosu	告訴	to tell, to inform
gé	隔	to separate, to divide off
jǐlù chē	幾路車	what number bus
měi-	每	every, each
shàng	上	to get on
shàng-	上	last, previous (something)
shǎo	少	to be few
tóu-	頭	first (something)
xià	下	to get off
xià-	下	next (something)
xià chē	下車	to get off the bus; “Out, please!”
Xīmēndīng	西門町	(an area of Taipei)
yǒu(de) shíhou	有(的)時候	sometimes
zhàn	站	a stop, a station
zuìhòu	最後	last, final (something)
(introduced on C-2 and P-2 tapes)		
Běihǎi Gōngyuán	北海公園	(a famous park in Běijīng)
biéde shíhou	別的時候	other times
Dōngjīng	東京	Tokyo
fàng jià	放假	to close for a holiday
hǎowán	好玩	to “be fun (lit. , “good for relaxing”)
huì	會	will
sījī	司機	driver of a hired vehicle
zǒu ba	走吧	let’s go

## Reference Notes

## Notes on №1-2

1. A: **Dào Xīméndīng qù, zuò jǐlù chē?**  
 到西門町去，坐幾路車？  
 What bus do you take to get to Xīméndīng?  
 B: **Zuò Shíbālù.**  
 坐十八路。  
 Take Number 18.
2. A: **Shíbālù chē duō bu duō?**  
 十八路車多不多？  
 Are there many Number 18 buses?  
 B: **Bù hěn duō.**  
 不很多。  
 Not very many.

**Xīméndīng** literally means “West Gate ding”—**dīng** being a Japanese term for “district.” **Xīméndīng** is the area of Taipei which surrounds the former west gate of the city. Today the district includes many shops, department stores, and movie theaters.

**Lù** is the word for “route.” The question **jǐlù?** asks for the route number of the bus.

**Zuò**, “to ride/to go by/to take [a conveyance]”:

 **Note**

**Zuò** appeared earlier in **Zuò diàntī dào èrlou**, “Take the elevator to the second floor.

Here **zuò** (literally, “to sit”) means to go by some means of transportation which the passenger is inside of (e.g., car, plane, boat, train, bus, elevator—NOT a motor-cycle or a horse). In exchange 1, **zuò** is used as a main verb. It can also be used as a prepositional verb, as in

<b>Nǐ zěnmē qù?</b>
你怎麼去？
How are you going? (i.e., by what means of transportation)
<b>Wǒ zuò huǒchē qù.</b>
我坐火車去。
I am going by train.

” **Duō**, “to be many/much,” is an adjectival verb. There are several points to remember about **duō**:

 **Note**

Adjectival verbs are one type of STATE verb. See BIO, Unit 6.

- a. Adjectival verbs are sometimes used before a noun to modify it (e.g., *xīn zhuōzi*, “new table”; *dà fángzi*, “big house”). However, when *duō* is used in this way, it must be modified, for example, by *hěn* or *tài*.

Tā mǎile hěn duō dōngxi.
他買了很多東西。
He bought a lot of things.
Běijīng jiēshang yǒu hěn duō cèsuǒ.
比較街上有許多廁所。
There are many toilets on the streets of Běijīng.

- b. Much more often, however, *duō* is used as the main verb of a sentence.

Nǐde shū zhēn duō!
你的書很多。
You really have a lot of books!
Jīntiān jiēshangde rén hěn duō.
今天的街上的人很多。
There are a lot of people out today, (literally, “on the streets today”) [16]

- c. Often it does not occur to students to use *duō* as the main verb of a sentence because in English they do not usually say “The students are many.” They would say “There are many students,” with “many” as an adjective preceding “students.” Compare:

Zhèrde rén hěn duō.
這兒的人很多。
There are a lot of people here.
Láide rén hěn duō.
來的人很多。
A lot of people came.

**NOTE:** *Shǎo*, “to be few,” is used in almost the same ways as *duō*. (See Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary.)

### Notes on №3

3. A: *Měi gé duōshao shíhou yǒu yībān chē?*  
 每隔多少時候有一班車。  
 How much time is there between buses?  
 B: *Měi gé èrshífēn zhōng yǒu yībān.*  
 每隔二十分鐘有一班。



There's one every twenty minutes.

**Měi-** is the word for “each,” “every.”

**Gé** is a verb meaning “to separate,” “to divide.” It is used for intervals of time between regularly occurring events (e.g., “every half hour”). In exchange 3, **gé** refers to the length of time between buses.

měi gé duōshao shíhou

每隔多少時候

(every divide-off [interval] how much time) “(every) how often”

The first sentence could also be translated as “How often is there a bus?” or “How often do the buses run?”

**Example 5.1. Yìbān chē:**

The counter **-bān** is used for scheduled trips, or runs, of a vehicle. **Yìbān chē** is one bus run.

**Example 5.2. Èrshífēn zhōng:**

The counter **-fēn**, for minutes, is usually followed by **zhōng**, “clock.” (**Zhōng** means “o’clock” in telling time.) “One minute” is **yīfēn zhōng**.

Měi	gé	èrshífēn zhōng	yǒu	yìbān	chē.
每	隔	二十分鐘	有	一班	車。
each	interval	twenty minutes	there is	one [run]	bus

“There’s a bus every twenty minutes.”

**Notes on №4**

4. C: **Wǒ měige Xīngqīliù dōu qù kàn diànyǐng.**

我每個星期六都去看電影。

I go to see a movie every Saturday.

**Měige:** When used with a noun, **měi-** acts as a specifier and must be followed by a counter or a noun that does not require a counter.

měi(ge) rěn	每(個)人	every person
měizhāng zhuōzi	每個桌子	every table
měitiān	每天	every day

**Dōu**, “all”: Here the adverb **dōu** implies “each and every,” or “without exception”—“every Saturday, without exception.” When the subject of a sentence is specified by **měi-**, the following verb is usually modified by the adverb **dōu**.

**Notes on №5**

5. A: **Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?**

最後一班車是幾點鐘？

What time is the last bus?

B: Shíyīdiǎn shífēn.

十一點十分。

Eleven-ten.

十一點十分。

**Zuìhòu yībān chē:** *Zuì* is the word for “most,” or “-est.” *Zuìhòu* means “latest,” or “last.” Note the order in which the elements of this phrase appear:

zuìhòu	yì	-ban	chē
最後	一	班	車
last	one	run	bus

“the last bus”

Both the number and the counter are required in this phrase.

Compare:

tóu	yì	-ban	chē	“the first bus”
頭	一	班	車	
xià	yì	-ban	chē	“the next bus”
下	一	班	車	
shàng	yì	-ban	chē	“the last (previous) bus”
上	一	班	車	

(See Note on № 8 and Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary for *xià*-, “next”; *shàng*-, “last,” “previous”; and *tóu*-, “first.”)

### Notes on №6

6. D: Zhèbān chē shì bu shì qù Xīméndīng?

這班車是不是去西門町？

Does this bus go to Xīméndīng?

E: Shì. Shàng chē ba!

是。上車吧！

Yes, Get on!

*Shì bu shì qù*, “does it go to”:\* The use of *shì bu shì qù* rather than *qù bu qu* in this sentence implies that the speaker has an idea that the bus does go to Xīméndīng and wants to make sure. (*Zhèbān chē qù bu qu Xīméndīng?* would also be correct.)

\*For a discussion of the use of *shì bu shì* before another verb to form a question, see MON, Unit 5, notes on № 8.

*Qù Xīméndīng*, “go to Xīméndīng”: The destination directly follows the main verb *qù*. You now know two ways to indicate destination:

Wo dào Xīméndīng qù.	I am going to Xīméndīng.
我到西門町去。	
Wo qù Xīméndīng.	
我去西門町。	

The two forms are equally widely used.

**Shàng chē:** This verb has several meanings. In the Directions Module, the meaning was “to go up” in *Shàng lóu*, *yòubian jiù shì mài ditúde*. In this exchange, the meaning of *shàng* is “to get on/in [a vehicle].”

### Notes on №7

7. A: *Dào Xīméndīngde shíhou, qǐng gàosong wǒ.*

到西門町的時候，請告訴我。

When we get to *Xīméndīng*, please tell me.

F: *Hǎo.*

好。

Okay.

*Dào Xīméndīngde shíhou* means “when we arrive in *Xīméndīng*.” If you want to say, in Chinese, “when [something happens],” add *-de shíhou* to the phrase which names the happening.

In English, “when” can mean either “during the same time” (e.g., “when I was a student”) or “immediately after” (e.g., “when the light turns green”). In Chinese, however, two different expressions are used for the two meanings: *-de shíhou* for “at the same time” and *yǐhou* for “immediately after.”

*Wǒ zài Xiānggǎngde shíhou hěn xǐhuan qù kàn diànyǐng.*

我在香港的時候很喜歡去看電影。

When [i.e., while] I was in Hong Kong, I liked to go to the movies very much.

*Wǒ dào le Táiběi yǐhòu, mǎi le hěn duō Zhōngwén shū.*

我到了臺北以後，買了很多中文書。

When [i.e., after] I got to Taipei, I bought a lot of Chinese books.

### Notes on №8

8. A: *Hái yǒu jǐzhàn dào Xīméndīng?*

還有幾站到西門町？

How many more stops are there to (before) *Xīméndīng*?

F: *Xià yízhàn jiù shì Xīméndīng.*

下一站就是西門町。

The next stop is *Xīméndīng*.

**Xià yízhàn:** Here *xià* means “the next.” It is a specifier. *Xià* is usually followed by a numeral or a counter, as in the following examples:

xiàge yuè	next month
下個月	
xià yībān chē	the next bus
下一班車	

The phrase *xià yízhàn* contains no counter because *-zhàn*, like *-nián* and *-tiān*, is not used with a counter.

### Notes on Additional Vocabulary

9.	shàng-	
	上	
		last, previous (something)
10.	tóu-	
	頭	
		first (something)
11.	gàosu	
	告訴	
		to tell, to inform (alternate pronunciation for <i>gàosong</i> )
12.	shǎo	
	少	
		to be few
13.	xià chē	
	下車	
		to get off the bus; "Out, please!"
14.	yǒu(de) shíhou	
	有(的)時候	
		sometimes
15.	chéng	
	城	
		city

The specifier *shàng-*, “last,” “previous,” is used in the same patterns as *xià-*.

shàngge yuè	last month
上個月	
shàng yībān chē	the previous bus

上一班車	
------	--

**Tóu-**, “first,” literally “head”: Let’s contrast **dì-** and **tóu-**: **Dì-** has no meaning of its own. Its function is to make a cardinal number into an ordinal number: for example, **sān**, “three,” becomes **disān**, “third,” as in **disāngē mén**, “the third door.” **Tóu-** has a meaning of its own: “first,” as in **tóusāngē mén**, “the first three doors.”

**Tóu-** is always followed by at least a number plus a counter (or a noun that does not require a counter).

tóuliǎngge rén	the first two people
頭兩個人	
tóusānběn	the first three volumes
頭三本	
tóusìtiān	the first four days
頭四天	

Notice that **tóuliǎngge**, “the first two,” and **dìèrge**, “the second one,” must use different words for “two,” because

tóuliǎngge	(COUNTING)
頭兩個	
dìèrge	(NOT COUNTING)
第二個	

**Tóuyige**, “the first one,” and **diyige**, “the first one,” are similar in meaning and often interchangeable.

**Gàosu**, “to tell”: **Gaosong** is the usual colloquial pronunciation in **Běijīng** speech. **Gàosu** is the usual colloquial pronunciation in many other places in China, including Taiwan. The fact that, in a Taipei setting, the first speaker in exchange 7 uses **gaosong** tells you that he is almost certainly not a native of Taiwan.

**Shǎo**, “to be few”: Most of the comments about **duō** in these Reference Notes (exchange 2) also apply to the adjectival verb **shǎo**. Most frequently **shǎo** is used as the main verb of a sentence.

Wǒde qián bù shǎo.
我的錢不少。
I have quite a bit of money.
Zài Táiwān méiyǒu gōngzuòde rén hěn shǎo.
在臺灣沒有工作的人很少。
There are few people in Taiwan who do not have jobs.

One point deserves special attention: Although you may say **hěn duō shū** for “a lot of books,” you may not say **hěn shǎo shū**. **Hěn shǎo** can rarely modify a noun which follows—and neither can **tài shǎo**, **zhēn shǎo**, and related expressions.

**Xià chē**, “to get off [a vehicle],” may be used to signal that you wish to get off—that this is your stop. The expression would be translated as “Out, please,” or “Getting off, getting off,” used by passengers in crowded buses and elevators.

Yǒu(de) shíhou, “sometimes,” precedes the verb of a sentence, as other time expressions do.

Tā yǒude shíhou kàn Yīngwén bào. 他有的時候看英文報	He sometimes reads English newspapers.
Wǒ yǒu shíhou zuò Shíbālù chē. 我有時候坐十八路車。	

Originally, **chéng** meant “city wall.” This early meaning still affects modern usage: you must say “going **Into** the city,” not just “to the city.”

Tā jīntiān dào chénglǐtōu qù. 他今天到城裏頭去。	He is going to the city today.

## Vocabulary booster

### Modes of Transportation

bicycle	[Běijīng] zìxíngchē	自行車
	[Táiwān] jiǎotàchē	腳踏車
boat	chuán	船
motorboat	qìtǐng	汽艇
rowboat	huátǐng	划艇
sailboat	fānchuán	帆船
sampan	shānbǎn	舢舨
bus	gōnggòng qìchē	公共汽車
coach (long-distance)	chángtú qìchē	長途汽車
car (automobile)	qìchē	汽車
	chēzi	車子
	chē	車
helicopter	zhíshēngfēijī	直升飛機
horseback riding	qí mǎ	騎馬
jeep	jípǔchē	吉普車
motorcycle	mótuōchē	摩托車
plane	fēijī	飛機
jet	[PRC] pēnqìshì fēijī	噴氣式飛機
	[Táiwān] pēnshèshì fēijī	噴射式飛機
	[Táiwān] pēnshèjī	噴射機
subway	dìxiàtiě	地下鐵

	dìtiě	地鐵
	dìxià huǒchē	地下火車
taxi	chūzū qìchē	出租汽車
	[PRC] chūzū chē	出租車
	[Táiwān] jìchéngchē	計程車
train	huǒchē	火車
trolley	diànchē	電車
truck	kǎchē	卡車
walking	zǒu lù	走路

## Drills

### Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1 *Dào Xīméndīng qù, zuò jǐlù chē?*

到西门町去，坐几路车？

What bus do you take to get to *Xīméndīng*?

Cue *hasn't yet*

*Dào Xīméndīng qù, zuò jǐlù chē, tā hái méi gàosu wǒ.*

到西门町去，坐几路车，他/她还没告诉我。

He/she hasn't yet told me what bus to take to get to *Xīméndīng*.

2 *Dào Wǔguānchù qù, zuò jǐlù chē?*

到武官处去，坐几路车？

What bus do you take to get to military attaché's office?

Cue *has already*

*Dào Wǔguānchù qù, zuò jǐlù chē, tā yǐjīng gàosu wǒ le.*

到武官处去，坐几路车，他/她已经告诉我。

He/she has already told me what bus to take to go to the military attaché office.

3 *Dào Nánjīng Lù qù, zuò jǐlù chē?*

到南京路去，坐几路车？

What bus do you take to get to *Nánjīng* road?

Cue *did not*

*Dào Nánjīng Lù qù, zuò jǐlù chē, tā méi gàosu wǒ le.*

到南京路去，坐几路车，他/他告诉我。

He/she did not tell me what bus to take to go to *Nánjīng* road.

4 *Dào Zhōngshān Lù qù, zuò jǐlù chē?*

到中山路去，坐几路车？

What bus do you take to get to *Zhōngshān* road?



Cue hasn't yet

Dào Zhōngshān Lù qù, zuò jǐlù chē, tā hái méi gàosu wo le.

到中山路去，坐几路车，他/她还没告诉我。

He/she hasn't yet told me what bus to take to get to Zhōngshān road

5 Dào Xīméndīng qù, zuò jǐlù chē?

到西门町去，坐几路车？

What bus do you take to get to Xīméndīng?

Cue has already

Dào Xīméndīng qù, zuò jǐlù chē, tā yǐjīng gàosu wo le.

到西门町去，坐几路车，他/她已经告诉我。

He/she has already told me what bus to take to go to Xīméndīng.

6 Dào tā jiā qù, zuò jǐlù chē?

到他/她家去，坐几路车？

What bus do you take to get to his home?

Cue hasn't yet

Dào tā jiā qù, zuò jǐlù chē, tā hái méi gàosu wo le.

到他/她家去，坐几路车，他/她还没告诉我。

He/she hasn't yet told me what bus to take to get to his home.

7 Dào cài shì chǎng qù, zuò jǐlù chē?

到菜市场去，坐几路车？

What bus do you take to get to the market?

Cue did not

Dào cài shì chǎng qù, zuò jǐlù chē, tā méi gàosu wo le.

到菜市场去，坐几路车，他/他告诉我。

He/she did not tell me what bus to take to go to the market.

## Expansion drill

### Expand according to the cue and the model.

1 Zuò Shíbālù chē.

坐十八路车。

Take the Number 18 bus.

Qǐng ni gào su wo, zuò Shíbālù chē, ké yì bu keyì?

请你告诉我，坐十八路车，可以不可以？

Please tell me, would it be all right to take the Number 18 bus?

2 Zuò Yīlù chē.

坐一路车。

Take the Number 1 bus.

Qǐng ni gào su wo, zuò Yīlù chē, ké yì bu keyì?

请你告诉我，坐一路车，可以不可以？

Please tell me, would it be all right to take the Number 1 bus?

3 Zuò Shílù chē.

坐十路车。

Take the Number 10 bus.

Qǐng ni gào su wo, zuò Shílù chē, ké yì bu keyì?

请你告诉我，坐十路车，可以不可以？

Please tell me, would it be all right to take the Number 10 bus?

4 Zuò Liùlù chē.

坐六路车。

Take the Number 6 bus.

Qǐng ni gào su wo, zuò Liùlù chē, ké yì bu keyì?

请你告诉我，坐六路车，可以不可以？

Please tell me, would it be all right to take the Number 6 bus?

5 Zuò Wǔlù chē.

坐五路车。

Take the Number 5 bus.

Qǐng nǐ gàosu wǒ, zuò Wǔlù chē, kěyǐ bu keyǐ?

请你告诉我，坐五路车，可以不可以？

Please tell me, would it be all right to take the Number 5 bus?

6 Zuò Qīlù chē.

坐七路车。

Take the Number 7 bus.

Qǐng nǐ gàosu wǒ, zuò Qīlù chē, kěyǐ bu keyǐ?

请你告诉我，坐七路车，可以不可以？

Please tell me, would it be all right to take the Number 7 bus?

7 Zuò Shíèrlù chē.

坐十二路车。

Take the Number 12 bus.

Qǐng nǐ gàosu wǒ, zuò Shíèrlù chē, kěyǐ bu keyǐ?

请你告诉我，坐十二路车，可以不可以？

Please tell me, would it be all right to take the Number 12 bus?

## Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

- 1 Měi gé duōshao shíhou yǒu yìbān chē?  
每隔多少时候有一班车?  
How often is there a bus?

Cue èrshífēn zhōng  
二十分钟  
20 minutes

Měi gé èrshífēn zhōng yǒu yìbān chē.  
每隔二十分钟有一班车。  
There's a bus every 20 minutes.

- 2 Měi gé duōshao shíhou yǒu yìbān chē?  
每隔多少时候有一班车?  
How often is there a bus?

Cue shífēn zhōng  
十分钟  
10 minutes

Měi gé shífēn zhōng yǒu yìbān chē.  
每隔十分钟有一班车。  
There's a bus every 10 minutes.

- 3 Měi gé duōshao shíhou yǒu yìbān chē?  
每隔多少时候有一班车?  
How often is there a bus?

Cue wǔfēn zhōng  
五分钟  
5 minutes

Měi gé wǔfēn zhōng yǒu yìbān chē.  
每隔五分钟有一班车。  
There's a bus every 5 minutes.

4 Měi gé duōshao shíhou yǒu yìbān chē?

每隔多少时候有一班车？

How often is there a bus?

Cue

bāfēn zhōng

八分钟

8 minutes

Měi gé bāfēn zhōng yǒu yìbān chē.

每隔八分钟有一班车。

There's a bus every 8 minutes.

5 Měi gé duōshao shíhou yǒu yìbān chē?

每隔多少时候有一班车？

How often is there a bus?

Cue

èrshífēn zhōng

二十分钟

20 minutes

Měi gé èrshífēn zhōng yǒu yìbān chē.

每隔二十分钟有一班车。

There's a bus every 20 minutes.

6 Měi gé duōshao shíhou yǒu yìbān chē?

每隔多少时候有一班车？

How often is there a bus?

Cue

shíwǔfēn zhōng

十五分钟

15 minutes

Měi gé shíwǔfēn zhōng yǒu yìbān chē.

每隔十五分钟有一班车。

There's a bus every 15 minutes.

7 Měi gé duōshao shíhou yǒu yìbān chē?

每隔多少时候有一班车？

How often is there a bus?

Cue

shíèrfēn zhōng

十二分钟

12 minutes

Měi gé shíèrfēn zhōng yǒu yìbān chē.

每隔十二分钟有一班车。

There's a bus every 12 minutes.

## Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1 Shíbálù chē duō bu duo?

十八路车多不多？

Are there many Number 18 buses?

Cue èrshifēn zhōng

二十分钟

20 minutes

Bù shǎo. Měi gé èrshifēn zhōng yǒu yìbān.

不少。每隔二十分钟有一般。

Quite a few. There's one every 20 minutes.

2 Yílù chē duō bu duo?

一例车多不多？

Are there many Number 1 buses?

Cue wǔfēn zhōng

五分钟

5 minutes

Bù shǎo. Měi gé wǔfēn zhōng yǒu yìbān.

不少。每隔五分钟有一般。

Quite a few. There's one every 5 minutes.

3 Dào Táinán qùde chē duō bu duo?

到台南取得车多不多？

Are there many buses to Táinán?

Cue wǔshifēn zhōng

五十分钟

15 minutes

Bù shǎo. Měi gé wǔshifēn zhōng yǒu yìbān.

不少。每隔五十分钟有一般。

Quite a few. There's one every 15 minutes.

4 Dào Jǐlóng qùde chē duō bu duo?

到隆市取得车多不多？

Are there many buses to Jǐlóng?

Cue sishífēn zhōng

四十分钟

40 minutes

Bù shǎo. Měi gé sishífēn zhōng yǒu yībān.

不少。每隔四十分钟有一般。

Quite a few. There's one every 40 minutes.

5 Shílù chē duō bu duo?

十路车多不多？

Are there many Number 10 buses?

Cue shífēn zhōng

十分钟

10 minutes

Bù shǎo. Měi gé shífēn zhōng yǒu yībān.

不少。每隔十分钟有一般。

Quite a few. There's one every 10 minutes.

6 Sānlù chē duō bu duo?

三路车多不多？

Are there many Number 3 buses?

Cue èrshiwǔfēn zhōng

二十五分钟

25 minutes

Bù shǎo. Měi gé èrshiwǔfēn zhōng yǒu yībān.

不少。每隔二十五分钟有一般。

Quite a few. There's one every 25 minutes.

7 Èrlù chē duō bu duo?

二路车多不多？

Are there many Number 2 buses?



Cue

shíwǔfēn zhōng

十五分钟

15 minutes

Bù shǎo. Měi gé shíwǔfēn zhōng yǒu yìbān.

不少。每隔十五分钟有一般。

Quite a few. There's one every 15 minutes.

## Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1 Nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

那班车是几点钟？

What time is that bus?

Cue

Táizhōng

台中

Táizhōng

Qǐngwèn, dào Táizhōng qùde nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

请问，到台中那班车是几点钟？

May I ask, what time is that bus to Táizhōng?

2 Nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

那班车是几点钟？

What time is that bus?

Cue

Táinán

台南

Táinán

Qǐngwèn, dào Táinán qùde nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

请问，到台南那班车是几点钟？

May I ask, what time is that bus to Táinán?

3 Nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

那班车是几点钟？

What time is that bus?

Cue

Jīlóng

基隆

Jīlóng

Qǐngwèn, dào Jīlóng qùde nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

请问，到基隆那班车是几点钟？

May I ask, what time is that bus to Jīlóng?

4 Nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

那班车是几点钟？

What time is that bus?

Cue Jiāyì  
嘉义  
Jiāyì

Qǐngwèn, dào Jiāyì qùde nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

请问，到嘉义那班车是几点钟？

May I ask, what time is that bus to Jiāyì?

5 Nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

那班车是几点钟？

What time is that bus?

Cue Táiběi  
台北  
Táiběi

Qǐngwèn, dào Táiběi qùde nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

请问，到台北那班车是几点钟？

May I ask, what time is that bus to Táiběi?

6 Nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

那班车是几点钟？

What time is that bus?

Cue Huālián  
花莲  
Huālián

Qǐngwèn, dào Huālián qùde nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

请问，到花莲那班车是几点钟？

May I ask, what time is that bus to Huālián?

7 Nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

那班车是几点钟？

What time is that bus?

Cue

Gāoxióng

高雄

Gāoxióng

Qǐngwèn, dào Gāoxióng qùde nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

请问，到高雄那班车是几点钟？

May I ask, what time is that bus to Gāoxióng?

## Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1 Zhè shì bu shì zuìhòu yìbān chē?

这是不是最后一班车？

Is this the last bus?

Cue 11:10

Bú shì. Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì shíyīdiǎn shífēn.

不是。最后一班车是十一点十分。

№ The last bus is at 11:10.

2 Zhè shì bu shì zuìhòu yìbān chē?

这是不是最后一班车？

Is this the last bus?

Cue 11:30

Bú shì. Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì shíyīdiǎn bàn.

不是。最后一班车是十一点半。

№ The last bus is at 11:30.

3 Zhè shì bu shì zuìhòu yìbān chē?

这是不是最后一班车？

Is this the last bus?

Cue 12:00

Bú shì. Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì shíèrdiǎn.

不是。最后一班车是十二点。

№ The last bus is at 12:00.

4 Zhè shì bu shì zuìhòu yìbān chē?

这是不是最后一班车？

Is this the last bus?

Cue 11:40

Bú shì. Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì shíyīdiǎn sishífēn.

不是。最后一班车是十一点四十分。

№ The last bus is at 11:40.

5 Zhè shì bu shì zuìhòu yìbān chē?

这是不是最后一班车？

Is this the last bus?

Cue 12:10

Bú shì. Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì shíèrdiǎn shífēn.

不是。最后一班车是十二点十分。

№ The last bus is at 12:10.

6 Zhè shì bu shì zuìhòu yìbān chē?

这是不是最后一班车？

Is this the last bus?

Cue 11:00

Bú shì. Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì shíyīdiǎn.

不是。最后一班车是十一点。

№ The last bus is at 11:00.

7 Zhè shì bu shì zuìhòu yìbān chē?

这是不是最后一班车？

Is this the last bus?

Cue 10:50

Bú shì. Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì shídiǎn wǔshífēn.

不是。最后一班车是十点五十分。

№ The last bus is at 10:50.

## Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

1 Zhèibān chē dào Xīméndīng qù ma?

这班车到西门町去吗？

Does this bus go to Xīméndīng?

Zhèibān chē shì bu shì qù Xīméndīng?

这班车是不是去西门町？

Does this bus go to Xīméndīng?

2 Zhèibān chē dào Zhōngshān Běilù qù ma?

这班车到中山北路去吗？

Does this bus go to Zhōngshān Běilù?

Zhèibān chē shì bu shì qù Zhōngshān Běilù?

这班车是不是去中山北路？

Does this bus go to Zhōngshān Běilù?

3 Zhèibān chē dào Zhōnghuá Lù qù ma?

这班车到中华路去吗？

Does this bus go to Zhōnghuá Lù?

Zhèibān chē shì bu shì qù Zhōnghuá Lù?

这班车是不是去中华路？

Does this bus go to Zhōnghuá Lù?

4 Zhèibān chē dào Zìyóu Lù qù ma?

这班车到自由路去吗？

Does this bus go to Zìyóu Lù?

Zhèibān chē shì bu shì qù Zìyóu Lù?

这班车是不是去自由路？

Does this bus go to Zìyóu Lù?

5 Zhèibān chē dào Rénài Lù qù ma?

这班车到仁爱路去吗？

Does this bus go to Rénài Lù?

Zhèibān chē shì bu shì qù Rénài Lù?

这班车是不是去仁爱路？

Does this bus go to Rénài Lù?

6 Zhèibān chē dào Nánjīng Dōnglù qù ma?

这班车到南京东路去吗？

Does this bus go to Nánjīng Dōnglù?

Zhèibān chē shì bu shì qù Nánjīng Dōnglù?

这班车是不是去南京东路？

Does this bus go to Nánjīng Dōnglù?

7 Zhèibān chē dào Héping Xīlù qù ma?

这班车到和平西路去吗？

Does this bus go to Héping Xīlù?

Zhèibān chē shì bu shì qù Héping Xīlù?

这班车是不是去和平西路？

Does this bus go to Héping Xīlù?



## Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

1 Tā xià chē le.

他/她下车了。

He/she got off the bus.

Cue

Xīméndīng

西门町

Xīméndīng

Tā shì zài Xīméndīng xiàde chē.

他/她是在西门町下的车。

He/she got off the bus at Xīméndīng.

2 Tā xià chē.

他/她下车。

He/she is getting off the bus.

Cue

Xīméndīng

西门町

Xīméndīng

Tā zài Xīméndīng xià chē.

他/她西门町下车。

He/she is getting off the bus at Xīméndīng .

3 Tā shàng chē le.

他/她上车了。

He/she got on the bus.

Cue

Zhōngshān Běilù

中山北路

Zhōngshān Běilù

Tā shì zài Zhōngshān Běilù shàngde chē.

他/她是在中山北路上的车。

He/she got on the bus at Zhōngshān Běilù.

4 Tā shàng chē.  
他/她上车。  
He/she is getting on the bus.

Cue Héping Dōnglù  
和平东路  
Héping Dōnglù

Tā zài Héping Dōnglù shàng chē.  
他/她在和平东路上车。  
He/she is getting on the bus at Héping Dōnglù.

5 Tā xià chē le.  
他/她下车了。  
He/she got off the bus.

Cue Mínhēng Lù  
民生路  
Mínhēng Lù

Tā shì zài Mínhēng Lù xiàde chē.  
他/她是在民生路下的车。  
He/she got off the bus at Mínhēng Lù.

6 Tā shàng chē le.  
他/她上车了。  
He/she got off the bus.

Cue Rénài Lù  
仁爱路  
Rénài Lù

Tā shì zài Rénài Lù shàngde chē.  
他/她是在仁爱路上的车。  
He/she got on the bus at Rénài Lù.

7 Tā xià chē.  
他/她下车。  
He/she is getting off the bus.

Cue

Zhōnghuá Lù

中华路

Zhōnghuá Lù

Tā zài Zhōnghuá Lù xià chē.

他/她在中华路下车。

He/she is getting off the bus at Zhōnghuá Lù.

## Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1 Dào Xīméndīng qǐng gàosu wǒ.

到西门町请告诉我。

When we get to Xīméndīng , please tell me.

Cue

shíhou

时候

when

Dào Xīméndīngde shíhou qǐng gàosu wǒ.

到西门町的时候请告诉我。

When we get to Xīméndīng , please tell me.

2 Dào Zhōngshān Běilù qǐng gàosu wǒ.

到中山北路请告诉我。

When we get to Zhōngshān Běilù, please tell me.

Cue

yǐqián

以前

before

Dào Zhōngshān Běilù yǐqián qǐng gàosu wǒ.

到中山北路以前请告诉我。

Before we get to Zhōngshān Běilù, please tell me.

3 Dào Nánjīng Dōnglù qǐng gàosu wǒ.

到南京东路请告诉我。

When we get to Nánjīng Dōnglù, please tell me.

Cue

shíhou

时候

when

Dào Nánjīng Dōnglùde shíhou qǐng gàosu wǒ.

到南京东路的时候请告诉我。

When we get to Nánjīng Dōnglù, please tell me.

- 4 Dào Rénài Lù qǐng gàosu wo.  
到仁爱路请告诉我。  
When we get to Rénài Lù, please tell me.

Cue yǐqián  
以前  
before

Dào Rénài Lù yǐqián qǐng gàosu wo.  
到仁爱路以前请告诉我。  
Before we get to Rénài Lù, please tell me.

- 5 Dào Mínguán Lù qǐng gàosu wo.  
到民权路请告诉我。  
When we get to Mínguán Lù, please tell me.

Cue shíhou  
时候  
when

Dào Mínguán Lù de shíhou qǐng gàosu wo.  
到民权路的时候请告诉我。  
When we get to Mínguán Lù, please tell me.

- 6 Dào Héping Xīlù qǐng gàosu wo.  
到和平西路请告诉我。  
When we get to Héping Xīlù, please tell me.

Cue yǐqián  
以前  
before

Dào Héping Xīlù yǐqián qǐng gàosu wo.  
到和平西路以前请告诉我。  
Before we get to Héping Xīlù, please tell me.

- 7 Dào Zìyóu Lù qǐng gàosu wo.  
到自由路请告诉我。  
When we get to Zìyóu Lù, please tell me.

Cue

shíhou

时候

when

Dào Zìyóu Lùde shíhou qǐng gàosu wǒ.

到自由路的时候请告诉我。

When we get to *Zìyóu Lù*, please tell me.

## Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1 Hái yǒu jǐzhàn dào Xīméndīng?

还有几站到西门町？

How many more stops are there to [before] Xīméndīng ?

Cue xià

Xià yízhàn jiù shì Xīméndīng.

下一站就是西门町。

The next stop is Xīméndīng .

2 Hái yǒu jǐzhàn dào Xīméndīng?

还有几站到西门町？

How many more stops are there to [before] Xīméndīng?

Cue 3

Hái yǒu sānzhàn jiù shì Xīméndīng.

还有三站就是西门町。

Three more stops, and that's Xīméndīng.

3 Hái yǒu jǐzhàn dào Zhōnghuá Lù?

还有几站到中华路？

How many more stops are there to [before] Zhōnghuá Lù?

Cue xià

Xià yízhàn jiù shì Zhōnghuá Lù.

下一站就是中华路。

The next stop is Zhōnghuá Lù.

4 Hái yǒu jǐzhàn dào Nánjīng Dōnglù?

还有几站到南京东路？

How many more stops are there to [before] Nánjīng Dōnglù?

Cue 2

Hái yǒu liǎngzhàn jiù shì Nánjīng Dōnglù.

还有两站就是南京东路。

Two more stops, and that's *Nánjīng Dōnglù*.

5 *Hái yǒu jǐzhàn dào Xīnshēng Nánlù?*

还有几站到新生南路？

How many more stops are there to [before] *Xīnshēng Nánlù*?

Cue *xià*

*Xià yízhàn jiù shì Xīnshēng Nánlù.*

下一站就是新生南路。

The next stop is *Xīnshēng Nánlù*.

6 *Hái yǒu jǐzhàn dào Zìyóu Lù?*

还有几站到自由路？

How many more stops are there to [before] *Zìyóu Lù*?

Cue 2

*Hái yǒu liǎngzhàn jiù shì Zìyóu Lù.*

还有两站就是自由路。

Two more stops, and that's *Zìyóu Lù*.

7 *Hái yǒu jǐzhàn dào Mínhēng Lù?*

还有几站到民生路？

How many more stops are there to [before] *Mínhēng Lù*?

Cue *xià*

*Xià yízhàn jiù shì Mínhēng Lù.*

下一站就是民生路。

The next stop is *Mínhēng Lù*.



## Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

- 1 Tā dào Zhōngguo qù.  
他/她到中国去。  
He/she goes to China.

Cue měinián  
每年  
every year

Tā měinián dōu dào Zhōngguo qù.  
他/她每年都到中国。  
He goes to China every year.

- 2 Tā kàn Zhōngguo diànyǐng.  
他/她看中国电影。  
He/she watches Chinese movies.

Cue yuè  
月  
month

Tā měige yuè dōu kàn Zhōngguo diànyǐng.  
他/她每个月都看中国电影。  
He/she watches Chinese movies every month.

- 3 Tā dào Niū Yuē qù.  
他/她纽约去。  
He/she goes to New-York

Cue xīngqī  
星期  
week

Tā měige xīngqī dōu dào Niū Yuē qù.  
他/她每个星期都到纽约去。  
He/she goes to New-York every week.

4 Tā dào xuéxiào lái.  
他/她到学校来。  
He/she comes to school.

Cue tiān  
天  
day

Tā měitiān dōu dào xuéxiào lái.  
他/她每天都到学校来。  
He/she comes to school every day.

5 Tā mǎi Yīngwén zázhi.  
他/她买英文杂志。  
He/she buys English magazines.

Cue Xīngqīwǔ  
星期五  
Friday

Tā měige Xīngqīwǔ dōu mǎi Yīngwén zázhi.  
他/她每个星期五都买英文杂志。  
He/she buys English magazines every Friday.

6 Tā dào cǎishíchǎng qù.  
他/她到采石场去。  
He/she goes to the market.

Cue tiān  
天  
day

Tā měitiān dōu dào cǎishíchǎng qù.  
他/她每天都到采石场去。  
He/she goes to the market every day.

7 Tā kàn bào.  
他/她看报。  
He/she reads a newspaper.

Cue

tiān

天

day

Tā měitiān dōu kàn bào.

他/她每天都看报。

He/she reads a newspaper every day.

## Unit 2

### References

#### Reference List

1. A: **Dào zhǎnlǎnguǎn yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?**  
到展覽館有沒有直達車？  
Is there a direct bus to the exhibition hall?  
B: **Méiyǒu.**  
沒有  
No
2. A: **Dào nàr qù, zuò jǐlù chē ya?**  
到那兒去，坐幾路車呀？  
What bus do you take to get there?  
B: **Zuò Yīlù chē.**  
坐一路車。  
Take the Number 1 bus.
3. B: **Zuò dào Xīdān huàn chē.**  
坐到西單換車。  
Take it to Xīdān and change buses.
4. A: **Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào?**  
咱們在哪兒買票？  
Where do we buy tickets?  
B: **Zài chēshàng mǎi piào.**  
在車上買票。  
We buy tickets on the bus.
5. B: **Hǎo, xiànzài zǒu ba!**  
好，現在走吧！  
Okay, let's go now!
6. A: **Èi! Zánmen bú shì zuòguò zhàn le ba?**  
誒！咱們不是坐過站了吧？  
Hey! Haven't we gone past our stop?  
B: **#####**  
**Hái méi ne. Xià yízhàn cǎi xià chē.**  
Not yet. We don't get off until the next stop.
7. C:<sup>a</sup> **Láojià, Shíwǔlù qìchēzhàn zài nǎr?**

勞駕，十五路汽車站在哪兒？

Excuse me, where is the Number 15 bus stop?

D: Jiù zài nèige lùkǒushang.

就在那個路口上。

It's (just) on that corner.

8. gōnggòng qìchē

公共汽車

public bus (local)

9. -li

裏

in (locational ending)

10. -shang

上

on

11. shàng bān

上班

to start work, to go to work

12. xià bān

下班

to get off from work, to leave work

<sup>a</sup>This exchange occurs on the P-1 tape only

## Vocabulary

ba	吧	(tone softener)
cái	才	then and only then, not until
gōnggòng qìchē	公共汽車	public bus (local)
-li	裏	in (locational ending)
piào (yìzhāng)	票 (一張)	ticket, coupon
qìchēzhàn	汽車站	bus stop
-shang	上	on (locational ending)
shàng bān	上班	to go to work, to start work
xià bān	下班	to get off from work, to leave work
Xīdān	西單	(a district in Běijīng)
zánmen	咱們	we (specifically includes the listener)
zhǎnlǎnguǎn	展覽館	exhibition hall
zhídáchē	直達車	direct bus, nonstop bus
zuò dào	坐到	to ride to
zuòguò	坐過	to ride past
Āndìngmén	安定門	(a neighborhood in Běijīng)
bǐjiǎo	比較	comparatively, relatively
dòngwuyuán	動物園	zoo
liǎngcì	兩次	two times, twice
Xiǎo (name)	小	Little (name) [familiar form of name among friends]
xióngmāo	熊貓	panda
zhǎnlǎn	展覽	to exhibit
zhècì	這次	this time

## Reference Notes

## Notes on №1

1. A: **Dào zhǎnlǎnguǎn yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?**  
到展覽館有沒有直達車？  
Is there a direct bus to the exhibition hall?
- B: **Méiyǒu.**  
沒有  
No

**Dào zhanlǎnguǎn** is the topic of the first sentence in exchange 1.

**Zhídáchē** refers to a city bus in exchange 1, although the word is more properly used to refer to buses between cities.

**Changed tones:** You have now learned several three-syllable words in which the middle syllable changes tone in normal fast speech. These words and the changes you hear are:

Jiānádà	加拿大		Jiānádà
Xīméndīng	西門町		Xīméndīng
zhǎnlǎnguǎn	展覽館	zhǎnlǎnguǎn	zhanlǎnguǎn
zhídáchē	直達車		zhídáchē

(For further discussion of this type of tone change, see Tone Changes in the P&R Summary.)

## Notes on №2

2. A: **Dào nàr qù, zuò jǐlù chē ya?**  
到那兒去，坐幾路車呀？  
What bus do you take to get there?
- B: **Zuò Yīlù chē.**  
坐一路車。  
Take the Number 1 bus.

**Ya** is a variant form of the marker **a**. If the word directly preceding the **a** ends in a vowel, the semivowel **y** or **w** may be inserted; the marker is then pronounced **ya** or **wa**. If the word directly preceding **a** ends in a consonant, that sound is carried forward as the initial sound of the marker: **/(consonant sound)a/**

Nǐ shì nǎrde rén /n/a?	你是哪兒的人哪？
Nǐ xìng Wáng /ng/a?	你是哪兒的人哪？
Nǐ hǎo /w/a?	你好哇？
Tā zhēn kuài /y/a!	他真快呀！

## Notes on №3

3. B: Zuò dào Xīdān huàn chē.  
 坐到西單換車。  
 Take it to Xīdān and change buses.

**Zuò dào Xīdān:** In earlier exchanges, phrases consisting of **dào** and a place word were placed before the main verb in a sentence. In this exchange, you see that **dào** + place word can also be placed after the main verb. **Dào** is toneless when it follows the verb of a sentence.

**Huàn** is used in exchange 3 for “changing” from one bus to another. It was used in earlier modules for “changing” from one currency to another.

## Notes on №4

4. A: Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào?  
 咱們在哪兒買票？  
 Where do we buy tickets?  
 B: Zài chēshàng mǎi piào.  
 在車上買票。  
 We buy tickets on the bus.

Although spelled **zánmen**, this word is actually pronounced **zámen**, and in everyday conversation even as **zám**. Both **wǒmen** and **zánmen** are translated as “we.” Most speakers of Chinese outside **Běijīng** use only **wǒmen**.

Many Chinese from **Běijīng** use the pronoun **wǒmen** only when the person being spoken to is not included in the “we.” To show that the person being spoken to IS included in the “we,” **zánmen** is used.

For instance, if everyone in a room is Chinese, any one person could say to all of the others **Zánmen dōu shì Zhōngguó rén**, “All of us are Chinese.” If an American then entered the room, someone might say to him **Wǒmen shì Zhōngguó rén, nǐ shì Měiguó rén**, “We are Chinese, and you are American.”

The phrase **zài chēshàng** consists of the verb **zài** followed by the noun **chē** plus the locational ending **-shàng**. Some verbs like **zài** must be followed by a place word or phrase (or by time words or phrases). But not all nouns which refer to things which occupy space can be used as place words. You must learn which words can function as place words and which cannot.

**Zhèr, nàr**, relative location words (**zuǒbianr, dōngbianr, wàibianr**, etc.), and names of cities and countries may be used as place words. In general, nouns which refer to buildings, institutions, organizations, parks, and other specific locations may be used as place words. Nouns which refer to vehicles, people, books, furniture, and other things, that can be moved around are NOT considered place words. When a noun from this group is to be used in a phrase with **zài**, either a locational ending is added to the noun or the place word **zhèr** or **nàr** follows it.

Zài zhuōzishàng yǒu hěn duō shū.

在桌子上有很多書。

There are many books on the table.

Tā zài nèige zhuōzi nàr niàn shū.



他在那個桌子哪兒念書。

He studies at that table.

Locational endings: -shang, “on”; -li, “in”; -wài, “outside”; and -xià, “under,” are locational endings.

Tā zài lóuxià mǎi dōngxi.

他在樓下買東西。

He is buying things downstairs.

Fàndiànli yǒu méiyǒu mài tángde?

飯店裏有沒有賣糖的？

Is there a place to buy candy in the hotel?

You have learned three generally equivalent ways to form place expressions: noun + locational ending; noun followed by relative location word; noun + de followed by relative location word.

Tā	zài	mén-		-wài		děng	ni.
Tā	zài	mén		wài-	bianr	děng	ni.
Tā	zài	mén	-de	wài-	bianr	děng	ni.

### Notes on №5

5. B: Hǎo, xiànzài zǒu ba!

好，現在走吧！

Okay, let's go now!

Ba: You have seen the marker **ba** used in different situations at the ends of sentences. In each case, however, its effect was to soften the impact of whatever the speaker was saying. Here is a summary of the uses you have seen:

a. After a phrase which puts forth an opinion or guess, **ba** adds a questioning tone (BIO, Unit 2).

Tā dàgài bù lái le ba?

他大概不來了吧？

He's probably not coming after all, is he?

Nǐ shì Wèi Shàoxiào ba?

你是魏少校吧？

You must be Major Weiss.

b. After a statement which puts forth a course of action, **ba** softens the tone. **Ba** may be used at the end of a sentence with a meaning ranging anywhere from tentative and consulting to suggesting or advising to requesting or ordering. (The tone of **ba** sentences varies according to the person being spoken to, the speaker's tone of voice, and other words, such as **qǐng**, “please,” in a sentence.) (MON, Unit 3)

Nǐ zǒu ba!

你走吧！
Leave! (ORDERING)
Nǐ hǎohǎor xiǎngxiang ba!
你好好兒想想吧！
You think it over carefully! (ADVISING)
Qǐng ba!
請吧！
Please go ahead! (INVITING)
Zánmen zǒu ba.
咱們走吧。
Let's go. (SUGGESTING)
Wǒ mǎi dàde ba.
我買大的吧。
I guess I'll get the large one. (TENTATIVE AND CONSULTING)

There is no single way to translate this use of *ba*. In the examples above, you can see that when the subject is “you,” *ba* goes untranslated; when the subject is “we,” *ba* is translated as “let’s”; and when the subject is “I,” *ba* is translated as “I guess.”

### Notes on №6

6. A: Èi! Zánmen bú shì zuòguò zhàn le ba?  
 誒！咱們不是坐過站了吧？  
 Hey! Haven't we gone past our stop?
- B: 還沒呢。下一站才下車。  
 Hái méi ne. Xià yízhàn cái xià chē.  
 Not yet. We don't get off until the next stop.

**Bú shì:** Below are some examples of affirmative questions and their negative counterparts (using *bú shì*). Notice that in the two negative examples *shì* means something like “to be the case that....”

Tā yǐjīng zǒu le ba?
他已經走了吧。
Has he already gone?
Tā bú shì yǐjīng zǒu le ba?
他不是已經走了吧？
Hasn't he already gone? (isn't it the case that he has already gone?)

Tā zhù zài Shànghǎi ma?

她住在上海嗎？

Does she live in Shànghǎi?

Tā bú shì zhù zài Shànghǎi ma?

她不是住在上海嗎？

Doesn't she live in Shànghǎi? (Isn't it the case that she lives in Shànghǎi?)

**Zuòguò le:** To the main verb *zuò*, “to ride,” “to take,” the ending *-guò* is added to indicate the result of the action—“going past/too far.” (The full verb *guò* means “to pass,” “to cross.”) The ending *-guò* may also be added to the verb *zǒu*, “to go,” to indicate result.

Òu, nǐ zhǎo Nánwèi Hútong! Nǐ zǒuguò le! Nǐ děi wàng huí zǒu.

哦，你找南緯胡同！你坐過了！你得往回走。

Oh, you are looking for Nánwèi Hútong. You have walked past it. You will have to go back.

**Aspect marker *le*:** You have frequently seen an aspect marker used to indicate a CHANGE: completion *le* shows that an action or process has been carried out (*Tā zǒu le*, “He has left”); new situation *le* marks a change in the past, present, or future (*Tāde dàyī pòle*, “His coat is worn out”). In exchange 6, the aspect marker *le* indicates the ABSENCE OF CHANGE. In this exchange, *le* emphasizes that there has been no change in the situation. You may want to think of *le* as the opposite of *le*.

The marker *le* is used with ACTION and STATE verbs.

Tā xiànzài niàn shū le.

他現在念書呢。

He is studying now.

Tā zài zhèr le.

他在這兒呢。

He's here.

Zhèzhī bǐ hái kěyǐ xiě le.

這支筆還可以寫呢。

This pen is still good (can still write).

**Hái,** “still,” “yet”: When this adverb is used, the sentence very often ends with the marker *le*.

Míngtiān wǒ hái bù zǒu le.

明天我還沒走呢。

I'm not leaving tomorrow (yet). (i.e., I'll still be here tomorrow.)

Tā hái méi lái le.

他還沒來呢。

He hasn't come yet.

**Cái** means “then and only then” or “not until then.” It is used to talk about something that has happened or will happen later than expected.

Wǒmen míngtiān cái zǒu.

我們明天才走。

We don't leave until tomorrow.

Sentences in which **cái** is used emphasize when something happened, rather than the fact that it happened. Therefore **(shi)...-de**, not **le**, is used to indicate completed action.

Tā (shì) bādiǎn zhōng cái lái de.

他是八點鐘才來的。

He didn't come until eight o'clock.

Wǒ zuótiān cái dào de.

我昨天才到的。

I didn't arrive until yesterday.

Notice that the **shi** in the **shi...-de** construction may be omitted. Also, **cái** is placed AFTER a time word or phrase and BEFORE the verb.

You have learned three words for “then”: **jiù**, **zài**, **cái**. **Jiù** is used for action taking place earlier than expected. **Cái** and **zài** imply that something happens later than expected. **Cái** and **jiù** are used in descriptions of completed or future action. **Zài** is used mostly for plans, suggestions, and commands—in reference to future actions.

Tā zuótiān jiù dào le.

他昨天就到了。

He arrived yesterday (already).

Tā (shì) zuótiān cái lái de.

他是昨天才來的。

He didn't come until yesterday.

Nǐ míngtiān zài zǒu ba!

你明天再走吧。

Don't go until tomorrow!

Notice that, in the description of past events, most sentences containing **jiù** also contain the completion **le** marker.

### Notes on №7

7. C: Láojià, Shíwǔlù qìchēzhàn zài nǎr?  
勞駕，十五路汽車站在哪兒？

Excuse me, where is the Number 15 bus stop?  
D: Jiù zài nèige lùkǒushang.  
就在那個路口上。  
It's (just) on that corner.

Lùkǒushang, literally “on the intersection”: Lùkǒu means “road mouth,” a crossroads or intersection. The word is a place-word expression and may follow zài with or without the locational ending -shang.

## Drills

### Substitution drill

Substitute according to the cue and the model.

1. **Dào Běijīng Zhǎnlǎnguǎn yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?**

到北京展览馆有没有直达车？

Is there a direct train to Beijing Exhibition Center?

Cue

**Mínzú Fàndiàn**

民族饭店

Ethnic Hotel

**Dào Mínzú Fàndiàn yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?**

到民族饭店有没有直达车？

Is there a direct bus to the Nationalities Hotel?

2. **Dào Mínzú Fàndiàn yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?**

到民族饭店有没有直达车？

Is there a direct train to National People's Hotel?

Cue

**Sānlítún**

三里屯

Sānlítún

**Dào Sānlítún yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?**

到三里屯有没有直达车？

Is there a direct train to Sānlítún?

3. **Dào Sānlítún yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?**

到三里屯有没有直达车？

Is there a direct train to Sānlítún ?

Cue

**Xīdān**

西单

Xīdān

**Dào Xīdān yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?**

到西单有没有直达车？

Is there a direct train to Xīdān?

4. Dào Xīdān yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到西单有没有直达车？

Is there a direct train to Xīdān?

Cue Dōngdān Càishìchǎng  
东单菜市场  
Dōngdān Market

Dào Dōngdān Càishìchǎng yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到东单菜市场有没有直达车？

Is there a direct train to Dōngdān Market?

5. Dào Dōngdān Càishìchǎng yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到东单菜市场有没有直达车？

Is there a direct train to Dōngdān Market?

Cue Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn  
东单电影院  
Dōngdān Cinema

Dào Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到东单电影院有没有直达车？

Is there a direct train to Dōngdān cinema?

6. Dào Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到东单电影院有没有直达车？

Is there a direct train to Dōngdān cinema?

Cue Jiānádà Wǔguānchù  
加拿大武官处  
Canadian Embassy

Dào Jiānádà Wǔguānchù yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到加拿大武官处有没有直达车？

Is there a direct train to Canada Military Office?

7. Dào Jiānádà Wǔguānchù yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到加拿大武官处有没有直达车？

Is there a direct train to Canada Military Office?

Cue

Sǎnlítún

三里屯

Sǎnlítún

Dào Sǎnlítún yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到三里屯有没有直达车？

Is there a direct train to Sǎnlítún?



## Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Dào Běijīng Zhǎnlǎnguǎn yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到北京展览馆有没有直达车？

is there a direct bus to the Běijīng Exhibition Hall?

Cue

Xīdān

西单

Xīdān

Méiyǒu, děi zài Xīdān huàn chē.

没有，得在西单换车。

There isn't. You have to change buses at Xīdān.

2. Dào Sānlítún yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到三里屯有没有直达车？

Is there a direct bus to Sānlítún?

Cue

Dōngdān

东单

Dōngdān

Méiyǒu, děi zài Dōngdān huàn chē.

没有，得在东单换车。

No, you have to change the bus in Dōngdān.

3. Dào Guānghuá Lù yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到光华路有没有直达车？

Is there a direct bus to Guānghuá Road?

Cue

tāmen nàr

他们那儿

by them

Méiyǒu, děi zài tāmen nàr huàn chē.

没有，得在他们那儿换车。

4. Dào Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuan yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到东单有没有直达车？

Is there a direct bus to Dōngdān?

Cue

Qiánmén

前门

Qiánmén

Méiyǒu, děi zài Qiánmén huàn chē.

没有，得在前门换车。

No, you have to change the bus.

5. Dào Jiānádà Wǔguānchù yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到武官处有没有直达车？

Is there a direct bus to Wǔguān Beach?

Cue

Xīdān

西单

Xīdān

Méiyǒu, děi zài Xīdān huàn chē.

没有，得在西单换车。

No, you have to change at Xīdān.

6. Dào Qiánmén yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到前门有没有直达车？

Is there any direct bus to Qiánmén?

Cue

Dōngdān

东单

Dōngdān

Méiyǒu, děi zài Dōngdān huàn chē.

没有，得在东单换车。

No, you have to change the bus in Dōngdān.

7. Dào Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?

到王府井大街有没有直达车？

Is there a direct bus to Wángfǔjǐng Street?

Cue

càishichǎng nàr

菜市场

by the market

Méiyǒu, děi zài càishichǎng nàr huàn chē.

没有，得在菜市场换车。

No, have to change the bus at the food market.

## Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. dào nàr qù  
到那儿去  
to go there

Cue jǐ  
几  
what number

Dào nàr qù zuò jǐlù chē?  
到那儿去坐几路车?  
What [number] bus do you take to go there?

2. dào zhǎnlǎnguǎn qù  
到展览馆去  
to go to the exhibition hall

Cue 3  
3  
3

Dào zhǎnlǎnguǎn qù zuò Sānlù chē.  
到展览馆去坐三路车。  
To go to the exhibition hall, take the Number 3 bus.

3. dào Dōngdān qù  
到东单去  
to do to Dōngdān

Cue 3  
3  
3

Dào Dōngdān qù zuò Sānlù chē.  
到东单去坐三路车。  
To go to Dōngdān take the Number 3 bus.

4. dào nàr qù  
到那儿去  
to go there

Cue jǐ  
几  
what number

Dào nàr qù zuò jǐlù chē?  
到那儿去坐几路车？  
What [number] bus do you take to go there?

5. dào Xīnhuá Shūdiàn qù  
到新华书店去  
to go to the Xīnhuá bookstore

Cue 1  
1  
1

Dào Xīnhuá Shūdiàn qù zuò Yīlù chē.  
到新华书店去坐一路车。  
To go to Xīnhuá bookstore take the Number 1 bus.

6. dào Sānlǐtún qù  
到三里屯去  
to go to Sānlǐtún

Cue 5  
5  
5

Dào Sānlǐtún qù zuò Wǔlù chē.  
到三里屯去五路车。  
To go to Sānlǐtún, take the Number 5 bus.

7. dào Dōngdān Càishíchǎng qù  
到东单菜市场去  
to go to Dōngdān vegetable market

Cue

jǐ

几

what number

Dào Dōngdān Càishichǎng qù zuò jǐlù chē?

到东单菜市场去坐几路车？

What [number] bus do you take to go to Dōngdān vegetable market.

## Response drill

### Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Nín xiān zuò Yīlù chē, zuò dao Xīdān huàn chē.

您先坐一路车，坐到西单换车。

You first take the Number 1 bus. Take it to Xīdān and change buses.

Wǒ xiān zuò Yīlù chē, zuò dao Xīdān huàn chē, duì bu duì?

我先坐一路车，坐到西单换车，对不对。

I first take the Number 1 bus. I take it to Xīdān and change buses. Right?

2. Nín xiān zuò Sānlù chē, zuò dao Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē huàn chē.

您先坐三路车，坐到王府井大街换车。

You first take the Number 3. Take it to Wángfǔjǐng boulevard and change buses.

Wǒ xiān zuò Sānlù chē, zuò dao Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē huàn chē, duì bu duì?

我先坐三路车，坐到王府井大街换车，对不对。

I first take the Number 3 bus. I take it to Wángfǔjǐng and change buses. Right?

3. Nín xiān zuò Liùlù chē, zuò dao Dōngdān huàn chē.

您先坐六路车，坐到东单换车。

You first take the Number 6. Take it to Dōngdān and change buses.

Wǒ xiān zuò Liùlù chē, zuò dao Dōngdān huàn chē, duì bu duì?

我先坐六路车，坐到东单换车，对不对。

I first take the Number 6 bus. I take it to Dōngdān and change buses. Right?

4. Nín xiān zuò Wǔlù chē, zuò dao Qiánmén huàn chē.

您先坐五路车，坐到前门换车。

You first take the Number 5. Take it to Qiánmén and change buses.

Wǒ xiān zuò Wǔlù chē, zuò dao huàn chē, duì bu duì?

我先坐五路车，坐到前门换车，对不对。

I first take the Number 5 bus. I take it to Qiánmén and change buses. Right?

5. Nín xiān zuò Shílù chē, zuò dao Sānlǐtǔn huàn chē.

您先坐十路车，坐到三里屯换车。

You first take the Number 10. Take it to Sānlǐtǔn and change buses.

Wǒ xiān zuò Shí lù chē, zuò dào Sān lǐ tún huàn chē, duì bu duì?

我先坐十路车，坐到三里屯换车，对不对。

I first take the Number 10 bus. I take it to Sānlǐtūn and change buses. Right?

6. Nín xiān zuò Qī lù chē, zuò dào Rì tán lù huàn chē.

您先坐七路车，坐到日坛路换车。

You first take the Number 7. Take it to Temple Road

and change buses. Wǒ xiān zuò Qī lù chē, zuò dào Rì tán lù huàn chē, duì bu duì?

我先坐七路车，坐到日坛路换车，对不对。

I first take the Number 7 bus. I take it to Temple Road and change buses. Right?

7. Nín xiān zuò Shí èr lù chē, zuò dào Guānghuá lù huàn chē.

您先坐十二路车，坐到光华路换车。

You first take the Number 12. Take it to Guānghuá road

and change buses. Wǒ xiān zuò Shí èr lù chē, zuò dào Guānghuá lù huàn chē, duì bu duì?

我先坐十二路车，坐到光华路换车，对不对。

I first take the Number 12 bus. I take it to Guānghuá road and change buses. Right?



## Response drill

### Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Dào nàr qù xiān zuò Sānlù chē, ránhòu zuò Wǔlù chē.

到那儿去先坐三路车，然后坐五路车。

To go there, first take the Number 3 bus; then take the Number 5 bus.

Wǒ xiān zuò Sānlù chē, ránhòu zuò Wǔlù chē. Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr huàn chē?

我先坐三路车，然后坐五路车。请问，在哪儿换车？

I first take the Number 3 bus; then take the Number 5 bus. May I ask, where do I change buses?

2. Dào Zhǎnlǎnguǎn qù xiān zuò Yīlù chē, ránhòu zuò Sìlù chē.

到展览馆去先坐一路车，然后坐四路车。

To go to Zhǎnlǎnguǎn, first take the Number 1 bus; then take the Number 4 bus.

Wǒ xiān zuò Yīlù chē, ránhòu zuò Sìlù chē. Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr huàn chē?

我先坐一路车，然后坐四路车。请问，在哪儿换车？

I first take the Number 1 bus; then take the Number 4 bus. May I ask, where do I change buses?

3. Dào Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē qù xiān zuò Èrlù chē, ránhòu zuò Wǔlù chē.

到王府井大街去先坐二路车，然后坐五路车。

To go to Wángfǔjǐng boulevard, first take the Number 2 bus; then take the Number 5 bus.

Wǒ xiān zuò Èrlù chē, ránhòu zuò Wǔlù chē. Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr huàn chē?

我先坐二路车，然后坐五路车。请问，在哪儿换车？

I first take the Number 2 bus; then take the Number 5 bus. May I ask, where do I change buses?

4. Dào Rìtán Lù qù xiān zuò Qīlù chē, ránhòu zuò Sānlù chē.

到日坛路去先坐七路车，然后坐三路车。

To go to Rìtán Road, first take the Number 7 bus; then take the Number "" bus.

Wǒ xiān zuò Qīlù chē, ránhòu zuò Sānlù chē. Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr huàn chē?

我坐七路车，然后坐三路车。请问，在哪儿换车？

I first take the Number 7 bus; then take the Number 3 bus. May I ask, where do I change buses?

5. Dào Sānlǐtún qù xiān zuò Liùlù chē, ránhòu zuò Èrlù chē.

到三里屯去先坐六路车，然后坐二路车。

To go to Sānlǐtún, first take the Number 6 bus; then take the Number 2 bus.

Wǒ xiān zuò Liùlù chē, ránhòu zuò Èrlù chē. Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr huàn chē?

我坐六路车，然后坐二路车。请问，在哪儿换车？

I first take the Number 6 bus; then take the Number 2 bus. May I ask, where do I change buses?

6. Dào Rìtán Lù qù xiān zuò Shílù chē, ránhòu zuò Qīlù chē.

到日坛路去先坐十路车，然后坐七路车。

To go to Rìtán Road, first take the Number 10 bus; then take the Number 7 bus.

Wǒ xiān zuò Shílù chē, ránhòu zuò Qīlù chē. Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr huàn chē?

我先坐十路车，然后坐七路车。请问，在哪儿换车？

I first take the Number 10 bus; then take the Number 7 bus. May I ask, where do I change buses?

7. Dào Xīdān qù xiān zuò Shíwulù chē, ránhòu zuò Liùlù chē.

到西单去先坐十五路车，然后坐六路车。

To go to Xīdān, first take the Number 15 bus; then take the Number 6 bus.

Wǒ xiān zuò Shíwulù chē, ránhòu zuò Liùlù chē. Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr huàn chē?

我先坐十五路车，然后坐六路车。请问，在哪儿换车？

I first take the Number 15 bus; then take the Number 6 bus. May I ask, where do I change buses?

## Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào?  
咱们在哪儿买票？  
Where do we buy tickets?

Cue chēshang  
车上  
on the bus

Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào? Zài chēshang mǎi piào ma?  
咱们在哪儿买票？在车上买票吗？  
Where do we buy tickets? Do we buy them on the bus?

2. Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào?  
咱们在哪儿买票？  
Where do we buy tickets?

Cue zhèr  
这儿  
here

Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào? Zài zhèr mǎi piào ma?  
咱们在哪儿买票？在这儿买票吗？  
Where do we buy tickets? Do we buy them here?

3. Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào?  
咱们在哪儿买票？  
Where do we buy tickets?

Cue nàr  
那儿  
there

Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào? Zài nàr mǎi piào ma?  
咱们在哪儿买票？在那儿买票吗？  
Where do we buy tickets? Do we buy them there?

4. Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào?  
咱们在哪儿买票？  
Where do we buy tickets?

Cue Dōngdān nàr  
东单那儿  
at Dōngdān

Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào? Zài Dōngdān nàr mǎi piào ma?  
咱们在哪儿买票？在东单那儿买票吗？  
Where do we buy tickets? Do we buy them at Dōngdān?

5. Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào?  
咱们在哪儿买票？  
Where do we buy tickets?

Cue chēshang  
车上  
on the bus

Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào? Zài chēshang mǎi piào ma?  
咱们在哪儿买票？在车上买票吗？  
Where do we buy tickets? Do we buy them on the bus?

6. Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào?  
咱们在哪儿买票？  
Where do we buy tickets?

Cue càishichǎng nàr  
菜市场  
at the vegetable market

Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào? Zài càishichǎng nàr mǎi piào ma?  
咱们在哪儿买票？在菜市场买票吗？  
Where do we buy tickets? Do we buy them at the vegetable market?

7. Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào?  
咱们在哪儿买票？  
Where do we buy tickets?

Cue

Xīdān nàr  
西单那儿  
at Xīdān

Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào? Zài Xīdān nàr mǎi piào ma?

咱们在哪儿买票？在西单那儿买票吗？

Where do we buy tickets? Do we buy them at Xīdān?

## Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

1. Zánmen jiǔdiǎn zhōng shàng ban.

咱们九点钟上班。

We start work at nine o'clock.

Zánmen jiǔdiǎn zhōng cái shàng bān.

咱们九点钟才上班。

We don't start work until nine o'clock.

2. Wǒmen wǔdiǎnbàn xià bān.

我们五点半下班。

We start work at 5 o'clock.

Wǒmen wǔdiǎnbàn cái xià bān.

我们五点半下班。

We'll not get off work until half past five.

3. Wǒmen xià yízhàn xià chē.

我们下一站才下车。

We get off at the next stop.

Wǒmen xià yízhàn cái xià chē.

我们下一站才下车。

We don't get off until the next stop.

4. Yínháng jiǔdiǎn zhōng kāi mén.

银行九点钟开门。

The bank opens at nine o'clock.

Yínháng jiǔdiǎn zhōng cái kāi mén.

银行九点钟才开门。

The bank doesn't open until nine o'clock.

5. Wǒmen xià yízhàn huàn chē.

我们下一站换车。

We change trains at the next stop.

Wǒmen xià yízhàn cái huàn chē.

我们下一站才换车。

We'll not change trains until the next stop.

6. Tāmen liùdiǎn zhōng xià ban.

他们六点钟下班。

They get off work at six o'clock.

Tāmen liùdiǎn zhōng cái xià ban.

他们六点钟才下班。

They don't get off work until six o'clock.

7. Tāmen shídiǎn zhōng shàng ban.

他们十点钟才上班。

They don't go to work until ten o'clock.

Tāmen shídiǎn zhōng cái shàng ban.

他们十点钟才上班。

They don't go to work until ten o'clock.

## Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Nánjīng Dōnglù dào le ma?  
 南京东路到了吗?  
 Have we reached Nánjīng Dōnglù?

Cue hǎi méi ne  
 还没呢  
 Not yet

Hǎi méi ne. Xià yízhàn cái xià chē.  
 还没呢。下一站才下车。  
 Not yet. We don't get off until the next stop.

2. Nánjīng Dōnglù dào le ma?  
 南京东路到了吗?  
 Have we reached Nánjīng Dōnglù?

Cue dào le  
 到了  
 already arrived

Dào le. Wǒmen zài zhèr xià chē.  
 到了。我们在这儿下车。  
 We have already arrived. We get off here.

3. Zhōnghuá Lù dào le ma?  
 中华路到了吗?  
 Have we reached Zhōnghuá Road?

Cue hái méi ne  
 还没呢  
 Not yet

Hái méi ne. Xià yízhàn cái xià chē.  
 还没呢。下一站才下车。  
 Not yet. We don't get off until the next stop.



4. Dàilǐ Jiē dào le ma?  
大理街到了吗?  
Have we reached Dàilǐ Street?

Cue dào le  
到了  
already arrived

Dào le. Wǒmen zài zhèr xià chē.  
到了。我们在这儿下车。  
We have already arrived. We get off here.

5. Zhōngshān Běilù dào le ma?  
中山北路到了吗?  
Have we reached Zhōngshān Běilù?

Cue hái méi ne  
还没呢  
Not yet

Hái méi ne. Xià yízhàn cái xià chē.  
还没呢。下一站才下车。  
Not yet. We don't get off until the next stop.

6. Héping Xīlù dào le ma?  
和平西路到了吗?  
Have we reached Héping Xīlù?

Cue dào le  
到了  
already arrived

Dào le. Wǒmen zài zhèr xià chē.  
到了。下车。  
We have already arrived. We get off here.

7. Jīlóng Lù dào le ma?  
基隆街到了吗?  
Have we reached Jīlóng Road?

Cue

hái méi ne

还没呢

Not yet

Hái méi ne. Xià yízhàn cái xià chē.

还没呢。下车。下一站才下车。

Not yet. We don't get off until the next stop.

## Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Qǐngwèn Shíwǔlù qìchēzhàn zài nǎr?

请问十五路站在哪儿？

May I ask, where is the Number 15 bus stop?

Cue

nèige lùkǒushàng

那个路口上

on that corner

Jiù zài nèige lùkǒushàng.

就在那个路口上。

it's [just] on that corner.

2. Qǐngwèn Shísìlù qìchēzhàn zài nǎr?

请问十四路汽车站在哪儿？

May I ask, where is No. 14 bus stop?

Cue

nèige dàlóu nàr

那个大楼那儿

right there by that building

Jiù zài nèige dàlóu nàr.

就在那个大楼那儿。

it's [just] right there by that building.

3. Qǐngwèn Liùlù qìchēzhàn zài nǎr?

请问六路汽车站在哪儿？

May I ask, where is No. 6 bus stop?

Cue

lùde nèibian

路德那边

over the road

Jiù zài lùde nèibian.

就在路德那边。

it's [just] over the road.

4. Qǐngwèn, Yīlù qìchēzhàn zài nǎr?  
请问一路汽车站在哪儿?  
May I ask, where is No 1 bus stop?

Cue nèige yínháng qiánbian  
那个银行前边  
front of the bank

Jiù zài nèige yínháng qiánbian.  
就在那个银行前边。  
it's [just] in the front of the bank.

5. Qǐngwèn, Sānlù qìchēzhàn zài nǎr?  
请问三路汽车站在哪儿?  
May I ask, where is No 3 bus stop?

Cue nèige shāngdiàn nàr  
那个商店那儿  
by that shop there

Jiù zài nèige shāngdiàn nàr.  
就在那个商店那儿。  
it's [just] by that shop there.

6. Qǐngwèn, Qīlù qìchēzhàn zài nǎr?  
请问七路汽车站在哪儿?  
May I ask, where is No 7 bus stop?

Cue cài shì chǎng qiánbian  
菜市场前边  
front of the vegetable market

Jiù zài nèige cài shì chǎng qiánbian.  
就在菜市场前边。  
it's [just] in front of the vegetable market.

7. Qǐngwèn, Shílù qìchēzhàn zài nǎr?  
请问十路汽车站在哪儿?  
May I ask, where is No 10 bus stop?

Cue

nèige diànyǐngyuàn qiánbian

那个电影院前边

front of the movie theater

Jiù zài nèige diànyǐngyuàn qiánbian.

就在那个电影院前边。

it's [just] in the front of the movie theater.

## Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Tā jǐdiǎn zhōng lái? Tā jiǔdiǎn zhōng lái ma?

他/她几点钟来？他/她九点钟来吗？

What time is he/she/she coming? Is He/she coming at nine o'clock?

Cue

bā diǎn zhōng

八点钟

8 o'clock

Tā shuō tā bādiǎn zhōng jiù lái.

他/她说他/她八点钟来。

He/she says He/she is coming at eight o'clock.

2. Tā jǐdiǎn zhōng lái? Tā jiǔdiǎn zhōng lái ma?

他/她几点钟来？他/她九点钟来吗？

What time is he/she/she coming? Is He/she coming at nine o'clock?

Cue

shí diǎn zhōng

十点钟

10 o'clock

Tā shuō tā shídiǎn zhōng cái lái ne.

他/她说他/她十点钟才来呢。

He/she says He/she isn't coming until ten o'clock.

3. Tā jǐdiǎn zhōng lái? Tā sìdiǎn zhōng lái ma?

他/她几点钟来？他/她四点钟来吗？

What time is he/she/she coming? Is He/she coming at 4 o'clock?

Cue

wǔ diǎn zhōng

五点钟

5 o'clock

Tā shuō tā wǔdiǎn zhōng cái lái ne.

他/她说他/她五点钟才来呢。

He/she says He/she isn't coming until 5 o'clock.

4. Tā jǐdiǎn zhōng lái? Tā yídiǎn zhōng lái ma?  
他/她几点钟来？他/她一点钟来吗？  
What time is he/she/she coming?Is He/she coming at one o'clock?

Cue shí èr diǎn zhōng  
十二点中  
12 o'clock

Tā shuō tā shíèrdiǎn zhōng jiù lái.  
他/她说他/她十二点钟才来呢。  
He/she says He/she isn't coming until 12 o'clock.

5. Tā jǐdiǎn zhōng lái? Tā bādiǎn zhōng lái ma?  
他/她几点钟来？他/她八点钟来吗？  
What time is he/she/she coming?Is He/she coming at 8 o'clock?

Cue qī diǎn zhōng  
七点中  
7 o'clock

Tā shuō tā qīdiǎn zhōng jiù lái.  
他/他说他/她七点钟才来呢。  
He/she says He/she isn't coming until 7 o'clock.

6. Tā jǐdiǎn zhōng lái? Tā liùdiǎn zhōng lái ma?  
他/她几点钟来？他/她六点钟来吗？  
What time is he/she/she coming?Is He/she coming at 6 o'clock?

Cue bā diǎn zhōng  
八点钟  
8 o'clock

Tā shuō tā bādiǎn zhōng cái lái ne.  
他/她说他/她八点钟才来呢。  
He/she says He/she isn't coming until 8 o'clock.

7. Tā jǐdiǎn zhōng lái? Tā shídiǎn zhōng lái ma?  
他/她几点钟来？他/她十点钟来吗？  
What time is he/she/she coming?Is He/she coming at 10 o'clock?

Cue

shí yī diǎn zhōng

十一点钟

11 o'clock

Tā shuō tā shíyīdiǎn zhōng cái lái ne.

他/她说他/她十一点钟才来呢。

He/she says He/she isn't coming until 11 o'clock.



## Unit 3

### References

#### Reference List

1. A: Ài, jìchéngchē!  
哎，計程車！  
Hey, taxi!  
B: Ní dào nǎlǐ?  
你到哪兒？  
Where are you going?  
A: Dào huǒchēzhàn.  
到火車站。  
To the train station.
2. \*B: Zhǐ yǒu zhè yíjiàn xíngli ma?  
只有這一件行李嗎？  
Is there only this one piece of luggage?  
A: Shì.  
是。  
Yes.
3. \*B: Wǒ bǎ xíngli fàng zài qiánbian.  
我把行李放在前邊。  
I'll put the suitcase in front.
4. A: Nǐ kāide tài kuài le!  
你開得太快了！  
You are driving too fast!
5. C: Tā kāi chē, kāide bú kuài.  
他開車，開得不快。  
He doesn't drive fast.
6. A: Wǒmen yǒu shíjiān, láidejí.  
我們有時間，來得及。  
We have time. We can make it in time.
7. A: Qǐng màn yídiǎn kāi.  
輕慢一點開。  
Please drive a little slower.
8. \*\* A: Bié kāi nàme kuài!

9. B: 別開那麼快！  
Don't drive so fast!  
Zhè shì nín de xínglǐ.  
這是您的行李。  
Here is your suitcase.  
A: Xièxie. Duōshao qián?  
謝謝，多少錢？  
Thank you. How much is it [the fare]?  
B: Èrshíqīkuài.  
二十七塊。  
Twenty-seven dollars.  
A: Zhè shì sānshíkuài, bú yòng zhǎo le.  
這是三十塊，不用找了。  
Here's thirty dollars. Keep the change. (literally, "No need to give me change.")
10. A: Qǐng nǐ zài qiánbian nèige yínháng tíng yíxià.  
請你在前邊那個銀行停一下。  
Please stop at that bank up ahead for a moment.  
B: Hǎo. Wǒ bǎ chē tíng zài nèibian děng nín.  
好。我把車停在那邊等您。  
Okay. I'll park the car over there and wait for you.
11. chūzū qìchē  
出租汽車  
taxi (PRC)
12. lái bù jí  
來不及  
can't make it in time
13. qìchē  
汽車  
car, motor vehicle
14. zhème  
這麼  
so, to this extent, in this way
15. zènme  
怎麼  
so, to this extent, in this way

## Vocabulary

bǎ	把	(prepositional verb which indicates the direct object)
bié	別	don't
bú yòng	不	no need to
chūzū qìchē	出租汽車	taxi (PRC)
fàng	放	to put
huǒchēzhàn	火車站	train station
-jiàn	件	(counter for items or articles such as suitcases and clothing)
jìchéngchē	計程車	taxi (Taipei)
kāi	開	to drive (a vehicle)
kuài	快	to be fast
láibují	來不及	can't make it in time
láidejí	來得及	can make it in time
màn	慢	to be slow
nàme	那麼	so, to that extent, in that way
qìchē	汽車	car, motor vehicle
shíjiān	時間	time
tíng	停	to stop, to park
xíngli (yíjiàn)	行李	luggage, suitcase
yíxià	一下	a short amount of time
zènme	怎麼	so, to this extent, in this way
zhème	這麼	so, to this extent, in this way
chī fàn	吃飯	to have a meal
jìnliàng	盡量	to exert all one's effort, to do one's best to
Lǎo (name)	老	Old (name) [familiar nickname for an older person among close friends]
mótuōchē	摩托車	motorcycle
náchūqu	拿出去	to take (something) out
sòng	送	to see someone off, to escort someone to a train station, airport, bus depot, or pier
Zhèng hǎo.	正好	Right on time.

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1

1. A: Ài, jìchéngchē!  
哎，計程車！  
Hey, taxi!
- B: Nǐ dào nǎlǐ?  
你到哪兒？  
Where are you going?
- A: Dào huǒchēzhàn.  
到火車站。  
To the train station.

Nǐ dào nǎlǐ? This expression, like the English “Where to?” is not a full sentence. The taxi driver is using a shortened form of Nǐ dào nǎlǐ qù?

### Notes on №2-3

2. B:<sup>a</sup> Zhǐ yǒu zhè yíjiàn xíngli ma?  
只有這一件行李嗎？  
Is there only this one piece of luggage?
- A: Shì.  
是。  
Yes.
3. B: Wǒ bǎ xíngli fàng zài qiánbian.  
我把行李放在前邊。  
I'll put the suitcase in front.

<sup>a</sup>An object which follows the verb is nonspecific unless marked as specific with zhèi or nèi.

Zhè yíjiàn xíngli: -jiàn is the counter for xíngli.

Bǎ is a prepositional verb which often cannot be directly translated into English. Originally, as a full verb, bǎ meant “to hold something with one’s hands.” Today bǎ is usually used as a prepositional verb which brings the direct object to the front of the sentence, before the main verb. In some cases, bǎ may be translated as “take.”

Tā bǎ zhèběn shū fàng zài zhuōzishang.

他把這本書放在桌子上。

He put the book on the table. (He took the book and put it on the table.)

But, in many cases, the meaning of “take” does not correspond to the function of bǎ in the sentence.

Bǎ may be used with many types of objects, concrete and abstract. As a prepositional verb, bǎ shows that its object (the noun which follows) is the direct object in the sentence, even though it does not follow the main verb.

Tā mài tāde qìchē le.	He sold his car.
他賣他的汽車了。	
Tā bǎ tāde qìchē mài le.	
他把他的汽車賣了	

The next questions are “Why use *bǎ*?” and “When is *bǎ* used?” On the next page are some basic rules for using *bǎ*.

- a. The object in a *bǎ* phrase must be a particular known thing. This rule follows the general pattern in Chinese of an object preceding the verb, in topic position or in a *bǎ* phrase, being specific.\* The object in a *bǎ* phrase should be translated by the English definite article “the” or by other words that indicate definiteness, such as “that” and “my.”

Nǐ yǒu xínglǐ ma?
你有行李嗎？
Do you have any luggage?
Yǒu. Zhǐ yǒu zhè yíjiàn.
有。只有這一件。
Yes. I have only this one piece.
Hǎo. Wǒ bǎ xínglǐ fàngzài qiánbian.
好。我把行李放在前邊。
Okay. I will put the suitcase in front.

- b. The object of a *bǎ* phrase must be at the disposal of the subject before the action begins. Thus the object of *kànjian*, “to see,” cannot be used with *bǎ*, nor can the object of *mǎi*, “to buy.”

Wǒ mǎile nàiběn shū.
我買了那本書。
I bought the book.
Wǒ bǎ nàiběn shū mài le.
我把那本書賣了。
I sold the book.

- c. *Fàng zài qiánbian*: The verb in a *bǎ* sentence is usually a transitive ACTION verb. An action verb refers to an activity that can be done voluntarily, either physically (*mài*, “to sell”) or mentally (*niàn*, “to study”). Contrast this with a state verb, which refers to a quality or condition that the subject has no control over.

For instance, you can decide to study or to learn something, so *xué* is an action verb. But you cannot decide to know something, so *zhīdao* is a state verb. Although some state verbs, like *zhīdao* and *xīhuan*, are transitive, the objects of these verbs cannot be put in a *bǎ* phrase because these verbs are not action verbs.

- d. A *bǎ* sentence does not end with only a verb of one syllable. Either the verb has several syllables or a phrase follows the verb. In the final sentence of exchange 3, the action verb *fàng* is followed by *zai* and the destination *qiánbian*.

### Notes on №4

4. A: *Nǐ kāide tài kuài le!*  
 你開得太快了！  
 You are driving too fast!

**-de:** To describe how action is performed, the marker **-de** is added to the verb describing the action, and that verb is followed by an adjectival verb which expresses the MANNER in which the action takes place.

Cultural information: Taxi drivers are not offended by comments about their driving such as the exclamation in exchange 4. If ignored, a request to slow down should be repeated.

### Notes on №5

5. C: *Tā kāi chē, kāide bú kuài.*  
 他開車，開得不快。  
 He doesn't drive fast.

Verb, object, and the description of manner: If an action verb with a direct object is to be described in terms of how the action is done, use the following pattern.

*Tā shuō Zhōngguó huà shuō -de tài/hěn/bú màn.*

他說中國話說得太/很/不慢。

(he speak Chinese speak too/very/not slow)

“He speaks Chinese too/very/not slowly.”

Notice that the main verb and direct object occur first; then the main verb is repeated, followed by **-de** and the description of manner. Compare the pattern above with the pattern you learned in the Biographic Information Module, Unit 8: *Wo niàn Yīngwén niànle liùnián*, “I studied English for six years.”

The main verb is repeated when BOTH the direct object and a duration phrase or a description of manner MUST follow the verb directly. In such a case, Chinese handles this post-verb “traffic jam” by making a topic out of the more general information (what is being done): the verb and direct object. The more specific information about how the action is done becomes the comment. A literal translation of the pattern example above is “As for (the way) he speaks Chinese, (he) speaks too/very/not slowly.”

A special point to observe: In English, we may say “He doesn’t speak Chinese slowly,” putting the negative word before “speak.” In Chinese, the negation must be placed directly in front of the word that is referred to (in the example, *man*, “slow”—not saying that he doesn’t speak, but saying that his speech is not slow).

Linguists have pointed out the potentially comical effect of using English word order for sentences in Chinese with manner descriptions.

If you were to use English word order to say “I can’t speak Chinese very well,” *Wǒ bú huì shuō Zhōngguó huà hěn hào*, your sentence would mean, literally, “(The fact that) I can’t speak Chinese is

very good.” The right way to say “I can’t speak Chinese very well” is *Wǒ shuō Zhōngguó huà shuōde bú tài hǎo*.

### Notes on №6-7

6. A: *Wǒmen yǒu shíjiān, lái dé jí.*  
 我們有時間，來得及。  
 We have time. We can make it in time.
7. A: *Qǐng màn yìdiǎn kāi.*  
 輕慢一點開。  
 Please drive a little slower.

**Shíjiān:** You now know two words for “time”: *shíhou* and *shíjiān*. *Shíjiān* is used for an amount of time. *Shíhou* is usually used for a point or period in time when something happens.

**Láidejí** is an idiom meaning “able to make it on time [to do some- thing].” The negative, “not able to make it on time,” is *láibují*. (See the Meeting Module for additional discussion of such idioms.)

**Qǐng màn yìdiǎn kāi**, “Please drive a little slower”: In the notes on exchange 5, *yǒu* learned a pattern for describing manner: verb + -de + adjectival verb. In this sentence, however, the adjectival verb *màn* + *yìdiǎn* precede the verb *kāi*. When the adjectival verbs *màn*, *kuài*, *zǎo*, and *wǎn* are followed by *yìdiǎn*, the phrases thus formed may either precede or follow the verb of the sentence.

<i>Qǐng màn yìdiǎn kāi.</i>	Please drive a little slower.
輕慢一點開。	
<i>Qǐng kāi màn yìdiǎn.</i>	
請開慢一點。	Please drive a little faster.
<i>Qǐng kuài yìdiǎn kāi.</i>	
請快一點開。	
<i>Qǐng kāi kuài yìdiǎn.</i>	Please come a little earlier.
請開快一點。	
<i>Qǐng nǐ zǎo yìdiǎn lái.</i>	
請你早一點來。	Please come a little later.
<i>Qǐng nǐ lái zǎo yìdiǎn.</i>	
請你來早一點。	
<i>Qǐng nǐ wǎn yìdiǎn lái.</i>	Please come a little later.
請你晚一點來。	
<i>Qǐng nǐ lái wǎn yìdiǎn.</i>	
請你來晚一點。	

Many adjectival verbs + *yìdiǎn* must follow the sentence verb.

Xiě xiǎo yídiǎn.	Write it a little smaller.
些小一點。	
Xiě dà yídiǎn.	Write it a little bigger.
寫大一點。	
Zuò hǎo yídiǎn.	Do it a little better.
做好一點。	

The marker *-de* is optional, and usually omitted, before adjectival verb + *yídiǎn* phrases.

### Notes on №8

8. A: **Bié kāi nàme kuài!**  
別開那麼快！  
Don't drive so fast!

Here you see a third way to describe the performance of an action.

First, you saw a straight description:

Nǐ kāide tài kuài le!
你開得太快了！
You are driving too fast!

OR

Tā niàn shū niànde bú cuò.
她念書念得不錯。
She is doing pretty well in her studies.

Then, you saw a command in which an adjectival verb + *yídiǎn* phrase could be placed either before or after the main sentence verb:

Qǐng màn yídiǎn kāi.	Please drive a little slower.
請慢一點開。	
Qǐng kāi màn yídiǎn.	
請開慢一點。	

Now, in *Bié kāi nàme kuài*, you see a negative command. The modifying adjectival verb follows the main verb. The marker *-de* is optional, and usually omitted, as long as the adjectival verb is preceded by name or *zhème* (*zènme*).

Bié zǒu nàme màn le!
別走那麼慢了！



Quit walking so slowly!

Bié qǐlai zènme wǎn!

別起來那麼晚！

Don't get up so late!

Nǐ zǒu nàme màn, zánmen jiu láibují le!

你走那麼慢，咱們就來不及了。

If you walk so slowly, we won't make it in time!

### Notes on №9

9. B: Zhè shì nín de xíngli.  
這是您的行李。  
Here is your suitcase.
- A: Xièxie. Duōshao qián?  
謝謝，多少錢？  
Thank you. How much is it [the fare]?
- B: Èrshíqīkuài.  
二十七塊。  
Twenty-seven dollars.
- A: Zhè shì sānshíkuài, bú yòng zhǎo le.  
這是三十塊，不用找了。  
Here's thirty dollars. Keep the change. (literally, "No need to give me change.")

Èrshíqīkuài: This money phrase does not contain the word *qián* because the counter *kuài* can stand alone if the reference could clearly be only to money. Other counters for money, such as *máo* and *fēn*, usually require the addition of *qián*.

Bú yòng zhǎo le: *Bú yòng* is an idiom meaning "no need to." A more literal translation of the sentence is "No need to give me change." *Nǐ bú yòng kāi nàme kuài* would be translated as "There's no need for you to drive that fast."<sup>1</sup>

### Notes on №10

10. A: Qǐng nǐ zài qiánbian nèige yínháng tíng yíxià.  
請你在前邊那個銀行停一下。  
Please stop at that bank up ahead for a moment.
- B: Hǎo. Wǒ bǎ chē tíng zai nèibian děng nín.  
好。我把車停在那邊等您。  
Okay. I'll park the car over there and wait for you.

<sup>1</sup>\*The literal meaning of the verb *yòng* is "to use."

**Yíxià**, “awhile,” is used to indicate a short, indefinite amount of time. The use of this word communicates indefiniteness, just as reduplicating the verb would have done (**tíngyítíng**). The first speaker in this exchange does not commit himself to an exact length of time.

## Drills

### Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Nǐ kāide tài kuài le.  
你开得太快了。  
You are driving too fast.

Cue chē  
车  
car

Nǐ kāi chē kāide tài kuài le.  
你开车开得太快了。  
You are driving (the car) too fast.

2. Tā tíngde tài kuài le.  
他/她停得太快了。  
He/she stopped too quickly.

Cue chē  
车  
car

Tā tíng chē tíngde tài kuài le.  
他/她停车停得太快了。  
He/she stopped the car too quickly.

3. Nǐ kànde tài màn le.  
你看得太慢了。  
You are reading too slowly.

Cue shū  
书  
book

Nǐ kàn shū kànde tài màn le.

你看书看得太慢了。

You are reading the book too slowly.

4. Tā shuōde tài kuài le.

他/她说得太快了。

He/she speaking too fast.

Cue

Yīngwén

英文

English

Tā shuō Yīngwén shuode tài kuài le.

他/她说英文说得太快了。

He/she speaking English too fast.

5. Nǐ xuéde tài màn le.

你学得太慢了。

You learn too slowly.

Cue

Zhōngwén

中文

Chinese

Nǐ xué Zhōngwén xuéde tài màn le.

你学中文学得太慢了。

You learn Chinese too slowly.

6. Tā niànde tài kuài le.

他/她念得太快了。

He/she studying too fast.

Cue

zhèngzhìxué

政治学

politics

Tā niàn zhèngzhìxué niànde tài kuài le.

他/她念政治学念得太快了。

He/she studying politics too fast.

7. Nǐ kànde tài màn le.

你看德太慢了。

You are reading too slowly.

Cue

bào

报

newspaper

Nǐ kàn bào kànde tài màn le.

你看报看德太慢了。

You are reading the newspaper too slowly.

## Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Qǐng ni màn kāi.

请你慢开。

Please drive slowly.

Qǐng ni màn yìdiǎn kāi.

请你慢一点开。

Please drive a little slower.

2. Qǐng ni màn zǒu.

请你慢走。

Please walk slower.

Qǐng ni màn yìdiǎn zǒu.

请你慢一点走。

Please walk a little slower.

3. Qǐng ni màn shuō.

请你慢说。

Please speak slower.

Qǐng ni màn yìdiǎn shuō.

请你慢一点说。

Please speak a little slower.

4. Qǐng ni kuài shuō.

请你快说。

Please speak quicker.

Qǐng ni kuài yìdiǎn shuō.

请你快一点说。

Please speak a little quicker.

5. Qǐng ni màn xià chē.

请你慢下车。

Please go out slower.

Qǐng ni màn yìdiǎn xià chē.

请你慢一点下车。

Please go out a little slower.

6. Qǐng ni kuài qù.

请你快去。

Please go quicker.

Qǐng ni kuài yìdiǎn qù.

请你快一点去。

Please go a little quicker.

7. Qǐng ni kuài shàng chē.

请你快上车。

Please get in quicker.

Qǐng ni kuài yìdiǎn shàng chē.

请你快一点上车。

Please get in a little quicker.

## Expansion drill

### Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Nǐ kāi chē, kāide tài kuài le.

你开车，开得太快乐。

You are driving too fast.

Nǐ kāi chē kāide tài kuài le. Qǐng nǐ màn yìdiǎn kāi.

你开车，开得太快乐。请你慢一点开。

You are driving too fast. Please drive a little slower.

2. Nǐ kàn shū, kànde tài màn le.

你看书，看得太慢了。

You are reading the book too slowly.

Nǐ kàn shū, kànde tài màn le. Qǐng nǐ kuài yìdiǎn kàn.

你看书，看得太慢了。请你快一点看。

You are reading the book too slowly. Please read a bit quicker.

3. Nǐ kàn bào kànde tài màn le.

你看报看得太慢了。

You are reading the newspaper too slowly.

Nǐ kàn bào kànde tài màn le. Qǐng nǐ kuài yìdiǎn kàn.

你看报看得太慢了。请你快一点看。

You are reading the newspaper too slowly. Please read a bit faster.

4. Nǐ shuō Yīngwén shuōde tài kuài le.

你说英文说得太快了。

You are speaking English too fast.

Nǐ shuō Yīngwén shuōde tài kuài le. Qǐng nǐ màn yìdiǎn shuō.

你说英文说得太快了。请你慢一点说。

You are speaking English too fast. Please speak a bit slower.

5. Nǐ kāi chē kāide tài kuài le.

你开车开得太快了。

You are driving too fast.



Nǐ kāi chē kāide tài kuài le. Qǐng nǐ màn yìdiǎn kāi.

你开车开得太快了。请你慢一点开。

You are driving too fast. Please drive a bit slower.

6. Nǐ mài piào màide tài màn le.

你卖票卖得太慢了。

You are buying the ticket too slowly.

Nǐ mài piào màide tài màn le. Qǐng nǐ kuài yìdiǎn mài.

你卖票卖得太慢了。请你快一点卖。

You are buying the ticket too slowly. Please, buy a bit quicker.

7. Nǐ shuō Zhōngwén shuōde tài màn le.

你说中文说得太慢了。

You are speaking Chinese too slowly.

Nǐ shuō Zhōngwén shuōde tài màn le. Qǐng nǐ kuài yìdiǎn shuō.

你说中文说得太慢了。请你快一点说。

You are speaking Chinese too slowly. Please speak a bit quicker.



4. **Wǒmen yǒu èrshífēn zhōng, lái de jí lái bù jí?**  
我们有二十分钟，来得及来不及？  
We have 20 minutes. Can we make it in time?

Cue **hěn jìn**  
**很近**  
very near

**Hěn jìn. You èrshífēn zhōng, lái de jí.**  
很近。有二十分钟，来得及。  
It's very near. [If] we have 20 minutes, we can make it in time.

5. **Wǒmen yǒu shíwǔfēn zhōng, lái de jí lái bù jí?**  
我们有十五分钟，来得及来不及？  
We have 15 minutes. Can we make it in time?

Cue **tài yuǎn**  
**太远**  
too far

**Tài yuǎn. Jiù yǒu shíwǔfēn zhōng, lái bù jí.**  
太远。就有十五分钟，来不及。  
It's too far. [If] we have only ten minutes, we can't make it in time.

6. **Wǒmen yǒu shífēn zhōng, lái de jí lái bù jí?**  
我们有十分钟，来得及来不及？  
We have ten minutes. Can we make it in time?

Cue **hěn jìn**  
**很近**  
very near

**Hěn jìn. You shífēn zhōng, lái de jí.**  
很近。有十分钟，来得及。  
It's very near. [If] we have 10 minutes, we can make it in time.

7. **Wǒmen yǒu èrshífēn zhōng, lái de jí lái bù jí?**  
我们有二十分钟，来得及来不及？  
We have 20 minutes. Can we make it in time?

Cue

tài yuǎn

太远

too far

Tài yuǎn. Jiù yǒu èrshífēn zhōng, lái bù jí.

太远。就有二十分钟，来不及。

It's too far. [If] we have only 20 minutes, we can't make it in time.

## Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

1. Qǐng màn yídiǎn kāi.  
请慢一点开。  
Please drive a little slower.

Bié kāi zhème kuài!  
别开这么快！  
Don't drive so fast!

2. Qǐng kuài yídiǎn zǒu.  
请快一点走。  
Please walk a little quicker.

Bié zǒu zhème màn!  
别走这么慢！  
Don't walk so slowly!

3. Qǐng màn yídiǎn shuō.  
请慢一点说。  
Please speak a little slower.

Bié shuō zhème kuài!  
别走这么快！  
Don't speak so quickly!

4. Qǐng kuài yídiǎn kāi.  
请快一点开。  
Please drive a little quicker.

Bié kāi zhème màn!  
别开这么慢！  
Don't drive so slowly!

5. Qǐng kuài yídiǎn kàn.  
请快一点看。  
Please read a little quicker.

Bié kàn zhème màn!

别看这么慢！

Don't read so slowly!

6. Qǐng màn yìdiǎn shuō.

请慢一点说。

Please speak a little slower.

Bié shuō zhème kuài!

别走这么快！

Don't speak so quickly!

7. Qǐng kuài yìdiǎn zǒu.

请快一点走。

Please walk a little quicker.

Bié zǒu zhème màn!

别走这么慢！

Don't walk so slowly!

## Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Wǒmen láidejí.  
我们来得及。  
We can make it in time.

Cue qǐng  
请  
please

Wǒmen láidejí. Qǐng ni màn yidiǎn kāi.  
我们来得及。请你慢一点开。  
We can make it in time. Please drive a little slower.

2. Wǒmen láidejí.  
我们来得及。  
We can make it in time.

Cue bié  
别  
don't

Wǒmen láidejí. Bié kāi nàme kuài!  
我们来得及。别开那么快！  
We can make it in time. Don't drive so fast!

3. Wǒmen yǒu shíjiān.  
我们有时间。  
We have time.

Cue qǐng  
请  
please

Wǒmen yǒu shíjiān. Qǐng ni màn yidiǎn kāi.  
我们有时间。请你慢一点开。  
We have time. Please drive a bit slower.

4. Wǒmen yǒu shíjiān.

我们有时间。

We have time.

Cue

bié

别

don't

Wǒmen yǒu shíjiān. Bié kāi nàme kuài!

我们来不及。别开那么快！

We have time. Don't drive so fast!

5. Wǒmen láidejí.

我们来不及。

We can make it in time.

Cue

qǐng

请

please

Wǒmen láidejí. Qǐng ni màn yìdiǎn kāi.

我们来不及。请你慢一点开。

We can make it in time. Please, drive a bit slower.

6. Wǒmen láidejí.

我们来不及。

We can make it in time.

Cue

bié

别

don't

Wǒmen láidejí. Bié kāi nàme kuài!

我们来不及。别开那么快！

We can make it in time. Don't drive so fast!

7. Wǒmen yǒu shíjiān.

我们有时间。

We have time.



Cue

qǐng

请

please

Wǒmen yǒu shíjiān. Qǐng nǐ màn yìdiǎn kāi.

我们来得及。请你慢一点开。

We have time. Please drive a bit slower.

## Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Èrshiqīkuài.

二十七块。

Twenty-seven dollars.

Cue

bù

不

no

Zhè shì sānshikuài. Bú yòng zhǎo le.

这是三十块。不用找了。

Here's thirty dollars. Keep the change.

2. Èrshiqīkuài.

二十七块。

Twenty-seven dollars.

Cue

sān

三

3

Zhè shì sānshikuài. Qǐng nǐ zhǎo sānkuài qián.

这是三十块。请你找三块钱。

Here's thirty dollars. Please give me three dollars [in] change.

3. Èrshiliù kuài.

二十六块。

Twenty six dollars.

Cue

bù

不

no

Zhè shì sānshikuài. Bú yòng zhǎo le.

这是三十块。不用找了。

Here's 30 dollars. Keep the change.

4. Èrshí kuài.

二十块。

Twenty dollars.

Cue

shí

十

10

Zhè shì sānshikuài. Qǐng nǐ zhǎo shíkuài qián.

这是三十块。请你找十块钱。

Here's 30 dollars. Please give me ten dollars [in] change.

5. Èrshiwǔ kuài.

二十五块

Twenty five dollars.

Cue

bù

不

no

Zhè shì sānshikuài. Bú yòng zhǎo le.

这是三十块。不用找了。

Here's Keep the change.

6. Èrshíyī kuài.

二十一块。

Twenty one dollars.

Cue

jiǔ

九

9

Zhè shì sānshikuài. Qǐng nǐ zhǎo jiukuài qián.

这是三十块。请你找九块钱。

Here's 30 dollars. Please give me nine dollars [in] change.

7. Èrshíbā kuài.

二十八块。

Twenty eight dollars.

Cue

bù

不

no

Zhè shì sānshikuài. Bú yòng zhǎo le.

这是三十块。不用找了。

Here's Keep the change.

## Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Qǐng nǐ tíng yíxià.

请你停一下。

Please stop for a moment.

Cue

yínháng

银行

bank

Qǐng nǐ zài nèige yínháng tíng yíxià.

请你银行停一下。

Please stop at that bank for a moment.

2. Qǐng nǐ tíng yíxià.

请你停一下。

Please stop for a moment.

Cue

càishichǎng

菜市场

vegetable market

Qǐng nǐ zài nèige càishichǎng tíng yíxià.

你在那个菜市场停一下。

Please stop at that vegetable market for a moment.

3. Qǐng nǐ tíng yíxià.

请你停一下。

Please stop for a moment.

Cue

diànyǐngyuàn

电影院

movie theater

Qǐng nǐ zài nèige diànyǐngyuàn tíng yíxià.

你在那个电影院停一下。

Please stop at that movie theater for a moment.

4. Qǐng nǐ tíng yíxià.

请你停一下。

Please stop for a moment.

Cue

shūdiàn

书店

bookstore

Qǐng nǐ zài nèige shūdiàn tíng yíxià.

请你在那个书店停一下。

Please stop at that bookstore for a moment.

5. Qǐng nǐ tíng yíxià.

请你停一下。

Please stop for a moment.

Cue

xuéxiào

学校

school

Qǐng nǐ zài nèige xuéxiào tíng yíxià.

请你在那个学校停一下。

Please stop at that school for a moment.

6. Qǐng nǐ tíng yíxià.

请你停一下。

Please stop for a moment.

Cue

fàndiàn

饭店

restaurant

Qǐng nǐ zài nèige fàndiàn tíng yíxià.

请你在那个饭店停一下。

Please stop at that restaurant for a moment.

7. Qǐng nǐ tíng yíxià.

请你停一下。

Please stop for a moment.

Cue

yínháng

银行

bank

Qǐng nǐ zài nèige yínháng tíng yíxià.

请你在那个银行停一下。

Please stop at that bank for a moment.

## Unit 4

### References

#### Reference List

1. A: **Wo xiǎng qù Tánán wán jǐtiān.**  
**我想去臺南玩幾天。**  
I'm thinking of going to **Tánán** to relax for a few days.
2. A: **Zuò Gōnglùjú xíng bu xíng?\***  
**坐公路局行不行？**  
Would it be all right to take the bus?  
B: **Dào Tánán qù zuò Gōnglùjú bú dà fāngbian.**  
**到臺南去坐公路局不大方便。**  
To go to **Tánán**, it's not very convenient to take the bus.
3. C: **Shì zuò huǒchē qu hǎo ne, háishi zuò Gōnglùjú qu hǎo ne?**  
**是坐火車去好呢，還是坐公路局好呢？**  
Is it better to go by train or to go by bus?  
D: **Zuò huǒchē qu hǎo.**  
**坐火車去好。**  
It's better to go by train.
4. E: **Nǐ shuō shì zuò huǒchē qu hǎo ne, háishi zuò Gōnglùjú qu hǎo ne?**  
**你說是坐火車去好呢，還是坐公路局好呢？**  
Would you say it's better to go by train or to go by bus?  
F: **Dào Tánán zuò huǒchē zuì fāngbian.**  
**到臺南坐火車最方便。**  
To **Tánán**, it's most convenient to take the train.
5. A: **Děi xiān mǎi piào ma?**  
**得先買票嗎？**  
Is it necessary to buy tickets ahead of time?  
B: **Nǐ zuì hǎo liǎngsāntiān yǐqián qù mǎi piào.**  
**你最好兩三天以前去買票。**  
It would be best for you to go to buy your tickets two or three days ahead of time.
6. A: **Zuò Gōnglùjú yě děi xiān mǎi piào ma?**  
**坐公路局也得先買票嗎？**  
If I take the bus, is it also necessary to buy tickets ahead of time?  
B: **Bú bì xiān mǎi piào.**



- 不必先買票。  
It's not necessary to buy tickets ahead of time.
7. B: Nǐ yào zuò shěnmé shíhoude chē?  
你要坐什麼時候的車?  
What train do you want to take?
- A: Wǒ yào zuò shàngwǔde chē.  
我要坐上午的車。  
I want to take a morning train.
8. B: Duìbuqǐ, shàngwǔde piào dōu màiwán le.  
對不起，上午票都賣完了。  
I'm sorry, the tickets for the morning trains are all sold out.
9. chuán  
船  
boat, ship
10. dìtiě  
地鐵  
subway (abbreviation for dìxià tiědào)
11. dìxià huǒchē  
地下火車  
underground train, subway
12. wán (wánr)  
玩 (玩兒)  
to play, to relax, to enjoy oneself
13. -wán  
完  
to be finished (occurs in compound verbs of result)

## Vocabulary

bú bì	不必	not necessary, don't have to
chuán	船	boat, ship
dìtiě	地鐵	subway (abbreviation for <a href="#">dìxià tiědào</a> )
dìxià huǒchē	地下火車	underground train, subway
fāngbian	方便	to be convenient
Gōnglùjú	公路局	Bureau of Highways (Taiwan)
huǒchē	火車	train
liǎngsān-	兩三	two or three
màiwán le	賣完了	to be sold out
wán (wánr)	玩 (玩兒)	to play, to relax, to enjoy oneself
-wán	完	to be finished (occurs in compound verbs of result)
xiān	先	ahead of time, beforehand
zuì hǎo	最好	it would be best to
huá chuán	划船	to row a boat
sàn bù	散步	to take a walk
shān	山	hill, mountain
shuǐ	水	rivers, lakes (literally, "water")
yóuyǒng	游泳	to swim

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1

1. A: **Wo xiǎng qù Táiánán wán jǐtiān.**  
**我想去臺南玩幾天。**  
I'm thinking of going to **Táiánán** to relax for a few days.

The basic meaning of the verb **wán** is “to play.” It is often best translated into English as “to relax,” “to enjoy oneself.”

### Notes on №2

2. A: **Zuò Gōnglùjú xíng bu xíng?\***  
**坐公路局行不行？**  
Would it be all right to take the bus?  
B: **Dào Táiánán qù zuò Gōnglùjú bú dà fāngbian.**  
**到臺南去坐公路局不大方便。**  
To go to **Táiánán**, it's not very convenient to take the bus.

**Gōnglùjú**, “the Bureau of Highways” in Taiwan, is the agency which administers the island’s intercity bus system. The phrase **zuò Gōnglùjú** means “to take a Bureau of Highways bus.” This phrasing is analogous to “I’m going by Greyhound.” In talking about the buses themselves, you would have to say **Gōnglùjúde chē**, “the buses of the Bureau of Highways”:

**Gōnglùjúde chē hěn shūfu.**

**公路局的車很舒服。**

The buses of the Bureau of Highways are very comfortable. (**shūfu**, “to be comfortable”)

Sentences containing both **dào** and **zuò** phrases: The **zuò** phrase usually comes first in a sentence with both a prepositional phrase expressing destination (**dào...**) and a prepositional phrase expressing means of conveyance (**zuò...**). However, if the destination is being stressed, the **dào** phrase may be placed at the beginning of the sentence, in the topic position. (See the second sentence in exchange 2.)

**Tā měitiān zuò gōnggòng qìchē dào xuéxiào lái.**

**他每天坐公共汽車到學校來。**

He rides the bus to school every day.

**Dào yínháng qù, tā bú zuò gōnggòng qìchē. Tā zǒu lù qù.**

**到銀行去，他不坐公共汽車。她走路去。**

To go to the bank, he doesn’t take the bus. He walks there,

**Bú dà** might also be translated as “not too,” “not so.”

Notes on №3

3. C: Shi zuò huǒchē qu hǎo ne, háishi zuò Gōnglùjú qu hǎo ne?  
 是坐火車去好呢，還是坐公路局好呢？  
 Is it better to go by train or to go by bus?
- D: Zuò huǒchē qu hǎo.  
 坐火車去好。  
 It's better to go by train.

**Shi...háishi:** In a choice-type question, **shi** and **háishi** serve to mark off the choices more clearly. Below are some of the most common ways of asking the question “Do you want the red one or the yellow one?”

Nǐ yào hóngde, háishi yào huángde? (PREFERRED FORMS)

你要紅的，還是要黃的？

Nǐ shì yào hóngde, háishi yào huángde?

你是要紅的，還是要黃的？

Nǐ yào hóngde, huángde? (FAMILIAR, VERY COLLOQUIAL; NO PAUSE AT COMMA)

你要紅的，黃的？

Nǐ shì yào hóngde, shì yào huángde? (LEAST PREFERRED; shì UNSTRESSED HERE)

你是要紅的，是要黃的？

The marker **ne** clarifies the choices in a choice-type question. **Ne** may be placed after one or the other choice or after both choices.

Nǐ jīntiān qù ne, háishi míngtiān qù?

你今天去呢，還是明天去？

Are you going today or tomorrow?

Nǐ jīntiān qù, háishi míngtiān qù ne?

你今天去，還是明天去呢？

Nǐ jīntiān qù ne, shì míngtiān qù ne? (COMMUNICATES GENUINE PERPLEXITY).

你今天去呢，是明天去呢？

**Zuò huǒchē qu hǎo:** Here a whole phrase, which could also be a sentence, is used as the subject of the sentence.

Zuò huǒchē qu hǎo.

坐火車去好。

ride train go good

Hǎo is translated here as “better,” not as “good.” Adjectival verbs used alone (i.e., not modified by words such as hěn and tài) usually express comparison.

Něige xuésheng hǎo?

哪個學生好？

Which student is better?

Shéi kuài?

誰快？

Who is faster?

### Notes on №4

4. E: Nǐ shuō shì zuò huǒchē qù hǎo ne, hái shì zuò Gōnglùjú qù hǎo ne?  
 你說是坐火車去好呢，還是坐公路局好呢？  
 Would you say it's better to go by train or to go by bus?
- F: Dào Tánán zuò huǒchē zuì fāngbian.  
 到臺南坐火車最方便。  
 To Tánán, it's most convenient to take the train.

When nǐ shuō begins a question, the phrase is translated as “would you say” or “do you think.”

### Notes on №5

5. A: Děi xiān mǎi piào ma?  
 得先買票嗎？  
 Is it necessary to buy tickets ahead of time?
- B: Nǐ zuì hǎo liǎngsāntiān yǐqián qù mǎi piào.  
 你最好兩三天以前去買票。  
 It would be best for you to go to buy your tickets two or three days ahead of time.

The adverb xiān may sometimes be translated as “ahead of time,” “beforehand.”

Zuì hǎo, “best,” acts as an adverb in exchange 5, coming after the subject nǐ in the second sentence. Zuì hǎo is used to offer advice politely, not to warn a person that he had “better” or “best” do something.

Liǎngsāntiān: When approximate amounts, such as “two or three,” are given in Chinese, the numbers are read together, with no equivalent of “or.” This system is also used when two words are combined to indicate an approximate date.

sìwǔge rén

四五個人

four or five people

mínghòutiān
明後天
tomorrow or the day after
Qībāyuè
七八月
July or August

**Liǎngsāntiān yǐqián:** For “ahead of time,” “in advance,” **yǐqián** is used (instead of **xiān**) when the amount of time is stated. **Yǐqián** follows the word indicating the amount of time.

Nǐ děi xiān qù mǎi piào.
你得先去買票。
You have to go ahead of time to buy tickets.
Nǐ děi liǎngsāntiān yǐqián qù mǎi piào.
你得兩三天以前去買票。
You have to go two or three days ahead of time to buy tickets.

### Notes on №6

6.	A:	Zuò Gōnglùjú yě děi xiān mǎi piào ma? 坐公路局也得先買票嗎？ If I take the bus, is it also necessary to buy tickets ahead of time?
	B:	Bú bì xiān mǎi piào. 不必先買票。 It's not necessary to buy tickets ahead of time.

**Zuò Gōnglùjú**, “if I take the bus”: The beginning of the first sentence in exchange 6 is translated with an “if” in English. Literally, the Chinese sentence is “Take the bus, also have to beforehand buy tickets?” In a sense the “if” part of the sentence is a kind of topic in Chinese, providing the setting for the second part of the sentence. In Chinese, the setting or condition can often be put in the topic position. In English, a particular word must be used to clarify the relationship of the first part of the sentence to the second part.

Zuò Gōnglùjú,....	If I take the bus,....
	When one takes the bus,....
	For taking the bus,....
	To take the bus,....

**Bú bì**, “not necessary,” “don’t have to,” is the phrase to use as the negative of the auxiliary **děi**, “must,” “have to.” **Děi** cannot be made negative.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>2</sup>“Must not” as in “You must not go” can be translated as **bù néng**: Nǐ bù néng qù.

### Notes on №7

7. B: Nǐ yào zuò shěnmě shíhoude chē?  
 你要坐什麼時候的車？  
 What train do you want to take?
- A: Wǒ yào zuò shàngwǔde chē.  
 我要坐上午的車。  
 I want to take a morning train.

**Shěnmě shíhoude chē** has been translated simply as “what train.” More literally, the phrase means “a train (arriving at) what time.”

### Notes on №8

8. B: Duìbuqǐ, shàngwǔde piào dōu màiwán le.  
 對不起，上午票都賣完了。  
 I’m sorry, the tickets for the morning trains are all sold out.

**Wán**, “to end,” “to be over,” cannot take a direct object.

Wánle ma?
完了嗎？
Is it over?
Wánle meiyǒu?
玩了沒有？
Is it over yet?
Háiméi wán ne.
還沒完呢？
It isn’t over yet.

By itself, the expression **Wán le!** means “That’s all,” “There’s no more,” or “That’s it!” People often end speeches and recordings with **Wán le!**

**Màiwán le**, “to be sold out,” literally “sell finished”: Here is another example of a compound verb of result.

#### Note

In DIR, Unit U, you learned **kànjian**, “to see,” literally “look-perceive.”

All examples which have been presented in this and previous modules occur with completion **le**.

Compound verbs of result communicate both the action being performed and its result. In compound verbs of result, the first verb indicates the action; and the second, the result. Not every action verb is used in compound verbs of result, nor are verbs indicating the result always predictable.

When *-wán* is used as an ending, it indicates finishing, as in *Wǒ hái méi shuōwán*, “I haven’t finished speaking yet,” or depletion, as in *màiwán le*, “sold out,” and *yòngwán le*, “used up.” In English, you might just say “finished,” without indicating what you have finished doing. In Chinese, the action which has been finished is usually mentioned.

*Wǒ chīwán le.*

我吃完了。

I have finished eating.

*Wǒ huàwán le.*

我畫完了。

I have finished drawing.

*Wǒ kànwán le.*

我看完了。

I have finished reading.

*Wǒ hái méi shuōwán ne.*

我還沒說完呢。

I have not finished talking yet.

*Tā hái méi zuòwán ne.*

他還沒做完呢。

He has not finished (doing something) yet.



## Drills

### Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Nǐ qù nǎlǐ?

你去哪里？

Where are you going?

Cue

Táinán

台南

Táinán

Wǒ xiǎng qù Táinán wán jǐtiān.

我想去台南玩几天。

I'm thinking of going to Táinán to relax for a few days.

2. Nǐ qù nǎlǐ?

你去哪里？

Where are you going?

Cue

Xīnzhú

新竹

Xīnzhú

Wǒ xiǎng qù Xīnzhú wán jǐtiān.

我想去新竹玩几天。

I'm thinking of going to Xīnzhú to relax for a few days.

3. Nǐ qù nǎlǐ?

你去哪里？

Where are you going?

Cue

Jiāyì

嘉义

Jiāyì

Wǒ xiǎng qù Jiāyì wán jǐtiān.

我想去嘉义玩几天。

I'm thinking of going to Jiāyì to relax for a few days.

4. Nǐ qù nǎlǐ?

你去哪里？

Where are you going?

Cue

Gāoxióng

高雄

Gāoxióng

Wǒ xiǎng qù Gāoxióng wán jǐtiān.

我想去高雄玩几天。

I'm thinking of going to Gāoxióng to relax for a few days.

5. Nǐ qù nǎlǐ?

你去哪里？

Where are you going?

Cue

Huālián

花莲

Huālián

Wǒ xiǎng qù Huālián wán jǐtiān.

我想去花莲玩几天。

I'm thinking of going to Huālián to relax for a few days.

6. Nǐ qù nǎlǐ?

你去哪里？

Where are you going?

Cue

Táidōng

台东

Táidōng

Wǒ xiǎng qù Táidōng wán jǐtiān.

我想去台东玩几天。

I'm thinking of going to Táidōng to relax for a few days.

7. Nǐ qù nǎlǐ?

你去哪里？

Where are you going?

Cue

Táiběi

台北

Táiběi

Wǒ xiǎng qù Táiběi wán jǐtiān.

我想去台北玩几天。

I'm thinking of going to Táiběi to relax for a few days.

## Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Zuò Gōnglùjú.

坐公路局

Take the bus.

Cue

Táinán

台南

Táinán

You: Dào Táinán qù zuò Gōnglùjú xíng bu xíng?

到台南去坐公路局行不行？

To go to Táinán, would it be all right to take the bus?

2. Zuò huǒchē.

坐火车

Take the train.

Cue

Jiāyì

嘉义

Jiāyì

Dào Jiāyì qù zuò huǒchē xíng bu xíng?

到嘉义去坐火车行不行？

To go to Jiāyì, would it be all right to take the train?

3. Zuò zhídáchē.

坐直达车

Take the direct train.

Cue

Gāoxióng

高雄

Gāoxióng

Dào Gāoxióng qù zuò zhídáchē xíng bu xíng?

到高雄去坐直达车行不行？

To go to Gāoxióng, would it be all right to take the direct train?

4. Zuò jìchéngchē.

坐计程车

Take the taxi.

Cue

Táidōng

台东

Táidōng

Dào Táidōng qù zuò jìchéngchē xíng bu xíng?

到台东去坐坐计程车行不行？

To go to Táidōng, would it be all right to take the taxi?

5. Zuò huǒchē.

坐火车

Take the train.

Cue

Huālián

花莲

Huālián

Dào Huālián qù zuò huǒchē xíng bu xíng?

到花莲去坐坐火车行不行？

To go to Huālián, would it be all right to take the train?

6. Zuò jìchéngchē

坐计程车

Take the taxi.

Cue

Jílóng

基隆

Jílóng

Dào Jílóng qù zuò jìchéngchē xíng bu xíng?

到基隆去坐坐计程车行不行？

To go to Jílóng, would it be all right to take the taxi?

7. Zuò Gōnglù jú.

坐公路局

Take the high way.

Cue

Táizhōng

台中

Táizhōng

Dào Táizhōng qù zuò Gōnglùjú xíng bu xíng?

到台中去坐公路局行不行？

To go to Táizhōng, would it be all right to take the high way?

## Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Zuò gōnggòng qìchē xíng bu xíng?

坐公共汽车行不行？

Would it be all right to take the bus?

Cue

kěshi bú dà

可是不大

not very convenient

Zuò gōnggòng qìchē xíng, kěshi bú dà fāngbian.

坐公共汽车行，可是不大方便。

It would be all right to take the bus, but it's not very convenient.

2. Zuò gōnggòng qìchē xíng bu xíng?

坐公共汽车行不行？

Would it be all right to take the bus?

Cue

zuì

最

Zuò gōnggòng qìchē xíng, zuì fāngbian.

坐公共汽车行，最方便。

It would be all right to take the bus; it's most convenient.

3. Zuò huǒchē xíng bu xíng?

坐火车行不行？

Would it be all right to take the train?

Cue

kěshi bú dà

可是不大

not very convenient

Zuò huǒchē xíng, kěshi bú dà fāngbian.

坐火车行，可是不大方便。

It would be all right to take the train, but it's not very convenient.

4. Zuò Gōnglùjú xíng bu xíng?  
坐公路局行不行？  
Would it be all right to take high way?

Cue zuì  
最  
most convenient

Zuò Gōnglùjú xíng, zuì fāngbian.  
坐公路局行，最方便。  
It would be all right to take the high way; it's most convenient.

5. Zuò jìchéngchē xíng bu xíng?  
坐计程车行不行？  
Would it be all right to take taxi?

Cue zuì  
最

most convenient  
Zuò jìchéngchē xíng, zuì fāngbian.  
坐计程车行，最方便。  
It would be all right to take the taxi; it's most convenient.

6. Zuò Sānlù chē xíng bu xíng?  
坐三路车行不行？  
Would it be all right to take the three-way car?

Cue kěshi bú dà  
可是不大  
not very convenient

Zuò Sānlù chē xíng, kěshi bú dà fāngbian.  
坐三路车行，可是不大方便。  
It would be all right to take the three-way car, but it's not very convenient.

7. Zuò Wǔlù chē xíng bu xíng?  
坐五路车行不行？  
Would it be all right to take five-way car?



Cue

zui

最

most convenient

Zuò Wǔlù chē xíng, zui fāngbian.

坐五路车行，最方便。

It would be all right to take the five-way car; it's most convenient.

## Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Zuò huǒchē hǎo bu hǎo?

坐火车好不好？

Is it all right to take the train?

Cue

Gōnglùjú

公路局

bus

Nǐ shuō shì zuò huǒchē qù hǎo ne, hái shì zuò Gōnglùjú qù hǎo ne?

你说是坐火车去好呢，还是坐公路局去好呢？

Would you say it's better to go by train or to go by bus?

2. Jīntiān qù hǎo bu hǎo?

今天去好不好？

Is it all right to go today?

Cue

míngtiān

明天

tomorrow

Nǐ shuō, jīntiān qù hǎo ne, hái shì míngtiān qù hǎo ne?

你说，今天去好呢，还是明天去好呢？

Would you say it's better to go today or tomorrow?

3. Zuò Gōnglùjú hǎo bu hǎo?

坐公路局好不好？

Is it all right to take the bus?

Cue

jìchéngchē

计程车

taxi

Nǐ shuō shì zuò Gōnglùjú qù hǎo ne, hái shì zuò jìchéngchē qù hǎo ne?

你说是坐公路局去好呢，还是坐计程车去好呢？

Would you say it's better to take the bus or a taxi?

4. Míngtiān qù hǎo bu hǎo?

明天去好不好？

Is it all right to go tomorrow?

Cue

hòutiān

后天

the day after tomorrow

Nǐ shuō, míngtiān qù hǎo ne, hái shì hòutiān qù hǎo ne?

你说，明天去好呢，还是后天去好呢？

Would you say it's better to go tomorrow or the day after tomorrow?

5. Zuò huǒchē hǎo bu hǎo?

坐火车好不好？

Is it all right to take a train?

Cue

qìchē

汽车

car

Nǐ shuō shì zuò huǒchē qù hǎo ne, hái shì zuò qìchē qù hǎo ne?

你说是坐火车去好呢，还是坐汽车去好呢？

Would you say it's better to take the train or the car?

6. Jīntiān qù hǎo hu hǎo?

今天去好不好？

Is it all right to go today?

Cue

míngtiān

明天

tomorrow

Nǐ shuō, jīntiān qù hǎo ne, hái shì míngtiān qù hǎo ne?

你说，今天去好呢，还是明天去好呢？

Would you say it's better to go today or tomorrow?

7. Zuò fēijī hǎo hu hǎo?

坐飞机好不好？

Is it all right to take a plane?

Cue

huǒchē

火车

train

Nǐ shuō shì zuò fēijī qù hǎo ne, hái shì zuò huǒchē qù hǎo ne?

你说是坐飞机去好呢，还是坐火车去好呢？

Would you say it's better to take a plane or the train?

## Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Děi xiān mǎi piào ma?

得先买票吗？

Is it necessary to buy tickets ahead of time?

Cue

shì

是

yes

Dei xiān mǎi piào.

得先买票。

It's necessary to buy tickets ahead of time.

2. Děi xiān mǎi piào ma?

得先买票吗？

Is it necessary to buy tickets ahead of time?

Cue

bú shì

不是

no

Bú bì xiān mǎi piào.

不必先买票。

It's not necessary to buy tickets ahead of time.

3. Děi xiān niàn Zhōngguó lìshǐ ma?

得先念中国历史吗？

Is it necessary to study Chinese history first?

Cue

shì

是

yes

Děi xiān niàn Zhōngguó lìshǐ.

得先念中国历史。

It's necessary to study Chinese history first.

4. Děi xiān zuò Yílù chē ma?

得先坐一路车吗？

Is it necessary to take the one way?

Cue

bú shì

不是

no

Bú bì xiān zuò Yílù chē.

不必先坐一路车。

It's not necessary to take the one way.

5. Děi xiān dào Xīdān ma?

得先到西单吗？

Is it necessary to go to Xīdān first?

Cue

shì

是

yes

Děi xiān dào Xīdān.

得先到西单。

It's necessary to go to Xīdān first.

6. Děi xiān huàn qián ma?

得先还钱吗？

Is it necessary to change money ahead of time?

Cue

bú shì

不是

no

Bú bì xiān huàn qián.

不必先还钱。

It's not necessary to change money ahead of time.

7. Děi xiān qù kàn gēge ma?

得先去看哥哥吗？

Is it necessary to see the older brother first?

Cue

bú shì

不是

no

Bú bì xiān qù kàn gēge.

不必先去看哥哥。

It's not necessary to see the older brother first.

## Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Děi xiān mǎi piào ma?

得先买票吗？

Is it necessary to buy tickets ahead of time?

Cue

liǎngsāntiān

两三天

2 or 3 days

Nǐ zuì hǎo liǎngsāntiān yǐqián mǎi piào.

你最好两三天以前买票。

It would be best for you to buy your tickets two or three days ahead of time.

2. Děi xiān mǎi piào ma?

得先买票吗？

Is it necessary to buy tickets ahead of time?

Cue

bù

不

no

Bú bì xiān mǎi piào.

不必先买票。

It's not necessary to buy tickets ahead of time.

3. Děi xiān mǎi piào ma?

得先买票吗？

Is it necessary to buy your tickets ahead of time?

Cue

liǎngtiān

两天

2 days

Nǐ zuì hǎo liǎngtiān yǐqián mǎi piào.

你最好两天以前买票。

It would be best for you to buy your tickets two days ahead of time.



4. Děi xiān huàn qián ma?

得先还钱吗？

Is it necessary to change money ahead of time?

Cue

sìwǔtiān

四五天

4 or 5 days

Nǐ zuì hǎo sìwǔtiān yǐqián huàn qián.

你最好四五天以前还钱。

It would be best for you to change money 4 or 5 days ahead of time.

5. Děi xiān qù kàn gēge ma?

得先去看哥哥吗？

Is it necessary to see the older brother ahead of time?

Cue

bù

不

no

Bú bì xiān qù kàn gēge.

不必先去看哥哥。

It's not necessary to see the older brother ahead of time.

6. Děi xiān kàn zhèběn shū ma?

得先看这本书吗？

Is it necessary to read this book ahead of time?

Cue

sāntiān

三天

3 days

Nǐ zuì hǎo sāntiān yǐqián kàn zhèběn shū.

你最好三天以前看这本书。

It would be best for you to read this boob three days ahead of time.

7. Děi xiān huàn qián ma?

得先还钱吗？

Is it necessary to change money ahead of time?

Cue

bù

不

no

Bú bì xiān huàn qián.

不必先还钱。

It's not necessary to change money ahead of time.

## Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Nǐ yào zuò shénme shíhoude chē?

你要坐什么时候的车？

What train do you want to take?

Cue

shàngwǔ

上午

morning

Wǒ yào zuò shàngwǔde chē.

我要坐上午的车。

I want to take a morning train.

2. Nǐ yào zuò jǐdiǎn zhōngde chē?

你要坐几点钟的车？

What time do you want to take the bus?

Cue

xiàwǔ 2:10

下午 2 : 10

after noon at 2:10

Wǒ yào zuò xiàwǔ liǎngdiǎn shífēnde chē.

我要坐下午两点十分的车。

I want to take the afternoon train at 2:10.

3. Nǐ yào zuò shénme shíhoude chē?

你要坐什么时候的车？

What train do you want to take?

Cue

wǎnshang

晚上

evening

Wǒ yào zuò wǎnshangde chē.

我要坐晚上的车。

I want to take an evening train.

4. Nǐ yào zuò jǐdiǎn zhōngde chē?

你要坐几点钟的车。

What time do you want to take the bus?

Cue zǎoshang 9:50  
早上 9 : 50  
morning at 9:50

ǒ yào zuò zǎoshang jiǔdiǎn wǔshífēnde chē.

我要坐早上酒店五十分的车。

I want to take the early morning train at 9:50.

5. Nǐ yào zuò shénme shíhoude chē?

你要坐什么时候的车？

What train do you want to take?

Cue shàngwǔ  
上午  
after noon

Wǒ yào zuò shàngwǔde chē.

我要坐上午的车。

I want to take morning train.

6. Nǐ yào zuò jǐdiǎn zhōngde chē?

你要坐几点钟的车。

What time do you want to take the bus?

Cue shàngwǔ 11:00  
上午 11 : 00  
morning at 11:00

Wǒ yào zuò shàngwǔ shíyīdiǎn sìshífēnde chē.

我要坐上午十一点四十分的车。

I want to take the morning train at 11:00.

7. Nǐ yào zuò shénme shíhoude chē?

你要坐什么时候的车？

What train do you want to take?

Cue

xiàwǔ

下午

after noon

Wǒ yào zuò xiàwǔde chē.

我要坐下午的车。

I want to take an afternoon train.

## Transformation drill

### Transform according to the cue and the model.

1. Qǐngwèn, shàngwǔde chēpiào hái yǒu meiyǒu?

请问，上午的车票还有没有？

May I ask, are there still tickets for the morning train?

Qǐngwèn, shàngwǔde chēpiào dōu màiwán le meiyǒu?

请问，上午的车票都卖完了没有？

May I ask, are the tickets for the morning trains all sold out?

2. Qǐngwèn, dào Táinán qùde chēpiào hái yǒu meiyǒu?

请问，到台南去的车票还有没有？

May I ask, are there still train tickets to Táinán?

Qǐngwèn, dào Táinán qùde chēpiào dōu màiwán le meiyǒu?

请问，到台南去的车票都卖完了没有？

May I ask, are the train tickets to Táinán all sold out?

3. Qǐngwèn, míngtiān shàngwǔde chēpiào hái yǒu meiyǒu?

请问，明天上午的车票还有没有？

May I ask, are there still tickets for the afternoon train?

Qǐngwèn, míngtiān shàngwǔde chēpiào dōu màiwán le meiyǒu?

请问，明天上午的车票都卖完了没有？

May I ask, are the tickets for the morning trains all sold out?

4. Qǐngwèn, dào Huālián qùde chēpiào hái yǒu meiyǒu?

请问，到花莲去的车票还有没有？

May I ask, are there still train tickets to Huālián?

Qǐngwèn, dào Huālián qùde chēpiào dōu màiwán le meiyǒu?

请问，到花莲去的车票都卖完了没有？

May I ask, are the train tickets to Huālián all sold out?

5. Qǐngwèn, jīntiān xiàwǔde chēpiào hái yǒu meiyǒu?

请问，今天下午的车票还有没有？

May I ask, are there still tickets for the today train?

Qǐngwèn, jīntiān xiàwǔde chēpiào dōu màiwán le meiyǒu?

请问，今天下午的车票都卖完了没有？

May I ask, are the tickets for the today trains all sold out?

6. Qǐngwèn, dào Gāoxióng qùde chēpiào hái yǒu meiyǒu?

请问，到高雄去的车票还有没有？

May I ask, are there still train tickets to Gāoxióng?

Qǐngwèn, dào Gāoxióng qùde chēpiào dōu màiwán le meiyǒu?

请问，到高雄去的车票都卖完了没有？

May I ask, are the train tickets to Gāoxióng all sold out?

7. Qǐngwèn, míngtiānde chēpiào hái yǒu meiyǒu?

请问，明天的车票还有没有？

May I ask, are there still tickets for the tomorrow train?

Qǐngwèn, míngtiānde chēpiào dōu màiwán le meiyǒu?

请问，明天的车票都卖完了没有？

May I ask, are the tickets for the tomorrow trains all sold out?

## Unit 5

### References

#### Reference List

1. A: **Wo yě xiǎng dào Nánjīng qù kànkàn.**  
我也想到南京去看看。  
I would also like to go to **Nánjīng** to look around.  
B: **Nǐ jìhua nǐtiān qù?**  
你計劃那天去？  
What day do you plan to go?  
A: **Míngtiān huòshì hòutiān qù dōu kěyǐ.**  
明天或是後天去都可以。  
Tomorrow and (or) the day after are both possible.
2. A: **Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu duō yuǎn?**  
上海離南京有多元。  
How far is **Shànghǎi** from **Nánjīng**?  
B: **Yǒu liǎngbǎiwǔshíduō gōnglǐ.**  
有兩百五十多公里。  
It's over 250 kilometers.
3. A: **Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu duōshao shíhou?**  
坐火車要走多少時候。  
How long does it take to go by train?  
B: **Dàgài yào zǒu sìge bàn xiǎoshí.**  
大概要走四個半小時。  
It probably takes four and a half hours.
4. C: **Yào zǒu bànge xiǎoshí.**  
要走半個小時。  
It takes half an hour.
5. B: **Nǐ jìhua zài Nánjīng zhù jǐtiān?**  
你計劃在南京住幾天？  
How many days do you plan to stay in **Nánjīng**?  
A: **Zhèi shì wǒ dìyīcì dào Nánjīng qù. Yǐqián méi qùguo. Nǐ shuō liǎngtiān gòu bu gòu?**  
這是我第一次到南京去。以前沒去過。你說兩天夠不夠？



		This will be the first time I have gone to <b>Nánjīng</b> . I haven't gone there before. Would you say two days are enough?
	B:	<b>Liǎngtiān gòu le.</b> 兩天夠了。 Two days are enough.
6.	A:	<b>Měitiān yǒu jǐtàng chē?</b> 每天有幾趟車？ How many trips are there each day?
	A:	<b>Xiàwǔ yǒu meiyǒu chē?</b> 下午有沒有車？ Are there trains in the afternoon?
	A:	<b>Wǒ xīwàng xiàwǔ líkāi zhèr.</b> 我希望下午離開這兒。 I hope to leave here in the afternoon.
7.	*B:	<b>Shísāndiǎn líng wǔfēn yǒu yìbān tèkuài.</b> 十三點零五分有一班特快。 There's an express at 1305.
8.	**B:	<b>Shísāndiǎn líng wǔfēn yǒu yìtàng tèkuài.</b> 十三點零五分有一趟特快。 There's an express at 1305.
9.		<b>dāsuan</b> 打算 to plan to
10.		<b>huòzhě (huòzhe)</b> 或者 or (alternate form of <b>huòshi</b> )
11.		<b>yǐhòu</b> 以後 afterwards, later on, in the future
12.		<b>zhōngtóu</b> 鐘頭 hour (alternate word for <b>xiǎoshi</b> )

## Vocabulary

bàn	半	half (followed by a counter or a noun which does not take a counter)
-cì	次	occasion, time
dàgài	大概	probably, approximately
dǎsuàn (dǎsuan)	打算	to plan to
dìyíci (dìyíci)	第一次	the first time
-duō	多	over, more than
gōnglǐ	公里	kilometer
gòu	夠	to be enough
huòshi	或是	or
huòzhě (huòzhe)	或者	or
jìhua	計劃	to plan to
kànkàn	看看	to see, to look around, to sight-see, to visit
líkāi	離開	to leave
-tàng	趟	(counter for bus trips, train trips, etc.)
tèkuài	特快	express train
xiǎoshí	小時	hour
xīwàng (xīwang)	希望	to hope
yào	要	must, to have to; to take (a certain amount of time)
yǐhòu	以後	afterwards, later on; in the future
yǐqián	以前	before, in the past
zhōngtóu	鐘頭	hour
biéde dìfang	別的地方	other places (cf. <i>bièrén</i> , “other people”)
cānguān	參觀	to visit as an observer
duōshao hào	多少號	what size (shoe)
gōngchǎng	工廠	factory
juédìng	決定	to decide
yìshuāng píxié	一雙皮鞋	a pair of leather shoes
yòu hǎo yòu piányi	又好又便宜	both good and inexpensive

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1

1. A: **Wo yě xiǎng dào Nánjīng qù kànkān.**  
我也想到南京去看看。  
I would also like to go to Nánjīng to look around.
- B: **Nǐ jìhuà nǎitiān qù?**  
你計劃那天去？  
What day do you plan to go?
- A: **Míngtiān huòshì hòutiān qù dōu kěyǐ.**  
明天或是後天去都可以。  
Tomorrow and (or) the day after are both possible.

**Kànkān**, “to have a look”: In exchange 1, **kànkān** refers to doing some sight-seeing. The reduplicated verb form implies an indefinite amount of sight-seeing, best translated into English as “to have a look,” “to look around.”

**Huòshì** (alternate, **huòzhě**) is used for “or” when both alternatives are acceptable or possible.

**Wǒ qù mǎi yìdiǎnr pījiǔ huòshì mǎi yìdiǎnr qìshuǐ.**

我去買一點兒啤酒或是後天來看你嗎？

I will go to buy some beer or some soft drinks.

**Tā míngtiān huòshì hòutiān lái kàn nǐ ma?**

他明天或是後天來看你嗎？

Is he coming to see you tomorrow or the day after? (i.e., sometime during the next two days)

**Háishi** is used for “or” when a choice is required between the alternatives.

**Nǐ mǎi pījiǔ háishi mǎi qìshuǐ?**

你買啤酒還是買汽水？

Are you buying beer or (are you buying) soft drinks?

**Nǐ xǐhuan dàde háishi xǐhuan xiǎode?**

你喜歡大的還是喜歡小的？

Do you like the large one or (do you like) the small one?

Do you like the large one or (do you like) the small one?

### Notes on №2

2. A: **Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu duō yuǎn?**

上海離南京有多元。  
How far is Shànghǎi from Nánjīng?  
B: 有兩百五十多公里。  
It's over 250 kilometers.

Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu duo yuǎn? Yǒu is used in expressing the distance between two points.

Shànghǎi	lí	Nánjīng	yǒu	duō	yuǎn?
上海	離	南京	有	多	遠?
Shànghǎi	be separated from	Nánjīng	here is	how much	distance?

“How far is Shànghǎi from Nánjīng?”

Tianjin	lí	Běijīng	yǒu	120	gōnglǐ.
天津	離	北京	有	120	公里。
Tiānjīn	be separated from	Běijīng	there is	120	kilometers.

“Tianjin is 120 kilometers from Běijīng.”

Liǎngbǎi wǔshíduō gōnglǐ: Approximate numbers may be expressed by adding -duō to number phrases. When added immediately after a number, before the counter,<sup>3</sup> -duō refers to an indefinite amount within the range of the round number.

liǎngbǎiduō gōnglǐ
兩百多公里
more than 200 kilometers (but fewer than 300)
yìqiānduōge xuésheng
一千多個學生
more than 1,000 students (but fewer than 2,000)
sānshíduōkuài qián
三十多塊錢
more than 30 dollars (but fewer than 40)

Beginning with 20, -duō may be used in this way with any round number.

With round numbers from 20 through 90, -jǐ may be used instead of -duō.

èrshíduōge rén	more than 20 persons (but fewer than 30)
二十多個人	
èrshíjǐge rén	
二十幾個人	

<sup>3</sup>Gōnglǐ is one of the nouns used without a counter.

sishiduō gōnglǐ	more than 40 kilometers (but fewer than 50)
四十多公里	
sishījǐ gōnglǐ	
四十幾公里	

With the number 10, -jǐ only is used, never -duō.

shíjǐkuài qián
十幾塊
more than 10 dollars (but fewer than 20)

### Notes on №3-4

3. A: Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu duōshao shíhou?  
坐火車要走多少時候。  
How long does it take to go by train?
- B: Dàgài yào zǒu sìge bàn xiǎoshí.  
大概要走四個半小時。  
It probably takes four and a half hours.
4. C: Yào zǒu bànge xiǎoshí.  
要走半個小時。  
It takes half an hour.

The auxiliary verb yào, “to want,” is sometimes used as “to need to,” “to have to.” (See the first sentence in exchange 3.)

Zuò huǒchē	yào zǒu	duōshao shíhou?
坐火車	要走多	少時候。
ride train	have to go	how much time?

“How long does it take to go by train?”

Yào may also be used as a main verb meaning “to take [a certain amount of time]”:

Zuò huǒchē	yào	duōshao shíhou?
坐火車	要	少時候。
ride train	takes	how much time?

“How long does it take by train?”

Bàn-, “a half (of),” is used like a number—before a counter or before a noun which does not require a counter.

bànge xiǎoshí	half an hour
半個小時	

bànniǎn	half a year
半年	
bànge píngguǒ	half an apple
半個蘋果	

**Sige bàn:** When **bàn** FOLLOWS a counter or a noun not requiring a counter, the word is translated as “and a half.”

liǎngkuài bàn
兩塊半
two and a half dollars
sāntiān bàn
三天半
three and a half days
yíge bàn xiǎoshí
一個半小時
one and a half hours

**Xiǎoshí:** Formerly, the Chinese considered that one day and night (24 hours) was divided into twelve 2-hour periods of time. Each of these time periods was divided into two **xiǎoshí**, “small hours,” when telling time by the Western 24-hour system gained popularity throughout the world.

### Notes on №5

5. B: Nǐ jìhuà zài Nánjīng zhù jǐtiān?  
你計劃在南京住幾天?  
How many days do you plan to stay in Nánjīng?
- A: Zhèi shì wǒ dìyīcì dào Nánjīng qù. Yǐqián méi qùguo. Nǐ shuō liǎngtiān gòu bu gou?  
這是我第一次到南京去。以前沒去過。你說兩天夠不夠?  
This will be the first time I have gone to Nánjīng. I haven't gone there before. Would you say two days are enough?
- B: Liǎngtiān gòu le.  
兩天夠了。  
Two days are enough.

**Gòu le:** The last sentence in exchange 5 ends with the new-situation marker **le**. This marker is used to describe what a situation is, was, or will be AT A SPECIFIED TIME. The travel agent says that, when the visit has lasted two days, THEN it will be long enough.

**Notes on №6**

6. A: Měitiān yǒu jǐtàng chē?  
 每天有幾趟車？  
 How many trips are there each day?
- A: Xiàwǔ yǒu meiyǒu chē?  
 下午有沒有車？  
 Are there trains in the afternoon?
- A: Wǒ xīwàng xiàwǔ líkāi zhèr.  
 我希望下午離開這兒。  
 I hope to leave here in the afternoon.

**Jítàng:** The counter **-tàng** is used when the trip mentioned is not a particular one, scheduled at a certain time. Similarly, it can also be used to talk about the number of trips a person has made, or will make.

**Líkāi,** “to leave,” may be followed by an object (the place). On the other hand, **zǒu,** “to leave,” is never followed by an object.

Nǐ shénme shíhou líkāi zhèr?

你什麼時候離開這兒？

When are you leaving here?

Nǐ shénme shíhou zǒu?

你什麼時候走？

When are you leaving?

**Notes on №7-8**

7. B: Shísāndiǎn líng wǔfēn yǒu yībān tèkuài.  
 十三點零五分有一班特快。  
 There's an express at 1305.
8. B: Shísāndiǎn líng wǔfēn yǒu yītàng tèkuài.  
 十三點零五分有一趟特快。  
 There's an express at 1305.

**Shísāndiǎn líng wǔfēn:** For train and bus schedules, a 24-hour clock is commonly used in China, beginning with 1 A.M. and continuing to midnight, or 24:00.

12-hour clock		24-hour clock	
zǎoshàng shídiǎn	10 a.m.	shídiǎn	1000
早上十點		十點	
xiàwǔ yìdiǎn	1 p.m.	shísāndiǎn	1300

12-hour clock		24-hour clock	
下午一點		十三點	
xiàwǔ wǔdiǎn	5 p.m.	shìqīdiǎn	1700
下午五點		十七點	
wǎnshàng shídiǎn	10 p.m.	èrshìèrdiǎn	2200
晚上十點		二十二點	

Líng is included to indicate the zero in “1305.”

Tèkuài is an abbreviation for tèbié kuàichē, “special express train.”

Yībān and yítàng, counters for trips made by trains, buses, planes, and other conveyances, are sometimes interchangeable.



## Drills

### Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Wǒ dāsuan dào Nánjīng qù kànkàn.  
我打算到南京去看看。  
I'm planning to go to Nánjīng to look around.

Cue něitiān  
哪天  
what day

Nǐ dāsuan něitiān qù?  
你打算哪天去  
What day do you plan to go?

2. Wǒ xiǎng dào Xīān qù kànkàn.  
我想到西安去看看。  
I'm planning to go to Xīān to look around.

Cue jǐyuè  
几月  
what month

Nǐ xiǎng jǐyuè qù?  
你想几月去?  
What month do you plan to go?

3. Wǒ jìhuà dào Húběi qù kànkàn.  
我计划到湖北去看看。  
I'm planning to go to Huéběi to look around.

Cue xīngqījǐ  
星期几  
what day of the week

Nǐ jìhuà xīngqījǐ qù?

你想星期几去？

What day of the week do you plan to go?

4. Wǒ dǎsuan dào Shànghǎi qù kànkàn.

我打算到上海去看看。

I'm planning to go to Shànghǎi to look around.

Cue

jǐhào

几号

what date

Nǐ dǎsuan jǐhào qù?

你打算几号去？

What date do you plan to go?

5. Wǒ jìhuà dào Sūzhōu qù kànkàn.

我计划到苏州去看看。

I'm planning to go to Sūzhōu to look around.

Cue

jǐyuè

几月

what month

Nǐ jìhuà jǐyuè qù?

你计划jǐyuè去？

What month do you plan to go?

6. Wǒ xiǎng dào Běijīng qù kànkàn.

我想到北京去看看。

I'm planning to go to Běijīng to look around.

Cue

něitiān

哪天

what day

Nǐ xiǎng něitiān qù?

我想哪天去？

What day do you plan to go?

7. Wǒ dǎsuan dào Wūchāng qù kànkàn.

我打算到武昌去看看。

I'm planning to go to **Wǔchāng** to look around.

Cue

xīngqījǐ

星期几

what day of the week

Nǐ dāsuan xīngqījǐ qù?

你打算星期几去。

What day of the week do you plan to go?

## Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Nǐ dǎsuan shénme shíhou dào Nánjīng qù?  
你打算什么时候到南京去？  
When are you planning to visit Nánjīng?

Cue xiàge yuè  
下个月  
next month

Wǒ dǎsuan xiàge yuè dào Nánjīng qù kànkàn.  
我打算下个月到南京去看看。  
I'm planning to visit Nánjīng next month.

2. Nǐ jìhua jǐyuè dào Shànghǎi qù?  
你计划几月到上海去？  
What month are you planning to visit Shànghǎi?

Cue liùyuè  
六月  
in June

Wǒ jìhua liùyuè dào Shànghǎi qù kànkàn.  
我计划六月到上海去看看。  
I'm planning to visit Shànghǎi in June.

3. Nǐ xiǎng nǎitiān dào Guǎngzhōu qù?  
你想哪天到广州去？  
What day are you planning to visit Guǎngzhōu?

Cue hòutiān  
后天  
the day after tomorrow

Wǒ xiǎng hòutiān dào Guǎngzhōu qù kànkàn.  
我想后天到广州去看看。  
I'm planning to visit Guǎngzhōu the day after tomorrow.

4. Nǐ dǎsuan nǎinián dào Zhōngguo qù?

你打算哪年到中国去？

What year are you planning to visit China?

Cue míngnián

明年

tomorrow

Wǒ dǎsuan míngnián dào Zhōngguo qu kànkàn.

我打算明年到中国去看看。

I'm planning to visit China next year.

5. Nǐ jìhua jǐyuè dào Xiānggǎng qù?

你计划几月到香港去？

What month are you planning to visit Xiānggǎng?

Cue èryuè

二月

in February

Wǒ jìhua Èryuè dào Xiānggǎng qu kànkàn.

我计划二月到香港去看看。

I'm planning to visit Xiānggǎng in February.

6. Nǐ xiǎng xīngqījǐ dào Běijīng qù?

你想星期几到北京去。

What day of the week are you planning to visit Běijīng?

Cue xīngqīsān

星期三

on Wednesday

Wǒ xiǎng Xīngqīsān dào Běijīng qu kànkàn.

我想星期三到北京去看看。

I'm planning to visit Běijīng on Wednesday.

7. Nǐ dǎsuan jǐdiǎn zhōng dào tā nèr qù?

你打算几点钟到他那儿去？

At what time are you planning to visit his place?

Cue

sāndiǎn zhōng

三点钟

at 3 o'clock

Wǒ dāsuan sāndiǎn zhōng dào tā nèr qu kànkàn.

我打算三点钟到他那儿去看看。

I'm planning to visit his place at 3 o'clock.

## Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Nǐ jìhuà nǎitiān qù?  
你计划哪天去?  
What day do you plan to go?

Cue Xīngqīèr  
星期二  
Tuesday

Xīngqīèr huòzhě Xīngqīsān, dōu kěyǐ.  
星期二或者星期三，都可以。  
Tuesday and [or] Wednesday are both possible.

2. Nǐ jìhuà nǎitiān qù?  
你计划哪天去?  
What day do you plan to go?

Cue wǔhào  
五号  
the fifth

Wǔhào huòzhě liùhào, dōu kěyǐ.  
五号或者六号，都可以。  
The fifth or the sixth, both are possible.

3. Nǐ xiǎng jǐyuè qù?  
你想几月去?  
What month do you plan to go?

Cue Wǔyuè  
五月  
May

Wǔyuè huòzhě Liùyuè, dōu kěyǐ.  
五月或者六月，都可以。  
May or June, both are possible.

4. Nǐ xiǎng nèinián qù?

你想哪年去？

What year do you plan to go?

Cue  
1977  
1977  
1977

Yījiǔqīqī huòzhě Yījiǔqībā, dōu kěyǐ.

一九七七或者一九七八，都可以。

1977 or 1978, both are possible.

5. Nǐ dāsuan shénme shíhou qù?

你打算什么时候去？

When do you plan to go?

Cue  
xiàyuè sìhào  
下月四号  
The fourth of next month

Xiàyuè sìhào huòzhě xiàyuè wǔhào, dōu kěyǐ.

下月四号或者下月五号，都可以。

The fourth or the sixth of next month, both are possible.

6. Nǐ dāsuan jǐdiǎn zhōng qù?

你打算几点钟去？

What time do you plan to go?

Cue  
shàngwù shídiǎn  
上午十点  
10:00 a.m.

Shàngwù shídiǎn huòzhě shàngwù shíyīdiǎn, dōu kěyǐ.

上午十点或者上午十一点，都可以。

10:00 a.m. or 11:00 a.m., both are possible.

7. Nǐ jìhuà jǐhào qù?

你计划几号去？

What date do you plan to go?



Cue

èrshiqī

二十七

the Twenty-seventh

Èrshiqíhào huòzhě èrshibáhào, dōu kěyǐ.

二十七号或者二十八号，都可以。

The Twenty-seventh or the Twenty-eighth, both are possible.

## Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

1. Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yuǎn ma?  
上海离南京远吗？  
Is Shànghǎi far from Nánjīng?

Cue duō yuǎn  
多远  
how far

Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu duōyuǎn?  
上海离南京有多远？  
How far is Shànghǎi from Nánjīng?

2. Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yuǎn ma?  
上海离南京远吗？  
Is Shànghǎi far from Nánjīng?

Cue duōshǎo  
多少  
how many

Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu duōshǎo gōnglǐ?  
上海离南京有多少公里？  
How many kilometers is Shànghǎi from Nánjīng?

3. Běijīng lí Tiānjīn yuǎn ma?  
北京离天津远吗？  
Is Běijīng far from Tiānjīn?

Cue duó yuǎn  
多远  
how far

Běijīng lí Tiānjīn yǒu duōyuǎn?  
北京离天津有多远？  
How far is Běijīng from Tiānjīn?

4. Běijīng lí Shànghǎi yuǎn ma?

北京离上海远吗？

Is Běijīng far from Běijīng?

Cue

duōshao

多少

how many

Běijīng lí Shànghǎi yǒu duōshao gōnglǐ?

北京离上海有多少公里？

How many kilometers is Běijīng from Běijīng?

5. Nánjīng lí Běijīng yuǎn ma?

南京离北京远吗？

Is Nánjīng far from Běijīng?

Cue

duōshao

多少

how many

Nánjīng lí Běijīng yǒu duōshao gōnglǐ?

南京离北京有多少公里？

How many kilometers is Nánjīng from Běijīng?

6. Guǎngzhōu lí Wǔhàn yuǎn ma?

广州离武汉远吗？

Is Guǎngzhōu far from Wǔhàn?

Cue

duó yuǎn

多远

how far

Guǎngzhōu lí Wǔhàn yǒu duōyuǎn?

广州离武汉多远？

How far is Guǎngzhōu far from Wǔhàn?

7. Shànghǎi lí Hángzhōu yuǎn ma?

上海离杭州远吗？

Is Shànghǎi far from Hángzhōu?

Cue

duōshao

多少

how many

Shànghǎi lí Hángzhōu yǒu duōshao gōnglǐ?

上海离杭州有多少公里？

How many kilometers is Shànghǎi from Hángzhōu?

## Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu duó yuǎn?

上海离南京有多远？

How far is Shànghǎi from Nánjīng?

Cue

dàgài 270

大概 270

about 270

Dàgài yǒu èrbǎiqīshí gōnglǐ.

大概有二百七十公里。

It's probably 270 kilometers.

2. Tiānjīn lí Běijīng yǒu duó yuǎn?

天津离北京有多远？

How far is Tiānjīn from Běijīng?

Cue

80 duō

80 多

more than 80

Dàgài lí Běijīng yǒu bāshíduō gōnglǐ.

大概离北京有八十多公里。

It's probably more than 80 kilometers.

3. Běijīng lí Hángzhōu yǒu duó yuǎn?

北京离杭州有多远？

How far is Běijīng from Hángzhōu?

Cue

900 duō

900 多

more than 900

Dàgài lí Hángzhōu yǒu jiǔbǎiduō gōnglǐ.

大概离杭州有九百多公里。

It's probably more than 900 kilometers.

4. Běijīng lí Shànghǎi yǒu duó yuǎn?

北京离上海有多远？

How far is Běijīng from Shànghǎi?

Cue

dàgài 800

大概 800

about 800

Dàgài yǒu bābǎi gōnglǐ.

大概有八百公里。

It's probably about 800 kilometers.

5. Nánjīng lí Shànghǎi yǒu duó yuǎn?

南京离上海有多远？

How far is Nánjīng from Shànghǎi?

Cue

dàgài 200

大概二百

about 200

Dàgài yǒu èrbǎi gōnglǐ.

大概有二百公里。

It's probably about 200 kilometers.

6. Wūhàn lí Běijīng yǒu duó yuǎn?

武汉离北京有多远？

How far is Wūhàn from Běijīng?

Cue

700 duō

700 多

more than 700

Dàgài lí Běijīng yǒu qībǎiduō gōnglǐ.

大概离北京有七百多公里。

It's probably more than 700 kilometers.

7. Hángzhōu lí Shànghǎi yǒu duó yuǎn?

杭州离上海有多远？

How far is Hángzhōu from Shànghǎi?

Cue

170 duō

170 多

more than 170

Dàgài lí Shànghǎi yǒu yībǎiqīshíduō gōnglǐ.

大概离上海有一百七十多公里。

It's probably more than 170 kilometers.

## Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

1. Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu sānbǎi gōnglǐ.

上海离南京有三百公里。

Shànghǎi is 300 kilometers from Nánjīng.

Cue

méi

没

isn't less

Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng méiyǒu sānbǎi gōnglǐ.

上海离南京没有三百公里。

Shànghǎi isn't [is less than] 300 kilometers from Nánjīng.

2. Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu sānbǎi gōnglǐ.

上海离南京有三百公里。

Shànghǎi is 300 kilometers from Nánjīng.

Cue

dàgài

大概

probably

Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng dàgài yǒu sānbǎi gōnglǐ.

上海离南京大概有三百公里。

Shànghǎi is probably 300 kilometers from Nánjīng.

3. Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu sānbǎi gōnglǐ.

上海离南京有三百公里。

Shànghǎi is 300 kilometers from Běijīng.

Cue

duō

多

more than

Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu sānbǎiduō gōnglǐ.

上海离南京有三百多公里。

Shànghǎi is more than 300 kilometers from Běijīng.



4. Běijīng lí Shànghǎi yǒu yìqiān gōnglǐ.  
北京离上海有一千公里。  
Běijīng is 1000 kilometers from Shànghǎi

Cue méi  
没  
isn't less

Běijīng lí Shànghǎi méiyǒu yìqiān gōnglǐ.  
北京离上海没有一千公里。  
Běijīng isn't [is less than] 1000 kilometers from Shànghǎi.

5. Wūhàn lí Běijīng yǒu bābǎi gōnglǐ.  
武汉离北京有八百公里。  
Wūhàn is 800 kilometers from Běijīng

Cue dàgài  
大概  
probably

Wūhàn lí Běijīng dàgài yǒu bābǎi gōnglǐ.  
武汉离北京大概有八百公里。  
Wūhàn is probably 800 kilometers from Běijīng.

6. Nánjīng lí Shànghǎi yǒu èrbǎi gōnglǐ.  
南京离上海有二百公里。  
Nánjīng is 200 kilometers from Shànghǎi

Cue duō  
多  
more than

Nánjīng lí Shànghǎi yǒu èrbǎiduō gōnglǐ.  
南京离上海有二百多公里。  
Nánjīng is more than 200 kilometers from Shànghǎi.

7. Hángzhōu lí Shànghǎi yǒu yìbǎi gōnglǐ.  
杭州离上海有一百公里。  
Hángzhōu is 100 kilometers from Shànghǎi.

Cue

duō

多

more than

Hángzhōu lí Shànghǎi yǒu yībǎiduō gōnglǐ.

杭州离上海有一百多公里。

Hángzhōu is more than 100 kilometers from Shànghǎi.

## Substitution drill

Substitute according to the cue and the model.

1. Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu jǐge zhōngtóu?  
坐火车要走几个钟头？  
How many hours does it take by train?

Cue duó jiǔ  
多久  
how long

Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu duó jiǔ?  
坐火车要走多久？  
How long does it take by train?

2. Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu duó jiǔ?  
坐火车要走多久？  
How long does it take by train?

Cue duōshao shíhou  
多少时候  
how much time

Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu duōshao shíhou?  
坐火车要走多少时候？  
How much time does it take by train?

3. Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu duōshao shíhou?  
坐火车要走多少时候？  
How much time does it take by train?

Cue jǐtiān  
几天  
how many days

Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu jǐtiān?  
坐火车要走几天？  
How many days does it take by train?

4. Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu jǐtiān?

坐火车要走几天？

does it take by train?

Cue

jǐge xīngqī

几个星期

how many weeks

Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu jǐge xīngqī?

坐火车要走几个星期？

How many weeks does it take by train?

5. Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu jǐge xīngqī?

坐火车要走几个星期？

How many weeks does it take by train?

Cue

jǐge xiǎoshí

几个小时

how many hours

Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu jǐge xiǎoshí?

坐火车要走几个小时？

How many hours does it take by train?

6. Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu jǐge xiǎoshí?

坐火车要走几个小时？

How many hours does it take by train?

Cue

duōshao tiān

多少天

how many days

Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu duōshao tiān?

坐火车要走多少天？

How many days does it take by train?

7. Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu duōshao tiān?

坐火车要走多少天？

How many days does it take by train?

Cue

jǐge xīngqī

几个星期

how many weeks

Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu jǐge xīngqī?

坐火车要走几个星期？

How many weeks does it take by train?

## Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

1. Yào zǒu bànge zhōngtóu.  
要走半个钟头。  
It takes half an hour.

Cue yī  
—  
1

Yào zǒu yíge bàn zhōngtóu.  
要走一个半钟头。  
It takes an hour and a half.

2. Yào zǒu bàntiān.  
要走半天。  
It takes half a day.

Cue sān  
—  
—  
3

Yào zǒu sāntiān bàn.  
要走三天半。  
It takes three and a half days.

3. Yào zǒu bànge yuè.  
要走半个月。  
It takes half a month.

Cue èr  
—  
—  
2

Yào zǒu liǎngge bàn yuè.  
要走两个半月。  
It takes 2 and a half months.

4. Yào zǒu bàngè xīngqī.

要走一个星期。

It takes half a week.

Cue yī

—

1

Yào zǒu yíge bàn xīngqī.

要走一个半星期

It takes a week and a half.

5. Yào zǒu bànnián.

要走半年。

It takes half a year.

Cue yī

—

1

Yào zǒu yìnián bàn.

要走一年半。

It takes a year and a half.

6. Yào zǒu bàngè zhōngtóu.

要走半个钟头。

It takes half an hour.

Cue sì

四

4

Yào zǒu sìge bàn zhōngtóu.

要走四个半钟头。

It takes 4 and a half hours .

7. Yào zǒu bàngè yuè.

要走半个月。

It takes half a month.

Cue

yī

—

1

Yào zǒu yíge bàn yuè.

要走一个半月。

It takes a month and a half.



## Expansion drill

### Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Zhè shì wǒ dìyīcì dào Nánjīng qù.

这是我第一次到南京去。

This will be the first time I have gone to Nánjīng.

Cue

yǐhòu

以后

later

Zhè shì wǒ dìyīcì dào Nánjīng qù. Yǐhòu hái yào qù.

这是我第一次到南京去。以后还要去。

This will be the first time I have gone to Nánjīng. Later on I want to go again.

2. Zhè shì wǒ dìyīcì dào Nánjīng qù.

这是我第一次到南京去。

This will be the first time I have gone to Nánjīng.

Cue

yǐqián

以前

before

Zhè shì wǒ dìyīcì dào Nánjīng qù. Yǐqián méi qùguo.

这是我第一次到南京去。以前没去过。

This will be the first time I have gone to Nánjīng. I haven't gone there before.

3. Zhè shì tā dìyīcì xué Zhōngguo huà.

这是他第一次学中国话。

This will be the first time I have studied Chinese.

Cue

yǐhòu

以后

later

Zhè shì tā dìyīcì xué Zhōngguo huà. Yǐhòu hái yào xué.

这是他第一次学中国话。以后还要学。

This will be the first time I have studied Chinese. Later on I want to study again.

4. Zhè shì tā dìyīcì chī Zhōngguó fàn.

这是他第一次吃中国饭。

This will be the first time I have eaten Chinese food.

Cue yǐqián  
以前  
before

Zhè shì tā dìyīcì chī Zhōngguó fàn. Yǐqián méi chīguo.

这是他第一次吃中国饭。以前没吃过。

This will be the first time I have eaten Chinese food. I haven't eaten it before.

5. Zhè shì wǒ dìyīcì dào zhèr lái.

这是我第一次到这儿来。

This will be the first time I have gone here.

Cue yǐhòu  
以后  
later

Zhè shì wǒ dìyīcì dào zhèr lái. Yǐhòu hái yào lái.

这是我第一次到这儿来。以后还要来。

This will be the first time I have gone here. Later on I want to go again.

6. Zhè shì wǒ dìyīcì dào zhèr lái.

这是我第一次到这儿来。

This will be the first time I have gone here.

Cue yǐqián  
以前  
before

Zhè shì wǒ dìyīcì dào zhèr lái. Yǐqián méi lái guo.

这是我第一次到这儿来。以前没来过。

This will be the first time I have gone here. I haven't gone there before.

7. Zhè shì wǒ dìyīcì dào Měiguó qù.

这是我第一次到美国去。

This will be the first time I have gone to America.

Cue

yǐqián

以前

before

Zhè shì wǒ dìyīcì dào Měiguó qù. Yǐqián méi qùguo.

这是我第一次到美国去。以前没去过。

This will be the first time I have gone to America. I haven't gone there before.

## Response drill

### Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Nǐ shuō lái liǎngtiān gòu bu gou?

你说来两天够不够？

Would you say it would be enough to come for two days?

Lái liǎngtiān gòu le.

来两天够了。

It would be enough to come for two days.

2. Nǐ shuō qù liǎngtiān gòu bu gou?

你说去两天够不够？

Would you say it would be enough to go for two days?

Qù liǎngtiān gòu le.

说去两天够了。

It would be enough to go for two days.

3. Nǐ shuō xué liǎngniánde Zhōngwén gòu bu gou?

你说学两年的中文够不够？

Would you say it would be enough to study Chinese for 2 years?

Xué liǎngniánde Zhōngwén gòu le.

学两年的中文够了。

It would be enough to study Chinese for 2 years.

4. Nǐ shuō zhù sāngē yuè gòu bu gou?

你说住三个月够不够？

Would you say it would be enough to stay for 3 months?

Zhù sāngē yuè gòu le.

住三个月够了。

It would be enough to stay for 3 months.

5. Nǐ shuō niàn jiǔge xīngqī gòu hu gou?

你说念九个星期够不够？

Would you say it would be enough to study for 9 weeks?

Niàn jiǔge xīngqī gòu le.

念九个星期够了。

It would be enough to study for 9 weeks.

6. Nǐ shuō dào nèr qù wánr shítiān gòu bu gou?

你说到那儿去玩儿十天够不够？

Would you say it would be enough to go there for 10 days?

Wánr shítiān gòu le.

玩儿十天够了。

It would be enough to go there for 10 days?

7. Nǐ shuō zǒu yíge zhōngtóu gòu bu gou?

你说走一个钟头够不够？

Would you say it would be enough to walk for one hour?

Zǒu yíge zhōngtóu gòu le.

走一个钟头够了。

It would be enough to walk for one hour.

## Expansion drill

### Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Wǒ xīwang xiàwǔ líkāi zhèr.

我希望下午离开这儿。

I hope to leave here in the afternoon.

Cue

Xiàwǔ yǒu jǐtàng chē?

下午有几趟车？

How many trains are there in the afternoon

Wǒ xīwang xiàwǔ líkāi zhèr. Xiàwǔ yǒu jǐtàng chē?

我希望下午离开这儿。下午有几趟车？

I hope to leave here in the afternoon. How many trains are there in the afternoon?

2. Wǒ xīwang xiàwǔ líkāi zhèr.

我希望下午离开这儿。

I hope to leave here in the afternoon.

Cue

Xiàwǔ yǒu meiyǒu chē?

下午有没有车？

Is there a train in the afternoon?

Wǒ xīwang xiàwǔ líkāi zhèr. Xiàwǔ yǒu meiyǒu chē?

我希望下午离开这儿。下午有没有车？

leave here in the afternoon. Is there a train in the afternoon?

3. Wǒ xīwang wǎnshàng líkāi zhèr.

我希望晚上离开这儿。

I hope to leave here in the morning.

Cue

Wǎnshàng yǒu jǐtàng chē?

晚上有几趟车？

How many trains are there in the evening?

Wǒ xīwang wǎnshàng líkāi zhèr. Wǎnshàng yǒu jǐtàng chē?

我希望晚上离开这儿。晚上有几趟车？

I hope to leave here in the morning. How many trains are there in the evening?

4. Wǒ xīwang Xīngqīsān líkāi zhèr.

我希望星期三离开这儿。

I hope to leave here on Wednesday.

Cue

Xīngqīsān yǒu jǐtàng chē?

星期三有几趟车？

How many trains are there on Wednesday?

Wǒ xīwang Xīngqīsān líkāi zhèr. Xīngqīsān yǒu jǐtàng chē?

我希望星期三离开这儿。星期三有几趟车？

I hope to leave here on Wednesday. How many trains are there on Wednesday?

5. Wǒ xīwang míngtiān líkāi zhèr. Míngtiān yǒu jǐtàng chē?

我希望明天离开这儿。

I hope to leave here tomorrow.

Cue

Míngtiān yǒu jǐtàng chē?

明天有几趟车？

How many trains are there tomorrow?

Wǒ xīwang míngtiān líkāi zhèr. Míngtiān yǒu jǐtàng chē?

我希望明天离开这儿。明天有几趟车？

I hope to leave here tomorrow. How many trains are there tomorrow?

6. Wǒ xīwang jīntiān shàngwǔ líkāi zhèr. Shàngwǔ yǒu meiyou chē?

我希望离今天上午开这儿。

I hope to leave here this morning.

Cue

Shàngwǔ yǒu meiyou chē?

上午有没有车？

Is there a train in the morning?

Wǒ xīwang jīntiān shàngwǔ líkāi zhèr. Shàngwǔ yǒu meiyou chē?

我希望离今天上午开这儿。上午有没有车？

I hope to leave here this morning. Is there a train in the morning?

7. Wǒ xīwang Xīngqīwǔ líkāi zhèr.

我希望星期五离开这儿。

I hope to leave here on Friday.

Cue

Xīngqīwǔ yǒu jǐtàng chē?

星期五有几趟车？

How many trains are there on Friday?

Wǒ xīwang Xīngqīwǔ líkāi zhèr. Xīngqīwǔ yǒu jǐtàng chē?

我希望星期五离开这儿。星期五有几趟车？

I hope to leave here on Friday. How many trains are there on Friday?



## Unit 6

### References

#### Reference List

1. A: Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?  
幾點鐘開?  
What time does it leave?  
B: híbādiǎn wūshiwǔfēn fā chē.  
十八點五十五分發車。  
It departs at 1855.  
A: Nà hǎo.  
那好。  
That's fine.
2. B: Qǐng ni bǎ nǐde hùzhào hé lǚxíngzhèng gěi wo.  
請你把你的護照和旅行證給我。  
Please give me your passport and travel permit.  
A: Hǎo, gěi ni.  
好，給你。  
Okay, here it is.
3. A: Dào Shànghǎi qùde chē zài dìjǐ zhàntái?  
到上海去的車在第幾站臺？  
On which platform is the train to Shànghǎi?  
B: Zài dìyī zhàntái.  
在第一站臺。  
It's on Platform Number 1.
4. B: Bú yòng jí. Hái zǎo ne.  
不用急。還早呢。  
No need to be anxious. It's still early.  
B: Nǐ xiān zài zhèige jiēdàishì xiūxi xiūxi.  
你先在這個接待室休息休息。  
First, rest a bit in this waiting room.
5. A: Wǒ zhèijiàn xíngli zěnmé bàn? Shì bu shì kéyǐ nǎshàng chē qu?  
我這件行李怎麼辦？是不是可以拿上車去？  
What should I do about this suitcase of mine? May I take it onto the train?  
B: Kéyǐ bǎ xíngli nǎshàng chē qu.

- 可以把行李拿上車去。  
You may take the suitcase onto the train.
6. A: Zhèibān chē yǒu cānchē ba?  
這班車有餐車吧？  
This train has a dining car, I suppose?
- B: Yǒu. Yǒu Zhōngcān, yě yǒu Xīcān.  
有。有中餐，也有西餐。  
Yes. There's Chinese food and there's also Western food.
- A: Hǎojíle.  
好極了。  
Great.
7. C: Xià yízhàn jiù shì Shànghǎi le.  
下一站就是上海了。  
The next station is Shànghǎi.
- C: Kuài yào dào zhàn le.  
快要到站了。  
We are about to arrive at the station.
- C: Nín zhǔnbèi xià chē ba.  
您準備下車了。  
Please get ready to get off the train.
8. bān  
搬  
to move
9. náshàngqu  
拿上去  
to take up  
náshànglai  
拿上來  
to bring up  
náxiàqu  
拿下去  
to take down  
náxiàlai  
拿下來  
to bring down
10. pǎo  
跑  
to run
11. wǎn

12.	<p>晚 to be late yuètai</p> <p>月臺 train platform (alternate word for zhàntái. more common in Taiwan)</p>
-----	---

## Vocabulary

bān	搬	to move (e.g., furniture) (new house)
bàn	辦	to handle, to manage, to do
cānchē	餐車	dining car
fā chē	發車	to depart (from the first terminal of a train route)
hǎojíle	好極了	to be wonderful, to be great
hé	和	and
hùzhào	護照	passport
jí	急	to be anxious
jiēdàishì (jiēdàishī)	接待室	waiting room
-jíle	極了	extremely, awfully
kāi	開	to leave
kuài	快	soon
lǚxíngzhèng	旅行證	travel permit
ná	拿	to pick up, to hold, to take
náshànglai	拿上來	to bring up
náshàngqu	拿上去	to take up
náxiàlai	拿下來	to bring down
náxiàqu	拿下去	to take down
pǎo	跑	to run
wǎn	晚	to be late
Xīcān	西餐	Western food
xiūxi	休息	to rest, to relax
yào	要	will, going to
yuètái	月臺	train platform
zǎo	早	to be early
zhàntái	站臺	train platform
Zhōngcān	中餐	Chinese food
zhǔnbèi	準備	to prepare, to get ready
bāng	幫	to help
bú yào	不要	don't
láilai-wǎngwǎng	來來往往	coming and going

qǐdiǎnzhàn	起點站	station where a train originates (literally, “starting station”)
shūfu	舒服	to be comfortable

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1

1. A: Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?  
幾點鐘開?  
What time does it leave?
- B: híbādiǎn wūshiwǔfēn fā chē.  
十八點五十五分發車。  
It departs at 1855.
- A: Nà hǎo.  
那好。  
That's fine.

**Kāi** and **fā chē**: When referring to trains, the verb **kāi**, “to start,” means “to start off” or “to leave.” The technical term **fā chē**, “to send out the train,” is used in reference to a train which is departing from the terminal at the beginning of a trip, or line.

### Notes on №2

2. B: Qǐng ni bǎ nǐde hùzhào hé lǚxíngzhèng gěi wo.  
請你把你的護照和旅行證給我。  
Please give me your passport and travel permit.
- A: Hǎo, gěi ni.  
好，給你。  
Okay, here it is.

**Hé**, “and,” is a common alternate to **gēn**. Both **hé** and **gēn** are used as “and” between nouns.

**Bǎ nǐde hùzhào...**: The prepositional verb **bǎ** points out the direct objects (passport and travel permit) and brings those objects to the beginning of the sentence, preceding the main verb. Without this construction, a “traffic jam” of sentence elements would follow that verb.

### Notes on №3

3. A: Dào Shànghǎi qùde chē zài dìjǐ zhàntái?  
到上海去的車在第幾站臺?  
On which platform is the train to **Shànghǎi**?
- B: Zài dìyī zhàntái.  
在第一站臺。  
It's on Platform Number 1.

### Notes on №4

4. B: **Bú yòng jí. Hái zǎo ne.**  
不用急。還早呢。  
No need to be anxious. It's still early.
- B: **Nǐ xiān zài zhèige jiēdàishì xiūxi xiūxi.**  
你先在這個接待室休息休息。  
First, rest a bit in this waiting room.

In exchange 4, the aspect marker **ne** emphasizes that there has been no change in the situation.

**Tā zài zhèr ne.**

他在這兒呢。

He is here.

When the adverb **hái**, “still,” “yet,” is used, the sentence very often ends with the marker **ne**.

**Míngtiān wǒ hái bù zǒu ne.**

明天我還不走呢。

I am not leaving tomorrow (yet), (i.e., I will still be here tomorrow.)

Verb reduplication: In Unit 3 of the Money Module, you learned that reduplication is one way to indicate ASPECT, although markers are more common. INDEFINITENESS is the aspect expressed when an action verb is reduplicated. The speaker does not commit himself to the duration or extent of the action.

In the last sentence of № the speaker asks the listener to “rest a bit.” Instead of using additional words to indicate a short duration, the speaker reduplicates the verb, **xiūxi**, expressing some duration, but of no particular limit.

To reduplicate a two-syllable verb, simply repeat the whole verb. The repetition is unstressed, or even toneless: **xiūxi xiūxi**

**Xiān**: Since this use of “first” is not followed by an explicit “afterwards,” **xiān** might also be translated as “for the time being” or “right now.”

**Wǒ xiān zǒu le, nǐmen mànmanr chī ba.**

我先走了，你們慢慢兒吃吧。

Right now I'm going to excuse myself; you take your time eating.

**Nǐ xiān bié jí, mànmanr zhǎo.**

你先別急，慢慢兒找。

For the time being, don't be anxious; take your time looking for it.

### Notes on №5

5. A: **Wǒ zhèjiàn xínglǐ zěnmé bàn? Shì bu shì kěyǐ náshàng chē qu?**  
我這件行李怎麼辦？是不是可以拿上車去？

What should I do about this suitcase of mine? May I take it onto the train?  
 B: **Kéyǐ bǎ xínglǐ náshàng chē qu.**  
**可以把行李拿上車去。**  
 You may take the suitcase onto the train.

Zěnmě bàn means something like “how should [something] be managed” or “what should be done [about something].”

Náshàng chē qu, “take onto the train,” is a COMPOUND VERB OF DIRECTION which has been separated by a noun object. Ná is the verb “to pick up,” “to hold,” “to take,” “to bring.” The directional endings -shàng, “up,” “onto,”\* and qù, “to go,” tell you that the action takes place up and away from the speaker.

 **Note**

You have seen shàng used as several different parts of speech:

shàng lóu	to go up (FULL verb)
上樓	
shàng chē	to get on (FULL verb)
上車	
shàngbianr	upper, above (IN PLACE WORDS)
上邊兒	
shàngge yuè	last, previously (SPECIFIER)
上個月	
zài chēshàng	on (LOCATIONAL ENDING [with nouns])
在車上	
náshàngqu	up, onto (DIRECTIONAL ENDING [with verbs])
拿上去	
ná shàng qu	(hold up/onto away)
拿上去	“to take up/onto”

Compound verbs of direction are easily formed, as shown in the chart below. The first column contains action verbs you have learned which may be used. The endings in the middle column are relatively few. For the second part of the directional ending, only lái and qù may be used.

ACTION	Plus	DIRECTION
ná (to carry)	-shàng (up)	lái (towards)
拿	上	來



ACTION	Plus	DIRECTION
<i>zǒu</i> (to walk/go)	- <i>xià</i> (down)	<i>qù</i> (away)
走	下	去
<i>bān</i> (to move)	- <i>chū</i> (out)	
搬	出	
<i>pǎo</i> (to run)	- <i>jìn</i> (in)	
跑	進	
<i>kāi</i> (to drive)	- <i>huí</i> (back)	
開	回	

(AND OTHERS)

Compound verbs of direction may be two or three syllables: *chūqu*, “to go out”; *zǒuchūqu*, “to walk out”

It is possible to split up a two-part directional ending by placing an object or location before the final *lái* or *qù*.

<i>náshang chē qu</i>
拿上車去
take onto the train/bus
<i>náchu yìběn shū lái</i>
拿出一本書來
bring out a book
<i>xià lóu qu</i>
下樓去
go downstairs

A direct object (such as *nèiběn shū*) may be placed EITHER at the beginning of a sentence, using *bǎ*, OR later in the sentence, splitting up the directional ending. Locations which are the goal of the action (such as *chē* and *lóu* above) MUST be placed between the two parts of the directional ending.

*Bǎ xíngli náshang chē qu*: In the last sentence of exchange 5, the direct object, *xíngli*, is placed before the verb. The location of the action, *chē*, is placed before the final *qu*. When both a location and a direct object occur in a sentence with a multisyllabic directional verb, the location is placed between the two syllables of the directional ending, and the direct object is moved closer to the beginning of the sentence.

### Notes on №6

6. A: *Zhèibān chē yǒu cānchē ba?*

這班車有餐車吧？

This train has a dining car, I suppose?

B: Yǒu. Yǒu Zhōngcān, yě yǒu Xīcān.

有。有中餐，也有西餐。

Yes. There's Chinese food and there's also Western food.

A: Hǎojíle.

好極了。

Great.

The ending *-jíle*, meaning “extremely,” “awfully,” may be added to adjectival verbs.

Nèige píngguo dàjíle.

那個蘋果大幾了。

That apple is huge.

Zuò huǒchē fāngbiānjíle.

坐火車方便極了。

Riding the train is extremely convenient.

Tā zǒude kuàijíle.

他走得快極了。

He walks awfully fast.

*-jíle* is seldom used in Taiwan.

### Notes on №7

7. C: Xià yízhàn jiù shì Shànghǎi le.

下一站就是上海了。

The next station is Shànghǎi.

C: Kuài yào dào zhàn le.

快要到站了。

We are about to arrive at the station.

C: Nín zhǔnbèi xià chē ba.

您準備下車了。

Please get ready to get off the train.

*Kuài* means “soon” in the second sentence of exchange 7. You have already learned another meaning for *kuài*: “to be fast”

In the sentence *Kuài yào dào zhàn le*, *yào* is an auxiliary verb meaning “will” or “to be going to.” Other meanings you have learned for *yào* are “to want,” “to need,” “to have to,” “to require.”

New-situation *le*: The aspect marker *le* for new situations occurs in the first two sentences of № 7. In *Xià yízhàn jiù shì Shànghǎi le*, the speaker uses *le* to communicate a change in the circumstances: after passing through many stations, *Shànghǎi* will finally be the next station.

When a speaker uses *le*, he is saying that something has changed in reference to him or in reference to the listener. In the first sentence in № 7, *Shànghǎi* itself has not changed, but what constitutes the “next station” for the speaker and the listener has changed.

In *Kuài yào dào zhàn le*, new-situation *le* marks a change which is about to take place—their arrival. Here are examples of references to future changes:

*Tā míngnián jiù shísuì le.*

他明年就十歲了。

He will be ten (years old) next year.

*Wǒ zǒu le.*

我走了。

I'm leaving now. (I'll be leaving now.)

*Piào kuài yào màiwán le.*

票快要賣完了。

The tickets will soon be sold out.

Many speakers of English have trouble with new-situation *le* because they would not think of using it when the Chinese do. Take note of situations which the Chinese consider to be changes, and try to use new-situation *le* in your speech.

## Drills

### Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?  
几点钟开?  
What time does it leave?

Cue huǒchē  
火车  
train

Nèibān huǒchē jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?  
那班车几点钟开?  
What time does that train leave?

2. Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?  
几点钟开?  
What time does it leave?

Cue gōnglùjúde chē  
公路局的车  
highway Department's car

Nèibān gōnglùjúde chē jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?  
那班公路局的车几点钟开?  
What time does the highway Department's car leave?

3. Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?  
几点钟开?  
What time does it leave?

Cue gōnggòng qìchē  
公共汽车  
bus

Nèibān gōnggòng qìchē jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?

那班公共汽车几点钟开？

What time does that bus leave?

4. Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?

几点钟开？

What time does it leave?

Cue

zhídáchē

直达车

direct train

Nèibān zhídáchē jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?

那班直达车几点钟开？

What time does that direct train leave?

5. Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?

几点钟开？

What time does it leave?

Cue

tèkuài

特快

express

Nèibān tèkuài jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?

那班特快几点钟开？

What time does that express leave?

6. Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?

几点钟开？

What time does it leave?

Cue

yínháng

银行

bank

Nèige yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?

那个银行几点钟开门？

What time does the bank open?

7. Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?

几点钟开？

What time does it open?

Cue

yóuzhèngjú

邮政局

post office

Nèige yóuzhèngjú jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?

那个邮政局几点钟开门？

What time does the post office open?



4. Zuò shídiǎn wǔshífēnde chē, láidejí ma?

坐十点五十分的车，来得及吗？

Can we make the 10:50 train?

Cue shì  
是  
yes

Láidejí, hái zǎo ne.

来得及，还早呢。

Don't worry. It's still early.

5. Zuò qīdiǎn wǔshífēnde chē, láidejí ma?

坐七点五十分的车，来得及吗？

Can we make the 7:50 train?

Cue bù  
不  
no

Láibují, yǐjīng wǎn le.

来不及，已经晚了。

We can't make it; we are already late.

6. Zuò sìdiǎn língwǔfēnde chē, láidejí ma?

坐四点零五分的车，来得及吗？

Can we make the 4:05 train?

Cue shì  
是  
yes

Láidejí, hái zǎo ne.

来得及，还早呢。

Don't worry. It's still early.

7. Zuò liǎngdiǎn língbāfēnde chē, láidejí ma?

坐两点零八分，来得及吗？

Can we make the 2:08 train?



Cue

bù

不

no

Láibují, yǐjīng wǎn le.

来不及，已经晚了。

We can't make it; we are already late.

## Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Zài dìjǐ zhàntái?  
在第几站台？  
On which platform is it?

Cue Shànghǎi  
上海  
Shànghǎi

Dào Shànghǎi qùde chē zài dìjǐ zhàntái?  
到上海去的车在第几站台？  
On which platform is the train to Shànghǎi?

2. Zài disān zhàntái.  
在第三站台。  
On which platform is it?

Cue Nánjīng  
南京  
Nánjīng

Dào Nánjīng qùde chē zài disān zhàntái.  
到南京去的车在第三站台？  
On which platform is the train to Nánjīng?

3. Zài dìjǐ zhàntái?  
在第几站台？  
On which platform is it?

Cue Guǎngzhōu  
广州  
Guǎngzhōu

Dào Guǎngzhōu qùde chē zài dìjǐ zhàntái?  
到广州去的车在第几站台？  
On which platform is the train to Guǎngzhōu?

4. Zài dièr zhàntái.  
在第二站台。  
On which platform is it?

Cue Tianjīn  
天津  
Tianjīn

Dào Tiānjīn qùde chē zài dièr zhàntái.  
到天津去的车在第二站台？  
On which platform is the train to Tianjīn?

5. Zài dìjǐ zhàntái?  
在第几站台？  
On which platform is it?

Cue Qīngdǎo  
青岛  
Qīngdǎo

Dào Qīngdǎo qùde chē zài dìjǐ zhàntái?  
到青岛去的车在第几站台？  
On which platform is the train to Qīngdǎo?

6. Zài dìyī zhàntái.  
在第一站台。  
On which platform is it?

Cue Hángzhōu  
杭州  
Hángzhōu

Dào Hángzhōu qùde chē zài dìyī zhàntái.  
到杭州去的车在第几站台？  
On which platform is the train to Hángzhōu?

7. Zài dìjǐ zhàntái?  
在第几站台？  
On which platform is it?

Cue

Běijīng

北京

Běijīng

Dào Běijīng qùde chē zài dìjǐ zhàntái?

到北京去的车在第几站台？

On which platform is the train to Běijīng?

## Substitution drill

Substitute according to the cue and the model.

1. Duibuqǐ, wǒ děi zài zhèr xiūxi xiuxi.  
对不起，我得在这儿休息休息。  
Excuse me, I must rest here a moment.

Cue zhèige dìfang  
这个地方

Duibuqǐ, wǒ děi zài zhèige dìfang xiūxi xiuxi.  
对不起，我得在这个地方休息休息。  
Excuse me, I must rest at this place a moment.

2. Duibuqǐ, wǒ děi zài zhèige dìfang xiūxi xiuxi.  
对不起，我得在这个地方休息休息。  
Excuse me, I must rest at this place a moment.

Cue jiālǐ  
家里

Duibuqǐ, wǒ děi zài jiālǐ xiūxi xiuxi.  
对不起，我得在家里休息休息。  
Excuse me, I must rest at home a moment.

3. Duibuqǐ, wǒ děi zài jiālǐ xiūxi xiuxi.  
对不起，我得在家里休息休息。  
Excuse me, I must rest at home a moment.

Cue fàndiànli  
饭店里

Duibuqǐ, wǒ děi zài fàndiànli xiūxi xiuxi.  
对不起，我得在饭店里休息休息。  
Excuse me, I must rest in the restaurant place a moment.

4. Duibuqǐ, wǒ děi zài fàndiànlǐ xiūxi xiūxi.  
对不起，我得在饭店里休息休息。  
Excuse me, I must rest in the restaurant a moment.

Cue chēli  
车里

Duibuqǐ, wǒ děi zài chēli xiūxi xiūxi.  
对不起，我得在车里休息休息。  
Excuse me, I must rest in the car a moment.

5. Duibuqǐ, wǒ děi zài chēli xiūxi xiūxi.  
对不起，我得在车里休息休息。  
Excuse me, I must rest in the car a moment.

Cue jiēdàishì  
接待室

Duibuqǐ, wǒ děi zài jiēdàishì xiūxi xiūxi.  
对不起，我得在接待室休息休息。  
Excuse me, I must rest in the waiting room a moment.

6. Duibuqǐ, wǒ děi zài jiēdàishì xiūxi xiūxi.  
对不起，我得在接待室休息休息。  
Excuse me, I must rest in the waiting room a moment.

Cue zhèr  
这儿

Duibuqǐ, wǒ děi zài zhèr xiūxi xiūxi.  
对不起，我得在这儿休息休息。  
Excuse me, I must rest here a moment.

## Expansion drill

### Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Wǒ zhèjiàn xíngli hái zài zhèr.

我这件行李还在这儿。

This suitcase of mine is still here.

Wǒ zhèjiàn xíngli hái zài zhèr. Zěnmē bàn?

我这件行李还在这儿。怎么办？

This suitcase of mine is still here. What should I do about it?

2. Tā yào dào nàr qù.

他/她要到那儿去。

He/she wants to go there.

Tā yào dào nàr qù. Zěnmē zǒu?

他/她要到那儿去。怎么走？

He/she wants to go there. How do I get there [go]?

3. Wǒ zhèxiē dōngxi hái zài zhèr.

我这些东西还在这儿。

These things of mine are still here.

Wǒ zhèxiē dōngxi hái zài zhèr. Zěnmē bàn?

我这些东西还在这儿。怎么办？

These things of mine are still here. What should I do about it?

4. Tā yào dào Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē qù.

他/她要到王府井大街去。

He/she wants to go to Wángfǔjǐng Boulevard.

Tā yào dào Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē qù. Zěnmē zǒu?

他/她要到王府井大街去。怎么走？

He/she wants to go to Wángfǔjǐng Boulevard. How does He/she get there [go]?

5. Wǒ nèixiē xíngli hái zài chēshàng.

我那些行李还在车上。

My luggage is still in his/her car.

Wǒ nèixiē xínglǐ hái zài chēshàng. Zěnmē bàn?

我那些行李还在车上。怎么办？

My luggage is still in his/her car. What should I do about it?

6. Tā yào dào Shànghǎi qù.

他/她要到上海去。

He/she wants to go to Shànghǎi.

Tā yào dào Shànghǎi qù. Zěnmē zǒu?

他/她要到上海去。怎么走？

He/she wants to go to Shànghǎi. How does He/she I get there [go]?

7. Wǒ zhèxiē zázhì hái méi màiwán.

我这些杂志还没卖完。

These magazines of mine are still unsold.

Wǒ zhèxiē zázhì hái méi màiwán. Zěnmē bàn?

我这些杂志还没卖完。怎么办？

These magazines of mine are still unsold. What should I do about it?



## Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Tāmen yǒu Zhōngcān háishi Xīcān?  
他们有中餐还是西餐？  
Do they have Chinese food or Western food?

Cue yě  
也  
also

Tāmen yǒu Zhōngcān, yě yǒu Xīcān.  
他们有中餐也有西餐。  
They have Chinese food and they also have Western food.

2. Tāmen yào zhèige háishi nèige?  
他们要这个还是那个？  
Do they want this or that?

Cue dōu  
都

Zhèige, nèige, tāmen dōu yào.  
这个，那个，他们都要。  
They want both this and that.

3. Nǐmen mǎi zhuōzi háishi yǐzi?  
你们买桌子还是椅子？  
Do you buy a table or a chair?

Cue yě  
也  
also

Wǒmen mǎi zhuōzi, yě mǎi yǐzi.  
你们买桌子也买椅子。  
We buy a table and a chair.

4. Nǐmen mǎi pánzi háishi wǎn?

你们买盘子还是碗？

Do you buy plates or bowls?

Cue dōu  
都  
all

Pánzi, wǎn, wǒmen dōu mǎi.

盘子，碗，我们都买。

Plates, bowls, we buy both.

5. Tāmen mài zhèige hóngde háishi nèige lánde?

他们卖这个红的还是那个蓝的？

Do they sell this red one or that blue one?

Cue dōu  
都  
all

Hóngde, lánde, tāmen dōu mài.

红的，蓝的，他们都卖。

The red one, the blue one, they sell both.

6. Tāmen kàn zhèixiē zázhì háishi nèixiē bào?

他们看这些杂志还是那些报？

Do they read these magazines or those newspapers?

Cue yě  
也  
also

Tāmen kàn zhèixiē zázhì, yě kàn nèixiē bào.

他们看这些杂志，也看那些报

They read these magazines, they read those newspapers too.

7. Nǐ niàn jīngjìxué háishi zhèngzhìxué?

你念经济学还是政治学。

Do you study economics or political science.

Cue

yě

也

also

Wǒ niàn jīngjìxué, yě niàn zhèngzhìxué.

我念经济学，也念政治学。

I study economics and I studied political science.

## Expansion drill

### Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Kuài yào dào zhàn le.

快要到站了。

We are about to arrive at the station.

Kuài yào dào zhàn le. Wǒmen zhǔnbèi xià chē ba.

快要到站了。我们准备下车吧。

We are about to arrive at the station. Let's get ready to get off.

2. Xià yízhàn jiù shì Běijīng le.

下一站就是北京了。

The next stop is Beijing.

Xià yízhàn jiù shì Běijīng le. Wǒmen zhǔnbèi xià chē ba.

下一站就是北京了。我们准备下车吧。

The next stop is Beijing. Let's get ready to get off.

3. Kuài yào dào Tiānjīn le.

快要到天津了。

We are about to arrive in Tiānjīn.

Kuài yào dào Tiānjīn le. Wǒmen zhǔnbèi xià chē ba.

快要到天津了。我们准备下车吧。

We are about to arrive in Tiānjīn. Let's get ready to get off.

4. Xià yízhàn jiù shì Nánjīng le.

下一站就是南京了。

The next stop is Nánjīng.

Xià yízhàn jiù shì Nánjīng le. Wǒmen zhǔnbèi xià chē ba.

下一站就是南京了。我们准备下车吧。

The next stop is Nánjīng. Let's get ready to get off.

5. Kuài yào dào Hángzhōu le.

快要到杭州了。

We are about to arrive in Hángzhōu.

Kuài yào dào Hángzhōu le. Wǒmen zhùnbèi xià chē ba.

快要到杭州了。我们准备下车吧。

We are about to arrive in Hángzhōu. Let's get ready to get off.

6. Xià yízhàn jiù shì Shànghǎi le.

下一站就是上海了。

The next stop is Shànghǎi.

Xià yízhàn jiù shì Shànghǎi le. Wǒmen zhùnbèi xià chē ba.

下一站就是上海了。我们准备下车吧。

The next stop is Shànghǎi. Let's get ready to get off.

7. Kuài yào dào Guǎngzhōu le.

快要到广州了。

We are about to arrive in Guǎngzhōu.

Kuài yào dào Guǎngzhōu le. Wǒmen zhùnbèi xià chē ba.

快要到广州了。我们准备下车吧。

We are about to arrive in Guǎngzhōu. Let's get ready to get off.

## Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Tā kéyǐ nǎshànglái ma?

他可以拿上来吗？

Can he bring it up?

Cue

chē

车

car

Tā kéyǐ nǎshàng chē lái ma?

他可以拿上车来吗？

Can he bring it in the car?

2. Tā kéyǐ nǎxiàlái ma?

他可以拿下来吗？

Can he bring it down?

Cue

lóu

楼

stairs

Tā kéyǐ nǎxià lóu lái ma?

他可以拿下楼来吗？

Can he bring it down the building?

3. Tā kéyǐ nǎshàngqù ma?

他可以拿上去吗？

Can he take it up?

Cue

huǒchē

火车

train

Tā kéyǐ nǎshàng huǒchē qù ma?

他可以拿上火车去吗？

Can he take it up to the train?

4. Tā kéyǐ nǎshànglái ma?

他可以拿上来吗？

Can he bring it up?

Cue

lóu

楼

stairs

Tā kéyǐ nǎshàng lóu lái ma?

他可以拿上楼来吗？

Can he bring it upstairs?

5. Tā kéyǐ nǎxiàqù ma?

他可以拿下去吗？

Can he take it down?

Cue

chē

车

car

Tā kéyǐ nǎxià chē qù ma?

他可以拿下车去吗？

Can he take it off the train?

6. Tā kéyǐ nǎxiàlái ma?

他可以拿下来吗？

Can he bring it down?

Cue

huǒchē

火车

train

Tā kéyǐ nǎxià huǒchē lái ma?

他可以拿下火车来吗？

Can he bring it off the train?

7. Tā kéyǐ nǎshàngqù ma?

他可以拿上去吗？

Can he take it up?

Cue

lóu

楼

stairs

Tā kěyǐ náshàng lóu qù ma?

他可以拿上楼去吗？

Can he take it upstairs?



## Unit 7

### References

#### Reference List

1. A: **Lǎo Sòng, zěnmeyàng? Máng ne?**  
老宋，怎麼樣？忙呢？  
Sòng, how are things going? Are you busy?  
B: **Bù zěnmé máng. Nǐ yǒu shì ma?**  
不怎麼忙。你有事嗎？  
Not especially busy. Can I do something for you?
2. A: **Wǒ Sìyue Shísìhào yào dào Guǎngzhōu qù. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ dìng yìzhāng fēijī piào.**  
我四月十四號要到廣州去。請你給我訂一張飛機票。  
I'm going to **Guǎngzhōu** on April 14. Please reserve a plane ticket for me.  
B: **Hǎo.**  
好。  
Sure.
3. B: **Piào dìnghǎo le.**  
票訂好了。  
The ticket has been reserved.  
A: **Něibān fēijī? Jǐdiǎn zhōng qǐfēi?**  
那班飛機？幾點鐘起飛。  
Which flight? What time does it take off?  
B: **Jiǔdiǎn shíwǔfēn qǐfēi.**  
九點十五分起飛。  
It takes off at 9:15.
4. A: **Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Guǎngzhōu ma?**  
這班飛機直飛廣州嗎？  
Does this flight go directly to **Guǎngzhōu**?  
B: **Shì, zhí fēi Guǎngzhōu.**  
是，直飛廣州。  
Yes, it flies directly to **Guǎngzhōu**.
5. A: **Cóng Sānlitún dào fēijīchǎng yào duōshao shíjiān?**  
從三里屯到飛機場要多少時間？  
How much time does it take to go from **Sānlitún** to the airport?

	B:	Yào sishí fēn zhōng. 要四十分鐘。 It takes forty minutes.
6.	A:	Rúguo wǒ bādiǎn zhōng líkāi jiā, láidejí ba? 如果我八點鐘離開家，來得及吧？ If I leave home at eight o'clock, I can make it in time. Right?
	B:	Láidejí. 來得及。 Yes.
7.	A:	Qǐng ni míngtiān zǎoshang pài ge chē lái jiē wo. 請你明天早上派個車來接我 Please send a car to pick me up tomorrow morning.
	B:	Hǎo. Wǒ míngtiān bādiǎn zhōng pài chē sòng ni dào fēijīchǎng qù. 好。我明天八點鐘派車送你到飛機場去。 Okay. I'll send a car at eight o'clock tomorrow to take you to the airport.
8.		-hǎo le 好了 to be satisfactorily completed
9.		lǚguǎn 旅館 hotel
10.		shuōhǎo le 說好了 to have come to an agreement (about something); (something) has been agreed on
11.		xiǎnghǎo le 想好了 to have reached a conclusion (about something); (something) has been thought out
12.		yàoshi 要是 if (alternate word for rúguǒ)
13.		zuòhǎo le 做好了 to have finished doing (something); (something) has been finished

## Vocabulary

bù zěnmē	不怎麼	not especially, not particularly
dìng	訂	to reserve

dìnghǎo le	訂好了	to have (been) reserved
fēi	飛	to fly
fēijī	飛機	airplane
fēijīchǎng	飛機場	airport
Guǎngzhōu	廣州	(name of a city in the PRC—Canton)
-hǎo le	好了	to be satisfactorily completed
jiē	接	to meet/pick up/get (someone)
lǎo	老	to be old
lǚguǎn	旅館	in years hotel
máng	忙	to be busy
pài	派	to send/assign (a person to do something)
qǐfēi	起飛	to take off (airplane)
rúguǒ (rúguo)	如果	if
Sānlǐtún	三里屯	(a district in Běijīng where many Foreign diplomats and Chinese people from other countries live)
shuōhǎo le	說好了	to have come to an agreement (about something); (something) has been agreed on
xiǎnghǎo le	想好了	to have reached a conclusion (about something); (something) has been thought out
yàoshi	要是	if
zhí	直	directly
zuòhǎo le	做好了	to have finished doing (something); (something) has been finished
chū chāi	出差	to go on a business trip
chùzhǎng	處長	division chief
gǎnbushàng	趕不上	won't be able to catch (a plane, train, etc.)
hái hǎo	還好	fairly good/well
kāi huì	開會	to attend a meeting/conference

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1

1. A: Lǎo Sòng, zěnmeyàng? Máng ne?  
老宋，怎麼樣？忙呢？  
Sòng, how are things going? Are you busy?
- B: Bù zěnmé máng. Nǐ yǒu shì ma?

不怎麼忙。你有事嗎？

Not especially busy. Can I do something for you?

The greeting *zěnmeyàng* is more informal than *nǐ hǎo*. *Zěnmeyàng* is used only if the two people already know each other.

*Máng ne?* and *Máng ma?* are translated into English as “Are you busy?” However, the two Chinese questions are not interchangeable. When a speaker asks the question *Máng ma?* he really wants to find out whether someone is busy. On the other hand, *Máng ne?* is an example of the Chinese custom of greeting a person by stating the obvious. The speaker is simply acknowledging the fact that the listener is busy. The question mark following *Máng ne?* shows that the speaker is inviting the listener to comment. You might think of *Máng ne?* as something like the English “Well, it looks like you are working hard,” which invites a response like “Sure am” or “Oh, I’m really not doing much of anything.”

Ne may be used in many sentences to comment on what the person being addressed is doing at the moment:

Chī fàn ne?
吃飯呢？
Having dinner, I see?
Zài zhèr ne?
在這兒呢？
Well, you’re here?
Mǎi dōngxi ne?
買東西呢？
Doing some shopping, eh?

These sentences are almost greetings in themselves.

The overall intonation of the question *Máng ma?* is higher than that of a statement. The intonation of *Máng ne?* is somewhat lower. Listen carefully to the tape.

*Bù zěnmē* may precede a state verb. The expression would then mean “not especially,” “not particularly.”

Wǒ bù zěnmē xǐhuan nàběn shū.
我不怎麼喜歡那本書。
I don’t particularly like that book.
Wǒ bù zěnmē qīngchu.
我不怎麼清楚。
I’m not particularly clear on this. (This isn’t very clear to me.)
Wǒ jīntiān bù zěnmē hǎo.
我今天不怎麼好。

I'm not particularly well today.

Tā bù zěnmē yǒu qián.

他不怎麼有錢。

He's not especially rich.

Wǒ bù zěnmē xiǎng qù.

我不怎麼想去。

I don't especially want to go.

Contrast *bù zěnmē* with *bú zěnmē*, “not as much as that”:

Wǒ bú zěnmē xǐhuan kàn diànyǐng.

我不怎麼喜歡看電影兒。

I don't like to go to the movies that much, (i.e., as much as someone else just mentioned)

Wǒ bù zěnmē xǐhuan kàn diànyǐng.

我不怎麼喜歡看電影兒。

I don't particularly like to go to the movies.

## Notes on №2

2. A: Wǒ Sìyue Shísìhào yào dào Guǎngzhōu qù. Qǐng ni gěi wo dìng yìzhāng fēijī piào.  
我四月十四號要到廣州去。請你給我訂一張飛機票。  
I'm going to *Guǎngzhōu* on April 14. Please reserve a plane ticket for me.
- B: Hǎo.  
好。  
Sure.

## Notes on №3

3. B: Piào dìnghǎo le.  
票訂好了。  
The ticket has been reserved.
- A: Nēibān fēijī? Jǐdiǎn zhōng qǐfēi?  
那班飛機？幾點鐘起飛。  
Which flight? What time does it take off?
- B: Jiǔdiǎn shíwǔfēn qǐfēi.  
九點十五分起飛。

It takes off at 9:15.

**Dìnghǎo** is a compound verb of result. When used as the final element in a compound verb of result, **hǎo** indicates that the action described by the initial verb has been brought to a successful conclusion.

The same form of the verb, **dìnghǎo**, is used to describe an object having something done to it and a person doing something to an object.

Piào dìnghǎo le.

票訂好了。

The ticket has been reserved.

Wǒ bǎ piào dìnghǎo le.

我把票訂好了。

I have reserved the ticket.

Here are additional examples of compounds with the result-ending **-hǎo**:

Wǒmen yǐjīng shuōhǎo le.

我們已經說好了。

We have already come to an agreement about it. (We have already talked it out to a conclusion.)

Nǐ xiǎnghǎo le meiyou?

你想好了沒有？

Have you reached a conclusion yet? (Have you thought it out to a conclusion yet?)

Wǒ yǐjīng bǎ jīntiān wǎnshàng yào chīde dōngxi zuòhǎo le.

我已經把今天晚上要吃的東西做好了。

I have already finished making the things we are going to eat tonight.

Nǐde xíngli zhǔnbèihǎo le ma?

你的行李準備好了嗎？

Is your luggage ready?

#### Notes on №4

4. A: Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Guǎngzhōu ma?  
這班飛機直飛廣州嗎？  
Does this flight go directly to Guǎngzhōu?
- B: Shì, zhí fēi Guǎngzhōu.  
是，直飛廣州。  
Yes, it flies directly to Guǎngzhōu.

**Zhèibān fēijī**, “this flight”: In Chinese, the specifier **zhèi-** is used to refer to what has just been talked about. In English, “that” and “the” are used for the same purpose.

The adverb **zhí** is not used in as many situations as is its English translation, “directly,” “straight.” In other contexts, the word for “directly” or “direct” would be **zhíjiē**, and the word for “straight” would be **yìzhí**.

### Notes on №5

5. A: **Cóng Sānlitún dào fēijīchǎng yào duōshao shíjiān?**  
**從三里屯到飛機場要多少時間？**  
How much time does it take to go from **Sānlitún** to the airport?
- B: **Yào sishífēn zhōng.**  
**要四十分鐘。**  
It takes forty minutes.

### Notes on №6

6. A: **Rúguo wǒ bādiǎn zhōng líkāi jiā, láidejí ba?**  
**如果我八點鐘離開家，來得及吧？**  
If I leave home at eight o'clock, I can make it in time. Right?
- B: **Láidejí.**  
**來得及。**  
Yes.

**Rúguo** is one of the commonest words in Chinese for “if.” Another widely used word for “if” is **yàoshi**. (See Additional Required Vocabulary, № 12.) You have already learned that the idea of “if” may be conveyed in Chinese without any special word:

**Zuò Gōnglùjú deǐ xiān mǎi piào ma?**

**坐公路局得先買票嗎？**

If I take the bus, is it necessary to buy tickets ahead of time?

**Bādiǎn zhōng líkāi jiā láidejí ba?**

**八點鐘離開家來得及吧？**

If I leave home at eight o'clock, I can make it in time. Right?

### Notes on №7

7. A: **Qǐng ni míngtiān zǎoshang pài ge chē lái jiē wo.**  
**請你明天早上派個車來接我**  
Please send a car to pick me up tomorrow morning.
- B: **Hǎo. Wǒ míngtiān bādiǎn zhōng pài chē sòng ni dào fēijīchǎng qu.**  
**好。我明天八點鐘派車送你到飛機場去。**  
Okay. I'll send a car at eight o'clock tomorrow to take you to the airport.

The verb **pài** means “to send/assign someone [to do something].”

**Ge**: You have already learned that, when toneless, **yíge** means “a,” not “one.” In the first sentence of exchange 7, you see that **yíge** can be reduced to the one syllable **ge**. This reduction happens most frequently when “a” follows the sentence verb.

zhǎo ge ren
找個人
to look for someone (i.e., a person)
chī ge píngguǒ
吃個蘋果
to eat an apple

The verb **jiē** means “to meet,” as in “meeting someone at the station,” or “to get,” “to pick up,” as in “I’ll come by to get you (pick you up) about eight o’clock.”

**Pài ge chē lái lái jiē wo**, literally “send a car to come pick me up”: In English, “come” may be omitted. In Chinese, **lái** must separate the action (**pài ge chē**) from the purpose of the action (**jiē wo**). Either **lái** or **qù** may be used to mark purpose expressions, depending on the direction of the action.

The verb **sòng** means “to take/escort someone” in the last sentence of exchange 7. **Sòng** may also mean “to send” in the sense of “delivering an object,” in contrast with the verb **pài**, which means “to send a person.”

Qǐng pài ge rén dào wǒ jiā lái.
請派個人到我家來。
Please send a man over to my house.
Qǐng bǎ zhuōzi sòng dào wǒ jiā qù.
請把桌子送到我家去。
Please deliver the table to my house.

### Notes on Additional Vocabulary

8.	-hǎo le 好了 to be satisfactorily completed
9.	lǚguǎn 旅館 hotel
10.	shuōhǎo le 說好了 to have come to an agreement (about something); (something) has been agreed on
11.	xiǎnghǎo le



	想好了	to have reached a conclusion (about something); (something) has been thought out
12.	yàoshi	
	要是	if (alternate word for <i>rúguǒ</i> )
13.	做好了	to have finished doing (something); (something) has been finished

*Lǚguǎn* is the general term for any kind of hotel. When following a verb or the prepositional verb *zài*, *lǚguǎn* may be followed by the locational ending *-li*, “in,” or there may be no locative ending. This is also the case with other place words naming institutions, business establishments, and organizations.

*Tā zài zhèige lǚguǎnli* (OR *zài zhèige lǚguǎn*) *zhùle liǎngge yuè.*

他在這個旅館裏 (OR 在這個旅館) 住了兩個月。

He stayed in this hotel for two months.

### Vocabulary booster: animals

bear	<i>xióng</i>	熊
camel	<i>luòtuo</i>	駱駝
cat	<i>māo</i>	貓
chicken	<i>jī</i>	雞
cow	<i>niú</i>	牛
deer	<i>lù</i>	鹿
dog	<i>gǒu</i>	狗
donkey	<i>lú</i>	驢
duck	<i>yā</i>	鴨
elephant	<i>xiàng</i>	象
fish	<i>yú</i>	魚
fox	<i>húli</i>	狐狸
goat	<i>shānyáng</i>	山羊
horse	<i>mǎ</i>	馬
lion	<i>shīzi</i>	獅子
monkey	<i>hóuzi</i>	猴子
mouse/rat	<i>lǎoshǔ</i>	老鼠
panda	<i>xióngmǎo</i>	熊貓

pig	zhū	豬
sheep	yáng	羊
tiger	lǎohǔ	老虎
turkey	huǒjī	火雞
wolf	láng	狼

## Drills

### Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

1. Qǐng ni gěi wǒ mǎi yìzhāng chuán piào.

请你给我买一张船票。

Please buy one boat ticket for me.

Qǐng ni gěi wǒ dìng yìzhāng chuán piào.

请你给我订一张船票。

Please reserve one boat ticket for me.

2. Qǐng ni gěi Mǎ Xiānsheng mǎi liǎngzhāng huǒchē piào.

请你给马先生买两张火车票。

Please buy 2 train tickets for Mr. Mǎ.

Qǐng ni gěi Mǎ Xiānsheng dìng liǎngzhāng huǒchē piào.

请你给马先生订两张火车票。

Please reserve 2 train tickets for Mr. Mǎ.

3. Qǐng ni gěi Máo Tàitai mǎi yìzhāng gōnglùjúde chēpiào.

请你给毛太太买一张公路局的车票。

Please buy a ticket for Mrs. Máo from the Highway Department.

Qǐng ni gěi Máo Tàitai dìng yìzhāng gōnglùjúde chēpiào.

请你给毛太太订一张公路局的车票

Please reserve a ticket for Mrs. Máo from the Highway Department.

4. Qǐng ni gěi Lín Xiǎojiě mǎi sānzhāng zhídáchēde chēpiào.

请你给林小姐买三张直达车的车票。

Please buy three tickets for Miss Lín for the direct train.

Qǐng ni gěi Lín Xiǎojiě dìng sānzhāng zhídáchēde chēpiào.

请你给林小姐订三张直达车的车票

Please reserve three tickets for Miss Lín for the direct train.

5. Qǐng ni gěi Liú Nǚshì mǎi sānzhāng tèkuàichēde chēpiào.

请你给刘女士买三张特快车的车票。

Please buy three tickets for Ms. **Liu** for the express train.

Qǐng ni gěi Liu Nǚshì dīng sānzhāng tèkuàichēde chēpiào.

请你给刘女士订三张特快车的车票。

Please reserve three tickets for Ms. **Liu** for the express train.

6. Qǐng ni gěi Zhōu Xiānsheng mǎi liǎngzhāng fēijī piào.

请你给周先生买两张飞机票。

Please buy 2 plane tickets for Mr. **Zhōu**.

Qǐng ni gěi Zhōu Xiānsheng dīng liǎngzhāng fēijī piào.

请你给周先生订两张飞机票。

Please reserve 2 plane tickets for Mr. **Zhōu**.

7. Qǐng ni gěi Zhào Tàitai mǎi liǎngzhāng chuán piào.

请你给赵太太买两张船票。

Please buy 2 boat tickets for Mrs. **Zhào**.

Qǐng ni gěi Zhào Tàitai dīng liǎngzhāng chuán piào.

请你给赵太太订两张船票。

Please reserve 2 boat tickets for Mrs. **Zhào**.

## Expansion drill

### Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Wǒ yào dào Guǎngzhōu qù.  
我要到广州去。  
I want to go to Guǎngzhōu.

Cue huǒchē piào  
火车票  
train

Wǒ yào dào Guǎngzhōu qù, kěyǐ bu kěyǐ dìng yìzhāng huǒchē piào?  
我要到广州去，可以不可以订一张火车票？  
I want to go to Guǎngzhōu. May I reserve a train ticket?

2. Wǒ yào dào Běijīng qù.  
我要到北京去。  
I want to go to Běijīng.

Cue fēijī piào  
飞机票  
plane ticket

Wǒ yào dào Běijīng qù, kěyǐ bu kěyǐ dìng yìzhāng fēijī piào?  
我要到北京去，可以不可以订一张飞机票？  
I want to go to Běijīng. May I reserve a plane ticket?

3. Wǒ yào dào Nánjīng qù.  
我要到南京去。  
I want to go to Nánjīng.

Cue tèkuàichēde piào  
特快车的票  
express train ticket

Wǒ yào dào Nánjīng qù, kěyǐ bu kěyǐ dìng yìzhāng tèkuàichēde piào?  
我要到南京去，可以不可以订一张特快车的票？  
I want to go to Nánjīng. May I reserve a ticket for an express train?

4. Wǒ yào dào Qīngdǎo qù.

我要到青岛去。

I want to go to Qīngdǎo.

Cue

chuán piào#

船票

boat ticket

Wǒ yào dào Qīngdǎo qù, kěyǐ bu kěyǐ dìng yìzhāng chuán piào?

我要到青岛去，可以不可以订一张船票？

I want to go to Qīngdǎo. May I reserve a boat ticket?

5. Wǒ yào dào Tiānjīn qù.

我要到天津去。

I want to go to Tiānjīn.

Cue

qìchē piào

汽车票

bus ticket

Wǒ yào dào Tiānjīn qù, kěyǐ bu kěyǐ dìng yìzhāng qìchē piào?

我要到天津去，可以不可以订一张汽车票？

I want to go to Tiānjīn. May I reserve bus ticket?

6. Wǒ yào dào Hángzhōu qù.

我要到杭州去。

I want to go to Hángzhōu.

Cue

fēijī piào

飞机票

plane ticket

Wǒ yào dào Hángzhōu qù, kěyǐ bu kěyǐ dìng yìzhāng fēijī piào?

我要到杭州去，可以不可以订一张飞机票？

I want to go to Hángzhōu. May I reserve a plane ticket?

7. Wǒ yào dào Sūzhōu qù.

我要到苏州去。

I want to go to Sūzhōu.

Cue

zhídáchēde piào

直达车票

direct train ticket

Wǒ yào dào Sūzhōu qù, kěyǐ bu keyǐ dīng yīzhāng zhídáchēde piào?

我要到苏州去，可以不可以订一张直达车票？

I want to go to Sūzhōu. May I reserve direct train ticket?

## Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Zuòhǎo le ma?

做好了么？

Have you finished doing it?

Cue

méi

没

no

Méi zuòhǎo ne.

没做好呢。

I haven't finished doing it.

2. Shuōhǎo le ma?

说好了么？

Have you finished saying it?

Cue

shì

是

yes

Shuōhǎo le.

说好了。

I finished saying it.

3. Xiǎnghǎo le ma?

想好了么？

Have you finished thinking about it?

Cue

kuài

快

soon

Kuài xiǎnghǎo le.

快想好了。

I'll finish thinking about it soon.



4. Dìnghǎo le ma?  
订好了吗?  
Have you finished order it?

Cue hái méi  
还没  
not yet

Hái méi dìnghǎo ne.  
还没订好。  
I haven't ordered it yet.

5. Shuōhǎo le ma?  
说好了吗?  
Have you finished saying it?

Cue méi  
没  
no

Méi shuōhǎo ne.  
没说好呢。  
I haven't said it yet.

6. Zuòhǎo le ma?  
做好了么?  
Have you finished doing it?

Cue kuài  
快  
soon

Kuài zuòhǎo le.  
快做好了。  
I'll finish it soon.

7. Xiǎnghǎo le ma?  
想好了吗?  
Have you finished thinking about it?

Cue

hái méi

还没

not yet

Hái méi Xiǎnghǎo ne

还没想好呢。

I haven't thought about it yet.

## Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Nèibān fēijī?

哪班飞机？

Which flight?

Nèibān fēijī? Jǐdiǎn zhōng qǐfēi?

哪班飞机？几点钟起飞？

Which flight? What time does it take off?

2. Nèibān huǒchē?

哪班火车？

Which train?

Nèibān huǒchē? Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?

哪班火车？几点钟开？

Which train? What time does it leave?

3. Nèibān qìchē?

哪班汽车？

Which bus?

Nèibān qìchē? Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?

哪班汽车？几点钟开？

Which bus? What time does it leave?

4. Nèibān fēijī?

哪班飞机？

Which flight?

Nèibān fēijī? Jǐdiǎn zhōng qǐfēi?

哪班飞机？几点钟起飞？

Which flight? What time does it take off?

5. Nèibān zhídáchē?

哪班直达车？

Which direct train?

Něibān zhídáchē? Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?

哪班直达车？几点钟开？

Which direct train? What time does it leave?

6. Něibān tèkuàichē?

哪班特快车？

Which express train?

Něibān tèkuàichē? Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?

哪班特快车？几点钟开？

Which express train? What time does it leave?

7. Něibān fēijī?

哪班飞机？

Which flight?

Něibān fēijī? Jǐdiǎn zhōng qǐfēi?

哪班飞机？几点钟起飞？

Which flight? What time does it take off?

## Substitution drill

Substitute according to the cue and the model.

1. Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Guǎngzhōu ma?  
这班飞机直飞广州吗？  
Does this flight go directly to Guǎngzhōu?

Cue Nánjīng  
南京  
Nánjīng

Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Nánjīng ma?  
这班飞机直飞南京吗？  
Does this flight go directly to Nánjīng?

2. Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Nánjīng ma?  
这班飞机直飞南京吗？  
Does this flight go directly to Nánjīng?

Cue Shànghǎi  
上海  
Shànghǎi

Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Shànghǎi ma?  
这班飞机直飞上海吗？  
Does this flight go directly to Shànghǎi?

3. Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Shànghǎi ma?  
这班飞机直飞上海吗？  
Does this flight go directly to Shànghǎi?

Cue Běijīng  
北京  
Běijīng

Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Běijīng ma?  
这班飞机直飞北京吗？  
Does this flight go directly to Běijīng?

4. Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Běijīng ma?  
这班飞机直飞北京吗？  
Does this flight go directly to Běijīng?

Cue Wūhàn  
武汉  
Wūhàn

Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Wūhàn ma?  
这班飞机直飞武汉吗？  
Does this flight go directly to Wūhàn?

5. Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Wūhàn ma?  
这班飞机直飞武汉吗？  
Does this flight go directly to Wūhàn?

Cue Sūzhōu  
苏州  
Sūzhōu

Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Sūzhōu ma?  
这班飞机直飞苏州吗？  
Does this flight go directly to Sūzhōu?

6. Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Sūzhōu ma?  
这班飞机直飞苏州吗？  
Does this flight go directly to Sūzhōu?

Cue Qīngdǎo  
青岛  
Qīngdǎo

Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Qīngdǎo ma?  
这班飞机直飞青岛吗？  
Does this flight go directly to Qīngdǎo?

7. Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Qīngdǎo ma?  
这班飞机直飞青岛吗？  
Does this flight go directly to Qīngdǎo?

Cue

Běijīng

北京

Běijīng

Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Běijīng ma?

这班飞机直飞北京吗？

Does this flight go directly to Běijīng?

## Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

1. Cóng Sānlitún dào huǒchēzhàn yào duōshao shíjiān?  
从三里屯到火车站要多少时间?  
How much time does it take to go from Sānlitún to the train station?

Cue duōshao fēn zhōng  
多少分钟  
how many minutes

Cóng Sānlitún dào huǒchēzhàn yào duōshao fēn zhōng?  
从三里屯到火车站要多少分钟?  
How many minutes from Sānlitún to the train station?

2. Cóng Dōngdān dào Wǎngfǔjǐng Dàjiē yào duōshao shíjiān?  
从东单到王府井大街要多少时间?  
How many time does it take to go from Dōngdān to Wǎngfǔjǐng?

Cue duōshao shíhou  
多少时候  
how long

Cóng Dōngdān dào Wǎngfǔjǐng Dàjiē yào duōshao shíhou?  
从东单到王府井大街要多少时候?  
How long does it take to go from Dōngdān to Wǎngfǔjǐng?

3. Cóng Chángān Jiē dào Rìtánlù yào duōshao shíjiān?  
从长安街到日坛路要多少时间?  
How many time does it take to go from Chángān to Rìtánlù?

Cue jǐ fēn zhōng  
几分钟  
how many minutes

Cóng Chángān jiē dào Rìtánlù yào jǐ fēn zhōng?  
从长安街到日坛路要几分钟?  
How many minutes does it take to go from Chángān to Rìtánlù?



4. Cóng Běijīng dào Guǎngzhōu yào duōshao shíjiān?

从北京到广州要多少时间？

How many time does it take to go from Běijīng to Guǎngzhōu?

Cue

jǐtiān

几天

how many days

Cóng Běijīng dào Guǎngzhōu yào jǐtiān?

从北京到广州要几天？

How many days does it take to go from Běijīng to Guǎngzhōu?

5. Cóng Nánjīng dào Shànghǎi yào duōshao shíjiān?

从南京到上海要多少时间？

How many time does it take to go from Nánjīng to Shànghǎi?

Cue

duōshao xiǎoshí

多少小时

how many hours

Cóng Nánjīng dào Shànghǎi yào duōshao xiǎoshí?

从南京到上海要多少小时？

How many hours does it take to go from Nánjīng to Shànghǎi?

6. Cóng Hǎngzhōu dào Guǎngzhōu yào duōshao shíjiān?

从杭州到广州要多少时间？

How many time does it take to go from Hǎngzhōu to Guǎngzhōu?

Cue

duōshao xiǎoshí

多少小时

how many hours

Cóng Hǎngzhōu dào Guǎngzhōu yào duōshao xiǎoshí?

从杭州到广州要多少小时？

How many hours does it take to go from Hǎngzhōu to Guǎngzhōu?

7. Cóng Guānghuá lù dào huǒchēzhàn yào duōshao shíjiān?

从光华路到火车站要多少时间？

How many time does it take to go from Guānghuá lù to the train station?

Cue

duōshāofēn zhōng

多少钟

how many minutes

Cóng Guānghuá lù dào huǒchēzhàn yào duōshāofēn zhōng?

从光华路到火车站要多少钟？

How many minutes does it take from Guānghuá Road to the train station?

## Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

1. Rúguǒ wǒ bādiǎn zhōng líkāi jiā, láidejí ma?

如果我八点钟离开家，来得及吗？

If I leave home at eight o'clock, can I make it?

Rúguǒ wǒ bādiǎn zhōng líkāi jiā, shénme shíhou dào?

如果我八点钟离开家，什么时候到？

If I leave home at eight o'clock, what time will I arrive?

2. Rúguǒ wǒ shídiǎn zhōng líkāi xuéxiào, láidejí ma?

如果我十点钟离开学校，来得及吗？

If I leave the school at 10 o'clock, can I make it?

Rúguǒ wǒ shídiǎn zhōng líkāi xuéxiào shénme shíhou dào?

如果我十点钟离开学校什么时候到？

If I leave the school at 10 o'clock, what time will I arrive?

3. Rúguǒ Lǐ Xiānsheng shíyīdiǎn shífēn líkāi Dàshìguǎn, láidejí ma?

如果李先生十一点十分离开大使馆，来得及吗？

If Mr. Lǐ leaves the embassy at 11 o'clock, can he make it?

Rúguǒ Lǐ Xiānsheng shíyīdiǎn shífēn líkāi Dàshìguǎn, shénme shíhou dào?

如果李先生十一点十分离开大使馆，什么时候到？

If Mr. Lǐ leaves the embassy at 11 o'clock, what time will he arrive?

4. Rúguǒ Zhāng Nǚshì shíyuè qīhào líkāi zhèlǐ, láidejí ma?

如果张女士十月七号离开这里，来得及吗？

If Mrs. Zhāng leaves in October, can she make it?

Rúguǒ Zhāng Nǚshì shíyuè qīhào líkāi zhèlǐ, shénme shíhou dào?

如果张女士十月七号离开这里，什么时候到？

If Mrs. Zhāng leaves in October, what time will she arrive?

5. Rúguǒ tā sìdiǎnbàn líkāi fàndiàn, láidejí ma?

如果他/他四点半离开饭店，来得及吗？

If he/she leaves the store at 4:30, can he/she make it?

Rúguǒ tā sìdiǎnbàn líkāi fàndiàn, shénme shíhou dào?

如果他/他四点半离开饭店，什么时候到？

If he/she leaves the store at 4:30, what time will he/she arrive?

6. Rúguǒ nǐ zǎoshang qīdiǎn zhōng líkāi jiā, láidejí ma?

如果早上七点钟离开家，来得及吗？

If you leave at 7 o'clock in the morning, can you make it?

Rúguǒ nǐ zǎoshang qīdiǎn zhōng líkāi jiā, shénme shíhou dào?

如果早上七点钟离开家，什么时候到？

If you leave at 7 o'clock in the morning, what time will you arrive?

7. Rúguǒ tāmen xiànzài líkāi chēzhàn, láidejí ma?

如果他/他们现在离开车站，来得及吗？

If they leave the station now, can they make it?

Rúguǒ tāmen xiànzài líkāi chēzhàn, shénme shíhou dào?

如果他/他们现在离开车站，什么时候到？

If they leave the station now, what time will they arrive?

## Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Qǐng ni lái jiē wo.

请你来接我。

Please pick me up.

Qǐng ni pài ge chē lái jiē wo.

请你派个车来接我。

Please send a car to pick me up.

2. Qǐng ni lái jiē ta.

请你来接他/他。

Please pick him/her up.

Qǐng ni pài ge chē lái jiē ta.

请你派个车来接他/他。

Please send a car to pick him/her up.

3. Qǐng ni qù jiē tamen.

请你去接他/他们。

Please go and pick them up.

Qǐng ni pài ge chē qù jiē tamen.

请你派个车去接他/他们。

Please send a car to pick them up.

4. Qǐng ni qù jiē ta.

请你去接他/他。

Please go and pick them up.

Qǐng ni pài ge chē qù jiē ta.

请你派个车去接他/他。

Please send a car to pick him/her up.

5. Qǐng ni sòng wo qù.

请你送我去。

Please drive me there.

Qǐng ni pài ge chē sòng wo qù.

请你派个车送我去。

Please send a car to take me there.

6. Qǐng ni lái jiē ta.

请你来接他/他。

Please pick him/her up.

Qǐng ni pài ge chē lái jiē ta.

请你派个车来接他/他。

Please send a car to pick him/her up.

7. Qǐng ni sòng tamen qù.

请你送他/他们去。

Please drive them there.

Qǐng ni pài ge chē sòng tamen qù.

请你派个车送他/他们去。

Please send a car to take them there.

## Expansion drill

### Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Wǒ sòng nǐ dào fēijīchǎng qù.

我送你到飞机场去。

I'll take you to the airport.

Wǒ pài chē sòng nǐ dào fēijīchǎng qù.

我派车送你到飞机场去。

I'll send a car to take you to the airport.

2. Wǒ sòng nǐ dào huǒchēzhàn qù.

我送你到火车站去。

I'll take you to the train station.

Wǒ pài chē sòng nǐ dào huǒchēzhàn qù.

我派车送你到火车站去。

I'll send a car to take you to the train station.

3. Wǒ sòng nǐ dào Qìchēzhàn qù.

我送你到汽车站。

I'll take you to Qìchēzhàn.

Wǒ pài chē sòng nǐ dào qìchēzhàn qù.

我派车送你到汽车站。

I'll send a car to take you to Qìchēzhàn.

4. Wǒ sòng nǐ dào tā jiā qù.

我送你到他家去。

I'll take you home.

Wǒ pài chē sòng nǐ dào tā jiā qù.

我派车送你到他家去。

I'll send a car to take you home.

5. Wǒ sòng nǐ dào yínháng qù.

我送你到银行去。

I'll take you to the bank.

Wǒ pài chē sòng nǐ dào yínháng qù.

我派车送你到银行去。

I'll send a car to take you to the bank.

6. Wǒ sòng nǐ dào Dàshǐguǎn qù.

我送你到大使馆去。

I'll take you to Dàshǐguǎn.

Wǒ pài chē sòng nǐ dào dàshǐguǎn qù.

我派车送你到大使馆去。

I'll send a car to take you to Dàshǐguǎn.

7. Wǒ sòng nǐ dào fēijīchǎng qù.

我送你到飞机场去。

I'll take you to the airport.

Wǒ pài chē sòng nǐ dào fēijīchǎng qù.

我派车送你到飞机场去。

I'll send a car to take you to the airport.



## Unit 8

### References

#### Reference List

1. B: Hǎo jiǔ méi jiàn, nín chū mén le ba?  
好久不見，您出門了吧？  
I haven't seen you for a long time, You have been away, I suppose?  
A: Shì a, wǒ yòu dào Guǎngzhōu qu le.  
是啊，我又到廣州去了。  
Yes, I went to **Guǎngzhōu** again.
2. B: Nín wèishénme gāng huí lai, yòu qù le ne?  
您爲什麼剛回來，又去了呢？  
Why did you go again when you had just come back from there?  
A: Wǒ zhècì dào Guǎngzhōu qù shì yīnwei wǒ yǒu yige hěn hǎode péngyou cóng Xiānggǎng lái.  
我這次到廣州去是因爲我有一個很好的朋友從香港來。  
This time I went to **Guǎngzhōu** because I had a very good friend coming there from Hong Kong.
3. A: Wǒmen yǒu yìnián méi jiàn le.  
我們有一年沒見了。  
We had not seen each other for a year.  
A: Tā qǐng wo péi ta yìqǐ qù lǚxíng.  
她請我陪她一起去旅行。  
She asked me to accompany her (in her) travels.
4. A: Sānge yuè yǐqián wǒ zài Guǎngzhōu, nèige shíhou tā hái bù zhīdào néng bu néng lái.  
三個月以前我在廣州，那個時候她還不知道能不能來。  
Three months ago, when I was in **Guǎngzhōu**, she didn't know yet whether she would be able to come or not.
5. B: Nǐmen dōu qùguo shénme dìfang?  
你們都去過什麼地方？  
What places did you go to?  
A: Nánjīng, Shànghǎi, Hángzhōu, Sūzhōu, dōu qù le. Hángzhōu zhēn shì piàoliang.  
南京，上海，杭州，蘇州，都去了。杭州真是漂亮。  
We went to **Nánjīng**, **Shànghǎi**, **Hángzhōu**, and **Sūzhōu**. **Hángzhōu** is really beautiful.
6. A: Yǒu jīhui wǒ yào zài qù yíci.

		有機會我要再去幾次。
		If I have the chance, I would like to go again.
7.	A:	Zhèxiē dìfang nǐ dōu qùguo le ba? 這些地方你都去過了吧。
		You have gone to all those places, I suppose?
	B:	Méi dōu qùguo. Wǒ hái méi qùguo Sūzhōu. 沒都去過。我還沒去過蘇州。
		I haven't been to all of them. I still haven't been to Sūzhōu.
8.		huí guó 回國 to return to one's native country
9.		huí jiā 回家 to come/go home
10.		huíqu 回去 to go back
11.		rènao 熱鬧
12.		yǒu yìsi 有意思 to be interesting
13.		méi(yǒu) yìsi 沒(有)意思 to be uninteresting
14.		suǒyǐ (suóyì) 所以 therefore, so

## Vocabulary

chū mén (chū ménr)	出門 (出門兒)	to go out, to go away from home, to go out of town
gāng	剛	only a short while ago, just
Hángzhōu	杭州	(a city in <b>Zhèjiāng</b> Province in the PRC, formerly spelled Hangchow)
hǎo jiǔ	好久	a long time
huí	回	to return to, to go back to
huí guó	回國	to return to one's native country
huí jiā	回家	to return home
huílai	回來	to come back
huíqu	回去	to return to one's native country, to go back
jiàn	見	to meet, to see
jīhui	機會	opportunity, chance
méi(yǒu) yìsi	沒(有)意思	to be uninteresting
néng	能	can; to be able to
péi	陪	to accompany
piàoliang	漂亮	to be beautiful
qǐng	請	to request, to invite
rènao	熱鬧	to be lively/bustling/noisy
suǒyǐ (suǒyì)	所以 (所以)	therefore, so
Sūzhōu	蘇州	(a city in <b>Jiāngsū</b> Province in the PRC, formerly spelled Soochow)
wèishénme	爲什麼	why
yīnwei	因爲	because
yìqǐ	一起	together, along with
yòu	又	again
yǒu yìsi	有意思	(with completed actions) to be interesting
zài	再	again (with uncompleted actions)
huār kāile	花兒開了	the flowers have bloomed (literally, "opened")
jiānglái	將來	in the future
shōudao	收到	to receive
yǒumíngde difang	有名的地方	famous place
zuìjìn	最近	recently

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1

1. B: Hǎo jiǔ méi jiàn, nín chū mén le ba?  
 好久不見，您出門了吧？  
 I haven't seen you for a long time, You have been away, I suppose?  
 A: Shì a, wǒ yòu dào Guǎngzhōu qu le.  
 是啊，我又到廣州去了。  
 Yes, I went to **Guǎngzhōu** again.

Hǎo jiǔ, “very long”: In this phrase, the word **hǎo** means “very.” Some additional examples of this use of **hǎo** are:

hǎo dà
好大
very large
hǎo duō rén
好多人
a good many people
hǎo jǐ tiān
好幾天
quite a few days

Persons from Taiwan frequently use **hǎo**, “very,” before another **hǎo**, as in **Hǎo hǎowan!** “What fun.” and **Hǎo hǎochī!** “Delicious!” Speakers from **Běijīng** think that this repetition of **hǎo** sounds bad.

The verb **jiàn** means “to see someone” in the sense of “to visit/talk with someone.” The verb **kànjian** is used for “to see” in the sense of “to perceive an object.”

**Chū mén** means “to go out,” “to go away from home,” “to go out of town”; literally, “to go out the door.”

**Yòu** is the word for “again” which is used with completed actions. (See notes on № 6 for “again” with actions that have not been completed.)

Òu, nǐ yòu lái le!
哦，你又來了！
Oh, you have come again!
Qìshuǐ yòu méiyǒu le.
汽水又沒有了。

We are out of soda again.

Tā zuótiān méi shàng kè. Jīntiān yòu méi shàng kè.

他昨天沒上課。今天又沒上課。

Yesterday he didn't attend class. Today, again, he didn't attend class.

## Notes on №2

2. B: Nín wèishénme gāng huílai, yòu qù le ne?  
 您爲什麼剛回來，又去了呢？  
 Why did you go again when you had just come back from there?
- A: Wǒ zhècì dào Guǎngzhōu qù shì yīnwei wǒ yǒu yige hěn hǎode péngyou cóng Xiānggǎng lái.  
 我這次到廣州去是因爲我有一個很好的朋友從香港來。  
 This time I went to **Guǎngzhōu** because I had a very good friend coming there from Hong Kong.

**Wèishénme**, “why,” follows the subject in the first sentence of exchange 2. This question word usually occurs in that position. (In English, “why” always precedes the subject.)

Nǐ wèishénme yòu qù le ne?

你爲什麼又去了嗎？

(Why did you go again?)

Sometimes **wèishénme** precedes the subject of a sentence:

Wèishénme tā méi qù?	“Why didn't he go?”
爲什麼他沒去？	
Tā wèishénme méi qù?	
他爲什麼沒去？	

**Gāng**, “only a short while ago,” “just”: The first sentence in the exchange could also be translated as “Why, having just come back from there, did you go again?”

The adverb **gāng** is used in sentences describing something that has just been done, in other words, completed action. But notice that the marker *le* for completion is not used here. The marker *le* is added when the focus is on whether or not the action has been performed, not on when or how it was performed. **Gāng** is often used in sentences emphasizing the recentness of an action, not the fact that it was done; therefore *le* is not used.

Nǐ shì shénme shíhou lái de?

你是什麼時候來的？

When did you come here?

**Gāng lái.**

剛來，
I Just got here.
Nǐ mèimei zài bu zài?
你妹妹在不在？
Is your little sister here?
Tā gāng zǒu.
她剛走。
She just left.

Huí, “to return,” “to go back”: Like *chū*, “to go out,” and *jìn*, “to enter,” *huí* must be followed by either a place word or a directional ending.

huí Běijīng
回北京
to return to Běijīng
huíguó
回國
to return to one’s native country
huíjiā
回家
to return home
huílai
回來
to come back
huíqu
回去
to go back

The meaning of *huílai* is not as broad as that of the English translation “to come back,” which has two meanings: 1) to come from someplace else to the original place (“He leaves for work at eight and doesn’t come back till six.”) and 2) to come another time (“Mr. Wang isn’t in today; come back tomorrow.”) *Huílai* means “to return to a particular place.” To say “to come another time” in Chinese, you would use an adverb meaning “again” and the verb *lái*. For example:

Wáng Xiānsheng jīntiān bú zài, qǐng nǐ míngtiān zài lái.
王先生今天不在，請你明天來。
Mr. Wang isn’t in today; please come back tomorrow.

Nèige rén zuótiān yòu lái zhǎo nǐ, nǐ bú zài.

那個人昨天又來找你，你不在。

That guy came back looking for you yesterday, but you were out.

**Ne:** Because of the question word *wèishénme*, “why,” the first sentence in exchange 2 is clearly a question. The marker **ne** is not needed to indicate a question, but does give an added ring of inquisitiveness to the sentence. Questions ending in **ne** often seem to be asking for definite answers.

**Yīnwei**, “because”: Here are some simpler sentences containing *yīnwei*:

Nǐ wèishénme méi lái?

你為什麼沒來？

Why didn't you come?

Yīnwei wǒ hěn máng.

因為我很忙。

Because I was very busy.

Nǐ wèishénme lái wǎn le?

你為什麼來晚了？

Why did you come late?

Yīnwei wǒ zǒucuò le.

因為我走錯了。

Because I made a wrong turn.

Nǐ wèishénme yòu qù le?

你為什麼又去了？

Why did you go again?

Yīnwei wǒde péngyou cóng Xiānggǎng lái.

因為我的朋友從香港來。

Because my friend was coming from Hong Kong.

The word order in the second sentence of exchange 2 may be described in terms of a pattern:

SENTENCE	shì yīnwei	SENTENCE
	因為	
Wǒ zhècì dào Guǎngzhōu qù		wǒ yǒu yige hěn hǎode péngyou cóng Xiānggǎng lái.
我這次到廣州去		我有一個很好的朋友從香港來。

The phrase **hěn hǎode péngyou** contains the marker of modification **-de**. The modifying phrase AD-VERB + ADJECTIVAL VERB (e.g., **zuì xiǎo, tài gāo**) is followed by **-de**. Therefore **hǎo péngyou** does not need **-de**, but **hěn hǎode péngyou** does.

The verb **yǒu** is translated in the past tense in the second sentence of this exchange: “I HAD a . . . friend coming.” Notice that there is no completed-action marker in the sentence. **Yǒu** cannot be used with a completed-action marker because it is a STATE verb, not an action verb. (See notes on Nos. 7-8 in BIO, Unit 8, and on № 4 in this unit.)

### Notes on №3

3. A: **Wǒmen yǒu yìnián méi jiàn le.**  
**我們有一年沒見了。**  
 We had not seen each other for a year.
- A: **Tā qǐng wo péi ta yìqǐ qù lǚxíng.**  
**她請我陪她一起去旅行。**  
 She asked me to accompany her (in her) travels.

**Yǒu yìnián méi:** To state the period of time within which something has not happened, place the amount of time in front of the negative and the verb. The verb **yǒu** may be placed in front of the amount of time.

**Wǒmen (yǒu) sānnián méi jiàn le.**

**我們有三年沒見了。**

(as for us there have been 3 years haven't met)

“We haven't seen each other for three years.”

In this example, new-situation **le** might be translated as “as of now.”

When you are talking about a period of time within which something will not happen, the same pattern is used, but **yǒu** may NOT be added:

**Wǒ liǎngtiān bù chīfàn.**

**我兩天不吃飯。**

“I'm not going to eat for two days.”

The verb **qǐng**, which you have already learned as “please,” means “to request [that a person do something]” or “to invite.” Normally, when you **qǐng** someone to take a trip or to go out, you are saying that you will pay all expenses.

### Notes on №4

4. A: **Sānge yuè yǐqián wǒ zài Guǎngzhōu, nèige shíhou tā hái bù zhīdào néng bù néng lái.**  
**三個月以前我在廣州，那個時候她還不知道能不能來。**  
 Three months ago, when I was in **Guǎngzhōu**, she didn't know yet whether she would be able to come or not.

**Yǐqián**, “ago”: You have already seen **yǐqián** used after a phrase to mean “before.”



Wǒ shàng bān yǐqián, wǒ mǎi diǎnr chīde.

我上班以前，我買點兒吃的。

Before I start work, I will buy something to eat.

In № 4, *yǐqián* is used after an amount of time to mean “ago.”

Liǎngnián yǐqián, wǒ méiyǒu qìchē.

兩年以前，我沒有汽車。

Two years ago, I didn't have a car.

*Néng*, “can,” “to be able to,” “to be capable of”: The most general word in Chinese for “to be able to” is *néng*. The meanings of *néng* and *kéyǐ* “to be permitted by someone” or “permissible according to some rules or conventions,” overlap.

*Nèige shíhou tā hái bù zhīdào*: The negative is *bù*, even though the sentence refers to the past. The negative *méi* cannot be used here because it is the negative of completed action. The verb *zhīdào*, like the verb you and adjectival verbs such as *hǎo*, is a state verb and cannot be thought of as completed.

Since the negative of a state verb is the same in the present and past tenses, the intended time must be discovered from the context. One reason for using *nèige shíhou* in № 4 is to make the time reference very clear.

STATE VERBS include all adjectival verbs, auxiliary verbs, and a few other verbs. Here are some examples:

Adjectival Verbs		Auxiliaries		Others	
dà	大	huì	會	shì	是
xiǎo	小	kéyǐ	可以	zài	在
guì	貴	néng	能	yǒu	有
piányi	便宜	děi	得	xìng	姓
kuài	快	bú bì	不必	jiào	叫
màn	慢	yào	要	zhīdào	知道
duō	多	xiǎng	想	xǐhuan	喜歡
shǎo	少				
gāoxìng	高興				

Yījiǔsānyīnián dōngxi dōu bù guì.

一九三一年東西都不貴。

In 1931, everything was inexpensive.

Wǒ zài Déguó shíhou bú huì shuō Déguó huà.

我在德國時候不會說德

When I was in Germany, I couldn't speak German.

Wǒ yǐqián bù xǐhuan niàn shū.

我以前不喜歡念書。

Before, I didn't like to study.

Bù zhīdào néng bu néng lái, “didn't know if she would be able to come”: The object of the verb zhīdào is a choice-type question, néng bu néng lái. Here are more examples of this usage:

Wǒ bù zhīdào hái yǒu méiyǒu.

我不知道還有沒有。

I don't know if there are any left.

Nǐ wènwen tā mǎile méiyǒu.

你問問他買了沒有。

Ask him if he bought it.

Wǒ xiǎng zhīdào tāmen lái bu lái.

我想知道他們來不來。

I would like to know if they are coming or not.

English-speaking students of Chinese are often tempted to translate “if” as *rúguǒ* or *yàoshi*; to do so, however, is wrong. The following rule may help you remember to use a choice-type question: Whenever the “if” in an English sentence means “whether,” use a choice-type question in Chinese. For example, “I would like to know if they are coming” means “I would like to know whether they are coming”; therefore, in Chinese, you would use a choice-type question as the object of the verb *zhīdào*.

### Notes on №5

5. B: Nǐmen dōu qùguo shénme dìfang?

你們都去過什麼地方？

What places did you go to?

A: Nánjīng, Shànghǎi, Hángzhōu, Sūzhōu, dōu qù le. Hángzhōu zhēn shì piàoliang.

南京，上海，杭州，蘇州，都去了。杭州真是漂亮。

We went to Nánjīng, Shànghǎi, Hángzhōu, and Sūzhōu. Hángzhōu is really beautiful.

Nǐmen dōu qùguo shénme dìfang? is ambiguous. It could mean either “What places did all of you go to?” or “What are all the places that you went to?”

You already know that *dōu* may refer to an object when that object precedes the verb, in topic position. (See the second sentence in exchange 5.)

In this first sentence of the exchange, *dōu* is referring to an object which occurs after the verb. When an object includes a question word, it is not placed before *dōu* in the sentence.

Tā dōu qùguo shénme dìfang?

他都去過什麼地方？

What are all the places that he went to?

Tā dōu niànguo shénme shū?

他都念過什麼書？

What are all the books that she has read?

Tā dōu mǎiguò shénme dōngxi?

他都買過什麼東西？

What are all the things that he bought ?

The *shi* in *Hángzhōu zhēn shi piàoliang* has been added for emphasis. *Shi* is not required before adjectival verbs.

### Notes on №6

6. A: Yǒu jīhuì wǒ yào zài qù yíci.

有機會我要再去幾次。

If I have the chance, I would like to go again.

The adverb *zài* means “again” in talking about actions that have not been completed. (This adverb was translated previously in your text as “then” in commands.)

Míngtiān zài lái ba!

明天再來吧！

Come again tomorrow.

Qǐng ni zài shuō yíci.

請你再說一次。

Please say it again.

*Yíci* means “one occurrence of going,” or “one trip,” in this sentence. (The English translation does not include an equivalent of *yíci*.)

### Notes on №7

7. A: Zhèxiē dìfang nǐ dōu qùguò le ba?

這些地方你都去過了吧。

You have gone to all those places, I suppose?

B: Méi dōu qùguò. Wǒ hái méi qùguò Sūzhōu.

沒都去過。我還沒去過蘇州。

I haven't been to all of them. I still haven't been to *Sūzhōu*.

*Méi dōu*, “not all”: In the second sentence of exchange 7, the negative *méi* precedes the adverb *dōu*. Placing a negative before *dōu* instead of after it changes the meaning of the phrase. Compare the sentences below:

Tāmen dōu bù lái.

他們都不來。
They are all not coming. (All of them are not coming.)
Tāmen bù dōu lái.
他們不都來。
Not all of them are coming.
Wǒ dōu méi qùguo.
我都沒去過。
I haven't been to any of them.
Wǒ méi dōu qùguo.
我沒都去過。
I haven't been to all of them.

### Notes on Additional Vocabulary

8.	huí guó
	回國
	to return to one's native country
9.	huí jiā
	回家
	to come/go home
10.	huíqu
	回去
	to go back
11.	rènao
	熱鬧
12.	yǒu yìsi
	有意思
	to be interesting
13.	méi(yǒu) yìsi
	沒(有)意思
	to be uninteresting
14.	suǒyǐ (suóyì)
	所以
	therefore, so

Suǒyǐ (also pronounced suóyì) is the word “therefore,” “so.”

Wǒ hěn máng, suóyǐ méi qù.

我很忙，所以沒去。

I was very busy, so I didn't go.

In Chinese sentences expressing cause and result, the pattern *yīnwei... suóyǐ...* is preferred. English speakers often find difficulty in using this pattern because it sounds unnatural in English to say “Because I was very busy, so I didn't go.” In English, either “because” or “so” would be omitted; but, in Chinese, both *yīnwei* and *suóyǐ* are often retained.

Yīnwei wǒ hěn máng, suóyǐ méi qù.

因為我很忙，所以沒去。

I was very busy, so I didn't go. (OR “Because I was very busy, I didn't go.”)

Yīnwei tā shì hǎo xuésheng, suóyǐ lǎoshī dōu xǐhuan tā.

因為他是好學生，所以老師都喜歡他。

Because he is a good student, all the teachers like him.

Yīnwei wǒ méiyǒu hùzhào, suóyǐ xiànzài wǒ hái bù néng líkāi.

因為我沒有護照，所以現在我還不能離開。

I don't have a passport, so I can't leave yet. (OR “Because I don't have a passport, I can't leave yet.”)

Yīnwei wǒ yào dào Zhōngguó qù, suóyǐ wǒ yào xué Zhōngwén.

因為我要到中國去，所以我要學中文。

I have to learn Chinese because I'm going to go to China.

Yīnwei wǒ méiyǒu chē, suóyǐ wǒ bù néng zhù de lí xuéxiào tài yuǎn.

因為我沒有車，所以我不能住的離學校太遠。

I don't have a car, so I can't live too far away from school. (OR “Because I don't have a car, I can't live too far away from school.”)

Notice that *suóyǐ* always precedes the subject of the sentence.

*Suóyǐ* may also mean “that's why...”: “That's why you came here by plane.” *Suóyǐ nǐ shì zuò fēijī lái de*. When used this way, the word *suóyǐ* is stressed.

## Drills

### Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

1. Tā chū mén le.

他出门了。

He has gone out.

Tā yòu chū mén le ma?

他又出门了吗。

Has he gone out again?

2. Tā dào Zhōngguó qù le.

他到中国去了。

He went to China.

Tā yòu dào Zhōngguó qù le ma?

他又到中国去了吗。

He went to China again?

3. Tā niàn shū le.

他念书了。

He/she read the book.

Tā yòu niàn shū le ma?

他又念书了吗。

He/she read the book again?

4. Tā shàngqu le.

他上去了。

He/she went up.

Tā yòu shàngqu le ma?

他又上去了吗。

He/she went up again?

5. Tā dào péngyou jiā qù le.

他到朋友家去了。

He/she went to his/her friend.

Tā yòu dào péngyou jiā qù le ma?

他又到朋友家去了吗。

He/she went to his/her friend again?

6. Tā lái le.

他来了。

He/she came.

Tā yòu lái le ma?

他又来了吗。

He/she came again?

7. Tā huíqu le.

他回去了。

He /she returned.

Tā yòu huíqu le ma?

他又回去了吗。

He /she returned again?

## Expansion drill

### Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Wǒ yào kàn yíge péngyou.

我要看一个朋友。

I want to see a friend.

Wǒ zhècì qù shì yào kàn yíge péngyou.

我这次去是要看一个朋友。

The reason I'm going this time is [that] I want to see a friend.

2. Wǒ yào mǎi yíběn Zhōngguó zìdiǎn.

我要买一本中国字典。

I want to buy a Chinese dictionary.

Wǒ zhècì qù shì yào mǎi yíběn Zhōngguó zìdiǎn.

我这次去是要买一本中国字典。

The reason he/she came this time is [that] he/she wants to buy a Chinese dictionary.

3. Tā xiǎng mǎi yíge huāpíng.

他/他想买一个花瓶。

He/she would like to buy a vase.

Tā zhècì qù shì xiǎng mǎi yíge huāpíng.

他/他这次去是想买一个花瓶。

The reason he/she came this time is [that] he/she would like to buy a vase.

4. Tā yào kànkàn mǔqīn.

他/他要看看母亲。

He/she wants to see his/her mother.

Tā zhècì qù shì yào kànkàn mǔqīn.

他/他这次去是要看看母亲。

The reason he/she came this time is [that] he/she wants to see his/her mother.

5. Tā dāsuan qù huàn yídiǎn qián.

他/他打算去换一点钱。

He/she intends to change some money.



Tā zhèicì qù shì dǎsuan qù huàn yìdiǎn qián.

他/他这次去是打算去换一点钱。

The reason he/she came this time is [that] he/she intends to change some money.

6. Tā xiǎng xué Zhōngwén.

他/他想学中文。

He/she would like to study Chinese.

Tā zhèicì qù shì xiǎng xué Zhōngwén.

他/他这次去是想学中文。

The reason he/she came this time is [that] he/she would like to study Chinese.

7. Tā dǎsuan mǎi yìdiǎn dōngxi.

他/他打算买一点东西。

He/she intends to buy some things.

Tā zhèicì qù shì dǎsuan mǎi yìdiǎn dōngxi.

他/他这次去是打算买一点东西。

The reason he/she came this time is [that] he/she intends to buy some things.

## Substitution drill

Substitute according to the cue and the model.

1. Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi qù le.  
我有一年没去了。  
I haven't gone for a year.

Cue kànjian ta  
看见他/她

Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi kànjian ta le.  
我有一年没看见他/她了。  
I haven't seen him for a year.

2. Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi kànjian ta le.  
我有一年没看见他/她了。  
I haven't seen him for a year.

Cue dào Shànghǎi qù  
到上海去  
to Shànghǎi

Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi dào Shànghǎi qù le.  
我有一年没到上海去了。  
I haven't gone for a year to Shànghǎi.

3. Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi dào Shànghǎi qù le.  
我有一年没到上海去了。  
I haven't gone for a year to Shànghǎi.

Cue kàn Zhongwén bào  
看中文报  
read a Chinese newspaper

Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi kàn Zhongwén bào le.  
我有一年没看中文报了。  
I haven't read a Chinese newspaper for a year.

4. Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi kàn Zhongwén bào le.

我有一年没看中文报了。

I haven't read a Chinese newspaper for a year.

Cue

qù kàn ta

去看他/她

see him/her

Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi qù kàn ta le.

我有一年没去看他/她了。

I haven't visited him/her for a year.

5. Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi qù kàn ta le.

我有一年没去看他/她了。

I haven't visited him/her for a year.

Cue

zuò fēijī

坐飞机

take a plane

Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi zuò fēijī le.

我有一年没坐飞机了。

I haven't taken a plane for a year.

6. Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi zuò fēijī le.

我有一年没坐飞机了。

I haven't taken a plane for a year.

Cue

dào zhèr lái

到这儿来

Come here

Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi dào zhèr lái le.

我有一年没到这儿来了。

I haven't come here for a year.

## Transformation drill

### Transform according to the cue and the model.

1. Wǒ gēge qǐng wǒ péi ta qù lǚxíng.  
我哥哥请我陪他/他去旅行。  
My older brother asked me to accompany him [in his] travels.

Wǒ děi péi wǒ gēge qù lǚxíng.  
我得陪我哥哥去旅行。  
I must accompany my older brother [in his] travels.

2. Wǒ jiějie qǐng wǒ péi ta qù mǎi dōngxi.  
我姐姐请我陪他/他去买东西。  
My older sister asked me to accompany her go shopping.

Wǒ děi péi wǒ jiějie qù mǎi dōngxi.  
我得陪我姐姐去买东西。  
I must accompany my older sister to go shopping.

3. Wǒ àiren qǐng wǒ péi ta qù kàn péngyou.  
我爱人请我陪他/他去看朋友。  
My spouse asked me to accompany her to see friends.

Wǒ děi péi wǒ àiren qù kàn péngyou.  
我得陪我爱人去看朋友。  
I must accompany her to see friends.

4. Zhāng Tóngzhì qǐng wǒ péi ta dào Běijīng qù.  
张同志请我陪他/他到北京去。  
Comrade Zhāng asked me to accompany him/her to Běijīng.

Wǒ děi péi Zhāng Tóngzhì dào Běijīng qù.  
我得陪张同志到北京去。  
I must accompany him/her to Běijīng.

5. Lǐ Tóngzhì qǐng wǒ péi ta dào bówùguǎn qù.  
李同志请我陪他/他到博物馆去。  
Comrade Lǐ asked me to accompany him/her to the museum.

Wǒ děi péi Lǐ Tóngzhì dào bówùguǎn qù.

我得陪李同志到博物馆去。

I must accompany him/her to the museum.

6. Tā qǐng wǒ péi tā qù mǎi shū.

他/他请我陪他/他去买书。

He/she asked me to accompany him/her to buy books.

Wǒ děi péi tā qù mǎi shū.

我得陪他/他去买书。

I must accompany him/her to buy books.

7. Tā qǐng wǒ péi tā qù huàn qiǎn.

他/他请我陪他/他去换钱。

He/she asked me to accompany him/her to change money.

Wǒ děi péi tā qù huàn qiǎn.

我得陪他/他去换钱。

I must accompany him/her to change money.

## Substitution drill

### Substitute according to the cue and the model.

1. Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào néng bu néng lái.  
他/他那个时候还不知道能不能来。  
At that time he/she did not yet know whether or not he/she would be able to come.

Cue shénme shíhou  
什么时候  
when

Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào shénme shíhou lái.  
他/他那个时候还不知道什么时候来。  
At that time he/she did not yet know what time to come.

2. Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào shénme shíhou lái.  
他/他那个时候还不知道什么时候来。  
At that time he/she did not yet know when to come.

Cue xīngqījǐ  
星期几  
what day of the/she week

Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào xīngqījǐ lái.  
他/他那个时候还不知道星期几来。  
At that time he/she did not yet know what day of the/she week to come.

3. Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào xīngqījǐ lái.  
他/他那个时候还不知道星期几来。  
At that time he/she did not yet know what day of the week to come.

Cue kěyǐ bu kěyǐ  
可以不可以  
can?

Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào kěyǐ bu kěyǐ lái.  
他/他那个时候还不知道可以不可以来。  
At that time he/she did not yet know whether or not he/she could come.

4. Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào kéyǐ bu keyǐ lái.  
他/他那个时候还不知道可以不可以来。  
At that time he/she did not yet know whether or not he/she could come.

Cue jǐyuè  
几月  
which month

Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào jǐyuè lái.  
他/他那个时候还不知道几月来。  
At that time he/she did not yet know which month to come.

5. Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào jǐyuè lái.  
他/他那个时候还不知道几月来。  
At that time he/she did not yet know which month to come.

Cue néng bu néng  
能不能  
can?

Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào néng bu néng lái.  
他/他那个时候还不知道能不能来。  
At that time he/she did not yet know whether or not he/she would be able to come.

6. Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào néng bu néng lái.  
他/他那个时候还不知道能不能来。  
At that time he/she did not yet know whether or not he/she would be able to come.

Cue jǐhào  
几号  
which date

Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào jǐhào lái.  
他/他那个时候还不知道几号来。  
At that time he/she did not yet know which date to come.

## Response drill

Respond according to the cue and the model.

1. Nǐmen dōu qùguo shénme dìfang?  
你们都去过什么地方？  
What places did you go to?

Cue Shànghǎi, Nánjīng  
上海，南京  
Shànghǎi, Nánjīng

Shànghǎi, Nánjīng wǒmen dōu qù le.  
上海，南京我们都去过。  
We went to both Shànghǎi and Nánjīng.

2. Nǐmen dōu qùguo shénme dìfang?  
你们都去过什么地方？  
What places did you go to?

Cue nǐ shuōde  
你说的  
What you said

Nǐ shuōde nàixiē dìfang wǒmen dōu qù le.  
你说的那些地方都去了。  
We've been to all those places you mentioned.

3. Nǐmen dōu niànguo shénme?  
你们都念过什么？  
What did you all study?

Cue zhèngzhìxué, jīngjìxué  
政治学，经济学  
political science, economics

Zhèngzhìxué, jīngjìxué wǒmen dōu niàn le.  
政治学，经济学我们都念了。  
Political science, economics, we studied them both.



4. Nǐmen dōu mǎi shénme le?

你们都买什么了？

What did you buy?

Cue

zhuōzi, pánziwǎn

桌子，盘子碗

table, dishes

Zhuōzi, pánziwǎn wǒmen dōu mǎi le.

桌子，盘子碗你们都买了。

Table, dishes, we bought both of them.

5. Nǐmen zuótiān dōu mǎi shénme le?

你们昨天都买什么了？

What did you buy Yesterday?

Cue

shū, zázhì

书，杂志

book, magazine

Shū, zázhì wǒmen dōu mǎi le.

书，杂志我们都买了。

Book, magazine, we bought both of them.

6. Nǐmen dōu yào shénme yánsède?

你们都要什么颜色的？

What colour do you want?

Cue

lán de, hóng de

蓝的，红的

blue, red

Lán de, hóng de wǒmen dōu yào.

蓝的，红的我们都要。

The blue ones, the red ones, we both want them.

7. Nǐmen jīntiān dōu qùguo shénme dìfang?

你们今天都去过什么地方？

At what place did you go today?

Cue

bówùguǎn, zhǎnlǎnguǎn

博物馆，展览馆

museum, exhibition Gallery

Bówùguǎn, zhǎnlǎnguǎn wǒmen dōu qù le.

博物馆，展览馆我们都去了。

Museum, exhibition Gallery, we went to both.

## Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

1. Tāmen dōu lái le ma?  
他/他们都来了吗?  
Did they all come?

Cue měi dōu  
美都  
not all

Tāmen měi dōu lái.  
他/他们没都来。  
Not all of them came.

2. Tāmen dōu qù le ma?  
他/他们都去了吗?  
Did they all go?

Cue dōu méi  
都没  
none

Tāmen dōu méi qù.  
他/他们都没去。  
None of them did go.

3. Tāmen dōu zǒu le ma?  
他/他们都走了吗?  
Did they all walk?

Cue méi dōu  
美都  
not all

Tāmen méi dōu zǒu.  
他/他们没都走。  
Not all of them walked.

4. Tāmen dōu mǎi le ma?  
他/他们都买了吗?  
Did they all buy?

Cue dōu méi  
都没  
none

Tāmen dōu méi mǎi.  
他/他们都没买。  
None of them bought.

5. Tāmen dōu mài Zhōngguo shū ma?  
他/他们都卖中国书吗?  
Did they all buy Chinese books?

Cue bù dōu  
不都  
not all

Tāmen bù dōu mài Zhōngguo shū.  
他/他们不都卖中国书。  
Not all of them bought Chinese books.

6. Shànghǎi, Běijīng, Nánjīng tāmen dōu qùguo le ma?  
上海，北京，南京他/他们都去过了吗?  
Shànghǎi, Běijīng, Nánjīng, did they ever go there?

Cue méi dōu  
美都  
not all

Tāmen méi dōu qùguo.  
他/他们没都去过。  
Not all of them ever went.

7. Tāmen dōu lái guo ma?  
他/他们都来过吗?  
Did they all ever go?

Cue

dōu méi

都没

none

Tāmen dōu méi lái guo.

他/他们都没来过。

None of them ever went.

## Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

1. Wǒ míngtiān yào zài qù yíci.

我明天要再去一次。

Tomorrow I want to go again.

Wǒ zuótiān yòu qù le yíci.

我昨天又去了一次。

Yesterday I went again.

2. Tā hòutiān yào zài lái yíci.

他/他后天要再来一次。

He/she wants to come again the day after tomorrow.

Tā qiántiān yòu lái le yíci.

他/他前天又来了一次。

He/he came again the day before yesterday.

3. Tā míngnián yào zài niàn yíci.

他/他明年要再念一次。

He/she is going to study again next year.

Tā qùnián yòu niàn le yíci.

他/他去年又念了一次。

He/he read it again last year.

4. Wǒ xiàge yuè yào zài kàn yíci.

我下个月要再看一次。

I'm going to watch it again next month.

Wǒ shàngge yuè yòu kàn le yíci.

我上个月又看了一次。

I watched it again last month.

5. Tā xiàge xīngqī yào zài zuò yíci.

他/他下个星期要再做一次。

He/he is going to do it again next week.

Tā shàngge xīngqī yòu zuòle yíci.

他/他上个星期又做了一次。

He/he did it again last week.

6. Wǒ xiàwǔ yào zài xué yíci.

我下午要再学一次。

I'm going to learn it again this afternoon.

Wǒ shàngwǔ yòu xuéle yíci.

我上午又学了一次。

I learned it again in the morning.

7. Tā xiàge Xīngqīyī yào zài kāi yíci.

他/他下个星期一要再开一次。

He/he is going to drive again next Monday.

Tā shàngge Xīngqīyī yòu kāile yíci.

他/他上个星期一又开了一次。

He/he drove again last Monday.

## Transformation drill

Transform according to the cue and the model.

1. Nǐmen dōu qùguo shénme dìfang?  
你们都去过什么地方？  
What places did you go to?

Cue zhèige dìfang  
这个地方  
this place

Nǐmen dōu qùguo zhèige dìfang ma?  
你们都去过这个地方吗？  
Did all of you ever go to this place?

2. Nǐmen dōu mǎi shénme le?  
你们都买什么了？  
What did you buy?

Cue shū  
书  
book

Nǐmen dōu mǎi shū le ma?  
你们都买书了吗？  
Did you all buy books?

3. Nǐmen dōu yào shénme?  
你们都要什么？  
What do you want?

Cue mǎi lán de  
买蓝的  
buy blue one

Nǐmen dōu yào mǎi lán de ma?  
你们都要买懒得吗？  
Do you all want to buy blue one?



4. Nǐmen dōu zhùguo shénme fàndiàn?

你们都住过什么饭店？

What hotels have you stayed in?

Cue

nèige fàndiàn

那个饭店

that store

Nǐmen dōu zhùguo nèige fàndiàn ma?

你们都住过那个饭店吗？

Did you all ever stay at that hotel?

5. Nǐmen dōu niànguo shénme?

你们都年过什么？

What have you all been doing?

Cue

zhèngzhixué

政治学

political Science

Nǐmen dōu niànguo zhèngzhixué ma?

你们念过政治学吗？

Did you all study political science?

6. Nǐmen dōu kàn shénme diànyǐng le?

你们都看什么电影了？

What film did you all watch?

Cue

zhèige diànyǐng

这个电影

this movie

Nǐmen dōu kàn zhèige diànyǐng le ma?

你们都看这个电影了吗？

Did you all watch that movie?

7. Nǐmen dōu xìng shénme?

你们都姓什么？

What is your name?

Cue

Lǐ

李

Lǐ

Nǐmen dōu xìng Lǐ ma?

你们都姓李吗？

Are you all are named Lǐ?

## Expansion drill

Expand according to the cue and the model.

1. Tā yòu qù le.  
他/他又去了。  
He's gone again.

Cue huílai  
回来  
come back

Tā wèishénme gāng huílai yòu qù le ne?  
他/他为什么刚回来又去了呢?  
Why did he go again when he had just come back?

2. Tā yòu lái le.  
他/他又来了。  
Here he/he is again.

Cue huíqu  
回去  
go back

Tā wèishénme gāng huíqu yòu lái le ne?  
他/他为什么刚回去又来了呢。  
Why did he/he just go back and come again.

3. Tā yòu zǒu le.  
他/他又走了。  
He/she walk again.

Cue huílai  
回来  
come back

Tā wèishénme gāng huílai yòu zǒu le ne?  
他/他为什么刚回来有走了呢?  
Why did he/he just come back and leave?

4. Tā yòu huíqu le.  
他/他又回去了。  
He/he went back again.

Cue lái  
来  
come

Tā wèishénme gāng lái yòu huíqu le ne?  
他/他为什么刚来又回去了呢？  
Why did he/he just come and then go back?

5. Tā yòu huílai le.  
他/他又回来了。  
He/he came back again.

Cue qù  
去  
go

Tā wèishénme gāng qù yòu huílai le ne?  
他/他为什么刚去又回来了呢？  
Why did he/he just go and come back again?

6. Tā yòu huílai le.  
他/他又回来了。  
He/he is back again.

Cue zǒu  
走  
walk

Tā wèishénme gāng zǒu yòu huílai le ne?  
他/他为什么刚走又回来了呢？  
Why did he/he just leave and come back again?

7. Tā yòu qù le.  
他/他又去了。  
He/he went again.

Cue

huílai

回来

come back

Tā wèishénme gāng huílai yòu qù le ne?

他/他为什么刚回来又去了呢？

Why did he/he just come back and go again?



---

# Chapter 6. Module 6: Arranging a meeting

The Meeting Module (MTG) will provide you with the skills needed to arrange meetings or social gatherings, to greet people, to make introductions, and to accept or decline invitations in Chinese.

Before starting this module, you must take and pass the TRN Criterion Test.

The MTG Criterion Test will focus largely on this module, but material from ORN, BIO, MON, DIR, TRN, and associated resource modules is also included.

## Objectives

Upon successful completion of this module, the student should be able to

1. Give the English equivalent for any Chinese sentence in the MTG Target Lists.
2. Say any Chinese sentence in the MTG Target Lists when cued with English equivalent.
3. Make and respond to introductions with appropriate polite questions and answers.
4. Make phone calls and leave messages.
5. Arrange a meeting (time and place) with someone by talking with him or his secretary either in person or by phone.
6. Request that the time of a meeting be changed.
7. Invite a person to lunch, deciding on the time and the restaurant.
8. Arrange a social gathering for a specific time of day, inviting guests to his home and encouraging them to accept the invitation.
9. Greet guests upon their arrival at his home.
10. Accept/decline a social/business invitation with the appropriate degree of politeness.

## Unit 1 Target List

1. Wèi, nǐ shì Zhū Kēzhǎng ma?

喂, 你是朱科長嗎?

Hello. Are you Section Chief Zhū?

Shì. Nín shì něiwèi?

是。您是哪位?

Yes. Who is this, please?

Wǒ shì Wēilián Mǎdīng

我是威廉馬丁。

I'm William Martin.

Òu, Mǎdīng Xiānsheng, hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn.

哦, 馬丁先生, 好久不見。

Oh, Mr. Martin—I haven't seen you for a long time.

2. Wǒ yǒu diǎnr shì xiǎng gēn nín dāngmiàn tán tán.

我有點兒事想跟您當面談談。

I have something I would like to talk with you about in person.

3. Nín yǒu gōngfu meiyǒu?

您有功夫沒有?

Do you have any free time?

4. Shénme shíhou duì nín héshì?

什麼時候對您合適?

What time would suit you?

5. Sāndiǎn bǐ liǎngdiǎn fāngbian yìdiǎnr. Yīnwei wǒ yīhuǐr chūqu, yěxǔ liǎngdiǎn huíbulái.

三點比兩點方便一點兒。因為一會兒出去, 也許兩點回不來。

Three would be more convenient than two. Since I'm going out in a little while, I might not be able to get back by two.

Nàme#wǒ sāndiǎn zhōng zài lóuxiàde huìkèsì děng nín.

那麼, 我三點鐘在樓下的會客室等您。

Well then, I'll wait for you in the reception room downstairs at three o'clock.



ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

6. huídelái  
回得來  
to be able to get back in time
  
7. kòng(r)  
空(兒)  
free time, spare time
  
8. lóushàng  
樓上  
upstairs
  
9. shāngliang  
商量  
to discuss, to talk over
  
10. yǒu kòng(r)  
有空(兒)  
to have free time

## Unit 2 Target List

1. Wèi, Měidàsī.

喂, 美大司。

Hello. Department of American and Oceanic Affairs.

Wǒ shì Jiānádà Dàshìguǎnde Qiáozhì Dáfēi. Wǒ yǒu yíjiàn shì xiǎng gēn Wáng Kēzhǎng jiǎng-yíjiǎng.

我是加拿大大使館的喬治達菲。我有一件事想跟王科長講一講。

I am George Duffy of the Canadian Embassy. I have something I would like to discuss with Section Chief Wáng.

2. Wáng Kēzhǎng xiànzài zài kāi huì. Dèng tā kāiwán huì wǒ gàosong tā gěi ni huí diànhuà.

王科長現在在開會。等她開完會我告訴告訴她給你回電話。

Section Chief Wáng is at a meeting now. When she is finished with the meeting, I will tell her to return your call.

3. Hǎo, xièxie ni.

好, 謝謝你。

Fine. Thank you.

Bú xiè.

不謝。

Don't mention it.

4. Nǐ dǎ diànhuà láide shíhou wǒ méi shíjiān gēn ni shuō huà.

你打電話來的時候我沒時間跟你說話。

When you called here, I didn't have time to speak with you.

Méi guānxi.

沒關係。

It doesn't matter.

5. Wǒ gěi ni dǎ diànhuàde mùdì shì xiǎng gēn ni dāngmiàn tán tán.

我給你打電話目的是想跟你當面談談。

The reason I called you is that I would like to talk with you in person.

Nǐ míngtiān néng bu néng dào wǒ zhèr lái?

你明天能不能到我這兒來?

Can you come over here tomorrow?

Kéyi. Míngtiān shénme shíhou dōu kéyi.

你明天能不能到我這兒來？

Yes. Any time tomorrow would be fine.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

6. guānxi  
關係  
relation, relationship, connection
7. jiǎng huà  
講話  
to speak, to talk; a speech
8. lǐngshìguǎn  
領事館  
consulate
9. shìqing (yíjiàn)  
事情 (一件)  
matter, business, affair
10. sīzhǎng  
司長  
department chief
11. yǒu guānxi  
有關係  
to relate to, to have a bearing on, to matter

## Unit 3 Target List

1. Wǒ xiǎng xiàge Xīngqīliù qǐng nín dào wǒmen jiā lái chī ge biànfàn.  
我想下個星期六請您到我們家來吃個便飯。  
I would like to invite you to come to our house for a simple meal on Saturday of next week.

Nín hébì zhème kèqì?  
您何必這麼客氣？  
Why is it necessary to be so polite?
2. Wǒ yǒu yige Měiguó péngyou zài Táiwan Dàxué jiāo shū. Hěn xiǎng gěi nimen liǎngwèi jièshào jièshào.  
我有一個美國朋友在臺灣大學教書。很想給你們兩位介紹介紹。  
I have an American friend who teaches at Táiwan University. I would very much like to introduce the two of you.

Nà tài hǎo le!  
你太好了！  
That's wonderful!
3. Wǒ hěn xīwang gēn nǐ péngyou tán tan.  
我很希望跟你朋友談談。  
I wish very much to talk with your friend.

Búguò, kǒngpà wǒde Yīngwén bù xíng.  
不過，恐怕我的英文不行。  
However, I'm afraid that my English isn't good enough.

Búdàn shuōde bù hǎo, yǒu shíhou yě tīngbudǒng.  
不但說得不好，有時候也聽不懂。  
Not only don't I speak well, (but) sometimes I can't understand what I hear either.
4. Nǐ shuōde gēn Měiguó rén yíyàng hǎo.  
你說得跟美國人一樣。  
You speak as well as an American.
5. Wǒ méi qǐng shénme rén; hěn suíbiàn.  
我沒請什麼人；很隨便。  
I haven't invited anyone special; it's very informal.

Nà jiù xiān xiè le.

那就先謝了。

Well then, I'll thank you in advance.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

6. **bù tóng**  
不同  
to be different
7. **chá**  
茶  
tea
8. **chī fàn**  
吃飯  
to eat, to have a meal
9. **dànshi**  
但是  
but
10. **érqiě**  
而且  
furthermore, moreover
11. **fàn**  
飯  
(cooked) rice
12. **hē**  
喝  
to drink
13. **jiāo shū**  
教書  
to teach

## Unit 4 Target List

1. Hé Jiàoshòu, huānyíng, huānyíng. Qǐng jìn.

何教授，歡迎，歡迎。請進。

Professor Hollins, welcome. Please come in.

Zhè shì yìdiǎn xiǎo yìsi.

這是一點小意思。

Here is a small token of appreciation.

2. Wǒ zhīdao nín xǐhuan shānshuǐ huà.

我知道您喜歡山水畫。

I know you like landscape painting.

Tèbié qǐng péngyou gěi nín huà yìzhāng.

特別請朋友給您畫一張。

I asked a friend to paint one especially for you.

3. Zhèwèi shì Hé Jiàoshòu, zài Táidà jiāo shū.

這位是何教授，在台大教書。

This is Professor Hollins, who teaches at **Táiwān** University.

Jiǔyǎng, jiǔyǎng.

久仰，久仰。

Glad to meet you.

4. Wǒ hái yǒu hěn duō bù shóuxide dìfang yào xiàng nín qǐngjiào.

我還有很多不熟悉的地方要向您請教。

There is still much I'm not familiar with that I need to ask your advice about.

5. Xīwang yǐhòu yǒu jīhuì duō jiànmiàn.

希望以後有機會多見面。

I hope that in the future we will have an opportunity to meet more.

### ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

6. fāngfǎ

方法

method, way, means

7. fǎzi  
法子  
method, way
8. huàr  
畫兒  
painting (Běijīng pronunciation)
9. qǐng zuò  
請坐  
please sit down
10. shèhuìxué  
社會學  
sociology
11. túshūguǎn  
圖書館  
library
12. zuò  
坐  
to sit

## Unit 5 Target List

1. Wài.

喂

Hello.

Wèi, shì Wàijiāobù ma? Wǒ yào zhǎo Lín Sīzhǎng shuō huà.

喂，外交部嗎？我要找林司長說話。

Hello. Is this the Ministry of Foreign Affairs? I want to speak with Department Chief Lin.

Nín shì nǎr a?

您是那兒啊？

Who is this?

Wǒ shì Fǎguó Shāngwù Jīngjìguān.

我是法國商務經濟官。

I am the French Commercial/Economics Officer.

2. Lín Sīzhǎng zhèihuìr bú zài. Nín yào liú ge huàr ma?

林司長這會兒不在。

Department Chief Lin is not here at the moment. Would you like to leave a message?

3. Wǒ bǎ nín de diànhuà hàomǎ xiě xià lái.

我把您的電話號兒寫下來。

I'll write down your phone number.

4. Duibuqǐ, nǐ gāngcái gěi wǒ dǎ diànhuà, wǒ bú zài.

對不起，你剛才給我打電話，我不在。

I'm sorry. When you called me just now, I wasn't in.

5. Wǒ nàitiān gēn nín yuēhǎo le jīntiān dào nín bàngōngshì qu tán tán.

我那天跟您約好了今天到辦公室去談談。

The other day I made an appointment with you to go to your office today for a talk.

Yīnwei wǒ yǒu yíjiàn yào jǐn de shì, suǒyǐ bù néng jīntiān qù.

因為我有一件要緊的事，所以不能今天去。

Because I have an urgent business matter, I can't go today.

Gǎi dào míngtiān xíng bu xíng?



改到明天行不行？

Would it be all right to change it [the appointment] to tomorrow?

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

6. háishi  
還是  
still
7. wàiguo  
外國  
foreign, abroad
8. wàiguo rén  
外國人  
foreigner (non-Chinese)
9. wūzi (yìjiān)  
屋子 (一間)  
room
10. yāo  
幺  
one (telephone pronunciation)

## Unit 6 Target List

1. Wǒmen dào Dōngmén Cāntīng qù chī zhōngfàn, hǎo bu hǎo?

我們到東門餐廳去吃中飯，好不好？

Let's go to the East Gate Restaurant to eat lunch. Okay?

Dōngmén de cài méiyǒu Dàhuá de cài nàme hǎo.

東門的菜沒有大華菜那麼好。

The food at the East Gate isn't as good as the food at the Great China.

2. Suīrán bú tài hǎo, kěshì lí zhèlǐ jìn.

雖然不太好，可是離這裏近。

Even though it [East Gate] is not too good, it is close to us.

Hái yǒu yíge xīn kāide fànguǎnzi lí wǒmen zhèlǐ gèng jìn.

還有一個新開的飯館子離我們這裏更近。

There is also a newly opened restaurant that is even closer to us.

3. Tāmen nàlǐ de cài fēicháng hǎo. Jīntiān wǒ qǐng nǐ dào nàlǐ qù chī.

它們那裏菜非常好。今天我請你到那裏去吃。

The food there is extremely good. Today I am going to invite you to go there to eat.

Nà bù hǎo yìsi!

那不好意思！

I can't let you do that! (That would be too embarrassing!)

4. Dàhuá de cài yòu hǎo yòu piányi.

大華的菜又好又便宜。

The food at the Great China is both good and cheap.

Yě yǒu hǎoxiē cài bié de dìfang chībuzháo.

也有好些菜別的地方吃不找。

They also have a good many dishes that you can't find (at) other places.

5. Nǐ shuō de dìfang yíding hǎo.

你說的地方一定好。

Any place you suggest is sure to be good.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

6. **bù yíding**  
不一定  
not necessarily; it's not definite
  
7. **kànfǎ**  
看法  
opinion, view
  
8. **wǎnfàn**  
晚飯  
supper, dinner
  
9. **xiǎngfǎ**  
想法  
idea, opinion
  
10. **yìxiē**  
一些  
some, several, a few
  
11. **zǎofàn**  
早飯  
breakfast
  
12. **zuòfǎ**  
做法  
way of doing things, method, practice

## Unit 7 Target List

1. Wǒ yǒu yíjiàn shì xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng.  
我有一件事想跟您打聽打聽。  
I have something I would like to ask you about.

Tīngshuō nín nàbian xīn lái yíwèi Fāng Xiānsheng; tāde míngzi wǒ wàngjì le.  
聽說您那邊新來了一位方先生；他的名字我忘記了。  
I have heard that you recently had a Mr. Fāng join you. I have forgotten his given name.
2. Bú cuò, Fāng Dé míng shì shàngge líbài pài dào wǒmen zhèlǐ lái de.  
不錯，方德明是上個禮拜派到我們這裏來的。  
That's right. Fāng Dé míng was sent over here last week.

Zěnmē? Nǐ rènshi tā ma?  
怎麼？你認識他嗎？  
Why? Do you know him?
3. Wǒ shì Jiāzhōu Dàxué bìyè de.  
我是加州大學畢業的。  
I graduated from the University of California.
4. Nǐ néng bu néng mǎshàng dào wǒ bàn gōngshì lái?  
你能不能馬上到我辦公室來？  
Can you come to my office right away?

Méi wèntí. Chābùduō bàn ge zhōngtóu jiù dào.  
沒問題。差不多半個鐘頭就到。  
No problem. I'll be there in about half an hour.

### ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

5. jìde  
記得  
to remember
6. rènde  
認得  
to recognize, to know (alternate word for rènshi)

7. **rènshi zì**  
認識字  
to know how to read (literally, “to recognize characters”)
  
8. **wàng**  
忘  
to forget (alternate word for **wàngji**, especially in the sense of forgetting to DO something)
  
9. **wánquán**  
完全  
completely
  
10. **xiǎngqilai**  
想起來  
to think of, to remember
  
11. **zuǒyòu**  
左右  
approximately

## Unit 8 Target List

1. Wài, zhèi shì Lǐbīnsī.

喂，這是禮賓司。

Hello. This is the Protocol Department.

Wèi, wǒ shì Láidēng Dàshǐde mìshū.

喂，我是萊登大使的秘書。

Hello. I am Ambassador Leyden's secretary.

2. Dàshǐ jiēzháo nǐmende qǐngtiē le.

大使接著你們的請帖了。

The ambassador received your invitation.

Hěn kěxī yīnwei tā yǒu shì, Báyue jiǔhào bù néng lái.

很可惜因為他有事，八月九號不能來。

Unfortunately, because he has a previous engagement, he cannot come on August 9#

Qǐng nǐ zhuǎngào Qiáo Bùzhǎng.

請你轉告譙部長。

Please inform Minister Qiao.

Hěn bàoqiàn.

很抱歉。

I'm very sorry.

3. Hěn yíhàn, tā bù néng lái.

很遺憾，他不能來。

We very much regret that he cannot come.

Wǒ tì nǐ zhuǎngào yíxià.

我替你轉告一下。

I will pass on the message for you.

4. Xīwàng yǐhòu zài zhǎo jīhuì jùjù ba.

希望以後在找機會聚一聚吧。

I hope that later we will find another opportunity to get together.

5. Zhēn bù qiǎo, méi bànfa qù.

真不巧，沒辦法去。

I really couldn't make that; I have no way of going.

6. Wǒmen yǒu jǐge tóngxué jìhuà dào Chángchéng qù wánr.

我們有幾個同學計劃到長城去玩兒。

A few of us students are planning to go to the Great Wall for an outing.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

7. dàjiā

大家

everybody, everyone

8. jiēdào

接到

to receive (alternate form of jiēzhào)

9. tóngshi

同事

fellow worker, colleague

10. yīngāi

應該

should, ought to, must

# Unit 1

## References

### Reference List

1. B: **Wéi.**  
喂  
Hello.  
A: **Wài, nǐ shì Zhū Kēzhǎng ma?**  
喂，你是朱科長嗎？  
Hello. Are you Section Chief Zhū?  
B: **Shì. Nín shì nǎiwèi?**  
是。您是哪一位？  
Yes. Who is this, please?  
A: **Wǒ shì Wēilián Mǎdīng.**  
我是威廉馬丁。  
I'm William Martin.  
B:<sup>a</sup> **Òu, Mǎdīng Xiānsheng, hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn. Nǐ hǎo a?**  
哦，馬丁先生，好久不見。你好啊？  
Oh, Mr. Martin—I haven't seen you for quite a while. How are you?  
A: **Hǎo. Nǐ hǎo a?**  
好。你好啊？  
Fine. How are you?
2. A: **Wǒ yǒu diǎnr shì xiǎng gēn nín dāngmiàn tán.**  
我有點兒事想跟您當面談談。  
I have something I would like to talk with you about in person.
3. A: **Bù zhīdào nín yǒu gōngfu meiyǒu.**  
不知道您有工夫沒有。  
I don't know whether you have the time or not.  
B: **Yǒu gōngfu.**  
有功夫。  
I have the time.
4. A: **Shénme shíhou duì nín héshì?**  
什麼時候對您合適？  
What time would suit you?  
B: **Jīntiān, míngtiān dōu kényi.**



今天，明天都可以。

Either today or tomorrow would be fine.

5. A: Jīntiān xiàwǔ liǎngdiǎn zhōng fāngbian ma?

今天下午兩點鐘方便嗎？

Would two o'clock today be convenient?

- B: Sāndiǎn bǐ liǎngdiǎn fāngbian yìdiǎnr.

三點比兩點方便一點兒。

Three would be more convenient than two.

6. B: Yīnwèi wǒ yīhuǐr chūqu, yěxǔ liǎngdiǎn huíbulái.

因為我一會兒出去，也許兩點回不來。

Since I'm going out in a little while, I might not be able to get back by two.

7. B: Nàme, wǒ sāndiǎn zhōng zài lóuxiàde huìkèshì děng nín.

那麼，我三點鐘在樓下的會客室等您。

Well then, I'll wait for you in the reception room downstairs at three o'clock.

- A: Hǎo, sāndiǎn jiàn.

好，三點見。

Fine. I'll see you at three.

Additional Vocabulary

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

8. huídelái

回得來

to be able to get back in time

9. kòng(r)

空兒

free time, spare time

10. lóushàng

樓上

upstairs

11. shāngliang

商量

to discuss, to talk over

12. yǒu kòng(r)

有空兒

to have free time

<sup>a</sup>The remaining sentences in this exchange occur on the C-1 tape.

## Vocabulary

bǐ	比	compared with, than
dāngmiàn	當面	in person, face to face
duì	對	to, towards; with regard to, with respect to
gōngfu	功夫	free time, spare time
héshì	合適	to be suitable, to be appropriate, to fit
huíbulái	回不來	to be unable to get back
huídelái	回得來	to be able to get back in time
huìkèshì (huìkèshǐ)	會客室	reception room
kēzhǎng	科長	section chief
kòng(r)	空兒	free time, spare time
lóushàng	樓上	upstairs
lóuxià	樓下	downstairs
nàme	那麼	well, then, in that case
shāngliang	商量	to discuss, to talk over
tán	談	to chat, to talk about
wéi	喂	hello (telephone greeting)
yěxǔ	也許	perhaps, maybe
yìhuǐr	一會兒	a moment
yǒu gōngfu	有功夫	to have free time
yǒu kòng(r)	有空兒	to have free time
(Introduced on C-2 and P-2 tapes)		
chūkǒu gōngsī	出口公司	export company
huì kè	會客	to receive guests
xiē	些	several, some
yǒu yòng	有用	to be useful

## Reference Notes

## Notes on №1

1. B: **Wéi.**  
喂  
Hello.
- A: **Wài, nǐ shì Zhū Kēzhǎng ma?**  
喂，你是朱科長嗎？  
Hello. Are you Section Chief Zhū?
- B: **Shì. Nín shì něiwèi?**  
是。您是哪位？  
Yes. Who is this, please?
- A: **Wǒ shì Wēilián Mǎdīng.**  
我是威廉馬丁。  
I'm William Martin.
- B: **Òu, Mǎdīng Xiānsheng, hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn. Nǐ hǎo a?**  
哦，馬丁先生，好久不見。你好啊？  
Oh, Mr. Martin—I haven't seen you for quite a while. How are you?
- A: **Hǎo. Nǐ hǎo a?**  
好。你好啊？  
Fine. How are you?

**Wéi** is a greeting used in telephone conversations for “hello.” Some speakers pronounce this greeting as **wài**. Unlike most Chinese words, **wèi** has no fixed tone. The intonation varies according to the speaker's mood.

**Kēzhǎng**: **Kē** means “section,” and **zhǎng** means “head of an organization.” Here are some examples of how **-zhǎng**, “chief,” “head,” is used:

<b>kē</b>	科	section
<b>kēzhǎng</b>	科長	section chief
<b>chù</b>	處	division
<b>chùzhǎng</b>	處長	division chief
<b>xuéxiào</b>	學校	school
<b>xiàozhǎng</b>	校長	principal, headmaster

**Nín shì něiwèi?** Note the use of the polite terms **nín** and **něiwèi**. In the English translation, politeness is expressed by the use of the more indirect “Who is this” instead of “Who are you” and also by “please.”

**Hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn**, “I haven't seen you for quite a while,” is interchangeable with **hǎo jiǔ méi jiàn**.

## Notes on №2

2. A: **Wǒ yǒu diǎnr shì xiǎng gēn nín dāngmiàn tán.**

我有點兒事想跟您當面談談。

I have something I would like to talk with you about in person.

**Gēn**: In No. 2 the word **gēn** is a prepositional verb translated as “with.” The preposition **gēn**, “with,” differs from the conjunction **gēn**, “and,” in two important ways: a) where stress may be placed b) where the negative may be placed.

a. When **gēn** is used as the conjunction “and,” both items being joined are stressed and keep their tones. When **gēn** is used as the prepositional verb “with,” a pronoun which follows is unstressed and loses its tone. Notice the contrasting tones on **tā** in the following sentences:

我跟他都來了。	Both he and I came.
Wǒ gēn tā dōu lái le.	
我跟他來。	I'll come with him.
Wǒ gēn tā lái.	

b. To make negative a sentence containing the conjunction **gēn**, “and,” the negative is placed with the main verb. In sentences containing the prepositional verb **gēn**, “with,” the negative precedes the prepositional verb. (You have seen this pattern with other prepositional verbs, for example, **zài** [see BIO, Unit 2, notes on Nos. 8–11].) Notice the contrasting positions of the negatives in the examples below:

我跟他都沒有去。	Neither he nor I went.
Wǒ gēn tā dōu méiyǒu qù.	
我沒有跟他去。	I didn't go with him.
Wǒ méiyǒu gēn tā qù.	

**Dāngmiàn** means “face-to-face.” Literally, **dāng** means “in the presence of,” and **miàn** means “face.”

## Notes on №3

3. A: **Bù zhīdào nín yǒu gōngfu meiyǒu.**

不知道您有工夫沒有。

I don't know whether you have the time or not.

B: **Yǒu gōngfu.**

有功夫。

I have the time.

**Gōngfu**, “time,” “free time,” “leisure time,” refers to a period of time during which a person is free, in the sense that his work may be interrupted.

Now you know three words for “time”: **shíhou**, **shíjiān**, **gōngfu**. **Shíhou** may be used for either a point in time or an amount of time.

Nǐ shénme shíhou zǒu?

你什麼時候走？
When are you leaving?
Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu duōshao shíhou?
坐火車要走多少時候？
How long does it take to go by train?

**Shíjiān** refers to any amount of time, including the time when a person is free.

Cóng zhèr dào fēijīchǎng yào duōshao shíjiān?
從這兒到飛機場要多少時間？
How long does it take from here to the airport?
Jīntiān méiyǒu shíjiān qù.
今天沒有時間去。
There isn't time to go today.

**Gōngfu**, however, is used only for amounts of time which a person has available for his own use.

Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu gōngfu gēn wǒ tán tán?
你有沒有功夫跟我談談？
Are you free to talk with me?

### Notes on №4

4. A: **Shénme shíhou duì nín héshì?**

什麼時候對您合適？

What time would suit you?

B: **Jīntiān, míngtiān dōu kěyǐ.**

今天，明天都可以。

Either today or tomorrow would be fine.

**Dui**, “to,” “towards,” “with regard to,” “with respect to,” is a prepositional verb which originally meant “facing.” In modern Chinese, its object introduces either the target of the action or the thing concerned. Contrast this with **gěi**, “for”: the object introduced by **gěi** receives the benefit of the action. These generalizations may help you sort out some of the differences between **dui** and **gěi**. You might find

it helpful to memorize some examples, as well.

- **dui** INTRODUCING THE TARGET OF THE ACTION (“to”)

Nǐde huà shì duì shéi shuōde?
To whom were you speaking?
你的話是對誰說的。
Tā duì wǒ hěn kèqì.

他對我很客氣。
He is very polite to me.
Nǐ duì wǒ tài hǎo.
你對我太好。
You are too good to me.

- **duì** INTRODUCING THE THING CONCERNED (“with regard to,” “with respect to”)

Shénme shíhòu duì nín héshì?
什麼時候對您合適？
What time suits you?
Shénme shíhòu duì nín fāngbiān?
什麼時候對您方便？
What time is convenient for you?

Notice that the English is “for you” in the last example, but in Chinese you must say “What time is convenient **with regard to** you?”

- **gěi** INTRODUCING THE BENEFICIARY

Wǒ gěi tā xiě le xìn le.
我給他寫了信了。
I wrote him a letter.
Zhè shì yìzhāng shíkuàide, qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ huàn huàn.
這是一張十塊的，請您給我換換。
Here's a ten-dollar bill. Please change it for me.
Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ xiě nǐ de dìzhǐ.
請你給我寫你的地址。
Would you write down your address for me, please?

**Héshì** is an adjectival verb meaning “to fit,” “to suit,” “to be suitable/appropriate.” When trying on clothes in a store, you might say **Zhèige bù héshì**, “This doesn’t fit.” In another situation, **héshì** could be translated very freely as “best”: **Něitiān duì nín héshì?** “What day would be best for you?”

### Note on №5

**Sāndiǎn bǐ liǎngdiǎn fāngbiān yìdiǎn**: **Bǐ** is a prepositional verb used to make comparisons between two things which are different. <sup>1</sup>In translating, you may find it helpful to think of **bǐ** as the English

<sup>1</sup>A different pattern is used to say that two things are the same. (See MTG, Unit 3, notes on Nos. 4–5.)

“compared with” or “than.”<sup>2</sup> Notice that the **bǐ** phrase precedes the adjectival verb or another predicate in a sentence.

Sāndiǎn	bǐ	liǎngdiǎn	fāngbian yìdiǎnr.
三點	比	兩點	方便一點兒。
3 o'clock	than compared with	2 o'clock	more convenient.

“Three is more convenient than two.”

Tā	bǐ	wǒ	yǒu	gōngfu.
他	比	我	有	功夫。
he	than compared with	I	have	free time

“He has more free time than I do.”

The two elements being compared may be nouns, pronouns, verb phrases, or even full sentences. Actually, all elements joined by **bǐ** act as nouns, as seen in the English translations of the examples below.

Zuò fēijī	bǐ	zuò huǒchē	kuài.
坐飛機	比	坐火車	快。
ride plane	than compared with	ride train	fast.

“Going by plane is faster than going by train.”

Nǐ lái	bǐ	wǒ qù	fāngbian.
你來	比	我去	方便。
you come	than compared with	I go	convenient.

“It’s more convenient for you to come than for me to go.”

## Notes on №6

6. B: Yīnwei wǒ yihuǐr chūqu, yěxǔ liǎngdiǎn huíbulái.

因為我一會兒出去，也許兩點回不來。

Since I’m going out in a little while, I might not be able to get back by two.

**Yihuǐr**, “a little while”: When **r** is added to a syllable ending in **i**, the pronunciation changes to /er/. **Yihuǐr** is actually pronounced **yihuěr**.

Sentence placement of time phrases: **Wǒ yihuǐr chūqu** is translated as “I’m going out **IN** a little while.” Contrast this with **wǒ chūqu yihuǐr**, “I’m going out **FOR** a little while.”

Let’s review the placement of different kinds of time expressions in a Chinese sentence.

If you want to say when something happens (“yesterday”) or in how long something happens (“in two years”), you are using time phrases which in Chinese are considered to be **POINTS IN TIME**.

Not only is a time phrase such as “two o’clock” a point in time, but a phrase such as “five days” can also be a point in time if the focus is on the end of this period of time.

<sup>2</sup>To say “A is not as ... as B,” you use a different construction, which you will learn in MTG, Unit 6, notes on No. 2.

In English, this focus is expressed by “in five days,” “by the end of five days,” or “at the end of five days.”

In Chinese, you do not need to use words such as “in,” “at,” or “by” because the position of the time phrase in the sentence indicates the meaning.

Time phrases which are considered points in time are placed BEFORE THE VERB.

- WHEN (a point in time)

Wǒ zuótiān kànjian ta le.
我昨天看見他了。
I saw him <u>yesterday</u> .
Wǒ cóngqián láiguò zhèlǐ.
我從前來過這裏。
I have been here <u>before</u> .
Wǒ liǎngdiǎn zhōng huí lái.
我兩點鐘回來。
I'll be back <u>at two o'clock</u> .
Wǒ yīdiǎn zhōng huí bù lái.
我一點鐘回不來。
I can't make it back <u>by one o'clock</u> .

- AT THE END OF/BY THE END OF (a period of time which is treated as a point in time because the focus is on the end point)

Wǒ sāntiān jiù zuò wán le.
我三天就做完了。
I finished doing it <u>in (by the end of) three days</u> .
Wǒ wǔfēn zhōng jiù zǒu.
我五分鐘就走。
I'm leaving <u>in (at the end of) five minutes</u> .
Nǐ jǐtiān huí lái?
你幾天回來？
<u>In (at the end of) how many days</u> will you come back?
ǐ duōjiǔ kěyǐ xiě wán?
你多久可以寫完？
<u>How long</u> will it be before you can finish writing it? (by the end of how long)



On the other hand, phrases which express CONTINUATION OF TIME have a different place in sentences. To express an amount of time which passes, put the time expression AFTER THE VERB.

- DURATION (the length of time something continues)

Wǒ xiǎng gēn tā tán yíhuǐr.
我想跟他談一會兒。
I would like to talk with him <u>for awhile</u> .
Tā zài Xiānggǎng zhùle yíge xīngqī.
他在香港住了一個星期。
She stayed in Hong Kong <u>for one week</u> .

- TIME SINCE (the length of time which has passed since something happened)

Tā sǐle sānnián le.
他死了三年了。
He died <u>three years ago</u> .
Wǒ zuòwánle yíge zhòngtóu le.
我做了一個鐘頭了。
It has been an <u>hour since</u> I finished.

Because *yíhuǐr* follows the verb in *wǒ chūqu yíhuǐr*, it indicates the length of time which will pass after I go out (*chūqu*). *Yíhuǐr* precedes the verb in *wǒ yíhuǐr chūqu*, indicating when I will go out (“in a little while”).

*Yěxǔ* literally means “perhaps.” The word is often used where “may” or “might” would be appropriate in English.

*Yěxǔ liǎngdiān huíbulái*, “I might not (be able to) get back by two”: Notice that this expression *liǎngdiān*, in time-when position, before the verb, means “by” a certain time. Other time phrases in this position may also mean “by” a certain time.

*Huíbulái* is another form of *huílái*, “to come back.” Compound verbs of result may be split by the negative *bu* or the syllable *de*. *Huílái* may become either *huídelái*, “can come back,” or *huíbulái*, “can’t come back.” These two forms are called the potential forms of the verb; that is, the meaning “can/ be able to” or “cannot/unable to” becomes part of the meaning of the compound. The following are examples of compound verbs of result and their potential forms.

huílai	回來	to come back
huídelái	回得來	able to come back
huíbulái	回不來	not able to come back
kànjian	看見	to see
kàndejiàn	看得見	able to see
kànbujiàn	看不見	not able to see
láidejí	來得及	able to make it on time

láibují <sup>a</sup>	來不及	not able to make it on time
zuòwán	做完	to finish doing
zuòdewán	做得完	able to finished doing, able to be completed
zuòbuwán	做不完	not able to finish doing, not able to be completed

<sup>a</sup>The verb *láideji/láibují* does not occur without the inserted *-de-* or *-bu-*.

Compound verbs of direction may also occur in the potential form:

nábushàngláí	拿不上來	can't carry up [to where you are] (i.e., because something is too heavy or bulky)
kāideshàngqu	開得上去	can drive up [away from you] (i.e., it is not too steep)
kāidechūláí	開得出來	can drive out (i.e., the parking place is not too tight)
nábuxiàláí	拿不下來	can't get [it] down (i.e., because it is too high, bolted on, etc.)
zǒudexiàqu	走得下去	can walk down (i.e., because it is not too far or too steep)

Notice that the last syllables of these compound verbs (except for toneless *qu*) have full tones when they occur with *-de-* and *-bu-*.

### Notes on №7

7. B: *Nàme, wǒ sāndiǎn zhōng zài lóuxiàde huikèshì děng nín.*

那麼，我三點鐘在樓下的會客室等您。

Well then, I'll wait for you in the reception room downstairs at three o'clock.

A: *Hǎo, sāndiǎn jiàn.*

好，三點見。

Fine. I'll see you at three.

Word order: The first sentence of exchange 7 illustrates the rule TIME—PLACE—ACTION.

*Huikèshì* is also pronounced *huikèshǐ*.

### Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

8. *huídelái*

回得來

to be able to get back in time

9. *kòng(r)*

空兒

free time, spare time

10. *lóushàng*

樓上

upstairs

11. **shāngliang**  
商量  
to discuss, to talk over
12. **yǒu kòng(r)**  
有空兒  
to have free time

Here are some sentences illustrating the use of these vocabulary items:

Nǐ sāndiǎn zhōng huídelái huíbulái?
你三點鐘回得來回不來。
Can you make it back by three o'clock?
Lóushàng hái yǒu rén?
樓上還有人。
Are there still people upstairs?
Wǒ xiǎng hé nǐ shāngliang yíjiàn shì.
我想和你商量。
I would like to talk over a matter with you.
Nǐ jīntiān xiàwǔ yǒu kòngr ma?
你今天下午有空兒。
Do you have time this afternoon?

## Drills

### Substitution Drill

1. Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn nín dāngmiàn tán tán.

我有点事想跟您当面谈谈。

I have something I would like to talk with you about in person.

Cue

Zhāng Kēzhǎng

张科长

Section Chief Zhāng

Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Zhāng Kēzhǎng dāngmiàn tán tán.

我有点事想跟张科长当面谈谈。

I have something I would like to talk with Section Chief Zhāng about in person.

2. Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Zhāng Kēzhǎng dāngmiàn tán tán.

我有点事想跟张科长当面谈谈。

I have something I would like to talk with section chief Zhāng about in person.

Cue

tā

他/她

he/she

Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn tā dāngmiàn tán tán.

我有点事想跟他/她当面谈谈。

I have something I would like to talk with him/her about in person.

3. Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn tā dāngmiàn tán tán.

我有点事想跟他当面谈谈。

I have something I would like to talk with him/her about in person.

Cue

Wèi Wǔguān

魏武官

Officer Wei

Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Wèi Wǔguān tán tán.

我有点事想跟魏武官谈谈。

I have something I would like to talk with Officer Wei about in person.

4. Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Wèi Wǔguān dāngmiàn tán tán.

我有点事想跟魏武官当面谈谈。

I have something I would like to talk with Officer Wei about in person.

Cue Wáng Shàoxiào  
王少校  
Major Wáng

Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Wáng Shàoxiào dāngmiàn tán tán.

我有点事想跟王少校当面谈谈。

I have something I would like to talk with Major Wáng about in person.

5. Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Wáng Shàoxiào dāngmiàn tán tán.

我有点事想跟王少校当面谈谈。

I have something I would like to talk with Major Wáng about in person.

Cue Lín Xiānsheng  
林先生  
Mr. Lín

Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Lín Xiānsheng dāngmiàn tán tán.

我有点事想跟林先生当面谈谈。

I have something I would like to talk with Mr. Lín about in person.

6. Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Lín Xiānsheng dāngmiàn tán tán.

我有点事想跟林先生当面谈谈。

I have something I would like to talk with Mr. Lín about in person.

Cue Liú Kēzhǎng  
刘科长  
section chief Liú

Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Liú Kēzhǎng dāngmiàn tán tán.

我有点事想跟刘科长当面谈谈。

I have something I would like to talk with section chief Liú about in person.

7. Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Liú Kēzhǎng dāngmiàn tán tán.

我有点事想跟刘科长当面谈谈。

I have something I would like to talk with section chief **Lǐú** about in person.

Cue

**Hú tàitài**

胡太太

Mrs. **Hú**

**Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Hú tàitài dāngmiàn tán tán.**

我有点事想跟胡太太当面谈谈。

I have something I would like to talk with Mrs. **Hú** about in person.

## Transformation Drill

1. Nín míngtiān lái ma?

您明天来了吗？

Are you coming tomorrow?

Bù zhīdào nín míngtiān lái bu lái.

不知道您明天来不来。

I don't know whether you are coming tomorrow or not.

2. Tā zǒu le ma?

他/她走了吗？

Has he/she gone?

Bù zhīdào tā zǒu le meiyǒu.

不知道他/她走了没有。

I don't know whether he/she has gone or not.

2. Nín yǒu gōngfu ma?

您有功夫吗？

Do you have free time?

Bù zhīdào nín yǒu gōngfu meiyǒu.

不知道您有功夫没有。

I don't know whether you have free time or not.

3. Tā zuótiān qù le ma?

他/她昨天去了吗？

Did he/she go yesterday?

Bù zhīdào tā zuótiān qù le meiyǒu,

不知道他/她昨天去了没有。

I don't know whether he/she went yesterday.

4. Tā yǒu qián ma?

他/她有钱吗？

Does he/she have money?

Bù zhīdào tā yǒu qián meiyǒu.

不知道他/她有钱没有。

I don't know whether he/she have money or not.

5. Tā hái yào ma?

他/她还要吗？

Does he/she still want it?

Bù zhīdào tā hái yào bu yào.

不知道他/她还要不要。

I don't know whether he/she still wants it.

6. Tā mǎi le ma?

他/她买了吗？

Did he/she buy?

Bù zhīdào tā mǎi le meiyǒu.

不知道他/她买了没有。

I don't know whether he/she did buy or not.



## Transformation Drill

### Drill

1. Shénme shíhou duì nín héshì?  
什么时候对您合适?  
What time would suit you?

Cue sāndiǎn  
三点  
3 o'clock

Sāndiǎn duì nín héshì ma?  
三点对您合适吗?  
Would three o'clock suit you?

2. Xīngqījǐ duì nín héshì?  
星期几对您合适?  
What day of week would suit you?

Cue Xīngqīèr  
星期二  
Wednesday

Xīngqīèr duì nín héshì ma?  
星期二对您合适吗?  
Would Tuesday suit you?

3. Zài jǐlōu duì nín héshì?  
在几楼对您合适?  
Which floor would suit you?

Cue wǔlóu  
五楼  
fifth floor

Zài wǔlóu duì nín héshì ma?  
在五楼对您合适吗?  
Would the fifth floor suit you?

4. Nèitiān duì nín héshì?  
对您合适?  
What day would suit you?

Cue míngtiān  
明天  
tomorrow

Míngtiān duì nín héshì ma?  
明天对您合适吗?  
Would tomorrow suit you?

5. Shénme shíhou duì nín héshì?  
什么时候对您合适?  
What time would suit you?

Cue zǎoshang  
早上  
morning

Zǎoshang duì nín héshì ma?  
早上对您合适吗?  
Would in the morning suit you

6. Shénme shíhou duì nín héshì?  
什么时候对您合适?  
What time would suit you?

Cue wǎnshang  
晚上  
evening

Wǎnshang duì nín héshì ma?  
晚上对您合适吗?  
Would in the evening suit you?

7. Jǐdiǎn duì nín héshì?  
几点对您合适?  
What hour would suit you?

Cue

shídiǎn

十点

10 o'clock

Shídiǎn duì nín héshì ma?

十点对您合适吗？

Would 10 o'clock suit you?

## Response Drill

1. Shénme shíhou duì nín héshì?

什么时候对您合适？

What time would suit you?

Cue

jīntiān

今天

today

Jīntiān, míngtiān dōu kényi.

今天，明天都可以。

Either today or tomorrow would be fine.

2. Jǐdiǎn duì nín héshì?

几点对您合适？

What hour would suit you?

Cue

sāndiǎn

三点

3 o'clock

Sāndiǎn, sìdiǎn dōu kényi.

三点，四点都可以。

Either 3 or 4 o'clock would be fine.

3. Xīngqījǐ duì nín héshì?

星期几对您合适？

What day of the week would suit you?

Cue

Xīngqīyī

星期一

Monday

Xīngqīyī, Xīngqīèr dōu kényi.

星期一，星期二都可以。

Either Monday or Tuesday would be fine.

4. Jǐhào duì nín héshì?

几号对您合适？

What date would suit you?

Cue

sihào

四号

the fourth

Sihào, wùhào dōu kényi.

四号，五号都可以。

Either the fourth or the fifth would be fine.

5. Shénme shíhou duì nín héshì?

什么时候对您合适？

What time would suit you?

Cue

shàngwǔ

上午

in the morning

Shàngwǔ, xiàwǔ dōu kényi.

上午，下午都可以。

Either in the morning or in the afternoon would be fine.

6. Něitiān duì nín héshì?

哪天对您合适？

What day would suit you?

Cue

míngtiān

明天

tomorrow

Míngtiān, hòutiān dōu kényi.

明天，后天都可以。

Either tomorrow or the day after tomorrow would be fine.

7. Xīngqījǐ duì nín héshì?

星期几对您合适？

What day of the week would suit you?

Cue

Xīngqīliù

星期六  
on Saturday

Xīngqīliù, Xīngqītiān dōu kěyǐ.

星期六星期天都可以。

Either on Saturday or on Sunday would be fine.

## Transformation Drill

1. Shénme dìfang duì nín fāngbian?

什么地方对您方便？

What place would be convenient for you?

Cue

lóushàng

楼上

upstairs

lóushàng duì nín fāngbian, háishi lóuxià duì nín fāngbian?

楼上对您方便，还是楼下对您方便？

Would upstairs or downstairs be more convenient for you?

2. Shénme shíhou duì nín fāngbian?

什么时候对您方便？

What time would be convenient for you?

Cue

sāndiǎn

三点

3 o'clock

Sāndiǎn duì nín fāngbian, háishi sìdiǎn duì nín fāngbian?

三点候对您方便，还是四点候对您方便？

Would 3 o'clock or 4 o'clock be more convenient for you?

3. Jǐhào duì nín fāngbian?

几号

What date would be convenient for you?

Cue

liùhào

六号

the sixth

Liùhào duì nín fāngbian, háishi qīhào duì nín fāngbian?

六号六号对您方便，还是七号对您方便？

Would the sixth or the seventh be more convenient for you?

4. Něitiān duì nín fāngbian?

对您方便？

Which day would be convenient for you?

Cue

míngtiān

明天

tomorrow

Míngtiān duì nín fāngbian, háishi hòutiān duì nín fāngbian?

明天对您方便，还是后天对您方便？

Would tomorrow or the day after tomorrow be more convenient for you?

5. Shénme shíhou duì nín fāngbian?

对您方便？

What time would be convenient for you?

Cue

shàngwǔ

上午

morning

Shàngwǔ duì nín fāngbian, háishi xiàwǔ duì nín fāngbian?

上午对您方便，还是下午对您方便？

Would be in the morning or in the afternoon more convenient for you?

6. Xīngqījǐ duì nín fāngbian?

对您方便？

What day of week would be convenient for you?

Cue

Xīngqīsān

星期三

Wednesday

Xīngqīsān duì nín fāngbian, háishi Xīngqīsì duì nín fāngbian?

星期三对您方便，还是星期四对您方便？

Would Wednesday or Thursday be more convenient for you?

7. Jīdiǎn duì nín fāngbian?

对您方便？

What day would be convenient for you?

Cue

jǐudiǎn



九点

6 o'clock

Jiǔdiǎn duì nín fāngbian, háishi shídiǎn duì nín fāngbian?

九点对您方便，还是十点对您方便？

Would be 6 o'clock or 7 o'clock more convenient for you?

## Expansion Drill

1. Sāndiǎn fāngbian yídiǎn.

三点方便一点。

Three o'clock is a little more convenient.

Cue

sìdiǎn

四点

4 o'clock

Sāndiǎn bǐ sìdiǎn fāngbian yídiǎn.

三点比四点方便一点。

Three o'clock is a little more convenient than four o'clock.

2. Sānhào fāngbian yídiǎn.

三号方便一点。

He/she third is a little more convenient.

Cue

wǔhào

五号

number 5

Sānhào bǐ wǔhào fāngbian yídiǎn.

三号比五号方便一点。

He/she third is a little more convenient than he/she fifth.

3. Lóushàng fāngbian yídiǎn.

楼上方便一点。

Upstairs is a little more convenient.

Cue

lóuxià

楼下

downstairs

Lóushàng bǐ lóuxià fāngbian yídiǎn.

楼上比楼下方便一点。

Upstairs is a little more convenient than downstairs.

4. Tāde qián duō yídiǎn.

他/她的钱多一点。

He/she has a little more money.

Cue

wǒde

我的

mine/my

Tāde qián bǐ wǒde duō yídiǎn.

他/她的钱比我的多一点。

He/she has a little more money than me.

5.

Tā qù hǎo yídiǎn.

他/她去好一点。

He/she went a bit better.

Cue

wǒ

我

I

Tā qù bǐ wǒ qù hǎo yídiǎn.

他/她去比我去好一点。

He/she went a bit better than me.

6.

Tā dà yídiǎn.

他/她大一点。

He/she is a bit older.

Cue

wǒ

我

I

Tā bǐ wǒ dà yídiǎn.

他/她比我大一点。

He/she is a bit older than me.

7.

Zhèige dà yídiǎn.

这个大一点。

This one is a bit bigger.

Cue

nèige

那个

that

Zhèige bǐ nèige dà yídiǎn.

这个比那个大一点。

This one is a bit bigger than that one.

## Expansion Drill

1. Tā shuōde kuài yidiǎn.  
他/她说得快一点。  
He/she speaks a little fast.

Tā shuōde bǐ wǒ kuài yidiǎn  
他/她说得比我快一点。  
He/she speaks a little faster than I do.

2. Tā láide zǎo yidiǎn.  
他/她来得早一点。  
He/she came a bit earlier.

Tā láide bǐ wǒ zǎo yidiǎn.  
他/她来得比我早一点。  
He/she came a bit earlier than me.

3. Tā zǒude wǎn yidiǎn.  
他/她走得晚一点。  
He/she leaves a little later.

Tā zǒude bǐ wǒ wǎn yidiǎn.  
他/她走得比我晚一点。  
He/she leaves a little later than me.

4. Tā zuòde hǎo yidiǎn.  
他/她做得好一点。  
He/she does a little better.

Tā zuòde bǐ wǒ hǎo yidiǎn.  
他/她做得比我好一点。  
He/she does a little better than me.

5. Tā mǎide shǎo yidiǎn.  
他/她买得少一点。  
He/she buys a little less.

Tā mǎide bǐ wǒ shǎo yidiǎn.

他/她卖得比我少一点。

He/she buys a little less than me.

6. Tā mǎide duō yídiǎn.

他/她卖得多一点。

He/she sells a little more.

Tā mǎide bǐ wǒ duō yídiǎn.

他/她卖得比我多一点。

He/she sells a little more than me.

7. Tā xuéde màn yídiǎn.

他/她学得慢一点。

He/she studies a little slower.

Tā xuéde bǐ wǒ màn yídiǎn.

他/她学得比我慢一点。

He/she studies a little slower than me.

## Response Drill

1. Nǐ shénme shíhou chūqu?

你什么时候出去？

What time are you going out?

Wǒ yīhuǐr jiù chūqu.

我有一会儿就出去。

I'm going out in Just a little while.

2. Nǐ chūqu duó jiǔ?

你出去多久。

For how long are you going out?

Wǒ jiù chūqu yīhuǐr.

我就出去一会儿。

I'm Just going out for a little while

3. Nǐ shénme shíhou chūlai?

你什么时候出来？

What time are you coming out?

Wǒ yīhuǐr jiù chūlai.

我一会儿就出来。

I'll be out in a moment.

4. Nǐ qù duó jiǔ?

你去多久？

How long are you going?

Wǒ jiù qù yīhuǐr.

我就去一会儿。

I'll just go for a while.

5. Tā shénme shíhou lái?

他/她什么时候来？

What time does he/she come?

Tā yīhuǐr jiù lái.

他/她一会儿就去。

He/she will be there later

6. Tā kàn duó jiǔ?

他/她看多久？

How long does he/she look at it?

Tā jiù kàn yīhuǐr.

他/她就看一会儿。

He/she just watches for a while.

7. Nǐ shénme shíhou zǒu?

你什么时候走？

What time are you leaving?

Wǒ yīhuǐr jiù zǒu.

我一会儿就走。

I'll leave in a while.



## Response Drill

1. Zhāng Xiānsheng míngtiān huídelái huíbulái?

张先生明天回得来回不来？

Will Mr. Zhāng be able to come back tomorrow?

Zhāng Xiānsheng hòutiān cái huílai.

张先生后天才回来。

Mr. Zhāng won't be able to come back until day after tomorrow.

2. Wáng Nǚshì Xīngqīsi huídelái huíbulái?

王女士星期四回得来回不来？

Will Wáng's wife be able to come back on Thursday?

Wáng Nǚshì Xīngqīwǔ cái huílai.

才回来。

Wáng's wife won't be able to come back before Friday.

3. Lǐ Tóngzhì shíyīdiǎn huídelái huíbulái?

李同志十一点回得来回不来？

Will comrade Lǐ be able to come back at 11 o'clock?

Lǐ Tóngzhì shíèrdiǎn cái huílai.

李同志十二点才回来。

Comrade Lǐ won't be able to come back before 12 o'clock.

4. Lín Kēzhǎng èrshíhào huídelái huíbulái?

林科长二十号回得来回不来？

Will Section Chief Lín be able to come back the 20th?

Lín Kēzhǎng èrshíyīhào cái huílai.

林科长二十一号才回来。

Section Chief Lín will not return until the 21st.

5. Wèi Shàoxiào zhègè yuè huídelái huíbulái?

魏少校这个月回得来回不来？

Will Major Wèi be able to come back this month?

Wèi Shàoxiào xiàgè yuè cái huílai.

魏少校下个月才回来。

Major Wei won't be back until next month.

6. Yáng Xiānsheng zǎoshang huídelái huíbulái?

杨先生早上回得来回不来？

Will Mr. Yáng be able to come back this morning?

Yáng Xiānsheng wǎnshang cái huílai.

杨先生晚上才回来。

Mr. Yáng will not be able to come back before this evening.

7. Zhào Tóngzhì jīntiān huídelái huíbulái?

赵同志今天回得来回不来？

Will Comrade Zhào be able to come back today?

Zhào Tóngzhì míngtiān cái huílai.

赵同志明天才回来。

Comrade Zhào will not be able to come back until tomorrow.

## Expansion Drill

1. Nàme, wǒ zài zhèr dēng nín.

那么，我在这儿等您。

In that case, I'll wait for you here.

Cue in a moment

Nàme, wǒ yīhuǐr zài zhèr dēng nín.

那么，我一会儿在这儿等您。

In that case, in a moment I'll wait for you here.

2. Nàme, wǒ zài lóuxià dēng ta.

那么，我在楼下等他/她。

In that case, I'll wait for him/her downstairs.

Cue for a moment

Nàme, wǒ zài lóuxià dēng ta yīhuǐr.

那么，我在楼下等他/她一会儿。

In that case, in a moment I'll wait for him/her downstairs.

3. Nàme, wǒ zài lóushàng dēng ta.

那么，我在楼上等他/她。

In that case, I'll wait for him/her upstairs.

Cue at one o'clock

Nàme, wǒ yīdiǎn zhōng zài lóushàng dēng ta.

那么，我在楼上等他/她。

In that case, in a moment I'll wait for him/her upstairs.

4. Nàme, wǒ zài tā nàr dēng nín.

那么，我在他/她那儿等您。

In that case, I'll wait for him/her at his place.

Cue for ten minutes

Nàme, wǒ zài tā nàr dēng nín shífēn zhōng.

那么，我在他/她那儿等您十分钟。

In that case, in a moment I'll wait for him/her at his place.

5. *Nàme, wǒ zài tā jiā děng nín.*

那么，我在他/她家等您。

In that case, I'll wait for you at his home.

Cue in a moment

*Nàme, wǒ yīhuǐr zài tā jiā děng nín.*

那么，我一会儿在他/她家等您。

In that case, in a moment I'll wait for you at his home.

6. *Nàme, wǒ zài xiǎomàibù děng nín.*

那么，我在小卖部等您。

In that case, I'll wait for you in the variety shop.

Cue for five minutes

*Nàme, wǒ zài xiǎomàibù děng nín wǔfēn zhōng.*

那么，我在小卖部等您五分钟。

In that case, in a moment I'll wait for you in the variety shop.

7. *Nàme, wǒ zài zhèr děng ta.*

那么，我在这儿等他/她。

In that case, I'll wait for him/her here.

Cue for a moment

*Nàme, wǒ zài zhèr děng ta yīhuǐr.*

那么，我在这儿等他/她一会儿。

In that case, in a moment I'll wait for him/her here.

## Unit 2

### References

#### Reference List

- C: **Wèi, Měidàsī.**  
喂，美大司。  
Hello. Department of American and Oceanic Affairs.

A: **Wǒ shì Jiānádà Dàshìguǎnde Qiáozhì Dáfēi. Wǒ yǒu yíjiàn shì xiǎng gēn Wáng Kēzhǎng jiǎngyíjiāng.**  
我是加拿大大使館的喬治達菲。我有一件事想跟王科長講一講。  
I am George Duffy of the Canadian Embassy. I have something I would like to discuss with Section Chief **Wáng**.
- C: **Òu, tā xiànzài zài kāi huì.**  
哦，她現在開會。  
Oh, she is at a meeting now.

C: **Děng tā kāiwán huì wǒ gàosong tā gěi nǐ huí diànhuà.**  
等她外晚會我告誦她給你回電話。  
When she is finished with the meeting, I will tell her to return your call.
- A: **Hǎo, xièxie nǐ.**  
好，謝謝你，  
Fine. Thank you.

C: **Bú xiè.**  
不謝。  
Don't mention it.
- B: **Duìbuqǐ, jīntiān zǎoshang nǐ dǎ diànhuà lái de shíhou wǒ zài kāi huì, méi shíjiān gēn nǐ shuō huà.**  
對不起，今天早上你打電話來的時候我在開會，沒時間跟你說話。  
I'm sorry. When you called here this morning, I was in a meeting and didn't have time to speak with you.

A: **Méi guānxi. Wǒ zhīdào nǐ hěn máng.**  
沒關係。我知道你很忙。  
It doesn't matter. I know you are very busy.
- A: **Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà de mùdì shì xiǎng gēn nǐ dāngmiàn tántán.**  
我給你打電話目的是想跟你當面談談。

- The reason I called you is that I would like to talk with you in person.
- B: Hǎo a. Shénme shíhou a?  
好啊。什麼時候啊？  
All right. When?
6. A: Míngtiān duì nǐ héshì ma?  
明天對你合適嗎？  
Would tomorrow be all right for you?
- B: Míngtiān xiàwǔ shénme shíhou dōu kěyǐ.  
明天下午什麼時候都可以，  
Any time tomorrow afternoon would be fine.
7. A: Zài nǎr jiàn ne?  
在哪兒見呢？  
Where shall we meet?
- B: Liǎngdiǎn zhōng qǐng nǐ dào wǒ zhèr lái, xíng bu xíng?  
兩點鐘請你到我這兒，行不行？  
Please come over here at two o'clock. All right?
- A: Hǎo. Míngtiān liǎngdiǎn zhōng jiàn.  
好。明天兩點鐘見。  
Okay. See you tomorrow at two o'clock.

Additional Required Vocabulary

(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

8. guānxi  
關係  
relation, relationship, connection
9. jiǎng huà  
講話  
to speak, to talk; a speech
10. lǐngshìguǎn  
領事館  
consulate
11. shìqing (yíjiàn)  
事情 (一件)  
matter, business, affair
12. sīzhǎng  
司長  
department chief
13. yǒu guānxi  
有關係  
to relate to, to have a bearing on, to matter

## Vocabulary

bú xiè	不謝	don't mention it
dàshiguǎn	大使館	embassy
diànhuà	電話	telephone, phone call
guānxi	關係	relation, relationship, connection
-jiàn	件	(counter for matters, business, affairs)
jiǎng	講	to discuss (something), to talk about (something)
jiǎng huà	講話	to speak, to talk; a speech
kāi huì	開會	to attend a meeting
kāiwán huì	開完會	to finish a meeting
língshiguǎn	領事館	consulate
Měidàsī	美大司	Department of American and Oceanic Affairs
méi guānxi	沒關係	it doesn't matter
mùdì	目的	reason, objective, purpose
shì (yíjiàn)	事 (意見)	matter, business, affair
shìqing (yíjiàn)	事情 (意見)	matter, business, affair
shuō huà	說話	to speak
sīzhǎng	司長	department chief
yǒu guānxi	有關係	to relate, to have a bearing on, to matter
zài	在	in the midst of (marker of ongoing action)
(introduced on C-2 and P-2 tapes)		
chī	吃	to eat
dàxuéshēng	大學生	college student
diànhuà hàomǎ	電話號碼	telephone number
dù jià	度假	to spend one's vacation
hòulái	後來	later
láodòng	勞動	to do manual labor
Qíngbàosī	情報司	Intelligence Bureau (part of the Ministry of Foreign Affairs, PRC)
shēnghuó	生活	life
tóngyì	同意	to agree

## Reference Notes

## Notes on №1

1. C: Wèi, Měidàsī.  
喂，美大司。  
Hello. Department of American and Oceanic Affairs.
- A: Wǒ shì Jiānádà Dàshìguǎnde Qiáozhì Dáfei. Wǒ yǒu yíjiàn shì xiǎng gēn Wáng Kēzhǎng jiǎngyíjiàng.  
我是加拿大大使館的喬治達菲。我有一件事想跟王科長講一講。  
I am George Duffy of the Canadian Embassy. I have something I would like to discuss with Section Chief Wáng.

**Měidàsī:** In Chinese, abbreviations are made up of one syllable from each word in a term. In **Měidàsī**, **měi** stands for **Měizhōu** (美洲), “American continent.” **Dà** stands for **Dà yáng zhōu** (大洋洲), “Oceania” (the islands of the South Central Pacific, including Australia and New Zealand). The ending **sī** means “department.” It is used only within organizations on the national level.

**Dàshìguǎn:** The word **guǎn** means “building” or “establishment,” as in **fànguǎn**, an establishment where food is sold. The examples below illustrate the use of **guǎn**.

dàshǐ	大使	ambassador
dàshìguǎn	大使館	embassy
lǐngshì	領事	consul
lǐngshìguǎn	領事館	consulate
zhǎnlǎn	展覽	exhibit
zhǎnlǎnguǎn	展覽館	exhibition hall

Notice that the **shǐ** in **dàshǐguǎn** and the **shì** in **lǐngshìguǎn** lose their tones.

**Yíjiàn shì:** The counter **-jiàn** in this expression is also the counter for luggage. **Yíjiàn shì** literally means “a piece of business.”

**Jiǎng** and **jiǎng huà:** The English word “speak,” meaning the activity in general, must be translated into Chinese with a verb and its GENERAL OBJECT: **jiǎng huà**. In other uses, the verb “to speak,” **jiǎng**, may be followed by a specific object or a phrase showing duration, or it may be changed into a multisyllabic verb, such as **jiǎngyíjiàng**. Other verbs which are used the same way are **shuō huà**, **xiě zì**, and **niàn shū**.

Tā zài jiǎng Zhōngguóde shìqing.
他在講中國的事情。
He is talking about Chinese affairs.
Tā yǐjīng jiǎngle bù shǎo.
他已經講了不少。



He has already said a lot.
Tāde jiǎng huà hěn yǒu yìsi.
他的講話很有意思。
His talk was very interesting.

Jiǎng is not used to say that someone said something. Instead, **shuō** is used.

Tā shuō tā bù néng lái.
他說他不能來。
He said he could not come.

## Notes on №2

2. C: Òu, tā xiànzài zài kāi huì.  
 哦，她現在開會。  
 Oh, she is at a meeting now.
- C: Děng tā kāiwán huì wǒ gào sòng tā gěi nǐ huí diànhuà.  
 等她外晚會我告訴她給你回電話。  
 When she is finished with the meeting, I will tell her to return your call.

**Zài** is the aspect marker for ongoing actions. It indicates that the action is in progress. The corresponding verb in the English translation usually ends in -ing. **Zài** is used only with verbs which express actual dynamic action. State and process verbs may not be used with **zài**. Many action verbs may be used with **zài**, but some do not have enough “action” to be used (e.g., “sitting”).

Tā lái de shíhòu, nǐ zài niàn shū.
他來的時候，你在念書。
When he came, you were studying,
Tāmen zài kàn diànyǐng.
他們在看電影。
They are watching a movie.
Tāmen zài hē kāfēi.
他們在喝咖啡。
They are drinking coffee.
Tāmen zài shàng kè.
他們在上課。
They are having class.

**Zài** is placed in front of the verb, unlike other aspect markers, such as **le**, **guo**, and **de**.

To make ongoing-action sentences negative, use **bù**. To form a question with **zài**, use **shì bu shì zài**, **zài...ma**, or **zài bu zài**.

Xuésheng zài shàng kè ma?
學生在上課嗎？
Are the students having class?
Tāmen bú zài shàng kè, yǐjīng zǒu le.
他們不在上課，已經走了。
They are not having class. They have already left.
Tā lái de shíhou, nǐ shì bu shì zài niàn shū?
他來的時候，你是不是在念書？
Weren't you studying when he came over?
Bù, bú zài niàn shū, yǐjīng wánr qu le.
不，不在念書，已經玩兒去了。
No, I wasn't studying. I had already gone out to play.
Tā zài bu zài kàn diànshì?
他在不在看電視？
Is he watching television?

The aspect marker *zài* and the aspect marker *ne* often occur in the same sentence, indicating absence of change.

Tā zài kàn bào ne.
她在看報呢。
She is reading the paper.

Sometimes *ne* is used without *zài*.

Tā kàn bào ne.
她看報呢。
She is reading the paper.

*Děng*, literally “to wait”: In the second sentence of No. 2, the verb *děng* is used at the beginning of a phrase to mean “when.” *Děng* may be used with *de shíhou*, “when,” in the same phrase. Often, the second part of a sentence beginning with *děng* will contain an adverb meaning “then”—*jiù*, *zài*, or *cái*.

Děng nǐ kànwán bàozhǐ, wǒmen chūqu mǎi cài.
等你看完報紙，我們出去買菜。
When you have finished the paper, we will go out to buy groceries.
Xué Yīngwén nán bu nán?
學英文難不難？
Is it hard to learn English?

Děng nǐ xuéde shíhou jiù zhīdao le.
等你學的時候就知道了。
When you study it, then you'll know.
Nǐ bú shì yǒu yíjiàn shì yào gàosong wǒ ma?
你不是有一件事要告訴我嗎？
Don't you have something you want to tell me?
Děng chīwán fàn zài shuō.
等吃完飯再說。
Wait until we finish eating; then we'll talk about it.

The translation of **děng** as “wait until,” in the last example above, might suggest that the word is used only in future contexts. But **děng** is also used in past contexts:

Zuótiān tā méiyǒu hé nǐ yìqǐ qù kàn diànyǐng ma?
昨天他沒有和你一起去看電影嗎？
Didn't he go out with you to a movie last night?
Méiyǒu. Děng tā huílaide shíhou dōu shíyīdiǎn le.
沒有。等他回來的時候都十一點了。
No. It was already eleven o'clock when he got home.
Zuótiān tā bādiǎn zhōng cái huí jiā. Děng tā huí jiā wǒmen cái zuò fàn, nǐ xiǎng jǐdiǎn cái chī fàn!
昨天他八點鐘才回家。等他回家我們才做飯，你想幾點才吃飯！
Yesterday he didn't get home until eight o'clock. We didn't fix dinner until he got home; so imagine what time it was when we ate!

**Kāi huì**, “to meet,” “to hold a meeting,” is an example of a verb and its general object.

**Kāiwán**, “finish holding [the meeting]”: **Wán** is the verb “to finish.” It is used as an ending in a compound verb of result in No. 2.<sup>3</sup>\* **Wán** expresses the idea of “over,” “up,” as in “Class is over,” “All the paper has been used up.”

But be careful: **wán** is not used as a main verb when an object follows the verb. Instead of saying “finish this,” using **wán** by itself, you would say **bǎ zhèige chīwán**, “finish eating this”; **bǎ zhèige zuòwán**, “finish doing this”; or **bǎ zhèige kànwán**, “finish reading this.”

**Wán** may sometimes be used as a main verb when there is no object, as in **Diànyǐng wán le**, “The movie is finished.” But far more often **wán** occurs as an ending which indicates result.

**Diànhuà** (literally, “electric speech”) may mean either “telephone” or “telephone call.”

**Huí diànhuà**, “to return a phone call,” “to call back”: you have learned the verb **huí**, “to return,” as in **Nǐ shenme shíhou huíqu?** “When are you going back?” In No. 2, **huí** takes a direct object, **diànhuà**. Compare **huí diànhuà** with **dǎ diànhuà**, “to make a phone call,” which is found in exchange 4.

<sup>3</sup>You have already seen **wán** in **Piào dōu màiwán le**.

**Gěi ni huí diànhuà**, “call you ’back”: you have learned the prepositional verb **gěi**, meaning “for [the benefit of].” In **gěi ni huí diànhuà**, **gěi** is translated as “to.” Because there are two meanings for **gěi**, occasionally a sentence may be ambiguous. For example, **Wǒ gěi ta jìqù liǎngbāo cháyè** means either “I sent two packages of tea to him” or “I mailed out two packages of tea for him.”

**Dui** is also translated as “to.” **Dui** introduces the target; **gěi** introduces the receiver. In other words, **dui** expresses the intended direction but does not necessarily imply that the target is reached. **Gěi** usually implies receiving, as you might expect, since it means “give” as a full verb.

You use **gěi** to indicate the receiver when you say:

<b>gěi ta dǎ diànhuà</b>
給她打電話
telephone her
<b>gěi ta xiě yìfēng xìn</b>
給她寫一封信
write her a letter
<b>gěi ta mǎi le yìge fángzi</b>
給她買了一個房子
bought her a house

But, to indicate the target, you say:

<b>duì ta hǎo</b>
給她好
be nice to her
<b>duì ta kèqì</b>
對他客氣
be polite to him
<b>duì ta shēngqì</b>
對她生氣
get angry at her

Notice that **dui** is used especially to indicate the target of feelings and attitudes, while **gěi** is used with actions such as calling, mailing, and sending.

### Notes on №3

3. A: **Hǎo, xièxie nǐ.**  
好，謝謝你，  
Fine. Thank you.
- C: **Bú xiè.**

不謝。

Don't mention it.

**Bú xiè** is an idiom meaning something like “don't thank [me].”

(Literally, “Don't thank me” would be **Bié xiè wǒ** (別謝我).)

### Notes on №4

4. B: **Duibuqǐ, jīntiān zǎoshang nǐ dǎ diànhuà laide shíhou wǒ zài kāi huì, méi shíjiān gēn nǐ shuō huà.**  
 對不起，今天早上你打電話來的時候我在開會，沒時間跟你說話。  
 I'm sorry. When you called here this morning, I was in a meeting and didn't have time to speak with you.
- A: **Méi guānxi. Wǒ zhīdào nǐ hěn máng.**  
 沒關係。我知道你很忙。  
 It doesn't matter. I know you are very busy.

**Dǎ diànhuà** means “to make a phone call.” (Literally, **dǎ** means “to hit.”)

<b>Wǒ zuótiān wǎnshang gěi Mǎ Tàitai dǎle yige diànhuà.</b>
我昨天晚上給馬太太打了一個電話。
I called Mrs. <b>Mǎ</b> last night.
<b>Wǒ dǎ liǎnge diànhuà jiù lái.</b>
我打兩個電話就來。
I'll be right there after I make a couple of phone calls.

**Shuō huà**, “to speak,” is a verb with a general object—literally, “speak words.” Verb + general object is often translated into English by a verb alone: **niàn shū**, “to study”; **kāi chē**, “to drive.”

**Méi guānxi**: Other translations for this very useful expression are “that's okay,” “don't worry about it,” “it doesn't make any difference.”

Literally, **méi guānxi** would be translated as “there isn't any connection.”

### Notes on №5

5. A: **Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuàde mùdì shì xiǎng gēn nǐ dāngmiàn tán tán.**  
 我給你打電話目的是想跟你當面談談。  
 The reason I called you is that I would like to talk with you in person.
- B: **Hǎo a. Shénme shíhou a?**  
 好啊。什麼時候啊？  
 All right. When?

**Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuàde mùdì shì...**: In English, the word “reason,” or “purpose,” begins the phrase, with the modifying clause following. In Chinese, everything modifying “the purpose” precedes **mùdì**.

Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà -de mùdì shì ....

The reason why I called you is ....

Mùdì, “purpose,” “aim,” “objective”: Although translated idiomatically as “reason” in exchange 5, mùdì does not really mean “reason”/“cause.” The English terms should be translated as yuányīn: wǒ lái wǎn de yuányīn, “the reason I came late” (我來晚的原因).

### Notes on №6

6. A: Míngtiān duì nǐ héshì ma?  
 明天對你合適嗎？  
 Would tomorrow be all right for you?
- B: Míngtiān xiàwǔ shénme shíhòu dōu kěyǐ.  
 明天下午什麼時候都可以，  
 Any time tomorrow afternoon would be fine.

Shénme shíhòu dōu kěyǐ, “anytime is okay” (more literally, “what[ever] time, all is okay”), illustrates a pattern for expressing the idea of “any” in Chinese: a question word, such as shéi, shénme, nǎr, and něitiān, followed by dōu, “all.”

Shéi dōu néng qù.
誰都能去。
Anyone can go.
Nǎr dōu kěyǐ.
哪兒都可以。
Anyplace will do.
Shénme dōu kěyǐ.
什麼都可以。
Anything will do.
Něitiān dōu hǎo.
哪天都好
Any day is good.
Zěnmé zuò dōu hǎo.
怎麼做都好。
Any way (you) do it is fine.

The ideas of “nobody,” “nowhere,” “nothing,” and “none” are expressed by adding bù or méi after dōu in the pattern above.

Shéi dōu bú yào zǒu.
誰都能不要走。

Nobody wants to leave.
Nǎr dōu bú duì.
哪兒都不對。
No place is right.
Zěnme dōu bù xíng.
怎麼都不行。
No way will do.
Shénme dōu méiyǒu.
什麼都沒有。
There is nothing.

The “any/no” expression need not be the subject of a sentence; it may also be the object. Even if the expression is the direct object, it must precede the verb.

Tā shéi dōu xǐhuan.
他誰都喜歡。
He likes anyone/everyone.
Wǒ nǎr dōu bú qù.
我哪兒都不去。
I won't go anywhere.
Nèige shāngdiàn shénme dōu mài.
那個商店什麼都賣。
That store sells everything,
Tā nǎige dōu bù xǐhuan.
他哪個都不喜歡。
He doesn't like either/any of them.

(As objects, many of these expressions must be translated as “every....”)

An “any/no” expression may also be the object of a prepositional verb.

Wǒ gēn shéi dōu méi shuō huà.
我跟誰都沒說話。
I didn't speak with anyone.

### Notes on №7

7. A: Zài nǎr jiàn ne?

在哪兒見呢？

Where shall we meet?

B: Liǎngdiǎn zhōng qǐng nǐ dào wǒ zhèr lái, xíng bu xíng?

兩點鐘請你到我這兒，行不行？

Please come over here at two o'clock. All right?

A: Hǎo. Míngtiān liǎngdiǎn zhōng jiàn.

好。明天兩點鐘見。

Okay. See you tomorrow at two o'clock.

Dào wǒ zhèr lái means, literally, “come over to the place where I am.” While plurals such as wǒmen zhèr and nǐmen nàr often refer to institutions, the singular wǒ zhèr, nǐ nàr, and tā nàr usually refer to any place where a person might be. In an office shared by two people, for instance, you could say Wǒ zhèr méiyǒu Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn; nǐ nàr yǒu méiyǒu? “I don’t have an English-Chinese dictionary over here; do you have one over there?”

Dào, like zài, is a verb which requires a place word as its object. Sentences like “Come over here to me” and “Go over there to Mr. Wáng” must be translated as Dào wǒ zhèr lái and Dào Wáng Xiānsheng nàr qù. Zhèr and nàr make wǒ and Wáng Xiānsheng parts of place-word phrases.

### Vocabulary booster

- |     |  |
|-----|--|
| 8.  | guānxi<br>關係<br>relation, relationship, connection                 |
| 9.  | jiǎng huà<br>講話<br>to speak, to talk; a speech                     |
| 10. | lǐngshìguǎn<br>領事館<br>consulate                                    |
| 11. | shìqing (yíjiàn)<br>事情 (一件)<br>matter, business, affair            |
| 12. | sīzhǎng<br>司長<br>department chief                                  |
| 13. | yǒu guānxi<br>有關係<br>to relate to, to have a bearing on, to matter |

Yǒu guānxi: To talk about the relationship of two things, use ...gēn...yǒu guānxi or ...hé...yǒu guānxi.

Lǐngshìguǎn hé dàshìguǎn yǒu shénmeyàngde guānxi?

領事館和大使館有什麼樣的關係？

What is the relationship between the consulate and the embassy?



## Vocabulary Booster

### Occupations

accountant
會計師
kuàijìshī
actor, actress
演員
yǎnyuán
architect
建築師
jiànzhùshī
athlete
運動員
yùndòngyuán
author, writer
作家
zuòjiā
barber
理髮師,
lǐfāshī, lǐfāde
blue-collar worker
工人
gōngrén
builder
營造商
yíngzàoshāng
businessman
商人
shāngrén

carpenter
木匠, 木工
mùjiang, mùgōng
chemical engineer
化學工程師
huàxué gōngchéngshī
civil engineer
土木工程師
tǔmù gōngchéngshī
civil servant
公務員
gōngwùyuán
composer
作曲家
zuòqǔjiā
cook
廚師
chúshī
customs official
海關官員
hǎiguān guānyuán
diplomat
外交官
wàijiāoguān
doctor
大夫, 醫生
dàifu, yīshēng
(newspaper) editor
編輯
biānji

electrical engineer
電機工程師
diànjī gōngchéngshī
electrician
電工
diàngōng
employee, clerk, attendant
服務員
fúwùyuán
farmer, peasant
農民
nóngmín
fisherman
漁民
yúmín
gardener
園丁，花匠
yuándīng, huājiàng
governess
保姆
bǎomǔ
government minister
部長
bùzhǎng
housewife
家庭主婦，急停婦女
jiāting zhǔfù, jíting fùnǚ
lawyer
律師

lùshī
manager
經理
jīnglǐ
mayor
市長
shìzhǎng
mechanic
機械師，機械員
jīxièshī, jīxièyuán
mechanical engineer
機械工程師
jīxiè gōngchéngshī
movie star
電影明星
diànyǐng míngxīng
musician
音樂家
yīnyuèjiā
nuclear engineer
盒子工程師
hézi gōngchéngshī
nurse
護士
hùshi
office staff worker
職員
zhíyuán
(Chinese) opera performer

京劇演員
jīngjù yǎnyuán
painter (artist)
畫家
huàjiā
pharmacist
藥劑師
yàojìshī
pilot
飛行員
fēixíngyuán
policeman
警察
jǐngchá
postman
郵遞員
yóudìyuán
professor
教授
jiàoshòu
reporter
記者
jìzhě
sailor
海員，水手，船員
hǎiyuán, shuǐshǒu, chuányuán
salesman
推銷員
tuīxiāoyuán

secretary
秘書
mishū
servant
用人
yòngren
shoemaker
鞋匠師傅
xiéjiàngshīfu
shoe repairman
修鞋的
xiūxiéde
store clerk, salesperson
售貨員
shòuhuòyuán
teacher
教員
jiàoyuán
typist
打字員
dǎzìyuán
(star) vocalist
歌星
gēxīng
waiter, waitress
飯店服務員
fàndiàn fúwùyuán

## Drills

### Substitution Drill

1. Tā xiànzài zài kāi huì.  
他/她现在在开会。  
He/she is at a meeting now

Cue dǎ diànhuà  
打电话  
make a phone call

Tā xiànzài zài dǎ diànhuà.  
他/她现在在打电话。  
He/she is making a phone call now.

2. Tā xiànzài zài dǎ diànhuà.  
他/她现在在打电话。  
He/she is making a phone call now.

Cue děng nǐ  
等你  
wait for you

Tā xiànzài zài děng nǐ.  
他/她现在在等你  
He/she is waiting for you now.

3. Tā xiànzài zài děng nǐ.  
他/她现在在等你。  
He/she is waiting for you now.

Cue gēn Wáng Xiānsheng shuō huà  
跟王先生说话。  
talk with Mr. Wáng

Tā xiànzài zài gēn Wáng Xiānsheng shuō huà.  
他/她现在在跟王先生说话。

He/she is speaking with Mr. Wáng now.

4. Tā xiànzài zài gēn Wáng Xiānsheng shuō huà.

他/她现在在跟王先生说话。

He/she is speaking with Mr. Wáng now.

Cue gōngzuò  
工作  
work

Tā xiànzài zài gōngzuò.

他/她现在在工作。

He/she is at work now.

5. Tā xiànzài zài gōngzuò.

他/她现在在工作。

He/she is at work now.

Cue jiǎng huà  
讲话  
do a speech

Tā xiànzài zài jiǎng huà.

他/她现在在讲话。

He/she is speaking now.

6. Tā xiànzài zài jiǎng huà.

他/她现在在讲话。

He/she is speaking now.

Cue huàn qián  
换钱  
change money

Tā xiànzài zài huàn qián.

他/她现在在换钱。

He/she is changing money now.

7. Tā xiànzài zài huàn qián.

他/她现在在换钱。



He/she is changing money now.

Cue

mǎi dōngxī.

买东西

shopping

Tā xiànzài mǎi dōngxī.

他/她现在买东西.

He/she is shopping now.

## Response Drill

1. Tā xiànzài zài kāi huì.  
他现在在开会。  
He is at a meeting now.

Cue yìhuìr  
一会儿  
In a little while

Yìhuìr qǐng tā gěi wǒ huí ge diànhuà, hǎo bu hǎo?  
一会儿请他给我回个电话，好不好？  
In a little while please ask him to call me back. All right?

2. Wáng Tóngzhì xiànzài zài jiǎng huà.  
王同志现在在讲话。  
Comrade Wáng is speaking now.

Cue xiàwǔ  
下午  
afternoon

Xiàwǔ qǐng tā gěi wǒ huí ge diànhuà, hǎo bu hǎo?  
下午请他给我回个电话，好不好？  
This afternoon please ask him to call me back. All right?

3. Zhāng Tóngzhì xiànzài zài xué Zhōngguó huà.  
张同志现在在学中国话。  
Comrade Wáng is learning Chinese now.

Cue shàngwǔ  
上午  
morning

Shàngwǔ qǐng tā gěi wǒ huí ge diànhuà, hǎo bu hǎo?  
上午请他给我回个电话，好不好？  
In the morning please ask him to call me back. All right?

4. Mǎ Kēzhǎng xiànzài zài dǎ diànhuà.

马科长现在在打电话。

Section Chief **Mǎ** is making a phone call now.

Cue

míngtiān

明天

tomorrow

Míngtiān qǐng tā gěi wǒ huí ge diànhuà, hǎo bu hǎo?

明天请他给我回个电话，好不好？

Tomorrow please ask him to call me back. All right?

5.

Wáng Tóngzhì xiànzài zài gēn Zhāng Kēzhǎng jiǎnghuà.

王同志现在在跟张科长讲话。

Comrade **Wáng** is talking to Section Chief **Zhāng** now.

Cue

yíhuǐr

一会儿

In a little while

Yíhuǐr qǐng tā gěi wǒ huí ge diànhuà, hǎo bu hǎo?

一会儿请他给我回个电话，好不好？

In a little while please ask him to call me back. All right?

6.

Lǐ Nǚshì xiànzài zài gēn Wáng Dàshǐ kāi huì.

李女士现在在跟王大使开会。

Mrs. **Lǐ** is having a meeting with ambassador **Wáng**.

Cue

jīntiān

今天

today

Jīntiān qǐng tā gěi wǒ huí ge diànhuà, hǎo bu hǎo?

今天请她给我回个电话，好不好？

Today please ask him to call me back. All right?

7.

Zhū Tóngzhì xiànzài zài xué Zhōngwén.

朱同志现在在学中文。

Comrade **Zhū** is learning Chinese now.

Cue

xiàwǔ

下午  
afternoon

Xiàwǔ qǐng tā gěi wǒ huí ge diànhuà, hǎo bu hǎo?

下午请他给我回个电话，好不好？

This afternoon please ask him to call me back. All right?

## Expansion Drill

1. Wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ dāngmiàn tán tán.

我想跟你当面谈谈。

I would like to talk with you in person.

Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà de mùdì shì xiǎng gēn nǐ dāngmiàn tán tán.

我给你打电话目的是想跟你当面谈谈。

The reason I called you is that I would like to talk with you in person.

2. Wǒ xiǎng wèn nǐ yíjiàn shì.

我想问你一件事。

I would like to ask you something.

Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà de mùdì shì xiǎng wèn nǐ yíjiàn shì.

我给你打电话目的是想问你一件事。

I'm calling you to ask you something.

3. Wǒ xiǎng wèn nǐ jǐdiǎn zhōng yǒu gōngfu.

我想问你几点钟有功夫。

I would like to ask you what time you are free.

Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà de mùdì shì xiǎng wèn nǐ jǐdiǎn zhōng yǒu gōngfu.

我给你打电话目的是想几点钟有功夫。

I am calling you to find out what time I will be available.

4. Wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ dāngmiàn tán tán.

我想跟你当面谈谈。

I would like to talk with you in person.

Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà de mùdì shì xiǎng gēn nǐ dāngmiàn tán tán.

我给你打电话目的是想跟你当面谈谈。

The reason of my calling you is to talk to you face to face.

5. Wǒ xiǎng wèn nǐ yídiǎnr shì.

我想问你一点儿事。

I want to ask you something.

Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà de mùdì shì xiǎng wèn nǐ yídiǎnr shì.

我给你打电话目的是想问你一点儿事。

The reason of my calling you is to ask you something.

6. Wǒ xiǎng wèn nǐ sāndiǎn zhōng yǒu gōngfu meiyǒu.

我想问你三点钟有功夫没有。

I want to ask if you have time at three o'clock.

Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuàde mùdì shì xiǎng wèn nǐ sāndiǎn zhōng yǒu gōngfu meiyǒu.

我给你打电话目的是想问你三点钟有功夫没有。

The reason of my calling you is to ask if you have time at three o'clock.

7. Wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ dāngmiàn tán tán.

我想跟你当面谈谈。

I would like to talk with you in person.

Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuàde mùdì shì xiǎng gēn nǐ dāngmiàn tán tán.

我给你打电话目的是想跟你当面谈谈。

The reason of my calling you is to talk to you face to face.

## Substitution Drill

1. Shénme shíhou dōu kényi.

什么时候都可以。

Any time would be fine.

Cue

shéi

谁

who

Shéi dōu kényi.

谁都可以。

Anyone would be fine.

2. Shéi dōu kényi.

谁都可以。

Anyone would be fine.

Cue

nǎr

哪儿

where

Nǎr dōu kényi.

哪儿都可以。

Anywhere would be fine.

3. Nǎr dōu kényi.

哪儿都可以。

Anywhere would be fine.

Cue

něige

哪个

that

Něige dōu kényi.

哪个都可以。

Either will do.

4. Něige dōu kényi.

哪个都可以。

Either will do.

Cue

shénme dìfang

什么地

which place

Shénme dìfang dōu kěyǐ.

什么地方都可以。

Anyone would be fine.

2.

Shéi dōu kěyǐ.

谁都可以。

Anyone would be fine.

Cue

nǎr

哪儿

where

Nǎr dōu kěyǐ.

哪儿都可以。

Anywhere would be fine.

3.

Nǎr dōu kěyǐ.

哪儿都可以。

Anywhere would be fine.

Cue

něige

哪个

that

Něige dōu kěyǐ.

哪个都可以。

Either will do.

4.

Něige dōu kěyǐ.

哪个都可以。

Either will do.

Cue

shénme dìfang



什么地

when

Shénme dìfang dōu kényi.

什么地方都可以。

Any place would be fine.

5. Shénme dìfang dōu kényi.

什么地方都可以。

Any place would be fine.

Cue

duōshao

多少

how many

Duōshao dōu kényi.

多少都可以。

Any number would be fine.

6. Duōshao dōu kényi.

多少都可以。

Any number would be fine.

Cue

duó jiǔ

多久

how much time

Duó jiǔ dōu kényi.

多久都可以。

## Substitution Drill

1. Shénme shíhou dōu kényi.

什么时候都可以。

Any time would be fine.

Cue

Duó jiǔ

多久

Any length of time

Duó jiǔ dōu kényi.

多久都可以。

Any length of time would be fine.

2. Jǐdiǎn zhōng dōu kényi.

几点钟都可以。

Any hour would be fine.

Cue

Jǐge zhōngtóu

几个钟头

Any number of hours

Jǐge zhōngtóu dōu kényi.

几个钟头都可以。

Any number of hours would be fine.

3. Něitiān dōu kényi.

哪天都可以。

Any day would be fine.

Cue

Duōshao tiān

多少天

Any number of days

Duōshao tiān dōu kényi.

多少天都可以。

Any number of days would be fine.

4. Něinián dōu kényi.

哪年都可以。

Any year would be fine.

Cue

Jīnián

几年

Any number of years

Jīnián dōu kěyǐ.

几年都可以。

Any number of years would be fine.

5.

Xīngqījǐ dōu kěyǐ.

星期几都可以。

Any day of the week would be fine.

Cue

Jǐge xīngqī

几个星期

Any number of weeks

Jǐge xīngqī dōu kěyǐ.

几个星期都可以。

Any number of weeks would be fine.

6.

Jǐhào dōu kěyǐ.

几号都可以。

Any date would be fine.

Cue

Duōshao tiān

多少天

Any number of days

Duōshao tiān dōu kěyǐ.

多少天都可以。

Any number of days would be fine.

7.

Jǐyuè dōu kěyǐ.

几月都可以。

Any month would be fine.

Cue

Jǐge yuè

几个月

Any number of months

Jǐge yuè dōu kěyǐ.

几个月都可以。

Any number of months would be fine.

## Response Drill

1. Wǒmen míngtiān zài zhèr jiàn ne, háishi zài nàr jiàn ne?  
我们明天在这儿见呢，还是在那儿见呢？  
Shall we meet here or there tomorrow?

Cue nǎr  
哪儿  
where

Zài nǎr jiàn dōu kěyǐ.  
在哪儿见都可以。  
Anywhere would be fine.

2. Wǒmen zuò huǒchē qù ne, háishi zuò fēijī qù ne?  
我们坐火车去呢，还是坐飞机去呢？  
Shall we go by train, or by plane?

Cue zěnmē  
怎么  
how

Zěnmē qù dōu kěyǐ.  
怎么去都可以。  
Any way would be fine.

3. Wǒmen míngtiān jiǔdiǎn zhōng jiàn ne, háishi shídiǎn zhōng jiàn ne?  
我们明天九点钟见呢，还是十点钟见呢？  
Shall we meet tomorrow at nine o'clock, or ten o'clock?

Cue jǐdiǎn zhōng  
几点钟  
what time

Jǐdiǎn zhōng jiàn dōu kěyǐ.  
几点钟见都可以。  
Any time would be fine.

4. Wǒmen zuò qìchē qù ne, háishi zuò huǒchē qù ne?

我们坐汽车去呢，还是坐火车去呢？

Shall we go by car or by train?

Cue

shénme chē

什么车

which kind of transportation

Shénme chē dōu kényi.

什么车都可以。

Any way would be fine.

5. Wǒmen míngtiān qù ne, háishi hòutiān qù ne?

我们明天去呢，还是后天去呢？

Shall we go tomorrow, or the day after tomorrow?

Cue

něitiān

哪天

which day

Něitiān qù dōu kényi.

哪天去都可以。

Any day would be fine.

6. Wǒmen Xīngqīyī qù ne, háishi xīngqīèr qù ne?

我们星期一去呢，还是星期二去呢？

Shall we go on Monday, or Tuesday?

Cue

xīngqījǐ

星期几

what day of week

Xīngqījǐ qù dōu kényi.

星期几去都可以。

Any day of the week would be fine.

7. Wǒmen zuò fēijī qù ne, háishi zuò huǒchē qù ne?

我们坐飞机去呢，还是坐火车去呢？

Shall we go by plane or by train?

Cue

zěnmē

怎么

how

Zěnme qù dōu kěyǐ.

怎么去都可以。

Any way would be fine.

## Response Drill

1. Shéi lái?

谁来?

Who is coming?

Shéi dōu lái.

谁都来。

Everyone is coming.

2. Shénme dìfang bù hǎo?

什么地方不好?

Which place is wrong?

Shénme dìfang dōu bù hǎo.

什么地方都不好。

Anywhere is wrong.

3. Nǎige dìfang kěyǐ?

哪个地方可以?

Which place is possible?

Nǎige dìfang dōu kěyǐ.

哪个地方都可以。

Any place is fine.

4. Shéi bú huì?

谁不会?

Who wouldn't?

Shéi dōu bú huì.

谁都不会。

Nobody would.

5. Nǎr hǎo?

哪儿好?

Where is it good?

Nǎr dōu hǎo.



哪儿都好。

Anywhere would be fine.

6. Tā shénme shíhou néng qù?

他/她什么时候能去？

When will he/she be able to go?

Tā shénme shíhou dōu néng qù.

他/她什么时候都能去。

he/she can go whenever he/she wants.

7. Nǐ nǎitiān bù máng?

你哪天不忙？

What days are you not busy?

Wǒ nǎitiān dōu bù máng.

我哪天都不忙。

I'm not busy any day.

## Response Drill

1. Nǐ qù nǎr?

你去哪儿？

Where are you going?

Wǒ nǎr dōu qù.

我哪儿都去。

I'm going everywhere.

2. Nǐ dào nǎr qù?

你到哪儿去？

Where are you going?

Wǒ nǎr dōu qù.

我哪儿都去。

I'm going everywhere.

3. Tā qù shénme dìfang?

他/她去什么地方？

Where does he/she go?

Tā shénme dìfang dōu qù.

他/她什么地方都去。

He/she goes everywhere.

4. Tā dào shénme dìfang qù?

他/她到什么地方去？

Where does he/she go?

Tā shénme dìfang dōu qù.

他/她什么地方都去。

He/she goes everywhere.

5. Nǐ mǎi nǎige?

你买哪个？

Which one do you buy?

Wǒ nǎige dōu mǎi.

我哪个都买。

I'll buy either one.

6. Nǐ kàn nǎběn?

你看哪本？

Which book do you read?

Wǒ nǎběn dōu kàn.

我哪本都看。

I read all the books.

7. Nǐ zuò shénme?

你做什么？

What do you do?

Wǒ shénme dōu zuò.

我什么都做。

I do everything.

## Response Drill

1. Shéi lái?  
谁来?  
Who is coming?

Cue Shéi dōu  
谁都  
everyone

Shéi dōu lái.  
谁都来。  
Everyone is coming.

2. Shéi kěyǐ?  
谁可以?  
Who can?

Cue Shéi dōu  
谁都  
anyone will do

Shéi dōu kěyǐ.  
谁都可以。  
Anyone can.

3. Shéi lái?  
谁来?  
Who is coming?

Cue Shéi dōu bù  
谁都不  
no one

Shéi dōu bù lái.  
谁都不来。  
No one is coming.

4. Nǐ mǎi něige?

你买哪个？

Which one do you buy?

Cue

něige dōu

哪个都

all of them

Wǒ něige dōu mǎi.

我哪个都买。

I'll buy all of them.

5. Nǐ dào nǎr qù?

你到哪儿去？

Where are you going?

Cue

nǎr dōu bú

哪儿都不

nowhere at all

Wǒ nǎr dōu bú qù.

我哪儿都不去。

I'm going nowhere.

6. Něige hǎo?

哪个好？

Which one is good?

Cue

Něige dōu

哪个都

all of them

Něige dōu hǎo.

哪个都好。

All of them are good.

7. Shéi huì shuō Zhōngguó huà?

谁会说中国话？

Who can speak Chinese?

Cue

Shéi dōu

谁都

everyone

Shéi dōu huì shuō Zhōngguó huà.

谁都会说中国话。

Everyone can speak Chinese.

## Unit 3

### References

#### Reference List

1. A: **Huáng Kēzhǎng, nín xiàge Xīngqīliù yǒu gōngfu ma?**  
**黃科長，您下個星期六有功夫嗎？**  
Section Chief Huang, are you free Saturday of next week?
- A: **Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín hé nín fūren dào wǒmen jiā lái chī ge biànfàn.**  
**我想請您和您夫人到我們家來吃個便飯。**  
I would like to invite you and your wife to come to our house for a simple meal.
2. B: **Nín hébì zhème kèqì?**  
**您何必怎麼客氣？**  
Why is it necessary to be so polite?
- A: **Bú shì kèqì.**  
**不是客氣。**  
It's not politeness.
- A: **Wǒ yǒu yige péngyou gāng cóng Měiguó lái.**  
**我有一個朋友剛從美國來。**  
I have a friend who has just come from America.
- A: **Tā xiànzài zài Táiwān Dàxué jiāo jīngjìxué.**  
**她現在在臺灣大學教經濟學。**  
She is teaching economics at Táiwān University right now.
- A: **Wǒ hěn xiǎng gěi nǐmen liǎngwèi jièshào jièshào.**  
**我很想給你們兩位介紹介紹。**  
I would very much like to introduce the two of you.
3. B: **Nà tài hǎo le!**  
**那太好了！**  
That's wonderful!
- B: **Hěn xīwang gēn ta tán tán.**  
**很希望跟她談談。**  
I wish very much to talk with her.
- B: **Búguò, kǒngpà wǒde Yīngwén bù xíng.**  
**不過，恐怕我的英文不行。**  
However, I'm afraid that my English isn't good enough.
- B: **Búdàn shuōde bù hǎo, yǒu shíhou yě tīngbudǒng.**

- 不但說得好，有時候也聽不懂。  
Not only don't I speak well, (but) sometimes I can't understand what I hear either.
4. A: **Náli, náli.**  
哪裏，哪裏。  
Not at all, not at all.
- A: **Nín shuōde gēn Měiguó rén yíyàng hǎo.**  
您說得跟美國人一樣好。  
You speak as well as an American.
5. \*A: **Zěnmeyàng? Liùdiǎn bàn duì nín fāngbian bu fāngbian?**  
怎麼樣？六點半對您方便不方便？  
How shall we do it? Would six-thirty be convenient for you?
- B: **Fāngbian, fāngbian.**  
方便，方便。  
That would be fine.
6. A: **Wǒ méi qǐng shénme rén. Hěn suíbiàn.**  
我沒請什麼人。很隨便。  
I haven't invited anyone special. It's very informal.
- B: **Nà jiù xiān xiè le.**  
那就先謝了。  
Well then, I'll thank you in advance.
- Additional Required Vocabulary  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)
7. **bù tóng**  
不同  
to be different
8. **chá**  
茶  
tea
9. **chī fàn**  
吃飯  
to eat, to have a meal
10. **dànshi**  
但是  
but
11. **érqiě**  
而且  
furthermore, moreover
12. **fàn**



13.	飯 (cooked) rice hē
14.	喝 to drink jiāo shū 教書 to teach

## Vocabulary

biànfàn	便飯	a simple, informal meal
búdàn...yě	不但...也	not only... but also
búguò	不過	however, but
bù tóng	不同	to be different
chá	茶	tea
chī fàn	吃飯	to eat, to have a meal
dànshi	但是	but
érqiě	而且	furthermore, moreover
fàn	飯	(cooked) rice
hē	喝	to drink
hébi	何必	why is it necessary (to)
jiāo shū	教書	to teach
jièshào	介紹	to introduce
kǒngpà	恐怕	to be afraid that (something is or is not the case)
suíbiàn	隨便	to be informal/casual; as you like, as you wish, whatever suits you, “according to convenience”
tài hǎo le!	太好了!	wonderful!
tīngbudǒng	聽不懂	cannot understand
tīngdedǒng	聽得懂	can understand
xīwàng (xīwang)	希望	to hope, to wish to
yíyàng	一樣	to be alike/equal
yǒu shíhou (yǒu shihou)	有時候	sometimes
(introduced on C-2 tape)		
cānjiā	參加	to attend
dǎ (ge) diànhuà	打(個)電話	to make a phone call
hǎode duō	好得多	much better
tīng diànhuà	聽電話	to answer the phone
yānhuo	烟火	fireworks display
yóuyuánhuì	游園會	carnival
zhèng hǎo	正好	just right

## Reference Notes

## Notes on №1

1. A: **Huáng Kēzhǎng, nín xiàge Xīngqīliù yǒu gōngfu ma?**  
黃科長，您下個星期六有功夫嗎？  
Section Chief Huang, are you free Saturday of next week?
- A: **Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín hé nín fūren dào wǒmen jiā lái chī ge biànfàn.**  
我想請您和您夫人到我們家來吃個便飯。  
I would like to invite you and your wife to come to our house for a simple meal.

**Xiàge Xīngqīliù** means “Saturday of next week.” “Saturday of this week” is **zhèige Xīngqīliù**, and “Saturday of last week” is **shàngge Xīngqīliù**.<sup>4</sup>

**Chī ge biànfàn**: Here the verb **chī**, “to eat [something],” takes the object (**yi**)**ge biànfàn**, “a simple/informal family meal.” When talking about the general activity of eating, however, use **chī** with the general object **fàn**, literally “(cooked) rice”: **chī fàn**, “to eat”

The word **biànfàn** is used as a modest description in inviting guests for a meal served in the home. The meal is generally “simple” only in the sense of not being a banquet. A Chinese family meal usually consists of several dishes plus a soup.

## Notes on №2

2. B: **Nín hébì zhème kèqi?**  
您何必怎麼客氣？  
Why is it necessary to be so polite?
- A: **Bú shì kèqi.**  
不是客氣。  
It’s not politeness.
- A: **Wǒ yǒu yige péngyou gāng cóng Měiguó lái.**  
我有一個朋友剛從美國來。  
I have a friend who has just come from America.
- A: **Tā xiànzài zài Táiwān Dàxué jiāo jīngjìxué.**  
她現在在臺灣大學教經濟學。  
She is teaching economics at Táiwān University right now.
- A: **Wǒ hěn xiǎng gěi nǐmen liǎngwèi jièshào jièshào.**  
我很想給你們兩位介紹介紹。  
I would very much like to introduce the two of you.

<sup>4</sup>he words “this,” “next,” and “last” in English are often ambiguous. “This” sometimes means “Just past,” sometimes “the coming,” and sometimes “of next week.” “Next” sometimes means “the coming” and sometimes means “of next week.” “Last” sometimes means “Just past” and sometimes means “of last week.” In Chinese, however, **zhèige** usually means “of this week”; **xiàge**, “of next week”; and **shàngge**, “of last week.” But ambiguities do sometimes arise.

Some Chinese consider that the week begins on Sunday. Probably most Chinese however, consider Monday the first day of the week.

## Notes on №2

**Hébi** is a somewhat formal way of saying “Why is it necessary to...?” **Hé** is a literary word for “why.” **Bi** is a literary word for “must.” (You may recognize it from **bú bi**, “need not,” “to be unnecessary.”)

Notice that the first speaker in exchange 2 does not respond to the dinner invitation with an immediate “Thank you, I would love to,” as one might do in English. Instead, the Chinese prefer the equivalent of “That’s too kind of you” or “Oh, you really shouldn’t.” When you receive an indefinite invitation (like “I hope you can come over to my house for dinner some day”), do not ask immediately for the date and time. Rather, you should thank the person for his politeness and say that you also hope that you can get together. Vague invitations may simply be in superficial accordance with the rules of etiquette, and you might put your acquaintance on the spot by accepting.

**Bú shì kèqǐ** is the appropriate response when a person suggests that you are treating him too politely.

**Jiāo**, “to teach,” is a verb which requires a general object when no specific object is mentioned. Contrast **jiāo shū**, “to teach,” with **jiāo jīngjìxué**, “to teach economics.”

**Nǐmen liǎngwèi** means “the two of you,” or “you two.” The other plural pronouns may be used similarly:

他們四個人都已經去過了。
Tāmen sìge rén dōu yǐjīng qùguo le.
Those four have all been there already.
他們三個人都想念歷史。
Tāmen sānge rén dōu xiǎng niàn lìshǐ. study history.
All three of them are planning to

A number phrase may also follow a list of nouns or pronouns in Chinese. Either the listing or the number is usually omitted in the English translation.

我，你，他三個人都去，好不好？
Wǒ, nǐ, tā sānge rén dōu qù, hǎo bu hǎo?
Why don’t all three of us go?
李先生跟王先生兩位都給我打了電話了。
Lǐ Xiānsheng gēn Wáng Xiānsheng liǎngwèi dōu gěi wǒ dǎle diànhuà le.
Both Mr. <b>Lǐ</b> and Mr. <b>Wáng</b> (the two of them) called me.

**Gěi nǐmen liǎngwèi jièshào jièshào**: There are two things to note in this sentence. First of all, while the English language “introduces two people TO each other,” the Chinese language “introduces FOR the two people,” **gěi...jièshào**. Secondly, the speaker has chosen to repeat the verb **jièshào**.

In a sentence expressing the speaker’s desired course of action, the reduplicated form of the verb makes the statement less blunt and demanding.

## Notes on №3

3. B: **Nà tài hǎo le!**

	那太好了！ That's wonderful!
B:	Hěn xīwang gēn ta tán.án. 很希望跟她談談。 I wish very much to talk with her.
B:	Búguò, kǒngpà wǒde Yīngwén bù xíng. 不過，恐怕我的英文不行。 However, I'm afraid that my English isn't good enough.
B:	Búdàn shuōde bù hǎo, yǒu shíhou yě tīngbudǒng. 不但說得好，有時候也聽不懂。 Not only don't I speak well, (but) sometimes I can't understand what I hear either.

Tài hǎo le, “wonderful,” or, more literally, “too good.” you have seen tài translated as “excessively,” or “too”: “It’s too expensive!” Tài guì le!

In other contexts, tài simply indicates an extreme degree and is translated as “very.” When used this way, tài is commonly heavily stressed.

這本書真是太有意思了！
Zhèběn shū zhēn shì tài yǒu yìsi le!
This book is really very interesting!

Búguò, “however,” is often interchangeable with kěshi, “but,” and is therefore used more frequently than the English “however.”

Kǒngpà means “to be afraid that [something is/is not the case].” It sometimes means “probably,” as in Zhèběn shū kǒngpà shì tāde, “This book is probably his.”

Búdàn...ye... is equivalent to the English “not only... but also....” Here are some examples:

Tā búdan huì shuō Zhōngwén, yě huì shuō Rìwén.
他不但會說中文，也會說日文。
Not only can he speak Chinese, but he can also speak Japanese.
Tā búdan bù xǐhuan hóngde, yě bù xǐhuan lánde.
他不但不喜歡紅的，也不喜歡藍的。
Not only doesn't he like the red one, but he doesn't like the blue one either.

Tīngbudǒng, “can't understand”: The verb dǒng is used to indicate the result in a compound verb of result. Here is another example of dǒng used in this way:

Zhōngwén bàozhǐ nǐ kàndedǒng kànbudǒng? 中文報紙你看得懂看不懂？ Can you read (and understand) Chinese newspapers?
--

Shuōde bù hǎo VS. tīngbudǒng: The many ways in which one-syllable Chinese verbs may be combined to make patterns and compounds can be confusing. In No. 3, you see both an action verb and its

manner adverb (in the negative), *shuōde bù hǎo*, and a compound verb of result (in its “unable” form), *tīngbudǒng*. Compare these two forms:

ACTION VERB	MARKER	NEG.	ADV.	MANNER
<i>shuō</i>	-DE	<i>bù</i>	<i>hǎo</i>	
<i>shuō</i>	-DE		<i>hěn</i>	<i>hǎo</i>

ACTION VERB	MARKER or NEG (not both)	RESULT
<i>tīng</i>	- <i>bù</i>	- <i>dǒng</i>
<i>tīng</i>	- <i>de</i>	- <i>dǒng</i>

The marker *de* is always part of the manner adverb expression but alternates with *bù* in compound verbs of result. Manner adverb expressions expand to allow not only for negation but also for additional adverbs such as *hěn* and *tài*. Compound verbs of result cannot do this. There are always three, and only three, parts to the compound verb of result.

### Notes on №4-5

4. A: *Náli, náli.*  
 哪裏，哪裏。  
 Not at all, not at all.
- A: *Nín shuōde gēn Měiguó rén yíyàng hǎo.*  
 您說得跟美國人一樣好。  
 You speak as well as an American.
5. \*A: *Zěnmeyàng? Liùdiǎn bàn duì nín fāngbian bu fāngbian?*  
 怎麼樣？六點半對您方便不方便？  
 How shall we do it? Would six-thirty be convenient for you?
- B: *Fāngbian, fāngbian.*  
 方便，方便。  
 That would be fine.

*Gēn...yíyàng hǎo*: *Yíyàng* is an adjectival verb meaning “to be the same.”

When a sentence tells you in what respect the compared items are alike, *yíyàng* acts as an adverb and may be translated as “equally.”

<i>Wǒmen liǎngge rénde chē</i> 我們兩個認得車 The cars belonging to the two of us	<i>yíyàng.</i> 一樣。 alike.
--	---------------------------------

“Our cars are alike.”

<i>Wǒmen liǎngge rénde chē</i> 我們兩個認得車 The cars belonging to the two of us	<i>yíyàng guì.</i> 一樣貴。 equally expensive.
--	--

“Our cars are equally expensive.”

The area of comparability may be described by predicates other than adjectival verbs.

Tāmen liǎngge rén	dōu	yíyàng	xǐhuan	niàn shū.
他們兩個人	都	一樣	喜歡	念書。
The two of them	both	equally	like	to study

“The two of them are equally studious.”

The items being compared may be expressed separately, using *gēn*. In this case, *gēn* is the prepositional verb meaning “with.” The item preceding *gēn* is compared WITH the object of *gēn*.

Wǒde chē	gēn	tāde chē	yíyàng.
我的車	跟	他的車	一樣。
My car	with	his car	alike.

“My car is like his.”

*Gēn* may be used to compare nouns, pronouns, noun phrases, and clauses. Often one of the two phrases or clauses is a shorter form of the other.

Nǐ shuōde	gēn	Měiguó rén (shuōde)	yíyàng	hǎo.
你說得	跟	美國人(說得)	一樣	好。
You speak	with	American [speak]	equally	good.

”You speak as well as an American.”

Wǒde chē	gēn	tāde (chē)	yíyàng.
我的車	跟	他的(車)	一樣。
My car	with	his [car]	alike.

“My car is like his (car).”

Nǐ (kāide)	gēn	wǒ	kāide	yíyàng	kuài.
你(開得)	跟	我	開得	一樣	快。
You [drive]	with	me	drive	equally	fast.

“You drive as fast as I do.”

### Notes on №6

6. A: Wǒ méi qǐng shénme rén. Hěn suíbiàn.  
我沒請什麼人。很隨便。  
I haven't invited anyone special. It's very informal.
- B: Nà jiù xiān xiè le.  
那就先謝了。  
Well then, I'll thank you in advance.

**Méi qǐng shénme rén:** In this sentence, **shénme** is not the question word “what” “but is the indefinite “any.” When used with **bù** or **méi**, **shénme rén** means “anybody special,” or “anyone in particular.” All question words may follow the verbs in negative statements to give similar meanings. Here are some examples of “any\_\_\_ special” meanings:

<p>Wǒ méi chī shénme fàn. 我沒吃什麼飯。 I didn't eat much of anything.</p> <p>Wǒ méi gēn shéi qù. 我沒跟誰去。 I didn't go with anybody special.</p> <p>Wǒ méi dào nǎr qù. 我沒到那兒去。 I didn't go anyplace in particular.</p> <p>Wǒ méiyǒu duōshǎo qián. 我沒有多少前。 I don't have any money to speak of.</p> <p>Wǒ bú yào jǐge. 我不要幾個。 I don't want but a few. (I want only a few.)</p>
--

**Suíbiàn** is a frequently used expression which has connotations of “casual,” as contrasted with **kèqì**, “proper” or “formal.” Literally, **suíbiàn** means “according to convenience.” Here are some examples:

<p>Zěnmě zuò? 怎麼做? How shall we do it?</p> <p>Suíbiàn. 隨便。 However you like.</p> <p>Suíbiàn shénme shíhòu lái. 隨便什麼時候來。 Come anytime you like.</p> <p>Suíbiàn zuò nǎr dōu kěyǐ. 隨便坐哪兒都可以。 You may sit anywhere you like.</p>
--

**Nà jiù xiān xiè le:** In this sentence, **nà** is acting as an adverb meaning “in that case,” “if so,” or “then.” The English translation “I’ll thank you in advance, then” is very formal. You would be more likely to say something like “Great. I’m looking forward to it.”

### Notes on additional required vocabulary

7. **bù tóng**



	不同	to be different
8.	chá	
	茶	tea
9.	chī fàn	
	吃飯	to eat, to have a meal
10.	dànshi	
	但是	but
11.	érqiě	
	而且	furthermore, moreover
12.	fàn	
	飯	(cooked) rice
13.	hē	
	喝	to drink
14.	jiāo shū	
	教書	to teach

Bù tóng may be used in much the same way as bù yíyàng. Note that bù tóng occurs only in the negative. (There is no tóng.)

Shànghái huà hé Běijīng huà hěn bù tóng.

上海話和北京話很不同。

The Shànghǎi dialect and the Běijīng dialect are very different.

Chī fàn, “to eat,” is an example of a verb plus a general object used to express a general activity. The verb chi may also take specific objects, such as miàn, “noodles.”

Dànshi, “but,” is used much like kěshi, “but.”

Héběi rén tīngdedǒng Běijīng huà ma?

河北人聽得懂北京話嗎？

Can people from Héběi understand the Běijīng dialect?

Tīngdedǒng, dànshi Héběi huà hé Běijīng huà bù yíyàng.

聽得懂，但是河北話和北京話不一樣。

Yes, but the Héběi dialect and the Běijīng dialect are different.

Érqiě, “furthermore,” “moreover”: Use érqiě at the beginning of a sentence or clause.

Zhèige huāpíng tài guì, érqǐě yě tài dà le. Wǒ bù xiǎng mǎi.

這個花瓶太貴，而且也太大了。我不想買。

This vase is too expensive, and furthermore it's too big. I don't want to buy it.

**Fàn**, “(cooked) rice”: The definition of **fàn** is qualified as “cooked” because the Chinese use several words for “rice,” depending on whether it is in the field, ready to cook, or on the table.

**Jiāo shū** is a verb plus a general object meaning “to teach.” **Jiāo** may be used without its general object, as in **Jiāo Zhōngwén**, “teach the Chinese language.”

## Drills

### Substitution Drill

1. Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ míngtiān wǎnshang yǒu gōngfu ma?

黄科长，你明天晚上有功夫吗？

Section Chief Huáng, are you free tomorrow evening?

- Cue míngtiān zǎoshang

明天早上

tomorrow morning

Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ míngtiān zǎoshang yǒu gōngfu ma?

黄科长，你明天早上有功夫吗？

Section Chief Huáng, are you free tomorrow morning?

2. Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ míngtiān zǎoshang yǒu gōngfu ma?

黄科长，你明天早上有功夫吗？

Section Chief Huáng, are you free tomorrow evening?

- Cue Xīngqīsi

星期四

Thursday

Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ Xīngqīsi yǒu gōngfu ma?

黄科长，你星期四有功夫吗？

Section Chief Huáng, are you free Thursday?

3. Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ Xīngqīsi yǒu gōngfu ma?

黄科长，你星期四有功夫吗？

Section Chief Huáng, are you free Thursday?

- Cue jīntiān wǎnshang

今天晚上

today evening

Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ jīntiān wǎnshang yǒu gōngfu ma?

黄科长，你今天晚上有功夫吗？

Section Chief Huáng, are you free tonight?

4. Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ jīntiān wǎnshàng yǒu gōngfu ma?

黄科长，你今天晚上有功夫吗？

Section Chief Huáng, are you free tonight?

Cue xià Xīngqīliù  
下星期六  
next Saturday

Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ xià Xīngqīliù yǒu gōngfu ma?

黄科长，你下星期六有功夫吗？

Section Chief Huáng, are you free next Saturday?

5. Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ xià Xīngqīliù yǒu gōngfu ma?

黄科长，你下星期六有功夫吗？

Section Chief Huáng, are you free next Saturday?

Cue zhèige Xīngqīwǔ  
这个星期五  
Friday this week

Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ zhèige Xīngqīwǔ yǒu gōngfu ma?

黄科长，你这个星期五有功夫吗？

Section Chief Huáng, are you free this Friday?

6. Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ zhèige Xīngqīwǔ yǒu gōngfu ma?

黄科长，你这个星期五有功夫吗？

Section Chief Huáng, are you free this Friday?

Cue zhèige yuè qīhào  
这个月七号  
this month on the 7th

Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ zhèige yuè qīhào yǒu gōngfu ma?

黄科长，你这个月七号有功夫吗？

Section Chief Huáng, are you free 7th of this month?

7. Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ zhèige yuè qīhào yǒu gōngfu ma?

黄科长，你这个月七号有功夫吗？

Section Chief **Huáng**, are you free the 7th of this month?

Cue

xiàge yuè yīhào

下个月一号

last month the first

**Huáng Kēzhǎng**, nǐ xiàge yuè yīhào yǒu gōngfu ma?

黄科长，你下个月一号有功夫马？

Section Chief **Huáng**, are you free next month the first?

## Expansion Drill

1. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín.

我想请您。

I would like to invite you.

Cue

wǒmen jiā

我们家

our house

Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín dào wǒmen jiā lái chī ge biànfàn.

我想请您到我们家来吃个便饭。

I would like to invite you to our house for a simple meal.

2. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín.

我想请您。

I would like to invite you.

Cue

fànguǎnr

饭馆儿

restaurant

Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín dào fànguǎnr qù chī ge biànfàn.

我想请您到饭馆儿去吃个便饭。

I would like to invite you to go to a restaurant for a simple meal.

3. Tā xiǎng qǐng nín.

他想请您。

I would like to invite you.

Cue

Mínzú Fàndiàn

民族饭店

National Hotel

Tā xiǎng qǐng nín dào Mínzú Fàndiàn qù chī ge biànfàn.

他想请您到民族饭店去吃个便饭。

I would like to invite you to the National Hotel for a simple meal.

4. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín.

我想请您。

I would like to invite you.

Cue

wǒ fùmù jiā

我父母家

my parents house

Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín dào wǒ fùmù jiā lái chī ge biànfàn.

我想请您到我父母家来吃个便饭。

I would like to invite you to my parents house for a simple meal.

5.

Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín.

我想请您。

I would like to invite you.

Cue

Běijīng Fàndiàn

北京饭店

Běijīng Hotel

Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín dào Běijīng Fàndiàn qù chī ge biànfàn.

我想请您到北京饭店去吃个便饭。

I would like to invite you to the Běijīng Hotel for a simple meal.

6.

Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín.

我想请您。

I would like to invite you.

Cue

nèige fànguǎnr

那个饭馆儿

that restaurant

Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín dào nèige fànguǎnr qù chī ge biànfàn.

我想请您到那个饭馆儿去吃个便饭。

I would like to invite you to that restaurant for a simple meal.

7.

Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín.

我想请您。

I would like to invite you.

Cue

wǒ jiā

我家

my home

Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín dào wǒ jiā lái chī ge biànfàn.

我想请您到我家来吃个便饭。

I would like to invite you to my home for a simple meal.



## Response Drill

1. Speaker: Tā zài Táiwān Dàxué gōngzuò ma?

他在台湾大学工作吗？

Does he work at Táiwān University?

Cue

jīngjìxué

经济学

economics

Duì le. Tā zài Táiwān Dàxué jiāo jīngjìxué.

对了。他在台湾大学教经济学。

That's right. He teaches economics at Táiwān University.

2. Tā zài Dézhōu Dàxué gōngzuò ma?

他在德州大学工作吗？

Does he work at the University of Texas?

Cue

lìshǐ

历史

history

Duì le. Tā zài Dézhōu Dàxué jiāo lìshǐ.

对了。他在德州大学教历史。

That's right. He teaches history at the University of Texas.

3. Lǐ Xiānsheng zài Jiāzhōu Dàxué gōngzuò ma?

李先生在加州大学工作吗？

Does Mr. Lǐ work at the University of California?

Cue

zhèngzhìxué

政治学

politics

Duì le. Tā zài Jiāzhōu Dàxué jiāo zhèngzhìxué.

对了。他在加州大学教政治学。

That's right. He teaches political science at the University of California.

4. Chén Xiānsheng zài Bīnzhōu Dàxué gōngzuò ma?

陈先生在宾州大学工作吗？

Does Mr. Chén work at the University of Pennsylvania?

Cue

Zhōngwén

中文

Chinese

Dui le. Tā zài Bīnzhōu Dàxué jiāo Zhōngwén.

对了。他在宾州大学教中文。

That's right. He teaches Chinese at the University of Pennsylvania.

5. Āndésēn Xiānsheng zài Táiwān Dàxué gōngzuò ma?

安德森先生在台湾大学工作吗？

Does Mr. Anderson work at National Taiwan University?

Cue

Yīngguo wénxué

英国文学

British literature

Dui le. Tā zài Táiwān Dàxué jiāo Yīngguo wénxué.

对了。他在台湾大学教英国文学。

That's right. He teaches English literature at National Taiwan University.

6. Wáng Xiānsheng zài Táiwān Dàxué gōngzuò ma?

王先生在台湾大学工作吗？

Does Mr. Wáng work in National Taiwan University?

Cue

Zhōngguo wénxué

中国文学

Chinese literature

Dui le. Tā zài Táiwān Dàxué jiāo Zhōngguo wénxué.

对了。他在台湾大学教中国文学。

That's right. He teaches Chinese literature at National Taiwan University.

7. Zhào Xiǎojie zài Táiwān Dàxué gōngzuò ma?

赵小姐在台湾大学工作吗？

Does Miss Zhào work in National Taiwan University?

Cue

Zhōngguo lishǐ

中国历史  
Chinese history

Dui le. Tā zài Táiwān Dàxué jiāo Zhōngguó lìshǐ.

对了。他在台湾大学教中国历史。

That's right. He teaches Chinese history at National Taiwan University.

## Transformation Drill

1. Wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshào jièshào.

我给你们介绍介绍。

I'll introduce you.

Cue

Wǎng Tóngzhì

王同志

Comrade Wǎng

Wǒ hěn xiǎng gěi nǐmen gēn Wáng Tóngzhì jièshào jièshào.

我很想给你们跟王同志介绍介绍。

I would very much like to introduce you and Comrade Wǎng.

2. Wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshào jièshào.

我给你们介绍介绍。

I'll introduce you.

Cue

Liú Tóngzhì

刘同志

Comrade Liú

Wǒ hěn xiǎng gěi nǐmen gēn Liú Tóngzhì jièshào jièshào.

我很想给你们跟刘同志介绍介绍。

I would very much like to introduce you and Comrade Liú.

3. Wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshào jièshào.

我给你们介绍介绍。

I'll introduce you.

Cue

Zhào Tóngzhì

赵同志

Comrade Zhào

Wǒ hěn xiǎng gěi nǐmen gēn Zhào Tóngzhì jièshào jièshào.

我很想给你们跟赵同志介绍介绍。

I would very much like to introduce you and Comrade Zhào.

4. Wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshào jièshào.

我给你们介绍介绍。

I'll introduce you.

Cue

Zhāng Xiānsheng

张先生

Mr. Zhāng

Wǒ hěn xiǎng gěi nǐmen gēn Zhāng Xiānsheng jièshào jièshào.

我很想给你们跟张先生介绍介绍。

I would very much like to introduce you and Mr. Zhāng.

5.

Wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshào jièshào.

我给你们介绍介绍。

I'll introduce you.

Cue

Yáng Nǚshì

杨女士

Mrs. Yáng

Wǒ hěn xiǎng gěi nǐmen gēn Yǎng Nǚshì jièshào jièshào.

我很想给你们跟杨女士介绍介绍。

I would very much like to introduce you and Mrs. Yáng.

6.

Wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshào jièshào.

我给你们介绍介绍。

I'll introduce you.

Cue

Zhāng Kēzhǎng

张科长

Chief Zhāng

Wǒ hěn xiǎng gěi nǐmen gēn Zhāng Kēzhǎng jièshào jièshào.

我很想给你们跟张科长介绍介绍。

I would very much like to introduce you and Chief Zhāng.

7.

Wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshào jièshào.

我给你们介绍介绍。

I'll introduce you.

Cue

Lǐ Shàoxiào

李少校

Major Li

Wǒ hěn xiǎng gěi nǐmen gēn Lǐ Shàoxiào jièshào jièshào.

我很想给你们跟李少校介绍介绍。

I would very much like to introduce you and Major Li.

## Expansion Drill

1. Tā tīngbujàn.

他听不见。

He can't hear.

Cue

kànbujàn

看不见

Tā búdàn tīngbujàn yě kànbujàn.

他不但听不见也看不见。

Not only can't he hear, [but] he can't see either.

2. Tā shuōbùduì.

他说不对。

He did not say it right.

Cue

tīngbudǒng

听不懂

Tā búdàn shuōbùduì yě tīngbudǒng.

他不但说不对也听不懂。

Not only did he not say it right, [but] he didn't understand it either.

3. Tā chībuhǎo.

他吃不好。

He doesn't eat well.

Cue

hēbuhǎo

喝不好

Tā búdàn chībuhǎo yě hēbuhǎo.

他不但吃不好也喝不好。

Not only he can't eat well, [but] also can't drink well.

4. Tā shuōbùduì.

他说不对。

He didn't say it right.

Cue

xiěbùduì

写不对

Tā búdàn shuōbùduì yě xiěbùduì.

他不但说不对也写不对。

Not only did he said it wrong[ but ]also wrote it wrong.

5.

Tā kànbudǒng.

他看不懂。

He can't read.

Cue

tīngbudǒng

听不懂

Tā búdàn kànbudǒng yě tīngbudǒng.

他不但看不懂也听不懂。

Not only can't he read[ but ]also can't understand.

6.

Tā tīngbudǒng.

他听不懂。

He can't understand.

Cue

shuōbùduì

说不对

Tā búdàn tīngbudǒng yě shuōbùduì.

他不但听不懂也说不对。

Not only did he not understand, [but] he also spoke incorrectly.

7.

Tā kànbujiàn.

他看不见。

He can't see.

Cue

tīngbujàn



听不见

Tā búdàn kànbujiàn yě tīngbujàn.

他不但看不见也听不见。

Not only can't he see [but] also can't hear.

## Combination Drill

1. Tā shuōde bù hǎo. Tā tīngbudǒng.

他说得不好。他听不懂。

He speaks poorly. He can't understand.

Tā búdàn shuōde bù hǎo yě tīngbudǒng.

他不但说得不好也听不懂。

Not only does he speak poorly, [but] he can't understand either.

2. Tā shuōde bù hǎo. Wǒ shuōde bù hǎo.

他说得不好。我说得不好。

He speaks poorly. I speak poorly.

Búdàn tā shuōde bù hǎo wǒ yě shuōde bù hǎo.

不但说得不好我也说得不好。

He not only speaks poorly, [but] I speak poorly too.

3. Tā niànde hǎo. Tā xiěde hǎo.

他念得好。他写得好。

He reads well. He writes well.

Tā búdàn niànde hǎo yě xiěde hǎo.

他不但念得好也写得好。

Not only does he reads well but he also writes well.

4. Tā niànde hǎo. Wǒ niànde hǎo.

他念得好。我念得好。

He reads well. I read well.

Búdàn tā niànde hǎo wǒ yě niànde hǎo.

不但他念得好也念得好。

He not only reads well but also writes well.

5. Tā tīngbudǒng. Tā shuōbuhǎo.

他听不懂。他说不好。

He can't understand. He can't say it well.

Tā búdàn tīngbudǒng yě shuōbuhǎo.

他不但听不懂也说不好。

Not only can he not understand, but he can not speak well.

6. Tā kāide bù hǎo. Wǒ kāide bù hǎo.

他开得不好。我开得不好。

He doesn't drive well. I don't drive well.

Búdàn tā kāide bù hǎo wǒ yě kāide bù hǎo.

不但他开得不好也开得不好。

Not only does he drive badly, but I also drive poorly.

7. Tā kànbujiàn. Tā tīngbudǒng.

他看不见。他听不懂。

He can't see. He can't understand.

Tā búdàn kànbujiàn yě tīngbudǒng.

他不但看不见也听不懂。

He not only can't see but also can't understand.

## Transformation Drill

1. Wǒ bù néng dào Zhōngguo qù. Wǒde Zhōngwén bù xíng.

我不能到中国去。我的中文不行。

I can't go to China. My Chinese isn't good enough.

Wǒ hěn xīwàng dào Zhōngguo qù, búguò kǒngpà wǒde Zhōngwén bù xíng.

我很希望到中国去，不过恐怕我的中文不行。

I hope very much to go to China, but I'm afraid my Chinese isn't good enough.

2. Tā bù kěyǐ xué Zhōngwén. Tā méiyǒu gōngfu.

他不可以学中文。他没有功夫。

He can't learn Chinese. he has no free time.

Tā hěn xīwàng xué Zhōngwén, búguò kǒngpà tā méiyǒu gōngfu.

他很希望学中文，不过恐怕他没有功夫。

He (would love) really hopes to learn Chinese, but I'm afraid he doesn't have free time.

3. Wǒ bù kěyǐ mǎi dōngxi. Wǒde qián bú gòu.

我不可以买东西。我的钱不够。

I can't buy anything. I don't have enough money.

Wǒ hěn xīwàng mǎi dōngxi, búguò kǒngpà wǒde qián bú gòu.

我很希望买东西，不过恐怕我的钱不够。

I (would love) really hope to buy something, but I'm afraid I don't have enough money.

4. Wǒ bù néng qù kàn péngyou. Wǒ méiyǒu gōngfu.

我不能去看朋友。我没有功夫。

can't go see my friends. I have no free time .

Wǒ hěn xīwàng qù kàn péngyou, búguò kǒngpà wǒ méiyǒu gōngfu.

我很希望去看朋友，不过恐怕我没有功夫。

I (would love) really hope to visit my friends, but I'm afraid I don't have free time.

5. Wǒ bù néng shuō Zhōngguo huà. Wǒde Zhōngguo huà bù xíng.

我不能说中国话。我的中国话不行。

I can not speak Chinese. My Chinese is not good.

Wǒ hěn xīwàng shuō Zhōngguo huà, búguò kǒngpà wǒde Zhōngguo huà bù xíng.

我很希望说中国话，不过恐怕我的中国话不行。

I (would love) really hope to speak Chinese, but I'm afraid my Chinese is not good enough.

6. Wǒ bù néng gēn tā qù chī fàn. Wǒ méiyǒu shíjiān.

我不能跟他去吃饭。我没有时间。

I can't go to dinner with him. I do not have time.

Wǒ hěn xīwàng gēn tā qù chī fàn, búguò kǒngpà wǒ méiyǒu shíjiān.

我很希望跟他去吃饭，不过恐怕我没有时间。

I (would love) really hope to go to dinner with him, but I'm afraid I don't have time.

7. Wǒ bù kěyǐ qù kāi huì. Wǒ tīngbudǒng tāmen shuōde huà.

我不可以可以去开会。我听不懂他们说的话。

I can't go to the meeting. I cannot understand what they were saying.

Wǒ hěn xīwàng qù kāi huì, búguò kǒngpà wǒ tīngbudǒng tāmen shuōde huà.

我很希望去开会，不过恐怕我听不懂他们说的话。

I (would love) really hope to go to a meeting, but I'm afraid I can't understand a word they say.

## Transformation Drill

1. Nǐde chá gēn tāde yíyàng duō.

你的茶跟他的一样多。

You have as much tea as he does.

Cue

hē

喝

drink

Nǐ hē chá, hēde gēn tā yíyàng duō.

你喝茶，喝得跟他一样多。

You drink as much tea as he does.

2. Nǐde dōngxi gēn tāde yíyàng piányi.

你的东西跟他的一样便宜。

Your stuff is as cheap as his.

Cue

mǎi

买

buy

Nǐ mǎi dōngxi, mǎide gēn tā yíyàng piányi.

你买东西，买得跟他的一样便宜。

You buy something as cheap as he his.

3. Nǐde shū gēn tāde yíyàng duō.

你的书跟他的一样多。

You have as many books as he does.

Cue

niàn

念

read

Nǐ niàn shū, niànde gēn tā yíyàng duō.

你念书，念得跟他的一样多。

You read as much as he does.

4. Nǐde shū gēn tāde yíyàng hǎo.

你的书跟他的一样好。

Your book is as good as his.

Cue

jiāo

教

teach

Nǐ jiāo shū, jiāode gēn tā yíyàng hǎo.

你教书，教得跟他的一样好。

You teach as well as he does.

5.

Nǐde fàn gēn tāde yíyàng duō.

你的饭跟他的一样多。

You have as much rice as he does.

Cue

chī

吃

eat

Nǐ chī fàn, chīde gēn tā yíyàng duō.

你吃饭，吃得跟他的一样多。

You eat as much as he does.

6.

Nǐde diànhuà gēn tāde yíyàng duō.

你的电话跟他的一样多。

You have as many calls as he does.

Cue

dǎ

打

call

Nǐ dǎ diànhuà, dǎde gēn tā yíyàng duō.

你打电话，打得跟他的一样多。

You call as much as he does.

7.

Nǐde Zhōngguó huà gēn tāde yíyàng hǎo.

你的中国话跟他的一样好。

Your Chinese is as good as his.

Cue

shuō

说  
speak

Nǐ shuō Zhōngguó huà, shuōde gēn tā yíyàng hǎo.

你说中国话，说得跟他的一样好。

You speak Chinese as well as he does.



## Response Drill

1. Nǐ qǐng le jǐ ge rén?  
你请了几个人?  
How many people did you invite?

Wǒ méi qǐng jǐ ge rén.  
我没请几个人。  
I didn't invite many at all.

2. Tā hē shénme?  
他喝什么?  
What does he drink?

Tā bù hē shénme.  
他不喝什么。  
He doesn't drink much of anything.

3. Nǐ qǐng shéi?  
你请谁?  
Who do you invite?

Wǒ bù qǐng shéi.  
我不请谁。  
I'm not inviting anyone.

4. Tā mǎi le jǐ běn shū?  
他买了几本书?  
How many books does he buy?

Tā méi mǎi jǐ běn shū.  
他没买几本书。  
He didn't buy many books.

5. Nǐ qǐng shénme rén?  
你请什么人?  
What kind of people do you invite?

Wǒ bù qǐng shénme rén.

我不请什么人。

I don't invite anyone.

6. Tā dào nǎr qù le?

他到哪儿去了？

Where did he go?

Tā méi dào nǎr qù.

他没到哪儿去。

He didn't go anywhere.

7. Nǐ yǒu duōshao qián?

你有多少钱？

How much money do you have?

Wǒ méiyǒu duōshao qián.

我没有多少钱。

I don't have much money.

## Unit 4

### References

#### Reference List

1. A: [Huáng Kēzhǎng, Huáng Tàitai, huānyíng, huānyíng.](#)  
黃科長，黃太太，歡迎歡迎。  
Section Chief [Huáng](#), Mrs. [Huáng](#)—welcome.  
A: [Qǐng jìn.](#)  
請進。  
Please come in.
2. B: [Fù Tàitai, nín hǎo?](#)  
富太太，您好？  
How are you, Mrs. Franklin?  
B: [Zhè shì yìdiǎn xiǎo yìsi.](#)  
這是一點小意思。  
Here is a small token of appreciation.
3. B: [Wǒ zhīdào nín xǐhuan shānshuǐ huà.](#)  
我知道您喜歡山水畫。  
I know you like landscape paintings.  
B: [Tèbié qǐng péngyou gěi nín huà le yìzhāng.](#)  
特別請朋友給您畫了一張。  
I asked a friend to paint one especially for you.  
\*A: [Nín zhēn shì tài kèqì. Xièxie.](#)  
您真是太客氣。謝謝。  
You are really too polite. Thanks.  
A: [Lái, wǒ gěi nimen jièshào jièshào.](#)  
來，我給你們介紹介紹。  
Come. I'll introduce the two of you.
4. A: [Zhèiwei shì He Jiàoshòu, zài Táidà jiāo jīngjìxué.](#)  
這位是何教授，在台大教經濟學。  
This is Professor Hollins, who teaches economics at [Táiwān](#) University.  
A: [Hé Jiàoshòu, zhèiwei shì Huáng Kēzhǎng, zài Táiwān Yínháng gōngzuò.](#)  
何教授，這位是黃科長，在臺灣銀行工作。  
Professor Hollins, this is Section Chief [Huáng](#), who works at the Bank of [Táiwān](#).  
A: [Zhèiwei shì Huáng Tàitai.](#)

5. B: 這位是黃太太。  
This is Mrs. Huáng.  
Jiǔyǎng, jiǔyǎng.  
久仰，久仰。  
Glad to meet you.
- B: Nín lái le duō jiǔ le?  
您來了多久了？  
How long have you been here?
- C: Jiǔyǎng. Wǒ gāng lái liǎngge yuè.  
久仰。我剛來兩個月。  
Glad to meet you. It has been only two months since I came.
6. C: Hái yǒu hěn duō bù shúxide dìfang.  
還有很多不熟悉的地方。  
There is still much I'm not familiar with.
- C: Yǐhòu hái yào xiàng nín qǐngjiào.  
以後還要向您請教。  
Later I'll need to request more advice from you.
7. B: Nǎli, nǎli.  
哪裏，哪裏。  
Not at all, not at all.
- B: Xīwàng yǐhòu yǒu jīhuì duō jiànmiàn.  
希望以後有機會多見面。  
I hope that in the future we will have an opportunity to meet more.
8. fāngfǎ  
方法  
method, way, means
9. fǎzi  
法子  
method, way
10. huà'er  
畫兒  
painting (Běijīng pronunciation)
11. qǐng zuò  
請坐  
please sit down
12. shèhuìxué  
社會學  
sociology
13. túshūguǎn

14.

圖書館

library

zuò

坐

to sit

## Vocabulary

fāngfǎ	方法	method, way, means
fǎzi	法子	method, way (Běijīng)
huà	畫	to paint
huà(r) (yìzhāng)	畫兒 (一張)	a painting
huānyíng	歡迎	to welcome
jiànmiàn	見面	to meet someone, to see someone
jiàoshòu	教授	professor
jìn	進	to enter
jiǔyǎng	久仰	glad to meet you
qǐngjiào	請教	to ask advice, to consult
qǐng zuo	請坐	please sit down
shānshuǐ	山水	mountains and rivers, scenery with hills and water
shānshuǐ (yìzhāng)	huà(r) 山水畫兒 (一張)	landscape painting
shèhuìxué	社會學	sociology
shóuxi	熟悉	to be familiar
Tāidà	台大	Táiwān University
tèbié	特別	especially
túshūguǎn	圖書館	library
xiang	向	towards; from
xiǎo yìsi	小意思	a token of appreciation
zuo	坐	to sit
biǎoyǎn	表演	to give a demonstration
bú dà hǎo mǎi	不大好買	not very easy to buy
duì...shóuxi	對...熟悉	to be familiar with
Jiàoyùbù	教育部	Ministry of Education
mǎi cài	買菜	to buy groceries
sòng gěi	送給	to give
xǐ yīshang	洗衣裳	to wash clothes
yánjiū	研究	to study, to do research
yòuéryuǎn	幼兒園	kindergarten
yóu huà	油畫	oil painting

zhǎnlǎn	展覽	exhibition
zhàogu	照顧	to take care of
zuò fan	做飯	to cook
zuòyè	作業	homework

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1-2

1. A: **Huáng Kēzhǎng, Huáng Tàitai, huānyíng, huānyíng.**  
黃科長，黃太太，歡迎歡迎。  
Section Chief **Huáng**, Mrs. **Huáng**—welcome.
- A: **Qǐng jìn.**  
請進。  
Please come in.
2. B: **Fù Tàitai, nín hǎo?**  
富太太，您好？  
How are you, Mrs. Franklin?
- B: **Zhè shì yídiǎn xiǎo yìsi.**  
這是一點小意思。  
Here is a small token of appreciation.

**Xiǎo yìsi**: You have already seen **yìsi** in the expression **yǒu yìsi**, “to be interesting.” **Yìsi** means “meaning,” “significance,” “intention,” “idea.” In No. 2, above, **xiǎo yìsi** (literally, “small [good] intent”) is an idiomatic expression meaning “a small (token of my) feelings of appreciation.”

### Notes on №3

3. B: **Wǒ zhīdào nín xǐhuan shānshuǐ huà.**  
我知道您喜歡山水畫。  
I know you like landscape paintings.
- B: **Tèbié qǐng péngyou gěi nín huàle yízhāng.**  
特別請朋友給您畫了一張。  
I asked a friend to paint one especially for you.
- \*A: **Nín zhēn shì tài kèqì. Xièxie.**  
您真是太客氣。謝謝。  
You are really too polite. Thanks.
- A: **Lái, wǒ gěi nimen jièshào jièshào.**  
來，我給你們介紹介紹。  
Come. I'll introduce the two of you.

**Shānshuǐ**, “mountains and rivers,” “scenery with hills and water,” is a compound made up of **shān**, “mountain,” and **shuǐ**, “water.” In **shānshuǐ**, **shuǐ** refers to rivers or lakes.

**Tèbié qǐng péngyou gěi nín huàle yízhāng**: Notice that the verb **huà** is followed by the completion marker **le**. For this reason, the sentence means that the painting has been finished. The completed-action sense of **huàle** might be captured by looser translations of the sentence, like “I asked a friend, and he painted one for you” and “I asked a friend, who painted one for you.”



The sentence **Wǒ tèbié qǐng péngyou gěi nín huà yìzhāng**, without **le**, does not indicate whether the painting has been finished or not. The sentence might be used when a speaker thinks that a painting has not yet been finished.

**Zhēn shì tài kèqì**, “really too polite,” is a variation of **Nín zhēn tài kèqì**. **Shì** is sometimes used simply to show that the subject of a sentence fits the description that follows.

### Notes on №4

4. A: **Zhèiwei shì He Jiàoshòu, zài Táidà jiāo jīngjìxué.**  
 這位是何教授，在台大教經濟學。  
 This is Professor Hollins, who teaches economics at **Táiwān** University.
- A: **Hé Jiàoshòu, zhèiwei shì Huáng Kēzhǎng, zài Táiwān Yínháng gōngzuò.**  
 何教授，這位是黃科長，在臺灣銀行工作。  
 Professor Hollins, this is Section Chief **Huáng**, who works at the Bank of **Táiwān**.
- A: **Zhèiwei shì Huáng Tàitai.**  
 這位是黃太太。  
 This is Mrs. **Huáng**.

**Jiàoshòu**, “professor”: The first syllable in this word means “teaching.” Notice that the tone on **jiào** is different from the tone on the verb “to teach,” **jiāo**.

**Táidà** is the abbreviation for **Táiwān Dàxué**, “**Táiwān** University.”

**Zhèiwei shì Huáng Kēzhǎng, zài Táiwān Yínháng gōngzuò** looks like a run-on sentence, with the pronoun **tā** dropped from the second part of the sentence. In Chinese, this is a perfectly good way to add a second clause to a sentence. To characterize a person or thing just identified, the Chinese simply attach a descriptive sentence and omit the subject. You have already learned this pattern: **Wángfūjǐng Dàjiē yǒu yige Xīnhuá Shūdiàn, hěn dà**. Here are some additional examples:

**Tā tàitai shì Riběn rén, xiànzài zài Shànghǎi.**

他太太是日本人，現在在上海。

His wife is Japanese; she is in Shanghai now.

**Wǒ yǒu yige péngyou xìng Wú, zài Dōnghǎi Dàxué jiāo shū, míngnián xiǎng dào Měiguó qù.**

我有一個朋友姓吾，在東海大學教書明年想到美國去。

I have a friend named **Wú** who teaches at **Dōnghǎi** University. He is planning to go to America next year.

### Notes on №5

5. B: **Jiǔyǎng, jiǔyǎng.**  
 久仰，久仰。  
 Glad to meet you.
- B: **Nín lái le duó jiǔ le?**  
 您來了多久了？

- How long have you been here?  
 C: Jiǔyǎng. Wǒ gāng lái liǎngge yuè.  
 久仰。我剛來兩個月。  
 Glad to meet you. It has been only two months since I came.

Jiǔyǎng means, literally, “I have looked up to you for a long time” or “I have looked forward to meeting you.” It is used when meeting someone of higher status. Because jiǔyǎng implies a status difference, the expression is not often used in the PRC.

Gāng, “only just”: you have learned the sentence Wǒ lái liǎngge yuè le, “I have been here two months now.” In the last sentence of exchange 5, notice that no le is needed. The focus has shifted from the coming to the shortness of the period; that is, the focus is on gāng.

### Notes on №6

6. C: Háiyǒu hěnduō bùshúxide dìfang.  
 還有很多不熟悉的地方。  
 There is still much I’m not familiar with.  
 C: Yǐhòu hái yào xiàng nín qǐngjiào.  
 以後還要向您請教。  
 Later I’ll need to request more advice from you.

Shóuxi, “to be familiar [with the details of something],” is also pronounced shúxi.

Dìfang means “areas,” “aspects” (NOT “places”) in the first sentence of No. 6. Thus shóuxide dìfang means “areas/aspects one is familiar with.”

Xiàng nín qǐngjiào is a polite way of requesting advice from someone—for example, a teacher, an advisor, or a senior colleague. Here, the prepositional verb xiàng means “from.” (You learned xiàng as “towards” in the Directions Module.) Literally, it means “facing.” Less formally, you may also say gēn nín qǐngjiào. Qǐngjiào (literally, “request instruction”) may be reduplicated or used with an object in sentences like the following:

Wǒ yào gēn nín qǐngjiào yíjiàn shì.

我要跟您請教一件事。

I would like to consult with you about something.

Wǒ yào gēn nín qǐngjiào qǐngjiào.

我要跟您請教請教。

I would like to consult with you about something.

Yǐhòu hái yào...: In this sentence, hái means “still more,” or “additionally.”

### Notes on №7

7. B: Nálì, nálì.  
 哪裏，哪裏。  
 Not at all, not at all.  
 B: Xīwàng yǐhòu yǒu jīhuì duō jiànmiàn.

希望以後有機會多見面。

I hope that in the future we will have an opportunity to meet more.

### Note on №7

The adjectival verb **duō**, “to be much,” “to be many,” is used in No. 7 as an adverb meaning “much,” “more.” **Shǎo** may be used in the same way.

Kāfēi bù néng duō hē.

咖啡不能多喝。

One must not drink too much coffee.

Nǐ duō chī diǎnr ba.

你多吃點兒吧。

Eat a little more.

Tā duō zhù le liǎng tiān.

他多住了兩天。

He stayed two days longer.

Wǒ shǎo mǎi le yì zhāng piào.

我少買了一張票。

I bought one ticket too few. (more literally, “I under-bought by one ticket.”)

Tā shuō tā yào shǎo chī.

他說他要少吃。

He says he wants to eat less (cut down on eating).

### Vocabulary booster

8. fāngfǎ  
方法  
method, way, means
9. fǎzi  
法子  
method, way
10. huà  
畫兒  
painting (Běijīng pronunciation)
11. qǐng zuò  
請坐  
please sit down
12. shèhuìxué  
社會學  
sociology

13. túshūguǎn  
圖書館  
library
14. zuò  
坐  
to sit

Here are a few sentences illustrating some of the words:

Nǐde shèhuìxué xuéde zhènmehǎo! Nǐ yòng shénme fāngfǎ niànde?

你的社會學學得怎麼好！你用什麼方法念得？

You learned your sociology so well! How do you study it?

Měitiān zài túshūguǎn sìge zhōngtóu.

每天在圖書館四個鐘頭。

I spend four hours in the library everyday.

Ài! Wǒ méiyǒu fǎzi zài túshūguǎn zuò sìge zhōngtóu.

唉！我沒有法子在圖書館坐四個鐘頭。

Boy! There's no way I can sit in the library for four hours.

## Vocabulary Booster

### Opposites

安靜	ānjìng	to be peaceful
長	cháng	to be long
聰明	cōngmíng	to be intelligent, to be bright
大	dà	to be large
到達	dàodá	to arrive, to reach
對	duì	to be correct
乾淨	gānjìng (gānjīng)	to be clean
高	gāo	to be tall
高興	gāoxìng	to be happy
工作	gōngzuò	to work
好	hǎo	to be good, to be well
簡單	jiǎndān	to be simple
健康	jiànkāng	to be healthy
寬	kuān	to be wide, to be broad
來	lái	to come
累	lèi	to be tired

冷	lěng	to be cold
涼快	liángkuai	to be cool
滿	mǎn	to be full
慢	màn	to be slow
忙	máng	to be busy
年輕	niánqīng	to be young
便宜	piányi	to be inexpensive, to be cheap
漂亮	piàoliang	to be beautiful
強	qiáng	to be strong
容易	róngyi	to be easy
生	shēng	to be born
甜	tián	to be sweet
停	tíng	to stop, to halt
推	tuī	to push
遠	yuǎn	to be far
早	zǎo	to be early
真	zhēn	to be true, to be real, to be genuine
熱鬧	rènao	to be lively, to be bustling, to be noisy
短	duǎn	to be short
笨	bèn	to be stupid, to be foolish
小	xiǎo	to be small
離開	líkāi	to leave
錯	cuò	to make a mistake, to be wrong
髒	zāng	to be dirty
矮	ǎi	to be short (of stature)
難過	nánguò	to feel sorry, to feel bad, to be grieved
休息	xiūxi	to rest, to relax
壞	huài	to be bad
複雜	fùzá (fūzá)	to be complicated, to be complex
有病	yǒu bìng	to be ill, to be sick
窄	zhǎi	to be narrow
去	qù	to go
有精神	yǒu jīngshen	to be lively, to be spirited, to be vigorous

热	rè	to be hot
暖和	nuǎnhuo	to be warm
空	kōng	to be vacant, to be empty
快	kuài	to be fast
闲	xián	to be idle, to be unoccupied
老	lǎo	to be old (in years)
贵	guì	to be expensive
难看	nánkàn	to be ugly
弱	ruò	to be weak
难	nán	to be difficult
死	sǐ	to die
苦	kǔ	to be bitter
走	zǒu	to go, to walk
拉	lā	to pull
近	jìn	to be near
晚	wǎn	to be late
假	jiǎ	to be false, to be fake, to be artificial

## Drills

### Transformation Drill

1. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng ta huà yìzhāng huà.  
我想请他画一张画儿。  
I'm thinking of asking him to paint a painting.

Wǒ tèbié qǐng ta huà le yìzhāng huà.  
我特别请他画了一张画儿。  
I asked him especially to paint a painting.
2. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng ta chī yí cì Zhōngguó fàn.  
我想请他吃一次中国饭。  
I'm thinking of inviting him to a Chinese meal.

Wǒ tèbié qǐng ta chī le yí cì Zhōngguó fàn.  
我特别请他吃了一顿中国饭。  
I invited him especially to eat a Chinese meal.
3. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng ta mǎi liǎngzhāng Táiběi dìtú.  
我想请他买两张台北地图。  
I'm thinking of asking him to buy two maps of Taipei.

Wǒ tèbié qǐng ta mǎi liǎngzhāng Táiběi dìtú.  
我特别请他买了两张台北地图。  
I asked him especially to buy two maps of Taipei.
4. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng ta jiāo liǎngnián.  
我想请他教两年。  
I'm thinking of asking him to teach for two years.

Wǒ tèbié qǐng ta jiāo le liǎngnián.  
我特别请他教了两年。  
I asked him especially to teach for two years.
5. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng ta huà yìzhāng Zhōngguó huà.  
我想请他画一张中国画儿。

I'm thinking of asking him to draw a Chinese painting.

Wǒ tèbié qǐng ta huà le yìzhāng Zhōngguó huà.

我特别请他画了一张中国画儿。

I asked him especially to draw a Chinese painting.

6. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng ta lái yí cì.

我想请他来一次。

I'm thinking of asking him to come once.

Wǒ tèbié qǐng ta lái le yí cì.

我特别请他来了一次。

I especially invited him here once.

7. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng ta kàn yí cì diànyǐng.

我想请他看一次电影。

I'm thinking of inviting him to a movie.

Wǒ tèbié qǐng ta kàn le yí cì diànyǐng.

我特别请他看了一次电影。

I asked him especially to watch the movie once.



## Combination Drill

1. Tā shì Hé Jiàoshòu. Tā zài Táidà jiāo jīngjìxué.

他是何教授。他在台大教经济学。

He is Professor Hé. He teaches economics at Táiwān University.

Zhèiwèi shì Hé Jiàozhòu, zài Táidà jiāo jīngjìxué.

这位是何教授，在台大教经济学。

This is Professor Hé, who teaches economics at Táiwān University.

2. Tā shì Wáng Kēzhǎng. Tā zài Wàijiāobù gōngzuò.

她是王科长。她在外交部工作。

She is Section Chief Wáng. She works for the Foreign Office.

Zhèiwèi shì Wáng Kēzhǎng, zài Wàijiāobù gōngzuò.

这位是王科长，在外交部工作。

This is Section Chief Wáng, who works for the Foreign Office.

3. Tā shì Shěn Shàoxiào. Tā zài Wǔguānchù gōngzuò.

他是沈少校。他在武官处工作。

He is Major Shěn. He works for the Military Attaché.

Zhèiwèi shì Shěn Shàoxiào, zài Wǔguānchù gōngzuò.

这位是沈少校，在武官处工作。

This is Major Shěn, who works for the Military Attaché.

4. Tā shì Lín Jiàoshòu. Tā zài Jiāzhōu Dàxué jiāo shū.

他是林教授。他在加州大学教书。

He is Professor Lín. He teaches at the University of California.

Zhèiwèi shì Lín Jiàoshòu, zài Jiāzhōu Dàxué jiāo shū.

这位是林教授，在加州大学教书。

This is Professor Lín, who teaches at the University of California.

5. Tā shì Lǚ Kēzhǎng. Tā zài Táiwān Yínháng gōngzuò.

他是吕科长。他在台湾银行工作。

He is Section Chief Lǚ. He works in Taiwan Bank.

Zhèiwèi shì Lǚ Kēzhǎng, zài Táiwān Yínháng gōngzuò.

这位是吕科长，在台湾银行工作。

This is Section Chief **Lǚ**, who works in Taiwan Bank.

6. **Tā shì Liú Xiǎojiě. Tā zài Táidà niàn shū.**

她是刘小姐。她在台大念书。

He is Miss **Liú**. She is studying at National Taiwan University.

**Zhèiwèi shì Liú Xiǎojiě, zài Táidà niàn shū.**

这位是刘小姐，在台大念书。

This is Miss **Liú**, who is studying at National Taiwan University.

7. **Tā shì Hán Jiàoshòu. Tā zài Táidà jiāo zhèngzhixué.**

他是韩教授。他在台大教政治学。

He is Professor **Hán**. He teaches political science at National Taiwan University.

**Zhèiwèi shì Hán Jiàoshòu, zài Táidà jiāo zhèngzhixué.**

这位是韩教授，在台大教政治学。

This is Professor **Hán**, who teaches political science at National Taiwan University.

## Transformation Drill

1. Yǒu hěn duō dìfāng wǒ bù shóuxi.

有很多地方我不熟悉。

There is much I'm not familiar with.

Wǒ hái yǒu hěn duō bù shóuxide dìfāng.

我还有很多不熟悉的地方。

There is still much I'm not familiar with.

2. Zài zhèr, yǒu hěn duō rén bù hē chá.

在这儿，有很多人喝茶。

There are many people here who don't drink tea.

Zài zhèr, yǒu hěn duō bù hē cháde rén.

在这儿，有很多不喝茶的人。

There are many non-tea drinking people here.

3. Yǒu hěn duō dìfāng wǒ tīngbudǒng.

有很多地方我听不懂。

There were a lot of parts I don't understand.

Wǒ hái yǒu hěn duō tīngbudǒngde dìfāng.

我还有很多听不懂的地方。

There is still a lot I don't understand.

4. Zài zhèr, yǒu hěn duō rén bú kàn bào.

在这儿，有很多人看报。

There are a lot of people here who don't read the newspaper.

Zài zhèr, yǒu hěn duō bú kàn bàode rén.

在这儿，有很多不看报。

Here, there are a lot of people who don't read the newspaper.

5. Zài zhèr, yǒu hěn duō rén bú huì shuō Zhōngguó huà.

在这儿，有很多人不会说中国话。

Here, there are many people who do not speak Chinese.

Zài zhèr, yǒu hěn duō bú huì shuō Zhōngguó huàde rén.

在这儿，有很多不会说中国话的人。

Here, there are many people who do not speak Chinese.

6. Yǒu hěn duō dìfāng wǒ bú huì zuò.

有很多地方我不会做。

There are a lot of parts I can't do.

Wǒ hái yǒu hěn duō bú huì zuòde dìfāng.

我还有很多不会做的地方。

There are still a lot of parts I can't do.

7. Yǒu hěn duō dìfāng wǒ kànbudǒng.

有很多地方我看不懂。

There are many parts I can't read.

Wǒ hái yǒu hěn duō kànbudǒngde dìfāng.

我还有很多我看不懂的地方。

There are still a lot of parts I can't read.

## Transformation Drill

1. Wǒmen yǐhòu jiànmiànde jīhuì hěn duō.

我们以后见面的机会很多。

We will have many more opportunities to meet in the future.

Xīwàng yǐhòu yǒu jīhuì duō jiànmiàn.

希望以后有机会多见面。

I hope that in the future we'll have an opportunity to meet more.

2. Wǒ yǐhòu xiàng nín qǐngjiàode jīhuì hěn duō.

我以后向您请教的机会很多。

I'll have many more opportunities to ask you for advice in the future.

Xīwàng yǐhòu yǒu jīhuì duō xiàng nín qǐngjiào.

希望以后有机会多向您请教。

I hope that in the future I'll have the opportunity to ask you for more advice.

3. Wǒmen yǐhòu shuō Zhōngguó huàde jīhuì hěn duō.

我们以后说中国话的机会很多。

We'll have many more opportunities to speak Chinese in the future.

Xīwàng yǐhòu yǒu jīhuì duō shuō Zhōngguó huà.

希望以后有机会多说中国话。

I hope that in the future I hope to have the opportunity to speak Chinese more often.

4. Wǒ yǐhòu xué Zhōngwénde jīhuì hěn duō.

我以后学中文的机会很多。

I'll have many more opportunities to learn Chinese in the future.

Xīwàng yǐhòu yǒu jīhuì duō xué Zhōngwén.

希望以后有机会多学中文。

I hope that in the future I'll have the opportunity to learn more Chinese.

5. Wǒmen yǐhòu lái de jīhuì hěn duō.

我们以后的机会很多。

We'll have many more chances to come in the future.

Xīwàng yǐhòu yǒu jīhuì duō lái.

希望以后有机会多来。

I hope that in the future I'll have the opportunity to come more often.

6. Wǒmen yǐhòu zài yìqǐde jīhuì hěn duō.

我们以后在一起的机会很多。

We'll have many more opportunities to be together in the future.

Xīwàng yǐhòu yǒu jīhuì duō zài yìqǐ.

希望以后有机会多在一起。

I hope that in the future I'll have the opportunity to spend more time together.

7. Wǒ yǐhòu lǚxíngde jīhuì hěn duō.

我以后旅行的机会很多。

I'll have many more opportunities to travel in the future.

Xīwàng yǐhòu yǒu jīhuì duō lǚxíng.

希望以后有机会多旅行。

I hope that in the future I'll have the opportunity to travel more.

## Expansion Drill

1. Huáng Kēzhǎng, huānyíng, huānyíng.

黄科长，欢迎欢迎。

Section Chief Huáng, welcome, welcome.

Cue

zuò

坐

Huáng Kēzhǎng, huānyíng, huānyíng. Qǐng jìn, qǐng jìnlai zuò.

黄科长，欢迎欢迎。请进，请进来坐。

Section Chief Huáng, welcome, welcome. Please come in and sit down.

2. Wáng Xiǎojiě, nín hǎo?

王小姐，您好？

Miss Wáng, how are you?

Cue

zuòzuò

坐坐

Wáng Xiǎojiě, nín hǎo? Qǐng jìn, qǐng jìnlai zuòzuò.

王小姐，您好？请进，请进来坐坐。

Miss Wáng, how are you? Please come in, please come in and have a seat.

3. Lǐ Xiānsheng, nín hǎo?

李先生，您好？

Mr. Lǐ, how are you?

Cue

hē yìdiǎn chá

喝一点茶

Lǐ Xiānsheng, nín hǎo? Qǐng jìn, qǐng jìnlai hē yìdiǎn chá.

李先生，您好？请进，请进来喝一点茶。

Mr. Lǐ, how are you? Please come in, please come in and have some tea.

4. Wú Kēzhǎng, nín hǎo?

吾科长，您好？

Chief Wú, how are you?

Cue

zuò

坐

Wú Kēzhǎng, nín hǎo? Qǐng jìn, qǐng jìnlai zuò.

吾科长，您好？请进，请进来坐。

Chief Wú, how are you? Please come in, please come in and sit down.

5. Zhào Tàitai, huānyíng, huānyíng.

赵太太，欢迎欢迎。

Mrs. Zhào, welcome, welcome.

Cue

zuò

坐

Zhào Tàitai, huānyíng, huānyíng. Qǐng jìn, qǐng jìnlai zuò.

赵太太，欢迎欢迎请进，请进来坐。

Mrs. Zhào, welcome, welcome. Please come in and sit down.

6. Zhāng Xiānsheng, Zhāng Tàitai, nín hǎo?

张先生，张太太，您好？

Mr. Zhāng, Mrs. Zhāng, how are you?

Cue

zuò yihuǐr

坐一会儿

Zhāng Xiānsheng, Zhāng Tàitai, nín hǎo? Qǐng jìn, qǐng jìnlai zuò yihuǐr.

张先生，张太太，您好？请进，请进来坐一会儿。

Mr. Zhāng, Mrs. Zhāng, how are you? Please come in and sit down for a while.

7. Qián Kēzhǎng, hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn.

干科长，好久不见。

Chief Qián, long time no see.

Cue

zuòzuò



坐坐

Qián Kēzhǎng, hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn. Qǐng jìn, qǐng jìnlái zuòzuò.

干科长，好久不见。请进，请进来坐坐坐。

Chief Qián, long time no see. Please come in, please come in and sit down.

## Unit 5

### References

#### Reference List

- B: Wài.  
喂  
Hello.

A: Wài, shì Wàijiāobù ma?  
喂，是外交部嗎？  
Hello. Is this the Ministry of Foreign Affairs?

A: Wǒ yào zhǎo Lín Sīzhǎng shuō huà.  
我要找林司長說話。  
I want to speak with Department Chief Lín.
- B: Nín shì nǎr a?  
您是哪兒？  
Who is this?

A: Wǒ xìng Lèkèláiěr. Wǒ shì Fǎguó Dàshìguǎnde Shāngwù Jīngjìguān.  
我姓勒克萊爾。我是法國大使館的商務經濟官。  
My name is Leclair. I am the Commercial/Economics Officer from the French Embassy.

B: Nín děngyíděng, wǒ gěi nín kànkàn tā zài bu zài.  
您等一等，我給您看看他在不在。  
Wait a moment. I'll see whether he is here or not.
- B: Wài, tā zhèihuǐr bú zài. Nín yào liú ge huà ma?  
喂，他這會兒不在。您要留個話兒嗎？  
Hello. He is not here at the moment. Would you like to leave a message?

A: Láojià, tā huílai de shíhou, nín qǐng ta gěi wǒ dǎ ge diànhuà.  
勞駕，他回來的時候，您請他給我打個電話。  
When he comes back, please ask him to give me a phone call.
- B: Hǎo, qǐng nín bǎ nín de diànhuà hàomǎ gào sòng wǒ. Wǒ xiěxià lái.  
好，請您把您的電話號兒告訴我，我寫下來。  
All right. Please tell me your phone number. I'll write it down.

A: Wǒ de diànhuà shì wǔ èr yāo sān sān yāo.  
我的电话是五二幺三三幺  
My phone number is 521-331.
- C: Duìbuqǐ, nǐ gāngcǎi géi wǒ dǎ diànhuà, wǒ bú zài.

- 對不起。你剛才給我打電話，我不在。  
I'm sorry. When you called me just now, I wasn't in.
- C: Nǐ yǒu shì ma?  
你有事嗎？  
Can I help you with something?
- A: Shì a! Wǒ nàitiān gēn nín yuēhǎole míngtiān shídiǎn dào nín bàngōngshì qu tán-tán.  
是啊！我那天跟您約好了明天十點到您辦公室去談談。  
Yes, you can. The other day I made an appointment with you to go to your office at ten o'clock tomorrow for a talk.
6. A: Yīnwei míngtiān zǎoshang wǒ yǒu yíjiàn yào jǐnde shì, suǒyì xiǎng wèn nín wǒmen néng bu néng gǎi dào xiàwǔ.  
因為明天早上我有要緊的事，所以想問您我們能不能改到下午。  
Because I have an urgent business matter tomorrow morning, I want to ask you whether we can change it [the appointment] to the afternoon.
- \*C: Xiàwǔ shénme shíhou?  
下午什麼時候？  
What time in the afternoon?
- A: Nín kàn xiàwǔ sān-sidiǎn zěnmeyàng? Duì nín fāngbian bu fāngbian?  
您看下午三四點怎麼樣？對您方便不方便？  
What do you think of three or four in the afternoon? Is that convenient for you?
- C: Sidiǎn bǐ sāndiǎn hǎo. Wǒ sāndiǎn zhōng děi kāi huì.  
四點比三點好。我三點中得開會。  
Four would be better than three. I have to attend a meeting at three o'clock.
- A: Hǎo ba. Nà míngtiān sidiǎn zhōng jiàn.  
好吧。那明天四點鐘見。  
All right. Well then, see you at four o'clock tomorrow.
- C: Hǎo, wǒ sidiǎn zhōng děng nǐ.  
好，我四點鐘等你。  
All right. I'll wait for you at four o'clock.
7. hái shì  
還是  
still
8. wàiguó  
外國  
foreign, abroad
9. wàiguó rén  
外國人  
foreigner (non-Chinese)
10. wūzi (yìjiān)

11.	屋子 (一間)
	room
	yāo
	么
	one (telephone pronunciation)

## Vocabulary

bǎ	把	(prepositional verb which indicates the direct object)
bàngōngshì	辦公室	office
gǎi	改	to change
gǎi dào	改到	to change to
gāngcái	剛才	just now, a short time ago
háishi	還是	still
hàomǎ(r)	號碼(兒)	number
jīngjìguān	經濟官	economics officer
liú	留	to leave, to keep, to save
liú(ge)huà(r)	留(個)話(兒)	to leave a message
nèitiān	那天	the other day
shāngwù	商務	commercial business
shāngwùguān	商務官	commercial officer
wàiguó	外國	foreign, abroad
wàiguó rén	外國人	foreigner (non-Chinese)
Wàijiāobù	外交部	Ministry of Foreign Affairs
wūzi (yìjiān)	屋子 (一間)	room
xiěxiàláí	寫下來	to write down
yāo	么	one (telephone pronunciation)
yàoǐn	要緊	to be important, to be urgent
yuēhǎole	約好了	to have (successfully) made arrangements, to have made an appointment
zhèihuìr	這會兒	this moment, at the moment (Běijīng)
chūtǔ wénwù zhǎnlǎn	出土文物展覽	exhibition of archaeological finds
dǎ dao	打到	to make a phone call to
dàibiǎotuán	代表團	delegation
gǎnbu huí lái	赶不回来	can't make it back in time
jiàoyuán	教員	teacher
jīnglǐ	經理	manager
qīn zì	親自	personally, privately
tuánzhǎng	團長	head of the delegation
zhǔrèn	主任	director

zìjǐ

自己

oneself (“myself,” “yourself,” etc.)

## Reference Notes

## Notes on №1

1. B: Wài.  
喂  
Hello.
- A: Wài, shì Wàijiāobù ma?  
喂，是外交部嗎？  
Hello. Is this the Ministry of Foreign Affairs?
- A: Wǒ yào zhǎo Lín Sīzhǎng shuō huà.  
我要找林司長說話。  
I want to speak with Department Chief Lín.

Wài jiāobù: Wàijiāo is the word for “diplomacy” (more literally, “foreign relations”). Bù designates an organizational unit; in speaking of the Chinese government, bù is translated as “ministry.”

 Note

Bù is also used for a “department” of the U.S. government: Nèizhèngbù, “Department of the Interior”

The head of a bù is a bùzhǎng, “minister.”

Wài-, “foreign,” is used in terms such as wàiguó, “overseas” (literally, “foreign country”) and wàiguó rén, “foreigner” (most frequently referring to a person from a non-Asian country). Literally, wài- means “outside,” as in wàimian.

Yào zhǎo...shuō huà means, literally, “I would like to look for . . . to speak [with him.]”

Telephone conversations: Telephone courtesy in the United States requires that a person identify himself before beginning a conversation. In China, however, it is normal for the caller to ask “Who is this?” and for the person who answers the phone to inquire “Who is calling?”

## Notes on №2

2. B: Nín shì nǎr a?  
您是哪兒？  
Who is this?
- A: Wǒ xìng Lèkèláiěr. Wǒ shì Fǎguó Dàshìguǎnde Shāngwù Jīngjìguān.  
我姓勒克萊爾。我是法國大使館的商務經濟官。  
My name is Leclair. I am the Commercial/Economics Officer from the French Embassy.
- B: Nín děngyíděng, wǒ gěi nín kànkàn tā zài bu zài.  
您等一等，我給您看看他在不在。  
Wait a moment. I’ll see whether he is here or not.

*Nín shì nǎr a?* is one polite way to ask who is calling. *Nǎr* asks for the name of the office or organization which the caller represents. You may also say *Nǐ nǎr a?* To ask for the caller's name, use *Qǐngwèn nǐ shì...?* or *Qǐngwèn nǐ guìxìng?*

*Fǎguo*: In the PRC, the word for “France” usually has a low tone instead of a falling tone (*Fàguo*).

The syllable *-guān* means “government official,” “officer,” or “officeholder.”

*Tā zài bu zài*: *Zài* means “to be present” here. With this meaning, *zài* does not have to be followed by a place word.

### Notes on №3

3. B: *Wài, tā zhèihuǐr bú zài. Nín yào liú ge huàr ma?*  
 喂，他這會兒不在。您要留個話兒嗎？  
 Hello. He is not here at the moment. Would you like to leave a message?
- A: *Láojià, tā huílai de shíhou, nín qǐng ta gěi wǒ dǎ ge diànhuà.*  
 勞駕，他回來的時候，您請他給我打個電話。  
 When he comes back, please ask him to give me a phone call.

*Zhèihuǐr* is a colloquial word for “now,” “at the moment.” The word is made up of *zhè* plus *yihuǐr*. Its position preceding the verb shows that it refers to a point in time.

*Liú ge huàr*: *Liú* means “to leave [something/someone!] behind.” *Huàr*, translated in exchange 3 as “message,” is the word for “speech.” Directly following a verb (in this case, *liú*), the *yī* of unstressed *yige* may be omitted.

### Notes on №4

4. B: *Hǎo, qǐng nín bǎ nín de diànhuà hàomǎr gào sòng wǒ. Wǒ xiě xià lái.*  
 好，請您把您的電話號兒告訴我，我寫下來。  
 All right. Please tell me your phone number. I'll write it down.
- A: *Wǒ de diànhuà shì wǔ èr yāo-sān sān yāo.*  
 My phone number is 521-331.

*Hàomǎr* is used for “number” in speaking of identification numbers such as a passport number. (*Shù-mu*, “number,” expresses an amount.)

*Yāo* is used in *Běijīng* for giving room numbers and telephone numbers whenever those numbers are given orally.

*Xiě xià lái* is a compound verb which is formed like *ná xià lái*. However, while *ná xià lai* literally means “to bring down and towards the speaker,” *xiě xià lai* does NOT mean “to write in a downward direction towards the speaker.” The compound *xiě xià lai* corresponds to the English idiom “to write down.”

*Qǐng nín bǎ nín de diànhuà hàomǎr gào sòng wǒ* illustrates some of the rules concerning the use of the prepositional verb *bǎ*. (Read the Transportation Module notes on *bǎ*.)

*Bǎ* is a prepositional verb used to bring the direct object of a sentence to a position preceding the main verb. To do so has certain effects on the meaning of a sentence. There are reasons why *bǎ* must be used, why it may not be used, and why it is optional in different kinds of sentences.



In the first sentence of exchange 4, the use of the **bǎ** construction is optional. you may also say **Qǐng nǐ gào sòng wǒ nín de diàn huà hào mǎ**. The sentence fulfills the requirements for the optional use of **bǎ** but has none of the features which make the use of **bǎ** a necessity. Let's look more closely at these different requirements and features.

a. What conditions are necessary for the use of **bǎ**?

(1) The object of **bǎ** must be acted on. In other words, the action must be performed on the object of **bǎ**. In the first sentence of exchange 4, **nín de diàn huà hào mǎ** undergoes the action **gào sòng**. More obvious examples are#

<p>Tā bǎ dì tú ná chū lái le. 他把地圖拿出來了。 He took out the map. (MAP UNDERGOES BEING TAKEN OUT)</p> <p>Tā bǎ tā de chē mài le. 他把他的車賣了。 He sold his car. (CAR UNDERGOES BEING SOLD)</p> <p>Tā bǎ nèi ge Zhōng guó zì xiě zài hēi bǎn shàng le. 他把那個中國字寫在黑板上了# He wrote that Chinese character on the chalkboard. (CHINESE CHARACTER UNDERGOES BEING WRITTEN ON THE BOARD)</p>
--

UNDERGOER OF THE ACTION means that the object is influenced by the action in some way. In “I saw Mr. **Wáng** yesterday,” Mr. **Wáng** is not considered to be the under-goer of the action.

(2) The verb must be an action verb (such as **gào sòng** in exchange 4). **Bǎ** is not used with state and process verbs. For example, you may not use **bǎ** with **yǒu**, **zhī dào**, **xǐ huan**, **ài**, **xiǎng**, **huì**, or **dòng**.

(3) The object of **bǎ** must refer to something specific (such as **nín de diàn huà hào mǎ** in exchange 4): which telephone number? your telephone number (The questioner knows which number he is referring to, even though he does not know what the number is.) Often the object of **bǎ** must be translated into English with the definite article “the”:

<p>Qǐng nǐ bǎ huā píng gěi wǒ. 請你把花瓶給我。 Please give me the vase. (NOT “a vase”)</p> <p>Tā bǎ liǎng zhāng piào gěi wǒ le. 他把兩張票給我了。 He gave me the two tickets. (NOT “[any] two tickets”)</p>
--

(4) The verb phrase must be complex. Here are examples of the ways in which a verb phrase can be made complex so that **bǎ** may be used:

<p><b>ASPECT MARKER</b></p> <p>Tā bǎ tā de chē zi mài le. 他把他的車子賣了。 He sold his car.</p>
--

<p><b>REDUPLICATED VERB</b></p> <p>Qǐng nǐ bǎ piào huàn huan. 請你把票換換。</p>
---

**REDUPLICATED VERB**

請你把票換換。

Please exchange the tickets.

**COMPOUND VERB**

Tā bǎ wǒde dìzhǐ xiěxiàlai le.

他把我的地址寫下來了。

He wrote down my address.

Nǐ bǎ xíngli náshàng chē qu ba.

你把行李拿上車去吧。

Take the baggage onto the train.

Wǒmen zuótiān yǐjīng bǎ zhèjiàn shì shuōhǎo le.

我們把昨天已經把這件事說好了。

We agreed on this matter yesterday.

Wǒ xiān bǎ zhèige xiěwán zài zǒu.

我先把這個寫完再走。

I will finish writing this first and then leave.

Nǐ bǎ wǒde míngzi xiěcuò le.

你把我的名字寫錯了。

You wrote my name wrong.

**MANNER EXPRESSION AFTER THE VERB**

Nǐ bǎ zhèige zì xiěde tài dà le.

你把這個字寫得太大了。

You wrote this character too large.

Tā bǎ zhèjiàn shì shuōde hěn qīngchū.

他把這件事事說得很清楚。

He talked very clearly about this.

**PREPOSITIONAL VERB PHRASE AFTER THE VERB**

bǎ píjiǔ fàng zài zhuōzishang.

把啤酒放在桌子上，

Put the beer on the table.

Wǒ bǎ chē tíng zài nàibiān děng nín.

我把車停在那邊等您、

I will park the car over there and wait for you.

**INDIRECT OBJECT AFTER THE VERB**

Lǐ Xiānsheng bǎ zìdiǎn gěi xuésheng le.

李先生把字典給學生了。

Mr. Lǐ has given the dictionaries to the students.

**NUMBER PLUS COUNTER AFTER THE VERB**

Qǐng nǐ zài bǎ tāde diànhuà hàomǎr niàn yíci.

請你再把他的電話號碼兒念一次。

Please read his telephone number aloud once more.

Qǐng nǐ bǎ zhèige kàn yíxià.

請你把這個看一下。

Please take a look at this. (OR “Please read this over.”)

In the first sentence of exchange 4, the verb phrase is made complex by having an indirect object after the verb: *bǎ nǐnde diànhuà hàomǎr gào song wǒ*.

b. When MUST *bǎ* be used?

The examples above which require the use of *bǎ* are those with a prepositional verb phrase after the verb, those with a manner expression after the verb, and most of the sentences under the heading “Compound Verb.”

In these examples, the object may not be placed between the verb and the element which follows.

c. When can't *bǎ* be used?

*Bǎ* cannot normally be used in a sentence if the verb is not an action verb, if the verb describes perception (like *kànjian* and *tīngjian*), if the object is not the under-goer of the action, if the object is indefinite or if the verb is a simple verb. Here are some examples of sentences in which *bǎ* cannot be used:

**INDEFINITE OBJECT**

Wǒ mǎile yíge shōuyīnjī.

我買了一個收音機。

I bought a radio.

**PERCEPTION VERB [*kànjian*]; OBJECT DOES NOT UNDERGO ACTION**

Wǒ kànjian ta le.

我看見他了。

I saw him.

**SIMPLE VERB**

Wǒ xiǎng kàn zhèběn shū.

我想看這本書。

I would like to read this book.

***yǒu* NOT ACTION VERB**

Wǒ yǒu hěn duō wàiguó péngyou.

我有很多外國朋友。

I have a lot of foreign friends.

***zhīdao* NOT ACTION VERB**

Wǒ zhīdao zhèjiàn shì.

我知道這件事。

**zhīdao NOT ACTION VERB**

I know of this matter.

d. What is the motivation for using **bǎ**?

**Bǎ** is used when the verb phrase gives more new important information than the object does. The Chinese prefer to place that important verb phrase in final position in a sentence, where the phrase will be prominent.

**Bǎ** performs the function of taking the object out of the way (to the beginning of a sentence) and allowing the verb phrase to have its full impact.

e. To make a **bǎ** sentence negative, place the negative adverb in front of **bǎ** (NOT in front of the main verb).

Tā méi bǎ zhuōzi bānchūqu.

他沒把桌子搬出去。

He did not move the table out.

Nǐ bù bǎ ròu

**Note**

ròu, “meat”

fàng zài bīngxiānglǐ zěnmē xíng?

你不把肉放在冰箱裏怎麼行。

How can it do for you not to put the meat in the refrigerator? (How can you not put the meat in the refrigerator?)

**Notes on №5**

5. C: Duibuqǐ, nǐ gāngcǎi gěi wǒ dǎ diànhuà, wǒ bú zài.  
對不起。你剛才給我打電話，我不在。  
I'm sorry. When you called me just now, I wasn't in.
- C: Nǐ yǒu shì ma?  
你有事嗎？  
Can I help you with something?
- A: Shì a! Wǒ nàitiān gēn nín yuēhǎole míngtiān shídiǎn dào nín bàngōngshì qu tán-tán.  
是啊！我那天跟您約好了明天十點到您辦公室去談談。  
Yes, you can. The other day I made an appointment with you to go to your office at ten o'clock tomorrow for a talk.

**Gāngcái** means “just now,” “a short time ago.” It may, like other time words, either precede or follow the subject of a sentence.

Tā gāngcái gěi wǒ dǎ diànhuà.

他剛才給我打電話了。

He called me a short time ago. le.

Gāngcái tā gěi wo dǎ diànhuà le.

剛才他給我打電話了。

He called me a short time ago. le.

The one-syllable adverb *gāng*, “just,” always follows the subject of a sentence.

Tā gāng gěi wo dǎ diànhuà.

他剛給我打電話。

He just called me.

*Nǐ gāngcái gěi wo dǎ diànhuà, wǒ bú zài*, literally, “You called me just now, I wasn’t in”: To the first clause (*Nǐ gāngcái gěi wǒ dǎ diànhuà*), you could add *-de shìhou*, “when.” Even without *-de shìhou*, the relationship between the two clauses is still very close. Colloquially, no pause is needed between them. Here is a similar sentence:

Gāngcái wǒ qù zhǎo nǐ, nǐ bú zài.

剛才我去找你，你不在。

I just went to look for you, but you weren’t there.

*Nèitiān* literally means “that day.” It is the Chinese equivalent of “the other day.”

*Yuēhǎo* is a compound verb of result: *yuē*, “to arrange a meeting,” “to make an appointment,” plus *hǎo*, “successfully complete.”

*Gēn* means “with” in the last sentence of exchange 5.

*Bàngōngshì*: *Bàngōng* (literally, “manage work”) is frequently used for “do work in an office.” A *bàngōngshì* is a room where office work is done, or an “office.”

## Notes on №6

6. A: *Yīnwei míngtiān zǎoshang wǒ yǒu yíjiàn yàojǐnde shì, suóyì xiǎng wèn nín wǒmen néng bu néng gǎi dào xiàwǔ.*  
因為明天早上我有要緊的事，所以想問您我們能不能改到下午。  
Because I have an urgent business matter tomorrow morning, I want to ask you whether we can change it [the appointment] to the afternoon.
- \*C: *Xiàwǔ shénme shíhou?*  
下午什麼時候？  
What time in the afternoon?
- A: *Nín kàn xiàwǔ sān-sìdiǎn zěnmeyàng? Duì nín fāngbiān bu fāngbiān?*  
您看下午三四點怎麼樣？對您方便不方便？  
What do you think of three or four in the afternoon? Is that convenient for you?
- C: *Sìdiǎn bǐ sāndiǎn hǎo. Wǒ sāndiǎn zhōng děi kāi huì.*  
四點比三點好。我三點中得開會。  
Four would be better than three. I have to attend a meeting at three o’clock.
- A: *Hǎo ba. Nà míngtiān sìdiǎn zhōng jiàn.*

好吧。那明天四點鐘見。

All right. Well then, see you at four o'clock tomorrow.

C: Hǎo, wǒ sidiǎn zhōng děng nǐ.

好，我四點鐘等你。

All right. I'll wait for you at four o'clock.

Yàojǐn means “to be urgent,” “to be important.”

Yīnwei...suóyì: When the first part of an English sentence begins with the word “because,” it is usually considered redundant to begin the second part with “therefore.” Thus the Chinese word **suóyì**, “therefore,” in the first sentence of exchange 6, is not translated into English. In Chinese, however, **suóyì** is commonly used after a clause beginning with **yīnwei**, “because.”

The verbs **gǎi** and **huàn** are both frequently translated as “to change.” **Gǎi** means “change” in the sense of “alter,” and **huàn** means “change” in the sense of “exchange.”

**Gǎi dào xiàwǔ**, “change (it) to the afternoon”: In this phrase, the prepositional verb **dào** and its object **xiàwǔ** do not precede the verb; they follow the verb. A **dào**, “to,” phrase which precedes the main verb in a sentence can be a scene setter, that is, you go “to” a place and the action takes place there. Following the main verb in a sentence, a **dào** phrase can indicate where something ends up as a result of the action. In the first sentence of exchange 6, the appointment will END UP in the afternoon. Here are some examples of **dào** phrases:

Tā dào cài shì chǎng mǎi cài qù le.

他到菜市場買菜去了。

He went to the market to buy groceries. (SCENE SETTER)

Wǒ gāngcái dào wǔ lóu zhǎo chén tàitai qù le.

我剛才到五樓找陳太太去了。

Just now I went to the fifth floor to look for Mrs. Chen. (SCENE SETTER)

Tā pǎo dào shān shàng qù le.

他跑到山上去了。

He ran to the top of the mountain. (“He” ENDS UP ON THE MOUNTAINTOP.)

### Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

7. **háishi**  
還是  
still
8. **wàiguó**  
外國  
foreign, abroad
9. **wàiguó rén**  
外國人  
foreigner (non-Chinese)
10. **wūzi (yìjiān)**  
屋子 (一間)

11.	room
	yāo
	么
	one (telephone pronunciation)

**Háishi** means “still” in the sense of “as before.” It is used in some of the same ways that **hái** is used.

Suīrán tā yǒu shíhòu shuō huà bú kèqì, kěshì wǒ háishi xǐhuan tā.  
雖然他有時候說話不客氣，可是我還是喜歡他。  
Although he is sometimes impolite in his speech, I still like him.

Wǒ háishi bù dǒng “le” zěnmeyòng.  
我還是不懂「le」怎麼用。  
I still don't understand how le is used.

**Wàiguó rén**, “foreigner”: The use of this term is still generally based on race rather than on citizenship. Even Chinese who are American citizens living in the United States often refer to non-Chinese Americans as **wàiguó rén**.

**Wūzi**, “room”: The counter for **wūzi** is **-jiān**, which literally means “interstice,” “interval,” “space,” “room.”

## Drills

### Expansion Drill

1. Wài, shì Wàijiāobù ma?

喂，是外交部吗？

Hello, is this the Ministry of Foreign Affairs?

Cue

Lín Sīzhǎng

林司长

Director Lín

Wài, shì Wàijiāobù ma? Wǒ yào zhǎo Lín Sīzhǎng shuō huà.

喂，是外交部吗？我要找林司长说话。

Hello, is this the Ministry of Foreign Affairs? I want to speak with Department Chief Lín.

2. Wài, shì Měiguó Wǔguānchù ma?

喂，是美国武官处吗？

Hello, is this the United States Military Attaché's Office?

Cue

Wèi Shǎoxiào

魏少校

Major Wèi

Wài, shì Měiguó Wǔguānchù ma? Wǒ yào zhǎo Wèi Shǎoxiào shuō huà.

喂，是美国武官处吗？我要找魏少校说话。

Hello, is this the United States Military Attaché's Office? I want to speak with Major Wèi.

3. Wèi, shì Zhōngguó Yínháng ma?

喂，是中国银行吗？

Hello, is this Bank of China?

Cue

Lín Kēzhǎng

林科长

Section chief Lín

Wài, shì Zhōngguó Yínháng ma? Wǒ yào zhǎo Lín Kēzhǎng shuō huà.

喂，是中国银行吗？我要找说话。



Hello, is this Bank of China? I want to speak with Section chief **Lín**.

4. **Wài, shì Běijīng Fàndiàn ma?**

喂，是北京饭店吗？

Hello, is this the **Běijīng** Hotel?

Cue

**Bāoěr Xiānsheng**

鲍尔先生

Mr. **Bāoěr**

**Wài, shì Běijīng Fàndiàn ma? Wǒ yào zhǎo Bāoěr Xiānsheng shuō huà.**

喂，是北京饭店吗？我要找鲍尔先生说话。

Hello, is this the Beijing Hotel? I want to speak with Mr. **Bāoěr**.

5. **Wài, shì Jiānádà Dàshìguǎn ma?**

喂，是加拿大大使馆吗？

Hello, is this the Canadian embassy?

Cue

**Lǐ Xiānsheng**

李先生

Mr. **Lǐ**

**Wài, shì Jiānádà Dàshìguǎn ma? Wǒ yào zhǎo Lǐ Xiānsheng shuō huà.**

喂，是加拿大大使馆吗？我要找李先生说话。

Hello, is this the Canadian embassy? I want to speak with Mr. **Lǐ**.

6. **Wài, shì Měidàsī ma?**

喂，是美大司吗？

Hello, is this the Department of American and Oceanic Affairs?

Cue

**Mèng Tóngzhī**

孟通知

Comrade **Mèng**

**Wài, shì Měidàsī ma? Wǒ yào zhǎo Mèng Tóngzhī shuō huà.**

喂，是美大司吗？我要找孟通知说话。

Hello, is this the Department of American and Oceanic Affairs? I want to speak with Comrade **Mèng**.

7. **Wài, shì Zhōngguó Yínháng ma?**

喂，是中国银行吗？

Hello, is this the Bank of China?

Cue

Zhāngnán Tóngzhì

张楠同志

Comrade Zhāngnán

Wài, shì Zhōngguó Yínháng ma? Wǒ yào zhǎo Zhāngnán Tóngzhì shuō huà.

喂，是中国银行吗？我要找张楠同志说话。

Hello, is this the Bank of China? I want to speak with Comrade Zhāngnán.

## Expansion Drill

1. Wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā zài bu zài.

我给你看看他在不在。

I'll see you whether he is here or not.

Qǐng nǐ děngyíděng, wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā zài bu zài.

请你等一等，我给你看看他在不在。

Please wait a moment. I'll see whether he is here or not.

2. Wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā máng bu máng.

我给你看看他忙不忙。

I'll see you whether he is busy or not.

Qǐng nǐ děngyíděng, wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā máng bu máng.

请你等一等，我给你看看他忙不忙。

Please wait a moment. I'll see whether he is busy or not.

3. Wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā yǒu gōngfu meiyǒu.

我给你看看他有功夫没有。

I'll see you whether he has free time or not.

Qǐng nǐ děngyíděng, wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā yǒu gōngfu meiyǒu.

请你等一等，我给你看看他有功夫没有。

Please wait a moment. I'll see whether he has free time or not.

4. Wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā lái le meiyǒu.

我给你看看他来了没有。

I'll see you whether he is here or not.

Qǐng nǐ děngyíděng, wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā lái le meiyǒu.

请你等一等，我给你看看他来了没有。

Please wait a moment. I'll see whether he is here or not.

5. Wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā zǒu le meiyǒu.

我给你看看他走了没有。

I'll see you whether he is gone or not.

Qǐng nǐ děngyíděng, wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā zǒu le meiyǒu.

请你等一等，我给你看看他走了没有。

Please wait a moment. I'll see whether he is gone or not.

6. Wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā huílaile meiyǒu.

我给你看看他回来了没有。

I'll see you whether he is back or not.

Qǐng nǐ děngyíděng, wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā huílaile meiyǒu.

请你等一等，我给你看看他回来了没有。

Please wait a moment. I'll see whether he is back or not.

7. Wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā huíqùle meiyǒu.

我给你看看他回去了没有。

I'll see you whether he went back or not.

Qǐng nǐ děngyíděng, wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā huíqùle meiyǒu.

请你等一等，我给你看看他回去了没有。

Please wait a moment. I'll see whether he went back or not.

## Substitution Drill

1. Láojià, bǎ nín de diànhuà hàomǎr gàosong wǒ.

劳驾，把您的电话号码儿告诉我。

Please tell me his telephone number.

Cue

Wáng Xiānshengde de diànhuà hàomǎr

王先生的电话号码儿

Mr. Wáng's telephone number.

Láojià, bǎ Wáng Xiānshengde diànhuà hàomǎr gàosong wǒ.

劳驾，把王先生的电话号码儿告诉我。

Please tell me Mr. Wáng's telephone number.

2. Láojià, bǎ Wáng Xiānshengde diànhuà hàomǎr gàosong wǒ.

劳驾，把王先生的电话号码儿告诉我。

Please tell me Mr. Wáng's telephone number.

Cue

tāde diànhuà hàomǎr

他的电话号码儿

his phone number

Láojià, bǎ tāde diànhuà hàomǎr gàosong wǒ.

劳驾，把他的电话号码儿。

Please tell me his phone number.

3. Láojià, bǎ tāde diànhuà hàomǎr gàosong wǒ.

劳驾，把他的告诉我。

Please tell me his phone number.

Cue

tāde dìzhǐ

他的地址

his address

Láojià, bǎ tāde dìzhǐ gàosong wǒ.

劳驾，把他的地址告诉我。

Please, give me his address.

4. Láojià, bǎ tāde dìzhǐ gàosong wǒ.

劳驾，把他的告诉我。

Please, give me his address.

Cue

tāde bàngōngshìde hàomǎr

他的办公室的号码儿。

his office number

Láojià, bǎ tāde bàngōngshìde hàomǎr gàosong wǒ.

劳驾，把他的办公室的号码儿告诉我。

Please tell me his office number.

5. Láojià, bǎ tāde bàngōngshìde hàomǎr gàosong wǒ.

劳驾，把他的办公室的号码儿告诉我。

Please tell me his office number.

Cue

tāde dìzhǐ

他的地址

his address

Láojià, bǎ tāde dìzhǐ gàosong wǒ.

劳驾，把他的地址告诉我。

Please, give me his address.

6. Láojià, bǎ tāde dìzhǐ gàosong wǒ.

劳驾，把他的告诉我。

Please, give me his address.

Cue

nínide diànhuà hàomǎr

您的电话号码儿

your phone number

Láojià, bǎ nínide diànhuà hàomǎr gàosong wǒ.

劳驾，把您的电话号码儿告诉我。

Please give me your phone number.

## Response Drill

1. Nǐ xiěxiàláile ma?  
你写下来了么？  
Have you written it down?

Cue hái méi  
还没  
not yet

Wǒ hái méi xiěxiàláile.  
我还没写下来。  
I haven't written it down yet.

2. Nǐ xiěhǎole ma?  
你写好了么？  
Have you finished writing it?

Cue kuài...le  
快。。。了  
soon will

Wǒ kuài xiěhǎole.  
我快写好了。  
I will finish it soon.

3. Nǐ xiěxiàláile ma?  
你写下来了么？  
Have you written it down?

Cue yǐjīng...le  
已经。。。了  
already

Wǒ yǐjīng xiěxiàláile.  
我已经写下来了。  
I already have written it down.

4. Nǐ xiěxiàláile ma?

你写下来了吗？

Have you written it down?

Cue

hái méi

还没

not yet

Wǒ hái méi xiěxiàlái.

我还没写下来了。

I haven't written it down yet.

5. Nǐ xiěxiàlái le ma?

你写下来了吗？

Have you written it down?

Cue

méi

没

did not

Wǒ méi xiěxiàlái.

我没写下来。

I haven't written it down.

6. Nǐ xiěhǎo le ma?

你写好了吗？

Have you finished writing it?

Cue

yǐjīng...le

已经。。。了

already

Wǒ yǐjīng xiěhǎo le.

我已经写好了。

I already have finished write it.

7. Nǐ xiěxiàlái le ma?

你写下来了吗？

Have you written it down?

Cue

le



了

Yes, I did

Wǒ xiěxiàláile.

我写下来了。

I wrote it down.

## Response Drill

1. Nǐ gēn tā yuēhǎo le ma?

你跟他约好了

Did you make arrangements with him?

Cue

tā bàngōngshì

他办公室

his office

Gēn tā yuēhǎo le, zài tā bàngōngshì jiàn.

跟他约好了，在他办公室见。

I made arrangements with him to meet at his office.

2. Nǐ gēn Wáng Xiānsheng yuēhǎo le ma?

你跟王先生约好了吗？

Did you make arrangements with Mr. Wáng?

Cue

huǒchēzhàn

火车站

rail station

Gēn Wáng Xiānsheng yuēhǎo le, zài huǒchēzhàn jiàn.

跟王先生约好了在火车站见。

I made arrangements with Mr. Wáng to meet at the rail station.

3. Nǐ gēn Lǐ Nǚshì yuēhǎo le ma?

你跟李女士约好了吗？

Did you make arrangements with Mrs. Lǐ?

Cue

wǒde bàngōngshì

我的办公室

my office

Gēn Lǐ Nǚshì yuēhǎo le, zài wǒde bàngōngshì jiàn.

跟李女士约好了在我的办公室见。

I made arrangements with Mrs. Lǐ to meet her at my office.

4. Nǐ gēn Liú Zhǔrén yuēhǎo le ma?

你跟刘主任约好了吗？

Did you make arrangements with Liú Zhǔrēn?

Cue

Wàijiāobù

外交部

foreign ministry

Gēn Liú Zhǔrēn yuēhǎo le, zài Wàijiāobù jiàn.

跟刘主任约好了在外交部见。

I made arrangements with Liú Zhǔrēn to meet him at the foreign ministry.

5. Nǐ gēn Bāo Jiàoshòu yuēhǎo le ma?

你跟鲍教授约好了吗？

Did you make arrangements with Bāo Jiàoshòu?

Cue

xuéxiào

学校

school

Gēn Bāo Jiàoshòu yuēhǎo le, zài xuéxiào jiàn.

跟鲍教授约好了在学校见。

I made arrangements with Bāo Jiàoshòu to meet him at the school.

6. Nǐ gēn Bái Kēzhǎng yuēhǎo le ma?

你跟白科长约好了吗？

Did you make arrangements with Chief Bái?

Cue

tāde bàngōngshì

他的办公室

his office

Gēn Bái Kēzhǎng yuēhǎo le, zài tāde bàngōngshì jiàn.

跟白科长约好了在他的办公室见。

I made arrangements with Chief Bái to meet him at his office.

7. Nǐ gēn Yáng Xiānsheng yuēhǎo le ma?

你跟杨先生约好了吗？

Did you make arrangements with Mr. Yáng?

Cue

huikèshì

会客室

reception room

Gēn Yáng Xiānsheng yuēhǎo le, zài huìkèshì jiàn.

跟杨先生约好了在会客室见。

I made arrangements with Mr. **Yáng** to meet him in the reception room.

## Substitution Drill

1. Yīnwei shàngwǔ wǒmen yǒu yàoǐnde shì, suǒyǐ gǎidào xiàwǔ le.

因为上午我们有要紧的事，所以改到下午了。

Because we have some important business in the morning, we will have to change to the afternoon.

Cue

Lín Zhǔrèn bù néng lái

林主任不能来

Lín Zhǔrèn cannot come

Yīnwei shàngwǔ Lín Zhǔrèn bù néng lái, suǒyǐ gǎidào xiàwǔ le.

因为上午林主任不能来，所以改到下午了。

Because Director Lín cannot come in the morning, we will have to change to the afternoon.

2. Yīnwei shàngwǔ Lín Zhǔrèn bù néng lái, suǒyǐ gǎidào xiàwǔ le.

因为上午林主任不能来，所以改到下午了。

Because Lín Zhǔrèn cannot come in the morning, we will have to change to the afternoon.

Cue

tā zài Wàijiāobù kāi huì

他在外交部开会

he has a meeting at the foreign ministry

Yīnwei shàngwǔ tā zài Wàijiāobù kāi huì, suǒyǐ gǎidào xiàwǔ le.

因为上午他在外交部开会，所以改到下午了。

Because he had a meeting at the Ministry of Foreign Affairs in the morning, we will have to change to the afternoon.

3. Yīnwei shàngwǔ tā zài Wàijiāobù kāi huì, suǒyǐ gǎidào xiàwǔ le.

因为上午他在外交部开会，所以改到下午了。

Because he had a meeting at the Ministry of Foreign Affairs in the morning, we will have to change to the afternoon.

Cue

wǒ děi jiāo shū

我得教书

I have to teach

Yīnwei shàngwǔ wǒ děi jiāo shū, suǒyǐ gǎidào xiàwǔ le.

因为上午我得教书，所以改到下午了。

Because I have to teach in the morning, we will have to change to the afternoon.

4. Yīnwei shàngwǔ wǒ děi jiāo shū, suóyì gǎidào xiàwǔ le.

因为上午我得教书，所以改到下午了。

Because I have to teach in the morning, we will have to change to the afternoon.

Cue

wǒ děi dào Dàshìguān qù

我得到大使馆去

i have to go to the embassy

Yīnwei shàngwǔ wǒ děi dào Dàshìguān qù, suóyì gǎidào xiàwǔ le.

因为上午我得到大使馆去，所以改到下午了。

Because I have to go to the embassy in the morning, we will have to change to the afternoon.

5. Yīnwei shàngwǔ wǒ děi dào Dàshìguān qù, suóyì gǎidào xiàwǔ le.

因为上午我得到大使馆去，所以改到下午了。

Because I have to go to the embassy in the morning, we will have to change to the afternoon.

Cue

wǒ děi gēn Wǔ Xiānsheng dāngmiàn tán

我得跟伍先生当面谈谈

I need to speak to Mr. Wu face to face

Yīnwei shàngwǔ wǒ děi gēn Wǔ Xiānsheng dāngmiàn tán, suóyì gǎidào xiàwǔ le.

因为上午我得跟伍先生当面谈谈，所以改到下午了。

Because I had to have a face-to-face meeting with Mr. Wu in the morning, we will have to change to the afternoon.

6. Yīnwei shàngwǔ wǒ děi gēn Wǔ Xiānsheng dāngmiàn tán, suóyì gǎidào xiàwǔ le.

因为上午我得跟伍先生当面谈谈，所以改到下午了。

Because I had to have a face-to-face meeting with Mr. Wǔ in the morning, we will have to change to the afternoon.

Cue

wǒ méi gōngfu

我没工夫

I have no time

Yīnwei shàngwǔ wǒ méi gōngfu, suóyì gǎidào xiàwǔ le.

因为上午我没工夫，所以改到下午了。

Because I have no time in the morning, we will have to change to the afternoon.

## Substitution Drill

1. Xiàwǔ sān-sìdiǎn zěnmeyàng?

下午三四点怎么样？

How is [How about] three or four in the afternoon?

Cue

tā

他

he

Tā zěnmeyàng?

他怎么样？

How is he? [How about him?]

2. Tā zěnmeyàng?

他怎么样？

How is he?

Cue

Táiwān

台湾

Táiwān

Táiwān zěnmeyàng?

台湾怎么样？

How about Táiwān?

3. Táiwān zěnmeyàng?

台湾怎么样？

How about Táiwān?

Cue

Táiwānde jīngjì

台湾经济

Taiwan economy

Táiwānde jīngjì zěnmeyàng?

台湾经济怎么样？

How is Taiwan's economy?

4. Táiwānde jīngjì zěnmeyàng?

台湾经济怎么样？

How is Taiwan's economy?

Cue

nèige fàndiàn

那个饭店

that restaurant

Nèige fàndiàn zěnmeyàng?

那个饭店怎么样？

How about that restaurant?

5.

Nèige fàndiàn zěnmeyàng?

那个饭店怎么样？

How about that restaurant?

Cue

zhèige xuéxiào

这个学校

this school

Zhèige xuéxiào zěnmeyàng?

这个学校怎么样？

How is this school?

6.

Zhèige xuéxiào zěnmeyàng?

这个学校怎么样？

How is this school?

Cue

tāmen mǎide diànshì

他们卖的电视

the televisions they sell

Tāmen mǎide diànshì zěnmeyàng?

他们卖的电视怎么样？

How about the televisions they sell?



## Transformation Drill

1. Tāmen míngtiān kāi huì.

他们明天开会。

They are meeting tomorrow.

Cue

shénme shíhou

什么时候

when

Tāmen míngtiān shénme shíhou kāi huì?

他们明天什么时候开会。

When are they meeting tomorrow?

2. Tāmen míngtiān kāi huì.

他们明天开会。

They are meeting tomorrow.

Cue

zài nǎr

在哪儿

where

Tāmen míngtiān zài nǎr kāi huì?

他们明天在哪儿开会？

Where are they meeting tomorrow?

3. Tāmen zuótiān kāi huì le.

他们昨天开会了。

They had meeting yesterday.

Cue

shénme shíhou

什么时候

when

Tāmen zuótiān shì shénme shíhou kāide huì?

他们昨天是什么时候开的会？

When did they have a meeting yesterday?

4. Tāmen zuótiān kāi huì le.

他们昨天开会了。

They had meeting yesterday.

Cue

zài nǎr

在哪儿

where

Tāmen zuótiān shì zài nǎr kāide huì?

他们昨天是在哪儿开的会。

where did they meet yesterday?

5.

Tāmen míngtiān kāi huì.

他们明天开会。

They are meeting tomorrow.

Cue

jǐge zhōngtóu

几个钟头

how many hours

Tāmen míntiān kāi huì kāi jǐge zhōngtóu?

他们明天开会开几个钟头？

How many hours are they meeting tomorrow?

6.

Tāmen zuótiān kāi huì le.

他们昨天开会了。

They had meeting yesterday.

Cue

duó jiǔ

多久

how long

Tāmen zuótiān kāi huì kāile duó jiǔ?

他们昨天开会开了多久？

How long did they have a meeting yesterday?

7.

Tāmen yǐjīng kāi huì le ma?

他已经开会了吗？

Did they already have meeting?

Cue

yǐjīng...le

已经了

yes

Tāmen yǐjīng kāi huì le.

他已经开会了。

He's already in a meeting.

## Unit 6

### References

#### Reference List

1. B: Jīntiān wǒmen yìqǐ qù chī zhōngfàn, hǎo ma?  
今天我們一起去吃中飯，號碼？  
Let's go have lunch together today. Okay?
- A: Hǎo a, dào Dōngmén Cāntīng qù chī ba.  
好啊。到東門餐廳去吃吧。  
All right. Why don't we go to the East Gate Restaurant?
2. B: Dōngmén de cài kǒngpà méiyǒu Dàhuá de cài nàme hǎo ba.  
東門的菜沒有大華的菜那麼好吧。  
I'm afraid that the food at the East Gate isn't as good as the food at the Great China.
- A: Suīrán bú tài hǎo, kěshi lí wǒmen zhèli jìn.  
雖然不太好，可是離我們這裏近。  
Even though it [East Gate] is not too good, it is close to us.
3. B: Òu, hái yǒu yíge xīn kāide fànguǎnzi lí wǒmen zhèli gèng jìn.  
哦，還有一個新開的飯館子離我們這裏更近。  
Oh, there is also a newly opened restaurant that is even closer to us.
- B: Tāmen nàlǐ de cài fēicháng hǎo.  
他們那裏的菜非常好。  
The food there is extremely good.
- B: Jīntiān wǒ qǐng nǐ dào nàlǐ qù chī.  
今天我請你到那裏去吃。  
Today I am going to invite you to go there to eat.
4. A: Nà bù hǎo yìsi!  
那不好意思！  
I can't let you do that! (That would be too embarrassing!)
- B: Bié kèqì, méi shenme. Nèige dìfangde cài yòu hǎo yòu piányi.  
別客氣，沒什麼。那個地方的菜又好又便宜。  
Don't be polite. It's nothing. The food there is both good and cheap.
5. A: Nǐ shuōde dìfang yíding hǎo.  
你說的地方一定好。  
Any place you suggest is sure to be good.

B: Tāmen nàlǐ yǒu hǎoxiē cài biéde dìfang chībuzháo.

他們那裏有好些菜別的地方吃不着。

They have a good many dishes there that you can't find (at) other places.

6. bù yíding  
不一定  
not necessarily; it's not definite
7. kànfa  
看法  
opinion, view
8. wǎnfàn  
晚飯  
supper, dinner
9. xiǎngfa  
想法  
idea, opinion
10. yìxiē  
一些  
some, several, a few
11. zǎofàn  
早飯  
breakfast
12. zuòfa  
做法  
way of doing things, method, practice

## Vocabulary

biéde	別的	other, different
bù hǎo yìsi	不好意思	to be embarrassing; to feel embarrassed
bù yíding	不一定	not necessarily; it's not definite
cài	菜	food, cooked dish
cāntīng	餐廳	dining room; restaurant
chībuzháo	吃不找	can't find (to eat)
Dàahuá Cāntīng	大華餐廳	Great China Restaurant
Dōngmén Cāntīng	東門餐廳	East Gate Restaurant
fēicháng	非常	very, extremely, highly
gèng	更	even more
hǎoxiē	好些	a good many, a lot
kànfa	看法	opinion, view
méiyǒu...nàme/zhème	沒有...那麼/怎麼	is not as... as...
suīrán (suīrán)...kěshì...	雖然...可是...	although, even though...(still)...
wǎnfàn	晚飯	supper, dinner
xiǎngfa	想法	idea, opinion
yíding	一定	certainly
yìxiē	一些	some, several, a few
yòu...yòu...	又...又..	both... and...
zǎofàn	早飯	breakfast
zhōngfàn	中飯	lunch
zuòfa	做法	way of doing things, method, practice
ānpaihǎo le	安排好了	successfully arranged
-bù	部	(counter for cars and buses)
chūfā	出發	to start a journey
jiāoqū	郊區	suburbs
lǎoshi	老是	always, all the time
lián...(yě)	連...也	even...(also)
Shísānlíng	十三陵	Ming Tombs (literally, "Thirteen Tombs")
yěcān	野餐	picnic
yǒu míng	又名	to be famous

Yúyuán	渝園	Szechuan Garden
zhāodài	招待	to be hospitable to

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1

1. B: Jīntiān wǒmen yìqǐ qù chī zhōngfàn, hǎo ma?  
 今天我們一起去吃中飯，號碼？  
 Let's go have lunch together today. Okay?
- A: Hǎo a, dào Dōngmén Cāntīng qù chī ba.  
 好啊。到東門餐廳去吃吧。  
 All right. Why don't we go to the East Gate Restaurant?

Zhōngfàn means, literally, “middle meal.” “Breakfast” is zǎofàn, “early meal.” “Supper” is wǎnfàn, “late meal.”

### Notes on №2

2. B: Dōngmén de cài kǒngpà méiyǒu Dàhuá de cài nàme hǎo ba.  
 東門的菜沒有大華的菜那麼好吧。  
 I'm afraid that the food at the East Gate isn't as good as the food at the Great China.
- A: Suīrán bú tài hǎo, kěshì lí wǒmen zhèlǐ jìn.  
 雖然不太好，可是離我們這裏近。  
 Even though it [East Gate] is not too good, it is close to us.

Cài, “(non-staple) food,” “dish,” “course (of a meal)”: Literally, cài means “vegetables.” It refers to any dish that is eaten with rice. Both meat and vegetable dishes are included in the meaning.

The pattern ...(méi)you...nàme... is used to make comparisons when one thing is LESS than another.

1	+	měiyǒu	nàme/ zhème	STATE VERB OFTEN ADJECTIVAL VERB
Tā	měiyǒu	nǐ	nàme	máng.
他	沒有	你	那麼	忙。
Wǒ	měiyǒu	tā	nàme	cōngmíng.
我	沒有	他	那麼	聰明。
Tā	měiyǒu	wǒ	nàme	yǒu qián.
他	沒有	我	那麼	有錢。

Used less frequently without the negative méi-, the pattern means “to be as [quality] AS [something else].”

Nǐde shū méiyǒu wǒde shū nàme duō.  
 你的書沒有我的書那麼多。



Your books are not as many as mine, (You don't have as many books as I do.)

Yǒu.

有

Yes, they are. (Yes, I do have as many books as you do.)

Nèige xuéxiàode túshūguǎn yǒu zhèige xuéxiàode zhème hǎo ma?

那個學校的圖書館有這個學校的怎麼好嗎？

Is that school's library as good as this one's?

Suǐrán.. kěshi... : Suǐrán (or suǐrán), “although,” must always be followed by kěshi or dànsi, meaning “but,” in the second part of a sentence.

Kěshi/dànsi would not usually be translated into English, but sometimes the word “still” is included in the translation: “Although it's not too good, still it's close to us.” Suǐrán may either precede the subject or be placed between the subject and the verb of a sentence.

Suǐrán tā xǐhuan lǚxíng, kěshi tā méi qùguo Zhōngguó.

雖然她喜歡旅行，可是她沒去過中國。

Although she likes to travel, she has never been to China.

Tā suǐrán jiǎngle hǎojǐcì, kěshi wǒ hái shì bù dǒng.

他雖然講了好幾次，可是我還是不懂，

Although he explained it many times I still didn't understand.

Wǒ suǐrán méi kànjianguo, kěshi tīng rén shuōguo.

我雖然沒看見過，可是聽人說過。

Although I have never seen it, I have heard of it.

### Notes on №3

3. B: Òu, hái yǒu yíge xīn kāide fànguǎnzi lí wǒmen zhèli gèng jìn.  
哦，還有一個新開的飯館子離我們這裏更近。  
Oh, there is also a newly opened restaurant that is even closer to us.
- B: Tāmen nàlǐde cài fēicháng hǎo.  
他們那裏的菜非常好。  
The food there is extremely good.
- B: Jīntiān wǒ qǐng nǐ dào nàlǐ qù chī.  
今天我請你到那裏去吃。  
Today I am going to invite you to go there to eat.

Xīn kāide: The adjectival verb xīn, “new,” means “newly,” “recently” when used as an adverb.

Gèng, “more,” “even more,” “still more”

Zài lǐngshìguǎn gōngzuòde rén bǐ dàshìguǎn gèng duō.

在領事館工作的人比大使館更多。

More people work at the consulates than at the embassy.

Lǜ píngguǒ hěn guì, hóng píngguǒ gèng guì.

綠蘋果很貴，紅蘋果更貴。

Green apples are expensive; red apples are even more expensive.

Zhāng Tíngfēng shuōde Zhōngguó huà, Zhōngguó rén hěn nán tīngdedǒng, wàiguó rén yíding gèng nán.

張霆鋒說的中國話，中國人很難聽得懂，外國人一定更難。

Zhāng Tíng Fēng's Chinese is hard for Chinese people to understand; for a foreigner, it would certainly be even harder.

An overview of comparison: you have now learned several ways to compare things. The patterns presented here are the most common ones. Each pattern has a standard purpose:

MORE	...bǐ... (STATE VERB)	比
LESS	...méiyǒu...nàme (STATE VERB)	沒有那麼
EQUAL	...gēn...yíyang (STATE VERB)	跟一樣

A simple adjectival verb may also be used to make a comparison:

Zhèi liǎngběn, nǎběn guì?

這兩本，哪本貴？

Which of these two books is more expensive?

For each of the three patterns above (MORE—LESS—EQUAL), the comparison is made with a STATE verb. State verbs include adjectival verbs (*hǎo*, “to be good”), auxiliary verbs (*huì*, “to know how to,” “can”), and verbs describing mental attitudes or situations (*zhīdao*, “to know”; *xǐhuan*, “to like”; *ài*, “to love”).

Tā bǐ wǒ ài chī Zhōngguó fàn.

他比我愛中國飯。

He loves to eat Chinese food more than I.

Zhèjiàn shìqing, nǐ bǐ tā zhīdao.

這件事情，你比他知道。

You know more about this than he does.

Tā méiyǒu wǒ zhème xǐhuan kàn diànyǐng.

他沒有我怎麼喜歡看電影。

He doesn't like to see movies as much as I do.

Although the verb phrase begins with a state verb, that may not be the only word in the comparison. It may be expanded to include other verbs (any type) and objects.

The things being compared may also be expanded. Whole sentences may be placed in the slots for things compared:

Zuò huǒchē méiyǒu zuò fēijī nàme kuài.

坐火車沒有坐飛機那麼快。

Going by train is not as fast as going by plane.

Wǒ xué Zhōngwén bǐ tā xué lìshǐ róngyi.

我學中文比他學歷史容易。

It's easier for him, studying history, than it is for me, studying Chinese.

Although the prepositional verb **bǐ** is used to say that one thing is “more” than another, do not use the negative of this pattern to say that something is “less.”

Tā bǐ tā gēge néng shuō huà.

他比他哥哥能說話。

He is a better talker (smoother talker) than his older brother.

This pattern may also be expanded to indicate just HOW MUCH more one thing is than another. (Place the amount after the verb in a sentence.)

Zhèběn bǐ nàběn guì sānkuài qián.

這本比那本貴三塊錢。

This book is three dollars more expensive than that one.

Wǒ bǐ tā dà liǎngsuì.

我比他大兩歲。

I am two years older than she is.

Another way to indicate how much more is to add **-de duō**, “a lot,” to an adjectival verb.

Zhèige bǐ nàige hǎokànde duō!

這個比那個好看得多。

This is much better looking than that!

Use the pattern **...méiyou...nàme** + state verb to say that one thing is less than another.

Wǒde zì méiyou tāde nàme hǎokàn.

我的字沒有他的那麼好看。

My characters don't look as good as his.

Tā xiǎng mǎide fángzi méiyou zhèige fángzi jìn.

她想買的房子沒有這個房子近。

The house she wants to buy isn't as close as this one.

The affirmative pattern **...yǒu...nàme** + state verb is ambiguous: it says that one item is AT LEAST AS expensive as another item which is either equally expensive or less expensive. This pattern is not as common as **...méiyou...name** + state verb.

The adverbs **gèng**, “even more,” and **zuì**, “most,” are easily used to compare more than two things. (Place these adverbs before the verb in a sentence.)

Zhèi liǎngběn hěn guì, kěshi nàběn gèng guì.

這兩本很貴，可是那本更貴。

These two books are very expensive, but that one is even more expensive.

Dìyīběn bǐ dìèrběn guì, kěshi dìsānběn zuì guì.

第一本比第二本貴，可是第三本最貴。

The first book is more expensive than that one, but the third one is the most expensive.

If the entire sentence involves a comparison of the three books, the speaker may single out the most expensive book with **zui**, or sometimes without it.

Zhèi sānběn shū, nǎběn guì?

這三本書，哪本貴？

Of these three books, which is the (most) expensive one?

Zhèiběn zuì guì.

這本最貴。

This one is the most expensive.

### Notes on №4

4. A: Nà bù hǎo yìsi!

那不好意思！

I can't let you do that! (That would be too embarrassing!)

B: Bié kèqi, méi shenme. Nèige dìfangde cài yòu hǎo yòu piányi.

別客氣，沒什麼。那個地方的菜又好又便宜。

Don't be polite. It's nothing. The food there is both good and cheap.

**Bù hǎo yìsi** is an idiomatic phrase meaning “to be embarrassing.” In Chinese culture, treating someone to a meal both shows your respect for him and maintains your status as a generous host. In exchange 4, **Nà bù hǎo yìsi** means “I'm embarrassed to have you show me so much respect,” or “I'm embarrassed to appear to be too cheap to treat you.” **Bù hǎo yìsi** also means “to feel embarrassed.”

**Yòu...yòu...**, “both...and.. The element following each you may be as simple as an adjectival verb or as complex as a full verb phrase.

Tā háizi yòu huì shuō Yīngwén, yòu huì shuō Zhōngguó huà.

他孩子又會說英文，又會說中國話。

His child can speak both English and Chinese.

### Notes on №5

5. A: Nǐ shuōde dìfang yíding hǎo.

你說的地方一定好。

Any place you suggest is sure to be good.

B: Tāmen nàli yǒu hǎoxiē cài biéde dìfang chībuzháo.

他們那裏有好些菜別的地方吃不着。

They have a good many dishes there that you can't find (at) other places.

**Yíding**, “certainly,” can act as either an adverb or an adjectival verb.

**ADVERB**

Tā yíding lái.

**ADVERB**

他一定來。

He will definitely come.

Wǒ bù yíding qù.

我不一定去。

It's not certain that I will go.

Wǒ hái bù yíding qù.

我還不一定去。

It's not yet certain that I will go.

**ADJECTIVAL VERB**

Nǐ nǎitiān qù? Hái bù yíding.

你那天去？還不一定。

On what day are you going there? It's not certain yet.

Na shì yídingde.

那是一定的。

That's for sure.

Hǎoxiē means “a good many” or “a lot.” You have seen *-xiē*, “several,” “some,” in *zhèxiē*, “these,” and *nèixiē*, “those.” The element *-xiē* also occurs in *yìxiē*, “some,” “a few”: *Shūjiàzishang hái yǒu yìxiē shū*, (書架子還有一些書) “There are still a few books on the bookcase.”

*Biéde* is the word for “other” in the sense of “a different one.”

*Lǐngwài* is the word for “other” when you mean “an additional one.”

*Chībuzháo*: In this compound verb of result, the ending *-zháo* indicates

success in obtaining something. Here are some examples of compounds ending in *-zháo*:

Wǒ zhǎobuzháo tāde diànhuà hàomǎr.

我找不着他的電話號碼兒。

I cannot find his phone number.

Jīntiān méi mǎizháo píngguǒ.

今天沒買着蘋果。

I did not succeed in buying apples today.

**Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary**

6. *bù yíding*  
不一定  
not necessarily; it's not definite
7. *kànfa*  
看法  
opinion, view

8.	wǎnfàn 晚飯 supper, dinner
9.	xiǎngfa 想法 idea, opinion
10.	yìxiē 一些 some, several, a few
11.	zǎofàn 早飯 breakfast
12.	zuòfa 做法 way of doing things, method, practice

**Kànfa**, “opinion,” “view,” may be loosely translated as “way of looking at things.” The word is made up of **kàn**, “to look,” and **fǎ**, “method,” “way.”

Wǒmen duì zhèjiàn shìde kànfa bù yíyàng.

我們對這件事的看法不一樣。

Our opinions on this matter are not the same.

**Xiǎngfa**, “idea,” “opinion,” is made up of **xiǎng**, “to think,” and **fǎ**, “method,” “way.” **Xiǎngfa** is a “way of thinking.” The word is actually pronounced **xiǎngfa**.

Tāde xiǎngfa gēn wǒde yíyàng.

他的想法跟我的一樣。

His way of thinking is the same as mine.

**Zuòfa**, “way of doing things,” “method,” “practice,” is made up of the verb **zuò**, “to do,” and **fǎ**, “method,” “way.”

Nǐde mùdì hěn hǎo, kěshì wǒ bù xǐhuan nǐde zuòfa.

你的目的很好，可是我不喜歡你的做法。

Your goal is good, but I don’t like your methods.

## Drills

### Response Drill

1. Jīntiān wǒmen yìqǐ qù chī zhōngfàn, hǎo ma?

今天我们一起去吃中饭，好吗？

Let's go have lunch together today. Okay?

Hǎo, jīntiān wǒ qǐng nǐ.

好，今天我请你。

All right. Today I'm inviting you.

2. Jīntiān wǒ qǐng nǐ qù chī zhōngfàn.

今天我请你去吃中饭。

Today I am inviting you to go to eat lunch.

Bié kèqi, wǒmen yìqǐ qù chī zhōngfàn.

别客气，我们一起去吃中饭。

Don't be so polite. Let's Just go together and split the bill.

3. Míngtiān zhōngwǔ wǒmen yìqǐ qù chī zhōngfàn, hǎo ma?

明天中午我们一起去吃中饭，好吗？

Let's have lunch together at noon tomorrow, shall we?

Hǎo, míngtiān zhōngwǔ wǒ qǐng nǐ.

好，明天中午我请你。

All right. Tomorrow at noon, I'm inviting you.

4. Míngtiān zhōngwǔ wǒ qǐng nǐ qù chī zhōngfàn.

明天中午我请你去吃中饭。

I'll invite you to lunch tomorrow at noon.

Bié kèqi, wǒmen yìqǐ qù chī zhōngfàn.

别客气，我们一起去吃中饭。

Don't be so polite. Let's Just go together and split the bill.

5. Xīngqīwǔ wǒmen yìqǐ qù chī zhōngfàn, hǎo ma?

星期五我们一起去吃中饭，好吗？

Let's have lunch together on Friday, shall we?

Hǎo, Xīngqīwǔ wǒ qǐng nǐ.

好，星期五我请你。

All right, I am inviting you on Friday.

6. Xīngqīliù wǒ qǐng nǐ qù chī zhōngfàn.

星期六我请你去吃中饭。

I am inviting you to lunch on Saturday.

Bié kèqi, wǒmen yìqǐ qù chī zhōngfàn.

别客气，我们一起去吃中饭。

Don't be so polite. Let's Just go together and split the bill.

7. Míngtiān wǒmen yìqǐ qù chī zhōngfàn, hǎo ma?

明天中午我们一起去吃中饭，好吗？

Let's have lunch together at noon tomorrow, shall we?

Hǎo, míngtiān wǒ qǐng nǐ.

好，明天我请你。

OK, I'm inviting you tomorrow.



## Transformation Drill

1. Nèige ròu bǐ zhèige ròu hǎo.

那个肉比这个肉好。

This meat is better than that meat.

Zhèige ròu méiyǒu nèige ròu nàme hǎo.

这个肉没有那个肉那么好。

This meat is not as good as that meat.

2. Xīnde bǐ jiùde hǎo.

新的比旧的好。

New is better than old.

Jiùde méiyǒu xīnde nàme hǎo.

旧的没有新的那么好。

The old ones are not as good as the new ones.

3. Dàhuáde cài bǐ Dōngménde cài hǎo.

大话的菜比东门的菜好。

The dishes in Dàhuá are better than those in Dōngmén.

Dōngménde cài méiyǒu Dàhuáde cài nàme hǎo.

东门的菜没有大话的菜那么好。

Dōngmén's dishes are not as good as those in Dàhuá.

4. Tāde qián bǐ wǒde qián duō.

他/她的钱比我的钱多。

He/she has more money than me.

Wǒde qián méiyǒu tāde qián nàme duō.

我的钱没有他的钱那么多。

I don't have as much money as he does.

5. Nèige ròu bǐ zhèige ròu guì.

那个肉比这个肉贵。

That meat is more expensive than this one.

Zhèige ròu měiyǒu nèige ròu nàme guì.

这个肉没有那个肉那么贵。

This meat is not as expensive as that meat.

6. Jiù shū bǐ xīn shū piányi.

旧书比新书便宜。

Used books are cheaper than new ones.

Xīn shū měiyǒu jiù shū nàme piányi.

新书没有旧书那么便宜。

New books are not as cheap as old ones.

7. Tā kāi chē bǐ wǒ kāide kuài.

他开车比我开得快。

He drives faster than me.

Wǒ kāi chē měiyǒu tā kāide nàme kuài.

我开车没有他开de车那么快。

I don't drive as fast as he does.

## Combination Drill

1. **Bú tài hǎo. Lí wǒmen jiā jìn.**

不太好。离我们家近。

It is not too good. It is close to us.

**Suīrán bú tài hǎo, kěshi lí wǒmen jiā jìn.**

虽然不太好，可是离我们家近。

Even though it is not too good it is close to us.

2. **Hěn hǎo. Lí wǒmen jiā tài yuǎn.**

很好。离我们家太远。

It is very good. It is too far from us.

**Suīrán hěn hǎo, kěshi lí wǒmen jiā tài yuǎn.**

虽然很好，可是离我们家太远。

Even though it is very good, it is too far from us.

3. **Bú tài fāngbian. Lí wǒmen jiā jìn.**

不太方便。离我们家近。

It is not very convenient. It's close to us.

**Suīrán bú tài fāngbian, kěshi lí wǒmen jiā jìn.**

虽然不太方便，可是离我们家近。

Even though it is not very convenient, but it's close to us.

4. **Bú tài piányi. Lí wǒmen jiā jìn.**

不太便宜。离我们家近。

It is not so cheap. It's close to us.

**Suīrán bú tài piányi, kěshi lí wǒmen jiā jìn.**

虽然不太便宜，可是离我们家近。

Even though it is not cheap, but it's close to us.

5. **Hěn piányi. Lí wǒmen jiā tài yuǎn.**

很便宜。离我们家远。

It is very cheap. It's far away from us.

**Suīrán hěn piányi, kěshi lí wǒmen jiā tài yuǎn.**

虽然很便宜，可是离我们家远。

Even though it is cheap, it is far from us.

6. Hěn hǎo. Lí wǒmen jiā tài yuǎn.

很好。离我们家远。

It is very good. It's far away from us.

Suīrán hěn hǎo, kěshi lí wǒmen jiā tài yuǎn.

虽然很好，可是离我们家远。

Even though it is nice, but far from us.

7. Bú tài hǎo. Lí wǒmen jiā hěn jìn.

不太好。离我们家近。

It is not too good. It is close to us.

Suīrán bú tài hǎo, kěshi lí wǒmen jiā hěn jìn.

虽然不太好，可是离我们家近。

Even though it is not great, but it's close to us.

## Transformation Drill

1. Nèige fànguǎnzi lí zhèr hěn jìn.  
那个饭馆子离这儿很近。  
That restaurant is very close to here.

Cue zhèige  
这个  
this

Zhèige fànguǎnzi bǐ nèige fànguǎnzi lí zhèr gèng jìn.  
这个饭馆子比那个饭馆子离这儿很近。  
This restaurant is even closer to here than that restaurant.

2. Tā jiā lí zhèr hěn jìn.  
他家离这儿很近。  
His home is very close to here.

Cue wǒ jiā  
我家  
my home

Wǒ jiā bǐ tā jiā lí zhèr gèng jìn.  
我家比他家离这儿更近。  
My home is closer to here than his.

3. Nèige yínháng lí zhèr hěn yuǎn.  
那个银行离这儿很远。  
That bank is far from here.

Cue Zhōngguó Yínháng  
这个银行  
Bank of China

Zhōngguó Yínháng bǐ nèige yínháng lí zhèr gèng yuǎn.  
中国银行比那个银行离这儿很远。  
Bank of China is much farther away than that bank.

4. Wǔlù Qìchēzhàn lí zhèr hěn yuǎn.

五路汽车站离这儿很远。

The No. 5 bus station is far from here.

Cue

nèige Qìchēzhàn

那个汽车站

that bus station

Nèige Qìchēzhàn bǐ Wūlù Qìchēzhàn lí zhèr gèng yuǎn.

那个汽车站比五路汽车站离这儿很远。

That bus station is farther away than the Wūlù bus station.

5.

Wǔguānchù lí zhèr hěn yuǎn.

武官处离这儿很远。

The military attaché is far away.

Cue

Dàshìguǎn

大使馆

embassy

Dàshìguǎn bǐ Wǔguānchù lí zhèr gèng yuǎn.

大使馆比武官处离这儿很远。

The embassy is farther away than the military attaché.

6.

Huǒchēzhàn lí zhèr hěn jìn.

火车站离这儿很近。

The train station is very close from here.

Cue

Gōnglùjú chēzhàn

公路局车站

Gōnglùjú bus station

Gōnglùjú chēzhàn bǐ huǒchēzhàn lí zhèr gèng jìn.

公路局车站比火车站离这儿很近。

The Gōnglùjú bus station is much closer than the railway station.

7.

Wú Kēzhǎng jiā lí zhèr hěn yuǎn.

吾科长家离这儿很远。

The head of our department is far away from here.

Cue

Lǐ Jiàoshòu jiā

李教授家

Lǐ Jiàoshòu' s home

Lǐ Jiàoshòu jiā bǐ Wú Kēzhǎng jiā lí zhèr gèng yuǎn.

李教授家比吾科长家离这儿很远。

Professor Lǐ's home is much farther away than the head of Wú's department.

## Transformation Drill

1. Zhāng Xiǎojiě, Wáng Xiānsheng dōu yǒu qián.  
张小姐，王先生都有钱。  
Both Miss Zhāng and Mr. Wáng have money [are rich].

Cue the same

Zhāng Xiǎojiě gēn Wáng Xiānsheng yíyàng yǒu qián.  
张小姐跟王先生一样有钱。  
Miss Zhāng and Mr. Wáng are equally rich.

2. Zhāng Xiǎojiě, Wáng Xiānsheng dōu yǒu qián.  
张小姐，王先生都有钱。  
Both Miss Zhāng and Mr. Wáng have money [are rich].

Cue more

Zhāng Xiǎojiě bǐ Wáng Xiānsheng yǒu qián.  
张小姐比王先生有钱。  
Miss Zhāng is richer than Mr. Wáng.

3. Zhāng Xiǎojiě, Wáng Xiānsheng dōu yǒu qián.  
张小姐，王先生都有钱。  
Both Miss Zhāng and Mr. Wáng have money [are rich].

Cue less

Zhāng Xiǎojiě méiyǒu Wáng Xiānsheng nàme yǒu qián.  
张小姐没有王先生那么有钱。  
Miss Zhāng is not as rich as Mr. Wáng.

4. Zhāng Xiǎojiě, Wáng Xiānsheng dōu yǒu qián.  
张小姐，王先生都有钱。  
Both Miss Zhāng and Mr. Wáng have money [are rich].

Cue even more

Zhāng Xiǎojiě bǐ Wáng Xiānsheng gèng yǒu qián.



张小姐比王先生更有钱。

Miss Zhāng is richer than Mr. Wáng.

5. Zhāng Xiǎojiěde qián, Wáng Xiānshengde qián dōu hěn duō.

张小姐的钱，王先生的钱都很多。

Both Ms. Zhāng and Mr. Wáng have money [are rich].

Cue the same

Zhāng Xiǎojiěde qián gēn Wáng Xiānshengde qián yíyàng duō.

张小姐的钱跟王先生的钱一样多。

Miss Zhāng is as rich as Mr. Wáng.

6. Zhāng Xiǎojiěde qián, Wáng Xiānshengde qián dōu hěn duō.

张小姐的钱，王先生的钱都很多。

Both Ms. Zhāng and Mr. Wáng have money [are rich].

Cue less

Zhāng Xiǎojiěde qián méiyǒu Wáng Xiānshengde qián nàme duō.

张小姐的钱没有王先生的钱那么多。

Miss Zhāng has not as much money as Mr. Wáng.

7. Zhāng Xiǎojiěde qián, Wáng Xiānshengde qián dōu hěn duō.

张小姐的钱，王先生的钱都很多。

Both Ms. Zhāng and Mr. Wáng have money [are rich].

Cue even more

Zhāng Xiǎojiěde qián bǐ Wáng Xiānshengde qián gèng duō.

张小姐的钱比王先生的钱更多。

Miss Zhāng has more money than Mr. Wáng.

## Substitution Drill

1. Nǐmen zhèrde cài hěn hǎo.  
你们这儿的菜很好。  
Your food here is very good.

Cue fēicháng  
非常  
exceptionally

Nǐmen zhèrde cài fēicháng hǎo.  
你们这儿的菜非常好。  
Your food here is exceptionally good.

2. Nǐmen zhèrde cài fēicháng hǎo.  
你们这儿的菜非常好。  
Your food here is exceptionally good.

Cue hǎojíle  
好极了  
extremely

Nǐmen zhèrde cài hǎojíle.  
你们这儿的菜好极了。  
Your food here is extremely good.

3. Nǐmen zhèrde cài hǎojíle.  
你们这儿的菜好极了。  
Your food here is extremely good.

Cue hǎo yidiǎn  
好极了  
a little (more); better

Nǐmen zhèrde cài hǎo yidiǎn.  
你们这儿的菜好极了。  
Your food here is a little better.

4. Nǐmen zhèrde cài hǎo yidiǎn.

你们这儿的菜好一点。

Your food here is a little (more) good (better).

Cue

gèng

更

even more

Nǐmen zhèrde cài gèng hǎo.

你们这儿的菜更好。

Your food here is even more good.

5.

Nǐmen zhèrde cài gèng hǎo.

你们这儿的菜更好。

Your food here is even more good.

Cue

hǎojíle

好极了

extremely

Nǐmen zhèrde cài hǎojíle.

你们这儿的菜好极了。

Your food here is extremely good.

6.

Nǐmen zhèrde cài hǎojíle.

你们这儿的菜好极了。

Your food here is extremely good.

Cue

tèbié

特别

especially

Nǐmen zhèrde cài tèbié hǎo.

你们这儿的菜特别好。

Your food here is especially good.

## Cobination Drill

1. Zhèiběn shū hěn hǎo. Zhèiběn shū hěn piányi.

这本书很好。这本书很便宜。

This book is good. This book is inexpensive.

Zhèiběn shū yòu hǎo yòu piányi

这本书又好又便宜。

This book is both good and inexpensive.

2. Nǐ mǎide dìtú hěn hǎo. Nǐ mǎide dìtú hěn piányi.

你买的地图很好。你买的地图很便宜。

The maps you bought are good. The maps you buy are cheap.

Ni mǎide dìtú yòu hǎo yòu piányi.

你买的地图又好又便宜。

The maps he bought are both good and cheap.

3. Tā zhùde fàndiàn hěn hǎo. Tā zhùde fàndiàn hěn dà.

他住的饭店很好。他住的饭店很大。

The hotel where he lives is good. The hotel where he lives is big.

Tā zhùde fàndiàn yòu hǎo yòu dà.

他住的饭店又好又大。

The hotel where he lives is both good and big.

4. Nèibān fēijī hěn kuài. Nèibān fēijī hěn piányi.

那般飞机很快。那般飞机很便宜。

That plane is fast. That plane is cheap.

Nèibān fēijī yòu kuài yòu piányi.

那般飞机又快又便宜。

That plane is both fast and cheap.

5. Zuò huǒchē qù hěn hǎo. Zuò huǒchē qù hěn fāngbian.

坐火车去很好。坐火车去很方便。

To go by train is fine. To go by train is very convenient.

Zuò huǒchē qù yòu hǎo yòu fāngbian.

坐火车去又好又方便。

To go by train is both fine and convenient.

6. Zhège fànguǎnzi hěn jìn. Zhège fànguǎnzi hěn piányi.

这个饭馆子很近。这个饭馆子很便宜。

This restaurant is very close. This restaurant is very cheap.

Zhège fànguǎnzi yòu jìn yòu piányi.

这个饭馆子又近又便宜。

This restaurant is both close and cheap.

7. Tā mǎide dìtǎn hěn piányi. Tā mǎide dìtǎn hěn hǎo.

他买的地毯很便宜。他买的地毯很很好。

The rugs he bought were cheap. The rugs he bought are very nice.

Tā mǎide dìtǎn yòu piányi yòu hǎo.

他买的地毯又便宜又好。

The maps he bought are both good and cheap.

## Expansion Drill

1. Zhèrde ròu fēicháng hǎo.

这儿的肉非常好。

The meat here is exceptionally good.

Cue

chī

吃

eat

Zhèrde ròu fēicháng hǎo, biéde dìfang chībuzháo.

这儿的肉非常好，别的地方吃不着。

The meat here is exceptionally good. You can't find anything like it anywhere else.

2. Nàrde cài fēicháng hǎo.

那儿的菜非常好。

The food there is exceptionally good.

Cue

mǎi

买

buy

Nàrde cài fēicháng hǎo, biéde dìfang mǎibuzháo.

那儿的菜非常好，别的地方买不着。

The food there is exceptionally good. You can't find anything like it anywhere else.

3. Nàrde táng fēicháng hǎo.

那儿的糖非常好。

The soup there is exceptionally good.

Cue

mǎi

买

buy

Nàrde táng fēicháng hǎo, biéde dìfang mǎibuzháo.

那儿的糖非常好，别的地方买不着。

The soup there is exceptionally good. You can't find anything like it anywhere else.

4. Zhèrde diànyíng fēicháng hǎo.

这儿的电影非常好。

The movies there are exceptionally good.

Cue

kàn

看

read

Zhèrde diànyǐng fēicháng hǎo, biéde dìfang kànbuzháo.

这儿的电影非常好，别的地方看着不着。

The movies there are exceptionally good. You can't find anything like it anywhere else.

5. Zhèrde shū fēicháng duō.

这儿的书非常好。

The books there are exceptionally good.

Cue

kàn

看

read

Zhèrde shū fēicháng duō, biéde dìfang kànbuzháo.

这儿的书非常好，别的地方看着不着。

The books there are exceptionally good. You can't find anything like it anywhere else.

6. Nàrde diànshì fēicháng hǎo.

那儿的电视非常好。

The TVs there are exceptionally good.

Cue

mǎi

买

buy

Nàrde diànshì fēicháng hǎo, biéde dìfang mǎibuzháo.

那儿的电视非常好，别的地方买不着。

The TVs there are exceptionally good. You can't find anything like it anywhere else.

7. Nàrde cài fēicháng hǎo.

那儿的菜非常好。

The food there is exceptionally good.

Cue

chī

吃

eat

Nàrde cài fēicháng hǎo, biéde dìfang chībuzháo.

那儿的菜非常好，别的地方吃不着。

The food there is exceptionally good. You can't find anything like it anywhere else.



## Unit 7

### References

#### Reference List

1. B: Wèi.  
喂  
Hello.  
A: Zhāng Xiānsheng ma?  
張先生嗎？  
Is this Mr. Zhāng?
2. B: Shìde. Nín shì bu shì Bái Nǚshì?  
是的。您是不是白女士？  
Yes. Is this Miss White?  
A: Shì. Zhāng Xiānsheng, wǒ yǒu yíjiàn shì xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng.  
是。張先生，我有一件事想跟你打聽打聽。  
Yes. Mr. Zhāng, I have something I would like to ask you about.
3. B: Shénme shì?  
什麼事？  
What is it?  
A: Tīngshuō nín nàbian xīn lái le fāng xiānsheng, shì gāng pàilaide; tāde míngzi wǒ wàngjì le.  
聽說您那邊新來了方先生，是剛派來的；他的名字我忘記了。  
I have heard that you recently had a Mr. Fāng join you, who has just been assigned to your office. I have forgotten his given name.
4. B: Bú cuò, Fāng Dé míng shì shàngge lǐbài pài dào wǒmen zhèlǐ lái de.  
不錯，方德銘是上個禮拜派到我們這裏來的。  
That's right. Fāng Dé míng was sent over here last week.  
B: Zěnmé? Nǐ rènshi ta ma?  
怎麼？你認識他嗎。  
Why? Do you know him?
5. A: Bú rènshi.  
不認識。  
I don't know him.  
A: Búguò tīngshuō tā yě shì Jiāzhōu Dàxué biyède, suǒyǐ xiǎng qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ jièshào jièshào.

- 不過聽說他也是加州大學畢業的，所以想請你給我介紹介紹。
- However, I have heard that he also graduated from the University of California, so I wanted to ask you to introduce me to him.
6. B: Méi wèntí. Wǒ kànkàn...hǎo, wǒmen xiànzài dōu yǒu gōngfu.  
沒問題。我看看...好，我們現在都有功夫。  
No problem. I'll take a look.... Okay, we are both free now.
- B: Nǐ xiànzài néng lái ma?  
你現在能來嗎？  
Can you come now?
7. A: Xíng.  
行。  
That will be fine.
- A: Wǒ mǎshàng dào nín bànɡōnɡshì lái.  
我馬上到您辦公室來。  
I'll come to your office right away.
- A: Chàbùduō bànɡe zhōnɡtóu jiù dào.  
差不多半個鐘頭就到。  
I'll be there in about half an hour.
8. jìde  
記得  
to remember
9. rènde  
認得  
to recognize, to know (alternate word for rènshi)
10. rènshi zì  
認識字  
to know how to read (literally, "to recognize characters")
11. wàng  
忘  
to forget (alternate word for wàngji, especially in the sense of forgetting to DO something)
12. wánquán  
完全  
completely
13. xiǎnɡqilai  
想起來  
to think of, to remember
14. zuǒyòu  
左右

approximately

## Vocabulary

bìyè	畢業	to graduate
bú cuò	不錯	not bad, pretty good; that's right
chàbùduō	差不多	almost, about, approximately
dǎtíng	大廳	to inquire about, to ask about
jìde	記得	to remember
mǎshàng	馬上	immediately
méi wèntí	沒問題	(there's) no problem
pài dào	派到	to send to
pàilái	派來	to send here
rènde	認得	to recognize, to know
rènshi	認識	to recognize, to know
rènshi zì	認識字	to know how to read (literally, "to recognize characters")
tīngshuō	聽說	to hear that
wàng	忘	to forget
wàngjì	忘記	to forget
wánquán	完全	completely
wèntí	問題	problem, question
xiǎngqilai	想起來	to think of, to remember
zuǒyòu	左右	approximately
cōngmíng	聰明	to be intelligent
duōde duō	多得多	much more
kěnéng	可能	maybe
Shìjiè Yínháng	世界銀行	World Bank
xiū jià	休假	to take a vacation
yánjiuyuàn	研究院	graduate school
yàobushi...jiù shì...	要不是..就是..	if it's not... then it will be...
yònggōng	用工 to be hard-working	undefined
yuèchū	月初	the beginning of the month
yuèdǐ	月底	the end of the month

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1-2

1. B: Wèi.  
喂  
Hello.
- A: Zhāng Xiānsheng ma?  
張先生嗎？  
Is this Mr. Zhāng?
2. B: Shìde. Nín shì bu shì Bái Nǚshì?  
是的。您是不是白女士？  
Yes. Is this Miss White?
- A: Shì. Zhāng Xiānsheng, wǒ yǒu yíjiàn shì xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng.  
是。張先生，我有一件事想跟你打聽打聽。  
Yes. Mr. Zhāng, I have something I would like to ask you about.

**Gēn nín dǎtīng**, “ask information from you”: Note that the prepositional verb **gēn** is translated as “from.” **Dǎtīng**, “to inquire,” is less formal than **qǐngjiào** and requests information rather than advice.

Objects of reduplicated verbs: Reduplicated verbs may be followed only by DEFINITE objects. Indefinite objects of reduplicated verbs precede those verbs. In the last sentence of exchange 2, the object of the reduplicated verb **dǎtīng dǎtīng** is indefinite: **yíjiàn shì**, “a matter” Thus the object is introduced in the clause **wǒ yǒu yíjiàn shì** which precedes the entire verb phrase **xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng**.

Reduplicating a verb makes it indefinite; adding an indefinite object might cause confusion. The reduplicated verbs in the sentences below have definite objects:

Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng nàijiàn shì.

我想跟您打聽打聽那件事。

I would like to ask you about that.

Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng zhèijiàn shì.

我想跟您打聽打聽這件事。

I would like to ask you about this.

Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng tāde shì.

我想跟您打聽打聽他的事。

I would like to ask you about his matter (about ask him)

Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng nǐde nàijiàn shì.

我想跟您打聽打聽你的那件事。

I would like to ask you about that matter of yours.

Simple verbs are used in the following sentences, which have indefinite objects:

Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng yídiǎn shì.

我想跟您打聽一點事。

I would like to ask you about something.

Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng hěn duō shì.

我想跟您打聽很多事。

Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng jǐjiàn shì.

我想跟您打聽幾件事。

I would like to ask you about a few things.

### Notes on №3

3. B: Shénme shì?

什麼事？

What is it?

A: Tīngshuō nín nàbian xīn lái le fāng xiānsheng, shì gāng pàilade; tāde míngzi wǒ wàngji le.

聽說您那邊新來了方先生，是剛派來的；他的名字我忘記了。

I have heard that you recently had a Mr. Fāng join you, who has just been assigned to your office. I have forgotten his given name.

Tīngshuō corresponds to the English “I hear that...”

... lái le yíwèi fāng xiānsheng, “there came a Mr. Fāng”: While “a” and “the” are used in English to distinguish between indefinite and definite, word order accomplishes the same distinction in Chinese. The subject “A Mr. Fāng” is placed AFTER the verb because the subject is indefinite. With an indefinite subject following the verb, information preceding the verb may give location, time, or other scene-setting details.

Zhèr xīn kāile yige hěn hǎode fànguǎnzi.

這兒新開了一個很好的飯館子。

A very good restaurant opened here recently.

Zuótiān lái le yìxiē Riběn rén.

昨天來了一些日本人。

Some Japanese came yesterday.

Yǐjīng qù le wǔbǎige rén.

已經去了五百個人。

Five hundred people have already gone there.

Verbs of appearing and verbs of disappearing (“to come,” “to discover,” “to happen/occur”) introduce indefinite subjects, as do the words you and yǒude.

Wàibian yǒu jǐge rén zhǎo nǐ.

外邊有幾個人找你。

There are some people outside who want to see you.

Yǒude rén bù xǐhuan hē chá.

有的人不喜歡喝茶。

Some people don't like to drink tea.

Some situations may be described with either you or another verb.

Zuótiān yǒu yige rén lái zhǎo nǐ.

昨天有一個人來找你。

Yesterday there was someone here looking for you.

Zuótiān lái le yige rén yào zhǎo nǐ dāngmiàn tán tán.

昨天來了一個人要找你當面談談。

Yesterday someone was here who was looking for you to talk with you in person.

Subjects occurring at the end of a sentence are indefinite, whether or not they are accompanied by *yige*. Subjects preceding the verb in a sentence are definite, whether or not they are accompanied by *zhèige*, *nèige*, *zhèixiē*, *nèixiē*, or other specifying words.

來人了。

Lái rén le.

Some people have come.

Rén lái le.

人來了。

The people have come, (i.e., those whom we were expecting)

*Míngzi* means “name”—of an object, a place, or a person (GIVEN NAME). Occasionally, *míngzi* is used for a person's full name (surname and given name). This usage is more common in the PRC.

*Wàngji* is a verb meaning “to forget”—used especially in reference to forgetting facts. *Wàng*, “to forget,” is more commonly used for forgetting to do something. The verb *jìde* means “to remember.”

### Notes on №4

4. B: *Bú cuò, Fāng Dé míng shì shàngge lǐbài pài dào wǒmen zhèlǐ lái de.*

不錯，方德銘是上個禮拜派到我們這裏來的。

That's right. *Fāng Dé míng* was sent over here last week.

B: *Zěnmé? Nǐ rènshi ta ma?*

怎麼？你認識他嗎。

Why? Do you know him?

*Bú cuò* means “not bad” in the sense of pretty good,” “pretty well,” “all right.”

*Nǐ zěnmeyàng?*

你怎麼樣？

How are things going?

*Bú cuò.*

不錯。

Not bad.

In the first sentence of No. 4, **bú cuò** means “that’s right, your information is not wrong.”

Lǐ Xiānsheng, nǐ gāng cóng Xiānggǎng huí lái, shì ma?  
 李先生，你剛從香港回來，是嗎？  
 Mr. Li, you just got back from Hong Kong, didn't you?  
**Bú cuò, wǒ shì zuótiān huí lái de.**  
 不錯，我是昨天回來的。  
 That's right. I got back yesterday.

Here are more examples of **bú cuò**:

Nèige fànguǎnzide cài zhēn bú cuò.  
 那個飯館子菜真不錯。  
 That restaurant really has pretty good food.  
**Tā shuō Zhōngguó huà, shuō de bú cuò.**  
 他說中國話，說得不錯。  
 He speaks Chinese pretty well.

In the first example, notice that an adverb precedes **bú cuò**: **zhēn bú cuò Pài dào...lái** is a three-part verb: action verb (also expressing MOTION), prepositional verb (must take an object), and directional verb (**lái, qù**)

ACTION VERB	PREPOSITION-AL VERB	OBJECT	DIRECTION-AL VERB
pǎo 跑	dào 到	shānshàng 山上	qù 去
		“to run up on the hill”	#
bān 搬	dào 到	zhèr 這兒	lái 來
		“to move it into here”	
ná 拿	dào 到	xuéxiào 學校	qù 去
		“to take it to school”	
zǒu 走	dào 到	hòubiān 後邊兒	lái 來
		“to walk to the back”	

**Zěnmé**, “why,” “how come,” “how is it that...,”\*

### Note

You have already learned that **zěnmé** can mean “how.”

is a more colloquial and challenging word for “why” than **wèishénme**. Only a reason or an explanation is requested by **wèishénme**. **Zěnmé** expresses more, emphasizing the speaker’s surprise or lack of understanding.

**Níménde bàngōngshì zěnmé zhème xiǎo?**



你們的辦公室怎麼這麼小？

How is it that your office is so small?

Tā fùmǔ dōu shuō Zhōngguó huà, tā zěnmé bú huì shuō?

他父母都說中國話，他怎麼不會說。

Both his parents speak Chinese. How is it that he can't?

Zhème yàojǐnde shì, wǒ zěnmé wàngle zuò le?

這麼要緊的事，我怎麼忘了做了？

How could I have forgotten to do such an important thing?

Nǐ zěnmé bú niàn shū ne?

你怎麼不念書呢？

How come you're not studying?

Nǐ zěnmé bù shuō huà? Yǒu shénme bù gāoxingde shì ma?

你怎麼不說話？有什麼不高興的事嗎？

How come you're not saying anything? Is there something you are unhappy about?

The meaning of *zěnmé* is sometimes affected by the aspect marker used:

Nǐ zěnmé lái le?

你怎麼來了？

How come you are here? (i.e., "What are you doing here?")

Nǐ (shì) zěnmé lái de?

你(是)怎麼來的？

How did you get here? (i.e., by what means of transportation)

*Rènshi* the state verb means "to know" in the sense of "to be acquainted with," "to be familiar with," "to recognize." As an action verb, *rènshi* means "to meet," "to get acquainted with."

**STATE VERB**

Nǐ rènshi Zhāng Guóquán ma?

你認識張國權嗎？

Do you know Zhāng Guóquán?

Nǐ rènshi ta ma?

你認識他嗎？

Do you know him?

Wǒmen bú tài rènshi.

我們不太認識。

We are not too well acquainted.

Wǒmen qùnián hái bú rènshi.

我們去年還不認識。

We did not know each other yet last year.

**ACTION VERB**

Wǒ zài Měiguode shíhou, rènshile hěn duō Měiguó niánqīng rén.

**ACTION VERB**

**Note**

niánqīng, “to be young”

我在美國的時候，認識了很多美國年輕人。

When I was in America, I met a lot of young Americans.

Wǒ shì qiánnián rènshi tāde.

我是前年認識他的。

I met him the year before last.

Nèige shíhou wǒmen hái méi rènshi.

那個時候我們還沒認識。

At that time we had not yet met.

Tā shì yíge hěn hǎode rén, nǐ yīnggāi rènshi rènshi.

他是一個很好的人，你應該認識認識。

He is a very good person; you should

**Note**

yīnggāi, “should”

get to know him.

As a state verb, **rènshi** is used for “knowing” or “recognizing” Chinese characters.

Nǐ rènshi duōshǎo Zhōngguó zì?

你認識多少個中國字？

How many Chinese characters do you know/recognize?

Nǐ rènshi zhèige zì ma?

你認識這個字嗎？

Do you recognize this character?

Contrast the meanings of **rènshi** and **zhīdao**: **rènshi**, “to know” a person; **zhīdao**, “to know of” a person:

Nǐ rènshi Táng Xiǎojiě ma?

你認識唐小姐嗎？

Do you know Miss Táng?

Wǒ zhīdao tā, dànshi wǒmen méi jiànguò.

我知道她，但是我們沒見過。

I know of her, but we haven't met.

When a place is being discussed, **rènshi** means “to know how to get [there].” **Zhīdao** continues to mean “to know of [a place].”

Nǐ rènshi nèige diànyǐngyuàn ma?

你認識那個電影院嗎？

Do you know how to get to that movie theater?

Nǐ zhīdao nèige diànyǐngyuàn ma?

你知道那個電影院？

Do you know of that movie theater?

### Notes on №5

5. A: **Bú rènshi.**

不認識。

I don't know him.

A: **Búguò tīngshuō tā yě shì Jiāzhōu Dàxué bìyède, suǒyǐ xiǎng qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ jièshào jièshào.**

不過聽說他也是加州大學畢業的，所以想請你給我介紹介紹。

However, I have heard that he also graduated from the University of California, so I wanted to ask you to introduce me to him.

**Shì Jiāzhōu Dàxué bìyède**, “graduated from the University of California”: The name of a school or a word describing the type of school may stand in front of the verb **bìyè** with no preceding prepositional verb, such as **cóng**, “from.”

Nǐ érzi yǐjīng dàxué/zhōngxué/ xiǎoxué bìyè le ma?

你兒子已經大學/中學/小學畢業了嗎？

Has your son graduated from college/high school/elementary school already?

**Tā dàxué hái méi bìyè ne.**

他大學還沒畢業呢。

He has not graduated from college yet.

**Tā shì Táiwān Dàxué bìyède.**

他是臺灣大學畢業的。

He graduated from **Táiwān** University.

**Bìyè** may also be preceded by either **zài**, “at,” or **cóng**, “from.”

Nǐ shì zài nǎige zhōngxué bìyède?

你是在哪個中學畢業的？

What high school did you graduate from?

**Wǒ qùnián cóng Dézhōu Dàxué bìyè le.**

我去年從德州大學畢業了。

I graduated last year from the University of Texas.

**Wǒ shì qībānián cóng Běijīng Dàxué bìyède.**

我是七八年從北京大學畢業的。

I graduated from **Běijīng** University in '78.

**Bìyè**, meaning “to complete a course of study,” is a compound made up of a verb plus a general object. For this reason, the object **yè** may be separated from the verb **bì**. This separation occurs most frequently in sentences containing the **shì... de** construction.

Tā shì yījiǔqīliùnián bìde yè.

他是一九七六年畢業的。

He graduated in 1976.

### Notes on №6

6. B: Méi wèntí. Wǒ kànkàn...hǎo, wǒmen xiànzài dōu yǒu gōngfu.  
沒問題。我看看...好，我們現在都有功夫。  
No problem. I'll take a look.... Okay, we are both free now.
- B: Nǐ xiànzài néng lái ma?  
你現在能來嗎？  
Can you come now?

The noun **wèntí** can mean “question,” “problem,” or “difficulty.”

Tā wènle hǎoduō wèntí.

他問了好多問題。

He asked a lot of questions.

Nà shì yige hěn dàde wèntí.

那是一個很大的問題。

That's a big problem.

**Nǐ yǒu wèntí ma?** could mean either “Do you have any questions?” or “Are you having any problems?”

### Notes on №7

7. A: Xíng.  
行。  
That will be fine.
- A: Wǒ mǎshàng dào nín bàngōngshì lái.  
我馬上到您辦公室來。  
I'll come to your office right away.
- A: Chàbuduō bànge zhōngtóu jiù dào.  
差不多半個鐘頭就到。  
I'll be there in about half an hour.

The adverb **mǎshàng** (literally, “on horseback”) means “immediately,” “right away.”

**Chàbuduō** may be translated fairly literally as “does not differ much.” Other translations are “about,” “approximately,” “almost.”

Chàbuduō bādiǎn le.

差不多八點了。

It is nearly eight o'clock.

Zhèběn shū wǒ chàbuduō kànwán le.

這本書我差不多看完了。

I have almost finished reading this book.

Tāmen chàbuduō bādiǎn zhōng lái.

他們差不多八點鐘來。

They are coming at around eight o'clock.

Nàge xuéxiào yǒu chàbuduō sānbǎige xuésheng.

那個學校有差不多三百個學生。

That school has approximately three hundred students.

### Notes Additional Required Vocabulary

8. **jìde**  
記得  
to remember
9. **rènde**  
認得  
to recognize, to know (alternate word for **rènshi**)
10. **rènshi zì**  
認識字  
to know how to read (literally, “to recognize characters”)
11. **wàng**  
忘  
to forget (alternate word for **wàngji**, especially in the sense of forgetting to DO something)
12. **wánquán**  
完全  
completely
13. **xiǎngqilai**  
想起來  
to think of, to remember
14. **zuǒyòu**  
左右  
approximately

The verb **jìde**, “to remember,” acts like a state verb.

Nǐ jìde Wáng Xiǎo Míng ma?

你記得王小明嗎？

Do you remember Wáng Xiǎo Míng?

Jìde. Tā shì wǒ àiren dàxuéde tóngxué.

記得。他是我愛人大學的同學。

I remember (him). He is my spouse's college classmate.

Wǒ zuótiān bú jìde tā xìng shénme. Jīntiān yòu xiǎngqilai le.

我昨天不記得他姓什麼。今天又想起來了。

Yesterday I couldn't remember what his name is. Today I remembered it (again).

Rènde, "to recognize," "to know," is usually interchangeable with rènshi. Both rènshi and rènde are most often made negative with bù.

Nǐ rènde ta ma?

你認得他媽？

Do you know him?

Bú rènde.

不認得。

No.

Tā lù yě bú rènde.

他路也不認得。

He doesn't even know the way.

Wǒmen qùnián hái bú rènde.

我們去年還不認得。

We did not know each other last year.

Wàng, "to forget," is an action verb.

Wǒ hěn róngyì bǎ rén míngzi wàng le.

我很容易把人名字忘了。

I forget people's names very easily.

Nimen dōu bǎ chēpiào ná lai le ma?

你們都把車票拿來了嗎？

Did all of you bring your bus tickets?

Wǒ wàng le.

我忘了。

I forgot (mine).

Wǒ méi wàng.

我沒忘。

I didn't forget.

Wánquán, "completely," is an adverb used to modify verbs.

Tā xiě de zì wánquán duì.

他寫的字完全對。

The character he wrote is completely right.

Tā wánquán bù dòng.

他完全不懂。

He doesn't understand any part of this.

Wǒ wánquán bù zhīdào zhèjiàn shì.

我完全不知道這件事。

I don't know anything about this matter.

**Xiǎngqilai**, “to think of,” “to remember,” is a compound verb of result. It is made up of **xiǎng**, “to think”; **qǐ** “to rise”; and **lái**, “to come.”

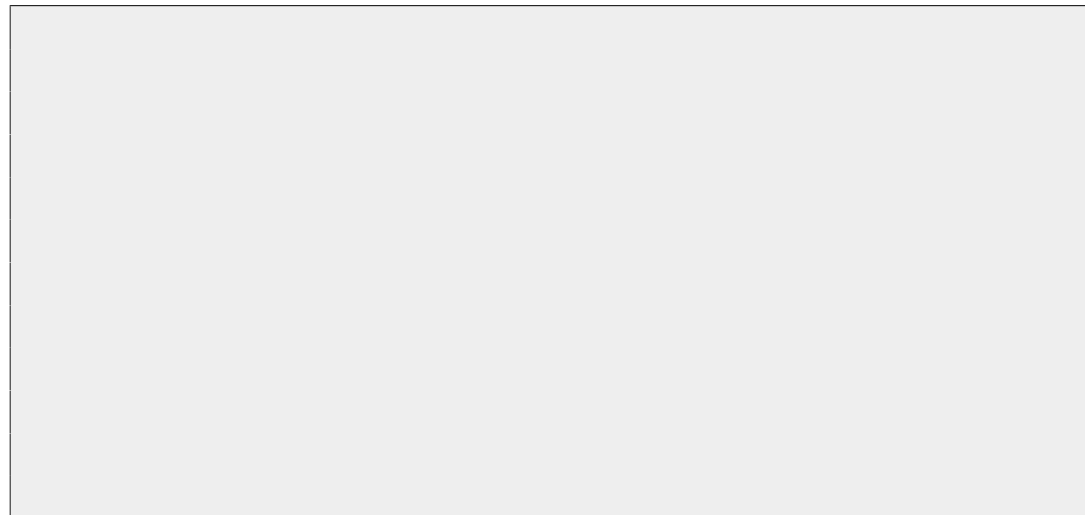
 **Note**

**Xiǎngqilai** is actually pronounced **xiángqilai**. The ending **-qílái** is in the neutral tone; because **qǐ** was originally in the third tone, **xiǎng** changes to the rising tone.

As an ending showing result, **-qílái** may have either its literal meaning of “to come up” or more abstract meanings such as “to come to mind.”

 **Note**

English prepositions, such as “up,” are also used both literally and abstractly: “look up the wall” (an upward motion) and “look up the phone number” (no motion indicated by “up”)



請把椅子辦起來。

Qǐng bǎ yǐzi bānqilai.

Please lift up the chair.

請你們站起來。

Qǐng nǐmen zhànqilai.

Please stand up.

那個字我想起來了。

Nèige zì wǒ xiǎngqilai le.

I remember that character.

Zuǒyòu (literally, “left-right”) means “approximately,” “about.”

Wǒ wǔdiǎn zuǒyòu lái jiē nǐ.

我五點左右來接你。

I will come to get you about five o'clock.

Nǐ qù mǎi diǎnr píngguǒ, hǎo bu hǎo?

你去買點兒蘋果，好不好？

How about going to buy some apples?

Yào duōshǎo?

要多少？

How many do you want?

Sānjīn zuǒyòu jiù gòu le.

三斤左右就夠了。

About three catties should be enough.



## Drills

### Transformation Drill

1. Wǒ yǒu yíjiàn shì xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng.

我有一件事想跟您打听打听。

I have something I would like to ask you about.

Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng yíjiàn shì.

我想跟您打听一件事。

I would like to ask you something.

2. Nèijiàn shì, wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng.

那件事，我想跟您打听打听。

I would like to ask you about that matter.

Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng nèijiàn shì.

我想跟您打听打听那件事。

I would like to ask you about that matter.

3. Wǒ yǒu hěn duō shì xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng.

我有很多事想跟您打听打听。

I have many things I want to ask you about.

Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng hěn duō shì.

我想跟您打听很多事。

I want to ask you many things.

4. Zhèjiàn shì, wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng.

这件事，我想跟您打听打听。

I want to ask you about this matter.

Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng zhèjiàn shì.

我想跟您打听打听这件事。

I want to ask you about this.

5. Tāde shì, wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng.

他的事，我想跟您打听打听。

I want to ask you about his affairs.

Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng tāde shì.

我想跟您打听打听他的事。

I want to ask you about him.

6. Wǒ yǒu jījiàn shì xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng.

我有一件事想跟您打听打听。

I have something I would like to ask you about.

Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng jījiàn shì.

我想跟您打听一件事。

I want to ask you something.

7. Nǐde nèijiàn shì, wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng.

你的那件事，我想跟您打听打听。

I want to ask you about your matter.

Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎtīng dǎtīng nǐde nèijiàn shì.

我想跟您打听打听你的那件事。

I want to ask you about that matter about you.

## Expansion Drill

1. Tāde míngzi wǒ wàng le.

他的名字我忘了。

I have forgotten his given name.

Tāde míngzi wǒ wàng le, nǐ hái jìde ma?

他的名字我忘了，你还记得吗？

I have forgotten his given name. Do you remember it?

2. Tāde dìzhǐ wǒ wàngji le.

他的地址我忘记了。

I have forgotten his address.

Tāde dìzhǐ wǒ wàngji le, nǐ hái jìde ma?

他的地址我忘记了，你还记得吗？

I have forgotten his address. Do you remember it?

3. Tā shénme shíhou lái wǒ wàng le.

他什么时候来我忘了。

I have forgotten when he came.

Tā shénme shíhou lái wǒ wàng le, nǐ hái jìde ma?

他什么时候来我忘了，你还记得吗？

I have forgotten when he came. Do you remember it?

4. Nèibān fēijī jǐdiǎn zhōng dào wǒ wàngji le.

内板飞机几点钟到我忘记了。

I have forgotten what time the plane arrived.

Nèibān fēijī jǐdiǎn zhōng dào wǒ wàngji le, nǐ hái jìde ma?

内板飞机几点钟到我忘记了，你还记得吗？

I have forgotten what time the plane arrived. Do you remember it?

5. Tā shì nǎinián dào Zhōngguo qùde wǒ wàng le.

他是哪年到中国去的我忘了。

I have forgotten when he went to China.

Tā shì nǎinián dào Zhōngguo qùde wǒ wàng le, nǐ hái jìde ma?

他是哪年到中国去的我忘了，你还记得吗？

I have forgotten when he went to China. Do you remember it?

6. Wǒmen zài nǎlǐ huàn chē wǒ wàngjǐ le.

我们在哪里换车我忘记了。

I have forgotten where we changed car.

Wǒmen zài nǎlǐ huàn chē wǒ wàngjǐ le, nǐ hái jìde ma?

我们在哪里换车我忘记了，你还记得吗？

7. Yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén wǒ wàng le.

银行几点钟关门我忘了。

I have forgotten what time the bank closed.

Yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén wǒ wàng le, nǐ hái jìde ma?

银行几点钟关门我忘了，你还记得吗？

I have forgotten what time the bank closed. Do you remember it?

## Expansion Drill

1. Tīngshuō tā shì gāng pàilaide.

听说他是刚派来的。

I have heard he was just sent over.

Cue

zhèli

这里

here

Tīngshuō tā shì gāng pài dào zhèli láide.

听说他是刚派到这里来的。

I have heard he was just sent over here.

2. Tīngshuō tā shì gāng pàiqude.

听说他是刚派去的。

I have heard he was just sent there.

Cue

nàli

那里

there

Tīngshuō tā shì gāng pài dào nàli qùde.

听说他是刚派到那里去的。

I have heard he was just sent over there.

3. Tīngshuō Lǐ Xiānsheng shì gāng pàilaide.

听说李先生是刚派来的。

I have heard Mr. Lǐ was just sent here.

Cue

Táiběi

台北

Táiběi

Tīngshuō Lǐ Xiānsheng shì gāng pài dào Táiběi láide.

听说李先生是刚派派台北的。

I have heard Mr. Lǐ was just send back to Táiběi.

4. Tīngshuō Wáng Xiǎojiě shì gāng pàiqude.

听说王小姐是刚派去的。

I have heard that Miss Wáng was just sent there.

Cue

Táinán

台南

Táinán

Tīngshuō Wáng Xiǎojiě shì gāng pài dào Táinán qùde.

听说王小姐是刚派到台南去的。

I have heard Miss Wáng was just sent to Táinán.

5.

Tīngshuō tā gēge shì gāng pàilaide.

听说他哥哥是刚派来的。

I have heard that his brother was just sent here.

Cue

Táizhōng

台中

Táizhōng

Tīngshuō tā gēge shì gāng pài dào Táizhōng láiide.

听说他哥哥是刚派到台中来的。

I have heard he was just sent back to Táizhōng.

6.

Tīngshuō tā shì gāng pàiqude.

听说他是刚派去的。

I have heard he was just sent there.

Cue

Gāoxióng

高雄

Gāoxióng

Tīngshuō tā shì gāng pài dào Gāoxióng qùde.

听说他是刚派到高雄去的。

I have heard he was just sent over there.

7.

Tīngshuō nín shì gāng pàilaide.

听说您是刚派来的。

I have heard you were just sent over.

Cue

zhèlì

这里

here

Tīngshuō nín shì gāng pài dào zhèlǐ lái de.

听说您是刚派到这里来的。

I have heard you were just sent over here.

## Expansion Drill

1. Tā shì Jiāzhōu Dàxué bìyède.

他是加州大学毕业的。

He graduated from the University of California.

Cue

yījiùsìwǔnián

一九四五年

1945

Tā shì yījiùsìwǔnián Jiāzhōu Dàxué bìyède.

他是一九四五年加州大学毕业的。

In 1945 he graduated from the University of California.

2. Tā shì Táiwān Dàxué bìyède.

他是台湾大学毕业的。

He graduated from the University of Táiwān.

Cue

yījiùwǔliùnián

一九五六年

1956

Tā shì yījiùwǔliùnián Táiwān Dàxué bìyède.

他是一九五六年台湾大学毕业的。

In 1956 he graduated from the University of Táiwān.

3. Tā shì Mázhōu Dàxué bìyède.

他是麻州大学毕业的。

He graduated from the University of Massachusetts.

Cue

yījiùliùqīnián

一九六七年

1967

Tā shì yījiùliùqīnián Mázhōu Dàxué bìyède.

他是一九六七年麻州大学毕业的。

In 1967 he graduated from the University of Massachusetts.

4. Tā shì Dézhōu Dàxué bìyède.



他是德州大学毕业的。

He graduated from the University of Texas.

Cue

yījiùliùèrnián

一九六二年

1962

Tā shì yījiùliùèrnián Dézhōu Dàxué bìyède.

他是一九六二年德州大学毕业的。

In 1962 he graduated from the University of Texas.

5.

Tā shì Běijīng Dàxué bìyède.

他是北京大学毕业的。

He graduated from the University of Běijīng.

Cue

yījiùsìqīnián

一九四七年

1947

Tā shì yījiùsìqīnián Běijīng Dàxué bìyède.

他是一九四七年北京大学毕业的。

In 1947 he graduated from the University of Běijīng.

6.

Tā shì Dōngběi Dàxué bìyède.

他是东北大学毕业的。

He graduated from the University of Dōngběi.

Cue

yījiùsānlíngnián

一九三零年

1930

Tā shì yījiùsānlíngnián Dōngběi Dàxué bìyède.

他是一九三零年东北大学毕业的。

In 1930 he graduated from the University of Dōngběi.

7.

Tā shì Nánjīng Dàxué bìyède.

他是南京大学毕业的。

He graduated from the University of Nánjīng.

Cue

yījiùsānqīnián

一九三七年

1937

Tā shì yījiūsānqīnián Nánjīng Dàxué bìyède.

他是一九三七年南京大学毕业的。

In 1937 he graduated from the University of Nánjīng.

## Expansion Drill

1. Wǒ kànjianguo zhèige zì.

我看见过这个字。

I have seen this character before.

Wǒ kànjianguo zhèige zì, kěshi wǒ bú rènshi zhèige zì.

我看见过这个字，可是我不认识这个字。

I have seen this character before, but I don't recognize before, but I don't recognize it.

2. Wǒ zhīdao tā shi shéi.

I know who he is.

Wǒ zhīdao tā shi shéi, kěshi wǒ bú rènshi ta.

I know who he is, but I'm not acquainted with him.

3. Wǒ kànjianguo Zhāng Xiǎojiě.

我看见过张小姐。

I have seen Miss Zhāng before.

Wǒ kànjianguo Zhāng Xiǎojiě, kěshi wǒ bú rènshi Zhāng Xiǎojiě.

我看见过张小姐，可是我不认识张小姐。

I have seen Miss Zhāng, but I don't know her.

4. Wǒ qùguo nèige dìfang.

我去过那个地方。

I went to that place before.

Wǒ qùguo nèige dìfang, kěshi wǒ bú rènshi nèige dìfang.

我去过那个地方，可是我不认识那个地方。

I've been to that place, but I don't know it.

5. Wǒ zhīdao tā shi Lǐ Kēzhǎng.

我知道他是李科长。

I know that he is Chief Lǐ.

Wǒ zhīdao tā shi Lǐ Kēzhǎng, kěshi wǒ bú rènshi Lǐ Kēzhǎng.

我知道他是李科长，可是我不认识李科长。

I know he is Section Chief **Lǐ**, but I don't know him.

6. **Wǒ kànjiànguo.**

我见过。

I have seen it.

**Wǒ kànjiànguo, kěshi wǒ bú rènshi.**

我见过，可是我不认识。

I've seen it, but I don't know it.

6. **Wǒ zhīdào tā shì Wáng Xiǎojiěde gēge.**

我知道他是王小姐的哥哥。

I know that he is Miss **Wáng**'s older brother.

**Wǒ zhīdào tā shì Wáng Xiǎojiěde gēge, kěshi wǒ bú rènshi tā.**

我知道他是王小姐的哥哥，可是我不认识他。

I know he is Miss **Wáng**'s brother, but I don't know him.

## Transformation Drill

1. Chàbuduō bànge zhōngtóu jiù dào.  
差不多半个钟头就到。  
I'll be there in about half an hour.

Bànge zhōngtóu zuǒyòu jiù dào.  
半个钟头左右就到。  
I'll be there in about half an hour.
2. Chàbuduō yào yige zhōngtóu.  
差不多要一个钟头。  
Almost an hour.

Yào yige zhōngtóu zuǒyòu.  
要一个钟头左右。  
It will take about an hour.
3. Tā zhùle chàbuduō sāntiān.  
他住了差不多三天。  
He stayed for almost three days.

Tā zhùle sāntiān zuǒyòu.  
他住了三天左右。  
He lived for about three days.
4. Tā chàbuduō wǔshísuì le.  
他差不多五十岁了。  
He is almost fifty years old.

Tā wǔshísuì zuǒyòu le.  
他五十岁左右了。  
He is about fifty years old.
5. Nèiběn shū chàbuduō yào shíkuài qián.  
那本书差不多要十块钱。  
That book costs about ten dollars.

Nèiběn shū yào shíkuài qián zuǒyòu.  
那本书要十块钱左右。

那本书要十块钱左右。

That book costs about ten yuan.

6. Chàbuduō yào zǒu sìshiwǔfēn zhōng.

差不多要走四十五分钟。

About forty-five minutes

Yào zǒu sìshiwǔfēn zhōng zuǒyòu.

要走四十五分钟左右。

It takes about forty-five minutes to walk.

7. Chàbuduō sānge xīngqī.

差不多三个星期。

Almost three weeks.

Sānge xīngqī zuǒyòu.

三个星期左右。

About three weeks.

## Response Drill

1. Nǐ xiànzài lái ma?  
你现在来吗?  
Are you coming now?

Cue mǎshàng  
马上  
right away

Wǒ mǎshàng lái.  
我马上来。  
I'm coming right away.

2. Tā bādiǎn zhōng lái ma?  
他八点钟来吗。  
Is he coming at eight o'clock.

Cue chàbùduō  
差不多  
around

Tā chàbùduō bādiǎn zhōng lái.  
他差不多八点钟来。  
He comes around eight o'clock.

3. Tā shídiǎn zhōng qù ma?  
他十点钟去吗?  
Is he going at 10 o'clock?

Cue zuǒyòu  
左右

Tā shídiǎn zhōng zuǒyòu qù.  
他十点钟左右去。  
He is leaving around ten o'clock.

4. Nǐmen xiànzài zǒu ma?

你们现在走吗？

Are you leaving now?

Cue

mǎshàng

马上

right away

Wǒmen mǎshàng zǒu.

我们马上走。

They are leaving right away.

5. Tāmen bāhào qù ma?

他们八号去吗？

Are they going on the 8th?

Cue

zuǒyòu

左右

approximately

Tāmen bāhào zuǒyòu qù.

他们左右八号去。

They are going approximately around 8 o'clock.

6. Tāmen jiǔdiǎn zhōng lái ma?

他们九点钟来吗。

Are they coming at nine o'clock.

Cue

chābùduō

差不多

around

Tāmen chābùduō jiǔdiǎn zhōng lái#

他们差不多九点钟来。

They will come around 9 o'clock.

7. Nǐ shíhào zài Niǔ Yuē ma?

你十号在纽约吗？

Are you in New York on the 10th?

Cue

zuǒyòu



左右

approximately

Wǒ shíhào zuǒyòu zài Niù Yuē.

我十号左右在纽约。

I'm in New York around approximately the tenth.

## Unit 8

### References

#### Reference List

1. B: Wài, zhè shì Lǐbīnsī.  
喂，這是禮賓司。  
Hello. This is the Protocol Department.  
A: Wèi, wǒ shì Láidēng Dàshǐ de mìshū.  
喂，我是萊登大使的秘書。  
Hello. I am Ambassador Leyden's secretary.
2. A: Dàshǐ jiēzháo nǐmen de qǐngtiē le.  
大使接著你們的請帖了。  
The ambassador received your invitation.
3. A: Hěn kěxī, yīnwei tā yǒu shì, Báyue jiǔ hào bù néng lái.  
很可惜因為他有事，八月九號不能來。  
Unfortunately, because he has a previous engagement, he cannot come on August 9.  
A: Qǐng nǐ zhuǎngào Qiáo Bùzhǎng.  
請你轉告譙部長。  
Please inform Minister Qiáo.  
A: Hěn bàoqiàn.  
很抱歉。  
I'm very sorry.
4. B: Hěn yíhàn, Láidēng Dàshǐ bù néng lái.  
很遺憾，萊登大使不能來。  
We very much regret that Ambassador Leyden cannot come.  
B: Wǒ tì nǐ zhuǎngào yíxià.  
我替你轉告一下。  
I will pass on the message for you.
5. A: Mǎ Mínglǐ, wǒmen yǒu jǐge tóngxué Xīngqīliù jìhua dào Chángchéng qù wánr.  
馬明理我們有幾個同學星期六計劃到長城去玩兒。  
Mǎ Mínglǐ, a few of us students are planning to go to the Great Wall Saturday for an outing.  
A: Nǐmen néng bu néng yìqǐ qù?  
你們能不能一起去？  
Can you go with us?

6. B: Zhēn bù qiǎo.  
真不巧。  
We really couldn't make that.
- B: Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, méi bànfa qù.  
那天我們有事，沒辦法去。  
We have a previous engagement that day; we have no way of going.
7. A: Xīwang yǐhòu zài zhǎo jīhuì jù yìjù ba.  
希望以後在找機會聚一聚吧。  
I hope that late we will find an other opportunity to get together.
- B: Hǎo a.  
好啊。  
Okay.
8. dàjiā  
大家  
everybody, everyone
9. jiēdào  
接到  
to receive (alternate form of jiēzhào)
10. tóngshì  
同事  
fellow worker, colleague
11. yīnggāi  
應該  
should, ought to, must

## Vocabulary

bànfǎ	辦法	method, way
bàoqiǎn	抱歉	to be sorry
bùzhǎng	部長	minister (of a government organization)
Chángchéng	長城	the Great Wall
dàjiā	大家	everybody, everyone
jiě	姐	to receive (mail, messages, guests, phone calls)
jiēdào	接到	to receive
jù	聚	to assemble
jùyījù	聚一聚	to get together
kěxī	可惜	unfortunately, what a pity
Lǐbīnsī	禮賓司	Protocol Department (PRC)
méi bànfa	沒辦法	there's no way out, it can't be helped
mishū	秘書	secretary, executive assistant
qiǎo	巧	to be timely, to be opportune
qǐngtiě (qǐngtiē)	請帖	written invitation
tì	替	substituting for, in place of
tóngshì	同事	fellow worker, colleague
tóngxué	同學	classmate
yíhàn	遺憾	to regret (that something desirable will not happen)
yīnggāi	應該	should, ought to, must
zhuǎngào	轉告	to pass on a message, to inform
cānjiā	參加	to participate in, to join, to attend
dào xǐ	道喜	to congratulate
dièrtiān	第二天	the next day
jīngjībù	經濟部	Ministry of Economics
jūnshì yǎnxí	軍事演習	military maneuvers
láodòng mófàn	勞動模範	model worker
nánbù	南部	the southern part (of the island), the south
shàngxiào	上校	colonel
tīngdechūlái	聽得出來	to be able to recognize what something is from the sound

tóngxuéhuì	同學會	alumni association (literally, “fellow-student group”)
tōngzhī	同志	(written) announcement, notification
xièxiè tāde yāoqǐng	謝謝他的邀請	to thank him for his invitation
zhèngzhì xuéxí	政治學習	political study session
zhǔchí jiéhūn	主持結婚	to preside at a marriage ceremony (i.e., to give the bride away)
zǒng jīnglǐ	總經理	general manager (chief executive officer)
dàngāo	蛋糕	cake
qìsī	起司	cheese

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1

1. B: Wài, zhè shì Lǐbīnsī.  
喂，這是禮賓司。  
Hello. This is the Protocol Department.
- A: Wèi, wǒ shì Láidēng Dàshǐde mīshū.  
喂，我是萊登大使的秘書。  
Hello. I am Ambassador Leyden's secretary.

Lǐbīnsī, meaning “protocol department,” is made up of lǐ, “ceremony”; bīn, “honored guests”; and sī, “department.”

Mīshū means “secretary” in two senses: 1) a high-ranking official 2) a clerk-typist.

### Notes on №2

2. A: Dàshǐ jiēzháo nǐmende qǐngtiē le.  
大使接著你們的請帖了。  
The ambassador received your invitation.

The verb jiē, “to receive,” may be used for receiving guests, mail, messages, and phone calls.

Jiēzháo (jiēdao), “to receive,” is a compound verb of result. The endings -zháo and -dào mean approximately the same thing: “to successfully obtain something” Jiēzháo and jiēdao occur in four ways: with le or méi (describing ACTUAL situations) and with -de- or -bu- (describing POTENTIAL situations)

我昨天去火車站接他，可是沒接着/接到。

Wǒ zuótiān qù huǒchēzhàn jiē ta, kěshì méi jiēzháo/jiēdào.

Yesterday I went to the train station to get him, but I missed him.

你早一點兒去接他，就接得着。

Nǐ zǎo yidiǎnr qù jiē ta, jiù jiēdezháo/jiēdedào.

If you go a little earlier, (then) you can get him.

明天要是來晚了就接不着/接不到他的電話。

Míngtiān yàoshi lái wǎnle jiù jiēbuzháo/jiēbudào tāde diànhuà.

If I am late tomorrow, (then) I won't (be able to) receive his phone call.

Qǐngtiē refers to a written invitation. The word is also pronounced qǐngtiē.

### Notes on №3

3. A: Hěn kǎixī, yīnwei tā yǒu shì, Báiyuè jiǔ hào bù néng lái.  
很可惜，因為他有事，白月酒號不能來。

很可惜因爲他有事，八月九號不能來。

Unfortunately, because he has a previous engagement, he cannot come on August 9.

A: Qǐng ni zhuǎngào Qiáo Bùzhǎng.

請你轉告譙部長。

Please inform Minister Qiáo.

A: Hěn bàoqiàn.

很抱歉。

I'm very sorry.

Kěxī may be used as an exclamation: Zhēn kěxī! "That's really too bad!"

Zhuǎngào means "to pass along [word of something]." Zhuǎn literally means "to turn" or "to transmit." Gào means "to tell," as in gào su.

Bàoqiàn is an adjectival verb that means "to be sorry," "to feel apologetic" (e.g., for not fulfilling one's social obligations). Literally, bào means "to embrace [a feeling]," "to harbor [a feeling]." Qiàn means "apologetic feelings," "guilt feelings."

#### Notes on №4

4. B: Hěn yíhàn, Láidēng Dàshǐ bù néng lái.

很遺憾，萊登大使不能來。

We very much regret that Ambassador Leyden cannot come.

B: Wǒ tì nǐ zhuǎngào yíxià.

我替你轉告一下。

I will pass on the message for you.

Yíhàn is a formal term used to express disappointment or regret that something desirable will not happen.

Tì, "for," "in place of," is a prepositional verb meaning in place of another, or in another's stead.

今天我替你教書。

Jīntiān wǒ tì nǐ jiāo shū.

I will teach for you today, (i.e., in your place)

我替你去。

Wǒ tì nǐ qù.

I will go for you. (i.e., instead of you)

To make a sentence containing tì negative, place bù or méi in front of the prepositional verb.

我不要替你去買菜。

Wǒ bú yào tì nǐ qù mǎi cài.

I don't want to go to buy groceries for you.

他沒替我來講話。

Tā méi tì wǒ lái jiǎng huà.

He did not come to speak in my place.

Both **gěi** and **tì** may be translated as “for.” **Gěi**, having a wider range of usage, would seem to overlap in some instances with **tì**. The more exact meaning of **tì** may be used to clarify a situation.

我給你買菜。

Wǒ gěi nǐ mǎi cài.

I will buy groceries for you. (WHO PAYS? DID you VOLUNTEER ONLY TO SHOP, OR TO PAY ALSO?)

我替你買菜。

Wǒ tì nǐ mǎi cài.

I will buy groceries for you. (CLARIFIED: you HAVE VOLUNTEERED ONLY TO SHOP, NOT TO PAY.)

**Yíxià**, “a bit,” is not translated, in No. 4. This word, adds to the action in the sentence a casual feeling, similar to the effect of reduplicating a verb. (Notice that this use of **yíxià** is different from previous examples, where the word meant “for a little while.”)

### Notes on №5

5. A: Mǎ Mínglǐ, wǒmen yǒu jǐge tóngxué Xīngqīliù jīhua dào Chángchéng qù wánr.  
馬明理我們有幾個同學星期六計劃到長城去玩兒。  
Mǎ Mínglǐ, a few of us students are planning to go to the Great Wall Saturday for an outing.
- A: Nǐmen néng bu néng yìqǐ qù?  
你們能不能一起去?  
Can you go with us?

**Tóngxué** means “fellow student” or “graduate of the same institution.” “Fellow worker” or “colleague” is **tóngshì**.

**Chángchéng**: Chang means “long,” and **chéng** is an old word for “city wall.” The full name of the Great Wall is **Wàn lǐ Chángchéng**, literally “10,000 **lǐ**-long wall.”

### Note

One **lǐ** is approximately one third of a mile.

**Néng**, **kéyǐ**, and **huì** compared: All three of these auxiliary verbs— and therefore state verbs—mean “can” to some extent.

The core meaning of **néng** is “can, “to be able to,” “to be capable of.” In some cases, **néng** may also mean “may,” “to be permitted,” “could be/is possible,” and “to know how to

我的頭疼了，不能看書。

Wǒde tóu téng, bù néng kàn shū.



My head aches; I can't read.

上課的時候，不能說話。

Shàng kède shíhou, bù néng shuō huà.

Talking is not permitted during class.

芝加哥十一月就能下雪。

Zhījiāgē Shíyīyuè jiù néng xià xuě.

It can snow in November in Chicago. (POSSIBILITY)

他真能說話。

Tā zhēn néng shuō huà.

He really knows how to talk.

The core meaning of *kéyi* is “can,” “may,” “to be permitted to.” *Kéyi* may also mean “could be/is possible.” The permission implied by *kéyi* may come from an outside authority or may be self-imposed.

你可以走了。

Nǐ kéyi zǒu le.

You may leave.

從這個門進去，可以嗎？

Cóng zhèige mén jìnqu, kéyi ma?

May one go in through this door?

那兒的飯可以吃。

Nàrde fàn kéyi chī.

The food there may be eaten, (i.e., it is possible to eat it)

我不舒服，不可以游泳。

Wǒ bù shūfu, bù kéyi yóuyǒng.

I don't feel good; I can't go swimming. (i.e., the speaker decides that he should not go)

The core meaning of *huì* is “to know how to,” “can.” *Huì* is often used for an activity that was learned, in contrast to *néng* for activities that “can be done” because of a person's physical condition (“Can she get out of bed yet?” *Tā néng bu néng xià chuáng?*). The other main use of *huì* is to indicate possibility. Here it overlaps with both *néng* and *kéyi* in meaning “could be/is possible.”

你的兒子會走路了嗎？

Nǐde érzi huì zǒu lù le ma?

Can your son walk now? (BABY LEARNING TO WALK)

你會說英文嗎？

Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?

Can you speak English?

明天會下雨。

Míngtiān huì xià yǔ. I

t might/will rain tomorrow.

他不會不來。

Tā bú huì bù lái.

It is not possible that he won't come.

### Notes on №6

6. B: Zhēn bù qiǎo.

真不巧。

We really couldn't make that.

B: Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, méi bànfa qù.

那天我們有事，沒辦法去。

We have a previous engagement that day; we have no way of going.

Bù qiǎo literally means “inopportune,” “not timely.”

Méi bànfa: Bànfa means “method,” “way.” Within a sentence, méi bànfa is used as “there is no way to...,” “there is no way that...” Used independently, méi bànfa means “nothing can be done,” “it can't be helped,” “there is no way out.”

### Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

8. dàjiā

大家

everybody, everyone

9. jiēdào

接到

to receive (alternate form of jiēzhào)

10. tóngshì

同事

fellow worker, colleague

11. yīnggāi

應該

should, ought to, must

Literally, dàjiā means “big family.” When dàjiā is the subject of a sentence, dōu is often placed before the verb.

大家都知道他是誰。

Dàjiā dōu zhīdao tā shì shéi.

Everyone knows who he is.

謝謝大家。

Xièxie dàjiā.

Thank you all.

請大家坐下來。

Qǐng dàjiā zuòxiàlai.

Would everyone please sit down.

我們大家一起去吧。

Wǒmen dàjiā yìqǐ qù ba.

Let's all go together.

**Yīnggāi** is an auxiliary verb which is followed by another verb in a sentence. Only **bù** is used to make **yīnggāi** negative.

不謝，這是我們應該做的事。

Bú xiè, zhèi shì wǒmen yīnggāi zuòde shì.

Don't thank us. This is something we should be doing.

這件事情很要緊，你應該馬上去辦。

Zhèjiàn shìqing hěn yàojin, nǐ yīnggāi mǎshàng qù bàn.

This is a very important thing; you should (go) take care of it right away.

一個大學畢業的人，不應該有這樣的想法。

Yíge dàxué bìyède rén, bù yīnggāi yòu zhèiyangde xiǎngfa.

Someone who has graduated from college shouldn't think this way.

## Drills

### Expansion Drill

1. Tā zài Wàijiāobù Lǐbīnsī gōngzuò.

他在外交部礼宾司工作。

He works at the Ministry of Foreign Affairs [in] the Protocol Department.

Cue

wǔlóu

五楼

fifth floor

Tā zài Wàijiāobù Lǐbīnsī gōngzuò. Tāde bàngōngshì zài wǔlóu.

他在外交部礼宾司工作。他的办公室在五楼。

He works at the Ministry of Foreign Affairs [in] the Protocol Department. His office is on the fifth floor.

2. Tā zài zhèr gōngzuò.

他在这儿工作。

He works here.

Cue

qīlóu

七楼

seventh floor

Tāde bàngōngshì zài qīlóu.

他在这儿工作。他的办公室在七楼。

His office is on the 7th floor.

3. Tā zài Jiānádà Dàshìguǎn gōngzuò.

他在加拿大大使馆工作。

He works at the Canadian embassy.

Cue

lóushàng

楼上

upstairs

Tā zài Jiānádà Dàshìguǎn gōngzuò. Tāde bàngōngshì zài lóushàng.

他在加拿大大使馆工作。他的办公室在楼上。

He works at the Canadian embassy. His office is upstairs.

4. Tā zài Běijīng gōngzuò.

他在北京工作。

He works in Běijīng.

Cue

Guānghuá Lù

光华路

Guānghuá road

Tā zài Běijīng gōngzuò. Tāde bàngōngshì zài Guānghuá Lù.

他在北京工作。他的办公室在光华路。

He works in Běijīng. His office is on Guānghuá Road.

5. Zhāng Tóngzhì zài Shànghǎi gōngzuò.

张同志在上海工作。

Comrade Zhāng works in Shànghǎi.

Cue

Nánjīng Lù

南京路

Nánjīng road

Zhāng Tóngzhì zài Shànghǎi gōngzuò. Tāde bàngōngshì zài Nánjīng Lù.

张同志在上海工作。他的办公室在南京路。

Comrade Zhang works in Shanghai. His office is on Nánjīng Road.

6. Wáng Nǚshì zài yínháng gōngzuò.

王女士在银行工作。

Mrs. Wáng works in a bank.

Cue

èrlóu

二楼

first floor

Wáng Nǚshì zài yínháng gōngzuò. Tāde bàngōngshì zài èrlóu.

王女士在银行工作。她的办公室二楼。

Ms. Wáng works in a bank. Her office is on the second floor.

7. Wèi Shàoxiào zài Wǔguānchù gōngzuò.

魏少校在物管处工作。

Major **Wèi** works at the défense attache office.

Cue

sānlóu

三楼

third floor

**Wèi Shàoxiào zài Wùguānchù gōngzuò. Tāde bàngōngshì zài sānlóu.**

魏少校在物管处工作。他的办公室在三楼。

Major Wei works at the défense attache office. His office is on the third floor.

## Response Drill

1. Dàshǐ jiēzháo qǐngtiě le ma?

大使接着请帖了吗？

Has the ambassador received the invitation yet?

Cue not yet

Dàshǐ hái méi jiēzháo qǐngtiě.

大使还没接着请帖。

The ambassador has not received the invitation yet.

2. Tāmen dōu jiēzháo qǐngtiě le ma?

他们都接着请帖了吗？

Have they all received the invitation yet?

Cue not all

Tāmen méi dōu jiēzháo qǐngtiě.

他们没都接着请帖。

They have not received the invitation yet.

3. Nǐmen jiēzháo Bùzhāngde qǐngtiě le ma?

你们接着部长的请帖了吗？

Have you received the minister's invitation?

Cue yes

Wǒmen jiēzháo Bùzhāngde qǐngtiě le.

我们接着部长的请帖了。

We have received the minister's invitation.

4. Tāmen jiēzháo Dàshiguǎnde qǐngtiě le ma?

他们接着大使馆的请帖了吗？

Have they received the invitation from the embassy?

Cue already

Tāmen yǐjīng jiēzháo Dàshiguǎnde qǐngtiě le.

他们已经接着大使馆的请帖了。

They have received an invitation from the embassy.

5. Nǐmen jiēzháo Dàshìguǎnde qǐngtiě le ma?

你们接着大使馆的请帖了吗？

Have you received the invitation from the embassy?

Cue not yet

Wǒmen hái méi jiēzháo Dàshìguǎnde qǐngtiě.

我们还没接着大使馆的请帖。

We haven't received an invitation from the embassy.

6. Tā jiēzháo qǐngtiě le ma?

他接着请帖了吗？

Has he received the invitation yet?

Cue no

Tā méi jiēzháo qǐngtiě.

他没接着请帖。

He hasn't received the invitation.

7. Nǐ jiēzháo Wùguǎnchùde qǐngtiě le ma?

你接着物管处请帖了吗？

Have you received the invitation from the défense attache office?

Cue yes

Wǒ jiēzháo Wùguǎnchùde qǐngtiě le.

我接着物管处请帖了。

I have received the invitation from the défense attache office.



## Expansion Drill

1. Tā bù néng lái.  
他不能来。  
He cannot come.

Cue kěxī  
可惜  
unfortunately

Hěn kěxī, tā bù néng lái.  
很可惜，他不能来。  
Unfortunately, he cannot come.

2. Tā xué Zhōngguó huà xué de bù hěn hǎo.  
他学中国话学得不很好。  
He doesn't learn Chinese very well.

Cue kěxī  
可惜  
unfortunately

Hěn kěxī, tā xué Zhōngguó huà xué de bù hěn hǎo.  
很可惜，他学中国话学得不很好。  
Unfortunately, he does not learn Chinese very well.

3. Tā méi lái.  
他没来。  
He didn't come.

Cue yíhàn  
遗憾  
regret

Hěn yíhàn, tā méi lái.  
很遗憾，他没来。  
Sadly, he didn't show up.

4. Tāmen bù néng dōu lái.

他们不能都来。

They cannot all come.

Cue

bàoqiàn

抱歉

sorry

Hěn bàoqiàn, tāmen bù néng dōu lái.

很抱歉，他们不能都来。

I'm sorry they couldn't all come.

5.

Tāmen dōu bù lái.

他们都不来。

They are not coming.

Cue

kěxī

可惜

unfortunately

Hěn kěxī, tāmen dōu bù lái.

很可惜，他们都不来。

Sadly, none of them are coming.

6.

Tāmen dōu bù néng qù.

他们都不能去。

None of them can go.

Cue

bàoqiàn

抱歉

sorry

Hěn bàoqiàn, tāmen dōu bù néng qù.

很抱歉，他们都不能去。

I'm sorry, but none of them can go.

7.

Tā hái méi qù.

她好没去。

She still didn't go.

Cue

yíhàn

遗憾

regret

Hěn yíhàn, tā hái méi qù.

很遗憾。她好没去。

Unfortunately. She didn't go.

## Expansion Drill

1. Qǐng nǐ zhuǎngào Zhāng Bùzhǎng.

请你转告张部长。

Please inform Minister Zhāng.

Cue

wǒ

我

I

Qǐng nǐ tì wǒ zhuǎngào Zhāng Bùzhǎng.

请你替我转告张部长。

Please inform Minister Zhāng for me.

2. Wǒ zhuǎngào Zhāng Bùzhǎng le.

我转告张部长了。

I informed Minister Zhāng.

Cue

nǐ

你

you

Wǒ tì nǐ zhuǎngào Zhāng Bùzhǎng le.

我替你转告张部长了。

I'll inform Minister Zhāng for you.

3. Tā hái méi zhuǎngào Lǐ Kēzhǎng.

他还没转告李科长。

He didn't inform Lǐ Kēzhǎng yet.

Cue

nǐ

你

you

Tā hái méi tì nǐ zhuǎngào Lǐ Kēzhǎng.

他还没替你转告李科长。

He hasn't inform Section Chief Lǐ for you yet.

4. Tā bù néng zhuǎngào Lǐ Kēzhǎng.

他不能转告李科长。

He cannot inform Section Chief Li.

Cue

wǒ

我

I

Tā bù néng tì wǒ zhuǎngào Lǐ Kēzhǎng.

他不能替我转告李科长。

He couldn't inform Section Chief Li for me.

5.

Wǒ yǐjīng zhuǎngào dàshǐ le.

我已经转告大使了。

have informed the ambassador.

Cue

nǐ

你

you

Wǒ yǐjīng tì nǐ zhuǎngào dàshǐ le.

我已经替你转告大使了。

I have already informed the ambassador for you.

6.

Wǒ míngtiān jiù zhuǎngào dàshǐ.

我明天就转告大使。

I'll inform to the Ambassador tomorrow.

Cue

nǐ

你

you

Wǒ míngtiān jiù tì nǐ zhuǎngào dàshǐ.

我明天就替你转告大使。

I will inform the ambassador for you tomorrow.

7.

Tā shì zuótiān zhuǎngào dàshǐ de.

他是昨天转告大使的。

He informed to the ambassador yesterday.

Cue

nǐ

你

you

Tā shì zuótiān tì nǐ zhuǎngào dàshǐde.

他是昨天替你转告大使的。

He informed the ambassador for you yesterday.

## Transformation Drill

1. Tāmen míngtiān lái.  
他们明天来。  
They are coming tomorrow.

Cue yìqǐ  
一起  
together

Tāmen míngtiān yìqǐ lái ma?  
他们明天一起来吗?  
Are they coming together tomorrow?

2. Tāmen zuótiān lái le.  
他们昨天来了。  
They came yesterday.

Cue yìqǐ  
一起  
together

Tāmen zuótiān shì yìqǐ lái de ma?  
他们昨天是一起来的吗?  
Did they come together yesterday?

3. Tā míngtiān zǒu.  
他明天走。  
He leaves tomorrow.

Cue yíge rén  
一个人  
alone

Tā míngtiān yíge rén zǒu ma?  
他明天一个人走吗?  
Will he go alone tomorrow?

4. Tā zuótiān zǒu le.

他昨天走了。

He left yesterday.

Cue

yíge rén

一个人

alone

Tā zuótiān shì yíge rén zǒude ma?

他昨天是一个人走的吗？

Did he go alone yesterday?

5.

Wáng Tóngzhì míngtiān qù Nánjīng.

王同志明天去南京。

Comrade Wáng is going to Nánjīng tomorrow.

Cue

zuò huǒchē qù

坐火车去

by train

Wáng Tóngzhì míngtiān zuò huǒchē qù Nánjīng ma?

王同志明天坐火车去南京吗？

Will Comrade Wáng take the train to Nanjing tomorrow?

6.

Wáng Tóngzhì Xīngqīyī qù Shànghǎi le.

王同志星期一去上海了。

Comrade Wáng went to Shànghǎi on last Monday.

Cue

zuò fēijī qù

坐飞机去

by plane

Wáng Tóngzhì Xīngqīyī shì zuò fēijī qù Shànghǎide ma?

王同志星期一是坐飞机去上海的吗？

Did Comrade Wáng fly to Shànghǎi on Monday?

7.

Tā qù le.

他去了。

He went.

Cue

yíge rén



一个人

alone

Tā shì yíge rén qùde ma?

他是一个人去的吗？

Did he go alone?

## Substitution Drill

1. Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, bù néng qù.

那天我们有事，不能去。

That day we have a previous engagement; we cannot go.

Cue

méi bànfa qù

没办法去

no way of going

Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, méi bànfa qù.

那天我们有事，没办法去。

That day we have a previous engagement; we have no way of going.

2. Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, méi bànfa qù.

那天我们有事，没办法去。

That day we have a previous engagement; there is no way to go.

Cue

bù néng yìqǐ qù

不能一起去

cannot go together

Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, bù néng yìqǐ qù.

那天我们有事，不能一起去。

That day we have a previous engagement; we cannot go together.

3. Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, bù néng yìqǐ qù.

那天我们有事，不能一起去。

That day we have a previous engagement; we cannot go together.

Cue

bù néng dōu qù

不能都去

not all of us can go

Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, bù néng dōu qù.

那天我们有事，不能都去。

That day we have a previous engagement; we cannot go together.

4. Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, bù néng dōu qù.

那天我们有事，不能都去。

That day we have a previous engagement;

Cue

dōu bù néng qù

都不能去

none of us can go.

Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, dōu bù néng qù.

那天我们有事，都不能去。

none of us can go

5. Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, dōu bù néng qù.

那天我们有事，都不能去。

That day we have a previous engagement; no one can go.

Cue

méi qù

没去

did not go

Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, méi qù.

那天我们有事，没去。

That day we have a previous engagement; we didn't go.

6. Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, méi qù.

那天我们有事，没去。

That day we have a previous engagement; we didn't go.

Cue

méi dōu qù

没都去

not all of us went

Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, méi dōu qù.

那天我们有事，没都去。

That day we have a previous engagement; not all of us went.



---

# Chapter 7. Module 7: Society

## Preface

**Standard Chinese: A Modular Approach** originated in an inter-agency conference held at the Foreign Service Institute in August 1973 to address the need generally felt in the U.S. Government language training community for improving and updating Chinese materials to reflect current usage in Beijing and Taipei.

The conference resolved to develop materials which were flexible enough in form and content to meet the requirements of a wide range of government agencies and academic institutions.

A Project Board was established consisting of representatives of the Central Intelligence Agency Language Learning Center, the Defense Language Institute, the State Department's Foreign Service Institute, the Cryptologic School of the National Security Agency, and the U.S. Office of Education, later joined by the Canadian Forces Foreign Language School. The representatives have included Arthur T. McNeill, John Hopkins, and John Boag (CIA); Colonel John F. Elder III/ Joseph C. Hutchinson, Ivy Gibian, and Major Bernard Muller-Thym (DLI); James R. Frith and John B. Ratliff III/FSI; Kazuo Shitama (NSA); Richard T. Thompson and Julia Petrov (OE); and Lieutenant Colonel George Kozoriz (CFFLS).

The Project Board set up the Chinese Core Curriculum Project in 1974 in space provided at the Foreign Service Institute. Each of the six U.S. and Canadian government agencies provided funds and other assistance.

Gerard P. Kok was appointed project coordinator, and a planning council was formed consisting of Mr. Kok, Frances Li of the Defense Language Institute, Patricia O'Connor of the University of Texas, Earl M. Rickerson of the Language Learning Center, and James Wrenn of Brown University. In the fall of 1977, Lucille A. Barale was appointed deputy project coordinator. David W. Dellinger of the Language Learning Center and Charles R. Sheehan of the Foreign Service Institute also served on the planning council and contributed material to the project. The planning council drew up the original overall design for the materials and met regularly to review their development.

Writers for the first half of the materials were John H.T. Harvey, Lucille A. Barale, and Roberta S. Barry, who worked in close cooperation with the planning council and with the Chinese staff of the Foreign Service Institute, Mr. Harvey developed the instructional formats of the comprehension and production self-study materials, and also designed the communication-based classroom activities and wrote the teacher's guides. Lucille A. Barale and Roberta S. Barry wrote the tape scripts and the student text. By 1978 Thomas E. Madden and Susan C. Pola had joined the staff. Led by Ms. Barale, they have worked as a team to produce the materials subsequent to Module 6.

All Chinese language material was prepared or selected by Chuan O. Chao, Ying-chi Chen, Hsiao-Jung Chi, Eva Diao, Jan Hu, Tsung-mi Li, and Yunhui C. Yang, assisted for part of the time by Chieh-fang Ou Lee, Ying-ming Chen, and Joseph Yu Hsu Wang. Anna Affholder, Mei-li Chen, and Henry Khuo helped in the preparation of a preliminary corpus of dialogues.

Administrative assistance was provided at various times by Vincent Basciano, Lisa A. Bowden, Jill W. Ellis, Donna Fong, Renee T.C. Liang, Thomas E. Madden, Susan C. Pola, and Kathleen Strype.

The production of tape recordings was directed by Jose M. Ramirez of the Foreign Service Institute Recording Studio. The Chinese script was voiced "by Ms. Chao, Ms. Chen, Mr. Chen, Ms. Diao, Ms. Hu, Mr. Khuo, Mr. Li, and Ms. Yang. The English script was read "by Ms. Barale, Ms. Barry, Mr. Basciano, Ms. Ellis, Ms. Pola, and Ms. Strype. The graphics were produced by John McClelland of the Foreign Service Institute Audio-Visual Staff, under the general supervision of Joseph A. Sadote, Chief of Audio-Visual.

**Standard Chinese: A Modular Approach** was field-tested with the cooperation of Brown University; the Defense Language Institute, Foreign Language Center; the Foreign Service Institute; the Language Learning Center; the United States Air Force Academy; the University of Illinois; and the University of Virginia.

Colonel Samuel L. Stapleton and Colonel Thomas G. Foster, Commandants of the Defense Language Institute, Foreign Language Center, authorized the DLIFLC support necessary for preparation of this edition of the course materials.



James R. Frith, Chairman  
Chinese Core Curriculum Project Board

## Introduction

### Section 1 : To the student

With the Society module, you are taking a step up to a new level of expression in Chinese. Up till now, you have been dealing with relatively short sentences about concrete situations. In this module, you will start to encounter longer sentences and more abstract statements. The transition will take some time, but you can make it easier on yourself by developing methodical ways of approaching the new material in each unit. The following suggestions may help.

Keep in mind from here on in that the two skills you will continue to work on, production and comprehension, are no longer expected to stay at approximately the same level. It is natural for your ability to understand what others say to increase more rapidly than your ability to express your own thoughts. As you work through the Society module, bear in mind that, while you are asked to understand all the dialogues, you are required to be able to produce only a limited part of the language you will hear. This is specified in the module objectives, the unit vocabulary lists, and the introductions to the units.

### How to use the book

Each unit of this “book presents quite a “bit of new information much more than anyone can master in a few days time. This is because information has also been included simply for comparison or for your future reference. This is what you should master in each unit:

1. The new grammar listed in the introduction for each unit.
2. The “basic meanings of each vocabulary item. (Related meanings may be given in the reference notes for purposes of comparison, “but you are not required to remember them.)
3. The cultural “background information discussed in some reference notes and contained in each unit’s review dialogue.

You may find it helpful to read through the reference notes three times. On the first time through, read only the notes on cultural “background. The second time, go through the notes that explain new grammatical structures.

The third time, read only the notes on the meanings and usage of new words. For review, **test yourself** on the example sentences in the notes by covering the Chinese column and trying to translate the English column into Chinese. Check your answer immediately.

## How to use the tapes

Starting with Module 7, there will be only two thirty-minute tapes per unit, instead of five.

**Tape 1** introduces the material on the Reference List, giving you a chance to learn to understand these sentences and to practice saying them. Tape 1 replaces both the C-1 and P-1 tapes which you used in Modules 1 through 6.

You will find that the Tape 1 is denser in content and faster paced than either the C-1 or P-1 tapes. The number of new vocabulary items in each unit has been increased from 20-25 to 30-35. You will also notice that the sentences have increased in length. Since you must learn to understand as well as say these sentences from a single tape, you may find that you need to rewind the tape and review the presentation of each sentence several times. In addition, explanations which were formerly found on the C-1 and P-1 tapes are now found only in the Reference Notes.

**Tape 2** replaces the C-2 and P-2 tapes. Each Tape 2 will start off with a review of the sentences from the Reference List. This will be followed by three exercise dialogues. You should listen to each dialogue until you understand it thoroughly. The workbook which accompanies Tape 2 describes the setting of the conversation and provides you with the new vocabulary you need to understand it. (You are not required to learn these additional vocabulary items.) The workbook also contains questions about each dialogue for which you will need to prepare answers in Chinese. Your teacher will ask you to answer these and other questions about the conversation in class.

When you listen to the recorded dialogues, aim only for comprehension of the ideas. Whether or not you can repeat the sentences word for word is not critical. Since they are in colloquial style, the dialogues sometimes contain phrasing which you are not expected to be able to imitate at this stage, yet with a little effort (it is expected to take repeated listening), you will understand.

## Section 2 : To the teacher

The format of the core modules from this point on differs considerably from those preceding, and teaching methods should be adapted to the requirements of this new format. Below are a few suggestions on how to use this and subsequent core modules.

### How to Use the Reference Notes

The reference notes in Society include grammatical explanations, discussions of the usage of new words, and some cultural “background information.”

They are called “reference” notes for a reason: they are here for the student’s present and future reference. They are not intended as material for classroom study or discussion, for in these later modules, as in the first six, the “bulk of classroom time should be spent in the actual use of Chinese. The thoroughness of the notes is intended to relieve you of the need to give lectures on grammar and usage and allow you to devote most of your time with students to live practice of the language. You should familiarize yourself with the content of the notes so that when students pose questions on word usage or a new structure, you can simply refer them to the relevant note.

The copiousness of example sentences in the notes has a double purpose. First, along with the idiomatic English translations, they show the versatility of the vocabulary items they introduce; at this level of study, a single English translation can seldom fully do justice to the range of nuances expressed by a Chinese word. Second, students can use the example sentences at home for translation practice, either Chinese-English or English-Chinese, using a strip of paper to cover the target-language column and then checking their answer for immediate reinforcement.

## How to Use the Exercise Dialogues

The three exercise dialogues in each unit (exercises 2, 3 and 4) present completely different situations and characters from the unit review dialogue, but include the same new vocabulary and structures. They provide extra listening comprehension practice at normal conversational speed, an area which should receive increased attention from both student and teacher beginning with this module.

The language of many of the exercise dialogues is very colloquial and thus a change from the style of the preceding modules. At this stage, students must accustom themselves to hearing everyday Chinese and if given ample practice, their comprehension will improve quickly. But bear in mind that students are not expected to be able to produce sentences in this colloquial style, only to understand them.

The taped exercises 2, 3, and 4 are to be listened to outside of class as many times as is necessary for the student to answer the questions in the workbook section. In class, the teacher should ask the questions, rephrased in Chinese, and have students answer from their notes or, preferably, from memory. If students bring up questions on colloquialisms contained in the dialogues at this time, handle them quickly; avoid digressions on expressions which are not required for production. The point of this activity is for the students to talk-- to practice saying the new words and structures of the unit.

## Further Classroom Activities

1. Use the subjects discussed in the dialogues as points of departure for class discussions in which the teacher takes the part of the Chinese who wants to understand American society and the American students try to explain their ways of thinking and doing things. Depending on class size, the level of the students, and individual students competitiveness or reticence, these conversations will need to be more or less structured. If necessary in order to maintain the flow of ideas or to keep a small number of students from dominating the discussion, everyone can be asked to outline possible answers "before coming to class, or the teacher may prepare an outline for the students.
2. Students can "be asked to tell the story of the review dialogue or an exercise dialogue in their own words. This can be done by the whole class together; if one student omits an important point in the story, another student can remind him of it or supply it himself.
3. Have students pick out from the reference list and the dialogues certain sentences which serve a particular communicative function. The Chinese material in this book is especially suited to this type of exercise because of the colloquial tone of the dialogues and the range of emotions and linguistic functions displayed within them. For example, the students may be asked to find a sentence that conveys enthusiasm toward an idea, one that conveys tentativeness when asking a question about a delicate subject# or one that conveys a desire to be helpful. Using the sentences thus found as take-off points, the teacher can then ask the students to come up with other sentences with the same linguistic function, or ask them to change elements of the sentence to vary its function.

For example, Unit 1 of Society -presents some sentences (in the reference list and dialogues) that can be used as responses to proposals:

Wǒ kǎolù kǎolù.

我虑的虑的。

I'll think it over. (non-committal)

Fēicháng hǎo.

非常好。

Great. (enthusiastic)

Nà wǒmen shuō hǎo le...



那我们说好了。。。。

Then we've agreed. (decisive)

Jiù zhèiyàng.

就这样。

It's settled. (decisive)

Students can be asked to add to this list sentences expressing a wider range of responses to a proposal, e.g., flat rejection (**Bù xíng!**)# scandalization (**Nà zěnme kěyǐ ā**)#lukewarm acceptance (**Kěyǐ . . .** or **Yě hǎo**)#indecisiveness (M . . . , or **Nà#wǒ hái děi xiǎngyixiǎng** or **Zài shuō ba**)#etc. If you make up supplementary exercises, you may find it effective to base them on the communicative functions of sentences contained in each unit. A list of these functions will be found in each unit's introduction.

4. If the teacher and students find that the new grammar needs to be separately discussed in class, such sessions should be confined to a review of the essential new structures, as listed in each unit's introduction.

## Review

The two review tapes consist simply of exercises requiring the students to translate the reference list sentences for Units 1 to 4 and 5 to 8, respectively. The original order of the sentences in the text has been scrambled. The first section of each tape is translation from Chinese to English, the second from English to Chinese.

Because material introduced in this module is frequently repeated in subsequent lessons, regular review will not be as important as in the earlier modules, where the situational nature of the lessons means that some vocabulary introduced in order to handle one kind of situation occurs in that one module only. However, if desired, one of each unit's exercise dialogues can be reserved for review: have students listen to only two instead of all three exercise dialogues while doing the unit, and then return to the third dialogue several units later to brush up on the vocabulary and structures.

## TAPES FOR MODULE 7 (SOC)

Unit 1: SOC 1.1, SOC 1.2

Unit 2: SOC 2.1, SOC 2.2

Unit 3: SOC 3.1, SOC 3.2

Unit U: SOC 4.1, SOC 4.2

Unit 5: SOC 5.1, SOC 5.2

Unit 6: SOC 6.1, SOC 6.2

Unit #: SOC 7.1, SOC 7.2

Unit 8: SOC 8.1, SOC 8.2

### Review Tapes:

- SOC Review 1-U, Tape 1 (Chinese to English)
- SOC Review 1-U, Tape 2 (English to Chinese)
- SOC Review 5-8, Tape 1 (Chinese to English)
- SOC Review 5-8, Tape 2 (English to Chinese)

## Objectives

The Society Module (SOC) will provide you with the linguistic skills and cultural background information you need to visit a Chinese family, discuss some aspects of family life and society, to find out how someone's family fits into the pattern of traditional Chinese society, and how it reflects the changes of modern society. Before starting this module, you must take and pass the MTG Criterion Test. In addition, it is assumed that by this point you will have already completed the optional modules Personal Welfare, Restaurant, and Hotel; vocabulary from these modules is now considered taught. The SOC Criterion Test will focus largely on this module, but material from the first six core modules and associated resource modules is also included.

### OBJECTIVES

Upon successful completion of this module, you should be able to

1. Give the English equivalent for any Chinese sentence in the SOC Reference Lists.
2. Say any Chinese sentence in the SOC Reference Lists when cued with its English equivalent.
3. Ask someone about the size of his family, which family members live at home, and where other family members live and why.
4. Use the rules of Chinese etiquette in social visits: the proper times for visiting; the custom of offering refreshments to visitors and the type of response expected from the visitor; and some polite ways to end a social visit.
5. Discuss the status# duties, and responsibilities of sons in the traditional Chinese family.
6. Discuss the different relationships within the Chinese family, especially those between parents and children, and between mother-in-law and daughter-in-law.
7. Explain why the large (extended) family was the ideal pattern in traditional Chinese society. SOC, Objectives
8. Use the proper terms for referring to your own or someone else's children, and understand the terms for addressing one's children directly; use the terms for paternal grandparents; use the terms for the parents of one's friend.
9. Understand why early marriage was a common practice in traditional China.
10. Discuss the effects of the development of industry and business on traditional Chinese society.
11. Discuss the concept of filial obedience.
12. Compare the position of women in Chinese society before and after the founding of the People's Republic of China.
13. Discuss traditional marriage arrangements in China and the roles women were placed in as a result. Understand the government's policy toward marriage after 1949 and the actual changes that have occurred.
14. Explain and defend some of your personal views on topics such as equality of the sexes, the status of women, living together, marriage, parent-child relationships, care of the elderly, the effects of political and economic conditions on society, crime, and drug abuse.

## Unit 1 Travel plans

Travel Plans

### Introduction

#### Grammar Topics Covered in This Unit

1. The pattern (Verb) **de shì**...
2. Phrases with **guānyú**, “concerning,” “about.”
3. The directional ending **-lái**.
4. The auxiliary verb **huì**, “might,” “be likely to,” “will.”
5. The sentence marker **-de**, “that’s the way the situation is.”

#### Functional Language Contained in This Unit

1. Offering a visitor something to drink.
2. Responding to an offer of something to drink.
3. Concluding a social visit.
4. Telling someone you can’t take the time to explain something but will talk about it later.
5. Presenting a suggestion or proposal to do something.
6. Responding to a suggestion or proposal to do something.

## References

### Unit 1 Reference List

1. A: Jīntiān wǒ jièdào yìběn hǎo xiǎoshuō.  
今天我借到一本好小说。  
Today I borrowed a good novel (from someone).  
B: Shénme xiǎoshuō, ràng nǐ zěnme gāoxìng?  
什么小说，让你怎么高兴？  
What novel is it that makes you so happy?
2. A: Zhèběn xiǎoshuō xiěde shì dàlùde qíngkuàng.  
这本小说写的是大陆的情况。  
This novel is about the situation on the mainland.  
B: Guānyú dàlùde? Jiè gěi wǒ kànkàn xíng bu xíng?  
关于大陆的？  
About the mainland? How about lending it to me to read?
3. A: Xiàge xuéqī nǐ xiǎng yánjiū shénme?  
下个学期你想研究生么？  
What are you going to do research on next semester?  
B: Hái shì lǎo wèntí: Zhōngguóde zhèngzhì qíngkuàng.  
还是老问题：中国的政治情况。  
It's still the same old topic: the political situation in China.
4. A: Zuótiān Xiǎo Míng gěi tā nǚ péngyǒu xiě xìn, xiěde hǎo cháng.  
昨天小明给他女朋有写信，写的好长。  
Yesterday Xiǎo Míng wrote a letter to his girl friend, and it was really long!  
B: Niánqīng rén zǒng shì niánqīng rén. Wǒ niánqīngde shíhòu yě shì zhèiyàng, nǐ wàng le?  
年轻人总是年轻人。我年轻的时候也是这样，你忘了？  
Young people are always young people. When I was young I was like that too, have you forgotten?
5. A: Shǔjiàde shíhòu, nǐ xiǎng dào nǎr qù wánwan?  
暑假的时候，你想到哪儿去往往儿？  
Where do you want to go to summer vacation?  
B: Wǒ xiǎng dào Yàzhōu jǐge guójiā qu kànkàn.  
我想到亚洲几个国家去看看。  
I'd like to go visit a few countries in Asia.
6. A: Zěnmē, nǐ xiǎng yánjiū Yàzhōude wénhuà chuántǒng?  
怎么，你想研究亚洲的文化传统？  
Oh? Do you want to do research on Asia's cultural tradition?

- B: **Bù néng shuō yánjiū. Wǒ zhǐ shì xiǎng qù kànkan nàlǐde shèhuì qíngkuàng.**  
 不能说研究。我只是想去看看那里的社会情况。  
 It can't be called research. I just want to go have a look at the social situation there.
7. A: **Lǎo Wáng, wǒ jīntiān gǎnjué hěn bu shūfu.**  
**Lǎo Wáng, 我今天感觉很不舒服。**  
 Lǎo Wáng, I feel awful today.
- B: **Kuài zuòxia, wǒ qù gěi nǐ dào bēi chá lai.**  
**快做下，我去给你倒杯茶来。**  
 Sit down and I'll pour you a cup of tea.
8. A: **Nǐ qùde nèige dìfāng zhèngzhì, jīngjì fāngmiàn de qíngxíng zěnmeyàng?**  
**你去的那个地方政治，经济方面的情形怎么样？**  
 What was the political and economic situation like where you went?
- B: **Jǐjǔ huà shuōbuqīngchu, yǒu shíjiān wǒ zài gēn nǐ mànmanr shuō ba.**  
**几句话说不清楚，有时间我在跟你慢慢儿说吧。**  
 I can't explain it clearly in just a few sentences; when I have time I'll tell you all about it.
9. A: **Yánjiū Zhōngguó xiànzài de wèntí yíding děi dǒngde Zhōngguó lìshǐ.**  
**研究中国现在的问题一定得懂得中国历史。**  
 To study the problem of China now, you have to understand Chinese history.
- B: **Nǐ shuōde zhèiyidiǎn hěn yào jǐn, wǒ kǎolǜ kǎolǜ.**  
**你说得这一点很要紧，我考虑考虑。**  
 This point of yours is very important; I'll think it over.
10. A: **Nǐ zài Zhōngguó zhù liǎngnián, yíding huì xuéhǎo Zhōngwén de.**  
**你在中国住两年，一定会学好中文的。**  
 If you live in China for two years, you're sure to learn Chinese very well.
- B: **Shì a, yìfāngmiàn kěyǐ xuéhǎo Zhōngwén, yìfāngmiàn yě kěyǐ duō zhīdào yìdiǎnr Zhōngguó de shìqing.**  
**是啊，一方面可以学好中文，一方面也可以多知道一点儿中国的事情。**  
 Yes, on the one hand I can learn Chinese well, and on the other hand I can find out more things about China.
11. **yìbiān(r)... yìbiān(r)**  
**一边(儿)。。。一边(儿)**  
 doing... while doing...
12. **yímiàn...yímiàn...**  
**一面(儿)。。。一面(儿)。。。**  
 doing... while doing...

## Vocabulary

cháng	长	to be long
chuántǒng	传统	tradition, traditional
dàlù	大陆	mainland, continent
dào	倒	to pour (liquid)
-diǎn	点	point
dǒngde	懂得	to understand, to grasp, to know
-fāngmiàn (-fāngmian)	方面	aspect, side, area, respect
gǎnjué	感觉	feeling, sensation, to feel, to perceive
guānyú	关于	as to, with regard to, concerning, about
guójiā	国家	country, state, nation; national
huì	会	might, be likely, will
jiè	借	to borrow; to lend
jièdao	借到	to successfully borrow
-jù	句	sentence; counter for sentences or utterances, often followed by <i>huà</i> , "speech"
kǎolǜ	考虑	to consider, to think about
mànmǎnr	慢慢儿	slowly; gradually, by and by; taking one's time; in all details
niánqīng	年轻	to be young
qíngkuàng	情况	situation, circumstances, condition, state of affairs
qíngxíng	情形	situation, circumstances, condition, state of affairs
ràng	让	to make (someone a certain way)
shèhuì	社会	society, social
shǔjià	暑假	summer vacation
shuōbuqīngchu	说不清楚	can't explain clearly
wénhuà	文化	culture
xiǎoshuō	小说	fiction, novel
(-)xuéqī	学期	semester, term (of school)
yánjiū (yánjiu, yánjiù)	研究	to study (in detail), to do research on; research
Yàzhōu (Yǎzhōu)	亚洲	Asia
yìbiān(r)... yìbiān(r)...	一边(儿)。。。 一边(儿)	doing... while doing...

yīfāngmiàn(r)...yīfāngmiàn(r)...	一方面 (儿) 。 。 。 — 方面 (儿) 。 。 。	on one hand... , on the other hand...
yímiàn(r)... yímiàn(r)...	一面 (儿) 。 。 。 — 面 (儿) 。 。 。	doing... while doing...
zhèngzhì	政治	politics, political affairs; political
zǒng	总	always; inevitably, without exception, after all, in any case
zuòxià	坐下	to sit down

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1

jiè: “to borrow” [Also “to lend,” see Notes on No. 2.]

Wǒ dào túshūguǎn qù jiè shū.

我到图书馆去借书。

I'm going to the library to borrow [take out] some books.

For “from,” use **gen** or **xiàng** for people and **cóng** for place names like the library.

### Note

**Xiàng** is used more in written style.

Wǒ méi dài qián, xiǎng gēn (xiàng) Níngníng qù jiè.

我没带钱，想跟（相）宁宁去借。

I didn't bring any money, I want to go borrow some from **Níngníng**

Wǒ cóng túshūguǎn jiè le yì běn Zhīngguó lìshǐ shū.

我从图书馆借了一本中国历史书。

I borrowed a Chinese history book from the library.

**Cóng** can only be followed by a person if the person is made into a place name, for example by the addition of **nèr** (nàli):

Wǒ cóng tā nèr jiè le wǔ kuài qián.

我从他那儿借了五块钱。

I borrowed five dollars from him.

For people, you may also use the common pattern **wèn... jiè...**, literally “ask... borrow.”:

Wǒ wèn tā jiè le yì běn shū.

我问她接了一本书。

I borrowed a book from him.

Wǒ bù hǎo yìsī wèn bièrén jiè qián.

我不好意思问别人借钱。

I'm too embarrassed to borrow money from other people.

**jièdao**: The ending **-dào** expresses that the borrowing results in the thing being obtained. You learned **-dào** and the similar **Běijīng -zháo** in the verb **jiēdao/jiēzhao** “to receive,” in the Meeting module.

You need to know not only what the ending **-dào** means, but also when to use it and when not to. This can't be summed up in one neat formula, but you will see from the following examples that **-dào** is used when there was a question of not being able to get the thing. **Jiè** by itself does not necessarily imply obtaining, so you can use it in situations when you tried to borrow something but couldn't get it.

Wǒ gēn tā jiè le yìběn zìdiǎn.

我跟他接了一本字典。

I borrowed a dictionary from him.

Wǒ qù jièguo, kěshì méi jièdào.

我去借过，可是没借到。

I went and tried to borrow it, but I didn't get it.

A: Nǐ cóng túshūguǎn jièdào nèiběn Měiguó lìshǐ shū le ma?

你从图书馆借到那本美国书了吗？

Did you get that American history book out of the library?

B: Méiyǒu, dōu jièchūqù le. Dàgài xià Xīngqīyī cái néng jièdào.

没有，都借出去了。大概下星期一才能借到。

No, they had all been taken out. I probably won't be able to (borrow and) get it until next Monday.

**Jiè** may have certain other directional or resultative endings. Here are examples.

Zài zhèr kàn kěyǐ, bù néng jièchūqù.

在这儿看可以，不能借出去。

You can read it here, but you can't take it out.

Tā bǎ wǒ de chē jièqù le.

他把我的车街去了。

He borrowed my car (and took it away)

Tā bǎ nèiběn shū jièzǒu le

他把那本书街走了。

He borrowed that book (and took it away)

Wǒ cóng tā nèr jièlái wǔkuài qián.

我从他那儿借来五块钱。

I borrowed five dollars from him.

**ràng**: “to make” someone a certain way, or “to cause” someone to become a certain way. When used this way, **ràng** is followed by a person and an adjectival verb. You learned **ràng** as “to let” in the Welfare module:



Ràng wǒ kànkàn nǐde hùzhào “Let me see your passport.” [Ràng: can also mean “to have,” “To tell,” or “to make” someone do something.]

Tā shuōde huà ràng wǒ hěn shēngqì.

他说的话让我很生气。

What he said made me very angry.

Tā nàme bú kèqì ràng tā péngyǒu hěn bù hǎo yìsī.

他那么不客气让他朋友很不好意思。

He embarrassed his friend by being so rude.

Shénme xiǎoshuō? --ràng nǐ zhème gāoxìng.: There is a pause after the question shénme xiǎoshuō, and the rest of the sentence, ràng nǐ zhème gāoxìng. is like an afterthought. Compare these examples:

Zhè shì shénme kāfēi? --zhème hǎo hē.

这是什么咖啡？--这么好喝。

What kind of coffee is this? It's so good.

Zhè jiù shì nǐ mǎide chē? --zhème nánkàn.

这就是你买的车？--这么难看。

So this is the car you bought? It's so ugly!

Nǐ xǐhuān shùxué a? --nàme méi yìsī.

你喜欢数学阿？--那么没意思。

You like math?--such a boring thing!

## Notes on №2

xiě: This verb which you learned as “to write,” is also one of several ways that “about” is expressed in Chinese. When used with this meaning, xiě usually appears in the (Verb) **de shi** construction discussed immediately below.

xiěde shi: This structure, (Verb) **de shi**, is a major structure of Chinese, so pay extra attention! Use (Verb) **de shi** when the verb is not new information and you want to focus instead on the identity of the thing talked about. The pattern itself makes an equational sentence, that is, an A **EQUALS** B sentence:

A	IS	B
Verb <b>de</b>	<b>shi</b>	B
Tā zuòde	<b>shi</b>	báicài.
What he's making is cabbage.		

In sentence 2A, the verb xiě is not new information because any novel must “be written about” something. The object dàlùde qíngkuàng is new information which is focused on.

A: Nǐ zài Jiāzhōu Dàxué niànde shì shénme?

A: 你在加州大学念的大学是什么？

A: What is it that you study at the University of California?

B: Wǒ niànde shì jīngjìxué.

B: 我念的经济学。

It's economics.

Zhèige diànyǐng jiǎngde shì yīge Zhōngguó rén qù Měiguó wànde shì.

这个电影讲的是一个人去美国望的是。

This film is about a Chinese going to America to visit.

Gāngcái nǐ jiàode shì shénme? Shì fàn háishì miàn?

刚才你叫的是什么？是饭还是面？

What did you order just now? Rice or noodles?

Nǐ xiànzài shuōde shì wǒ háishì tā?

你现在说的是我还是他？

Is the person you're talking about now me or him?

Tā hěn xǐhuān kàn shū, kěshì tā kànde dōu shì yìxiē méiyiside xiǎoshuō.

她很喜欢看书，可是他看的都是一些没意思的小说。

He likes to read, but all he reads are stupid novels.

dàlù: “continent, mainland” Zhōngguó dàlù is “mainland China,” which may also be called dàlù for short just as we say “the mainland.”

Other ways are by using the verb jiǎng, “to talk about,” as in Zhèiběn shū jiǎng shénme?, “What is this book about?”; and guānyú (see the note in this section)

qíngkuàng: “situation, circumstances 5 state of affairs, condition” Used much more frequently in Chinese than any single one of these translations is used in English. Sometimes the Chinese language uses qíngkuàng when in English we would just say “things” or “the way things are.”

Nǐ de qíngkuàng gēn tā de chàbùduō.

你的情况跟他的差不多。

You and he are in about the same situation.

Wǒ dìdì de jīngjì qíngkuàng bù tài hǎo.

我弟弟的经济情况不太好。

My younger brother's financial situation isn't too good.

Nà shì sìshí nián qián de shì, xiànzài qíngkuàng bù tóng le.

那是四十年前的事，现在情况不同了。

That was forty years ago. Now things are different.

A: Nǐ néng bù néng gěi wǒ jiǎngjiāng nǐ zài dàlùde qíngkuàng?

A: 你能不能给我讲讲你在大陆的情况？

A: Could you tell me about the way things were for you on the mainland?

B: Nǐ de yìsī shì wǒ zìjǐ de qíngkuàng ma?

B: 你的意思是我自己的情况吗？

B: Do you mean my own situation?

Sometimes qíngkuàng means the “picture” about a place (especially an organization); in such cases it may not be necessary to translate it literally.

Tā gěi wǒmen jiè shào le tāmen xuéxiào de qíngkuàng.

他给我们介绍了他们学校的情况。

He gave us a presentation (briefing) on their school. (E.g., what grades, how many students and teachers, what subjects are taught, etc.)

Wǒ bù tài shúxī Měidàsī de qíngkuàng.

我不太熟悉美大司的情况。

I'm not too familiar with (the way things are at) the Department of American and Oceanic Affairs.

**guānyú**: “with regard to, concerning” The phrase **guānyú dàlù de** means literally “one concerning the mainland.” **Guānyú** is rather formal. In everyday speech, the idea of “about” is more often expressed in other ways

### Note

Other ways include using the verbs **jiǎng** and **xiě** (see Notes on No. 2). For example, if I am watching a T.V. program and you walk into the room and want to ask, “What’s this about?” the most “everyday” way would be **Jiǎng shénme de?** (actually an abbreviated form of **Zhèige jiémù [program] shì jiǎng shénme de?**). It would sound stilted to use **guānyú** in such an informal situation. You see another example of how “about” is expressed in Chinese on the next page under number (3) in the little dialogue: “About what?” is **Shénme diànyǐng?**

, but **guānyú** is often used in formal contexts.

**Guānyú** is a prepositional verb, which means it is followed by a noun (its object) and is related to the main verb. It is not the best behaved of prepositional verbs, however. **Guānyú** does not occur where you would normally expect to find a prepositional verb phrase (before the verb, e.g., **dào Zhōngguó qù**). Nor does **guānyú** occur in a sentence the way “about,” does in English. “About” phrases in English are free to occur after the verb, e.g. , “talk about Chinese history,” “think about your problem.” A **guānyú** phrase (that is, **guānyú** and its object) can only occur in the following places in the sentence:

(1) **Guānyú** can occur at the beginning of the sentence to introduce the topic about to be commented on.

**Guānyú nèijiàn shì, wǒ shénme dōu bù zhīdao.**

Concerning that matter, I don't know anything. (OR I don't know anything about that matter.)

**Gānyú nèrde qíngkuàng, nǐ gěi wǒ dǎting dǎting hǎo ba?**

Would you please ask for me about the situation there?

**Guānyú zhège, nǐmen hái yǒu méiyǒu shénme wèntí?**

Do you have any other questions about this?

(2) **Guānyú** can also occur in a phrase with -de which modifies a noun.

**Xièxie nǐ gàosu wǒ zhème duō guānyú dàlùde qíngkuàng.**

Thank you for telling me so much about the situation on the mainland.

**Tā zhīdao hěn duō guānyú zhèi fāngmiàn de shìqing.**

He knows a lot (of things) about this field.

**Wǒmen zhèi méiyǒu duōshǎo guānyú Zhōngguó de shū.**

We don't have very many books about China here.

It also occurs in a phrase with **-de**, the whole phrase acting as a noun.

Wǒ cóng Xiǎo Zhào nàr jièlái yī běn shū, shì guānyú Zhōngguó càide, nǐ kànkàn.

I borrowed a book from **Xiǎo Zhào**. It's (a book) about Chinese food. Have a look at it.

(3) A **guānyú** phrase (**guānyú** + noun) is occasionally used alone as an abbreviated sentence.

Wǒ zuótiān kànle yige diànyǐng.

I saw a movie yesterday.

Shénme diànyǐng?

About what?

Guānyú Fǎguó ...

About France...

Guānyú Fǎguóde shénme?

About what (aspect) of France?

Guānyú Fǎguóde jīngjì.

About the French economy.

Compare the following English and Chinese sentences. Although the parts in parentheses are optional in English, the Chinese sentences would be considered wrong without the underlined **-de** phrases. (For the first example you need to know **xiāoxi**, “news.”)

Nǐ tīngshuō guānyú Tiětuōde xiāoxi ma?

Have you heard (the news) about Tito?(i.e., that he had died)

Bù yào wèn wǒ quānyú shùxuéde wèntí.

Don't ask me (any questions) about math.

**jiè gěi wǒ kànkàn**: “lend (it) to me to read” In exchange 1, **jiè** was translated “borrow.” Now you see it used for “to lend.” To say “lend something to someone,” the **gěi** phrase always follows the verb **jiè**

### Note

A **gěi** phrase before **jiè** would mean “for,” not “to.” Example : **Tā gěi wǒ jièle jǐběn shū**. “He borrowed a few books for me.”

. If the indirect object (person who receives) is a pronoun, **gěi** may be omitted:

Jiè wǒ yìzhī bǐ.

Lend me a pen.

Jiè gěi wǒ yìzhī bǐ.

Lend me a pen.

(In this extremely common sentence, the *gěi* is more frequently omitted.)

### Notes on №3

*xuéqī*: “semester, term.” Since *xuéqī* means literally just “school-period”, it could conceivably apply to a scholastic term of any length, including quarters. Chinese schools, however, run on semester system (fall-winter, and winter-spring.)

*Xiànzài yǒude Měiguó dàxué yīge xuéqī zhǐ yǒu shíèr sānge líbài.*

Some American colleges have semesters which last only twelve or thirteen weeks.

*Shàngè xuéqī nǐ dōu niǎnle shénme.*

What (courses) did you take last semester?

*Xuéqī* may also be used without the counter *-ge*: *shàngxuéqī*, *xiàxuéqī*, *yìxuéqī*, etc .

*yánjiū*: “to do research on” a topic (usually at the graduate level or above). Sometimes may be translated as “to study” (in depth, not just preparing for a test).

*Tā yánjiūde shì nǐfāngmiande wèntí?*

What area does she study (OR do research on)?

*Kē Jiàoshòu zài jīngjì fāngmiande yánjiū shì dàjiā hěn shóuxīde.*

Everyone is familiar with Professor Kē's research in the area of economics.

*Tāde yánjiū gōngzuò hěn zhòngyào.*

His research work is very important.

Another meaning is “to look into, to consider, to discuss” (possibilities, opinions, questions) :

*Zhèige wèntí wǒmen děi yánjiū yanjiu.*

We should discuss (OR look into this) question.

*zhèngzhì*: “politics, political affairs; political”

Keep in mind that because of China's political system, the word *zhèngzhì* has a different set of meanings than we are used to. This is a large question which we will not go into in depth here. But to give you an idea of this concept, here is the definition of *zhèngzhì* from a Chinese dictionary.

*zhèngzhì* : The concentrated expression of economics. It comes into being on a particular economic base, serves the economic base, and has a tremendous influence on economic development. In a class society, economic interests are the most fundamental interests of the different classes. In order to safeguard their own interests, the classes inevitably wage intense class struggle among each other. Therefore, class struggle and handling relations between the classes becomes the main content of politics. The relations which politics must handle are the internal relations of a class, relations between the

classes, relations between nationalities, and international relations. Politics is manifested in policies and activities in the areas of national life and international relations of political parties, social groups, and social forces which represent certain classes. The politics of the exploiting class has as its aim to oppress the working people and to preserve its own narrow interests. In the politics of the proletariat, bourgeois rule is overthrown with revolutionary violence under the leadership of the proletarian political party, and the dictatorship of the proletariat is established; after power has been seized, socialist revolution is carried through to the end, class struggle is properly waged, and contradictions between ourselves and the enemy as well as contradictions among the people... are properly handled; then the focus of struggle is progressively turned towards engaging in the cause of socialist construction and devoting major efforts to developing production, and creating the conditions needed to completely abolish classes and bring about communism.

Note in particular how the politicization of everyday personal relations in the PRC has resulted in **zhèngzhì** being used in a host of phrases such as “political influence,” “political relations,” “political background,” “political qualifications,” etc.

### Notes on №4

**cháng**: “to be long” in physical length, or in some cases, time

#### Note

There are other words for “long” in other contexts. When referring to distance, use **yuǎn**: **Lù hěn yuǎn**. “It’s a long way.” For time, you will also need **jiǔ**: **Tā zǒule duō jiǔ le?**, “How long has it been since he left?”

. The opposite of **cháng** is **duǎn**, “to “be short.”

**Chángchéng yǒu duō cháng? Yǒu liùqiānduō gōnglǐ (cháng).**

How long is the Great Wall? It’s over six thousand kilometers (long.)

**Nǐ xiède tài cháng le, duǎn yidiǎnr, hǎo bu hǎo?**

You made this (piece of writing) too long. Could you shorten it?

**Wǒ hěn cháng shíjiān méi kǎnjian ta le.**

I haven’t seen him in a long time. ta le. (**Hěn cháng shíjiān** is the same as **hěn jiǔ**)

**Wǒ xiǎng nǐ zài nà zhǎo fāngzi yíding xūyào yige hěn chángde shíjiān.**

I’m sure it will take you a long time to find a house there,

**Tā zài zhè gōngzuòde shíjiān yǒu duō cháng?**

How long did he work here?

**niánqīng**: “to be young” While the idea of being young is often relative to a particular situation, **nián-qīng rěn** usually means people from the teens through the twenties.

#### Note

Remember that **xiǎo** is another word for “young”: **Tā bǐ wǒ xiǎo yísuì**. “He’s a year younger than I.” **Wǒ xiǎode shíhou** usually means “When I was a child.” When speaking to a child, you would say **Nǐ hái xiǎo** for “You’re still young.”

Tā niánqīngde shíhou bǐ xiànzài gèng hǎo kàn.

When she was young she was even more beautiful than now.

Niánqīng rén dōu xǐhuan wánr.

All young people like to have fun.

**zǒng**: “always, invariably” Like other adverbs such as **zhēn**, really,” and **hái**, “still,” **zǒng** is often followed by **shi**.

Nǐ zǒngshì wèn wǒ wèntí.

You always ask me questions.

Zhèizhǒng shìqing zǒngshì ràng rén hěn gāoxìng.

This type of thing always makes one very happy.

**Zǒng bù**, “always not...” is one way of saying “never”:

Tā zǒng bù xǐhuān biérén wèn tā jiālide shì.

He never likes other people to ask about his family,

**Zǒng** has another use, which is the one you see in exchange 4: Instead of meaning literally “on every occasion” or “at all times,” **zǒng** is used to suggest that a certain state of affairs should be obviously true, regardless of other circumstances. Translations for this meaning depend upon the context; some are “after all, surely, always, in any case, when all is said and done, inevitably, eventually.” Other possible translations are suggested in the following examples.

Xiǎoháizi zǒng shì xiǎoháizi, dàle jiù hǎo le.

Children will always be children; after they grow up it will be better.

Nǐ bú jiè wǒ, wǒ zài zhè kànkan zǒng kěyǐ ba?

If you won't lend it [this book] to me, at least I can read it here, can't I?

Nǐ niàn shū shì hǎo shì, zǒng bù néng bù chī fàn ba?

It's great that you're studying, but after all, you can't go without eating, can you?

Nǐ shì Měiguó rén, nǐ zǒng bù néng bù zhīdào Dézhōu zài nǎr ba?!

You're an American, you can't very well not know where Texas is, can you?!

Nǐ nǎzǒu wǒde shū, zǒng děi wèn wǒ yíxià!

You really should ask before you take one of my books.

Zǒng yǒu yìtiān, tā huì huílaide.

Someday he will surely come back.

Èrshìgè bú gòu, nà nǐ shuō sānshìgè zǒng gòu le ba?

If twenty isn't enough, then thirty should surely be enough, wouldn't you say?

A: Gōnggòng qìchē méiyǒu dào nèige dìfāngde, wǒmen děi qí zìxíngchē qù.

There aren't any buses that go there. We'll have to go by bicycle.

Òu, qí chē duō lèi...

Oh, but it's so tiring to ride a bicycle.

Zǒng bǐ zǒuzhe qù hǎoduō le.

Well, it's much better than walking!

Lái wǎn yidiǎnr zǒng bǐ bù lái hǎo.

It's better to come a little late than not to come at all.

Guānyú nǐ zhèige wèntí, wǒ zhīdào bù duō, dàgài méiyǒu bànfǎ huídáhǎo.

I don't know much about this question of yours. I probably can't give you a good answer.

Nǐ zǒng zhīdào bǐ wǒmen duō, jiù qǐng nǐ jiǎngjiāng ba!

In any case, you know more than we do, so please try.

## Notes on №5

**shǔjià**: “summer vacation” In China, summer vacation starts in August and ends in September for high schools; college ends in June and starts in late August.

Zhèige shǔjià wǒ bú dào nǎr qù.

This summer vacation I'm not going anywhere.

**Yàzhōu**: “Asia” **Yà** comes from the transliterated word for Asia, **Yàxìyà**. **Zhōu** means “continent.” Many people say **Yàzhōu**.

**guójiā**: “country, nation, state,” literally, “country-family.” The bound word **-guó** is used only in certain phrases or compound words. **Guójiā** is the word to use everywhere else. (Sometimes **guó** may be used alone, such as in reference to kingdoms or dukedoms of ancient China. But a modern nation is called **guójiā**.)

## Notes on №6

**Zěnmè?**: “oh?; what?; really?” The intonation can change the implication.

Zěnmè, nǐ yě dào zhèr lái le!

Well, you've come here too!

Zěnmè? Tā bú shì Zhōngguó rén? Nà tade zhōngwén zěnmè zěnmè hǎo ne?



What? He's not Chinese? Then how is his Chinese so good?

Nǐ xiàwǔ yǒu shíjiān ma?

Do you have any time this afternoon?

Zěnmē? Yǒu shì ma?

Why? Is something happening?

wénhuà: “culture, civilization” Also “education, cultural background” as in méiyǒu wénhuàde rén, “an uncultured person” or an “uneducated person.”

shèhuì “society; social” Xīn shèhuì and jiù shèhuì are jargon for the new and old societies (after and before the socialist transformation). “In society” is more often zài shèhuìshàng, less frequently zài shèhuìlǐ.

Xiānggǎngde shèhuì wèntí hěn duō.

Hong Kong sure has a lot of social problems. (e.g., drugs, killings)

## Notes on №7

gǎnjué: “to feel; feeling” In 7a, gǎnjué is used as a verb. Here are other examples:

Nǐ gǎnjué zěnmeyàng?

How do you feel?

Nǐ jīntiān gǎnjué hǎo yidiǎnr le ma?

Do you feel better today?

Wǒ gǎnjué tā jīntiān yǒu diǎnr bu gāoxìng.

I get the feeling he's a little unhappy (OR bothered) today.

Suīrán wǒ bù fā shāo le, kěshì zǒng gǎnjué hěn lèi.

Although I don't have a fever any more, I feel very tired all the time.

Here is an example of gǎnjué used as a noun:

Zhèi shì wǒde gǎnjué, nǐde kànfā zěnmeyàng?

That's my feeling, what is your opinion?

zuòxia : “to sit down” Also zuòxialai.

Qǐng zuòxia(lai) tán.

Have a seat and let's talk about it.

**dào... lai:** **Dào** is “to pour”; **dàolai** is “to pour and bring here.” You have seen **lái** used as a directional ending before, as in **náxialai**, “bring down and here,” or **pǎolái** “run here.” There are two things to notice about the meaning of **lái** as a directional ending: 1) **Lái** can be used after verbs which tell of movement from one place to another, like **pǎo**, “to run” or **nà**, “to carry”; OR after verbs which describe an action without movement from one place to another, such as **dào**, “to pour.” 2) The thing **lái** refers to, which is what ends up “here”, may be the subject OR the object of the sentence. For example, in **Tā pǎolái le**, “He ran here,” it is the subject **tā** who performs the action of running and comes here. In **Tā xiělai yìfēng xìn le**, “He has written a letter which has come here,” it is the object **xìn** which is written and comes here. In **Yīfu dōu yǐjīng xǐlai le**, “All the clothes have already been washed and brought here,” it is the topic **yīfu** which were washed and brought here.

You will often split **lai** from the verb by inserting an object like **yībēi chá**, as in sentence In fact, in sentence 7B, **dào** and **lai** must be split up; **lai** may not precede the object. The rules allowing **lái** to precede the object are complex, and here we will just give some examples of usage.

**Nǐ nǎr jièlai zhème yíliàng pò chē?**

Where did you borrow such a beat-up old car from?

**Wǒ zuì xīhuān nǐ cóng Shànghǎi mǎilade nèijiàn máoyī.**

I like the sweater you bought in Shanghai best.

**Wǒ yíding gěi nǐ zhǎolai nèiběn shū.** OR **Wǒ yíding gěi nǐ zhǎo nèiběn shū lai.**

I'll be sure to find that book for you.

**Nǐ shénme shíhou yǒu shíjiān, dǎ ge diànhuà lai, wǒmen yìqǐ qù kàn diànyǐng.**

When you get the time, give me a call, and we'll go see a movie together. (**Lai** must follow the object.)

**Bié wàngle míngtiān yě bǎ nǐde nǚpéngyou dàilai.**

Don't forget to bring your girlfriend tomorrow too.

## Notes on №8

**fāngmiàn:** “aspect; area; respect; side” This noun is used without a counter. It is a useful, sometimes overused word. You won't have any trouble understanding how **fāngmiàn** is used, but there will be sentences where you wouldn't have thought to use it. When translating, it is sometimes better just to leave **fāngmiàn** out of the English than to strain to use the word “aspect,” “side,” etc.

**fāngmiàn** has two main uses:

1. “aspect, respect, area, field”

**Zhèige wèntí yǒu liǎngfāngmiàn.**

There are two aspects to this question.

**Wǒmen zài zhèifāngmiàn zuòde hái bú gòu.**

We haven't done enough in this area.

**Yīngguó zài jīngjìxué fāngmiàn de yánjiū zuòde bù shǎo.**

A lot of research in the area of economics has been done in England.

Wǒ méi shíde shíhòu xǐhuan kànkàn wénxué fāngmiàn de shū.

When I don't have anything to do, I like to read books on the subject of literature.

A: Wǒ kànle nǐ xiěde yǐhòu juéde yǒu yifāngmiàn kěyǐ xiěde gèng hǎo.

After reading what you wrote, I feel there's one aspect in which can make it better.

B: Nǐfāngmiàn ne?

What aspect?

2. “party, side,” referring to a group of people

Niūyuē fāngmiàn dàgài bú huì yǒu shénme wèntí, kěshǐ wǒmen yīnggāi hé Běijīng fāngmiàn xiān shāngliang yíxià zài shuō.

New York won't have any problem with this, but we should check with Běijīng before going ahead, (meaning groups of people, e.g., offices of a company.)

Guānyú zhèige wèntí, liǎng fāngmiàn de kàn fā yǒu diǎn bù tóng.

The two sides have somewhat different views on this question.

qíngxìng :: In most cases interchangeable with qíngkuàng. In present-day Běijīng speech, at least among the younger generation, qíngkuàng is the more common of these two words.

shuōbùqīngchū : “can't say/explain clearly” Shuōqīngchū is a compound verb of result. Here are other examples:

Wǒ shuōqīngchū wèishénme tā shēngqì.

I can't really explain why he got angry.

Bù shuōqīngchū bù xíng.

It won't do not to explain it clearly.

Tā shuōqīngchū tāde mùdì.

He explained his goal clearly.

Nǐ néng bu néng shuōqīngchū “niánqīng” hé “xiǎo” de bù tóng?

Can you explain clearly the differences between niánqīng and xiǎo?

mànmānr : Also mànmàn. Many adjectival verbs can be doubled to make an adverb, which is used between the subject and the verb. In Běijīng speech, when you double certain adjectival verbs of one-syllable, the second one becomes first tone (no matter what its original tone) and is added. These adverbs can take the adverbial ending -de. Other examples are kuàikuāir(de), “quickly,” and hǎohāorde, “veil, properly.”

Mànmàn(de) or mànmānr(de) has these meanings:

1. “slowly” Don't forget, however, that “slowly” can sometimes be translated by **màn** alone.

Tā màn mǎnrde zǒu huí jiā qu le.

He slowly walked home.

BUT

Zǒu màn yidiǎnr.

Walk more slowly.

Màn diǎnr zǒu.

Walk more slowly.

2. “gradually, bit by bit, by and by”

Nǐ gāng lái, duì zhède qíngkuàng bù shúxī, màn mǎnr nǐ jiu zhīdao le.

You just arrived and are unfamiliar with the situation here, but you'll come to know it by and by.

Màn mǎnrde, tā jiu dǒng le.

Gradually he began to understand.

3. Sentences which instruct someone to **màn mǎnr** do this or that can often be translated as “take your time...,” or “don't rush.”

Màn mǎnr zǒu, zánmen láidejí.

Let's take our time walking. We'll make it.

Bù jí, màn mǎnr chī, wǒ děng nǐ.

There's no hurry, so take your time eating. I'll wait for you.

4. With verbs meaning “to tell” someone about something, **màn mǎnr** has more of the meaning, “in all details.”

Nǐ zuòxia, wǒ màn mǎnr gēn nǐ jiǎng.

Sit down and I'll give you the whole story.

Wǒ hái xiǎng gēn nǐ duō tán tan zhèige shì.

I'd like to talk some more with you about this.

Hǎode, yǐhòu wǒmen màn màn tán.

Okay, later we can talk about it.

## Notes on №9

**dǒngde**: “to understand” Narrower in use than **dǒng**. You **dǒngde** the meaning of a word, the implications or significance of an event, or the way to do something; but not a foreign language (that you **dǒng**), nor what the teacher just said (that you **tīngdǒng** le), nor someone else's feelings (that you **liǎojiě**, which will be presented in the Traveling in China module).

You have seen the component **-de** in the verbs **rènde** and **jìde**. It is only used in a handful of verbs, sometimes acting like a resultative ending. For example, you can say **rènbude**, “can’t recognize,” and **jìbude**, “can’t remember,” but you may not use **dǒngde** in the potential form; form, “can't understand,” you just say **bù dǒngde**.

**-diǎn** : “point” (For the second example, you need to know **xīnli**, “in one' s heart.”)

Ò, hái yǒu yìdiǎn.

Oh, there's one more point [that should be made].

Zhèi, shì ràng rén xīnli zuì bù shūfude yìdiǎn.

This is the most upsetting point

Nèi yìdiǎn wǒmen yǐjīng tánguo le.

We've been over that point already

Wǒ juéde tā shuōde měiyìdiǎn dōu duì.

I think that every point of his was right.

**kǎolù** : “to consider, to think over; consideration”

Zhèi yìdiǎn wǒmen yīnggāi kǎolù.

We should consider this point.

Wǒ děi hǎohāor kǎolù zhèige wèntí.

I have to think this matter over went!. carefully.

Zhèi fāngmiànde qíngkuàng nǐ kǎolù ma?

Have you taken this aspect of the matter into consideration?

## Notes on №10

**huì** : “might, be likely to, will” You already know **huì** meaning “to know how to, can.” Here you see **huì** used in a new way, to express likelihood. As you can see from these three English translations, **huì** ranges in meaning from possible to probable to definite. The context may be sufficient to indicate which, but often the degree of probability is not important to the message, and there might be no single “correct” English translation. Various adverbs can be added before **huì** to clarify the degree of certainty, for example, **yíding** “definitely,” **dàgài**, “probably,” **yěxǔ**, “perhaps,” etc.

Here are some examples of how **huì** can be used to indicate likelihood:

**huì**

Yǐjīng shíèrdiǎn bàn le, zhè shíhòu shéi huì lái ne?

It's half past twelve. Who would come at this hour?

Yídìng yào wǒ qù, tā cái huì qù.

I'll have to go or else he won't go.

Cài yàoshi fàngde tài duō le, bǎobǐng huì pò.

If you put too much food in, the pancake will break.

Nǐde chènshān zāngle bù yào jǐn, wǒ huì gěi nǐ xǐ.

It doesn't matter that your shirt got dirty. I, ll wash it for you.

**bú huì**

Bú dà huì ba?

That's not very likely.

Dàgài bú huì shì tā.

It is probably not him.

Yàoshizài Táiwān mǎi jiù bú huì zhème guì le.

If you buy it in Taiwan, it won't be so expensive.

Nǐ bú huì zhǎobudào ba?

You won't be unable to find it, will you?

Nǐ bú yào jí le, wǒ bú huì chū shìde.

Don't get anxious, I won't have an accident.

**huì...ma?**

Nǐ kàn jīntiān wǎnshang huì liángkuai yidiǎn ma?

Do you think it might be cooler tonight?

Tā huì qù ma? Tā huì qù.

Will he go? He'll go.

**huì bu huì**

Míngtiān tā huì bu huì lái?

Will he come tomorrow?

Wǒmenxiěde nèifēng xìn, dào xiànzài tāmen hái méiyǒu shōudào, wǒmen huì bu huì xiěcuòle dìzhǐ.

They still haven't gotten the letter. Could we have written the address wrong?

Wǒ bǎ mén kāi le, zhèiyang nǐ huì bu huì juéde tài lěng?

I opened the door. Will you feel too cold like this?

Nǐ kàn jīntiān huì bu huì xià yǔ?

Does it look to you as if it might rain today?

**nǐ huì zǒucuòde:** So far you have seen **-de** used as a marker of possession or of modification, and in the **shi...de** construction. Here it is used in an entirely new way: at the end of a sentence, **-de** can mean “that's the way the situation is.” Generally speaking, this **-de** is used in emphatic assertions or denials, especially those expressing probability, necessity, desire, etc.

**Usage note:** Unless the sentence contains **shi** or is understood to have an omitted **shi**, the majority of native **Běijīng** speakers seem to feel that this **-de** is **nánfāng huà**, southern Chinese (e.g., **Nánjīng**), or a carry-over into Standard Chinese from southern dialects. Because of these regional connotations, you needn't try to use it a lot; it will be enough for you to understand this **-de**; in fact, you will see that in most of the following examples, the **-de** is completely unnecessary.

1. Sentences with **shi** in the sense of “it is that... it is a case of.. .”

This **shi** may often be omitted.

Wǒ shì bú qù de.

I'm not going. (More literally, “As for me, it is that I'm not going.”)

Zhèige, nǐ shì zhīdaode.

This you know.

Nèige rén (shì) yǒu wèntíde.

There is something wrong with that guy.

Nǐ zěnméi lái le?

Why are you here?

(Shì) Lǐ xiānsheng jiào wò lái de.

Mr. Lǐ told me to come.

Cóngqián wǒ cóng Xiānggǎng mǎi shūde shíhou, měicì dōu (shì) jì zhīpiàode.

In the past whenever I have bought (mail-order) books from Hong Kong, I have always paid by check (lit. “sent a check”).

2. Sentences with an auxiliary verb (**huì**, **néng**, **yào**, **yīnggāi**, etc.)

Nǐ gào su ta, tā huì shēngqìde.

If you tell him he'll get angry.

Zài xiè yiliǎngge zhōngtóu, wǒ xiàng néng xiěwánde.

If I write for another hour or two, I think I can finish writing it.

Nǐ zěnméi méi mǎi a, yidiǎn dōu bú guì, nǐ yīnggāi mǎide.

How come you didn't buy it? It's not at all expensive. You should have bought it.

Nǐ zhème shūfu, jīntiānde huì nǐ bù yīnggāi qùde.

Since you're feeling so ill, you shouldn't go to today's meeting.

Wǒmènzǒng yǒu yitiān yào huí dàlùde.

There will come a day when we will go back to the mainland.

3. Others: sentences with certain adverbs like *yíding*, with potential resultative verbs, with the aspect marker *-guo*, etc.

Zhèxiē shū yíding xūyàode.

These books are definitely needed.

Wǒ hē kāfēi cónglái bú fàng tángde.

I never take sugar in my coffee.

Mápó Dòufu píngcháng dōu yǒu ròude.

Mápó Bean curd usually has meat in it.

Wǒmènde gōngzuō zhēnshi tài duō le, zuòbuwánde.

We really have an awful lot of work. We'll never be through with it.

Zhèige diànyǐng wǒ cóngqián kànguode.

I've seen this movie before.

Bù yào jǐnde.

It doesn't matter.

Hǎode, hǎode.

All right, all right.

- yìfāngmiàn... yìfāngmiàn...*: This has two meanings: (1) “On one hand..., on the other hand...” or “for one thing..., for another thing...” and (2) “doing... while doing...”

Zài Xiānggǎng, yìfāngmiàn nǐ yǒu jīhui hé zhōngguó rén tán huà, yìfāngmiàn kéyì zhīdao dàlùde qíngkuàng.



In Hong Kong, on the one hand you'll have a chance to talk with Chinese and on the other hand you can learn about the situation on the mainland.

Tā yīfāngmiàn kàn diànshì, yīfāngmiàn chī dōngxī.

He watches television while eating.

## Notes on №11-12

Notes on Nos. 11 and 12

yībiān(r)... yībiān(r)... and yímiàn (r)... yímiàn (r): Both of these patterns are similar to the second meaning of yīfāngmiàn... yīfāngmiàn...

Yībiān zuò yībiān xué ba.

Learn by doing (learn as you do it)!

Wǒ yībiānr tīng yībiānr xiě.

I write as I listen.

Wǒmen yībiān zǒu yībiān tán, hǎo buhǎo?

Let's talk as we walk, okay?

## Workbook

### Unit 1, Tape 1, Review Dialogue

As Tom (A) (Tāngmǔ), a graduate student in Chinese Area Studies at Georgetown University, is studying in his apartment, a knock comes at the door. It is his classmate Li Píng (B), an exchange student from Hong Kong.

### Unit 1, Tape 2 Workbook

#### Exercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese, Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

#### Exercise 2

This exercise contains a conversation in which a Chinese mother and son, who have lived in the United States for five years, discuss the possibility of his taking a summer trip to China.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely, you'll probably want to rewind the tape and answer the questions below as you listen a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

xīnshì	something weighing on one's mind
zhǎngdà	
dàxuéshēng	to grow up
gèguó	college student
gāozhōng	various countries
hǎohāor	senior high school
jìzhu	properly, carefully, thoroughly
	to remember

### Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. How does Xiao Ming's mother know that something is on his mind? How does she bring up the subject?
2. What are his classmates doing over the summer?
3. Why does he think Asian culture is interesting?
4. How does Xiao Ming's mother react to his idea?
5. What advice does she give?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

### Note

The translations used in these dialogues are meant to indicate the English functional equivalents for the Chinese sentences rather than the literal meaning of the Chinese.

### Exercise 3

In this conversation a Chinese student studying at a university in the U.S. comes home on a Friday night and finds his American roommate engrossed in his studies.

Listen to the conversation once straight through. Then, on the second time through, look below and answer the questions. Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

Wōde tiān na!

My God!

xuéshēnghuì	student association
guānxīn	to be concerned about
jìndàishǐ	modern history
xiàndài	modern
pǐchá bǐng	pizza
gǔshū	ancient books

### Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Why does the Chinese student object to his roommate studying the classics?
2. Why doesn't the American student like to talk about politics?
3. What other subjects does the Chinese student feel his roommate should become familiar with for a well-rounded education?
4. Does the American student agree? Why or why not?
5. What will the roommates do after the American student finishes his homework?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation to help you practice saying the answers which you have prepared.

### Exercise 4

In this exercise, an American university student visits her Chinese literature professor after class in his office.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then rewind the tape and listen again. On the second time through, answer the questions.

You will need the following new words and phrases:

jīdòng	to get worked up, to be agitated
liùshí niándài	the decade of the sixties
yī	as soon as
gǎibiàn	change(s)

liúxia	
	to leave

#### Questions for Exercise 4

1. Why was Professor Tang so upset in class?
2. Why did the student visit her professor?
3. What things does she bring him? Why?
4. What recent changes have there been in the state of Chinese literature?
5. What is Professor Tang's attitude about the future?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation again to help you pronounce your answers correctly.

#### Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

A mother and her son who immigrated to America from China five years ago are talking after dinner:

#### Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

Two classmates, an American (B) and a Chinese (A), share an apartment somewhere in America. The American is at home studying *Shi Ji, Records of the Historian*, a classical history. His Chinese classmate comes in the door.

#### Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

At an American university, a student (A), who has studied in Taiwan, comes to see her professor from China, Professor *Táng* (B).

## Unit 2 Equality of sexes

### Introduction

#### Grammar Topics covered in this unit

1. The uses of **biéde**, “others(s)” and **lingwài**, “other.”
2. The pattern **méi... jiù...** .
3. The pattern **yuè... yuè...** , “the more... the more ...”
4. The pattern **yuè lái yuè...** , “more and more ... .”
5. The verb ending **-xiaqu**, “to continue,” “to gon on.”
6. The prepositional verb **xiàng**, “like.”
7. The adverb **jiù**, “as soon/early as that.”

#### Functional language Contained in This Unit

1. Asking a person's views on an issue.
2. Being tactfully hesitant when asking about a delicate topic.
3. Correcting a false impression given by something you said.
4. Dismissing an idea or proposal.

## References

## Reference List

## Vocabulary

bāngzhu	帮助	help; to help
bèizi	辈子	all one's life, lifetime
dàoli	道理	principle, truth, hows and whys; reason, argument, sense
dīwei	低微	position, status
dúli	獨立	to be independent; independence
fūnǚ	夫女	woman; women, womankind
guǎn	管	to take care of; to mind, to bother about
guānniàn	观念	concept, idea, notion
jiéhūn (jiēhūn)	结婚	to get married
kào	靠	to depend on, to rely on; to lean against; to be near, to be next to
liúxíng	流行	to be common, to be popular, to be prevalent
méi yìsi	没意思	to be uninteresting, to be boring; to be pointless, to be meaningless; to be a drag; to be without value, not worthy of respect
nánnǚ	男女	men and women, male-female
piàn	片	counter for sheets, articles or pieces of writing
píngděng	平等	equality; to be equal (of people)
pínmìng	拼命	with all one's might, for all one is worth, desperately, like mad; to risk one's life, to defy death
shēnghuó	生活	life; to live; livelihood
shízài	實在	really; to be real
suàn le	算了	forget it, let's drop the matter, let it go at that; come off it, come on
tóngjū	同居	to cohabit; cohabitation
wénzhāng	文章	article, essay; prose (writing) style
xiàng	像	to be like, to resemble; like; such as
xiāngdāng	相当	quite, pretty, considerably

-xiacqu	下去	resultative ending which indicates continuing an action
xìngqu	兴趣	interest
xīnwén	新闻	news
Xīnwén Zhōukān	新闻周刊	Newsweek
xué yī	学医	to study medicine
yī	医	medical science, medicine (used in phrases like xué yī)
yīxué	医学	medical science, medicine
yìzhí	一直	all along, continuously, all the time (up until a certain point)
yǒu bāngzhu	有帮助	to be helpful
yǒu dàoli	有道理	to make sense
yǒu xìngqu	有兴趣	to be interested
yǒu yánjiū	有研究	to have done research on; to know a lot about
yuè...yuè...	越。。。越。。。	the more...the more...
yuè lái yuè...	越来越	more and more..., increasingly...
zhīshi	知识	knowledge
zhōukān	周刊	weekly publication, weekly, magazine, a "weekly"
zìyóu	宁死	freedom; to be free

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1

**zhōukān**: “weekly publication, weekly magazine“ One of the meanings for **zhōu** is “week.” (Other meanings include “cycle, circuit.”) **Kān** is a word element meaning “to print, to publish” or “a periodical, a publication.” Notice that this is a different word from the falling-tone **kàn** “to read.” Some other words using these syllables (which you will often hear, but need not learn now) are:

zhōumò	weekend
zhōubào	weekly publication, weekly
zhōukān	weekly publication
yuèkān	monthly publication
bàokān	newspapers and magazines

qīkān	periodicals
kānwù	
	publications

xiāngdāng: “quite, pretty,” as in “quite a lot” or “pretty good.” This word is not quite as positive as zhēn “really, truly,” but more so than hái, “fairly, rather” (which will be presented in Unit 4).

Tā chǎode cài xiāngdāng hǎo chǐ.	He cooks pretty well.
Zhèige zhǎnlǎnguǎn xiāngdāng bú cuò.	This exhibition hall is quite good.

yǒu yánjiū: “to have done research on, to know a lot about, to be expert on, to be knowledgeable about.” You have often seen you used with a noun, such as míng, “name,” or qián, “money,” to form a phrase which acts like an adjectival verb. You míng is “to be famous,” yǒu qián is “to be rich.” Yǒu yánjiū is just such a phrase.

As shown in sentence 1B, to say “knowledgeable ABOUT” something, use the prepositional verb duì, “towards, with regard to,” as in:

duì	...	yǒu yánjiū
with regard to	a subject of study	have research
to know a lot about (something)		

le: The marker le is used twice in the sentence above to show a new situation. This person’s French seems to have improved because NOW he knows a lot about French and can read magazines.

## Notes on №2

nánnǚ: “male and female,” used only for humans.

### Note

For animals, “male” is gōng(de) and “female” is mǔ(de), e.g., gōngniú, “bull,” mǔniú, “cow.”

Tāde gǒu shì gōngde háishi mǔde?	Is his dog a male or a female?
Yǒu rén shuō kāidào yǐhòu bù yīng-gāi chī gōngjī, yīnggāi chī mǔjī.	Some people say that after an operation one shouldn’t eat rooster; one should eat hen.

Nánnǚde shìqing zuì nán shuō.	Matters between men and women are the hardest to judge.
Wǒmen xuéxiào nánnǚ xuéshēng dōu yǒu.	There are both men and women students at our school.

Nán and nǚ may modify nouns referring to people, e.g., nǚxuéshēng, “woman student,” nǚtōngzhì, “woman comrade.”



A:	Chén Yīngmíng dào nǎr qu le?	Where did Chen Yīngmíng go?
B:	Tā hé yíge tóngxué chūqu le.	He went out with a classmate.
A:	Shi nántóngxué shi nǚtóngxué?	Was it a male classmate or a female classmate?

**Nánde** and **nǚde** are sometimes used for “man” and “woman,” but when used to refer to an individual (e.g., **nèige nánde**) they are rather impolite. When used for “men” and “women” in general or to distinguish between the sexes, they are, however, acceptable.

A:	Wǒ mǎi zhèizhǒng xíng bu xíng?	Should I buy this kind?
B:	Bù xíng, zhèi shi nánde yòngde.	No, this is for men’s use.
A:	Gāngcái yǒu yíge rén dǎ diànhuà lái zhǎo nǐ.	Just now someone telephoned for you.
B:	Shi nánde shi nǚde?	Was it a man or a woman?

**nánnǚ píngděng**: “equality of the sexes,” literally “man-woman equality.” The marriage law of May 1, 1950, established a policy in the PRC which has remained basically the same up to the present day. It forbade bigamy polygamy, and the traditional practice of adopting a young girl for the purpose of later marrying her to one’s son. It also fixed a minimum age for marriage, urged the acceptance of remarriage of widows, allowed divorce by mutual consent, and gave women the choice not to take their husband’s surname at marriage. Today, although traditional attitudes toward women and marriage persist especially in rural China, official policy has made some tangible inroads toward the goal of equality. Most importantly, men and woman are regarded as equal under the law. They receive the same schooling. They must receive equal compensation for equal work. (it is expected, however, that women doing heavy physical work are not as strong or productive as men, and so their pay will be correspondingly lower.) In addition, the leadership of communes, production teams, and unions must include special women personnel who represent the interests of women in matters of politics, finance, work, and personal relations.

**píngděng**: This word is both a noun and a verb: “to be equal; equality”

Cóngqián zài Zhōngguó nánǚ bù píngděng, xiànzài bù tóng le.	Formerly men and women were unequal in China. Now it is different.
Měiguó rén gēn Zhōngguó rén duì nánǚ píngděngde guānniàn bù tài yíyàng.	Americans and Chinese don't have all that similar an idea of equality of the sexes.

**guānniàn**: “way of thought, concept; sense (of), mentality (of)” This is a way of thinking about the larger issues of life, the way “things” (values, responsibilities, and so on) should be. One **guānniàn** is only part of a whole system of attitudes, thoughts and beliefs. In given contexts, you can sometimes translate it as an “idea” held by a person or group (but it does not mean “idea” as in “I have a good idea” [this would be **zhúyì**]).

In a society, ways of thinking come and go; people have a mixture of **xīn guānniàn**, “new ways of thought, new ideas,” and **lǎo guānniàn**, “old ways of thought, old ideas.” Ways of thinking which are no longer current are called **jiù guānniàn**, “outmoded ways of thinking.” For instance, equality of the sexes is a **xīn guānniàn**; the idea that arranged marriages are superior to marriages of free choice is

a **lǎo guānniàn**; the idea of child brides as acceptable and practical is a **jiù guānniàn**. Some **guānniàn** are considered “correct” and “good” by the majority, and some are considered “incorrect” and “bad.” **Jiāting guānniàn**, “a sense of family,” is usually considered good.

 **Note**

Other “good” concepts containing words that haven't been presented yet are **dàode guānniàn**, “sense of morality,” **zǔzhī guānniàn**, “sense of organization,” and **zhèncè guānniàn** “sense of official policy.”

“Bad” concepts have names too [for example, **sīyǒu guānniàn**, “sense of personal ownership”]. People are sometimes criticized because their such-and-such **guānniàn** is too weak or too strong, and they are told accordingly either to strengthen it or get rid of it.

<b>Měiguó rénde guānniàn gēn Zhōngguó rénde guānniàn yǒude yíyàng, yǒude bù yíyàng.</b>	Sometimes the American way of thinking and the Chinese way is the same, sometimes not.
<b>Nǐ kàn ba, zài guò jǐnián nián-qīn-grén yīnggāi wǎnliàn wǎnhūn jiù huì biànchéng<sup>a</sup> yìzhǒng guānniàn.</b>	You watch, in a few more years, it will have become an accepted idea that young people should get involved late and marry late.
<sup>a</sup> <b>wǎnliàn wǎnhūn</b> : “late involvement and late marriage” This refers to waiting until young people are in their late twenties before they become romantically involved or think of marriage.	
<b>biànchéng</b> : “to change into”	

**Notes on №3**

**-piān**: This is a counter. First, **-piān** is the counter for whole short pieces of writing, such as articles or essays. Second, **-piān** can count single sheets of paper with writing or printing on them (compare **yìzhāng zhǐ** which is a sheet of paper without regard to what is on it). Third, **-piān(r)** by itself means a leaf of a book; that is, **yìpiān(r)** equals both sides of one page.

**wénzhāng**: (1) “a writing, literary composition, article, essay” (counter: **-piān**); (2) “prose style,” as in

<b>Tāde wénzhāng bú cuò.</b>	His (prose) writing is very good.
------------------------------	-----------------------------------

**Bú shì zhèige yìsi**: “That wasn’t what I meant,” or more literally, “Not that meaning (the one you just said).”

**jiù shì...: Jiù** here means “merely, only, just.”

**chánglē yidiǎnr**: “a little bit too long.” The marker **le** following an adjectival verb, such as “to be long” can mean either:

1. new situation, the article is now a bit long, or
2. excessive degree, the article is a bit too long. You’ve seen the second meaning in sentences such as **Tài hǎo le**, “That’s wonderful.” Sentence 3B tells you that the speaker feels the article is overly long.

**biéde**: “other, others” Distinguish in Chinese between **biéde**, “others in general,” and **lingwài**, “another” or “the other.” Use **biéde** when you are not specifying “which others.” Use **lingwài** + Number + Counter when you refer to a certain “other” or certain “others.” Contrast this pair of sentences:

<b>Nǐ hái yào kàn biéde ma?</b>	Would you like to look at some other ones? (UNSPECIFIED OTHERS)
---------------------------------	---

Nǐ hái yào kàn lingwài yíge ma?	Would you like to see the other one, too? (A CERTAIN ONE—"THE" OTHER)
---------------------------------	--

Contrast also:

Zhèiběnr zidiǎn bù hǎo, wǒ yào lingwài yíběnr.	This dictionary is no good. I want the other one. (A CERTAIN OTHER ONE—e.g., the other one which the sales clerk showed you)
Zhèiběnr zidiǎn bù hǎo, wǒ yào biéde.	This dictionary is no good. I want another. (UNSPECIFIED—e.g., you don't know whether the store has any others, but you would like to see some)

Other examples:

Tāmen liǎngge rén, yíge shì wǒ gēge, lingwài yíge shì wǒ péngyou.	Of those two, one is my older brother, and the other is my friend. (A CERTAIN OTHER—"THE" OTHER)
Wǒmen zhèixiē rén libiānr, chùle wǒ dào Xiānggǎng qù yǐwài, biéde rén dōu dào Táiwān qù.	Of those of us here, only I am going to Hong Kong; all the others are going to Taiwan. (UNSPECIFIED—ANY AND ALL OTHERS IN THE GROUP)
Zuótiān láide rén, wǒ zhǐ rènshi Táng Huiyīng, lingwài sānge rén wǒ dōu bù rènshi.	Of the people who came yesterday, I only know Tang Huiying. I don't know any of the other three. (CERTAIN OTHERS—"THE" OTHER ONES)

If you do not specify the set of things you are talking about, **biéde** tends to mean any others in the whole world:

Wǒmen zhǐ yǒu zhèiyíběn, méiyǒu biéde.	We only don't have this one volume. We have any others.
Wǒmen xūyào biéde shū.	We need (an)other book(s).

This last sentence you want to change supplement the one can mean either

1. the content of the book(s) is bad and to another book entirely, or
2. you need other books to you are using.

**hái...biéde**: Now that you have seen how to say "other" in Chinese, you should note that the words **lingwài** and **biéde** are often used in combination with certain adverbs meaning "additionally" or "again": **hái**, **zài**, and **yǒu**. For now, concentrate on **hái**. As used in sentence 3B, it means literally "in addition to what has come before."

Tā hái yào biéde.	He wants more of them.
Tā hái zuòle biéde cài.	He made other dishes as well.
Nǐ hái zhīdao biéde hao fānguānr ma?	Do you know any other good restaurants?

**shénme**: “any” The meaning of **shénme** is changed from “what” to “any” by the question word **ma** at the end of the sentence. (Without **ma**, the sentence would mean, “What other articles do you have?”)

Ní yào shénme?	What do you want?
Ní yào shénme ma?	
Ní dōu zhīdao shénme hǎo fānguǎnr?	What good restaurants do you know?
Ní zhīdao shénme hǎo fānguǎnr ma?	

### Notes on №4

**jiéhūn**: “to get married” Also pronounced **jiēhūn**. **Jiéhūn** is a process verb, not a state verb. It is often seen with an aspect marker such as **le**, or negated with **méi**.

Tāmen jiéhūnle méiyóu?	Have they gotten married yet? (This is the equivalent of “Are they married?”)
Tāmen méi jiéhūn.	
Tāmen bù jiéhūn.	They are not going to get married.
Nī jiéhūn duo jiǔ le?	

**Jiéhūn** is a verb-object compound, literally meaning “to knot marriage.”

**Jié** and **hūn** can be separated by aspect markers, such as **-de** or **-guo**.

Nī shì shénme shíhou jiéde hūn?	When did you get married?
Nī shì shénme shíhou jiéhūnde?	
Liú Xiānsheng jiéguo sāncì hūn.	Mr. Liú has been married three times.

To say “get married TO SOMEONE” use the pattern **gēn... jiéhūn** or **hé... Jiéhūn**.

Tā gēn shéi jiéhūn le?	To whom did he get married?

**yizhí**: “all along, continuously, always” You have seen **yizhí**, “straight,” used to refer to direction, as in **yizhí zǒu**. Here **yizhí** is used to refer to time.

Wǒmen yizhí zài zhèlì gōngzuò.	We’ve always worked here.

Tā yìzhí zài Táidà niàn shū.	He studied all along at Taiwan University.

**Yìzhí** can be used with reference to a phrase telling of a period of time (**sānnián**, “three years,” or **jiéhūn yǐqián**, “before getting married”) to say “all during (that time).”

Yù yìzhí xiàle sāntiān.	It rained for three days straight.

Often the time phrase and **yìzhí** are followed by **dōu**.

Tā wǔtiān yìzhí dōu méi xiūxi.	He didn’t rest for five days on end.

**wō méi jiéhūn jiù líkāi jiā...**: This might look like “I didn’t get married and left home,” but is actually “when I wasn’t yet married, I already left home.” The order of events is made explicit by **méi...** (hadn’t yet...) and **jiù...** (already...).

Tā méi xué siwǔge yuè Yīng-wén Jiù shuōde bú cuò le.	Before he had studied even three or four months of English, he could speak it pretty well.
Tā bìng méi hǎo jiù lái shàng bān le.	She came back to work before she had recovered from her illness.
Wǒ gào su nǐ méi jǐtiān, nǐ yòu wàng le.	I told you just a few days ago and you’ve forgotten again.
Méi duō jiǔ, tā jiù shuìzháo le.	He fell asleep before long.
Yù xiàle méi duō jiǔ jiù tíng le.	It hadn’t rained long when it stopped.

**dúli**: “to be independent, to be on one’s own; independence,” literally “singly stand.”

Měiguó shì yīqīqiūliùnián dúlide.	America became independent in 1776.
Zuìjìn jǐnián yǒu jǐge xīn dúlide guójiā.	There have been several newly independent countries in the last few years.
Nèige háizi hěn xǐhuan dúli shēnghuó, tā zài zhōngxuéde shíhòu yǐjīng kāishǐ gōngzuò le.	That child really likes to be independent. He started to work when he was in high school.
Tā zhème dà, jīngjī hái méiyǒu dúli.	He’s so old and still not economically independent.

**shēnghuó**: “to live; life; livelihood” **Shēng-** is stressed and **-huó** is unstressed or neutral tone. A **zài** phrase may come either before or after the verb **shēnghuó**.

Xióngmāo chàbuduō dōu shēnghuó zài gāoshānshang. <sup>a</sup>	Almost all panda bears live in the high mountains.
Tā zài shēnghuoshang duì wǒ hěn zhàogu.	She takes good care of me in my daily life.

Tā xiǎo shíhou shēnghuó qíngxìng hěn bù hǎo.

When he was a child, he lived in very bad circumstances.

<sup>a</sup>According to those pandas who answered our surveys...

## Notes on №5

**tóngjū**: “to live together, to cohabit” **Jū** is a literary word for “to live.” Although some dictionaries define **tóngjū** simply as “to live together,” giving examples such as an uncle and nephew living together, **tóngjū** almost always implies sexual relations. It may even be used to describe romances of shorter durations, whether or not a household was set up. You'll notice that in some dialogues in this unit, the speakers prefer the phrase **nánnǚ tóngjū** in order to be explicit.

**xīnwén**: “news” This is the word for “news” as in “the evening news,” “the news in the paper today,” “official news.” It is not the word for news between friends, unless one is joking about the importance of what is about to be said. [The word for news between people is **xiāoxi**, “tidings,” (MBD, Unit 5) which has a second meaning of “official news.”]

Nǐ kàn diànshì xīnwén le ma?	Did you see the television news?
Jīntiān bàoshangde xīnwén hěn yǒu yìsi, yīnggāi hǎohāor kànkàn.	The news in the paper today is very interesting; you should read it carefully.
A: Jīntiān tā gàosu wǒ yíge xīnwén, shuō Xiǎo Wáng hé Xiǎo Lǐ “Shíyī” jiéhūn.	Today she told me some real news. She said that <b>Xiǎo Wang</b> and <b>Xiǎo Li</b> are getting married on October 1 (National Day).
B: Zhēnde? Zhèi zhēn shì ge dà xīnwén.	Really? Boy, that really is big news.

**suàn le**: “Forget it.” **Suàn** is the verb “to calculate, to figure, to compute.” The idiom **suàn le** is translated as “let it be,” “let it pass,” “drop the matter,” “let it go at that.”

Suàn le, bú yào zài wèn tā le.	Forget it, don't ask him about it any more.
Ràng tā zìjǐ bàn, jiù suàn le.	Let him do it himself, and the heck with it.
A: Zánmen chūqu chī fàn ba?	How about going out to eat?
B: Wǒ jiù xiǎng zài jiālǐ suǐbiàn chī yídiǎnr suàn le.	I just want to eat a little bit at home and leave it at that.
Dōu gěi nǐ, suàn le.	Go ahead and take them all.
Nǐ yào qù jiù qù, bú qù jiù suàn le.	If you want to go, then go. If you don't want to go, then forget it.

## Notes on №6

**nǐ jiějie yīxué fāngmiànde shū**: “your sister's medical books” To say just “your sister's books” you put a **-de** on **jiějie**: **Nǐ jiějiède shū**. But **-de** is not used after **jiějie** in 6A. This is because of the modifying

phrase **yīxué fāngmiànde**, which ends in **-de**. To have two **-de** phrases in a row before a noun is often considered stylistically bad; the way to get around it is to keep only the last **-de**. Other examples:

Běijīng	de	zuì hǎo	de	fànguǎnr
Zhōu Xiānsheng	de	tàitai	de	péngyou

**yuè lái yuè duō le**: “more and more...” The pattern **yuè...yuè...** is used to express the idea “the more... the more...” Fill in the blanks with verbs (state or action).

yuè duō	yuè hǎo
“the more the better”	

yuè kàn	yuè bù dòng
“the more one reads, the more confused one gets”	

Péngyou yuè duō yuè hǎo.	The more friends you have, the better.
Dìtú yuè dà yuè qīngchū.	The larger a map is, the clearer it is.
Tā bù xǐhuan qǐng kè, juéde kèren yuè duō yuè máfan.	She doesn't like to invite guests; she feels that the more guests there are, the more trouble it is.
Wǒ yuè xiǎng yuè pà.	The more I thought about it, the more frightened I got.
Tā yuè shuō yuè shēngqì.	The more he talked, the madder he got.
Nèipiān wénzhāng xiěde hěn bu qīngchū, nǐ yuè kàn yuè bù dòng.	The article is very unclear. The more you read it, the less you understand.

When the verb **lái** is used in the first blank of this pattern, the whole phrase expresses the idea of “increasingly...” or “...-er and ...-er”:

yuè lái	yuè gāo
“to become taller and taller”	

Huángg Tàitai de nǚer yuè lái yuè piàoliang le.	Mrs. Huáng's daughter is getting prettier all the time.
Dōngxi yuè lái yuè guì le.	Things are getting more and more expensive.

**zài**: **Zài** is the marker of ongoing action which you learned in the Meeting module, Unit 2: **Tā xiànzài zài kāi huì**, “She is attending a meeting now.” Note that **zài** is used in sentence 6B even though the

action of studying is not necessarily going on at this very second, but only at intervals. She might not be studying right when this sentence is said, but she still is going to medical school. Likewise, if you are in the middle of a novel, you can say **Wǒ zài kàn yìběn xiǎoshuō** even if you have put it aside for a day or two.

**zài...ne**: Sentences with **zài**, the marker of ongoing action, often end in **ne**, the marker of absence of change or lack of completion. (See Unit 2 of the Transportation module and Unit 4 of this module.)

**pīnmìng**: “exerting the utmost strength, with all one’s might, for all one is worth, desperately, like mad” **Pīnmìng** means literally “to risk one’s life” or “to defy death.” One translation which captures the spirit of **pīnmìng** is “knocking oneself out.”

Shìqǐng tài duō, tā pīn-míngde zuò yě zuòbuwán.	There’s too much to do. She’s working like mad and still won’t be able to finish.
Xiǎoháir yí kànjian lǎoshǔ jiù pīnmìng pǎo huí jiā qu le.	As soon as the child saw the rat, he ran like mad for home.

### Notes on №7

**shízài**: “really, indeed, honestly; to be true to be real” This is an adjectival verb which is most often used as an adverb meaning “really, actually.”

Tā shízài yònggōng, měitiān wǎnshang niàn hǎo jǐge zhōngtóu Yīngwén.	He is really industrious; every night he studies several hours of English.
Wǒ shízài bù zhīdào.	I really (OR honestly) don’t know.
Wǒ shízài gàosu nǐ ba, wǒ bù xiǎng qù.	I’ll tell you the truth: I don’t want to go.
Yàoshi nǐ shízài méi bànfa, nà jiù suàn le.	If you really can’t do it, then Just forget it.

**Shízài** can also be used in speaking of people; when so used it carries the connotation of dependability.

Tā zhèige rén hěn shízài.	He is very sincere and dependable.
---------------------------	------------------------------------

**méi yìsi**: This phrase, meaning literally “has no meaning,” has an abundance of uses:

1. uninteresting, boring;

Zhèiběn shū zhēn méi yìsi.	This book is really boring.
Wǒ kàn nǐ bú bì qù nèige dìfang, méi shenme yìsi.	I don’t think you need to go there. It’s not particularly fun (interesting)

2. pointless, meaningless;



Jīntiān kāi huì, shénme dōu méi zuò, zhēn méi yìsi.	We didn't get anything done at to- day's meeting. How pointless.
Tā bù dòng, zài jiǎng yě méi yìsi.	He doesn't understand. It's point- less to try to explain it any more.
Tā bú zài, zánmen qù yě méi yìsi, shénme dōu bù néng zuò.	Since he's not there, it would be pointless for us to go. We wouldn't be able to do anything.

3. to be a drag;

Tā zài Měiguó, tā àiren zài Déguó, zhēn méi yìsi.	He's in America and his love is in Germany. What a drag!
--	---

4. without value, not worthy of respect, cheap.

Zài tā bèihōu shuō zhèiyán- grde huà, zhēn méi yìsi!	Talking like that behind her back is really low.
---	--

**tīngxiaqu**: “to go on listening” You’ve seen the action verb **tīng**, “to listen” and the directional ending **-xiaqu** “to go down” before. Here **xiaqu** is not used as a directional ending, but rather a resultative ending “to continue, to go on.” As a resultative verb, **tīngxiaqu** may take **de** and **bu** as middle syllables to make verbs which say “can” and “cannot.”

Zhèiběn shū tài méi yìsi, wǒ kànbuxiàqu le.	This book is too boring. I can't read on.
Nǐ shuōde duì, jiǎngxiaqu.	That's right. Go on (speaking).
A: Gàosu wo, hòulái zěnmē le?	Tell me, what happens later?
B: Gàosu nǐ méi yìsi. Nǐ kànxiaqu jiù huì zhīdao le.	It would be no fun to tell you. Go on reading and you'll find out.
Shuōxiaqu a, women dōu ài tīng.	Go on talking. We all love to listen.
Nǐ zhèiyang děngxiaqu zěnmē xíng ne?	How can you go on waiting like this?

**yǒu xìngqu**: “to be interested” Use the prepositional verb **duì** to say what you are interested in.

Wǒ duì nèijiàn shì yìdiǎnr xìngqu yě méiyǒu.	I have no interest at all in that matter.
Nǐ duì shénmeyàngrde shū zuì yǒu xìngqu?	What kind of books are you most interested in?

## Notes on №8

**xiàng**: “to be similar to, to resemble” **Xiàng** may be used as a full verb or as a prepositional verb. Here it is a full verb:

Tā xiàng fùqin, bú xiàng mǔqin.	He resembles his father, not his mother.
---------------------------------	--

As a prepositional verb, **xiàng** is used in making comparisons. Notice the similarity of the word order between comparison sentences with **xiàng** and those with you and **gēn**.<sup>1</sup>

Tā xiàng tā gēge nàme cōngming.	She's as intelligent as her brother.
Nǐ yǒu tā nàme gāo.	You're as tall as he is.
Nǐ gēn tā yíyàng gāo.	You're the same height as he.

Comparison sentences with **xiàng** must have either **yíyàng**, **zhème** (**zènme**), or name before the main verb. **Xiàng** makes rather imprecise comparisons; its original meaning is, after all, “resemble” or “like,” not exact equality.

Nǐ xiàng wǒ zhème ná kuàizi.	You hold chopsticks like I do.
Xiàng huà nàme hǎokàn.	(It's) as beautiful as a painting.
Zhèiliǎngtiānde tiānqi xiàng chūntian nàme shūfu.	The weather the past couple of days has been as nice as spring.
Tāde yǎnjing xiàng hǎishuǐ yíyàng lán.	Her eyes are as blue as sea water.

The negative **bù** comes before the prepositional verb **xiàng**.

Tā bú xiàng tā mèimei nàme cōngming.	He's not as intelligent as his little sister.
Nèi shíhou shēnghuó bú xiàng xiànzài zhème hǎo.	Life was not as good then as it is now.

**Xiàng...zhèiyang**: **Zhèiyang(r)** or **nèiyang(r)** are sometimes used after a noun or pronoun in phrases with **xiàng**, for example:

xiàng tā zhèiyangde rén	people like him (lit., “like him this kind of people“œ)
-------------------------	--

<sup>1</sup>**Yǒu**, as used in the second example above, can be thought as meaning “comes up to (a certain level).” **Gēn**, which is usually used with **yíyàng** as in the example just cited, connotes exact comparison, so when your sentence compares concrete, measurable qualities like height or weight, it is usually better to use ...**gēn**... **yíyàng**... For example, **Nǐ gēn tā yíyàng gāo** states explicitly that you are the same height as he, so it would be inappropriate to use **xiàng** here.

xiàng Wang Jiàoshòu zhèiyangde	teachers like Professor Wang (lit., <b>lǎoshī</b> “like Professor Wang this kind of teachers”)
--------------------------------	---

In such sentences, the **zhèiyang(r)** or **nèiyang(r)** are hard to translate into smooth English. It is usually best to leave those words out of the translation.

Měitiān dōu xiàng jīntiān zhèiyang jiù shūfu le.	If every day were like to-day, we would have it easy.
Běijīng kǎo yā zhèiyangde cài, tiāntiān chī tài guì le.	It would be too expensive to eat dishes like <b>Běijīng</b> roast duck every day.

### Notes on №9

**Jiù:** The adverb **jiù** is often used after expressions of time, and stresses that the time when the event happens is comparatively prompt, soon, or early. The English translations may vary; this use of **jiù** has the flavor of “as soon as that” or “as early as that,” but it can also be conveyed in English simply by putting extra stress on the time expression. For example, “He’s coming TODAY.” (**Tā jīntiān jiu lái.**). When used this way, **jiù** is always unstressed or neutral tone.

As in sentence 9A, new-situation **le** is often (but not always) used at the end of a sentence in connection with the adverb **jiù**.

Nǐde yīfu yìhauǐr jiù xǐhǎo le.	Your clothes will be all washed in Just a while (that soon).
Míngtiān wǒ jiù yǒu gōngfu, kéyì qù le.	I’ll have time to go tomorrow (that soon).
Nǐ zài děng yìhuǐr, yìdiǎnzhōng jiù yǒu dìxià huǒchē le.	Wait a while longer, there will be a subway train at one o’clock (that soon).
Jīntiān zǎoshang wǒ wùdiǎn zhōng jiù qǐlai le.	I got up at five this morning (that early).

**kào:** This verb has several commonly used meanings:

1. to lean against, to lay back on,
2. to depend/rely on, and
3. to be near/next to.

Bié kào chēmén.	Don’t lean against the door of the car.
Wǒde Yīngwén bù hǎo, xiě wénzhāng wánquán kào zìdiǎn.	My English isn’t good. When I write essays, I depend completely on a dictionary.
Tā zǒngshì kào zài chuángshang kàn shū.	He’s always laying back in bed reading.
Mài’āmi shì yíge kào hǎide chéngshì.	Miami is a city on the sea.

guǎn: “to tend/take care of/look after/manage/run/be in charge of”

Nǐmen liǎngge chūqu wánr, shéi guǎn háiizi?	If you two go out (for fun), who'll look after the kids?
Lǐ Xuěméi guǎn jiā guǎnde hǎo.	Lǐ Xuěméi runs the house very well.
Liú Xiānsheng shi guǎn kǎoshìde.	Mr. Liú is in charge of testing.

Another meaning is “to care, to bother about, to concern oneself with.”

Tā bù xǐhuan guǎn biérénde shì.	He doesn't like to mind others' business.
Wǒ yào zuò shénme, wǒ zìjǐ zhīdao, nǐ shǎo guǎn wǒde shì, hǎo bu hǎo?	I know what I want to do, would you please not interfere with my affairs so much! (IMPOLITE)
Wǒ bù guǎn, suíbiàn nǐ.	I don't care. Whatever you like.

The ending -zháo, “succeed (in connecting with or touching),” can also be used with guǎn. Guǎnbuzháo means “can be no concern of..., to be none of one's business.”

Zhèi shì wǒmen zìjǐde shì, nǐmen guǎnbuzháo.	This is our own affair; it's none of your business.
--	---

The colloquial Guǎn ta (ne)! expresses brusque dismissal: “Who cares about him!” or “Who cares about that!”

A: Nǐ jīntiān wǎnshàng rúguǒ bú qù, tā huì hěn bu gāoxìng.	If you don't go tonight he'll be very unhappy.
B: Guǎn ta ne! Wǒ yào niàn shū, méi shíjiān qù.	Who gives a damn about him! I've got to study; I don't have time to go.

zìjǐ. .zìjǐ: “oneself” Use the pronoun wǒ for “I, me, my, mine,” but use zìjǐ or wǒ zìjǐ for “myself.” Depending on the context, zìjǐ can mean “myself, yourself, him/herself, ourselves, themselves.” Sometimes zìjǐ is used twice in the same clause, as in sentence 9B.

chuáng: “bed

kǎoshì: “test, exam; testing”

Wǒ bù xǐhuan wǒ zìjǐ.	I don't like myself, (as said by a confused teenager)
Nǐ bù xiǎo le, yīnggāi zhīdao <sup>a</sup> zìjǐ zhàogu zìjǐ.	You're not a child anymore; you should know how to take care of yourself.
Nǐ bú yào zìjǐ gěi zìjǐ zhǎo máfan.	Don't go asking for trouble for yourself.
Tā zhèiyàng zuò, zìjǐ piàn zìjǐ. <sup>b</sup>	By doing this, he's only fooling himself.

<sup>a</sup>zhàogu: “to take care of, to care for”  
<sup>b</sup>piàn: “to fool, to deceive”

### Notes on №10 through 12

**liúxíng**: “to be popular, prevalent, current, widespread, common. This is an adjectival verb. Make it negative with **bù**.”

Zhèzhǒng huà xiànzài hěn liúxíng, kěshì wǒ xiǎng zhè huà bú tài duì.	This kind of talk is very popular these days, but I don't think it's very true.
Xiànzài chuān duǎn qúnzi bù liúxíng le.	It's not popular to wear long skirts anymore.

You can also use **liúxíng** with a phrase following it to mean “to be popular to (do something).”

Xiànzài liúxíng chuān cháng qúnzi.	It is popular to wear long skirts now.
Zài hěn duō dìfang, yuè lái yuè liúxíng nánǚ tóngjū le.	In a lot of places, it is getting more and more common for men and women to live together.

**Liúxíng** is also used in compound nouns, such as **liúxíngbìng**, “epidemic.”

Zhè yīge xīngqī yǒu liúxíngbìng, nǐmen jiāde háizi zuì hǎo bié chū men.	This past week there has been an epidemic; it would be best if your children didn't go out.
---	---

**dìwei**: “position, place or status (in an organization or society)”

Tāde dìwei hěn gāo.	He has a very high position.
Nǐ cái gōngzuòle shíjinián jiù yǒule jīntiānde dìwei hěn bù róngyi.	Having worked only ten or so years, it wasn't easy to get the position you have today.
Tāmen yào yǒu dúlide jīngjì hé shèhuì dìwei.	They want independent economic and social status.

yǒu zhīshi	“to be knowledgeable,” literally “to have knowledge”
yǒu dào lǐ	“to make sense,” literally “to have reason”
yǒu bāngzhū	“to be helpful,” literally “to have help”

Here you see three more examples of how you, “to exist, to have,” and a noun can be used to make an adjectival verb. Sometimes the meaning of the resulting phrase is more than just the sum of its parts.

**Yǒu xìngqu** is “to be interested (in something),” while **yǒu yìsi** is “to be interesting.” Here are some of the others you have already learned.

<b>yǒu guānxi</b>	to be related to	<b>yǒu míng</b>	to be famous
<b>yǒu yánjiū</b>	to be expert	<b>yǒu yòng</b>	to be useful

### Notes on №13 through 16

**-bèizi**: This word is usually used with **yī-**, as in

<b>Wǒ gōngzuòle yībèizi, xiànzài liùshisuì le, kéyǐ xiūxiu le.</b>	I’ve worked all my life and am now sixty years old. I can take a little rest now.
<b>Jiéhūn shì yībèizide shì, děi hǎohāor xiǎngxiang.</b>	Marriage is a lifetime thing; you should think it over carefully.

**fùnǚ**: In Taiwan, a **fùnǚ** is generally a married woman, but in PRC usage the word has no connotations about marital status. **Fùnǚ** is also used in a collective sense, “women” or “womankind.”

### Unit 2, Tape 1, Review Dialogue

At the entrance to Lauinger Library at Georgetown University, **Lǐ Píng** (B) encounters Tom (A).

## Unit 3 Family Values

### Introduction

#### Grammar Topics covered in this unit

1. The verb ending **-qilai** showing the start of an action or condition.
2. The pattern (**méi**)you **shénme** (Adjectival Verb).
3. **Cónglái bù/méi**, “never.”
4. The adverb **cái**, “only,” before amounts.
5. The marker **-zhe** showing the manner of an action.
6. The verb ending **-dào** for
  - a. successful reaching/obtaining/finding,
  - b. “of,” “about” (with certain verbs),
  - c. successful perceiving (e.g., **kàndào**, “to see”).
7. The adverb **zài**, “anymore.”
8. Placement of phrases with the prepositional verb **dào**, “to,” “up to,” “until.”
9. The use of **suǒyǒude**, “all.”

#### Functional Language Contained in This Unit

1. Narrating a brief story about a person.
2. Expressing approval and disapproval of someone’s attitude or way of thinking.
3. Expressing puzzlement at a situation.
4. Stressing how understandable a situation is.

## References

### Reference List


### Vocabulary

báitiān	白天	daytime
biàn	变	to change, to become different
biànchéng	变成	to turn into, to become
cái	才	only (before an amount)
-chéng	成	into
chībuxiàqù	吃不下去	cannot eat (cannot get down)
cónglái	从来	ever (up till now), always (up till now)
cónglái bù/méi	从来不/没	never
dào	到	resultative ending used for perception by one of the senses: Jiàndao, kàndao, tīngdao, etc.
dào	到	resultative ending used to indicate reaching: xiǎngdao, shuōdao, tándao, etc. , often translated as «about»
děng dào	等到	to wait until; when, by the time
hēiyè	黑夜	(darkness of) night, nighttime
jiǎng	讲	to stress, to pay attention to, to be particular about
jiā tíng	家庭	family
kàndao	看到	to see
kū	哭	to cry
liáo	聊	to chat
liáo tiān(r)	聊天 (儿)	to chat
ma	嘛	marker of obviousness of reasoning
nánshòu	难受	to be uncomfortable; to feel bad, to feel unhappy
nòng (nèng)	弄	to do; to fool with; to get
nònglai	弄来	to get and bring



qíguài	奇怪	to be strange, to be odd, to be surprising
-qilai	-起来	resultative ending which indicates starting
rèxīn	热心	to be enthusiastic and interested; to be warmhearted; to be earnest
rèxīnqilai	热心起来	to become enthusiastic and interested
shuōdao	说道	to speak of; as for
suǒyǒude...dōu	所有的。。。都	all
xiǎngdào	想到	to think of
xiàoshùn	孝顺	to be filial; filial obedience
-xiaqu	下去	down (directional ending used for eating or drinking down)
xīn	心	heart; mind
-yì	亿	hundred million
yī tiān dào wǎn	一天到晚	all day long
yònggōng	用功	to be industrious, to be hardworking (in one's studies)
yǒu yòng	有用	to be useful
zhǎng	长	to grow
zhǎngdà	长大	to grow up
zhòng nán qīng nǚ	重男轻女	to regard males as superior to females
zhuàn qián	赚钱	to earn money, to make money
zuìjìn	最近	recently; soon
zuò	作	to be, to act as

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1

**rèxīn**: “to be enthusiastic and interested; to be warmhearted, to be earnest” There are two meanings for this adjectival verb. It can be used to describe a positive feeling toward a cause or issue, or to describe warm feelings toward other people.

Like many adjectival verbs, **rèxīn** may be used either as a main verb or as an adverb (that is, modifying another verb).

As main verb

Tā duì xué Zhongwén hěn rèxīn.	He's very enthusiastic about studying Chinese.
Tā duì rén hěn rèxīn, shénme shíhou dōu xǐhuan bāng rén máng.	He's very warmhearted towards people. He always likes to help people out.

As an adverb

Tā hěn rèxīn yánjiū dàlùde qíngkuāng.	She studies the mainland situation very enthusiastically.
Hǎo hāizi, nǐ zènme rèxīn bāngzhu biérén, hěn hǎo.	Good child. It's good that you're so eager to help others.

**-qilai:** As a verb by itself, **qilai** means “to rise up.” As part of a compound verb, **-qilai** has several different functions. First, it can be a directional or resultative ending meaning “go up, rise up (physically)”:

Tā zhànqilai le.	He stood up.
Tā tiàoqilai le. <sup>a</sup>	She jumped up.
Zhèige zhuōzi wǒmen táibuqilái, nǐ lái bāngbang máng hǎo bu hǎo?	We can't lift this table up. Come and help us, okay?

<sup>a</sup>tiào, “to jump, to leap”

In addition to meaning literally “to go up,” **-qilai** can be used to tell something about the aspect of the verb: to show “the start of the action or condition.” In the example in the Reference List above, **-qilai** indicates that older sister's enthusiasm has newly started up. Other examples:

WITH AN ACTION VERB	
Háizi kūqilai le.	The child began (has begun) to cry.
WITH AN ADJECTIVAL VERB	
Tiānqi rèqilai le.	The weather has warmed up.

As with many other compound verbs, the object of the verb may be inserted between the two parts of the verb ending:

Bù zhīdào wèishénme, tā xiànzài hēqi jiǔ lai le.	I don't know why, but he has started to drink now.
Wǒ liùge yuè méi xiǎngguo jiā, kěshì jīntiān xiǎngqi jiā lai le.	I haven't thought of home for six months, but today I started to feel homesick.

Another function of the ending **-qilai** is to make generalized statements which are sometimes translated using “when ...ing,” or “when it comes to ...ing”:

Zhèige yǐzide yàngzi hěn hǎo kàn, kěshì zuòqilai bù shūfu.	This kind of chair is very attractive, but when you sit in it, it's uncomfortable.
Tā shuōqi Zhōngwén lai zhēn nántīng.	It sounds terrible when he speaks Chinese.

Zuòqì shì lái, tā bǐ shéi dōu kuài.	When it comes to working, he is faster than anyone else.
Shuōqilai róngyì, zuòqilai nán.	
	It's easy to talk about, but hard to do.

When *-qilai* is used this way with verbs of perception, the additional meaning of “it seems” is communicated:

Kànqilai tā zhīdao zhèijian shì.	It looks as if he knows about this matter.
Tā kànqilai hěn niánqīng.	He looks very young.
Tīngqilai hěn yǒu dàoǐ.	It sounds reasonable.

*-Qilai* is also used in several idiomatic expressions where its meaning is harder to pinpoint, e.g., *xiǎngqilai*, “to think of, to remember,” where *-qilai* seems to indicate the coming “up” into consciousness of an idea.

Wǒ xiǎngqilai le, tā xìng Mài.	Now I remember, his surname is Mài.

*qíguài*: “to be strange, to be surprising, to be odd”

Zhēn qíguài, tā tiāntiān lái, jīntiān zěnme méi lái ne?	How strange. He comes every day. How is it he didn't come today?
Nèige shíhou, shénme qíguàide shì dōu yǒu, bié shuō le.	Back then, there were all kinds of strange things; don't talk about it any more.
Tāmende guānxi wǒ juéde hěn qíguài.	I find their relationship very strange.

In colloquial style, the verb *qíguài* is also used to mean “to find it strange that..., can't understand(why)..., can't imagine (how)...,” e.g.,

Wǒ zhēn qíguài tā wèishenme yào zěnmē zuò.	I really can't understand why he wanted (OR wants) to do that.
Wǒ zhēn qíguài zhèijian shì tā zěnmē kényi bàndedào.	I really can't imagine how he can (OR could) do it.

*Zhèi méiyǒu shénme qíguài*: “There's nothing strange about that.” *Yǒu shénme* is used before an adjectival verb, as in

yǒu shénme	hǎo?
méiyǒu shénme	hǎo.

yǒu shénme	bú duì?
A: Tā duì Zhōngguóde qíngkuàng zhīdaode bù shǎo.	
He knows so much about China!	
B: Nà yǒu shénme qíguài, tā zài Zhōngguó zhùguo shínián.	
What's strange about that, he lived in China for ten years!	

## Notes on №2

**nánshòu**: “to feel uncomfortable; to feel bad, to feel unhappy,” literally, “to find something hard to bear” This adjectival verb can be used to describe physical aches and pains, or emotional ones.

Zài fēijīshàng zuòle èrshíge xiǎoshí, tài nánshòu le!
Twenty hours on an airplane. How uncomfortable!
Zhēn ràng rén nánshòu.
It really makes one feel bad.
Zánmen dōu shì zuò yīshēngde, kànjian bìngren <sup>a</sup> méi yào chī, zhēn nánshòu.
We're both in medicine; seeing sick people without medicine to take was really upsetting.
<sup>a</sup> bingren: “sick person, patient”

To make it clear you are talking about sadness and not a physical pain, you can use the phrase **xīnlǐ hěn nánshòu** (**xīn**, No. 13 on this reference list, being the equivalent of either the heart or mind in such instances).

Tīngdào le zhèiyàngde huà, tā xīnlǐ hěn nánshòu.
He was very sad after hearing that kind of talk.

**chībuxiàqù**: “unable to eat (it all) up” Here you see an example of **-xiàqù** used for its meaning as a directional ending. While in English we might say “eat it UP,” the Chinese, more analytically, say “eat it down.” Using the verb **hē**, “to drink,” you can also say **hēxiàqu**, “to drink down.” The meaning of **chīxiàqu** and **hēxiàqu** might be better conveyed as “to take in” or “to get down” food or drink; you use these verbs when you want to stress getting food or drink down into the stomach, rather than just the action of eating.

As a resultative verb, **chīxiàqu** and **hēxiàqu** may take **-de-** or **-bu-** as a middle syllable for the additional meaning of “can” or “cannot.” In **chīdexiàqù/chībuxiàqù** and **hēdexiàqù/hēbuxiàqù**, the syllables **-xià** and **-qù** are still somewhat stressed (you can still hear their falling tones), whereas they are unstressed and often neutral tone in the words **chīxiàqu** and **hēxiàqu**.

chīdexiàqù	able to eat it down
chībuxiàqù	unable to eat it down

méi chīxiaqu	didn't eat it down
chīxiaqu le	ate it down

Wǒ chīde tài bǎo le, chībuxiàqù le.
I'm too full, I can't eat any more.
Zhèige yào chīxiaqu jiù huì hǎo le.
You'll feel better after you take this medicine.
-A: Zhèige yào zhēn kǔ, wǒ hēbuxiàqù.
This medicine is really bitter. I can't get it down.
-B: Méiyǒu guānxi, kuài diǎnr hēxiaqu jiù kényi le.
Sure you can. Just drink it down real fast.

**nòng**: This is a very common verb with several especially useful meanings. First of all it means “to do, to make” in a broad, vague sense:

Zánmen kāishǐ nòng fàn, hǎo bu hǎo?
Let's start to make dinner, okay?
Tā bù zhīdào zěnmē nòngle hǎoduō qián.
Somehow he made himself a lot of money.
Wǒ xiǎng nǐ bú bì guǎn zhèjiàn shì, nòngde bù hǎo dōu shì nǐde cuò.
I don't think you should try to take charge of this. If you handled it badly it would be all your fault.
Shìqing yuè nòng yuè dà, zhēn bù zhīdào zěnmē bàn cái hǎo.
This matter is getting blown up bigger and bigger. I really don't know what to do.
Tā zhème shuō nòngde wǒ zhēn bù hǎo yìsi.
His saying that really embarrassed me.

**Nòng** can mean “to play with, to fool with, to monkey with”:

Bié nòng wǒde biǎo.	Don't fool with my watch.
---------------------	---------------------------

**Nòng** can be followed by another verb which shows the result of some action, e.g., **nòngzāng**, “to make (something) dirty”; **nòngpò**, “to break something” (lit., “to make something break”); **nòngsǐ**, “to kill” (lit. “to make something die”). Examples:

Shi shéi bǎ wǒde yǔsǎn nònghuài le?
Who was it who broke my umbrella? (literally, “made it so that it broke”)
Wǒ qù bǎ zǎofàn nònghǎo.
I’ll go get breakfast ready.
Zhèige wèntí hěn yǎojǐn, děi nòngqīngchu.
This question is very important, we must get it clear.
Bié nòngzāngle nǐde yīfu.
Don’t get your clothes dirty.
Nǐ nòngcuò le ba, tā qùnián cái cóng dàlù chūlai.
You’re mistaken, I think. He didn’t leave the mainland until last year.
Zhèige wèntí, nǐ zuótiān gěi wǒ jiǎngguò le, jīntiān wǒ yòu nòngbudǒng le, nǐ kě bu kéyì zài gěi wǒ jiǎng yíci?
Yesterday you explained this question to me, but today I can’t understand it again. Could you explain it to me once again?

nònglai: “to get and bring (here)” Compare the use of the directional ending -lai in nònglai to its use in Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎo bēi chá lai, which you learned in Unit 1.

Nǐ cóng nǎr nònglaide?	Where did you get this from?
------------------------	------------------------------

### Notes on №3

liáo tiān(r): “to chat” Liáo means “to chat,” and tiān(r) acts as its object. Tiān(r) may also be omitted.

Wǒmen liáole yíge zhōngtóu.
We chatted for an hour.
Nǐ shénme shíhou yǒu gōngfu, wǒmen zhǎo ge dìfang liáoliao , tiānr.
When you have time, we’ll go find a place and chat a while.

Nǐ bié qù le: “don’t go” The English translation here can’t really be adequate without getting cumbersome. The one syllable le tells you that not going is a change from what was earlier expected. To show the meaning of the marker le for new situation, the translation might be “Change your plans and don’t go.”

yìtiān dào wǎn: “all day long” The syllable yī (“one”) is sometimes used to mean “the whole, the entire.” Yìtiān dào wǎn can be literally translated as “the whole day until late,” but is also often used to mean “all the time, always.” You can use the whole phrase as you would a time-when word (e.g., jīntiān), or you can split it up with a verb, as in yìtiān máng dào wǎn “busy the whole day until late,” or “busy all day long.”

Tā yìtiān dào wǎn dōu zài máng.

He's busy all day long.

Tā yìtiān dào wǎn shuō tāde qián bú gòu yòng.

She's always saying from morning to night that she doesn't have enough money.

yònggōng: “to be diligent, to be hardworking” in one's studies

Nǐ bú yònggōng jiù bú ràng nǐ niàn dàxué le.

If you don't work hard, I won't let you go to college.

Wǒmen zhède xuésheng dōu hěn yònggōng.

All our students here are very hardworking.

péi: “to accompany; to keep somebody company” In the Transportation module, you saw the verb péi meaning “to accompany, to go along with” in the sentence Tā qǐng wǒ péi tā yìqǐ qù lǚxíng, “She asked me to accompany her on her trip.” Here you see péi used in another sense, “to keep someone company.”

Míngtiān wǒ yào péi wǒ mǔqīn qù kàn bìng.

Tomorrow I'm going along with my mother to see the doctor.

Méi rén péi wǒ qù, wǒ jiù bú qù le.

If no one goes along with me, I won't go.

Wǒmen lái péipei nǐ.

We'll keep you company.

Lǎo rén chángcháng xǐhuan yǒu rén péizhe tā shuō huà.

Older people often like to have someone to keep them company and talk with them.

## Notes on №4

cónglái: “ever (up till now), always (up till now)” Cónglái means that something remains the same or unchanged from the past up to now. It is almost always followed by an adverb—jiù, dōu, or the negatives bù or méi. The two most common combinations are cónglái bù and cónglái méi. Bù and méi, of course, have different uses; roughly speaking, cónglái bù means “(habitually) never (do X)” and cónglái méi means “have never (done X in the past).” With cónglái méi, the verb of the sentence usually takes the aspect marker -guo (experience at any previous time).

Tā cónglái bù dào wǒ jiā lái.

She never comes to my house.

Tā cónglái méi dào wǒ jiā lái guo.

She has never been to my house (before).

Wǒ cónglái méiyǒu xiǎngdào xiànzài hái yǒu zhèiyangde jiātíng, zhèiyangde fùmǔ.

I never imagined that there were still families and parents like this these days.

**cái**: In the Transportation Module, you saw the adverb **cái** used to mean “then and only then” or “not until then.” It was used to talk about something that happened later than expected, for example, **Tā shì zuótiān cái lái**, “He didn’t get here until yesterday.” In sentence 4B, you see **cái** (still an adverb) used to mean “only” a certain amount.

**Cái** means “only” in the sense of “as little as,” “so little.” It stresses that the amount is less than expected, less than normal, etc.

You already know two other adverbs which mean “only”: **zhǐ** and **jiù**. **Cái** is used with the meaning “only” strictly before amounts, while **zhǐ** and **jiù** are also used for “only” in the sense of “no other way” or “no others”:

Zhǐ/jiù néng zènme zuò.

(We) can only do it this way.

Wǒmen jǐge rén, zhǐ/jiù yǒu wǒ huì shuō Fǎguó huà.

I am the only one of us who can speak French.

(**Cái** may not be used in such sentences.)

That is, it could have been, should have been, or might later become more.

Tā cái xuéle sānnián, jiù shuōde nàme hǎo.

He’s only studied three years and speaks so well. (AS LITTLE AS THREE YEARS)

Tā yígòng cái kànle sānpīan wénzhāng.

He only read three articles altogether. (SO FEW)

h adverbs normally come only before a verb, **cái** may stand directly before an amount:

Cái wùge rén?

Only five people? (SO FEW?)

A: Tāde fángzi yinián cái sānbǎi kuài.

His house costs only three hundred dollars a year. (SO LITTLE!)

B: Cái zènme yidiǎnr?

Is that all? (SO LITTLE?)

Sentence 4B illustrates that when speaking about a person’s age, **cái** should be used for “only” rather than **jiù**. It is also much better to use **cái** for “only” when speaking about the time of day, the date, etc.:



Cái yìdiǎn zhōng, hái láidejǐ.

It's only one o'clock, we can still make it.

Jintiān cái shísānhào, hái zǎo ne!

Today is only the thirteenth (of the month). It's still early!

**Cái** is not used in sentences meaning the speaker imposes a restriction on an amount. This includes suggestions, instructions, commands, wishes, or sentences expressing intention. In these sentences, use **jiù** or **zhǐ**, e.g.: **Nǐ jiù gěi ta yìdiǎnr ba**, “Just give him a little”; **Wǒ zhǐ yào chī yìwǎn fàn**, “I only want to eat one bowl of rice.”

**mángzhe niàn shū**: “to be busy studying” **Máng** here is not the state verb “to be busy,” but an action verb, “to busily engage in (something).” Here are other examples:

Nǐ zài máng shénme ne?

What are you busy with?

Wǒ mángzhe yìtiān le.

I have been busily working all day.

Tā yìtiān dào àn máng zhège máng nèige.

He is busy with all sorts of things all day long.

**-zhe**: In sentence 4B, you see the marker **-zhe** used in a sentence with word order like that of one in the Directions module: **Zǒuzhe qù kéyí ma?** “Can you get there by walking?” **-Zhe** is the marker of DURATION. It may be attached to an action or process verb. The combination action verb plus **-zhe** refers to the duration of the action, that is, the action has started and is continuing, e.g., **Tā pǎozhe ne**, “He is running.” The combination process verb plus **-zhe** refers to the duration of the new state entered into through the process (remember that “process” here means a change from one state to another), for example, **Tā bìngzhe ne**, “He is ill,” or **Mén kāizhe ne**, “The door is open.”

Often you see the combination verb plus **-zhe** followed by another verb, as in **mángzhe niàn shū**. In this case, the verb plus **-zhe** describes the means or manner of the following verb.

Wǒmen zǒuzhe qù.

Let's go on foot.

Tā pǎozhe xià lóu qu le.

He went running downstairs.

Tā kāizhe chē lái le.

He came driving a car.

Tā nǎzhe dōngxi shàng chē le.

Carrying the things, he boarded the bus.

Tā zhèi jǐtiān mángzhe kāi huì.

The last few days he has been busy with meetings.

Tā jízhe zǒu, bǎ yàoshi wàng zai jiāli le.

He was in a hurry to leave, and left the keys at home.

Wǒmen zǒuzhe liáo tiān.

We talked while walking.

**xiǎngdào**: “to think of” -**Dào** here is not the prepositional verb “to” but the ending for compound verbs of result which you have so far seen in **jièdao**, “to successfully borrow” and **shuōdao**, “to talk about.” The verb ending **-dào** means “to successfully reach/obtain/find.” In the compound verb **xiǎngdào**, the verb **xiǎng** expresses the action of thinking about it, and **-dào** says that your thought “reached to” the idea—came into your head.

Another verb like **xiǎng** in referring to mental activity is **kǎolù**, “to consider,” which you learned in Unit 1, and just as with **xiǎng**, you can use **-dào** with **kǎolù**. Here are examples of **xiǎngdào** and **kǎolùdào**. Notice the different translations possible for **méi xiǎngdào** and **xiǎngbudào**.

Wǒ hái xiǎngdào língwài yidiǎn.

I’ve thought of another point.

Wǒ xiǎng dàgài jiù nǐ yíge rén lái, shéi xiǎngdào nǐmen dōu lái le!

I thought you would probably be the only one coming. Who would have thought all of you would come!

Wǒ méi xiǎngdào huì yǒu zhèizhǒng qíngkuàng.

I didn’t expect this kind of situation. (Lit., “I didn’t think there would be this kind of situation.”)

Xiǎngbudào tāmen huì zènme kuài jiēhūn.

I was surprised they got married so soon.

A: Nǐ méi kǎolùdào zhèi yidiǎn ba?

You didn’t consider that point, did you?

B: Zěnme kǎolùdào nàme duō shìqíng!

How could I take so many things into consideration!

## Notes on №5

**xiǎo nǚér**: Not “little daughter,” as you might have thought, but “youngest daughter.” **Xiǎo** and **dà** are used, respectively, for the “youngest and “oldest” of brothers and sisters. The ones in between, if there are any, are numbered. For example, a mother would refer to her four sons, starting with the eldest, as her **dà érzi**, **èr érzi**, **sān érzi**, and **xiǎo érzi**.

**zhǎngdà**: “to grow up” This is a compound verb of result made of **zhǎng** “to grow” and **dà** “to be big.”

Nǐ zhǎngdàle xiǎng zuǒ shénme?

What do you want to do when you grow up?

Sānge yuè bú jiàn, zhèige hǎizi zhǎngdàle bù shǎo.

It's been just three months since I last saw this youngster and he has grown quite a bit.

bú zài kū le: “doesn’t cry anymore” Zài is the adverb which you learned meaning “again.” Here it means “anymore,” referring to the continuing of a situation.

Wǒ tài lèi le, méiyǒu bànfǎ zài xiě le.

I’m too tired. I can’t write any more.

Wǒ bù néng zài chī le, zài chī jiù bù shūfu le.

I can’t eat any more. If I eat more I won’t feel well.

Bú yào zài xiǎng zhèixiē shìqing le.

Stop thinking about these things.

Bú yào zài shuō le, hǎo bu hǎo?

Don’t talk about it anymore, okay?

Yǐhòu wǒ bú zài nàme màn le.

In the future, I won’t be so slow anymore.

## Notes on №6

zuò: “to be, to act as” As you are well aware, there are times when you can’t use shì to translate English “to be.” One of these is when “to be” means that a person takes on a certain role, position, or occupation. An example is “to be president” as in “I want to be president” or “He was president for eight years.” In such cases you use the same verb “to do”, zuò:

Wǒ xiǎode shíhou chángcháng xiǎng jiānglái yào zuò yíge yīsheng, kěshì xiànzài zhīdao zuò yīsheng tài nán le.

When I was young I often thought I wanted to be a doctor when I grew up, but now I know that it’s too hard to be a doctor.

Tā cóngqián zuòguo jīngjì Bùzhǎng.

He was once the Minister of Finance. (You could also say Tā cóngqián shì jīngjì Bùzhǎng.)

Zhèi shì wǒ dìyīcì zuò zhǔrén qǐng kè, xīnli hěn jǐnzhāng.<sup>a</sup>

This is the first time I am to be host and have guests over. I’m nervous.

<sup>a</sup>zhǔrén, “host, master”

**jǐnzhāng**, “to be nervous, to be tense”

Phrases like **zuò fùmǔde** and **zuò háizide** in the reference list sentence are used to talk about categories of people as defined by a certain role, position, occupation, etc.

Zhèizhǒng shìqing, zuò fùmǔde yīnggāi xiān xiǎngdào.	Those in the position of parents should foresee things like this.
Kàndào xuéshengde Zhōngwén xuéde nàme hǎo, wǒmen zuò lǎoshīde zhēn gāoxìng.	When we see that our students have learned their Chinese so well, it makes us teachers very happy.

**zhòng nán qīng nǚ**: “to treat men as important and women as unimportant,” **Zhòng** is the verb “to be heavy,” with the additional meaning, in literary style, of “to stress, to put importance on.” **Qīng** is the verb “to be light (in weight),” with an extended meaning in literary Chinese of “to regard lightly, to attach little importance to.”

In the traditional Chinese family, a son had a starring role. One reason was that sons assured the family’s continuity, something which every man felt was his duty to his ancestors. In addition, the son usually became the family representative after the father’s death or retirement. A daughter, on the other hand, was expected to leave the family and become part of her husband’s household, so her importance was considerably less than that of a son.<sup>2</sup> A woman was always subject to a man’s authority: a daughter had to obey her father, a wife had to obey her husband, and a widow had to obey her son. Of course, individual women, by their strength, intelligence, and personality, were able to exert great influence on the family, but this was often accomplished indirectly.

**xiàoshun**: This can be used either as a verb with an object, “to be filial toward (someone),” as in the Reference List sentence above, or as an adjectival verb meaning “to be filial”:

Zhèige háizi hěn xiàoshun.	This child is very filial.
----------------------------	----------------------------

In traditional society, filial obedience was regarded as the primary virtue in life and the source of all other virtues. It consisted of respect for one’s parents and ancestors, obedience in all cases to one’s parents’ will, consideration and care for their daily welfare, continuation of the family line, and avoidance of any actions which would shame the good name and reputation of the family. But more than formal adherence to rules of good conduct, filial obedience was also an attitude of warmth, founded in the deep love of son and daughter for their parents. And although its origin and center is the relationship of child to parents, this important concept extended outside the family to govern all other relationships in the life of a Chinese. It was said that if a son was not filial to his parents, he would probably not fulfill the duties of a good husband, a faithful friend, or a loyal citizen.

## Notes on №7

**báitiān**: “daytime; during daylight,” literally “white-day” In the sense of “daylight,” the opposite of **báitiān** is **hēiyè**, “dark of night,” literally, “black-night.” In the sense of “daytime, working hours,” the opposite of **báitiān** is **wǎnshàng**, “evening, night.”

Tā báitiān zuò shí4, wǎnshàng niàn shū.	She works during the day and studies at night.
---	--

<sup>2</sup>This is from an old saying called the *Sān Cóng*, “the Three Follows,” i.e., the three paths to be followed. The saying is usually quoted in its original classical style: *Zài jiā cóng fù, chū jià cóng fū, fū sǐ cóng zǐ*, “When at home obey your father, when married, obey your husband, when your husband dies obey your son.”

**děng dào**: “wait until” Here you see the prepositional verb **dào** “to, up to” used after another verb. (Contrast this with **xiǎngdào** “to think of” where **-dào** is used as a verb ending showing result and is written as part of the verb.) You now know two meanings for the prepositional verb **dào**, one having to do with location and the other with time:

1. location: “to, up to”
2. time: “until”

What is the difference between putting your **dào** phrase after the verb or before it?

**Dào** phrase after verb

If the **dào** phrase tells where or at what time you end up as a result of the action, then it comes after the verb:

Wǒ zǒu dào shūfáng wàibian, tīngjian tāmen zài lǐbian shuō huà.	I walked up to the door of the study and heard them inside talking.
Wǒ yǐjīng kàn dào dìyībǎilíngyīyè le.	I’ve already read up to page 101.
Wǒ zuótiān wǎnshang kàn shū kàn dào sāndiǎnduō zhōng.	Last night I read until past three o’clock (in the morning).

In sentences which show that something changes location, **lái** “to this place” or **qù** “to that place” will usually come at the end of the whole clause:

MAIN VERB **dào** TIME OR PLACE **lái** OR **qù**

Tā zǒu dào wǒ qiánmian qu le.	He walked in front of me.
Qǐng bǎ nàijiǐběn shū ná dào zhèlǐ lái.	Please bring those books here.

**Dào** phrase before the verb

- a. Put the **dào** phrase before **lái** or **qù** when they are the main verb of the sentence:

Tā dào Chóngqing qù le.	He has gone to Chongqing.
Tā yào dào wǒ zhèlǐ lái.	He is coming to my place.

- b. If another verb phrase follows the **dào** phrase, **qù** may sometimes be omitted making the **dào** phrase appear to modify the second verb phrase:

A: Wǒmen dào nǎr chī fàn?	Where shall we go to eat?
---------------------------	---------------------------

B: <i>Dào fàntīng chī fàn.</i>	We'll go to the dining room to eat.

Literally, these mean “To where shall we eat?” and “We’ll to the dining room to eat.”

- c. A *dào* phrase may come before the verb if the phrase shows that a point is reached prior to the action or condition:

<i>Dào xiàwǔ zài tán.</i>	Let's wait until the afternoon and then talk. (Contrast <i>tan dào xiàwǔ</i> , “talk until the afternoon.”)
---------------------------	--

### Notes on №8

*cónglái bù*: “never, never does...” Earlier in this unit (No. 4), you saw the phrase *cónglái méi* “have never, had never...” *Cónglái* itself means “at any time in the past up until now.”

<i>Wǒ cónglái bù xiǎng zǎoshang niàn shū.</i>	I never feel like studying in the morning.
---	--

Whether you choose *cónglái bù* or *cónglái méi* depends on what kind of verb you are using and how it is normally negated. To summarize what you learned back in the Biographic Information module, STATE verbs (which include adjectival verbs and auxiliary verbs) are always negated with *bù*. PROCESS verbs are always negated with *méi* when referring to an actual state of affairs. ACTION verbs can be negated with *bù* or *méi* depending on the meaning. While there are grammar rules for choosing *bù* or *méi* to negate your verb, there are also semantic reasons for choosing one or the other: Are you generalizing about something habitual or speaking of a specific instance?

STATE VERBS (Use *bù*.)

<i>Wǒde qián cónglái dōu bù gòu.</i>	I have never had enough money.
<i>Tā cónglái bù xiǎng zuò zhèiyangde gōngzuò.</i>	He never wants / has never wanted to do this kind of work.
<i>Wǒ cónglái bù xǐhuan qù Niù Yuē.</i>	I never like / have never liked going to New York.

PROCESS VERBS (Use *méi*.)

<i>Tā cónglái méi jiēguo hūn.</i>	She has never gotten married.
<i>Tā cónglái méi bìngguo.</i>	He has never gotten sick.
<i>Zhèige diànshì cónglái méi huàiguò.</i>	This television has never broken.

ACTION VERBS (*Bù* and *méi* make a difference in meaning.)

(1) <i>Wǒ cónglái méi kànguò zhèiyangde shū.</i>	I have never read a book like this. (PAST EXPERIENCE)
--	---

(2) Wǒ cónglái bú kàn zhèiyangde shū.	I never read (present) this kind of book OR I never used to read this kind of book. (HABITUAL)
---------------------------------------	--

**Cónglái** vs. **cóngqián**: **Cóngqián**, “the past,” is a noun, a time word. It may, for example, be the object of the prepositional verb **zài**, e.g., **Zài cóngqián yǒu rén zènme zuò**, “in the past, some people did it that way.” **Cónglái** may also be used as a moveable adverb, in which case it can be translated “in the past, before, formerly”: **Wǒ cóngqián (OR Cóngqián wǒ)méiyǒu chē, xiànzài yǒu le**, “Before I didn’t have a car, but now I do.”

**Cónglái**, “always (in the past), from the beginning,” is not a noun; it cannot, for example, be the object of the prepositional verb **zài**. It is used adverbially, always between the subject and the verb. Both **cóngqián méi** and **cónglái méi** may sometimes be translated as “never,” but **cónglái méi** makes a stronger statement.

Wǒ cóngqián méi chīguo Zhōngguo cài.	I haven't eaten Chinese food before, (There wasn't one time when I ate Chinese food.)
Wǒ cónglái méi chīguo Zhōngguo cài.	I have never eaten Chinese food (from the very beginning).

**jiǎng**: “to be particular about, to stress, to pay attention to” [Also **jiǎngjiu**.]

Zhèige rén hěn jiǎng chī, hěn jiǎng chuān.	This person is fastidious about what he eats and what he wears.
Tāmen jiā tài jiǎng guīju <sup>a</sup> . Wǒmen Xiǎo Lán yīnggāi xiǎoxīn.	Their family is overly particular about manners. Our <b>Xiǎo Lán</b> should be careful.

<sup>a</sup>“guīju”: “manners” (see Unit U)

**shuōdao**: “to speak of; as for” In this unit, you have seen **dào** used as a resultative ending “to successfully reach/obtain/find,” as in **xiǎngdào**, “to think of.” You also saw it as a prepositional verb in **děng dào**, “wait until.” Here you see another example of **-dào** as a resultative ending. When **-dào** is used with verbs of speech, such as **shuō**, **tán** or **jiǎng**, they are translated as “to speak of” or “to talk about.” (In this meaning, **-dào** is not interchangeable with **-zhào**.)

Wǒmen gāngcái hái shuōdao nǐ, nǐ jiù lái le.	We were talking about you just now, and here you are!
Jīntiān nǐ gēn ta jiǎngdao wǒ méiyǒu?	Did you talk about me with him today?
Wǒ chángcháng xiǎngdao wǒde hái zi.	I often think of my child.

Notice that in sentence 8B, **shuōdao** is used at the beginning of the sentence to introduce a topic, as we use “when it comes to” or “speaking of” in English. Here are some other examples.

Shuōdao jiéhūnde shì, wǒ hái děi xiǎngyixiǎng.	When it comes to the marriage, I have to think it over some more.
Tándaο Zhōngguo wénhuà, tā bǐ wǒ zhīdaode duō.	When it comes to Chinese culture, he knows a lot more than I do.

Shuōdao Lǐ Xiānshēng, wǒ jiù xiǎngqilai le, hǎo jiǔ méi qù kàn ta le.	Speaking of Mr. Lǐ, it occurs to me that we haven't been to see him in quite a while.
---	---

**zuijìn**: “recently, lately; recent last” **zuijìn** may be used as a time word, coming either before or after the subject, but always before the verb.

Zuijìn, wǒmen gōngsī yǒu pàile yíge rén qù Xiānggǎng.	Recently, our company sent another person to Hong Kong.
Wǒ zuijìn tài máng, méi shíjiān gēn ta shuō.	I've been very busy lately, and haven't had time to tell him.

In sentence 8B (...nà shì zuijìn jǐshíniándē xīn guānniàn), **zuijìn** is used as an adjective modifying a Number-Counter-Noun. Other examples:

Zuijìn yíge yuè, tā dōu méiyǒu lái xìn.	She hasn't written for the last month.
Tā shì zuijìn jǐtiān cái lái de.	She just arrived within the last few days.

Besides referring to the near past, **zuijìn** can also refer to the near future—“soon”:

Tā zuijìn yào chū guó.	He will be going abroad soon.
------------------------	-------------------------------

To make it clear you are talking about the future rather than the past, use **zuijìn** in combination with auxiliary verbs like **yào**, **xiǎng**, **dǎsuan**, **zhǔnbèi**, **jǐhuà**, etc.

## Notes on №9

**dà jiāting**: “large family; extended family” The phrases **dà jiāting** and **xiǎo jiāting**, literally “large family” and “small family,” are often used in a specific sense. In traditional Chinese society, **dà jiāting** referred not merely to the number of people in the family, but to the number of generations living together. Although opinions on this vary greatly, you need at least three generations living together to be considered a **dà jiāting**—an “extended family”—and each generation must be several people “deep.” Ideally, such a family contained a father and mother, all their sons and their wives, their sons’ sons and their wives, and all their children, extending to about the fourth generation. A classic example of a **dà jiāting**, like the **Jiǎ** family in the novel *Dream of the Red Chamber*, might include over 130 people all living in households within one complex of houses and courtyards.

Do not misuse **jiāting**, which refers to the family as an entity, for **jiā rén** or **jiālide rén**, which refer to the people in the family. This mistake is easy to make because both ideas can be expressed in English by the word “family”:

Wǒ dào Niǔ Yuē qù kàn wǒ jiā rén (OR wǒ jiālide rén).
I'm going to New York to see my family.

**zěnmē bù hǎo**: “How could they be bad?” or, more idiomatically, “What could be bad about them?” Use **zěnmē** to make a rhetorical question disagreeing with someone else’s position.



A: <b>Bú duì, bú duì.</b>	That's not right, that's not right.
B: <b>Zěnmé bú duì.</b>	
A: <b>Wǒmen bù kéyǐ zhèiyàng zuò.</b>	We can't do it this way.
B: <b>Zěnmé bù kéyǐ? Zhèi méiyǒu shénme bù kéyǐde.</b>	

**ma**: This little marker is sometimes used at the end of a sentence to imply that the reasoning behind the statement is obvious. It can be translated as “you know” or “after all,” or by a tone of voice conveying that one thinks one’s statement is self-evident. (For the following example, you need to know **dào lājī**, “to take out [lit., ‘dump’] the garbage.”)

Husband: <b>Wèishenme zǒng dèi wǒ zuò fàn ne?</b>	Why do I always have to do the cooking?
Wife: <b>Nánnǚ píngděng ma!</b>	
Husband: <b>Nà hǎo, yǐhòu nǐ guǎn dào lājī.</b>	Okay, then from now on, you take care of taking out the garbage.
Wife: <b>Wèishenme?</b>	
Husband: <b>Nánnǚ píngděng ma!</b>	Equality of the sexes!

**suǒyǒude**: “all” This is the word for “all” used to modify nouns. (The adverb **dōu** is used to modify verbs.) **Suǒyǒude** is mostly used with nouns at the front of the sentence (that is, subjects or objects in topic position). In sentences with **suǒyǒude**, **dōu** is almost always used, too.

<b>Suǒyǒude cài dōu hěn hǎo chī.</b>	All the food is delicious.
<b>Suǒyǒude cài wǒ dōu chīwán le.</b>	

**Suǒyǒude** can be used with the **bǎ** construction, in which case **dōu** goes before the main verb, not before the prepositional verb **bǎ**.

<b>Wǒ bǎ suǒyǒude cài dōu chīwán le.</b>	I finished all the food.

**Suǒyǒude** can also be used without a noun following it, as long as the context makes it clear what things **suǒyǒude** refers to:

<b>Wǒ xǐhuan gōngyuán, Huáshèngdùn suǒyǒude wǒ dōu qùguo le.</b>	I like parks. I've been to all the ones in Washington.

Here are some more example sentences with **suǒyǒude**. Notice that the -de is sometimes omitted.

Suǒyǒude kāfēitīng wǒ dōu qùguo.	I've been to all the coffeehouses.
Rúguo wǒ yǒu qián wǒ jiù yào mǎi suǒyǒu zhèixiē Hàn-Yīng zìdiǎn.	If I had money, I'd like to buy all of these Chinese-English dictionaries.
Tā dào guo Měi guo suǒyǒu(de) yǒu yìside dìfang.	He has been to all the interesting places in the U.S.

yì: “hundred million” After qiān, “1000,” and wan, “10,000,” the next single syllable to represent a higher number in Chinese is yì, “100,000,000.”

1,000	yìqiān
10,000	yíwàn
100,000	shíwàn
1,000,000	yībǎi wàn (“one million”)
10,000,000	yìqiān wàn
100,000,000	yíyì
1,000,000,000	shíyì (“one billion”)

### Notes on №10

**kàndào**: “to see, to perceive by sight” This is another example of the ending **-dao** used as part of a compound verb of result. You have now seen **-dao** meaning (1) “to successfully reach/obtain/find” and (2) “about.” With verbs of perception, the meaning of **-dao** can be thought of as “successfully reach” by means of the senses, or “to successfully perceive.” Another instance of this is **tīngdao** “to hear, to perceive by listening.”

**Běijīng** speakers prefer **kànjian** and **tīngjian** in many contexts, but **kàndào** and **tīngdao** are used by all speakers of Standard Chinese.

**biàn**: “to change, to become different, to transform, to alter”

Zhèige rén zhēnde biàn le, yìqiān tā bú shì zhèiyangrde.	This fellow has really changed, he wasn't this way before.
Zhèijiàn máoyī xīle jǐcì, biàn yānsè le.	After this sweater was washed a few times, it changed color.
Jǐnián bú jiàn, tā yǐjīng biàn lǎo le.	I hadn't seen him for a few years; he had aged a lot. (refers to his appearance)

You can also use **biàn** in the pattern **biàn—de—STATE VERB**, as in:

Cóng qùnián dào xiànzài, tā biànde jiànkāngduō le.	He has become a lot healthier since last year.
Wo shíjīnián méi jiàndào ta, bù zhīdào tā biànde zěnmeyàng le?	I haven't seen him in over ten years, I wonder what he is like now?

**-chéng**: “become,” “into” This is used with a number of verbs to form a compound: **gǎichéng**, “to change (one thing) into (another)”; **fānyichéng**, “to translate into”, **zuòchéng** “to make into”; **zhǎngchéng**, “to grow into.”

Wǒ bǎ tāde chènshān gǎichéng yíjiàn xiǎoháizide yīfu le.	I took his shirt and altered it in- to an article of clothing for a child.
Qǐng nǐ bǎ zhèipiān wénzhāng fānyichéng Rìwén.	Please translate this article into Japanese.
Zhèige háizi yǐjīng zhǎngchéng dàren le.	This child has already grown into an adult.

### Notes on №11-12-13

**hēiyè**: This is mostly used in sentences where **báitiān**, “(light of) day, daytime,” is contrasted with its opposite (see the first exchange of the review dialogue for this unit). The normal word for “nighttime” is **wǎnshàng**.

**xīn**: The abstract concept “heart,” or, in many contexts, “mind”:

Tā(de) xīn hǎo.	He has a good heart (i.e., he is kind).
Tā zuòle zhèijiàn shì, xīnli hěn nánguò.	He felt very bad after he did that.
Tā xiěwánle zhèipiān xiǎoshuō, xīnli hěn gāoxìng.	He was very happy after he fin- ished writing this short story.
Tā xīnli xiǎngde hé tā zuòde bù yíyàng.	He acts differently than he thinks.

(For the organ “heart,” use **xīnzàng**, literally, “heart-organ.”)

## Unit 4 A Family History

### Introduction

#### Grammar Topics covered in this unit

1. More on **ne**, marker of absence of change/lack of completion.
2. The adverb **duō** (**duó**), “how...”
3. More on indefinite pronouns (“any/no” expressions).
4. Review of you (Noun) phrases.

#### Functional Language content Contained in this unit

1. Expressing worries or reservations about doing something.
2. Reassuring someone that they need not worry.
3. Asking for clarification of the meaning of what someone just said.
4. Commenting on other’s good fortune.

## References

## Reference List

## Vocabulary

bàba	爸爸	father, dad, papa
bāng máng	帮忙	to help; help
bù shǎo	不少	to be quite a lot, to be much, to be many
cáichǎn	财产	property
chī kǔ	吃哭	to suffer, to undergo hardship
dānxīn	担心	to be worried, to be uneasy
duō (duō)	多	how...!
érxīfu(r) (érxīfer)	儿媳妇	daughter-in-law
fúqì	福气	blessings, good fortune
guīju	规矩	rules of proper behavior, social etiquette, manners; rule (of a community or organization), established practice, custom
guòqù	过去	the past
hái	还	fairly, passably
hùxiāng	互相	mutually
-jiā	-家	counter for families
kànbuqǐ	看不起	to look down on, to scorn, to despise
lǐmào	礼貌	manners, politeness
nǎinai	奶奶	grandmother (on father's side)
niánjì	年纪	age
qǐlai	起来	to get up (in several senses)
rén	人	person; body; self
rénjia	人家	people; they; he, she; I
shēntǐ	身体	body; health
shōushi	收拾	to straighten up; to get one's things ready
Sì Shū	四书	the Four Books (Dàxué, Zhōngyōng, Lúnyǔ, Mèngzǐ)
sūnnǚ	孙女	granddaughter (through one's son)

sūnzi	孙子	grandson (through one's son)
tǔdì	土地	land
xiǎo péngyou	小朋友	little friend; kids
yéye	爷爷	grandfather (on the father's side)
yòu	又	also
yǒu guīju	有规矩	to have manners, to be proper
yǒu lǐmào	有礼貌	to be well mannered, to be polite
yǒu qián	有钱	to be rich
zhǐ hǎo	只好	can only, to have to, to be forced to
zhùxiàlai	住下来	to move and stay (in a place), to settle down

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1

**zhème zǎo jiu qǐlai le:** The adverb **jiù** is used to stress the earliness (**zhème zǎo**) of father's getting up. On this use of **jiù**, review Unit 2, Notes on №9. Here are more examples:

Tā wǔdiǎn zhōng jiu qǐlai le.	He got up at five (that early).
Wǒ mǎshàng jiu lái.	I'll be there in a minute.
Bù jiù, tā jiu líkāi le.	Shortly afterwards, he left.

**qǐlai:** "to get up," from a bed or just from a sitting position. In an abstract sense it means "to arise," e.g., "to arise and revolt" [**qǐlai géming**].

Nǐ tiāntiān shénme shíhou qǐlai?	When do you get up every day?
----------------------------------	-------------------------------

**Tā niánji dà le:** Literally, "As for him, the age is now big." **Le** is used here to indicate change of state, as it often is in sentences telling a person's age (**Tā sānshí suǐ le**).

You should learn the following typical examples of how to use **niánji**:

Tā (yǒu) duó dà niánji le?	How old is he? (USED ONLY OF ADULTS)
Tā niánji dà le.	He's advanced in years.
Tā niánji bù xiǎo le.	She's not young any more.

Use **Nín duó dà niánji le?** to ask an adult's age. To ask a child's age, though, say **Nǐ duó dà le?** or **Nǐ yǒu duó dà?** or **Nǐ jǐsuì (le)?**

The Chinese are not secretive about their age the way many Westerners are. It is not considered impolite to ask someone's age, even women and old people. As in the West, old people are often proud of their age and glad to let you know it.

**Měitiān shuì de zǎo:** Literally, “every day goes to bed early.” **Měitiān** is needed in Chinese to express the idea of “habitual” which in English is conveyed simply by the present tense of “goes.” Without **měitiān**, the Chinese sentence might refer to one particular instance only. For example, it might mean that grandfather went to bed early the night before.

**shuì**, which you may know from the Welfare module, means “to sleep,” but also “to go to bed, to retire.” It is like many verbs in Chinese which can indicate either the continuing performance of an action (sleeping) or the start of an action (trying to sleep, i.e., going to bed). In the following examples, the pair of translations show the ambiguity. In real conversation, of course, the ambiguity rarely causes problems because the listener interprets one way or the other according to the context:

Tā shuìle meiyóu?	Has he gone to bed?
	Did he sleep (and then get up)?
Xià yǔ le ma?	Has it started to rain?
	Did it rain (and then stop)?
Diànlíng xiǎng le ma? <sup>a</sup>	Has the bell gone off?
	I Did the bell ring (and then stop)?

<sup>a</sup>xiǎng: “to sound, to make a sound”

To remove this ambiguity, you can use more specific phrasing. For example, the aspect marker **ne** specifies absence of change, lack of completion, and so rules out the second translation for each of the above three sentences: **Tā shuì ne**, “He is sleeping,” **Xià yǔ ne**, “It’s raining,” **Diànlíng xiǎng ne**, “The bell is ringing.” To be even more specific you could use **-zhe**, the marker of duration (usually used in combination with **ne**): **Tā shuìzhe ne**, **Xiàzhe yǔ ne**, **Diànlíng xiǎngzhe ne**. Or you could use the marker **zài** for ongoing action: **Tā zài shuì**, “He is(in the midst of) sleeping,” etc. To be the most specific of all, you can use **zài**, **-zhe**, and **ne** all in the same sentence: **Tā zài shuìzhe ne**, etc.

**Shuì** can also be used to mean “to lie down,” regardless of whether the person sleeps or not. (The meaning “lie down” for **shuì** is only accepted by some speakers; others always use the verb **tang**, “to lie down,” which you learned in the Welfare module.)

Tā shuì zài dìshàng kàn diànshì.	He lies on the floor and watches television.
Nǐ kàn tā shuì dào zhuōzhàngshàng lái le!	
	Look at him lying on the table!

**shuìde zǎo** is another example of a manner expression following a verb plus **-de**, a structure which was introduced back in the Transportation module (**Nǐ kāide tài kuài le**, “You are driving too fast”). **Shuìde wǎn** means either “to go to bed late” or “to sleep late.”

## Notes on №2

**yéye:** “grandfather,” only for the father’s father. Back in the Biographic Information module you learned **zǔfù** for “paternal grandfather.” **Yéye** is the same person, but is the word you would use when addressing him directly or when talking about him informally. See the diagram under **nǎinai** below (Notes on No. 3). [One’s mother’s father is **lǎoyé** or **wàngōng**.]

**Xiǎo péngyou**, “little friends,” is a warm term for young children. It may be used either to address children directly or to talk about them in the third person. The host of a children’s television show, for example, would address the young viewers as **xiǎo péngyou** (men). You may someday need to use this

word to address a young child whom you don't know, for example, one that you meet on the street. And, of course, **xiǎo péngyou** is also used in its literal sense to refer to the “young friends” of a child.

<b>Xiǎo péngyou.</b> 'Tiān hēi le, kuài huì jiā qu ba.	Little boy/girl, it's getting dark out. You'd better go back home.
<b>Nèixiē xiǎo péngyou dōu zài wàitōu wǎn ne.</b>	Those kids are playing outdoors.

**liáo tiānr ne:** Ne, which you first learned in the sentence **Hái méi ne**, is the marker which emphasizes ABSENCE OF CHANGE or LACK OF COMPLETION. (it is, in a way, the opposite of le, which marks CHANGED SITUATION or COMPLETION.) In what specific situations can or should you use **ne**? We can note two kinds of meaning for sentences in which absence-of-change **ne** often appears:

1. Continued State, e.g.,

<b>Hái yǒu ne.</b>	There is still some more.
<b>Hái méiyǒu ne.</b>	Not yet.

2. Ongoing Action, e.g.,

<b>Tā chī fàn ne.</b>	He's eating.
<b>Nǎinai zuò fàn ne.</b>	Grandma is cooking.

Remember also that **ne** is often used in sentences which contain **-zhe**, the marker of DURATION (something like continued state), or **zài**, the marker of ONGOING ACTION.

<b>Tā shuì jiào ne.</b>	NO CHANGE	He is sleeping.
<b>Tā shuìzhe ne.</b>	DURATION + NO CHANGE	
<b>Tā zài shuì ne.</b>	ONGOING + NO CHANGE	

There is a famous nursery rhyme which contains two ongoing-action sentences that end in absence-of-change **ne**. In one of its many versions, the rhyme goes like this (just read and enjoy; ignore the words you don't know):

<b>Xiǎo hào zǐr</b>	A little mouse
<b>Shàng dēngtái r</b>	Went up the lamp stand
<b>Tōu yóu he</b>	To steal oil to drink
<b>Xiàbulái</b>	But he couldn't get down



Jiào Yéye	He called Grandpa
Yéye zá suàn ne ^	But Grandpa was crushing garlic.(ne ONGOING ACTION)
Jiào Nǎinai	He called Grandma
Nǎinai zhǔ fàn ne	But Grandma was cooking(ne ONGOING ACTION)
Jiào Niūer	He called Granddaughter
Bào māo lai	Who brought the cat
Zēr! Zā! Děizhao le!	Squeak! Scratch! Got him!

rén: Besides the meaning of “man, person,” rén can also be used to refer more specifically to someone’s (1) character, (2) mental state of “being, or (3) physical self.

1. character

Tā rén hěn rèxīn, chángchàng bāngzhu biérén.
He is a very warmhearted person. He often helps others.
Tā rén zuò shì hǎo yòu xiǎoxīn.
He does things well and carefully.
Tā rén zhēn bú cuò.
He is a very nice person.

2. mental state

Tā hēduō le, rén yǒu diǎnr bú tài qīngchu.
He had too much to drink and is a little foggy.

3. physical self

Nǐ rén hǎo diǎnr le ma?
Are you better today? (i.e., your health)
A: Cáo Yǔshēng bú shì shuō wǔdiǎn zhōng kāi huì ma?
Didn’t Cáo Yǔshēng say there would be a meeting at five o’clock?
B: Shi a!

That's right!
A: Tā rén ne?
So where is he?
Tā gāngcái hái zài zhèr, zěnme yihuǐr rén bú jiàn le?
He was Just here a minute ago, how could he have disappeared so fast?
Rén lǎo xīn bu lǎo.
(saying) The person is old, but his heart is not old. (“young at heart“)
Rén yì zǒu, chá jiu liáng.
(saying) As soon as the person has left, the tea gets cold. (describes someone who forgets a friendship no sooner than he has left—often used to describe Americans)

### Notes on №3

**zhèi liǎngnián**: “the last couple of years” **Zhèi** before an amount of time often means “the last” or “the past.” Liang does not necessarily mean exactly “two” but can mean “a couple,” an indefinite small number.

Guò liǎngtiān wǒmen Jù qù.	We are going there in a couple of days.
----------------------------	---

**nǎinai**: “paternal grandmother” For “grandma and grandpa,” the Chinese order is almost always **yéye nǎinai**. [A maternal grandmother is called **lǎolao** or **wàipó**.] Here is a tree showing what to call grandparents in Chinese. The top two rows are conversational terms used either to address grandparents directly or refer to them. The third row shows the more formal words which you learned in BIO; these are **not** used in addressing one’s grandparents directly. (The labels “Northern” and “Southern,” are generalizations; many more terms exist, but these are widely encountered.)

(Northern) (Southern)

**shēntǐ**: “body” OR “health”

Tāde shēntǐ zhēn bàng. <sup>a</sup>
He is in great shape.
Bié zǒngshi pīnmìng niàn shū, děi duō zhùyì shēntǐ.
Don’t always he knocking yourself out studying; you should look after your health more.

<sup>a</sup>bàng, “to be great/fantastic/terrific”

**hái hǎo**: “fairly good” You first learned the adverb **hái** as meaning “still.” When used before a state verb, **hái** can also mean that the quality expressed by that verb may still be said to apply, although just barely. Often it may be translated as “fairly, passably”:

Zhèige diànyǐng hái bú cuè, suīrán cháng yidiǎn, kěshi duì wǒde Zhōngwén yǒu bāngzhu.
---

The movie was fairly good. Although it was a little long, it was good for my Chinese.

Sometimes, however, you will need to find other translations:

Nèige fànguǎnr hái kéyì, yǒu jǐge cài nǐ kéyì shishi.

That restaurant isn't too bad. They have a few dishes you might try.

A: Nǐ zuìjìn zěnmeyàng?

How have you been lately?

B: Hái mámahūhū, jiù shì máng yidiǎnr.

Enh, all right, just a little busy.

A: Zhōngguó yǒu yiqiānniánde lìshǐ...

China has one thousand years of history...

B: Á, nǐ shuō shenme? Yiqiān-nián?!

What? How's that? One thousand years?

A: Òu, bú shì, sānqiānnián.

Oh, I mean three thousand years.

B: Nà hái chàbuduō.

That's more like it.

shōushi: "to straighten up"

Nǐ yīnggāi bǎ nǐde wūzi shōushi shōushi le.

You ought to straighten up your room (Le indicates "It's gotten to that point.")

Wǒ xiānsheng zǒngshì shuō wǒ wūzi shōushide bù gānjing.

My husband always says I don't keep my room neat.

Zhèjiàn shì yì kāishǐ jiù zuòde bù hǎo, xiànzài méi bànfǎ shōushi le.

This thing was handled poorly right from the start. Now there's no way it can be remedied.

Shōushi xíngli means "to pack one's baggage."

## Notes on №4

Zhāng jiā: "the Zhāng family" In Běijīng pronunciation, the jiā is unstressed and often neutral tone, like a suffix: Zhāngjia.

érxífu: "daughter-in-law" In Běijīng, this word is often pronounced ěrxífur or ěrxífer (note the vowel change).

**guīju**: A definite standard, regulation, or custom which forms part of the conduct of a group of people (e.g., a community, a company, a gang, etc.)

Zhào Zhōngguode lǎo guīju, qǐng kède shíhòu kèrén yīnggāi xiān kāishǐ chī.
It is an old Chinese custom that when you have guests, the guests should start eating first.
Zài qù nàige guójiā yǐqián, zuì hǎo wǒ néng zhīdao yìxiē nèrde guīju.
Before going to that country it would best if I could find out about some of their customs.
Jūnrén yǒu hěn duō tèbiéde guīju.
Military people have a lot of special regulations.
Zhè shì wǒmende guīju.
That's the way we do things here.
Zhème duō guīju!
All this formality!

**Yǒu guīju**, as you see in exchange U, means “to have manners, to be proper (in behavior).” **Méi guīju** is “to be badly behaved,” said, for example, of a child. (**Bù guīju** may be used to imply unfaithfulness of a wife.)

Zhāng Tàitai jiāo háizi jiāode hǎo, tāde háizi dōu hěn yǒu guīju.
Mrs. <b>Zhāng</b> teaches her children well, they are all very well-behaved.
Xiǎo Sānr! Bié zhèiyangr. Kèrén kànjian nǐ zènme méi guīju, zènme hǎo yìsi?
Cut it out, <b>Xiǎo Sānr</b> . What will the guests think when they see you misbehaving so?

**fúqi**: This is a traditional Chinese concept: the destiny to enjoy happiness in life. It is different from the Western idea of luck [which is closer to Chinese **yùnqi**]. Luck refers to chance occurrences like winning a lottery, while **fúqi** refers to one's whole life situation. Some people have more **fúqi** and some less. In practice, **fúqi** is measured by a person's wealth, prestige, and especially his or her family situation.

In traditional China, for a man to have a lot of sons was reason to say he had **fúqi**. In exchange 4, the grandmother is said to have **fúqi** because her daughter-in-law is a very proper or well-behaved woman.

Tā zhēn yǒu fúqi, búdàn yǒu yíge hǎo jiāting, yòu yǒu yíge hǎo gōngzuò.
He is really blessed with good fortune. Not only does he have a nice family, but a good job, too.
Nǐ fūqi zhēn hǎo, dà érzi jìqián, xiǎo nǚér sòng huār!
You are really blessed with good fortune. Your oldest son sent you money and your little girl gave you flowers!

Daughters-in-law: The relationship between the husband's wife and his mother is different in traditional China from in the West. A wife, after all, is considered to become a member of her husband's

family, so she is supposed to regard her mother-in-law as her new mother, and show her the same filial obedience. The husband's mother, for her part, tries to find for her son a young woman who will obey and get along with her, who will work hard for the family and around the house.

### Notes on №5

**guòqù**: “the past” Distinguish this noun from the verb “to pass,” which in **Běijīng** has a neutral-tone **qu**: **guòqu**. Since it is a time word, the noun **guòqù** may go either before the subject or between the subject and verb. Most commonly it is placed at the very beginning of the sentence, before the subject:

**Guòqu, tā zài Xiānggǎngde shíhou, tā jiāo shū.**

In the past, when he was in Hong Kong, he taught school.

**Guòqù, tā bāngguo wǒ hěn duō máng.**

In the past he has been a great help to me.

**Guòqù** may also be used to modify a noun phrase:

**Nà dōu shì guòqùde shì le.**

Those are all things of the past.

**duō nán**: “how difficult.” **Duō**, in **Běijīng** often pronounced **duó**, is used before a state verb to express a high degree, like “how” in English:

**Jīntiān tiānqi duō hǎo.**

How nice the weather is today.

**Nǐ bù zhīdào zài zhè mǎi diànyīng piào yǒu duō nán.**

You don't know how hard it is to buy a movie ticket here.

**Duō piàoliangde háizi a!**

What a beautiful child!

**Tā zěnmē kéyi zhème shuō? Duó ràng rén shēngqì.**

How can he say such a thing? How infuriating!

**Nǐ kàn tā duō xǐhuan niàn shū.**

Look at how he loves to study.

**zǒu dào nǎ yě méi rén kànbuqǐ**: **Nǎr** here is used as an indefinite pronoun, “anywhere, no matter where.” You learned about indefinite pronouns in the Meeting module, where you had the sentence **Míngtiān xiàwǔ shénme shíhou dōu kéyi**. A question word, such as **shéi**, **shénme**, **něige** or **nǎr** followed by the adverb **dōu** before the verb expresses the idea of “any.” When the verb has **bù** or **méi** before it, the pattern expresses the ideas of “nobody, nothing, neither, nowhere,” etc.

**Shéi dōu kéyi qù.**

Anyone may go.

Shéi dōu bù kéyì qù.	No one may go.
Shénme dōu kéyì yòng.	You may use anything.
Shénme dōu bù kéyì yòng.	You may not use anything.
Něige dōu yíyàng.	Any of them would be the same.
Něige dōu bù qīngchu.	None of them is clear.
Nǎr dōu kéyì qù.	You can go anywhere.
Nǎr dōu méi zhèr hǎo.	No place is as good as here.

When **bù** or **méi** is used before the verb, the adverb **yě** can be used in place of **dōu**:

Shéi yě bù kéyì qù.	No one can go.
Shénme yě bù kéyì yòng.	You may not use anything.
Něige yě bù qīngchu.	None of them is clear.
Nǎr yě méi zhèr hǎo.	No place is as good as here.

The “any/no” expression may be the subject or object of the sentence, or as in exchange 5, it may be the object of a prepositional verb:

Mài gěi shéi dōu kéyì.	It's okay to sell it to anyone.
Mài gěi shéi dōu bù kéyì.	It's not okay to sell it to anyone.
Mài gěi shéi yě bù kéyì.	
Fàng zai nǎr dōu yíyàng.	It's the same wherever you put it.
Fàng zai nǎr dōu bù yíyàng.	It's different every place you put it.
Dào něige yóujú qù jì dōu kéyì.	It would be all right to go to any post office to mail it.
Gēn shéi shuō dōu (OR yě) méi guānxi.	It doesn't matter who you tell it to.

**kànbuqǐ**: A resultative compound verb meaning “to look down on, to scorn, to despise.” Unlike other resultative verb compounds, this one occurs only with **-de-** or **-bu-**. (**Méi kànqǐ** and **kànqǐ le** are very rare.)

**Bié kànbuqǐ zhèixiē xiǎo shì.**

Don't look down on these little matters.

**Wǒ zuì kànbuqǐ zhèiyangde rén.**

I despise this kind of person most.

**Bù yīnggāi kànbuqǐ fùnǚ, nánrén néng zuǒde shì, nǚrén yě néng zuò.**

Don't look down on women. Anything a man can do a woman can do.

The positive form **kàndeqǐ** means to treat someone or something seriously because you believe them/it to be capable, important, worthy, etc. It may be translated as “to think a lot of,” “to think highly of”:

**Wǒ kàndeqǐ nǐ cái ràng nǐ guǎn zhèijiàn shì.**

It's only because I think a lot of you that I'm letting you have charge of this matter.

**Nǐ yàoshi xiǎng ràng biérén kàndeqǐ nǐ, nǐ děi bǐ biérén zuòde hǎo.**

If you want to have others think highly of you, you have to do better than they.

## Notes on №6

**rénjia**: This pronoun has a few different meanings. As used in exchange 6 it means “everyone, people (in general), they”:

**Rénjia dōu shuō nèige dìfang hěn hǎo kàn.**

People say that place is very pretty.

It can also mean “other people” or “someone else”:

**Zhèiběnr shū dàgài kéyǐ jiè gěi nǐ, búguò shì rénjiade, wǒ děixiān wènwen.**

I can probably lend you this book, but it's someone else's. I have to ask them first.

Besides referring to unspecified people, **rénjia** can also refer to specific people. Most often it refers to a specific third party, “he,” “she,” or “they”:

**Rénjia bú jiè, suàn le ba!**

If he doesn't want to lend it, then just forget it.

- A: **Nǐ nǚér yǒu háizi le meiyǒu?**

Has your daughter had any children yet?
- B: Méiyóu—rénjia bú yào.’
No—she doesn’t want any.’
Wǒ gěi rénjia, rénjia bú yào. Zěnmē bàn?
I tried to give it to her, but she didn’t want it. What can you do?
Nǐ kàn rénjia Xiǎo Huá xuéde duó hǎo, nǐ ne!
Look at how well Xiǎo Huá does in her studies, but you!

Rénjia may also refer to the speaker, in other words, “I.” In such a case, the speaker is being intentionally playful, witty, or cute:

Nǐ yào zěnmē duō?! Gěi rénjia yidiǎnr ma!
You want so much?! Come on, give me a little!
Rénjia bù xǐhuan zhèizhǒng diànyǐng! Wèishénmē yíding yào qù kàn?
I don't like this kind of movie! Why do I have to go see it?
Rénjia děng nǐ yíge zhōngtōu le.
I’ve been waiting for you for an hour.
Jīntiān shì Xīngqītiān, ràng rénjia duō shuì yihuǐr ma!
Today's Sunday. Let me sleep a little later!

lǐmào: “manners, etiquette,” the expression in speech and behavior of modesty and respectfulness. This includes politeness of speech, saying the right things at the right times, table manners, and so on. [Lǐ is “ritual.” Mào is “appearance.”]

Cóngqián zài Zhōngguó lǐmào hěn yàojǐn.
Etiquette used to be very important in China.

Yǒu lǐmào means “to be well-mannered,” méiyóu lǐmào “to be ill-mannered.”

## Notes on №7

Zhèi yìjiā rén: “this family” You already know that jiā can be used as a noun meaning “family,” for example, wǒmen jiā, “our family.” But jiā can also be used as a counter. It may be used alone or with the noun rén following. The translation is still “family.”

Nèi yìjiā, rénren dōu gōngzuò, yìtiān dào wǎn méi rén zài jiā.
Everyone in that family works. There's no one home all day long.
Cóng zhèi sānjiā rénde qíngxíng, nǐ kéyì zhīdao yìxiē guānyū Zhōngguó rénde shēnghuò.



From the situations of these three families, you can learn something about the life of the Chinese.

**niànguo bù shǎo shū**: Literally, “studied a lot of books.” This is the GENERAL OBJECT **shū** which you first learned back in the Biographic Information module. It doesn't really mean “books,” but anything at all which is studied. **Niàn shū** Just means “to study, to be in school,” so we translate **niànguo bù shǎo shū** as “to be very well educated“ or “to have a good education.”

**Sūnzi**, “grandson,” and **sūnnǚ**, “granddaughter” include only the children of one’s son. [The children of one’s daughter are called **wàisūnzi** and **wài-sūnnǚ**.] **Sūnnǚ** may also have an -r ending: **sūnnǚr** (the real **Běijīng** pronunciation of -**nǚr** is kind of tricky; ask a native **Běijīng** speaker to say **sūnnǚr** for you).

**Sì Shū**: “the Four Books,” which are **Dàxué**, “The Great Learning”; **Zhōngyōng**, “The Doctrine of the Mean”; **Lúnyǔ**, “The Analects of Confucius”; and **Mèngzǐ**, “Mencius.” **Dàxué** and **Zhōngyōng** are chapters from **Lǐ Jì**, “The Book of Rites,” which were raised to the status of separate “books” by the Southern Song Dynasty philosopher **Zhū Xī**. After the Song Dynasty, philosophers of the Idealist school looked upon the Four Books as the classics of Confucianism. Many older Chinese you meet today studied the Four Books when they were children.

### Notes on №8

**yǒu qián**: “to be rich,” literally, “to have money.” You have now seen quite a few phrases built around the state verb **yǒu**:

<b>yǒu yìsi</b>	to be interesting, to be fun
<b>yǒu bāngzhu</b>	to be helpful
<b>yǒu dàoǐ</b>	to be reasonable, to be logical
<b>yǒu xìngqu</b>	to be interested
<b>yǒu yánjiū</b>	to be expert

Like other state verbs (such as **hǎo**, “to be good,” **ài**, “to love,” **huì**, “to be able to, to know how to,”), **yǒu** can be modified by adverbs such as **hěn**, “very”; **feicháng**, “very, extremely”; **zhēn**, “really”; **tài**, “too”; etc.

<b>Tā</b>	<b>hěn</b>	<b>yǒu qián.</b>
He is very rich.		
<b>Nèiběn shū</b>	<b>zhēn</b>	<b>yǒu yìsi.</b>
That book is really interesting.		
<b>Lǐ Píng</b>	<b>zuì</b>	<b>méi xìngqu.</b>
<b>Lǐ Píng</b> is the least interested.		
<b>Zěnmē shuō</b>	<b>shízài</b>	<b>méiyǒu dàoǐ.</b>

To say that is really unreasonable.		

You, of course, differs from all other state verbs in that it is made negative with **méi** instead of **bù**. **BÙ** may nevertheless modify an adverb preceding **yǒu**:

Tā bǔ tài yǒu qián.	He isn't too rich.

You cannot use **méi** in this sentence because the negation goes with **tài**, not with **yǒu**. In fact, switching around the order of negative and adverb results in a big difference in meaning:

Bǔ tài yǒu yìsi.	Not too interesting.
Tài méiyǒu yìsi.	So boring!

**yǒu qián rén**: “wealthy people” This is a sort of compound noun, so **-de** is not used.

### Notes on №9

**zhùxiálái**: “to stay; to settle down” in a place. **Zhù** can either mean “to live, to reside” or just “to stay” temporarily in a place, The ending **-xiálái** adds the meaning of coming to rest, not going away.

Gāng láiide shíhou bù zhīdao, zhùxiálái yǐhòu cái zhīdao wèishénme méi rén xǐhuan dào zhèige dìfang lái.
When you first get here you don't know, it's only after you've lived here for a while that you realize why nobody likes to come here.
A: Wǒ xiànzài qù zhǎo yige lǚguǎn qu.
I'm going to go look for a hotel now.
B: Méi guānxi, nǐ jiù zài wǒ jiā zhùxiálái ba
That's all right, why don't you just stay at my house?

**bāng máng**: “to help; help” You first saw this in the Welfare module, Unit 6. Then in Unit 2 of this module, you learned **bāngzhu**. Both are very common. **Bāngzhu** is a little more formal than **bāng máng**, which is purely conversational.

**Bāng máng** is a verb-object phrase (literally, “help-busy,”—“help me in my busyness”). For example, you can say:

Bāng wo yìdiǎnr máng.
Help me a little.
Wǒ zǎi Měiguode shíhou, tā bāngle wǒ bù shǎo máng.
He helped me a lot when I was in America.

**Bāngzhu**, however, is just a verb. The word order is therefore simpler with **bāngzhu** than with **bāngmáng**.

	Tā		bāngzhu	wǒ.
	Tā		bāng	wǒde máng.
or	Tā	gěi wǒ	bāng máng.	
He helps me.				

You can see that when **bāng máng** is used, the person helped is expressed either (1) in a phrase modifying **máng** or (2) in a prepositional phrase with **gěi**.

**zhǐ hǎo**: “can only, have no choice but to”

Xiǎ zhème dàde yù, wǒmen zhǐ hǎo bú qù le.
Since it’s raining so hard, we have no choice but not to go.
Dàjiā dōu bú yuànyì péi wǒ qù, wǒ zhǐ hǎo yíge rén qù le.
Nobody wants to go with me. All I can do is go by myself.
Qìyóu yuè lái yuè guǐ, hěn duō rén zhǐ hǎo zuò gōnggòng qìchē le.
With gasoline getting more and more expensive, many people have no choice but to take the bus.

### Notes on №10

**dānxīn**: “to be worried (that)”

Yījīng shíyīdiǎn le, Xiǎo Píng hái méi huīlai, tāde fùmǔ hěn dānxīn.
It’s eleven o’clock already and <b>Xiǎo Píng</b> hasn’t gotten back home yet. His parents are very worried.
Nǐ bú bì dānxīn, hái zi dàle, tā zìjǐ huì dǒngde.
You don’t need to worry. When the child grows up he’ll understand.
Wǒ dānxīn tāde xuéxí.
I’m worried about his studies.
Wǒ dānxīn wǒ nǎinaide shēntǐ.
I’m worried about my grandmother’s health.

Wǒ dānxīn tā yǒu shénme wèntí.

I'm worried that he has some problem.

Tā dānxīn tā zuòbuhǎo nèijiǎn shì.

He's worried he won't be able to do it well.

**zǎi wàihianr:** Literally, “on the outside,” a common way of saying “away from home” or “away from one’s hometown.” The Chinese have an expression (in literary style), *Zǎi jiā qiān rì hǎo, chū wài yì shí nán*, “At home one thousand days are good, but when one is on the outside (away from one’s hometown) even one moment is difficult.”

**chī kǔ:** “to have a rough time, to suffer hardships” **Kǔ**, “bitter,” when referring to life or an experience, means “hardship, suffering, pain.”

Tā chīle bù shǎo kǔ cái cóng dàxué bìyè.

He went through some rough times before he graduated from college.

Méiyǒu chīguo zhànzhēngde kǔ, jiù bù zhīdao jīntiānde shēnghuó láide bù róngyì.<sup>a</sup>

If you haven't experienced the suffering of war, you don't know that our life today didn't come easily.

<sup>a</sup>“zhànzhēng, “ war”

**Néng chī kǔ** means “to be able to take hardships,” “to have fortitude.”

Zhōngguó hěn duō rénde kànǎ shì niánqīng rén yīnggāi néng chī kǔ.

In China many people think that young people ought to be able to take hardship.

Tā nàige rén hěn néng chī kǔ, bú yòng dānxīn.

He can take a lot of hardship. Don't worry.

**hùxiāng:** “mutually, reciprocally, with each other” This is an adverb, so it must go after the subject (if there is one) and before the verb.

Wǒmen kéyì hùxiāng xuéxí. Nǐ jiāo wǒ Yīngwén, wǒ jiāo nǐ Zhōngwén.

We can learn from each other. You teach me English and I'll teach you Chinese.

## Unit 5 Traditional Attitudes and Modern Changes

### Introduction

#### Grammar Topics covered in this unit

1. The pattern **yě hǎo, ...yě hǎo**, “whether... or”
2. The adverb **cái** marking necessary condition.
3. Placement of specifier after a modifying phrase.
4. **Wèile**, “in order to.”
5. Comparison of two words for “afterwards,” **yǐhòu** and **hòulái**.

#### Functional Language Contained in this unit

1. Inquiring about customs in the culture.
2. Expressing that you don't understand something and asking another's interpretation of it.
3. Expressing that you don't see the value of something and asking another's point of view on it.
4. Expressing partial agreement, specifying one's reservations.

## References

## Reference List

## Vocabulary

bǎochí	保持	to keep, to preserve, to maintain
cái	才	only in that case, only under
dàduōshù(r)	大多数	the great majority
dài	代	generation (counter); era, (historical) period
dé	得	to get
dédao	得到	to get
duōshù(r)	多数	the majority of, most of
fādá	发达	to be (highly) developed, to be flourishing, to be prosperous
fēngsú	风俗	custom(s)
gǎibiàn	改变	to change
gōngyè	工业	industry
gōngshāngyè	工商业	industry and commerce
hǎochù	好处	benefit, advantage
hòulái	后来	later, afterwards
huó	活	to live; to become alive; to survive; to be live/alive/living; to be movable/moving
láodòng	劳动	to labor
láodòngli	劳动力	labor force, labor; able-bodied person
láoli	劳力	labor force, labor
míngbai	明白	to understand, to be clear on, to comprehend; to be clear, to be obvious
nóngyè	农业	agriculture
shāngyè	商业	commerce, business
shēngchǎn	生产	to produce; production
shōurù	收入	income, earnings
shuōfǎ	说法	way of saying a thing; statement, version, argument

sǐ	死	to die
tímù (tímù)	题目	topic, subject; title; (test) question, problem
tīng	听	to heed, to obey (someone's orders)
tóngyì	同意	to agree, to consent; agreement, consent
wèile	为了	in order to; for the purpose of; for the sake of
xíguàn	习惯	habit, custom, usual practice; to be accustomed to, to be used to
...yě hǎo, ...yě hǎo	。。。也 好，。。。也好	whether...or...; both...and...
yě jiù	也就	accordingly, correspondingly, so
yǒu hǎochù	有好处	to be beneficial, to be good (for)
zǎohūn	早婚	early marriage; child marriage; to marry as a child, to marry early
zhàngfu	丈夫	husband
zhàogu	照顾	to take of; care
zhèng	正	just, precisely, right

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1

zhèiliǎngnián: See Unit 4, Notes on №3

shōurù: “income, earnings” While in English you say “income” is “large” or “small,” in Chinese you say “much” (duō) or “little” (shǎo).

Tāde shōurù bù shǎo.	Her income isn't small. (lit., “little”)
Tāde shōurù bú tài duō.	
	His income isn't very high.

shēngchǎn: “to produce (agricultural or industrial products), to manufacture (industrial products); production, operation (of a plant)”

Nǐmen dōu shēngchǎn shénme?
What (all) do you produce?
Yǒu rén shuō xiāngxiāde shēngchǎn hé shēnghuó qíngkuàng hǎo yìdiǎn le.
Some people say that production and living conditions in the countryside have gotten somewhat better.
A: Wō zhǎo Lǐ Guóqiáng.

I'm looking for **Lǐ Guóqiáng**.

B: **Duibuqǐ, xiànzài shì shēngchǎn shíjiān, bù néng zhǎo rén.**

I'm sorry, it's production time now You can't visit people.

## Notes on №2

**míngbai**: “to be clear on, to understand,” literally, “bright-white” This is an adjectival verb which may or may not be followed by an object:

**Xiànzài wǒ míngbai le.**

Now I see.

**Wǒ míngbai nǐde yìsi.**

I understand what you mean.

**Gāngcǎi nǐ yòu gěi wǒ jiǎngle yíci, wǒ bǐjiào míngbai le.**

Now that you've just explained it to me again, I understand it better.

**Míngbai** can also be used to mean “to be clear, to be obvious,” as in:

**Zhèjiàn shìqing hěn míngbai.**

This matter is very clear/obvious.

**tīngmíngbai**: “to hear and understand” This is a compound verb of result with an adjectival verb, **míngbai** indicating the result. As just stated **míngbai** can mean either “to understand” or “to be clear,” but **tīngmíngbai** means only “to understand by listening,” NOT “to hear clearly.” Use **tīngqīngchū** to mean “to hear clearly.”

**Zuótiānde kè wǒ yìdiǎnr dōu tīngbumíngbai.**

I couldn't understand a thing in yesterday's class.

**Gāngcǎi lǎoshī shuōde wǒ méi tīngqīngchū.**

I didn't hear (clearly) what the teacher just said.

Another verb of perception which can take **míngbai** to show the result is **kàn**, “to see, to read.”

**Nǐ kàn méi kànmíngbai zhèige tímu?**

Did you understand the (test) question (when you read it)?

As a compound verb of result, **tīngmíngbai** can take the syllables **-de-** and **-bu-** to add the meaning of “can” and “can't.” (For the following example you need to know **wàiwén**, “foreign language,” and **bù guǎn**, “no matter.”)



Gāng xué yìzhǒng wàiwénde shíhou, bù guǎn tīngdemíng-bai tīngbumíngbai, duō tīng duì nǐ yíding yǒu hǎochù.

When you're just beginning to study a foreign language, it's good for you to listen a lot whether you understand or not.

**tímu:** This noun has three commonly used meanings: (1) “topic, subject,” (2) “title,” and (3) “question, problem” (e.g., on a test or in an exercise).

Wǒmen jīntiān huàn yíge tán huàde tímu, tán yitǎn shēnghuó fāngmiàn de shì.

Today let's change the topic of conversation and chat about things from daily life.

Zhèiběn shūde tímu shì Zhōngguó de Shèhuì.

The title of this book is Chinese Society.

Zuótiān kǎoshìde tímu nàme duō, wǒ zhēn bù zhīdao xiān zuò nǎige hǎo.

There were so many problems on yesterday's test, I didn't know which to do first.

Zhèiyangde tímu wǒ zài gāozhōng de shíhou dōu zuòguo, xiànzài dōu wàngle.<sup>a</sup>

I did this sort of problems when I was in senior high school, but now I have forgotten all about them.

<sup>a</sup>gāozhōng, “senior high, short for gāojí zhōngxué

### Notes on №3

... yě hǎo, ... yě hǎo: This pattern can mean either (1) “whether... or...”

or (2) “both. . . and....“

Nǐ qù yě hǎo, bú qù yě hǎo, wǒ yíding qù.

Whether or not you are going, I'm going for sure.

Tā tīng yě hǎo, bù tīng yě hǎo, zǒng yǒu yìtiān tā huì míngbaide.

Whether he listens or not, there'll be a day when he understands.

Tā lái yě hǎo, bù lái yě hǎo, zánmen xiān chī fàn ba.

Whether or not he comes, let's start eating.

Nǐ qù yě hǎo, huòshi wǒ qù yě hǎo, zǒng děi yǒu yíge rén qù.

Whether you go or I go, somebody has to go.

In the review dialogue, you will see an and example of the second meaning, “both... and...”

Búguò wǒ xiǎng, dàlù yě hǎo, Táiwān yě hǎo, jǐshínián lái dōu yǒule hěn dàde gǎibiàn.

But I think that both the mainland and Taiwan have undergone big changes in the past few decades.

Zhōngguó rén yě hǎo, Měiguó rén yě hǎo, dōu yīnggāi bǎochí tāmen de wénhuà chuántōng.

Chinese people and American people should both preserve their cultural heritage.

**cái**: You've already seen **cái** in talking about TIME (“not until”) as in **Tā zuótiān cái lái de**, “He didn't come until yesterday.” Here you see another use of **cái**, “not unless.” It points out a NECESSARY CONDITION.

Zhèjiàn shì,	tā guǎn	cái xíng.
As for this matter,	(if) he takes care of it,	only in that case will it be okay.
“it won't be okay unless he takes care of this matter.”		

Here are other examples:

Shíge	cái gòu.
“No fewer than ten is enough.”	
Zhèiyang	cái hǎo.
“Only in this way is it good.”	
Piányi	wǒ cái mǎi.
“I won't buy it unless it's cheap.”	
Nǐ qù	wǒ cái qù.
“I won't go unless you do.”	
Zhèitào pánziwǎn yǒu kèrén lái	wǒ cái yòng.
“I don't use this set of dishes unless I have guests.”	

**bǎochí**: “to keep, to preserve, to maintain”

Yàoshi nǐ néng hǎochí měitiān jì sige xīn zì, yīnián kéyǐ jì yìqiān duō ge zì le.<sup>a</sup>

If you can keep on memorizing four new characters a day, you'll be able to memorize over a thousand a year.

Zhōngguó shèhuì hěn duō dìfāng dōu bǎochí zhe lǎode fēngsú xíguǎn.

There are a lot of places in Chinese society which are still holding on to old customs and habits.

<sup>a</sup>Ji, “to remember,” can also mean “to commit to memory.”

## Notes on №4

**láodòngli**: “work force,” literally “labor-power”

Fù nǚ zài nóngcūn shì xiāngdāng zhòngyàode láodòngli.

In rural areas, women are a very important source of labor.

Láodòngli may also be used to refer to able-bodied individuals who do manual labor:

A: Tāmen jiā yǒu jǐge láodòngli?

How many able-bodied persons are there in their family?

B: Yǒu sìge bàn láodòngli.

There are four and a half. (The half may be a child or an older person who cannot do as much work.)

néngli	ability	rénli	manpower
diànlì	electric power	tīngli	hearing ability
huǒli	firepower; thermal	shuǐli	water power, hydraulic
dòngli	motivating power, force, power, impetus, driving force		

yě jiù: “accordingly,” literally “also then” Other translations for this are “correspondingly,” “so.” The tone of jiù is often neutral.

Tā duì wǒ hěn bú kèqì, wǒ yě jiù bù gēn tā shuō huà le.

He was very rude to me, so I won't talk with him anymore.

Wǒ jiào ta bú yào bāng wǒ xǐ wǎn, tā yíding yào xǐ, wǒ yě jiù ràng ta xǐ le.

I told him not to help me wash the dishes, but he insisted, so I let him wash them.

Wǒ shì liǎngnián yǐqián xuéde Zhōngwén kěshì yìzhí méi jīhuì shuō, yě jiù wàng le.

I studied Chinese two years ago, but I never had the chance to speak it, so I forgot it.

Wǒ xiǎng qù, kěshì méi biérén yào qù, yě jiù suàn le.

I wanted to go, but nobody else did, so I said the heck with it.

Wǒ gāng xué Zhōngwénde shíhou, hěn zhùyì fāyīn, shíjiān chángle yě jiù bù guǎn le.

When I first started studying Chinese I paid a lot of attention to pronunciation, but as time went on, I stopped paying attention to it.

hǎochù: “benefit, advantage” You may also hear hǎochù (Neutral-tone -chu). The phrase yǒu hǎochù means “to be advantageous, to be beneficial.”

Nǐ tiāntiān dōu hē jiǔ yǒu shénme hǎochù.

What good does it do you to drink every day.

Use the pattern **duì...yǒu hǎochù** for “to be good for..., to be of benefit to...”:

**A: Yǒu rén shuō hē píjiǔ duì shēntǐ yǒu hǎochù.**

Some people say that it is good for the health (body) to drink beer.

**B: Bù yíding ba, wǒ yǒu xuěyā gāo, duì wǒ méi shenme hǎochù.**

Not necessarily! I have high blood pressure. It’s not good for me.

**Wǒmen yíkuàir niàn shū duì liǎngge rén dōu yǒu hǎochù.**

It would be advantageous to both of us to study together.

### Notes on №5

**zài nàr xiě zìde nèige rén**: “the person writing over there” Notice once again that the preferred word order is to put the specifier-number-counter between the modifying phrase and the noun.

Modifying phrase	Specifier-Number-Counter	Noun
xiě zìde	nèige	rén
hěn hǎo kànde	nèi sānge	nǚhár

It is also possible to put the **nèige** or **zhèige** at the head of the phrase (**nèige xiě zìde rén**) but especially in longer phrases it sounds better to keep **nèige** or **zhèige** close to the noun, as in the Reference List sentence above.

**zhèng**: “just, right, exactly, precisely.” Like other adverbs, **zhèng** is placed in front of a verb.

**Wǒ zhèng yào zhǎo nǐ shāngliang zhèijiàn shìqing.**

I was just looking for you to talk about this matter.

**Nǐ chuān zhèige yánsè zhèng héshì.**

This color is just right for you (to wear).

**Wǒ yào kànde zhèng shì zhèiběn shū.**

This is just the book I want to read.

**Zuótiān lái kàn nǐde zhèng shì zhèige rén.**

This is precisely the person who came to see you yesterday.

**Zhèng shì yīnwei zhèige, tā cái zǒu le.**

That's precisely why he left.

Jiù shì is more colloquial than zhèng shì. For 5B, you could also say Jiù shì tā

### Notes on №6

**gōngshāngyè**: “industry and commerce” This is a compound of **gōngyè** “industry” and **shāngyè**, “commerce.” **Gōngyè** and **nóngyè** can also combine as **gōngnóngyè**, as in **gōngnóngyè shēngchǎn**, “industrial and agricultural production.”

**fādá**: “to be developed, to be well-developed; to be prosperous, to be flourishing” This is an adjectival verb, that is, it describes a state or condition. A literal translation of the Reference List sentence above might be: “(For) industry-commerce to be flourishing, there is what benefit?” In addition to describing industry, **fādá** can be used to describe a person’s muscular build or a developed country.

Zhèige guójiā hěn fādá.

This country is very prosperous.

Tāmen nàrde wénhuà hěn fādá.

The culture there is very developed.

Don’t confuse the state verb **fādá** with the action verb **fāzhǎn**, which can take an object, e.g., **fāzhǎn nóngyè**, “to develop agriculture.”

**náli dōu...**: “everywhere” Here you see another example of a question word (here **náli** “where”) used to mean “every...” or “any...” In order to get such a meaning, you must use **náli** (or **shéi**, **shenme**, etc.) before **dōu** or **yě**. Notice that the question word can come in various places in the sentence.

Q: Tā xiàtiān xiǎng qù shénme dìfang?

Where is he going this summer?

B: Tā shénme dìfang dōu bù qù.

He is not going anywhere.

Q: Shéi yào qù nèibiānr kāi huì?

Who is going to the meeting there?

A: Shéi dōu qù.

Everybody is going.

Zěnmē zuò dōu bù xíng.

Any way you do it, it just doesn’t work.

**tóngyì**: “to agree, to consent; agreement, consent” As a verb, the meaning of **tóngyì** is the same as in English. But there is a difference in how you say WHO it is you agree with. In Chinese, you don’t agree with a person; you agree with an idea, opinion, statement, etc. In sentence 6B, the object **zhèi yìdiǎn** is up front in the sentence. Notice the placement of the object in the sentences below.

Tāde xiǎngfa nǐ tóngyì ma?

Do you agree with his opinion?

Wǒ tóngyì tāde kǎnfā.

I agree with him (his ideas).

CAUTION: Often speakers of English want to say **gēn...tóngyì** because we say “agree with...” in English, but there is no such form in Chinese. Instead, use the last example above. **Tóngyì** may also be directly followed by a clause, as in

Tā bù tóngyì tāmen jiēhūn.

He doesn't approve of (OR won't agree to) their getting married.

As a noun, **tóngyì** means “agreement” or “consent.”

Wǒmen xūyào tāmen de tóngyì cái néng zuò zhèjiàn shì.

We need their consent before we can do this.

## Notes on №7

This exchange illustrates that old ways of thinking persist in China today. Although in urban areas an increasing number of women are self-sufficient, great variations in social and economic conditions are starkly obvious in a comparison of city and country life.

**zǎohūn**: “early marriage” This can refer to two different things, sometimes causing confusion.

First, it refers to the Chinese practice of marrying a young girl off long before she was an adult in order to bring some money into her parents' home and to add to the number of able-bodied workers in her in-laws' home. Her “husband” was also very young—as young as twelve to fourteen years old, and often younger than she.

Second, these days **zǎohūn** can simply mean marrying at a somewhat younger age than is normally expected. This is the meaning in exchange 7.

Èrshísìsuì jiēhūn zěnmé néng shuō shì zǎohūn?

How can you say getting married at twenty-four is early marriage?

Zhōngguó guòqù dàduōshù rén dōu zǎohūn.

In the past most people in China married at an early age.

**sǐ**: “to die” This is a process verb, like **bìng** “to become ill, to get sick,” and therefore corresponds to the English “to become dead” rather than “to be dead.” **Sǐ** is a process verb; it describes an instantaneous change of state. In English one can say of a person with a terminal illness that he “is dying,” but this cannot be translated directly into Chinese. Rather, one must say **Tā kuài (yào) sǐ le**, “He is about to die,” or **Tā huóbuliǎo duō jiǔ le**, “He won't live much longer,” or **Tā huóbucháng le**, “He hasn't long to live.”

Tīngshuō Lǎo Liūde fùqīn sǐ le.

I heard that **Lǎo Liu**'s father has died.

The verb **sǐ** is not usually negated with **bù**, but rather with **méi** or **hái méi** (even when it corresponds to English “to be dead”).

**Nèi shíhòu, tā fùqīn méi sǐ, kéyǐ chángcháng zhàogu tā.**

At that time, his father was alive, and was able to take care of him.

**Sǐ** can “be used directly” before a noun as an adjective meaning “dead.” **Shǐ sǐde** may be used to mean “is dead.”

**Zhèi shì yítiao sǐ yú.**

This is a dead fish.

**Zhèitiao yú shì sǐde.**

This fish is a dead one OR This fish is dead.

**Sǐ** may be considered blunt and uncouth or inauspicious when used for people. To be respectful, use **guòqu le**, “passed away,” or **qùshì le**, “eft the world.” Sometimes you can avoid saying **sǐ** by using **hái zài** or **hái huózhe**, “still living,” e.g., **Nèi shíhòu tā yéye hái zài/hái huózhe**, “At that time, his grandfather was still living.” (See Notes on No. 15-)

In some parts of traditional China, the usage of **sǐ** was affected by superstition. This is especially true in Taiwan. Even today, during the lunar New Year holidays, some traditionalists take pains to avoid uttering **sǐ**, “to die,” lest they be plagued by bad luck and death in the clan for the next twelve months.

In Taiwan, the superstition extends to the similar-sounding word **sì**, “four.” Some hospitals have no fourth floor; **sìlóu**, “fourth floor,” could too easily become **sǐlóu**, “death floor,” in rapid speech. For a similar reason, some motorists refuse to drive cars with license plates hearing the number 4.

And if money is given as a wedding present, the figure must not contain the number 4, or the donor would be guilty of wishing death on the couple.

**zhàogu**: “to look after, to take care of; care” **Yǒu zhàogu** can mean “to be well taken care of, to receive good treatment.” (For the first example, you need to know that **yòuéryuán** means “kindergarten.”)

**Háizimen zài jiāli bǐ zài yòuéryuánli yǒu zhàogu.**

The children get better care at home than they would at kindergarten.

**Tā yíge rén zài jiā, méiyǒu zhàogu bù xíng.**

With his being all alone at home, it won't do for him to be without care.

**Tā bìngde hěn lihai, xūyào tèbié-(de) zhàogu.**

He is very ill and needs special care.

**Tāde háizi duì tā hěn hǎo, tāde shēnghuó yǒu zhàogu.**

His children are very good to him; his daily needs are well taken care of.

## Notes on №8

**duōshù(r)**: “majority, most,” literally, “the larger number” **Dàduōshù(r)** is “the great majority.” In many instances, there isn’t much difference in meaning between **duōshù** and **dàduōshù**. **Duōshù** can be used to modify a noun, as in **duōshùdǎng**, “the majority party,” or **duōshù mínzú**, “majority nationalities.” [The opposite of **duōshù** is **shǎoshù**, “minority.” See Traveling in China module, Unit 1.]

**bú shi**: “it is not the case that” To translate the subject “not many people” into Chinese, you need to use a verb (**shi** or **yǒu**). You can’t put **bù** directly before **hěn duō rén**. Other examples:

Nèige dìfang, bú shi nǐ xiǎng qù jiù keyì qù(de), nǐ děi xiān dédao tóngyì.

You can’t go there any time you want You need to get approval first.

Bú shi wǒ bú yuànyì gēn nǐ jiēhūn , shi wǒ fùmǔ bù tóngyì.

It’s not that I don’t want to marry you; it’s that my parents don’t approve.

**dé**: “to get, to receive” **Dé** is much more limited than English “to get.” Use **dé** only for passively receiving a prize, a degree, a grade, and the like. (For these examples, you need to know **kǎoshì**, “test”; **yōu**, “excellent” Fused in mainland schools like the grade “A” in the U.S.!: **fēn**, “points”; **jiǎng**, “prize”; **shuósì**, “Master’s degree.”)

Zuótiānde kǎoshì wǒ déle ge “you.”

I got an “A” on yesterday’s test.

Tā déle yībǎi fēn.

He got 100 (points).

Shéi dé jiǎng le?

Who won the prize?

Tā shi nǎinián déde shuósì?

What year did he receive his Master’s degree?

**Dè** is also used for “contracting” diseases. (in the second example, **lánwěiyán** is “appendicitis.”)

Tā dé bìng le, bù néng qù le.

He came down with something and cannot go.

Tā déle lánwěiyán, děi mǎshàng kāi dāo.

He got appendicitis and had to be operated on immediately.

**dédao**: “to receive, to get, to gain, to obtain” Add the ending **-dào** to the verb **de** to get the meaning of successful obtaining (cf. **jièdao**, “to successfully borrow,” in Unit 1).

Tā dédao hùzhào yǐhòu mǎshàng jiù zǒu le.



He left immediately after getting his passport.

Tā gēn ta jiēhūn, jiù shì xiǎng dédao tāde qián.

He only married her to get her money.

Hěn duō rén débudào zìyóu.

Many people are unable to obtain freedom.

Tā cóng zhèli débudào shenme hǎochù.

He won't be able to gain anything from this.

“To get” in English often means to actively seek to obtain a thing. In those cases, do not use **dé(dào)**. Use such verbs as **ná/nádào/nálai**, **zhǎo/zhǎodào/zhǎolai**, **nòngdao/nònglai**, or a more specific verb such as **mǎi**, **yào** (“to ask for”), **jiè**; and **qǐng(lai)** or **jiào(lai)** for “getting” people.

### Notes on №9

**wèile**: “in order to, for the purpose of, for the sake of.” A phrase with **wèile** may come at the very front of the sentence or after the subject.

Tā wèile yào dào Zhōngguó qù gōngzuò, suóyì xiànzài zài xué Zhōngwén ne.

Because he wants to go to China to work, he is studying Chinese now.

Wèile kàn diànyǐng, tā méi qù shàng kè.

He didn't go to class so he could go see a movie.

**Wèile** may also come after **shi**:

Zhèjiàn shì dōu shì wèile tā.

This was done all for him.

This prepositional verb covers a range of meanings falling under the categories of (1) benefit, (2) purpose, or (3) motive. It is sometimes hard to pinpoint exactly which of these meanings is the one expressed by a particular sentence.

- Benefit, sake

Wǒ wèile tā cái lái.

I came only for his sake.

Wǒ wánquán shì wèile nǐ.

I am (doing this) entirely for your sake.

- Purpose, goal

Wèile qián, tā shénme dōu zuǒdechūlái.

For money, he is liable to do anything
Wèile mǎi zhèiběn shū, tā quèliè liúgè shūdiàn.
He went to six bookstores in order to get this book.
Nǐ pǎo zhème yuǎnde lù, jiù shì wèile nà zhèizhāng piào?
You came all this way just to get that ticket?
Wèile bǎochí niánqīng, tā yòng niūnǎi xǐzǎo.
She washes with (cow's) milk to preserve her youth.

Wèile yào is a common combination which often means the same as wèile:

Wèile yào qù kàn péngyou, jīntiān wǒ děi zǎo yidiǎnr xià bān.
In order to go visit a friend, I have to leave work a little early today.
Wèile yào niàn shū, wǒ zhèige Xīngqītiān bù chūqu le.
I'm not going out this Sunday so that I can study.
Wèile bú yào tài lèi, wǒ měitiān dōu zuǒ chē shàng bān.
In order not to get too tired, I take the bus to work every day.
Wèile néng dúlì shēnghuō, tā hěn zǎo jiù líkāi fùmǔ le.
In order to live independently, she left her parents very early.

- Motive or reason for some act, thought, or feeling

Wèile zhèijiàn shì, wǒ juéde hěn bù hǎo yìsi.
I feel very embarrassed about (because of) this matter.
Wèile zhèijiàn shì, tā yíyè dōu shuìbuzháo jiào.
He couldn't get to sleep all night on account of this matter.
Wǒ jiù shì wèi(le) zhèijiàn shì lái de.
I have come precisely because of this matter.
Jiù wèi(le) zhème yidiǎnr shì, nǐ jiù shēngqì la?
You got angry over such a small thing?

Even though you will find that wèile is sometimes idiomatically translated as “because,” as in these last examples, it is still not completely a synonym of yīnwèi. When you want to say “because,” you should use yīnwèi. When you want to say “for the sake of” or “for the purpose of,” use wèile.

## Notes on №10

**fēngsú**: “custom” The definition of **fēngsú** in a Chinese dictionary reads: “the sum total of etiquette, usual practices, etc., adhered to over a long period of time in the development of society.” Compare this with **xíguàn**: “behavior, tendency or social practice cultivated over a long period of time, and which is hard to change abruptly.” Notice that **xíguàn** may refer to the practices or habits of either an individual or a community, whereas **fēngsú** refers only to those of a community.

Guòqù Zhōngguó yǒu zǎohūnde fēngsú.

In the past China had the custom of early (child) marriage.

**hòulái**: “afterwards, later” Both **hòulái** and **yǐhòu** are time nouns which can be translated as “afterwards” or “later.” But there are differences between them:

1. Differences in patterns: **Yǐhòu** can either follow another element (translated as “after...”) or it can be used by itself.

Tā lái le yǐhòu, wǒmen jiù zǒu le.

After he came, we left.

Yǐhòu tā méiyǒu zài lái guo.

Afterwards, he never came back again.

**Hòulái** can only be used by itself.

Hòulái tā jiù shuì jiào le.

Afterwards he went to sleep.

2. Differences in meaning: Both **yǐhòu** and **hòulái** may be used to refer to the past. For example, either **yǐhòu** or **hòulái** may be used in the sentence:

Kāishǐde shíhou tā bù zhīdào zěnme bàn, kěshì hòulái/yǐhòu xiǎngchūle yíge hǎo bànfa

In the beginning, he didn’t know what to do, but later he thought up a good way.

But if you want to say “afterwards” or “later” referring to the future, you can only use **yǐhòu**. When it refers to the future time, **yǐhòu** can be translated in various ways, depending on the context:

Yǐhòude shíqing, děng yǐhòu zài shuō.

Let’s wait until the future to see about future matters.

Yǐhòu nǐ yǒu kòng, qǐng chánglái wán.

In the future when you have time, please come over more often.

Wǒ yǐhòu zài gàosu nǐ.

I'll tell you later on.
Tāde hāizi shuōle, yǐhòu tā yào gēn yíge Riběn rén jiéhūn.
His child said that someday, he wants to marry a Japanese.

Usage Note: **Yǐhòu** has the literal meaning of “after that.” It implies that some past event functions as a dividing point in time, a sort of time boundary. **Yǐhòu** refers to the period from the end of that time boundary up to another point of reference (usually the time of speaking). It is often translated as “since.”

Tā zhǐ xiěle yīběn shū, yǐhòu zài méi xiěguo.
He only wrote one book, and hasn't written any since (if he is still alive)
OR
He wrote only one book, and after that never wrote another. (if he is dead)

**gǎibiàn**: “to change; change”

Wǒ bù míngbai tā wèishénme háishi bù néng gǎibiàn tāde guānniàn.
I don't understand why he still can't change his ideas (way of thinking).

**Biàn**, which you learned in Unit 3, can be used only as a verb, not as a noun. **Biàn** and **gǎibiàn** may be interchangeable in a small number of contexts, but there is an essential difference between them: **Biàn** is a process verb, “to become different,” and **gǎibiàn** is an action plus process, “to alter in such a way as to become different.” This can cause English-speaking students confusion because the English verb “change” covers both these meanings. Here are some examples:

Tāde xiǎngfǎ biàn le.
His way of thinking changed (became different).
Wǒmen yīnggāi gǎibiàn zhèige qíngkuāng.
We should change this state of affairs (alter this state of affairs so that it becomes different).

### Notes Additional Vocabulary

**láodòng**: The verb “to do physical labor, to labor, to work” or the noun “physical labor, manual labor.”

shēngchǎn láodòng	productive labor
láodòng shōurù	income from work

**huó**: “to live” **huó**, **shēnghuó**, and **zhù** may all be translated as “to live” but actually have different meanings. **Huó** basically refers to the body's having life or breath, and is the opposite of **sǐ**. **Shēnghuó** emphasizes day-to-day living; it is used mostly when describing the needs or quality of daily life. **Zhù**

is used to talk about residence in a particular place, either as one's home, or temporarily (**zhù lǚguān**, “to stay at a hotel,” and **zhù yuàn**, “to stay in the hospital”).

Yú zài shuǐlǐ cái néng huó.
Fish can live only in water.
Nèige dìfāngde rén kěyǐ huó dào hěn lǎo.
The people there live to be very old.
Tā huóde hěn cháng.
He had a long life.
Tā dàgài huóbucháng le.
He probably won't live much longer.

**Huó** often means “to live” in the sense of to survive.

Tā jìn yīyuànde shíhòu, shéi dōu xiǎng tā bù néng huó le, kěshì tā yòu huóle yìnián cái sǐ.
When he went into the hospital, no one thought he could live (survive), but he lived another year before he died.

**Huó** can modify a noun directly, for example, **huó yú**, “live fish,” **huó rén**, “living person.” But to say, “is he alive?” you must use **huó** with the ending **-zhe**: **Tā huózhe ma?**

**Huó** can also mean “movable, moving,” as in: **huózi**, “movable type”; **huóyè**, “loose-leaf” [**huóyèjiāzi** is “loose-leaf binder”!]; **huóshuǐ**, “flowing water.”

**xíguàn**: As a noun, this means “habit” or, in a more general sense, “custom, usual practice.”

Tǎng zài chuángshàng kàn shū shì yíge bù hǎode xíguàn. <sup>a</sup>
It's a bad habit to read in bed.
Wǒ yǒu zǎo qǐde xíguàn.
I'm an early riser. (Lit., “I have the habit of getting up early.”)
Tàitai bù xǐhuan tā xiānsheng bànàyè yīhòu cái huí jiāde xíguàn.
The wife doesn't like her husband's habit of not coming home until after midnight.
Zhèige jùzi bù zhīdào wèishenme zènme shuō, zhèi jiù shì wǒmende xíguàn.
I don't know why this sentence is said this way. It's just the way we say it.

<sup>a</sup>chuáng, “bed”

As a verb, **xíguàn** means “to get/be used to, to become/be accustomed to”:

Jīntiān shì wǒ dìyītiān dài yǎnjìng, wǒ hái méi xíguàn. Wǒ xīwàng hěn kuài jiù kěyǐ xíguàn le.
--

Today is my first day wearing glasses and I'm not used to them yet. I hope I can get used to them quickly.

Wǒ hěn bù xíguàn chī zhèrde fān.

I'm not at all used to the food here.

Wǒ yǐjīng xíguàn zhème zuò le, hěn nán gǎi.

I'm already used to doing it this way It's very hard to change.

**tīng**: This word, which you already know as “to listen,” can also mean “to heed, to obey” someone’s suggestions, directions, or orders.

Tā shuōde yǒu dàolǐ, nǐ yīnggāi tīng tāde huà.

What he says makes sense. You should listen to him (do as he says).

Wǒ gàosu tā yīnggāi zhèiyang zuò, tā bù tīng.

I told him he should, do this, but he wouldn't listen.

Hǎo ba, tīng nīde.

Okay, I'll do as you say. (**nīde** is short for **nīde huà**.)

## Unit 6 Politics and Culture

### Introduction

#### Grammar Topics covered in this unit

1. -de huà, “if,” “in case.”
2. -Choosing between -guo and -le.
3. More on zài, “in the midst of.”
4. Bù guǎn... , “no matter.”
5. Nǎr used in rhetorical questions to make a denial.
6. Reduplicating adjectival verbs for vividness.
7. Qù and lái expressing purpose.
8. (Amount of time) lái, “in the past...,” “over the past...”

#### Functional Language content in this unit

1. Requesting to speak with someone.
2. Making a comment in order to verify a piece of information.
3. Expressing that you are disturbed by a troublesome circumstance.
4. Expressing scandalized disapproval.

## References

## Reference List

## Vocabulary

ài	爱	to love
àishang	爱上	to fall in love with
bǎohù	保护	to protect
bù guǎn	不管	no matter (what, whether, etc.)
bú xiàng huà	不象话	to be ridiculous, to be outrageous, to be absurd (talk, acts, etc.)
cānjiā	参加	to participate in, to take part in, to Join, to attend
chéngshì	城市	city; urban
dǎng	党	(political) party
dǎ zì	大字	to type (on a typewriter)
-de huà	的话	if; in case; supposing that
duǎnpiān	短篇	short (stories, articles)
értóng	儿童	child (formal word)
fēn	分	to divide, to separate, to split
fēnkāi	分开	to separate, to split up
gànbu	干部	cadre
Gòngchǎndǎng	共产党	the Communist Party
gùshi	故事	story
hèn	恨	to hate, to loathe, to detest (a)
Hóngwèibīng	红卫兵	Red Guard; the Red Guards
jiārù	加入	to join
jiěfàng	解放	to liberate, to emancipate; liberation
jièyì	介意	to mind, to take offense
jíjí máng máng	急急忙忙	in a big hurry
jímáng	急忙	to be hasty, to be hurried
...lái	。。。来	for the past...(amount of time)



lǐngdǎo	领导	to lead, to direct, to exercise leadership (over); leadership; leader, leading cadre
nóngcūn	农村	country, rural area; rural;village
rù	入	to enter; to Join
rù Tuán	入团	to Join the Communist Youth League (Gòngqīng-tuán or Gòngchǎnzhǔyì Qīngniántuán)
-shang	上	verb ending indicating starting and continuing
shàng xué	上学	to go to school; to attend school
shìjiè	世界	world
shìjièshàng	世界上	in the world, in the whole world
shíxíng	实行	to practice, to carry out, to put into effect, to implement
-tuán	团	group, society
Tuán	团	the (Communist Youth) League
-xià	-下	under
xià qí	下棋	to play chess
yuányīn	原因	reason, cause
zhèngcè	政策	policy
zhèngfǔ	政府	government

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1

**gùshi**: “story,” only in the sense of a short, fictional tale. Remember that another word you have learned, **xiǎoshuō**, can also be used for “story” in the sense of a literary work. Also take special note that a news “story” should be translated as **xīnwén** (NOT **gùshi**).

“To tell stories” is **jiǎng** (OR **shuō**) **gùshi** (don’t use the verb **gàosu**).

Nǐmen zhè yǒu shénme értóng gùshi ma?

Do you have any children’s stories here? (in a bookstore)

Zhèipiān gùshi xiěde zhēn hǎo.

This story is very well written.

**Gùshi** may take as a counter either **-ge**, **-duàn**, or **-piān** (for written stories).

**-de huà**: “if,” “in case,” or “supposing that” Used at the end of a clause which tells a hypothetical situation, often in combination with another word for “if” (**yàoshi**, **rúguǒ**, etc.) earlier in the same clause.

Yàoshi nǐ bú qùde huà, wǒ yě bú qù.

If you don't go, I won't go.

Chī fàn chībǎo le, yàoshi zài chī de huà, dùzi jiu bù shūfu le.

If you eat more after you're already full, your stomach won't feel well.

Wǒ qīlai tài zǎode huà, wǒ jiù huì juéde lèi.

If I get up too early I feel tired.

Yào shì wǒde huà, wǒ bú nàme zuò.

If it had been me, I wouldn't have done it that way.

**xià qí**: “play chess” This is actually a general word for several different kinds of chess or other board games. [Specific names do exist for each game: **xiàngqí**, “Chinese chess”; **tiàoqí**, “(the Chinese form of) checkers”; **wéiqí**, “go” (a board game); **guójì xiàngqí** (PRC) or **xīyáng qí** (Taiwan), “international or Western chess”; etc.]

Nǐ gēn shéi xià qí?

Who did you play chess with?

Tā xià qí xiàde hěn hǎo.

He plays chess very well.

## Notes on №2

**jiěfàng**: “to liberate, to emancipate; liberation” This word is applied in Communist ideology to the overthrow of what is considered “reactionary” rule. In China today **jiěfàng** may be used to refer to the actual occupation of an individual area by Communist forces at any time from 1945 up until 1950 (when the administrative authority of the Communist government had finally extended throughout the mainland and **Hǎinán** Island). For example, if someone says

Wǒmen zhèige dìfāng jiěfàngde wǎn.

Our area was liberated late (in the revolution).

this means that Communist forces reached their area at a late date (perhaps in late 1949 or early 1950). **Jiěfàng** may also be used to refer to the end of “China’s War of Liberation,” marked by the official proclamation of the People’s Republic of China on October 1, 1949. For example:

Jiěfàng yīhòude jǐnián, wǒ zhù zài Shànghǎi.

For the first few years after liberation I lived in Shànghǎi.

**Gòngchǎndǎng**: “the Communist party,” literally “share-property party” In a mainland China context, the Communist party is often referred to simply as **Dǎng**, “the Party.” The official name is **Zhōngguó Gòngchǎndǎng**, “Chinese Communist Party (CCP).”

zhèngcè: “policy” (especially of a government)

Zuijīnde zhèngcè gǎibiàn le. The (government’s) policy has changed recently.

### Notes on №3

rù: “to enter” Rù is most often used in literary Chinese. In the spoken language, it is mainly used in a handful of set phrases like rù xué, “to enter school, to start school,” or rù yuàn, “to be hospitalized.” Otherwise, “to enter” is expressed by the verbs jìn, jìnlai, or jìnqu.

In the set phrases rù Tuán, “to join the Communist Youth League,” and rù Dǎng, “to Join the Communist Party,” rù is actually short for the verb jiārù (No. 14 on the Reference List), which means “to join” an organization.

Tuán: “the League,” short for Zhōngguó Gòngchǎnzhǔyì Qīngniántuán, “China Communist Youth League,” also abbreviated as Gòngqīngtuán. This is a nationwide organization for working youth and students between the ages of fourteen and twenty-five. Its aim is to cultivate members’ political awareness and their cultural and scientific knowledge.

The League’s history goes back to 1922, but its name, goals, and influence have changed over the years. During the Cultural Revolution, the functions of the League were largely taken over by the Red Guards (see note on next page), but in 1973 the League began to recover its former influence.

Today, the League organizes political study sessions as well as educational and recreational activities at schools, universities, factories, and other places of work. The League also provides leadership for the Young Pioneers (Shàoxiānduì), an organization for children from seven to fourteen.

The connection between the Communist Party and the League is a close one, although the League is independently organized and has its own central committee with a national congress that meets periodically.

Policy leadership for the League comes from the Youth Department of the Communist Party Central Committee. By no means do all League members go on to become Party members, but leadership experience in League activities makes many likely candidates for later Party membership.

cānjiā: “to Join; to participate in, to take part in; to attend” Cānjiā refers to the action of joining a group or joining in an activity. It also means “to participate” or “to take part in.” Cānjiā is also the word to use for “to attend” a meeting, convention, or other gathering (but not a play, film, or other non-participatory event).

Zhōngguó cānjiā Shìjiè Yínháng le.

China has Joined the World Bank.

Wǒmen jìhuà xià xīngqī kāi ge wǎnhuì, nǐ xiǎng bu xiǎng cānjiā?<sup>a</sup>

We’re planning to have an evening party next week. Would you like to join in?

Dàjiā dōu yīnggāi cānjiā láodòng.

Everyone should participate in (physical) labor.

Tā cānjiāle yíge xùnliànbān.<sup>b</sup>

He is attending a training class OR He attended a training class, (depends on context)

Wǒ yào qù cānjiā míngtiān xiàwude huì.

I'm going to attend the meeting tomorrow afternoon.

<sup>a</sup>wǎnhuì, “evening party”

<sup>b</sup>xùnlìānbān, “training class”

rùguo Tuán, cānjiāguo Hóngwèibīng: You were introduced to the marker **-guo** in the Biographic Information module, with sentences like *Nǐ cóngqiān láiguo ma?*, “Have you ever been here before?”

You also saw that **-guo** can provide by itself the meaning of “ever”: *Tā qùguo Zhōngguó ma?*, “Has he ever been to China?” In exchange 3, the speakers use **-guo** with the meaning of “ever” having done something.

Why use **-guo** and not **-le** in these sentences? A helpful rule of thumb is to use **-guo** in Chinese when you would say “ever” in English. But **-guo** and “ever” do not always correspond; as you can see in sentence 3B, the English does not contain the word “ever.”

The reason speaker B decided to use **-guo** there rather than **le** is that he knows *Lǎo Wáng*'s son is no longer in the Red Guards. Using **-guo** rather than **le** implies that the Joining (*cānjiā*) was later undone—that the son is not a Red Guard now.

The verb *cānjiā* tells an action that results in a new state: the action of joining results in the state of being part of something. Similar verbs include *zuò*, “to sit,” (the action of sitting results in the state of being seated) and *chuān* (the action of putting on clothes results in the state of the clothes being on).

Process verbs as well show the change from one state to a new state, like *bìng* (to go from wellness to sickness), *dào* (to go from not being here to being here). When **-guo** is used with these kinds of verbs it often implies that the resulting state is no longer in effect.<sup>3</sup>

*Hóngwèibīng*: “the Red Guards,” lit., “Red Guard-Soldiers” It was in *Běijīng* in 1966 that middle school and college students first began to form groups calling themselves *Hóngwèibīng*.

At that time CCP Chairman *Máo Zédōng* had been trying with little success to stir up a mass movement against “revisionist” elements in the Chinese Communist Party, and to infuse the country with a new revolutionary spirit. The newly formed Red Guard groups first directed their efforts at reactionary leaders in the schools.

After *Máo* publicly expressed his support for the Red Guards, their movement quickly grew into a major force in the first stage of the Cultural Revolution. Their opposition to *Liú Shàoqí*, then Chairman (head of state) of the PRC, was instrumental in his downfall. Before long, groups of Red Guards were crisscrossing China by train, bus, any means of transportation—many on foot—to spread the concepts of the Cultural Revolution.

The scale of these excursions is difficult to imagine; Red Guards, other student groups, and tagalongs—altogether millions of young people—were to be seen everywhere, bringing *Běijīng*'s political movements to the rest of the country.

After their inception, the thousands of Red Guard groups nationwide had difficulty forming a cohesive organization, and after the first three years of the Cultural Revolution (1966 to 1968) their power began to wane. They remained a prestige group, however, until their official abolishment in 1978.

Outside observers, as well as many Chinese, had mixed opinions of the Red Guards. That they were a major force in stirring the country to join in the movements of the time is beyond question. But the zealous excesses and cruelties of many Red Guards toward people of “undesirable” political or family backgrounds are equally well known.

<sup>3</sup>*Guo* may also be used when the speaker does not know for sure whether the state is still in effect. But do not use **-guo** when you know for sure that the state is still in effect. For example, if you know that a person has come here and is still here, you can only say *Tā lái le*.

**Notes on №4**

ài: “to love” (state verb)

Wǒ xiǎng tā shì zhēnde ài nǐ.

I think she really loves you.

Tā yòu ài xuéxí, òu ài láodòng, shì ge hǎo tóngzhì.

She loves study and loves physical labor. She is a good comrade.

Ài can also mean “to like, to be fond of” a food, hobby, sport, activity, as in the following examples: etc. It is usually used before a verb, as in the following examples:

Wǒ zuì ài chī tángcù páigǔ le!

I just love sweet and sour spareribs!

Tā zhēn ài jiǎng huà.

He really loves to talk.

A: Nǐ ài kàn diànyǐng ma?

Do you like to go to the movies?

B: Bú ài.

No.

Wǒ fùqīn ài xià qí.

My father is fond of (playing) chess.

àishang: “to fall in love (with someone)”

Zài zhèige xuéxiào shàng kè yíge yuè yǐhòu, tā jiu àishang tāde Zhōngwén lǎoshī le.

After attending classes at this school for one month, he fell in love with his Chinese teacher.

Cóng dìyīcì kànjian ta, wǒ jiu àishang ta le.

I fell in love with her right from the first time I saw her.

Wǒ zhīdao nǐ bú ài wǒ le, xīhuanshang Wáng Cheng le.

I know you don't love me anymore; you've taken a liking to Wáng Chéng.

Particularly in Beijing speech, the ending -shang added to some verbs has the meaning of starting and then continuing, “to set about (doing something), to fall into the habit of (doing something), to take to (doing something).”

Tāmen yòu xiàshang qí le.

They have started to play chess again OR They're back playing chess again.

Nǐ yòu chōushang yān le?!<sup>a</sup>

You're smoking again?!

Rénjia shuì jiào le, nǐ zěnmē chàngshang gē le?<sup>b</sup>

There are people trying to sleep. What are you doing singing?!

<sup>a</sup> chōu yān, "to smoke"

<sup>b</sup> chàng gē, "to sing (songs)" (a verb plus general object, like niàn shū)

Kànshang means "to take a fancy to, to settle on":

Wǒ kànshang nèizhǒng chē le, děng wǒ yǒule qián wǒ yíding mǎi yiliàng.

I've taken a fancy to that kind of car. When I have money I'll certainly "buy one.

àishang Xiǎo Wáng le: A new-situation le is extremely common when presenting an event as "hot news," as the speaker does in this sentence. Hot news should, after all, be presented to the listener as something he doesn't already know—as a new situation. (For the second example you need to know zǒngtǒng, "president," and fǎngwèn, "to visit.")

Wǒ zhǎodào yige xīnde gōngzuò le!

I've found a new job!

Jīntiān bàozhǐshàng shuō Měiguó zǒngtǒng yào dào Zhōngguó lái fǎngwèn le.

It says in today's paper that the president of the U.S. is going to come visit China!

Of course, this le is sometimes optional. It may be omitted in the above two examples, but not in sentence UA.

hèn: "to hate," only in the literal meaning of "to loathe, to detest, to have intense ill feelings toward"

Wǒ hèn nèiyijīā rén.

I hate that whole family.

Wǒ hèn ta gěi wǒ dàilaile nàme duō máfan.

I hate him for bringing me so much trouble.

Wǒ zuì hèn zuò zhèizhǒng shì.

I detest doing this sort of thing most of all.

"To hate" in the milder sense of "to dislike" or "to wish to avoid" is expressed in Chinese by other words. (For the last example below you need to know tǎoyàn, "to dislike, to be disgusted with.")

Zǎoshang wǒ zhēn bú yào qīlai.

I hate to get up in the morning.

Zhèiyang máfan nǐ, wǒ zhēn bù hǎo yìsi.

I hate to put you to all this trouble.

Xiàng tā zhèiyangde rén méiyǒu yíge hǎo gōngzuò, tài kǎixī le.

I hate to see someone like him without a good job.

Wǒ tāoyàn mǎi dōngxì.

I hate shopping.

### Notes on №5

jièyì: “to take offense, to mind” This is mostly used when preceded by a negative word (bù or bié).

Wǒ shì shuōzhe wánrde, xīwàng nǐ bú yào jièyì.

I was kidding (when I said that). I hope you don't take offense.

A: Nǐ bú huì jièyì ba?

You don't mind, do you?

B: Bú huì.

No, that's all right.

Nǐ jièyì bu jièyì wǒ míngtiān dài ge péngyou qù cānjiā nǐde wǎnhuì?<sup>a</sup>

Do you mind if I take a friend along to your party tomorrow night?

<sup>a</sup>wǎnhuì, “evening party”

dǎ zì: “to type” on a typewriter, literally “to hit characters.”

Tā dǎ zì dǎde hěn kuài.

He types very fast.

Zì here is a general object like huà in shuō huà. Speakers of English are often tempted to say dǎ zì zhèige for “type this,” but that is incorrect. To specify the thing which is typed, use dǎ without the word zì. Some verb endings, especially -chulai, are often used with dǎ:

Gěi wǒ dǎ yíxià (zhèige).

Type this for me.

Qǐng nǐ bǎ zhèifēng xìn dǎ yíxià.

Please type this letter.

Wǒ děi qù dǎ yīfēng xìn.

I have to go type a letter.

Nǐ dǎwán nàifēng xìn le ma?

Have you finished typing that letter?

Nàifēng xìn dǎchulai le meiyou?

Has that letter been typed?

Wǒ bǎ zhèige dǎchulaile mǎshàng gěi nǐ sòngguoqu.

I'll bring this over to you as soon as I finish typing it.

Used as a noun, **dǎ zì** means “typing” (like the school subject):

Wǒ xuéguo dǎ zì.

I've studied typing.

Tā zài yíge zhōngxué jiāo Yīngwén dǎ zì.

She teaches English typing at a middle school.

**Zì**, by itself, may be used as follows:

Wǒ dǎcuòle yíge zì.

I typed a character (letter or word) wrong.

Zhèiběn shū, zì tài xiǎo.

The type is too small in this book.

**zài dǎ zì**: “He’s (in the midst of) typing” You first learned **zài**, the marker of ongoing action, in Meeting, Unit 2: **Tā zài kāi huì**, “He is (in the midst of) attending a meeting.” Use **zài** to specify that an action is in the midst of progressing or evolving.

Because **zài** denotes “continuing action,” it is used with action verbs, which indicate the event has duration. On the other hand, process verbs, which indicate simply a change of state, are not compatible with **zài**: **sǐ**, “to die,” **dào**, “to arrive,” **tíng**, “to (come to a) stop,” **qù**, “to go.”<sup>4</sup>

The verb **sǐ**, for example, describes the instantaneous transition from a living state to a dead state. It makes no sense to speak of being “in the midst of dying”; a person is either alive or dead.<sup>4</sup> Likewise, you have either arrived (**dào**) or not; are either stopped (**tíng**) or still moving; are either gone (**qù**) or still present.

You can make **zài** negative with either **bù** or **méi**. Questions are usually best formed with **shì bu shì zài**; some speakers use you **méiyou zài** or **zài bu zài**.

<sup>4</sup>In English, “He is dying” may look like an ongoing action, but it actually means “He is very near to passing from a living state to a dead state.” The passing itself is instantaneous. So to translate “He is dying” in Chinese, you have to rephrase the thought, e.g., **Tā kuài yào sǐ le**, “He is going to die soon”, or **Tā huóbuháng le**, “He won’t live long.”



Sentences with **zài** often end in **ne**, the emphatic marker of absence of change (see Unit U, Notes on No. 2).

**Notes on №6**

**bú xiàng huà**: “to be outrageous, to be ridiculous, to be absurd” Literally this means “doesn’t resemble speech.” As used today, **bú xiàng huà** may be applied not only to things which are said, but also to situations and people.

Zhèiyang zhēn bú xiàng huà, jiù yào qián bú zuò shì, zěnmé xíng!
This is outrageous! To just want money but not work. How can that do!
Bú xiàng huà, bǎ wūzi nòngde zhème luàn, yě bù shōushi shoushi.
This is too much! He made the room such a mess and doesn’t even straighten up.
Zhèige háizi yìtiān dào wǎn wánr, bú niàn shū, zhēn bú xiàng huà.
This child plays all day long and doesn’t study. He’s really too much.

**bù guǎn**: ”no matter...” The first half of a **bù guǎn** sentence contains either

1. an interrogative word, e.g.,

Bù guǎn	shénme	No matter	what
	shéi		who
	shénme shíhou		when
	nǎr		where
	wèishénme		why
	zěnmé		how
	duōshǎo		how much
	duó lèi		how tired
	etc		

2. or (2) a clause expressing alternatives, e.g.,

Bù guǎn	tā qù bu qù	No matter	whether he goes or not
	shì bu shì zhēnde		whether it’s true or not

	tā shì Zhōngguó rén háishì Měiguó rén		whether he is Chinese or American
	jīntiān (háishi) míngtiān		whether it's today or tomorrow
			etc.

The last half of a **bù guǎn** sentence usually (not always) has **dōu** or sometimes **yě**.

Bù guǎn nǐ gěi duōshǎo qián, wǒ dōu (yě) bú mài.
No matter how much money you offer, I'm not selling it.
Bù guǎn nǐ xūyào shénme, tā nèr yíding (dōu) yǒu.
No matter what you need, he is sure to have it at his place. ( <b>Dōu</b> is optional and <b>yě</b> is not used here.)
Bù guǎn xià bu xià yǔ, wǒ dōu qù.
Whether it rains or not, I'm going.

**nǎr**: Literally "where," used in rhetorical questions to make a denial. Compare this with **Náli!**, which you learned in the Biographic Information module to deny compliments.

A: Zhèixiē fāngzi dōu shì nǐde ma?
Do these houses all belong to you?
B: Nǎr a!
Heck no!
A: Tā dào nǎr qù le?
Where did he go?
B: Wǒ nǎr zhīdao!
How should I know! (MAY BE IMPOLITE)
A: Wǒ qù wèn tā.
I'll go ask him.
B: Tā nǎr zhīdao! (stress on "tā")
He doesn't know! (MAY BE IMPOLITE)
Sāndiǎn zhōng nǎr néng dào!
How could we possibly arrive by three o'clock!

**értóng**: “child” This is the word used in formal contexts. It usually refers to children under approximately ten years of age.

értóng wénxué
children’s literature
értóng yīyuàn
children’s hospital

### Notes on №7

**duǎnpiān**: “short,” of written compositions. **Duǎnpiān xiǎoshuō**, “short story”?<sup>1</sup>In China, the short story began to develop as a genre as early as the **Táng** and **Sòng** dynasties. In modern times, Chinese short story writers were greatly influenced by Western short stories.

**nóngcūn**: This has three main uses:

1. “country, rural area”;
2. “rural,” when used to modify a noun; and
3. “rural community, farm village” (counter: **ge**).

In mainland China, this third use is no longer common because of the reorganization of rural areas into communes, with village-sized units becoming production brigades (**shēngchǎn dàduì**).\*\*\*\*<sup>5</sup>

In the Welfare module, you learned another word for “country, rural area”: **xiāngxià**. **Xiāngxià** and **nóngcūn** are comparable in meaning. **Xiāngxià** is chiefly a conversational word, however, rarely used in formal contexts. **Xiāngxià** may even be used in a disparaging manner; **nóngcūn**, being more neutral in connotation, cannot.

Tāmen Jiā zài nóngcūn.
Their home is in the country.
Nóngcūnde kōngqì bǐ chénglǐ hǎoduō le.
The air in the country is much better than in the city.
Tā māma cóng nóngcūn lái, dài lái hǎo duō xīnxiān jǐdàn.
His mother came from the country and brought lots of fresh eggs with her.
Tā zài yíge nóngcūn(de) yiyuàn gōngzuō.
She works in a rural hospital.
Zhèige xuéxiàode xuésheng dōu dào nóngcūn cānjiā lǎodòng qu le.
The students of this school have all gone to the country to participate in labor.
Zhèige nóngcūn yǒu duōshǎo rénkǒu?

<sup>5</sup>The expressions **zhèige cūn**, “this village,” **wǒmen cūn**, “our village,” **nǐmen cūn**, “your village,” etc., are nevertheless still used in the PRC.

What is the population of this farm village? (not mainland, usage)

**gànbu**: Usually translated into English by the French word “cadre,” this word has two meanings in China.<sup>6</sup> First, it can refer to full-time functionaries of the (usually central) Party or government.

Second—this is the sense of **gànbu** in sentence 7B—it can have the broader meaning of any person who has a leadership job. There are cadres in the army, factories, schools, communes, anywhere leadership positions exist.

It is always clear who is a **gànbu** and who is not; positions and people are well defined as cadre or not. **Gànbu** is contrasted with **qúnzhòng**, “the masses.”

For example, certain meetings may be attended by “cadres” but not by “the masses,” and certain documents are distributed to “cadres” of a certain level but not to “the masses.”

Most cadres are “not engaged in production” [**tuōchǎn le**], but some are “half released from production” [**bàn tuōchǎn**]. Very few are “not released from production [**bù tuōchǎn**]. In general, cadres’ salaries are higher than ordinary workers, and they have more privileges.

**Lǎo gànbu** is translated as “veteran cadre,” that is, a cadre from before liberation.

In the PRC, the English word “cadre” is usually pronounced “cah-der,” with the first syllable stressed.

### Notes on №8

**jíjímángmáng**: “in a great hurry” This comes from a repetition of each syllable of the adjectival verb **jímáng**, which means “hasty, hurried.” **Jí** means “anxious” and **máng**, which you have learned as “busy,” here means “in a rushed manner.”

Many adjectival verbs may be reduplicated to make them more vivid. For example:

A: **Něige shi Chén Bīn?**

Which (of those people) is **Chén Bīn**?

B: **Gāogāode nège.**

The tall one.

A: **Něige gāogāode? Nǐ shi shuō hēihēi shòushòude nège?**

Which tall one? You mean the dark, thin one?

B: **Bú shi. Báibái pàngàngde nège.**

No. The pale (light-complexioned), fat one.

**Bǎobǎode** means “very full”:

**Wǒ chide bǎobǎode.**

I’m very full.

<sup>6</sup>The word **gànbu** is also used in Taiwan, although not as frequently as on the mainland, to refer to people in positions of leadership in many kinds of organizations, especially government, the army, and large corporations.

Adjectival verbs of two syllables are reduplicated in an AABB pattern: repeat the first syllable twice and then the second syllable twice.

<a href="#">gāoxìng</a>	becomes	<a href="#">gāogāoxìngxìng</a>
<a href="#">píngcháng</a>	becomes	<a href="#">píngpíngchángcháng</a>
<a href="#">kèqì</a>	becomes	<a href="#">kèkèqìqì</a>

Adjectival verbs reduplicated this way can be used to modify nouns, as in

<a href="#">Tā jiù shì yíge píngpíngchángchángdèrén.</a>
He is Just an ordinary fellow.

or to modify verbs, as in

<a href="#">Wǒmen kèkèqìqìde tántan.</a>
Let's talk it over politely.
<a href="#">Tāmen gāogāoxìngxìngde zǒu le.</a>
They left happily.

These reduplicated adjectival verbs are not made negative or used in a comparative sentence.

[zuò shénme qu](#): Literally, “you are going in order to do what?” [Qù](#) and [lái](#) may be used at the end of a sentence to show purpose: “go in order to...” or “come in order to...” Whether you choose [lái](#) or [qù](#) depends, in many cases, on the direction of the action; if the direction is towards “here,” use [lái](#), and if it is “away,” use [qù](#).

<a href="#">Wèn tā qu ba!</a>
Go ask him!
<a href="#">Nǐ kuài máng qu ba!</a>
Go about your business!
<a href="#">Wǒ kàn ni lái le.</a>
I've come to see you.

Putting [qu](#) or [lái](#) before or after the verb phrase gives about the same meaning. In fact, in [Běijīng](#) speech, they may be used both before and after the verb phrase. The following three patterns are equivalent:

<a href="#">Nǐ qù wèn tā.</a>	You go ask him.

Nī wèn tā qu.	
Nī qù wèn tā qu.	

Tā lái ná piào le.	He came (has come) to get the tickets.
Tā ná piào lái le.	
Tā lái ná piào lái le.	

Here are more examples:

Tā zuò shénme qu le?	What did he go to do?
Shuì jiào qu le.	He went to go to bed.
Huí jiā qu le.	He went to go home.
Xǐ yīfu qu le.	He went to do some laundry.
Nòng fàn qu le.	He went to get dinner ready.
Mǎi dōngxi qu le.	He went to do some shopping.

Sometimes there can be ambiguity about whether **qu** and **lái** are being used to express "purpose" or "direction." For example, the phrase **ná piào lái** means "bring the tickets here" if **lái** is a directional ending, but "come here in order to get the tickets" if **lái** indicates purpose.

**shàng xué**: This phrase means either "to go to school" in the sense of "it's eight o'clock, the children have already gone to school," or "to attend school," as in "I attended high school in Chicago." **Xué** is a general object like **shū** in **niàn shū**, "to study." You can replace it by a more specific object such as **xiǎoxué**, "elementary school," or **Jǐngshān Zhōngxué**, "Jǐngshān Middle School."

Tā shàng xué qu le.
He has gone to school.
Suīrán tā niánjì dà le, kěshì tā hái xiǎng shàng xué.
Although he's old, he still wants to go to school.

### Notes on №9

**zhèngfǔ**: "government" **Zhèng** originally meant "political affairs," and **fǔ** was the word for "government offices."

Tā zài Měiguó zhèngfǔ lì gōngzuò.

He works in the U.S. government.

Distinguish **zhèngfǔ** from **guójiā**, “the state.”<sup>7</sup>In PRC terminology, **guójiā** is the entire organization by means of which the ruling class exercises its rule, including administrative bodies, the military, police, courts, and prisons. **Zhèngfǔ** refers to the administrative bodies of the state—for example, the State Council.

**bǎohù**: “to protect” from harm or loss, or “to safeguard”

huánjìng bǎohù

environmental protection

fù nǚ értóng bǎohù

woman and child protection

Cóng xiǎo jiù dèi bǎohù yǎnjīng.

One should protect one’s eyes from the time one is a child.

Nǐ kàn rénjiā de chē bǎohù de duó hǎo, nǐ de ne?!

Look at how well maintained his car is! But yours!

Wǒmen yīnggāi bǎohù guójiā cáichǎn.

We should protect state property.

Even before liberation, the Chinese Communists attempted to allay widespread fears that a Communist government would signal an end to private property by proclaiming **bǎohù rénmin cáichǎn** as an official policy.

**shíxíng**: “to carry out, to put into practice/effect, to implement” an idea, plan, policy, system, or program.

Zhèige jìhuà néng bu néng shíxíng hái shì ge wèntí.

Whether or not this plan can be implemented is still a question.

Xiàge yuè wǒmen yào kāishǐ shíxíng yìzhǒng xīnde kǎoshì bànfǎ.

Next month we are going to put a new method for testing into practice.

## Notes on №10

**lǐngdǎo**: “to lead, to direct, to exercise leadership (over); leadership; leader, leading cadre”

Tāde lǐngdǎo nénglì hěn qiáng.<sup>a</sup>

<sup>7</sup> Here we are not talking about **guójiā**’s other meaning, “country, nation.”

He has great leadership ability.

Tā nàme niánqǐng jiu língdǎo nàme duō rén?

He is in charge of so many people at such a young age?

A: Nǐmende gōngzuò zuòde bú cuò.

You do your job well.

B: Nà dōu shì zhèngfǔ língdǎode hǎo.

It's all thanks to the good leadership of the government.  
(Lit., "That is all because the government leads well.")

Zhèjiàn shìqíng wǒmen děi wènwen língdǎo.

We'll have to ask our leading cadres about this.

Tā língdǎo zhèige gōngzuò, zhèjiàn shì yíding zuòbuhǎo.

If he directs this project, it surely won't be done well.

Gòngqǐ lǐngtuán língdǎo Shàoxiānduì.

The Communist Youth League exercises leadership over (provides guidance for) the Young Pioneers.

<sup>a</sup>nénglì, "ability"; qiáng, "strong"

-xià: "under," used only after certain nouns. The ones you have learned so far in this course are língdǎo, qíngkuàng, bāngzhù, zhàogu.

Zài zhèizhǒng qíngkuàngxià, zuì hǎo shénme dōu bú zuò.

In this kind of situation, it is best not to do anything.

shìjiè: "world."

Zhèige dìfang duì tā lái shuō hǎoxiàng shì yíge xīn shìjiè.

To him, this place seemed like a new world.

Tā duì dìsān shìjiè guójiāde zhèngzhì qíngkuàng yǒu xìngqù.

He is interested in the political situation in third world countries.

To say "in the world," use shìjièshàng. This is often equivalent to English "in the whole world."

Shìjièshàng méiyǒu yíge rén xiàng tā zhèiyang.

There is no one like him in the world.

Ruìshì hǎo zài shìjièshàng hěn yǒu míng.



Swiss watches are famous throughout the world.

Shìjiè can also be used to modify other nouns:

Zhōngguó shì Shìjiè Yínhángde chéngyuánguō.<sup>a</sup>

China is a member country of the World Bank.

<sup>a</sup>chéngyuánguō, “member country”

## Notes on №11

shínián lái: “for the past ten years” or “over the past ten years”

Shínián lái, wǒ xuéle hěn duō Yīngwén.

Over the past ten years, I’ve learned a lot of English.

Jǐnián lái wǒ dōu méiyǒu shōudào tāde xìn le.

I haven’t gotten any letters from her for the past few years.

Lái is usually used with a relatively long period of time, especially months or years. There are no definite rules for how long is “long,” but you would not, for example, use lái to say “for the last half hour” (which would be zhèi bàngè zhōngtóu).

The expression of time may be preceded by zhèi, “these,” for example, zhèi jǐnián lái, “for the past few years.”

chéngshì: “city” or “(comparatively large) town” Originally chéng meant a city wall and shì a “market.” (Shì is now also an administrative unit, as in Běijīng shì, “Běijīng municipality.”)

You have already learned the word chéng for “city, town.” Chéng, which originally meant “city walls,” is now mostly used in set phrases such as jìn chéng, “to go into the city, to go into town, to go downtown” (to the part within the original city walls); or chénglǐ, “in the city,” and chéngwài “outside the city” (again using the walls to differentiate the two). Chéng is also used to translate “town” in foreign place names, e.g., Qiáozhìchéng, “Georgetown.” The Chinese also use xiǎo chéng to translate “town” when referring to foreign situations, as in:

Tā zhù zài lí Niū Yuē bù yuǎnde yíge xiǎo chéngli.

He lives in a little town near New York.

But xiǎo chéng is not used to speak of a town in China; instead people say “county” (xiàn) or “commune” (gōngshè) or just “place” (dìfang).

To translate “city,” chéngshì is the word you will use most often.

Lúndūn shì shìjiè yǒu míngde dà chéngshì.

London is a world-famous metropolis.

Shànghǎi shì shìjièshàng zuì dàde chéngshì.

Shànghǎi is the largest city in the world.

fēnbukāi: “cannot be separated” A more English-sounding translation for sentence 11B would be, “This is directly related to the government's leadership.”

The verb fēn means “to separate, to divide,” as in:

Wǒmen fēn yige píngguǒ, hǎo hu hǎo?

Let's split (share) an apple, okay?

Bǎ nèige píngguǒ fēn liǎngkuài.

Divide the apple in two.

Píngguǒ fēn hǎo duō zhǒng.

There are lots of different kinds of apples. (Lit., “Apples are divided into many kinds.”)

The verb ending -kāi, which you have seen meaning “open” as in dǎkai, here is something like English “apart.”

Bǎ hái zimen fēnkāi.

Keep the children apart.

Bǎ hóngde gēn lán de fēnkāi.

Keep the red ones separate from the blue ones.

Zhè liǎngzhāng zhǐ shì fēndekāi de.

These two sheets of paper can be taken apart.

### Note on Additional Required Vocabulary

yuányīn: “reason, cause”

Nà shì shěnmē yuányīn?

Why is that?

A: Shì shěnmē yuányīn tā jīntiān méi lái?

Why is it he didn't come today?

B: Shéi zhīdào, wèn tā zìjǐ qu ba!

Who knows? Go ask him!

Wǒ niàn Zhōngwěnde yuányīn shì yīnwei wǒ yào dào Zhōngguó qū gōngzuò.

The reason I'm studying Chinese is that I am going to go work in China,

Wǒ dìng zhème duō Zhōngguó bàozhǐ shì yǒu yuányīnde.<sup>a</sup>

There's a reason for my subscribing to so many Chinese newspapers.

Nǐ zuò zhèige jìhua yǒu méiyǒu shénme tèbiéde yuányīn?

Is there some special reason why you are making this plan?

Méiyǒu shénme tèbiéde yuányīn yào zhèiyàng zuò.

There's no particular reason for doing it this way.

<sup>a</sup>Dìng is the same word you learned in the Meeting Module for “to reserve”

**jiāru:** This is the formal word for “to join” (You will recognize **jiā**, “add,” from **cānjiā** and **rù**, “enter,” from **rù Tuán**.)

## Unit 7 Social Problems

### Introduction

#### Grammar Topics covered in this unit

1. (Adjectival Verb)-**duō le**, “much more... .”
2. (Verb) (Verb) **kàn**, “try and (Verb).”
3. How to express “not anymore,” “never again.”
4. The pattern **cóng** X (Verb)-**qǐ**, “to start (Verb)-**ing** from X.”
5. How to express billions.
6. The pattern **lián...dōu...**, “even.”
7. The pattern **zhǐ yào...jiù...**, “provided that...”
8. **Lái** indicating that someone will perform a specified action.
9. The pattern **bú shì...jiù shì...**, “either...or...”
10. **Shǐ**, “to cause/make/enable.”

#### Functional Language Contained in this unit

1. Stating hypotheses about the causes of phenomena.
2. Stating hypotheses about the interrelationships of phenomena.
3. Expressing value judgments about abstract phenomena.
4. Expressing different degrees of agreement and disagreement.

## References

## Reference List

## Vocabulary

āndìng	安定	to be stable/settled/quiet
běnlái	本来	originally, in the beginning, at first; to begin with, in the first place
bù néng bu	不能不	to have to, must
cóng...(Verb)-qǐ	从。。。起	to start (Verb)ing from...
fǎlǜ	法律	law
fàn	犯	to violate, to offend
fàn zuì	犯罪	to commit a crime
guǎnggào	广告	advertisement
Huáshèngdùn Yóubào	华盛顿邮报	the Washington Post
jiǎndān	简单	to be simple
jiàoyù	教育	to educate; education
jìnbù	进步	to progress; progress
(V V) kàn	(V V) 看	try and (V), (V) and see how it is
lái	来	used before a verb to express that something will be done
lián...dōu/yě...	连。。。都/也。。。也。。。也。。。也	even...
luàn	乱	to be in disorder, to be chaotic, to be in a mess; indiscriminately, recklessly, arbitrarily, any old way
luànqībāzāo	乱七八糟	in a mess, in confusion, indisorder; miscellaneous, jumbled, all thrown in together
Míng Bào	明报	Ming Pao (a Hong Kong newspaper)
shā	杀	to kill (in general); to kill (specifically with a knife or knife like instrument); to try to kill
shǐ	使	to cause, to enable (followed by a verb)
shìjièxìng	世界性	worldwide
shòu jiàoyù	受教育	to receive an education
xī dú	吸毒	to take drugs

-xìng	-性	nature, -ness, -ibility
yǒu bànfa, (duì...)	有办法， (对。。。)	to be able to deal with (something)
yǒu xiào	有效	to be effective; to be valid

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1

**āndìng**: “to be political and social stable/settled/quiet,” used to describe lives, countries situations. **Ān** is “peaceful” and **dìng** is “settled.”

Xiànzài yéye nǎinai shēnghuó āndìng, shénme dōu hǎo.

Now grandpa and grandma have a settled life; everything is fine.

Wǒ xiǎng zhè hé zhèngzhì bù āndìng yǒu guānxi.

I think this has to do with political instability.

Zhèige guójiāde zhèngfǔ zhèi jìnián hěn bù āndìng.

These past few years this country’s government has been very unstable.

**Āndìngxiàlai** means “to settle down, to calm down,” used in speaking of a situation, a place, or a person’s feelings.

Xiànzài hāizi dōu yǒu gōngzuò le, shēnghuó cái āndìngxiàlai le.

Now that the children all have Jobs, our life has finally settled down.

Shèhuishang fàn zuìde wèntí tài duō, dàjiāde shēnghuó jiu méi bànfa āndìngxiàlai.

When there’s too much of a crime problem in society, people’s life can’t settle down.

**fǎlǜ**: “law“

Zhèi yǐjīng biànchengle fǎlǜ.

This has already become the law.

Zhèige wèntí yǒu fǎlǜ zài, fēicháng qīngchǔ.

Laws exist (lit., “there are laws there”) on this question. It’s very clear-cut.

Yǒu fǎlǜ guǎn zhèjiàn shì ma?

Is there a law dealing with this?

Wǒmende fǎlǜ bǎohù értóng.

Our law protects children.
Tā xiànzài niàn fǎlǚ.
He is studying law now.

**xīn fǎlǚ**: In March, 1978, after the first session of the Fifth National People’s Congress, the Chinese government began to adopt many new laws. Beginning July 1, 1979, the Fifth National People’s Congress passed into effect twelve new legal codes, including a criminal code.

**fàn**: “to violate, to offend, to transgress, to commit (wrongs, crimes, errors)” Here are some other words commonly used with the verb **fàn**:

fàn zuì	to commit crimes
fàn fǎ	
fàn guī	to violate regulations
Zhèige hái zi méi xīwàng le, fànle yòu fàn, zǒng shì bù gǎi.	
There is no more hope for this child. He violates the rules time and again, and never reforms.	

**zuì**: “crime, guilt,” used in phrases like **fàn zuì**, “to commit a crime,” and **yǒu zuì**, “to be guilty (of a crime).”

Wǒ fànle shénme zuì, wèishénme yào chī zhème duō kǔ?
What crime have I committed? Why do I have to suffer so much?
Tā shì bu shì zhēnde yǒu zuì, lìshǐ huì huídá wǒmende.
History will give us an answer as to whether he is really guilty or not.

**...shǎoduō le**: “a lot less, far fewer” The adjectival verb **duō**, “to be many, to be much,” can be used after other adjectival verbs which can be qualified by degree, such as **hǎoduō le**, “a lot better,” **duōduō le**, “a lot more.” In such phrases, the first adjectival verb is used as a process verb, showing a change of state, and therefore the phrase always ends in **le**.

Nǐ bǐ yǐqián shòuduō le. <sup>a</sup>
You’re a lot thinner than before.
Qībānián yǐhòu, dào Zhōngguó qùde jīhuì duōduō le.
Since '78, there have been a lot more opportunities to go to China.

<sup>a</sup>shòu, “to be thin”

## Notes on №2

**Yóubào**: “Post,” in the name of a newspaper. The syllable **yóu** means “post” or “mail,” as in **yóujú**, “post office.” [Names of other newspapers are translated using the same pattern, **X-bào**: **Shíbào** is “Times,” **Rìbào** is “Daily,” **Kuàibào** is “Express.”]

**náqu...**: “take away” This is a compound verb of direction. Many of the compound verbs you have seen have three syllables. But like **dàolai** in Unit 1 of this module (**dàolai yībēi chá**), **náqu** has only two: the main action verb and the relative motion (away). The direction of the action (up, down, in, out, etc.) is not specified. (See the display on the next page.)

Main Verb	Direction	Relative Motion Towards or Away
ná	chū	lái
zǒu	jìn	
pǎo	xià	
kāi	shàng	
bān	guò	qù
	qǐ	
	qǐ- is used only with -lái, never with -qù.	

**zhǎozhǎo kàn**: “try to find” **Zhǎo** is the verb “to look for, to search.” It is reduplicated here, meaning that the action lasts an indefinite amount of time: “look a little bit.” **Kàn** following a reduplicated verb means “and see (if it works, if it’s okay, if you can do it, etc.).”

Nǐ shìshì kàn ba.
Give it a try and see (if you can do it, if he will cooperate, etc.).
Nǐ zuòzuò kàn, zhèige shāfā zhēn shūfu.
Sit down and try it out. This sofa is really comfortable.
A: Nǐ xiǎng tā kěn jiè wǒ tāde diànshì ma? <sup>a</sup>
Do you think he’d be willing to lend me his television?
B: Bù zhīdào, nǐ qù wènwen kàn.
I don’t know. Go ask him and see.
A: Wǒ duì nǐ zhèipiān wénzhāng yǒu bù tóngde kànǎ.
I have a different point of view on (what you say in) your article.
B: Nǐ shuōshuo kàn.
Let’s hear what it is.

<sup>a</sup>kěn, “to be willing to”



## Notes on №3

**jiàoyu**: “to educate; education” **Jiào** is the same character as **jiāo**, “to teach,” but in **jiàoyu** is pronounced with a Falling tone. **Yù** means “to cultivate, to raise.” **Jiàoyu** has some different uses from English “to educate.” It is used not only for institutional education but also for parents’ education of their children, and in the PRC for “education” of the people by the Communist Party. (For the first example, you need to know **nǚli**, “to make efforts.”)

Fùmǔ yīnggāi jiàoyu háizi nǚli xuéxí.

Parents should teach their children to study hard.

Nèige háizi méiyou jiàoyuhǎo.

That child was poorly trained (in manners, morals, general knowledge).

Wǒmen yào gěi háizi àide jiàoyu.

We should give children a loving education. (Taiwan usage)

Jiāting jiàoyu hé xuéxiào jiàoyu yíyàng zhòngyào.

Education in the home is Just as important as school education. (**Jiāting jiàoyu** consists of parents acting as examples in morals, character, family relations, hygiene, etc. )

Zhèiběn shū duì wǒ jiàoyu hěn dà.

This book has educated me a lot. (PRC usage)

Kànle zhèige diànyǐng gěile wǒmen hěn dàde jiàoyu.

Seeing this movie has taught us a great deal. (PRC usage)

Another sense of **jiàoyu** is to try through reason to convince a person to do things according to certain rules, instructions, or demands:

Nǐ děi jiàoyu jiàoyu nǐde háizi, tā yuè lái yuè huài.

You have to try to straighten out your child. He is becoming more and more of a scoundrel.

**Jiàoyu** is commonly used in the phrase **shòu jiàoyu**, “to receive an education,” which is discussed in No. 5 below.

**jìnbù**: “to make progress, to advance” or, as a noun, “progress.” Literally “to put forward steps.”

Yīxué jìnbùde nàme kuài.

Medicine is advancing so rapidly.

Tāde Yīngwén yòu jìnbù le.

He has made some more progress with his English.

Tāde Zhōngwén jìnbù tài màn.

His Chinese is progressing too slowly.

Jìnbù is commonly used with the verb yǒu, especially you hěn dàde jìnbù.

Zuìjìn jīge yuè wǒmende xuéshēng yǒule hěn dàde jìnbù.

Our students have made great progress these last few months.

Yǒu jìnbù is used as an adjectival verb, “to be improved.”

Nèige xuéxiào hěn yǒu jìnbù.

That school is greatly improved.

In the PRC, jìnbù is used as an adjectival verb meaning “to be (politically) progressive,” that is, suited to the needs of the times and stimulating the development of society.

zài yě méiyǒu...le: “not anymore...” The adverb zài and a negative, such as méiyǒu, can be used to express the idea of not doing something anymore. There are two word orders:

méiyǒu	zài	OR	zài	yě	méiyǒu
bú	在		在	yě	bú

For examples of the first pattern, see Unit 3, Notes on No. 5, bú zài kū le, “doesn't cry anymore.”

The second pattern is more emphatic. The word zài should be given special stress in these sentences:

Wǒ ZÀI bù huilai le!

I'm never coming back here again!

If yě is added between zài and the negative, the meaning is about the same.

Wǒ ZÀI yě bù chī táng le.

I'm never going to eat candy again.

Nèitiáo lù hěn wēixiǎn, nǐ ZÀI yě bié zǒu nèitiáo lù le.

That road is very dangerous, don't ever take it again.

luàn: “to be in disorder, to be in a mess, to be chaotic”

Zhèr tài luàn, dào wàimian qu tánan.

It's too chaotic (noisy) in here. Let's go outside to talk.

Zhèi jǐnián nèige guójiā yǒu diǎnr luàn.

That country has been a little bit chaotic the last few years.

Shìjiè hǎo duō dìfāng hěn luàn.

So many places in the world are in disorder.

Tāde zhuōzishang zǒng shì hěn luàn.

His table top is always a mess.

Zhèr tài luàn, jiào xiǎoháir chūqu wánr.

It's too noisy in here. Tell the children to go out and play.

Duǐbuqǐ, wǒ xiǎode hěn luàn, nǐ kàndedǒng ma?

I'm sorry I wrote this so messily. Can you read it?

As an adverb, **luàn** means “arbitrarily” any old way, at random, indiscriminately.

Luàn jiang!

Baloney! (southern Chinese usage)

Bú yào luàn xiě.

Don't write it Just any old way.

Nǐde dōngxī bú yào dào chù luàn fāng.<sup>a</sup>

Don't leave your things all over the place.

Tāmen zuótiān luàn chī luàn he.

They ate and drank like crazy yesterday.

Nèige rén luàn gǎo nánǚ guānxi.

He/she is (sexually) loose.

Bú yào luàn pǎo.

Quit running all over the place.

<sup>a</sup>dàochù, “everywhere”

**luànqībāzāo**: “to be in disorder, to be in a mess,” literally “chaotic-seven-eight-rotten” Some people have-translated this as “at sixes and sevens.” It can refer to physical or moral messes.

Duǐbuqǐ, fángjiān luànqībāzāode, wǒ jīntiān hái méiyǒu shíjiān shōushi.

I'm sorry, the room is a mess. I haven't had the time to straighten up yet today.

Zhèjiàn shìqing běnlái hěn hǎo, dànshì nèige rén bǎ ta gǎode luànqībāzāo.

Everything was fine at first, but then he came along and messed it up.

Tā gēn yíge luànqībāzāode nánrén chūqu le.

She went out with a disreputable (unsavory) character.

Luànqībāzāo is not made negative and is not used in comparative sentences.

### Notes on №4

Nǐ shuō: Followed by a question, nǐ shuō is used to ask the listener's opinion. The forms nǐ shuō ne or nǐ shuō shì bu shì may be used at the end of a statement to ask for confirmation.

Nǐ shuō wǒ yīnggāi zěnmē bàn?

What do you think I should do?

Wǒ xiǎng jiātíng jiàoyu hé shèhuì jiàoyu dōu bǐ xuéxiào jiàoyu zhòngyào, nǐ shuō ne?

I think that education in the home and in society are more important than school education. Do you agree?

Nèige guǎnggào hěn yǒu yìsi, nǐ shuō shì bu shì?

That's a great advertisement, don't you think?

zéren: "responsibility, duty" Also pronounced zérèn.

Rúguǒ zhèijiàn shìqing zuòde bù hǎo, wǒ yǒu zéren.

If this thing isn't done well, it's my responsibility.

Lǎoshīde zéren jiù shì bāngzhu xuéshēng hǎohāor xuéxí.

The teacher's responsibility is to help the students apply themselves to their studies.

A: Jiàoyu háizi shì funǚde zéren ma!

Rearing (educating) children is the responsibility of women!

B: Xiànzài fùnǚ jiěfàng le, nánrén yě yǒu zéren zuò zhàixiē shìqing.

Women are liberated now. Men also have the responsibility to do these things.

Shìqing nòng dao xiànzài zhèiyangr, zéren bú zài wǒmen.

It is not our responsibility that the situation was made the way it is now.

cóng lishǐ tánqǐ: "begin by talking about history" In Unit 3 of this module, you learned that the directional ending -qilai, besides indicating upward motion, could also be used to indicate beginning an action (Nǐ jiějie zěnmē duì zhèngzhi wèntí rènxīnqilai le?). The ending -qǐ in tánqǐ also means "to start," but is used only in the fixed pattern cóng X (Verb)qǐ, "to start (Verb)-ing from X." While the English translation for sentence UB says "begin by talking about history," the Chinese says literally, "start talking from history."

Zhèjiàn shì cóng nǎr shuōqǐ?
Where should I begin? (when about to tell a story, etc.)
Wǒ bù zhīdào cóng nǎr xiěqǐ.
I don't know where to begin writing.
Wǒmen děi cóng tóu zuòqǐ.
We have to start from the beginning again. (Cong tou means "from the beginning.")
cóng líng zuòqǐ
to start from scratch (lit., "start from zero")

### Notes on №5

**shíyì:** "one billion," literally "ten one-hundred-millions" Here are some more examples of how to express billions in Chinese:

1 billion (1,000,000,000)	shíyì	
1.1 billion (1,100,000,000)	shíyīyì	
2 billion (2,000,000,000)	èrshíyì	
10 billion (10,000,000,000)	yíbǎiyì	
10.5 billion (10,500,000,000)	yíbǎilíngwǔyì	

**zài...rénkǒuzhōng:** "in the population, of the population" The syllable **-zhōng** can be added, to nouns, like the locational ending **-lìmiàn**, to give the meaning "in" or "among." It is often used with the verb **zài**.

Zài zheèige jīhuàzhōng wǒmen hái yǒu liǎngge xiǎo wèntí xūyào zài tán.
There are still a couple of little questions we have to discuss in this plan.
Xuéshēngzhōng yǒu bù shǎo shì cóng nóngcūn lái.
Many of the students are from the country.
Zài disān shìjiè guójiāzhōng, bù shǎo shì Yǎzhōu hé Fēizhōude guójiā.
Many of the countries of the third world are countries of Asia and Africa.
Shèhuì shēnghuózhōngde wèntí, yě bù néng bú zhùyì a!
We can't very well ignore the women problems of life in society.

**shòu:** "to receive" The types of things which can be "received" using the verb **shòu** are limited. **Shòu** is usually followed by a verb being used as a noun.

<b>Receiver</b>	<b>shòu</b>	<b>Action</b>
Fùnǚ értóng	shòu	fǎlǚde bǎohù.

Receiver	shòu	Action
Women and children	receive	the protection of the law.

Zhèige zhōukān zài Měiguó hěn shòu huānyíng.

This weekly is very well received (popular) in the United States.

shòu jiàoyu: “to receive an education” Shòuguó jiàoyu means “educated” (because of -guo, which indicates having experienced something).

Tā shì (yíge) shòuguó jiàoyude rén, zěnme huì zuò zhèizhǒng shì?

She is an educated person. How could she do such a thing?

Tā shòuguó dàxué jiàoyu.

He has (received) a college education.

lián...dōu: “even...” Lia2n is a prepositional verb which literally means “including,” but in the lián...dōu pattern, “even.” A lián phrase always precedes the verb. Either the adverb dōu or yě is used in a sentence with lián. Notice how lián can be used with subjects, objects, and verbs:

With subject

Lián	Subject	dōu/yě . . . .
Lián	xiǎoháizi	dōu dǒng zhèijiàn shì.
Even children understand this.		
Lián	shòuguó jiàoyude rén	dōu tíng-budǒng tāde huà.
Even educated people can't understand what he says.		

Jīntiān tiānqì bù hǎo, lián tā zhème ài wán-rde rén dōu bu chūqu le, nǐ wèishenme yào qù?

The weather is bad today. Even he, who likes to play so much, isn't going out. Why are you?

Nǐ hái shuō méiyǒu zhèijiàn shì, bú zhǐ shì Xiānggǎng hàozhǐ, lián Běijīngde bàozhǐ dōu xiěle zhèitiáo xīnwén.

How can you say it's not true. Not only the Hong Kong papers reported this piece of news, it was even in the Běijīng papers.

With object

	lián	Object	dōu/yě . . . .
Tā	lián	zìjǐde míngzi	dōu bú huì xiě.
He can't even write his own name.			
Tā	lián	guǎnggào	dōu kàn.

	<b>lián</b>	<b>Object</b>	<b>dōu/yě . . .</b>
He even reads the ads.			

Tā jīntiān bù shūfu, lián fàn yě bù xiǎng chī le.

He isn't feeling well today. He won't even eat.

Wǒ lián yíge zì dōu bú jìde le.

I don't even remember one word.

Jīntiān lián yídiǎn fēng yě méiyǒu.

There isn't the least bit of wind today.

With verb

	<b>lián</b> <sup>a</sup>	Verb	<b>dōu/yě</b>	<b>méi/bù</b> (Verb)
--	--------------------------	------	---------------	----------------------

Tā	lián	kàn	dōu	méi kàn wǒ.
----	------	-----	-----	-------------

She didn't even look at me.

Tā	lián	tīng	dōu	bù tīng.
----	------	------	-----	----------

He wouldn't even listen.

Tā	(lián)	wèn	dōu	bú wèn.
----	--------	-----	-----	---------

He didn't even ask.

<sup>a</sup>lián is often optional in this pattern.

### Notes on №6

**Míng Bào:** A Hong Kong newspaper known for reporting without an overly dominant political point of view.

**shǐjièxìng:** The syllable **-xìng**, “character, nature, quality,” can be used after a noun like the English endings **-ness**, **-ity**, or **-ce**, as in “onesidedness,” “creativity,” “importance.” The resulting abstract noun can be used alone or is frequently used, followed by **-de**, to modify another noun.

<b>kěnéngxǐng</b>	possibility, likelihood
<b>zhòngyàoxìng</b>	importance
<b>dúlìxìng</b>	independent character
<b>xíguànxìng</b>	habitual
<b>liúxìngxìng</b>	epidemic
<b>lishìxìng</b>	historical

yàoxìng	property of a medicine
yóuxìng	
	oiliness

tā: You have learned tā as “he” or “she,” but sentence 6A is the first time in this course that tā has been used as “it.” (The word tā may also be omitted from the sentence without changing the meaning.) You know that Chinese most often does not use any word for “it,” as in

Wǒ qù ná.
I'll go get it.
Zài zhuōzhàng.
It's on the table.

Furthermore, “it” is sometimes expressed in Chinese by repeating the entire noun phrase, for example

A: Nǐ néng bāng wǒ zhǎodào zhèiběn shū ma?
Can you help me find that book?
B: Wǒ yǒu zhèiběn shū, kéyǐ sòng gěi nǐ.
I have it, and I can give it to you.

Least often, “it” is expressed by the pronoun tā.<sup>8</sup> There is no single rule which will tell you when you can use tā. It is often used as the object of bǎ:

Nǐ bǎ ta ná dao nǎr qu le? Wǒ zěnmē zhǎobudào?
Where did you take it to? How come I can't find it?
Hái yǒu yíge jiǎozi, nǐ bǎ ta chīle.
There's one more dumpling left; you eat it.

bù néng bu: “cannot not”—in other words, “cannot but; have no choice but to; must” The second bu is unstressed and usually neutral tone.

Wèile jiātingde guānxi, wǒ bù néng bu zhèiyang zuò.
For the sake of my family, I have no choice but to do this.
Gēn zhèizhǒng rén zài yìqǐde shíhou, bù néng bu xiǎoxīn yidiǎnr.
When together with this sort of person, one must be rather careful.

<sup>8</sup>One stylistic feature of modern written Chinese is that tā is used for “it” much more than in true spoken Chinese. This was originally an imitation of the structure of Western languages.



**Notes on №7**

zhǐ yào: “as long as, provided that” This is used in the pattern zhǐ yào...jiù.

Bú yào kǎolǜ tài duō, zhǐ yào nǐ xǐhuan jiù hǎo le.

Don't think it over so much. If you like it, that's all that matters.

Zhǐ yào wǒ jīntiān wǎnshang yǒu kòng, jiù kéyǐ bǎ zhèiběn shū kànwán.

As long as I have time tonight, I can finish reading this book.

Nǐ zhǐ yào bǎ shū niànhǎole, zhǎo gōngzuò jiù méiyǒu wèntí le.

As long as you do well in your studies, you won't have any trouble finding a job.

lái: In commands and suggestions, this verb merely indicates that a person will perform some action, and can usually go untranslated. When talking about one's own intention, lái can be translated as “let me” or “let's.”

Wǒ lái wèn nǐ.

Let me ask you.

Wǒ lái shuō liǎngjǔ.

Let me say a few words.

Wǒmen lái tántán zhèige wèntí.

Let's discuss this question.

A: Zhèige zì xiěde duì bu duì?

Is this character written correctly?

B: Wǒ lái kànkan.

Let me take a look.

Xiànzài qǐng Wáng Ānmín Tóngzhì lái gěi wǒmen jiǎngjiāng huà.

Now let's ask Comrade Wáng Ānmín to speak to us.

Nǐ kuài qù máng ba! Wǒmen lái shōushi.

You go take care of what you have to do. We'll straighten up.

Chīle fàn wǒmen zài lái zuò kāfēi.

After dinner let's make some coffee, (zài means “then” here.)

Wǒmen yìqǐ lái bān. Wǒ lái bān zhèr, nǐ dào nàibiān qù.

Let's move this together. I'll take it from here, and you go over there.

Lǐ Zhèn hàn, qǐng nǐ lái nǎ.

Lǐ Zhèn hàn, would you read aloud please?

yǐngāide: This is short for Wǒ bāngzhu nǐ shì yǐngāide, "it is right that I help you." Use the phrase yǐngāide to respond when someone thanks you for doing a favor which you consider natural under the circumstances.

### Notes on №8

bú shì...jiù shì...: "if it's not... then it's..." or "either... or..."

Bú shì tā, jiù shì nǐ, chule nǐmen yǐwài hái yǒu shéi huì zhèiyang zuò?

It was either he or you. Who would do something like that besides one of you?

Lǎo Wáng zuò cài, bú shì tài xián jiù shì tài là.

Lǎo Wáng's cooking is always either too salty or too hot.

Tā bú shì zài jiā, jiù shì zài bàngōngshì, biéde dìfang tā bú huì qù.

If he isn't at home, then he's at the office. He wouldn't go anywhere else.

Tā bú shì chī zhèige, jiù shì chī nèige, zuǐ méiyǒu tíngde shíhou.<sup>a</sup>

He's always eating something or other. His mouth never stops going.

<sup>a</sup>zuǐ, "mouth"

xī dú: "to take drugs" Literally "to inhale poison," but used for any method of drug taking. (For the last example you need to know kěkǎyīn, "cocaine," and hǎiluòyīn, "heroin.")

Tā yìtiān máng dào wǎn, zěnme huì qù xī dú?

He's busy all day long. He wouldn't go and take drugs!

Nèige háizi xī dú xīle hǎo jǐmián le, shēntǐ yǐjīng huài le.

That kid has been taking drugs for years, and his health has gotten bad.

Tā xī shénme dú? Kěkǎyīn háishi hǎiluòyīn?

What drugs does he take? Cocaine or heroin?

shā rén: "to kill, to murder" or "to try (unsuccessfully) to kill/ murder" The Chinese verbs for "kill" often consist of two parts: a verb telling the action (stab, shoot, beat, etc.) and a verb telling the resulting process of dying. Here is a list of some common ones (this is only here to clarify a point of grammar—you don't have to memorize all these words):

hàisǐ	(by scheming)
zhāsǐ	(by stabbing)

diànsǐ	(by electric shock)
dúsǐ	(by poisoning)
diàosǐ	(by hanging)
biēsǐ	(by suffocation or drowning)
lěisǐ	(by strangling with a cord)
qiāsǐ	(by strangling with the hands)
yǎsǐ	(by crushing or running over)
zhuàngsǐ	(by a collision)
qìsǐ	(by making someone angry!)
dāsǐ	(by a blow, beating, or gunshot)

and the most general term of all:

nòngsǐ	by any means
--------	--------------

In classical Chinese, **shā** originally meant “to kill with a knife” or “to slaughter (an animal).” Today, **shā** is still used for “to slaughter” or “kill” animals, as in:

Nǐ huì bu huì shā jī?
Do you know how to kill a chicken?

In modern Chinese, **shā** can have (1) a general meaning or (2) a specific meaning.

1. The general meaning of **shā** is the same as **nòngsǐ** or the English “to kill, to murder.” This is the way **shā** is used when the method of killing is not stated or not known.

Tā bǎ nèige rén shā sǐ le.
He killed that person. (method not considered)

2. The specific meaning of **shā** is to kill with a knife or knife like instrument (e.g., a bayonet). In this meaning, **shā** contrasts with all the other ways of killing listed above. When in your sentence you want to express the method of killing, you must choose an appropriate verb. It would be wrong to say **Tā yòng qiāng bǎ nèige rén shā sǐ le**. Instead, you should say:<sup>9</sup>

<sup>9</sup>qiāng, “gun”

Tā yòng qiāng bǎ nèigè rén dǎsǐ le.

He killed that man with a gun.

Shā takes on its specific meaning as soon as you start talking about methods, so in such sentences, you must choose your verb according to the mode of killing.

A: Tā bǎ tā tàitai shāsǐ le.

He killed his wife.

B: Zěnmé nòngsǐde?

How did he kill her?

A: Dúsǐde.

He poisoned her.

One last point: Shā may express the action of only trying to kill, without implying that the person or animal actually died.

Tā shā jī shāle liǎngdāo kěshi méi bǎ ta shāsǐ.

He cut the chicken twice, but didn't kill it.

shǐ: “to cause, to make”

shǐ	Object	Verb
shǐ	rén	nánshòu
makes one sad		
zhēn shǐ	wǒ	gāoxìng
really makes me happy		
shǐ	wǒ	juéde yǒu xīwàng
makes me feel that there's hope		
shǐ	tā	wàngle nèijiàn shì
made him forget that matter		

Tā xiǎngle bù shǎo bànfǎ, yě méi shǐ tā érzi duì shàng dàxué yǒu xìngqù.

He tried lots of different things, but couldn't interest his son in (going to) college.

Kàndào tā shǐ wǒ juéde hěn gāoxìng.

It made me very happy to see him.

If there is an aspect marker, it goes with the verb following shǐ, never with shǐ itself:

Shì shénme yuányīn shǐ tāmen fēnkāi le?

What was it that caused them to split up?

**Shǐ** sometimes means “to enable,” particularly if followed by **néng** or other words of that meaning:

**Chīle zhèizhōng xīnde yào, shǐ bìngren hǎode hěn kuài.**

By taking this new medicine, the patient was able (enabled) to recover very quickly.

Although **shǐ** may sometimes be translated by “make,” “make” may not always be translated by **shǐ**. When “make” means “to compel” someone to do something, it can be translated by **jiào**:

**Lǐ Xiānsheng jiào tā zài xiě yíci.**

Mr. **Lǐ** made him write it over again.

### Notes on №9

**běnlái**: “originally, in the beginning, at first; to begin with, in the first place” This is a moveable adverb; that is, it may come before or after the subject, but always before the verb.

**Běnlái** has two main uses: (1) to indicate that the situation was originally one way but then it changed, and (2) to express that something has been the case since the beginning and is still the case.

On the next page are examples of both meanings.

#### 1. SITUATION HAS CHANGED

**Wǒ běnlái bú qù, xiànzài qù le.**

Originally I wasn’t going to go, but now I will.

**Wǒ běnlái bù xǐhuan ta, kěshi xiànzài xǐhuan ta le.**

Originally I didn’t like her, but now I do.

**Běnlái shuō shì yào dào Xīngqīwǔ cái néng zuòwán,  
dànshi wǒ tīngshuō tāmen yào zǎo yidiǎnr zuòwán.**

Originally it was said that they wouldn’t be finished until Friday, but now I hear they’re going to finish sooner.

**Běnlái wǒ xiǎng jīntiān xiàwǔ qù kàn diànyǐng, hòulái tīngshuō kāi huì.**

Originally I wanted to go see a movie this afternoon. Later I heard there was a meeting. Oh well.

**Suàn le, wǒ yǐhòu zài qù ba.**

I’ll go another time.

**Běnlái wǒ jīntiān yào qù Guǎngzhōu, kěshi tiānqì bù hǎo, dàgài děi míngtiān cái néng zǒu le.**

Originally I was going to Guǎngzhōu today, but the weather is bad, so now I probably won't be able to go until tomorrow.

Zhèijiàn shì běnlái shì kényì bànde, kěshì shéi xiǎngdào huì yǒu zhèige qíngkuàng?

It could have been done, but who expected this to happen?

2. SITUATION WAS LIKE THIS TO START WITH AND STILL IS

Translations for this meaning include "to begin with" and "in the first place." In this use, **běnlái** is often followed by **jiù**.

Wǒ běnlái jiù bù xǐhuan ta, xiànzài hái bu xǐhuan ta.

I never did like her, and I still don't like her.

A: Nǐ bié qù nèige dìfang!

Don't go there!

B: Wǒ běnlái jiù bú qù.

I wasn't going to go there in the first place.

A: Nǐ bié zài qù le.

Don't ever go there again.

B: Wǒ běnlái jiù méi qù.

I never did go there.

A: Wǒ háishi juéde nǐ yīnggāi qù yítàng.

I still think you ought to go there.

B: Wǒ běnlái jiù yào qù.

I am going. (I was intending to go even before you told me to.)

Běnlái jiù gāi zhèiyang bàn.

We should have done this in the first place.

A: Zhèige kāfēi zěnme zènme hēi?

Why is this coffee so black?

B: Kāfēi ma, běnlái jiù shì hēide.

Coffee is supposed to be black!

A clause with **běnlái** is often related to another with **dāngrán**:

Zhèige dōngxì běnlái jiù shì nǐde, wǒ dāngrán yào huán gei nǐ!

This thing belongs to you; of course I would return it to you.

Běnlái tā zài dàxué niǎnde shì shèhuixué, tā dāngrán duì shèhuì wèntí yǒu xìngqū.

She studied sociology in college, so of course she's interested in social problems.

### Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

yǒu xiào: "to be effective; to be valid"

Zhèige yào hěn yǒu xiào.

This medicine is very effective.

Zhèizhāng piào hái yǒu xiào ma?

Is this ticket still valid?

### Unit 7 Review Dialogue

Lǐ Ping (B), Tom (A), and Lǐ Wen (E) are talking in the Li's living room.

- A: Nǐ zài kàn shénme hào zhǐ?

- B: Míng Bào. Míng Bào hù cuò,

hěn you yìsi.

E: Zài Měiguó yě xiàng Xiānggǎng

zhèiyang, shénme luànqībāzāode xīnwén dōu wǎng hào zhǐshàng xiě ma?

- A: Píngchāng wǒ kàn Huashèngdùn

Youbào. Zhèige hào zhǐ hù cuò, guōnèi, guōwàide xīnwén dōu you, dāngrán

guǎnggào yě hù shǎo. Zhōngwén hào zhǐ, wǒ yě kàn, nèi shàng hianr yě you

nǐ shuōde nèizhong "luànqībāzāo" de xīnwén.

- B: Nimen zhèiyang shuō, wǒ hù

zěnme tōngyì. Shénme shì "luàn-qībāzāo"? Shèhuì shēnghuó běnlái jiù shì

zhèiyang ma.'

E: Suàn le ba.' Jīntiān shì shā

rén, míngtiān shì xī dú, wǒ bú yào kàn.

A: Kàn háishi xūyào kànde, yǐnwèi

shèhuì shēnghuózhōngde wèntí, wǒmen yě bù néng bú zhùyì a!

E: Xiānggǎngde shèhuì wèntí zhēn

duō! Shénme dìfāngde rén dōu yǒu, shénmeyàngde wèntí yě dōu yǒu.

- A: Shèhuì wèntí shì shìjièxìngde,

bù zhǐ shì Xiānggǎng yǒu.

E: Ng, nàme, rénmen duì zhèxiē

wèntí jiù méiyǒu shénme bànfǎ ma?

- B: Bànfǎ hěn duō, dìfāng bù tóng,

bànfǎ yě bù yíyàng. Kěshì zhèixiē bànfǎ shì bu shì yǒu xiào jiù bù

zhīdào le.

What newspaper are you reading?

Ming Pao. It's pretty good, very interesting.

In America is it the same as in Hong Kong: they put all kinds of crazy news in the paper?

I usually read the Washington Post. It's a pretty good paper. It has domestic as well as international news. Of course there are a lot of ads, too. I read Chinese newspapers too, and they have "all kinds of crazy news" in them, as you put it.

I don't really agree with what you are saying. What is "all kinds of crazy news"? That's exactly the way life in society is!

Forget it! Today it's killing, tomorrow it's drugs. I don't want to read that.

We still need to read it, because we can't very well ignore the problems of life in society.

Hong Kong sure has a lot of social problems. There are people from everywhere, and all kinds of problems.

Problems in society are worldwide. Hong Kong isn't the only place that has them.

Mm, then is there nothing people can do about these problems?

There are a lot of ways to deal with them. Different places have different ways of dealing with them. But whether these ways work or not is another question.

- A: You rén shuō zǒngjiào shì



yìzhōng banfǎ, bù guǎn shénme Jiào, dōu shì Jiào rén zuò hǎo shìrde.

Kěshi wō xiǎng jiàoyu hěn zhōngyào, shòu jiàoyude rén yuè duō, shèhuide wèntí yuè shǎo.

- B: Erqiě jīngjì fāda yě hěn yào-

jǐn. Jīngjì bù fādáde difang, rénmen fàn zuìde jīhui Jiu gèng duō.

E: Jiù shì ma, rén yào chī fàn,

lián fàn dōu chībubǎo, tāmen zěnme néng bú fàn zuì ne?

- A: Wō xiǎng méi nàme jiǎndān.

Fàn zuì hé hěn duō shì yǒu guānxi, tèbié shì hé jiāting yǒu guānxi.

E: Nǐ jiǎngjiang kàn.

A: Zài jīngjì fādáde difang, xiǎo

jiāting yuè lái yuè duō, érqiě fùmǔmen dōu yǒu gōngzuò, dōu hěn máng,

méiyǒu shíjiān duō guǎn háizi. You xiě niánqīngde fùmǔ yě hěn shǎo

xiǎngdào zìjǐde zéren, méiyǒu shénme jiāting guānniàn.

E: Nǐde huà yǒu dàolǐ, kěshi dà

lùde qíngxíng ne? Nǐmen zěnme xiǎng?

- B: Shì a. Dàlù jīngjì bù fādá,

érqiě dàjiā yě dōu yǒu jiāting guānniàn. Kěshi, kànkàn bàozhī, dàlùshang

fàn zuìde rén yě bù shǎo.

- A: Wō xiǎng zhè hé zhèngzhi bù

āndìng yǒu guānxi, tèbié shì cóng Liù Liù nián dào Qī Liù nián.

Some people say that religion is one way. No matter what the religion,

it always teaches people to do good. But I think education is important.

The more educated people there are, the fewer social problems there will be.

And also, a developed economy is important. In places where the economy isn't well-developed, there are more opportunities for people to commit crimes.

Exactly. People have to eat. If they can't even get enough to eat, how can you expect them not to commit crimes?

I don't think it's so simple. Crime is related to many different things, especially to the family.

Would you explain what you mean?

Where the economy is developed, there are more and more small families; also, both parents have jobs and are very busy, so they don't have time to take good care of the children. Some young parents seldom think of their own responsibilities and don't have much of a sense of family attachment.

That makes sense. But what about the situation on the mainland? What do you two think?

Yeah, the mainland's economy isn't developed, and furthermore everyone has a sense of attachment to the family. But read the papers: there are quite a few people committing crimes on the mainland too.

I think this has to do with the political instability, especially from '66 to '76.

- B: Shi ma, nèige shihou, shénme

fǎlù dōu méiyǒu. Lián fàn zuì hú fàn zuì dōu nòngbuqīngchu, shèhui wèntí zěnmé huì shǎo?

A: Nǐde kànfǎ, wǒ hěn tongyì. Wǒ

xiǎng, zhǐ yǒu shǐ zhèngzhì āndìng, JǐngJi, wénhuà fādà, cái néng shǐ shèhui jìnbù.

(Grandma Lǐ walks in.)

G: Nǐmen zài tán shénme, tánde

zhème gāoxìng?

A: Lǐ Nǎinaì, wǒmen zài tán shèhui

wèntí.

G: Hǎo le, nǐmen tángòu le meiyǒu?

Chile fàn zài tán xíng hu xíng?

- A, B, E: Xíng, chile fàn zài tán.

Yes. During that time there wasn't any law at all. If you can't even tell the difference between committing a crime and not committing one, how can social problems be reduced?

I agree very much with your view. I think that society can only be made to progress if the political situation is stabilized and the economy and

culture are made to flourish.

What are you talking about so cheerfully?

We're talking about social problems, Grandma Li.

Well, have you talked enough? How about continuing the conversation after dinner?

Okay! We'll talk more after dinner.

## Unit 8 Directions for the Future

### Introduction

#### Grammar Topics covered in this unit

1. Action-Process compound verbs.
2. The directional ending **-huí**, “back.”
3. The patterns “(Verb) **dōng** (Verb) **xī**” and “**dōng** (Verb) **xī**” (Verb).
4. The marker **-de** after phrases with a parallel structure.
5. The adverb **you**, “after all,” “anyway.”
6. The adverb phrase **yě bu**, “don't even,” “won't even,” “wouldn't even.”

#### Functional Language Contained in this unit

1. Asking for an explanation of the causes/motives behind a situation.
2. Politely asking someone to quiet down.
3. Expressing appreciation to someone for their hospitality.
4. Taking leave of a group of people in the middle of a conversation.

## References

## Reference List

## Vocabulary

bófù	伯父	uncle (father's elder brother); term for the father of one's friend
bómǔ	伯母	aunt (wife of father's elder brother); term for the mother of one's friend
chǎo	吵	to be noisy; to disturb by making noise
chǎoxǐng	吵醒	to wake (someone) up by being noisy
dàishàng	带上	to take along (Beijing)
dānzi	单子	list; form
dǎ zhàng	打仗	to fight a war, to go to war
děi kàn (or yào kàn)	得看 (要看)	to depend on
děng	等	when; by the time; till
děng yíxià	等以下	wait a while; in a little while
gāi	该	should, ought to; to be someone's turn to
gànmá	干吗	to do what; (colloquial) why on earth, what for
gànshenme	干什么	to do what; (colloquial) why on earth, what for
gōngyìpǐn	工艺品	handicrafts
guòqu	过去	to pass
hǎohāor	好好儿	well; properly; thoroughly
hǎoxiàng	好象	to seem as if
-huí	-回	counter for shì, matter
kàn	看	to depend on
kànzhe	看着	(followed by a verb) as one sees fit, as one deems reasonable
kǎo	考	to take/give an exam, test, or quiz
kǎoshì	考试	to take/give an exam, test, or quiz, exam, test
lái	来	to do (something), to perform (something), to have (an event), to help oneself (to food, etc.), to join in (a game, etc.)
nántīng	难听	to be unpleasant to hear; to sound bad, to offend the ears; to be scandalous

quàn	劝	to advise, to urge, to try to persuade
shǎ	傻	to be stupid, to be dumb, to be silly, to be naive
shēngyì (shēngyì)	生意	business, trade
sòngxíng	送行	to see (someone) off, to wish (someone) a good trip; to give a going-away party
téng	疼	to be (very) fond of, to be attached to, to dote on
wǔjiào	午觉	noontime nap
yào kàn (or děi kàn)	要看 (得看)	to depend on
yòu	又	anyway; after all (used in questions and negative statements)
yuánlái	原来	original, former; originally, formerly; (expresses finding out the true situation)
yuànyì	愿以	to wish, would like, to want to; to be willing to
yùnqì	运气	luck
zěnmē (yì)huí shì	怎 ( ) 么回事	what's it all about
zhènmē (yì)huí shì	这 ( ) 么回事	like this
zhèi yíxiàzi	这一下子	after this, as a result of this
zhènmē huí shì	这么回事	like this
zhèngzhǎo(r)	正好	it just so happens that, to happen to, as it happens; Just in time, Just right, Just enough

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1

**kǎoshì**: “to take/give a test, or quiz; test, exam” This may be noun used as a verb object compound or as a noun. **Kǎo** as a verb may be used alone if the context makes it clear.

**Kǎoshì yǐhòu tā lèi le.**

She was tired after taking the test.

**Zhèici kǎoshì tā kǎode bú cuò.**

He did pretty well on the test this time.

**Nǐ3 jīntiān kǎode zěnmeyàng?**

How did the test(s) go today?

**Nǐde jīngjixué kǎode zěnmeyàng?**

How did you do on your economics exam?

**Wǒ lái kǎokao nǐ.**

Let me quiz you.

Kǎowán shì yǐhòu (OR Kǎowánle yǐhòu), wǒmen qù kàn diànyǐng, hǎo bu hǎo?

Let's go to the movies after we're done taking the test.

děng yíxià may have its literal meaning, “wait a minute, wait a while,” or it may mean “in a minute, in a while.”

- “WAIT A MINUTE, WAIT A WHILE”

Děng yíxià, wǒ yào dǎ ge diànhuà, dǎwánle wǒmen jiù zǒu, hǎo bu hǎo?

Wait a second, I want to make a phone call. We'll go as soon as I'm finished, okay?

Nǐ děng yíxià, wǒ lái bāngzhu nǐ.

Wait a second, let me help you with that.

- “IN A MINUTE, IN A WHILE”

Nǐ xiān chī, děng yíxià wǒ xǐwánle yīfu jiù lái.

You go ahead and eat. I'll come as soon as I've finished washing the clothes.

Nǐmen xiān zǒu ba, děng yíxià wǒ zài qù.

You go ahead and leave. I'll go in a while.

Děng yíxià yǒu yíwèi xīng Wángde lái zhǎo wǒ, qǐng nǐ ràng ta jìnlái .

In a while a Mr. Wáng will be coming to see me. Please let him in.

## Notes on №2

**bómǔ**: “wife of father's older brother,” but also a term for the mother of one's friend. Relationships between friends are often thought of and even spoken of in terms similar to family relationships. Friends are like brothers and sisters, and therefore a friend's parents are addressed as aunt (**bómǔ**) and uncle (**bófù**).

**shuì wǔjiào**: “to take a nap,” literally “to sleep the afternoon sleep.” **Wǔshuì shíjiǎn** is “afternoon nap time,” as in a school or organization.

Wǒ jīntiān méi shíjiǎn shuì wǔjiào.

I didn't have time to take my afternoon nap today.

A: Jīntiān nǐmen yǒu meiyǒu wǔshuì shíjiǎn?

Do you have an afternoon nap today?

B: Méiyǒu. Zhōngfàn yǐhòu jiù kāi huì.

No. We have a meeting right after lunch.

Many Chinese take a rest after the midday meal. Work, school, and store schedules often make time for this, especially in hot weather.

X: “Sh.” This is the “word” you use to signal someone to keep quiet. It is said with rounded lips—like whispering the syllable *xū*.

**chǎoxǐng**: “to wake up by making noise” **Chǎo** can mean “to be noisy,” or as in **chǎoxǐng**, “to disturb by being noisy.” [it can also mean “to quarrel, to squabble.”] **Xǐng** (Welfare module, Unit 1+) is “to wake up,” a process verb. The compound **chǎoxǐng** is therefore made up of an action verb plus a process verb, with the meaning by performing the action, to cause the process (change of state) to occur. You can use this pattern to make a lot of useful compound verbs:

Nǐ zǒulèi le ba, zuòxia xiūxi yihuǐr.

You must be tired (from walking). Sit down and rest a while.

A: Tā zěnmē bīng le? Shì bu shì zuótiān hēde tài duō?

How come he got sick? Was it that he had too much to drink yesterday?

B: Bú shì hēde tài duō, shì chīde tài duō chībīng le.

No, he didn’t have too much to drink. He got sick from eating too much.

Nǐ shuǐgòu le ma?

Did you get enough sleep?

Tā bǎ yǎnjīng kūhóng le.

She cried her eyes red.

### Notes on №3

**shēngyì**: “business, trade” Also pronounced **shēngyì**.

**yào kàn**: “depends on...” By itself, **kàn** (which you know as “to look at” and “to think, to have the opinion that”) has another meaning, “to depend on, to be up to, to be determined by.” Often **yào** or **děi** is added before it.

A: Nǐ míngtiān shì qù háishi bú qù?

Are you going tomorrow or not?

B: Ng, děi kàn tiānqì.

Mm, that depends on the weather.

A: Wǒ jīntiān kéyì zǎo diǎnr huí jiā ma?

Can I go home early today?



B: (Yào) kàn nǐ zuòdewán zuòbuwán zhèixiē shì.

That depends on whether you can finish these tasks.

A: Nǐ néng gēn wǒmen qù Jiāzhōu ma?

Can you go to California with us?

B: Jiù kàn shíjiān le, yào shì xiàtiān jiù kéyi le.

That only depends on the time. If it's in the summer I can go.

Kàn nǐde le!

It's all up to you now!

yùnnqì: “luck; to be lucky” This word can be used either as a noun or as an adjectival verb. The following sentences show some of its uses as a noun:

Tāde yùnnqì zhēn bú cuò.

He really has good luck.

Nǐ yùnnqì zhēn hǎo!

You're really lucky!

[To say “to be unlucky,” use *dǎoméi* or *bù zǒu yùn*.]

## Notes on №4

*dàihuí*: “to bring/take back” You have seen *huí* used as a main verb meaning “to return to,” in *huí jiā*, “to return home,” and *huí guó*, “to return to one's country,” and with the endings *-lai* and *-qu* as in *huí lai*, “to come back.” Here you see it used as a directional ending.

*Dàihuí* can only be used if it is followed by a place name, like *Měiguó* in sentence UA. Otherwise you should use *dàihuilai* or *dàihuiqu*, depending on whether the direction is toward or away from the point of reference.

Zhèixiē cài wǒmen chībuwán, kéyi dàihuiqu ma?

We can't finish these dishes (of food) May we take them back with us?

A: Zènme yuǎnde lù, zǒubuhuíqu le ba?

It's such a long way. We can't walk back, can we?

B: Zǒudehuíqu. Xiànzài cái wǔdiǎn zhōng, zǒuhuiqu zhǐ yào yíge bàn zhōngtóu jiù gòu le.

Sure we can. It's only five o'clock now. It will only take an hour and a half to walk back.

Nǐ bǎ péngyou sòngqu yǐhòu, děi bǎ chē kāihuilai, wǒ yào yòng.

After you've dropped your friend off, you have to drive the car back here I want to use it.

zhènghǎo(r):

1. (1) “just right; just in time; just enough”

Nǐ zhèishuāng xié wǒ chuān zhènghǎo (r).
These shoes of yours fit me just right.
Nǐ lái de zhènghǎo(r), wǎn jǐfēn zhōng wǒ jiù zǒu le.
You came just in time. If you'd come a few minutes later, I would have already left.
Zhèixiē qián zhènghǎo(r) mǎi nège diànshì.
This money is just enough to buy that T.V.

2. (2) “to be opportune”

Nǐ zài zhè zhènghǎo(r), bāng wǒ yíge máng.
It's a good thing (lit., “opportune”) you're here. You can help me out.

3. (3) “as it happens, it just so happens”

Jīntiān zhènghǎo(r) pèngdao Lǐ Xiānsheng, jiù bǎ shìqing bàn le. <sup>a</sup>
I just happened to run into Mr. Lǐ today, so I took care of that matter.
Wǒ běnlái xiǎng xiàge yuè mǎi shāfā, jīntiān zhènghǎo(r) pèngdao héshìde, jiù mǎi le. <sup>b</sup>
I was originally going to buy a sofa next month, but today I happened to come across the right kind, so I bought it.

<sup>a</sup>pèngdao, “to run into, to come across”  
<sup>b</sup>shāfā, “sofa”

dàishang: “to take along with one” In the Běijīng dialect, the verb ending -shang is sometimes used to mean “along with” a person. (For the first example you need to know tí, “to carry from the hand at the side of the body.”)

Tā tíshang shūhāo jiù zǒu le.
She picked up her schoolbag and left.
Zhèige sǎn nǐ nǎshang ba.
Take this umbrella along with you.
Nǐ bàoshang hái zi, wǒ nǎzhe zhèige.
You carry the child, and I'll hold this.

Speakers who are not from Běijīng would use different endings in these cases, for example -zhe or -qu (depending on the meaning of the sentence).

## Notes on №5

guòqù: “to pass, to go over” Contrast guòqu (neutral-tone qu) with guòqù (Falling-tone qù), “the past” (see Unit U of this module).

Guòlai is “to come over.”

Nǐ guòqu kànkàn.
Go over there and take a look.
Menkǒu guòqu yíge rén.
Someone passed by the door.
Nàr guòlai yíge rén.
Someone is coming over from there.
Yíhuīr jiu guòqu le.
It will pass in Just a while.
Kuài guòlai!
Come on over here!
Guòlai zuò yíhuīr ba.
Come over (to my house) for a while. (Lit., “Come over to sit awhile.”)
Guòlai!
C’mere! OR Get over here. (CAN BE IMPOLITE)

Guòqu is also a polite or respectful word for “to die,” similar to English “to pass away.” As mentioned in Unit 5» Chinese often avoid using the stark-sounding sǐ.

hǎohāor: “well; industriously; properly; thoroughly” In Unit 1 of this module, you learned màn mǎnr “slowly,” which is a reduplication of the adjectival verb màn “to be slow.” In Běijīng conversation, the second màn is said with the first tone, and -r is added, making màn mǎnr.

In many other parts of China, it is said as màn màn. Likewise, Běijīng hǎohāor is often heard as hǎohǎo elsewhere. Reduplication allows an adjectival verb to be used before a verb as a modifier, with or without -de, for example, màn màn (de) chī, “to eat slowly,” hǎohǎo (de) tīng, “to listen well.”

Hǎohǎorde (hǎohǎode) has more specific meanings than just “well.” It can mean “properly,” “thoroughly,” or “nicely,” or “in perfectly good condition, with nothing the least bit wrong.”

Xiànzài hǎohǎorde niàn shū, yíhòu hǎohǎorde gōngzuò.
Study properly now, and do your job properly later on.
Gāngcái hai hǎohǎorde, xiànzài bù zhī zěnme huí shì yòu kūqilai le.

Everything was fine just a minute ago. Now I don't know what happened, but she's crying again.

Zhèngzhìde shìqing gēn xiǎohǎizi wánr yíyàng, liǎngtiān  
yǐqián hái hǎohāorde, liǎngtiān yǐhòu jiù dǎqilai le.

Politics is like children playing. First everything's  
fine, and then a couple of days later they're fighting.

xiǎng dōng xiǎng xī: “to think of this and that, to let one's mind wander” Dōng, “east,” and xī, “west,” are used in the patterns (Verb) dōng (Verb) xī and dōng (Verb) xī (Verb) to express that a person's action has no definite aim or that something is done haphazardly. More examples:

kàn dōng kàn xī	looking here and there
xué dōng xué xī	studying this and that
zǒu dōng zǒu xī	walking all about
zhǎo dōng zhǎo xī	searching here and there

You can also say dōng xiǎng xīxiǎng, dōng kàn xī kàn, etc. Here are some examples in sentences:

Guò mǎlùde shíhou, bié zhème kàn dōng kàn xīde, duó wēixiǎn a!

Don't let your eyes wander when you cross the street. It's very dangerous !

Tā zǒng shì xué dōng xué xīde yǐjīng shínián le, hái méi cóng dàxué bìyè.

He's been studying this and that for ten years, and still hasn't graduated from college.

Nǐ shénme dōngxī diū le, zhǎo dōng zhǎo xīde.

You're hunting all over the place. What did you lose?

Zhèi liǎngnián wǒ yìzhí zǒu dōng zǒu xī, méi shíjiān gēn jiāli rén zài yìqǐ.

The past couple of years I've been traipsing all over the  
place, and haven't had any time to be with my family.

...-de: Here you see a new use of the marker -de. After certain phrases, especially ones with a parallel structure, -de means “that way,” describing a way of looking, acting, or just a state of affairs. (For the following examples, you need these three items: lǎo, “all the time, always”;

bù huāng bù máng, “calm, not the least bit flustered”; and dǎ zhēn, “to get an injection.”)

Nǐ gǎnmá lǎo zǒuchū zǒujinde?!

How come you keep walking in and out?.

Shíjiān kuài dào le, nǐ zěnméi hái bù huāng bù mángde?

It's almost time, how can you be so calm?

Zhèi bàngē duō yuè, yòu dà zhēn yòu chī yàode, tāde tuǐ hǎoxiàng yǐjīng hǎo le.

During the past half month or so, with all the injections and medications, her leg seems to have already recovered.

Zhèi shì shénme xié! Yìzhī dà yìzhī xiǎode!

What kind of shoes are these, with one bigger than the other!

## Notes on №6

téng: “to be fond of, to be attached to, to dote on”

Zhèige háizi, bù guǎn nǐ zěnme téng ta, tā yě bu tīng huà.

This kid! No matter how fond of him you are, he never does what you say.

Nǎinai zhēn téng wǒ dìdi!

Grandma is really attached to (OR dotes on) my younger brother.

Zhèi háizi zhēn kěài! Ràng rén bù néng bu téng! <sup>a</sup>

This child is adorable; you can't help but be fond of him!

Tā tèbié téng érzi, zǒng pà tā chībuhǎo.

She is especially attached to her son, and is always afraid that he won't eat well.

<sup>a</sup>kěài “to be loveable/adorable”

zěnme huí shì: “what happened; what’s it all about; what’s the story” Also said as zěnme yìhuí shì. Zěnme here means zěnmeyàng, “what kind, of what nature.” “Huí is a counter for shì, as in Yǒu zhèihuí shì ma?, “is there such a thing?” or “Did such a thing (really) happen?” In the phrase zěnme yìhuí shì, the number yī is often dropped from yìhuí just as it can be dropped in phrases like chī (yí)ge píngguǒ, “eat an apple.”

Zhèi shì zěnme huí shì? Wūli zěnme nàme zāng?

What is this, anyway? Why is this room so dirty?

Zhèi shì zěnme huí shì? Dōngxì yìtiān bǐ yìtiān guì!

What's going on, anyway? Things are getting more and more expensive every day.

zěnme huí shì: Also zhème huí shì. This phrase has two main uses:

1. Used before telling the facts or details of an event, as in sentence 6B.
2. Said after one learns the facts or outcome of an event, e.g.,

Yuánlái shì zhème huí shì!

Oh, so that's the story.

Yào zhīdao shì zhème huí shì wǒ jiù bù lái le.

If I had known that was what it was all about, I wouldn't have come.

### Notes on №7

**zhǎo**: Literally, “to look for,” but when the object is a person it can mean, “to call on” a person. This is the way **zhǎo** is used in sentence 7A, hence the translation “going to see **Xiǎo Lán**,” rather than “going to look for **Xiǎo Lán**.”

Xīngqītiān tā zǒngshì qù zhǎo péngyou.

On Sundays, he always goes to see his friends.

Zhèizhǒng wèntí zhǎo tā méi cuò!

When you have that kind of problem, you won't go wrong if you go to him.

Zhǎo wǒ méi yòng, wǒ bù guǎn zhè shì.

It's useless to come to me about this matter, I'm not in charge of it.

**gàn shénme**: “to do what; what for, why” **Gàn** is the verb “to do.” **Gàn shénme** and the similar **gànmá** can be used

1. to ask what someone is doing;
2. like **wèishénme**, except with a livelier, more conversational tone; or
3. rhetorically, to question the value or use of something.

Nǐ gànmá ne?

What are you doing?

Nǐ míngtiān gàn shénme?

What are you doing tomorrow?

Gàn shénme lǎo gēnzhe wǒ!?<sup>a</sup>

What are you doing always following me?

Gànma mǎi zhèige? Nàme guì!

What did you buy this for? It's so expensive!

Ní gànma zǒng tīng tāde?!

How come you always do what he says?!

Haá zài zhèr gàn shénme? Kuài huí jiā ba!

Why are you still here? Hurry up and go home!

Zhèi shì xiǎo shìqǐng ma! Nǐ gànma zhème shēngqì?
This is such a small matter! Why should you get so angry?
Zhèige dōngxi shì gànmade?
What's this thing for?
A: Wǎnshàng nǐ yídìng dào tā jiā qù yítàng.
You have to go to her house tonight.
B: Gàn shenme?
What for?
A: Bǎ zhèige sòngqu.
To take this to her.
Lián nǐ dou bú qù, wǒ gàn shenme qù?!
If you aren't even going, why should I go?

<sup>a</sup>gēn, "to follow"

yòu: You have seen the adverb you meaning (1) "again," as in *Nǐ yòu lái le*, "You're here again" and (2) "both... and..." as in *Yòu hǎo yòu piányi*, "Both good and inexpensive." In sentence 7A, you is used to stress that the speaker thinks what he is saying is a strong reason why something should be otherwise. This you is usually used in sentences with the verb made negative, or in rhetorical questions (those to which no answer is expected).

IN SENTENCES WITH THE VERB MADE NEGATIVE

Tā yòu bù shǎ.
He's no dummy, after all.
Wǒ yòu bù zhīdào jīntiān xià yǔ.
After all, I didn't know it was going to rain today.
Nǐ yòu méi kànjiànguo tā, nǐ zěnme zhīdào tā bù hǎo?
You've never seen him, after all; how could you know he's no good?
Tā yòu bú shì wàijiāoguān, zěnme zài dàshìguǎn gōngzuò?
He's not a diplomat, after all; why is he working in the embassy?

IN RHETORICAL QUESTIONS

Tā yòu zhīdào shénme?
What does he know, anyway? (Means, "He doesn't know anything.")
Shéi yòu néng kànde nàme yuǎn ne?

Who could have seen that far ahead, after all? (Means, "No one could have seen that far.")
Bùzhǎng yòu zěnmeyàng?
So what if he's a (government) minister? (Means, "The fact that he's a government minister is unimpressive.")
Yáoshi tā bù néng zuò, shéi yòu néng zuò ne?
If he can't do it, who can? (Means, "if he can't, nobody can.")

**quàn**: "to advise" or "to try to persuade" a person. This describes the action of talking to someone in order to bring them around to a certain way of thinking. Sentence 7B might be translated simply as, "Don't get upset, I'll talk to him."

Wǒ quàn nǐ háishi bú yào xué wénxué, biyè yǐhòu zhǎo gōngzuò nán na.
My advice to you is not to study literature. It would be awfully hard to find a job after you graduate.
Tāde shì nǐ bú yào quàn, tā huì gěi nǐ zhǎo máfānde.
You'd better not try to advise him about his affairs, otherwise he'll give you trouble.

### Notes on №8

**gāi**: "should; ought to; to be someone's turn to (do something)" **Gāi** is an auxiliary verb very similar in meaning to **yīnggāi**.

Kuài qīdiǎn bàn le, wǒ gāi shàngbān qu le.
It's almost seven-thirty. I should be leaving for work.
Wǒ gāi shuō shénme ne?
What should I say?

**Gāi** is frequently used before the subject of a clause. In such cases it can also mean "to be (someone's) turn to (do something)."

Míngtiān gāi tā qǐng kè le.
Tomorrow it's his turn to treat.
Zhèixiē shì běnlái gāi wǒ zuòde, bìngle zhèi jǐtiān, tǒngshimén dōu bāng máng zuòwán le.
It should have been me who did these things in the first place, but with me being sick the past few days, my colleagues finished them all for me.
Zhèicì gāi wǒ qǐng nǐ kàn diànyǐng le.



This time it's my turn to treat you to a movie.

Gāi nǐ zǒu le OR Gāi nǐ le.

Your move OR It's your turn, (in playing a game)

**kànzhe**: In front of another verb, **kànzhe** means “(do something) as one sees fit.” The “locking” in **kànzhe** refers to looking at the situation in order to decide what one is able to do and what is best to do. The most common phrase in which **kànzhe** appears is **kànzhe bàn**, “to do as one thinks best.”

A: Nǐ shuō wǒ shì qù hǎo ne? Háishi bú qù hǎo?

Do you think it would be best for me to go or not to go?

B: Zěnmē shuō ne? Nǐ kànzhe bàn ba!

What should I say? Do what you think best!

A: Nǐ yào mǎi shénme yánsède chènshǎn?

What color shirt do you want to buy?

B: Nǐ kànzhe mǎi ba.

Buy what you think best.

**dǎ zhàng**: “to fight a war, to go to war” This is a verb plus general object, like **niàn shū**. **Zhàng** is not used by itself (except in a construction like **Zhèi yízhàng dǎle hǎojǐge yuè**, “This battle/war was fought for many months,” in which **zhàng** simply precedes **dǎ** instead of following it).

If you want to say “war” by itself, you have to use another word, **zhànzhēng**, which is taught in the next module.

## Notes on №9

**sòngxíng**:

1. (1) “to see off, to wish (someone) a good trip”

Xiàwǔ liǎngdiǎn wǒ dào jīchǎng gěi Zhāng Xiānsheng, Zhāng Tàitai sòngxíng.

At two this afternoon I’m going to the airport to see Mr. and Mrs. **Zhāng** off.

2. (2) “to give a going-away party”

A: Nǐ jīntiān wǎnshang yǒu meiyǒu shì?

Are you busy tonight?

B: Wǒmen jīntiān wǎnshang chūqu chī fàn, gěi péngyou sòngxíng.

We’re going out for dinner tonight to have a going-away party for a friend.

**zhèi yíxiàzi**: “as a result of this” This means that something has happened which brings a new turn to the situation. It can often be translated into English simply by using the word “now.” (in sentence 9B, it may be best just to omit it from the translation.)

Qián lái le, zhèi yíxiàzi kéyǐ mǎi fángzi le!

The money has come. Now we can buy the house!

Zhèi yíxiàzi zāogāo le, wǒde qián bú gòu le.

This is terrible! I don’t have enough money (e.g., to pay for the things I just brought to the cashier).

**děng**: “when, by the time; till” This word, which you first learned as “to wait,” can have these other meanings in a dependent clause. This use is similar to that of **děng dào**, which you learned in Unit 3 may be used for “when” or “by the time.”

Děng wǒ dào le Běijīng wǒ cái zhīdao tā yě zài Běijīng.

It wasn’t till I got to Běijīng that I found out he was there too.

### Notes on №10”

**shǎ**: “to be stupid, to be silly, to be naive“

Nǐ zhēn shǎ! Qián fàng zài yínhángli duó hǎo! Fàng zài jiāli gàn shénme?

You’re really silly. It’s such a good idea to put your money in a bank, what are you keeping it at home for?

Shǎ háizi, bié zǒng wèn nèixiē shǎ wèntí, hǎo bu hǎo?

You silly kid, would you quit asking such silly questions all the time?

**zǎo**: Besides “early,” **zǎo** can also mean “before, sooner,” or “long ago.” Here are more examples.

Tāmen jǐge nǚtóngxué zǎo jiu pǎo dao hǎibiān qu wán le.

Those women students took off for the beach a long time ago.

Hài! Wǒ zǎo lái yìtiān jiu hǎo le.

(Sigh) If only I had come a day earlier.

Sometimes **zǎo** only conveys the speaker’s feeling of regret and irritation. “A long time ago” might actually be no more than a moment ago. In such cases, **zǎo** can be translated by intonation alone:

Nǐ zěnmē bù zǎo shuō! Xiànzài hái láidejí ma?

Why didn’t you say so (before)? How can we make it in time now?

Wǒ zǎo zhīdao tā shì zhèige yàngzi jiu bú huì zhème shǎ le.

If I had known that he was this way I wouldn't have been so naive.

yě bu: “don't even, won't even, wouldn't even” do something that one should do.

Bādiǎn bàn le, nǐ yě bu zǎo diǎnr jiào wo, wǒ xiànzài láibují le.

It's half past eight! Why didn't you get me up before? Now I won't make it in time.

Nǐ yě bu kuài diǎnr shōushi, wǒmen dōu dēngjí le.

Will you hurry up and get your things ready? We're all getting itchy (from waiting).

Tā yě bu kuài diǎnr lái, cài yījīng liáng le!

What is keeping him [“Won't he even come a little faster“]? The food is cold already!

yuánlái:

(1) “originally” In this meaning, it is usually interchangeable with **běnlái**, which you learned in Unit 7.

Tā yuánlái bù chī ròu, xiànzài bù zhídào zěnme chīqilai le.

He didn't used to eat meat. No he's started eating it for some reason.

Wǒ yuánlái méi jìhua qù Ōuzhōu, hòulái tā yíding yào qù, wǒ yě jiu gēnqu wánle yítàng.<sup>a</sup>

I hadn't originally planned to go to Europe. Then she insisted on going, so I went along for the fun of it.

<sup>a</sup>gēn, “to follow, to go along with”

(2) Used when revealing a fact which was not previously known, especially when that fact provides an explanation or solution to a puzzling situation. This can sometimes be translated by “it turns out that...” or by “So...”. (**Běnlái** cannot be used for this meaning.)

Wǒ xiǎng shì tā xiěde, yuánlái jiù shì nǐ xiěde!

Oh, so you wrote this! I thought he wrote it.

À! Yuánlái nǐ jiù shì Xú Xiánsheng? Huānyíng, tài huānyíng le!

Oh! So you're Mr. Xú? Welcome! Welcome indeed!

À, yuánlái shì zhème huí shì!

Oh! So that's what happened!

(3) **Yuánláide** may be used to modify a noun, with the meaning “original”:

Wǒmen yuánláide jìhua shì xiàge Xīngqíwǔ qù.

Our original plan was to go next Friday.

Tāmen yuánláide fāngzi zài chéngwàitōu, xiànzài bān dào chéngli qu zhù le.

Their original house was outside the city, (but) now they've moved into the city.

# Vocabulary

---

# Chapter 8. Module 8: Travelling in China

Student Textbook

## Preface

FSI - Standard Chinese - Module 08 TVL - Student Text and Workbook

Foreign Service Institute

CM 0310 S

STANDARD CHINESE A Modular Approach

MODULE 8: TRAVELING IN CHINA STUDENT TEXT AND WORKBOOK

SPONSORED BY AGENCIES OF THE UNITED STATES AND CANADIAN GOVERNMENTS

This publication is to be used primarily in support of training military personnel as part of the Defense Language Program (resident and nonresident). Inquiries concerning the use of materials, including requests for copies, should be addressed to:

Defense Language Institute

Foreign Language Center

Nonresident Instruction Division Presidio of Monterey, CA 93940

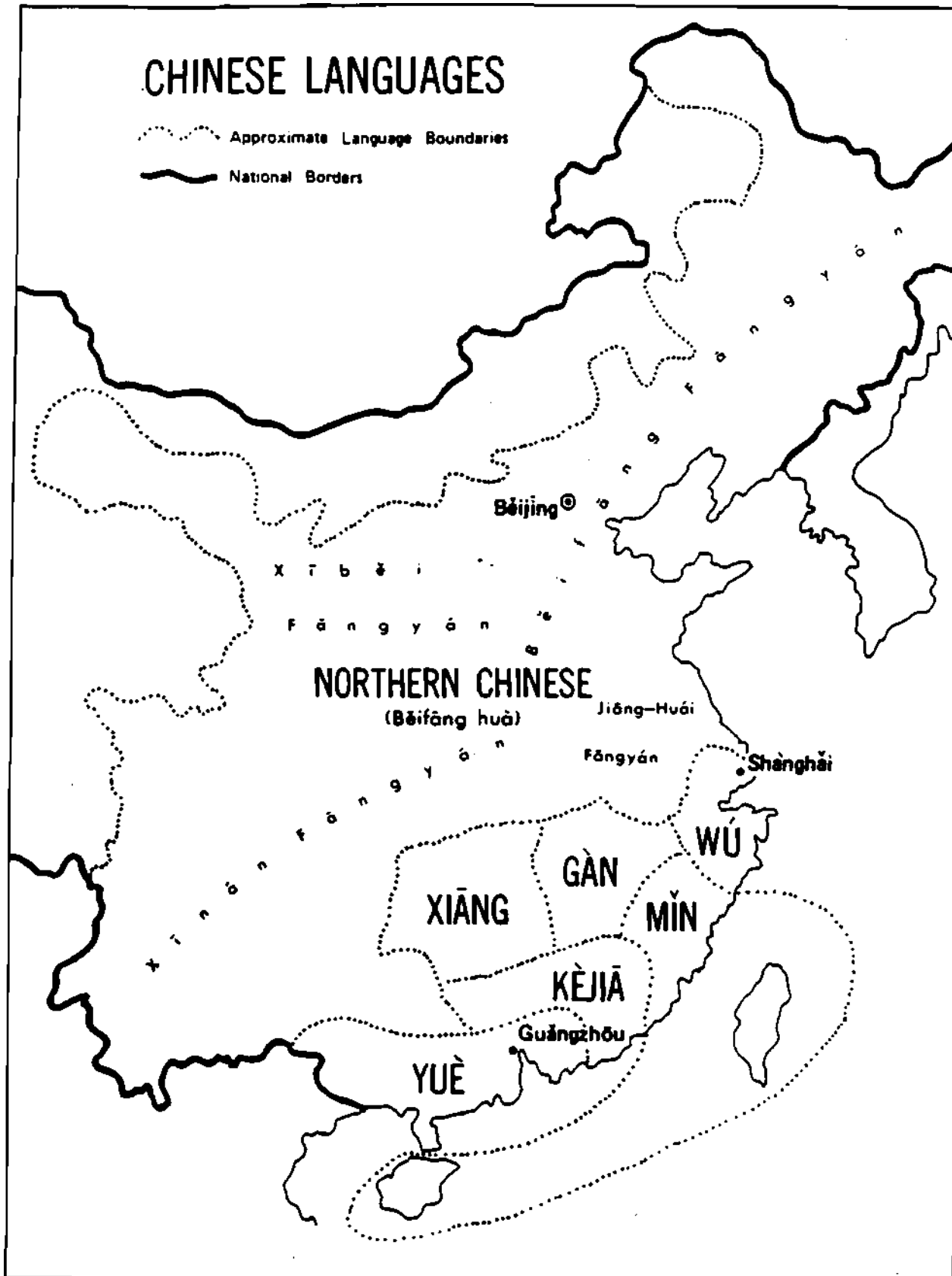
Topics in the areas of politics, international relations, mores, etc., which may be considered as controversial from some points of view are sometimes included in language training for DLIFLC students, since military personnel may find themselves in positions where clear understanding of conversations or written material of this nature will be essential to their mission. The presence of controversial statements—whether real or apparent—in DLIFLC materials should not be construed as representing the opinions of the writers, of the Defense Language Institute, or of the Department of Defense.

In DLIFLC publications, the words "he," "him," and "his" denote both masculine and feminine genders. This statement does not apply to translations of foreign language texts.

DRAFT EDITION

JULY 1982

## Maps of Chinese languages



# Unit 1

## References

### Reference List

### Vocabulary

### Reference Notes

#### Notes on №1

Asking how to address someone: If you are not sure how to address someone, it is usually acceptable to ask the person himself. Most Chinese recognize that they have a complicated system of terms of address, and are happy to answer such questions.

chenghu: “to address” or “form of address”

Kuài gàosu wo, wǒ gāi zěnmě chēnghu nǐde fùmǔ ne?

Quick tell me: how should I address your parents?

Xiàng “Xiǎo Wáng,” “Lǎo Zāng” zhèizǒng chēnghu xiànzài hěn liúxíng le.

Forms of address like “Xiǎo Wáng” and “Lǎo Zhāng” are now very common.

... hǎo ne?: “Would it be best to . . . ?” Wǒmen zěnmě chēnghu nín acts as the subject of the verb hǎo. Here is a diagram:

Wǒmen zěnmě chēnghu nín	hǎo ne?
[For] us to address you how	[would] be good?
“How would it be best for us to address you?”	

For sentences with a similar structure, compare 2A and 8A below. Here are three further examples:

Zěnmě zuò hǎo?

What should I do?
<i>Zěnmē chī hǎo ne?</i>
How should it be cooked (lit., “eaten”)?
<i>Wǒ zhēn bù zhīdào gàosu tā hǎo ne, háishi bú. gàosu tā hǎo?</i>
I really don't know whether I should tell him or not.

*Cānguān*, literally, “enter-look,” and *fǎngwèn*, literally, “visit-interview,” are both sometimes translated as “to visit,” but there is an important difference in their meaning: you *cānguān* a place (like a museum), but you *fǎngwèn* people. Thus, *cānguān* is translated as “visit and observe,” and *fǎngwèn* as “visit and talk with.” By extension, you can also *fǎngwèn* a place, but this implies a formal visit to a country or visits to factories or offices where the visitors have a chance to talk with the responsible people and workers. In addition, *fǎngwèn* also sometimes translates the English verb “to interview.” Examples:

<i>Wǒ bù xǐhuan cānguān zhèiyangde dìfang, wǒ xiǎng cānguān gōngchǎng.</i>
I don't like to visit this kind of place. I want to visit a factory.
<i>Duìbuqǐ xiānsheng, zhèlǐ shì jūnshì dìqǔ, bù kéyǐ cānguān.</i>
I'm sorry, sir. This is a military zone; sightseeing is not permitted.
<i>Qùnián wǒ zài Zhōngguó fǎngwènle liǎngge gānbu jiāting.</i>
Last year in China I visited two cadres' families.
<i>Zài liǎngge xīngqīlǐ, tāmen fǎngwènle liùge chéngshì.</i>
They visited six cities in two weeks. (Implies that they talked with city officials.)
<i>Zhè zhēn shì yíci yǒu yìside fǎngwèn.</i>
This was really an interesting visit.
<i>Zuótiān tāmen qù fǎngwènle yíwèi yǒu míngde Zhōngguó xuézhě.</i>
Yesterday they went to interview a famous Chinese scholar.

## Notes on №2

The structure of sentence 2A, which is similar to that of 1A, can be diagrammed this way:

<i>Zhèjiàn shì</i>	,	<i>zěnmē ānpái</i>	<i>bǐjiǎo hǎo?</i>
[As for] this matter		how arrange	[would be] comparatively better?



ānpái: “to arrange,” “to set up”

Tā zongshi bǎ shíjiān ānpáide hěn hǎo.
He always arranges his time well.
Nǐ xiān bǎ zhuōzi ānpaihǎo, kèren kuài lái le.
First arrange the tables; the guests will be here soon.
Tā Sānyuè yǐqián jiù bú zài zhèr, bèi ānpái dào biéde dìfang qù le.
He had left here even before March, having been assigned to another location.

bǐjiǎo or bǐjiào:

1. “Comparatively,” “relatively,” “more” is the meaning in sentence 2A. bǐjiǎo also has the following meanings:
2. “to compare”:

Yàoshi bǐjiào zhè liǎngge chéng-shì, wǒ háishi xǐhuan Hángzhōu.
If you compare these two cities, I prefer Hángzhōu.
Wǒmen kěyǐ bǐjiào yíxià shéi zuòde hǎo.
We can compare who did it better.

3. “fairly,” “rather”

Jīntiān bǐjiào lěng, duō chuān diǎnr yīfú.
It’s rather cold today, put on some clothing.

Context will often tell you whether bǐjiǎo as an adverb implies a comparison (in which case it should be translated as “comparatively,” “relatively,” or (in which case it should be translated “more”) or does not imply a comparison as “rather” or “fairly”).

Tā shì bǐjiào ài jiǎng huàde rén.
He is a rather talkative person.
Zhè liǎngge bànfǎ, nǐge bǐjiào yǒu xiào?
Of these two methods, which is more effective?
Dìèrge bànfǎ bǐjiào yǒu xiào.
The second is more effective.
Cóng zhèr dào chéngli qù, zuò dìtiě bǐjiào kuài yídiǎnr.
To go into the city from here, it’s somewhat faster by subway.

**Shànghǎi fāngmian**: Literally, “the Shànghái side,” meaning the concerned party in Shànghái. In this sentence, the best English translation is simply “Shànghái.” For more examples of this use of **fāngmian**, see the Society module, Unit 1, Notes on No. 8.

**liánxi**: “to contact,” “to get in touch with,” or as a noun, “connection,” “ties.” **liánxi** can be between individual people, groups, or phenomena:

Wǒmen yǐjīng yǒu liǎngsānniǎn méiyǒu liánxi le, bù zhīdào tā zuìjìn zěnmeyàng.

We haven't been in touch for two or three years. I wonder how he has been lately.

Zhèi liǎngge wèntí méiyǒu shenme liánxi.

There's no connection between these two questions.

Zhèixiē nián lái, Zhōng-Měi liǎngguóde liánxi yuè lái yuè guǎng le.

In the past few years, ties between China and the U.S. have been getting broader and broader.

**liánxi yíxià**: **Yíxià** here is used the same way as in a sentence you learned in the Meeting module, Unit 8: **Wǒ tì nǐ zhuǎngào yíxià**, “I will pass on the message for you.” **Yíxià** means “one time,” and simply adds a casual feeling, similar to the effect of reduplicating a verb. (**Yíxià** here is not translated as “a while” or “a little bit.”) Reduplicating the verb has about the same meaning: **liánxi liánxi**.

**Děng**, **zài shuō** literally means “Wait until ... and then talk about it?” **Zài shuō** is often better translated as “see about it” or “deal with it.” **Děng** can sometimes be translated simply as “when.”

Míngtiān zài shuō.

We'll see about that tomorrow.

Děng tā lái le zài shuō.

We'll see about that when he gets here.

Wǒmen xiān shìshì kàn zài shuō.

Let's try it out first and then see about it.

### Notes on №3

**-dài**: “zone,” “area,” “belt” The original meaning of **dài** is a belt or band, as in **pídài**, “leather belt,” **lùyīndài**, “recording tape,” and **xiédài**, “shoelaces.” It is easy to see why it has also come to mean “belt” in a geographical sense, and by extension, “zone” or “area.” **-Dài** is used in such words as **rèdài** (literally “hot-zone”) “the tropics,” and **dìdài**, “zone,” “region.” It is also used in the common phrases **zhèi yídài**, “this area,” and **yánhǎi yídài**, “coastal region” (you will learn **yánhǎi** in Unit 5 of this module).

Zhèi yídài wǎnshàng hěn wēixiǎn. Nǐ yíge rén chūqu děi xiǎoxīn diǎnr.

This area is dangerous at night. You'd better be careful if you go out alone.

You can use names of regions in the pattern ... **yídài**:

Tīng nǐ shuō huà, nǐ dàgài shì Shānběi yídài rén.

From the way you speak, I'd guess you're from the area of northern Shānxī.

**fāngyán**: “dialect” (Fāng-, as in **difāng**. “place,” here means “local.” -Yán forms part of the word **yǔyán**, “language,” which is presented in sentence 9B.) In linguistics, the word **fāngyán** is used as we use the word “dialect.” In common Chinese usage, **fāngyán** also refers to the various Chinese languages (such as Cantonese) which are not intelligible to a speaker of Standard Chinese. See also the note on **pǔtōnghuà** under Number 5.

**liǎojiě**: As a state verb, “to understand,” “to grasp,” “to comprehend,” and as an action verb, “to find out,” “to acquaint oneself with.” As a state verb, it can be used in the pattern **duì . . . liǎojiě** (see the fourth and fifth examples below).

- As a state verb

Nǐ bù liǎojiě qíngkuàng.

You don't understand the situation.

Tā hěn liǎojiě nàlǐde qíngkuàng.

He understands the situation there quite well.

Tāde guòqù, wǒ liǎojiěde fēicháng qīngchú.

I am very familiar with his past history.

Nǐ duì tā hái bù liǎojiě.

You still don't understand him.

Duì Zhōngguó lìshì wǒ liǎojiě bú gòu.

I don't know enough about Chinese history.

- As an action verb

Nǐ dào nàr qù yǐqián zuì hǎo liǎojiě yíxià nàrde fēngsú.

Before you go there, you would do well to acquaint yourself with the (local) customs.

Wǒ xiǎng liǎojiě liǎojiě rénmín shēnghuōde qíngkuàng.

I would like to find out about the (daily) life of the people.

When the word “know” means to understand a person, it must be translated into Chinese as **liǎojiě**:

Tā àiren zuì liǎojiě ta.

His wife knows him best, (or “Her husband . . .”)

(**Rènshi tā** simply means “to be acquainted with him,” and **zhīdao tā** means “to know of him.”)

**tánbudào**: “cannot speak of ...” A polite response to flattering comments. After **tánbudào**, you usually repeat the words of the first speaker, e.g.,

Nǐ duì Měiguō wénhuà hěn liǎojiě.
You understand American culture very well.
Tánbudào liǎojiě, wǒ zhǐ shì duì zhèifāngmiàn hěn yǒu xìngqù.
It’s kind of you to say so (“One cannot speak of understanding it”), but I’m just very interested in it.

### Notes on №4

**shíyóu**: “petroleum,” “oil” (literally, “rock-oil,” which, incidentally, is also the meaning of the English word “petroleum”) Examples: **shíyóu gōngyè**. “the oil industry”; **shíyóu huàxué**, “petrochemistry.”

**dàbùfen**: “the most part,” “for the most part,” “mostly.” The stress in this word is on the syllable **dà-**, and in conversation, the middle syllable, **-bu-**, is often neutral tone (you may even hear what sounds like **dàbfen**, with the **u** sound missing).

Use **dàbùfen** to modify a verb or a noun:

Měiguō rén dàbùfen dōu yǒu , zìjǐde chē.	Most Americans have their own car.
Dàbùfen Měiguō rén dōu yǒu zìjǐde chē.	

**duì ba?**: “isn’t that correct?” “isn’t that so?” You have already learned to ask for the listener’s confirmation by using **shì bu shì?** or **shì ma?** and **duì bu duì?** or **duì ma?** at the end of a sentence. **Shì ba?** and **duì ba?** are also used in the same sentence position to ask for confirmation, but because of the marker **ba**, they imply that the speaker is fairly sure that his information is correct.

**quánbù**: “entire,” “whole,” “all”

Zhèixiē shū wǒ quánbù dōu kànguo le.
I’ve read all of these books.
Tāde qián quánbù yōng zài lǚxíngshang le.
His money was all used up by the trip, (“used on the trip”)
Tā gěi wǒde gōngzuò, wǒ hái méi quánbù zuòwán ne.
I haven’t finished all of the work he gave me yet.
Tā shuōde huà quánbù méi yòng.
Everything he said is nonsense (worthless, useless).
Nǐ bù zhīdào tāde quánbù qíngkuàng zěnme néng hé ta jīchǔn?

How can you marry him without knowing his whole situation?

### Notes on №5

**Běifāng**, “the north” of a country, and **nánfāng**, “the south” of a country: When used with reference to China, these terms usually mean the area north of the **Huáng Hé** (Yellow River) and the area south of the **Chángjiāng** (Yangtze River), respectively. The area between the rivers is usually considered central China.

Béifāng rén xǐhuan chī miànshí, nánfāng rén xǐhuan chī mǐfàn.

Northerners like to eat foods made from wheat, and southerners like to eat rice.

Tāde Zhōngguó huà yǒu nánfāng kǒuyīn.

His Chinese has a southern accent,

**pǔtōnghuà**: “the common speech,” the usual designation in the PRC for what we have called in this course “Standard Chinese.” **pǔtōnghuà** is officially defined as consisting of the sound system of **Běijīng** speech, the vocabulary and idiom of northern speech, and the grammar of exemplary modern vernacular writings.

It would be inaccurate to equate **pǔtōnghuà** with either **běifāng huà** (“northern speech”) or **Běijīng huà** (“**Běijīng** speech”), because **pǔtōnghuà** has absorbed many elements from other dialects, contributing to its richness. Conversely, such things as purely regional expressions (including those of **Běijīng** itself) and non-standard pronunciations are not considered **pǔtōnghuà**.

Before the PRC, the term **pǔtōnghuà** already existed, but referred to the approximations of Mandarin spoken by the common people of northern China. (In Taiwan, the term **guóyǔ**, “the national language,” is used for the officially promoted standard language.)

**bù zhǐ shì běifāng rén**: “not Just northerners” **Bù zhǐ shì**, “not only,” can be followed by a noun, verb, or clause. Sometimes you may hear **bú jiù shì**, **bú dàn shì**, **bù guāng shì**, or **bù jǐn shì** (which you will learn in the Life in China module), with the same meaning. The **shì** is necessary before a noun but may be omitted before a verb:

Wǒmen bàngōngshì bù zhǐ (shì) yǒu Méiguó rén, hái yǒu jǐge Zhōngguó rén bāng wǒmen gōngzuò.

In our office, there are not only Americans, but also some Chinese who help us.

### Notes on №6

**Shēnzhèn**, formerly known by its Cantonese pronunciation, **Shumchun**, is the border stop on the railroad from Hong Kong to **Guǎngzhōu** (Canton).

**lí jìng**: “leave a country,” literally, “leave-boundary” You can also say **chū jìng**.

**yǐwéi**: “to mistakenly think” **Xiǎng** and **rènwéi**, which you will learn in the next unit, both mean “to think that ...” **Yǐwéi** adds the meaning that the subject's impression was wrong.

Nǐ yǐwéi wǒ bù zhīdào?! Wǒ zǎo Jiù tīngshuō le!

You thought I didn't know?! I heard about it a long time ago!

Wǒ yǐwéi wǒ yíge rén kéyǐ nàdedòng, shéi zhīdào nàme zhòng.

I thought I could carry it by myself; who would have thought It was so heavy?

Wǒ hái yǐwéi: “I thought (mistakenly)” You have learned **hái** as “still” and as “also, additionally.” This **hái** has a different meaning and is not translated. It emphasizes that the subject was under a wrong impression.

This meaning of **hái** is most clearly seen with the verb **xiǎng**: **Wǒ hái xiǎng** means “I mistakenly thought,” whereas **Wǒ xiǎng** does not specify whether the judgment was right or wrong.

Òu, shì nǐ ya! Wǒ hái xiǎng (OR yǐwéi) shì biérén ne!

Oh, it's you! I thought It was someone else.

A: Nǐ tīngshuōle ma? Tā shēngle ge érzi.

Have you heard? She had a baby boy.

B: Òu, wǒ hái bù zhīdào ne!

Oh, I didn't know! (Here, it is not a mistaken impression but the previous lack of any information on the subject which **hái** emphasizes)

### Notes on №7

**Dōngběi, Xībēi**: Although you learned this is in the Directions module, it bears repeating that combined direction names (“northwest,” “southeast,” etc.) are said in the reverse order from English:

xībēi	(west-north) northwest
xīnán	(west-south) southwest
dōngběi	(east-north) northeast
dōngnán	(east-south) southeast

**Dōngběi**: “the Northeast,” “Manchuria” The northeastern region of China, consisting of the three provinces of **Liáoníng**, **Jílín**, and **Hēilóngjiāng**, is sometimes called Manchuria because the largest indigenous minority is the Manchu, or **Mǎn**, nationality. Of China's 2.6 million **Mǎn**, most live scattered throughout these three provinces and **Héběi**; there are also smaller **Mǎn** populations in the cities of **Běijīng**, **Chéngdū**, **Xi'ān**, and Hohhot. The **Mǎn**, and before them their ancestors the **Nǚzhēn** (Nuchen or Juchen, an ancient nationality of the same region), were a major force in Chinese history from the **Jīn** Dynasty, in which the **Nǚzhēn** ruled northern China for over a century (1115-1234), to the Manchu-run **Qīng** Dynasty (1644-1911). After the **Qīng** dynasty established its capital in **Běijīng**, great numbers of **Mǎn** filtered south through **Shānhǎi** Pass in **Héběi** and intermixed with the **Hàn** Chinese. To this century, large-scale **Hàn** migration to the Northeast (hundreds of thousands every year) has caused the region's population to swell to 99.4 million (1976 estimate), of which only 2.4 million are of the **Mǎn** nationality. Although their ethnic origins are distinct from the **Hàn** Chinese, the **Mǎn**

today are virtually assimilated with the **Hàn** racially, culturally, and linguistically. Most, for example, speak only Chinese; the **Mǎn** language, which in the last dynasty was still used alongside Chinese in official court documents, is well on its way to extinction (some **Mǎn** speakers remain in **Àihuī** and **Fùyù** counties in **Hēilóngjiāng**).



The three provinces of the Northeast

**Xībēi**: “the Northwest,” a region which includes **Níngxià**, **Xīnjiāng**, **Qīnghǎi**, **Shǎnxī**, and **Gānsù**.

**qùguo le**: “have gone to” Notice that new-situation **le** may follow a verb phrase with the ending **-guo**. Here are some other examples:

A: <b>Nǐ chīguo fàn le ma?</b>
Have you eaten yet?
B: <b>Chīguò le.</b>
Yes.
A: <b>Ta zuì xīnde diànyǐng nǐ kànguo le ma?</b>
Have you seen his latest movie yet?
B: <b>Kànguo le.</b>
Yes.

**Dàqìng**: An oil-producing center (recently given the statue of a city) in the **Sōng-Nèn** Plain of southern **Héilóngjiāng** province. **Dàqìng** is the nation’s leading producer of crude oil, accounting for more than one third of the crude oil volume. China’s oil industry has only developed since 1949, and it was the monumental exploration and drilling at **Dàqìng**, under extremely adverse conditions, that in large part enabled China to meet her own oil needs by 1963. In 1961:, **Máo Zédōng** called on the whole nation to learn from **Dàqìng** in industry (**Gōngyè xué Dàqìng**), a slogan which continued to be heard through the Cultural Revolution.

### Notes on №8

...hǎo le: The ending **hǎo le**, literally “and then it will be okay,” has a special meaning; the translation varies with the context. It is used when the speaker (1) agrees to something, permits someone to do something, or suggests that someone do something, or (2) gives in to something, doesn’t care if something happens.

- |    |  |
|----|--|
| 1. | <b>Wǒ qù hǎo le.</b>                                     |
|    | I'll go. (AGREEING TO DO SOMETHING)                      |
|    | <b>Zhào nǐ shuōde bàn hǎo le.</b>                        |
|    | We'll do it your way, then. (AGREEING TO DO SOMETHING)   |
|    | <b>Nǐ shuō Zhōngwén hǎo le, wǒ tīngdedōng.</b>           |
|    | Go ahead and speak Chinese. I understand. (SUGGESTING)   |
|    | <b>Nǐ náqu hǎo le, wǒ yòngwán le.</b>                    |
|    | Go ahead and take it. I'm finished with it. (PERMITTING) |
| 2. | <b>Nǐ bú qù hǎo le, wǒ bù gāoxìng.</b>                   |
|    | So don't go, then. But I'm not happy about it.           |
|    | <b>Ràng tā shuō hǎo le, wǒ bù guǎn!</b>                  |
|    | Let him say what he wants to; I don't care!              |

“**Huí tóu(r) jiàn**”: “See you later This is a **Běijīng** expression. **Huí tóu**, literally, “turn one’s head,” is used colloquially to mean “later,” as in

<b>Huí tóu wǒmen zài tán.</b>
We'll talk it over later.
<b>Wǒ huí tóu jiù lái.</b>
I'll be there in a minute.

Use **Huí tóu(r) jiàn** when you expect to see the other person shortly.

### Notes on №9

**xuézhé**: “scholar” You will find the ending **-zhě** in a number of words where it means **-de rén**, “a person who....” In Unit 4, you will learn **gōngzuòzhé**. “worker (in a certain field).” Other examples:

- **dúzhě** reader (**dú**, “read,” will be presented in the next module)
- **jìzhě** reporter, Journalist (lit., “one who records things”)
- **huòdézhé** recipient of a prize, etc. (**huòdé** means “to obtain”)



zhǔyào: As an adjective, “major/main/essential,” and as an adverb, “mainly, “essentially”:

Qù Xīběi, zhǔyàode mùdi shì xiǎng liǎojiě yidiǎnr guānyú nàrde nóngyè shēngchǎn qíngkuàng.
The main reason for going to the Northwest is to find out about agricultural production there.
Wǒmen zhèr zhǔyàode wèntí shì méi qián.
Our main problem here is that we have no money.
Nàr zhǔyào zhǎnlǎn xiē shénme?
What are the main things they exhibit there? (“What mainly do they exhibit there?”)
Néng bu néng qù, zhǔyào kàn shíjiǎn.
Whether or not we can go depends mainly on time.
Tā zhǔyào jǐjiǎngde shì Zhōngguóde shíyóu shēngchǎn qíngkuàng.
He spoke mainly about China's oil production.

There are times when zhǔyào must be translated as “essentially” rather than as “mainly,” for example:

Wǒ jīntiān lái, zhǔyào shì yīnwei wǒde péngyou dōu lái le.
I came today essentially because all my friends came.

This sentence does not imply that there are any other reasons of lesser importance.

yǔyán “language” The counter for a language is usually -zhǒng. “kind”:

Xué yìzhǒng yǔyán bú shì yìtiān liǎngtiānde shì.
Learning a language isn't something you can do overnight (“in a day or two”).
Zhōngwén shì yìzhǒng bǐjiǎo nán xuéde yǔyán.
Chinese is a rather difficult language to learn.
Tā chángcháng jiāo tamen yìxiē bù yīnggāi jiāode yǔyán.
He often teaches them language (words and phrases) that shouldn't be taught.

-Yǔ can be used as the ending for the names of languages:

Yīngyǔ	English	Xībānyáyǔ	Spanish
Hànyǔ	Chinese	Déyǔ	German
Rìyǔ	Japanese	Fǎyǔ	French
Ālābōyǔ	Arabic	Éyǔ	Russian

Mǎnyǔ	Manchurian	Yīndiyǔ	Hindi
wàiyǔ		foreign language	

The ending

- huà (as in Zhōngguó huà) refers to just the spoken language.
- Wén can refer to
  1. the written, or
  2. the written plus the spoken.
- -Yǔ does not differentiate spoken and written.

### Notes on №10

**Xīnjiāng:** Formerly spelled Sinkiang in English. **Xīnjiāng**, an autonomous region (not a province) in northwest China, has the largest area of all China's provinces and autonomous regions. Population: 12 million (1981 est.), of which about 6 million are of the Uygur nationality. For a description of the region and its people, see Unit 6 Reference Notes.

**Nèiměng:** Also **Nèi Měnggǔ**. Inner Mongolia (also called Nei Monggol) is an autonomous region in north central China, population 9 million. About twenty percent of the population are Mongols. The capital is Hohhot (in Chinese, **Hūhéháotè**).

#### Note

The facts as represented in exchange 10 need to be qualified. It is true that the minority nationality languages are still the most widely used in the vast rural areas of **Xīnjiāng**, Inner Mongolia, and other minority nationality regions. The larger cities in these regions, however, now have substantial **Hàn** Chinese populations, and in some cities the **Hàn** are even in the majority.

**shǎoshù:** “minority” or “a minority of,” “a small number of” This is the opposite of **duōshù**. “majority,” which you learned in the Society module.

Tāmen shì shǎoshù.

They are in the minority.

Zhǐ yǒu shǎoshù Mǎn rén hái néng shuō Mǎnyǔ.

There are only a small number of Manchurians who can still speak the Manchu language.

**mínzú:** “nationality,” “a people,” or “nation” in the non-governmental sense: a people who share common origins, history, customs, and language. Examples: **Zhōnghuá mínzú**, “the Chinese nation”; **Ālābó mínzú**, “the Arab nation”; **mínzú dúlì**, “national independence.”

Mèiguó shì yíge duō mínzúde guójia.

America is a nation of many ethnic groups.

**Shǎoshù mínzú** is “minority nationality,” often translated as “national minority.” In the U.S., we more often speak of “ethnic minorities,” but the Chinese prefer the translation “minority nationalities.”

**zhàn**: (1) “to occupy” a space, area, or position, (2) “to make up,” “to constitute,” a proportion of an amount, or (3) “to take up” an amount of time

Zěnmē hái yǒu rén zhànzhē zhèige fāngjiān? Gāi wǒmen yòng le!
Why are there still people occupying this room? It's our turn to use it!
Zhèizhāng zhuōzi tài zhàn dìfang le, bǎ ta bānchūqu.
This table takes up too much space. Let's move it out.
Zhèige fāngzi zhānde dìfang yǒu duō dà?
How much space does this building take up?
Zài wǒmen xuéxiàode xuéshēngzhōng, shǎoshù mínzú xuéshēng zhàn yíban zuǒyòu.
Minority nationality students make up about half of the students in our school.
Xiānzài fùnǚ zài shèhuishang zhàn yuè lái yuè zhòngyào de dìwei le.
Now women are occupying a more and more important position in society.
Zhēn duìbuqǐ zhànle nǐ bù shǎo shíjiān.
Please excuse me for taking up so much of your time.

### Notes on №11

**dìqū**: “region,” “district,” “area”

Běijīng dìqū		the Běijīng area
Huáběi dìqū		the north China region
duō shān dìqū		a mountainous district

**quán**: (1) “to be complete,” (2) “whole,” “entire,” (3) “entirely,” “completely”

Zhèitào shū bù quán, disìběn méiyǒu le.
This set of books is incomplete; the fourth volume is missing.
Quán shìjiè yígòng yǒu duōshǎo zhǒng yǔyán?
How many languages are there in the whole world?
Liǎngsānnián méi shuō Zhōngwén le, chàbuduō quán wàng le.
After not speaking Chinese for two or three years, (I) have almost completely forgotten it.
Wǒ bǎ nèi jǐjiàn yīfu quán gěi tā le.

I gave all those articles of clothing to him.

**Lǚxíng hè**: Short for **Zhōngguó Lǚxíng hè** China Travel Service (CTS), or **Zhōngguó Guójì Lǚxíngshè**, China International Travel Service (CITS). These are the two government agencies through which all travel arrangements in China are handled. Representatives from CITS accompany tour groups in China.

**gǎo**: “to do,” “to carry on,” “to engage in,” “to work in” a certain field or endeavor.

**Gǎo shénme ne?**

What are you doing? OR What are you up to?

**Zhèjiàn shì wǒ gǎolai gǎoqù gǎobuhǎo.**

I've tried doing this all different ways and I just can't get it right.

gǎo	gǎo wèishēng	to do cleanup
	gǎo shēngchǎn	to engage in production
a task or endeavor	gǎo shèhuìzhǔyì	to practice socialism
	gǎo Sìge Xiàndàihuà	to carry on the Four Modernizations

gǎo	Tā shìgǎo fānyide.	He's a translator. (“He works in translation.”)
	Tā shìgǎo wénxuēde.	He works in literature.
a line of work	Tā shìgǎo xīnwénde.	He's a Journalist/reporter/etc.
	Tā shìgǎo nòngyède.	He works in agriculture.

**Gǎohǎo**, which is especially common in political talk, means “to make a good job of (something), “or “to handle (something) well”:

**Gǎohǎo shēngchǎn shì wǒmen zuì zhòngyào de gōngzuò.**

Handling production well is our most Important job.

**Gǎo** is used with many resultative verb endings (in the following two examples)

**gǎo** is interchangeable with **nòng**, “to do”):

**Shéi bǎ wǒde chē gǎohuài le?**

Who broke my bicycle/car?

Hài, nǐ yòu gǎocuò le, zhèige zì bú shì “niǎo,” shì “wū.”

No, you've got it wrong again. This character isn't “niǎo,” it's “wū.”

Zěnmē gǎode is an idiom, used as follows:

Zěnmē gǎode?!	What went wrong?! OR What's wrong?! OR Jíhat the ... ?!
A: Tā shuō tā bù lái le.	Now he says he isn't coming.
B: Zěnmē gǎode?	How come?
A: Tā bù shūfu.	He isn't feeling well.
Nǐ zěnmē gǎode?!	What's with you? OR What's the matter with you? OR What the heck are you doing?

mǎnyǐ: “to be pleased, “to be satisfied” This is often used with the prepositional verb **duì**, “toward,” equivalent to English “pleased with”:

Hěn duō rén duì Dǎngde yìxiē zhèngcè bù mǎnyǐ.

Many people are dissatisfied with some of the Party's policies.

Wǒde huídá, nǐ mǎnyì ma?

Are you satisfied with my answer?

Tā duì nǐ zhème hǎo, nǐ wèishénme hái bù mǎnyì?

He's so good to you; why are you still dissatisfied?

Yíge mǎnyìde huídá is an idiom for “a satisfactory answer.”

Wǒ xīwàng néng gěi nǐ yíge mǎnyìde huídá.

I hope I can give you a satisfactory answer.

## Unit 2

## References

## Reference List

## Vocabulary

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1

**rènwéi**: “to think (that),” “to consider (that),” “to believe (that)” This is typically used for considered opinions and judgments, as opposed to **xiǎng**, “to think,” which can be used for mere impressions and guesses. Also contrast **yīwéi**. “to think mistakenly.”

Wǒ rènwéi tā shuōde shì duìde.

I consider what he said correct **OR** I believe that what he said is right

Tā rènwéi zhèijiàn shì bù yīnggāi ràng wǒmen zuò.

He does not think we should be allowed to do this.

**mùqián**: “the present” or “at present.” Although both **mùqián** and **xiànzài**, “now,” refer to the present, **xiànzài** may mean “right now,” whereas **mùqián** must refer to a broader period of time.

Mùqián wǒmen chǎngde shēngchǎn shuǐpíng hái bú gòu gāo.

At present our factory's production level isn't high enough.

Mùqián tāde jīngjì qíngkuàng bú tài hǎo.

At present his financial situation isn't too great.

dà-, zhōng-, xiǎoxué: Short for dàxué, zhōngxué, xiǎoxué.

**gémìng**: “evolution,” “revolutionary,” “to revolt.” In ancient China, **gémìng**, literally, “to change the mandate of heaven,” referred to the changing of dynasties, since the monarch was held to be ordained by heaven. The pattern **Gé X-de mìng**, literally, “to change X's mandate of heaven,” means “to revolt against X.”

**Wénhuà Gémìng** or **Wénhuà Dà Gémìng**; The common terms for the **Wúchǎn Jiējí Wénhuà Dà Gémìng**. Great Proletarian Cultural Revolution” (1966-1977). An even shorter abbreviation is **Wéngé**.

**shuǐpíng**; “level,” “standard”

Rìběnde gōngyè shēngchǎn shuǐpíng zhēn gāo!

Japan's industrial production level is really high!

Měiguó rénde shēnghuó shuǐpíng hěn gāo!

Americans have a very high standard of living!

Tāde Déyú shuǐpíng bú gòu gāo.

His level in German isn't high enough.

## Notes on №2

tígào: “to raise,” “to improve”

Dào Zhōngguó qù, kényi tígào duì Zhōngguóde rènsì.

By going to China, you can increase your understanding of China.

Jiěfàng yǐhòu, fùnǚde dìwei tígào le.

Since liberation, the status of women has improved.

Shǎoshù mínzú shuō pùtōnghuàde shuǐpíng tígào le bù shǎo.

The level of the minority nationalities in Standard Chinese has improved quite a bit.

-bùfen: “part,” “section”

Qǐng bǎ zhè yībùfen fānchéng Zhōngwén.

Please translate this part into Chinese.

Tā xiěde nèibén shū, yǒude bùfen hǎo, yǒude bùfen bù hǎo.

Some sections of the book he wrote are good, and some aren't.

yībùfen: “a part,” “a portion,” “some”

Tā shuōde huà, yībùfen shì duìde, yībùfen shì cuòde.

Part of what he said is right, and part is wrong.

Qùde rén, yǒu yībùfen hái xiǎng zài qù, yǒu yībùfen bù xiǎng qù le.

Of the people who went, some would like to go back again, and some do not want to.

fēn: “to divide” As you learned fēnkāi. “to split up,” in the Society module, this word is not entirely new to you, but here you see it with the ending -chéng, “into.” Here's another example:

Wǒ bǎ píngguó fēnchéng sìkuài, wǒmen yìrén yíkuài.

I'll divide the apple into four pieces, one piece for each of us.

-lèi: “category”

Xiànzài lái Měiguóde Zhōngguó rén dàgài kéyì fēn liǎnglèi.

The Chinese who are coming to the U.S. now can be roughly divided into two categories.

Zhèilèi wèntí zuì hǎo hé Lǚxíngshèdè rén tán.

You had best talk with the Travel Service people about this sort of question.

“Hēi Wǔlèi,” “Hóng Wǔlèi,” shì Wénhuà Dà Géming shíhoude shuōfǎ.

The “Five Black Categories and the “Five Red Categories” were terms used during the time of the Cultural Revolution.<sup>a</sup>

<sup>a</sup>These terms, which arose in the first years of the Cultural Revolution (and are now obsolete), referred to the two ideologically “irreconcilable camps.” In effect, they were used to classify people by their family backgrounds. The Five Black Categories, or “bad” backgrounds, were landlords, rich peasants, counterrevolutionaries, bad elements, sad bourgeois rightists. The Five Red (“good”) Categories were workers, poor peasants, lower-middle peasants, revolutionary army-men, and revolutionary cadres.

Zhèi jiù shì... -de yuányīn: “This is the reason that...” Here is another example of this useful pattern:

Zhèi jiù shì tā méi qùde yuānyīn.

This is the reason he didn’t go.

Zhèi jiù shì... -de yuányīn le: This sentence exemplifies a use of new-situation le to emphasize the speaker’s newly-reached understanding. You can think of this le as meaning “How I get it.\*”

Ò, nǐ yǐqián shuōguode Hóu Xiānsheng jiù shì tā le!

Oh, the Mr. Hóu you spoke of before is him!

À! Suǒyǐ nǐ nàme xiǎng qù le!

Oh! That’s why you want so much to go!

Related uses of new-situation le include drawing a new inference, e.g.,

Nàme, nǐ yíding rènshi Chén Kēzhǎng le?

Then, you must know Section Chief Chén, I suppose?

and settling on a course of action or reaching a decision:

A: Tā zhīdao wǒde diànhuà ma?

Does he know my telephone number?

B: Zhīdao.

Yes.

A: Nà wǒ jiù děng tāde diànhuà le.

Then I’ll wait for his call.



### Notes on №3

jiàoshī: “teacher,” “schoolteacher”

Wǒ shì yíge xiǎoxué jiàoshī.

I'm an elementary school teacher.

Nǐmen xuéxiào yígòng yǒu duōshǎo Yīngwén jiàoshī?

How many English teachers are there in your school?

shùliang: “quantity,” “number,” “amount”

Nǐ néng bu néng shuōchū tāmen de shùliang yǒu duōshǎo?

Can you give an exact idea of their numbers?

Cóng shùliangshang kàn, zhèige xuéxiào de nánshéng zhàn zhǔyào de dìwei.

From the point of view of numbers, the male students occupy the main position in the school.

pǔbiàn: “to be universal/widespread/common”

Zài Měiguó, yíge jiā tíng yǒu sānliàng qìchē shì hěn pǔbiàn de shì.

In America it is very common for one family to have three cars.

Zài Zhōngguó, zuìjìn sānshínián, rénmende wénhuà jiàoyu shuǐping pǔbiàn tígāole.

During the last thirty years, people's educational level in China has seen widespread improvement.

### Notes on №4

tiáojiàn: “conditions),” “circumstances”

Zhèrde gōngzuó tiáojiàn bú cuò.

Working conditions here are pretty good.

Xīběi de shēnghuó tiáojiàn bù zěnmeǎ ho.

Living conditions are not so good in the Northwest.

Zài mùqián de tiáojiànxià, wǒmen méiyǒu bànfǎ zài kuài.

Under the present circumstances, we are unable to go any faster.

Hé tāmen zuò shēngyì zhēn bù róngyì, tāmen zǒngshì yào jiǎng hěn duō tiáojiàn.

It's really hard to do business with them. They are always insisting on a lot of conditions.

Tāmen rènwéi tā méiyǒu tiáojiàn zuò zhèige gōngzuò.

They don't think he's competent to do this job.

**jīběn**: “basic,” “fundamental,” “elementary” (For the first example, you need to know **yǔfǎ**, “grammar,” and **cíhuì**. “vocabulary.”)

Xué liǎngnián Zhōngwén, jīběnde yǔfǎ hé cíhuì dōu zhīdao le.

After studying two years of Chinese, (one) knows the basic grammar and vocabulary.

Zhèige dìqū gāo nóngyède jīběn tiáojiàn bú gòu.

The basic conditions for farming are not good enough in this area.

**Jībenshang**, “basically,” is often used in the PRC to mean “in the main,” “on the whole?” “by and large.” (This usage is not common in Taiwan, however.)

Jībenshang tā shì yíge hǎo tóngzhì.

On the whole, he is a good comrade,

Jībenshang méiyǒu wèntí le.

By and large, there are no more problems.

Nǐ shuōde Yīngwén jībenshang wǒ dōu tīngdedǒng.

For the most part, I can understand all your English.

**měi... yǒu...**: “There is... for every...” Examples:

Měi sānge rén yǒu yíge shì Měiguó rén.

There is an American for every three persons. (One of every three people is an American.)

Měi sāntiān yǒu yíge rén lái.

(There is) one person (who) comes every three days.

**pǔtōng**: “to be ordinary/common/regular”

Tāmen liǎngge zhǐ shì pǔtōng péngyou, méi shenme tèbiéde guānxi.

The two of them are just ordinary friends; they don't have any special relationship.

Tā jiù shì yíge pǔtōng rén, hé nǐ hé wǒ yíyàng.

He is just an ordinary person, like you or me.

Pǔtōngde hùzhào hé zhèige yǒu shénme qūbié?

What's the difference between an ordinary passport and this?

**Notes on №5**

**zhòngdiǎn:** “heavy-point”—“emphasis,” “focal point” or in some phrases, “key.” Also used adverbially.

Nǐ yánjiūde zhòngdiǎn dōu yǒu něixiē fāngmiàn?
What are the focal points of your research?
Nǐmen yào cānguānde zhòngdiǎn shì něifāngmiàn?
What is to be the focus of your visit?
Nǐmen yào zhòngdiǎn fāzhǎnde dìqū yǒu jǐge?
How many regions do you intend to focus on developing?
Wǒmen yīnggāi bǎ zhòngdiǎn fāng zài jiàoyùshàng.
We should put the emphasis on education.
Tāmende gōngzuò zhòngdiǎn shì gāo wénhuà jiàoyù.
The focus of their work is on culture and education.

**chābié:** “difference,” “discrepancy,” “disparity” Contrast the word **qūbié** (additional required vocabulary), “difference,” “distinction.” **Chābié** stresses the idea of a distance, gap, or inequality between the things compared. **Qūbié** refers to differences, determined by inspection, between otherwise similar things.

Zhèiyang zuò hé nèiyang zuò yǒu shénme chābié?
What is the difference between doing it this way and doing it that way?
Chéngshì hé néngcūn chābié hěn dà.
There's a big difference between the city and the country.
Nǐ shuōshuo zhèi liǎngge shōuyīnjīde qūbié zài nǎr?
Tell me what the differences are between these two radios.
Zhèi liǎngběn zìdiǎn yǒu shénme qūbié?
What's the difference between these two dictionaries?

**shǒuxiān:** “first,” meaning before doing something else. This is a movable adverb (can come either before or after the subject of the sentence, but always before the verb).

Rúguǒ nǐ yào dào Zhōngguó qù, shǒuxiān yào xué yídiǎn Zhōngwén.
If you want to go to China, you should learn a little Chinese first.
Shòuxiān bǎ yào mǎide dōngxi kāi yìzhāng dānsi, rénhòu zài qǐng tā qù mǎi.

First make a list of the things you want bought, and then ask him to go buy then.

**Shǒuxiān** can also mean “first of all,” “in the first place”:

**Shǒuxiān** wǒmen yào tántan nǐde cānguān fǎngwèn jihuà.

First of all we should discuss your sightseeing plans.

In sentence 5B, **shǒuxiān zhàogu**, “first of all give consideration to,” can be idiomatically translated as “give first consideration to.”

### Notes on №6

**zìrán**: “natural,” “naturally” **Dàzìrén** means “nature” in the sense of the physical world.

**Tā hěn xǐhuan dàzìrén.**

He is very fond of nature.

**Ruìshìde zìrán huánjìng hěn tebié.**

Switzerland’s natural environment is very different.

**Zhèige shǎoshù mínzú dìqūde zìrán tiáojiàn bù hǎo.**

The natural conditions in this minority nationality region are poor.

**Tāde yàngzi hěn zìrán.**

Her appearance is very natural.

**Nǚér líkāi jiā, fùmǔ nánguò shì zìrānde.**

When a daughter leaves home, it is natural for her parents to be sad.

**Xuéle bú yòng, zìrán huì wàng.**

If you don’t use something after you learn it, you’re bound to forget it.

**Bú yòng guǎn, zìrán huì guòqude.**

Don’t worry about it; it will pass by itself.

**kēxué**: “science.” **Kēxuéjiā** is a “scientist.”

**Měiguó shì ge kēxué jìnbùde guójiā.**

The U.S. is a scientifically advanced country.

**Nóngcūn rén cóngqián méiyǒu shénme kēxué zhīshi.**

In the past, people in rural areas did not have any knowledge of science.

Kēxué is also used for “to be scientific”:

Zhèizhǒng zuòfǎ hěn kēxué.

This method is very scientific.

Nǐ nèizhǒng xiǎngfǎ bù kēxué!

That’s a very unscientific idea.

jìshù: “technique,” “skill,” “technology”

Tā kāi chēde jìshù hěn hǎo.

He's a good driver.

Zhè shì wǒ zuòde Mápó Dòufu, nǐ kàn wǒde jìshù zěnmeyàng?

I made this Mápó Beancurd. How do rate my technique?

Zhōngguóde chányè shēngchǎn jìshù fāshǎn dào le bǐjiào gāode shuǐpíng.

China\*a tea production technology is rather highly developed.

Tā shì ge jìshù gōngren.

He is a skilled worker.

## Notes on №7

chū guó: “to go abroad”

Tā shì nǎinián chū guóde?

In what year did he go abroad?

Chū guó liúxuéde yánjiūshēng nǚde duō bu duō?

Are there many women among the graduate students who go abroad to study?

dānrèn: “to assume,” “to take up” a job or post

Nǐ zài zhè dānrèn shénme gōngzuò?

What is your job title here?

Tā zǔjìn yào qù Ōuzhōu dānrèn língshì gōngzuò.

He will soon be going to Europe to do consular work.

Tā dānrènguó Měidàsī sīzhǎng.

He has been the chief of the Department of American and Oceanic Affairs.

**Dānrèn lǐngdǎo gōngzuò.** as in sentence 7B, is an often used phrase for “to take on leadership work,” “to take up a leading post” (that is, to be in a job in which one is in charge of others).

### Notes on №8

1. **jīngguò** “to pass,” to go through”

**Zhèilù chī jīngguò Dōngdān ma?**

Does this bus go through **Dōngdān**?

**Nèige dìfang wǒ méi qùguo, dànshì jīngguòguo.**

I’ve never been there, but I’ve passed through (OR passed by).

**Zhèi shì wǒ dìyīcì jīngguò zhèiyangde kǎoshì.**

This is the first time I’ve ever taken a test like this.

2. “as a result of,” “after,” “through.” This is the way **jīngguò** is used in sentence 8A. (For the second example you need to know **zhànzhēng**, “war.”)

**Jīngguò tāolùn, wǒmen juéding xià Xīngqīsi qù yēcān.**

After discussion, we have decided to hold the picnic next Thursday

**Tā yě bù jīngguò kǎolù jiù hé tā jiéhūn le.**

He married her without even giving it any consideration.

**Jīngguò hěn cháng shíjiānde zhànzhēng, zhèige dìqū yǐjīng biānde bú rènshi le.**

As a result of the lengthy war, this area has become unrecognizable,

3. “course (of events); what has happened”

**Tā huílái bǎ quánbù jīngguò gāosule wǒ.**

When he returned, he told me the whole story of what happened.

**Shìqingde jīngguò shì zěnmeyàngde, nǐ zhīdao ma?**

Do you know how the whole thing went?

null: “to make great efforts,” “to try hard,” “to exert oneself”

**Tā gōngzuò hěn nǔlì.**

He works very hard.

**Tā bú dàn nǔlì gōngzuò, rén yě hěn rèxīn.**

Not only does he work very hard, but he is also a warmhearted person.

Contrast **nǔlì gōngzuò**, “work hard,” with **yònggōng**, “study hard.

**cáiliào**:

1. “material”

**Zhèige fāngzide cáiliào kànqǐlái hǎoxiǎng bú cuò.**

This house looks like it's made of pretty good material.

2. “data,” “material”

**Tā gěile wǒ hěn duō cáiliào, wǒ sāntiān yě kànbuwán.**

He gave me a lot of data (material). Even three days wouldn't be enough time for me to finish reading it.

**Nǐ ná dào xīnde xuéxí cáiliào le ma? Míngtiān yào shàng xīn kè le.**

Have you picked up the new study materials yet? We start the new lesson tomorrow.

3. “makings,” “material”

**Tā bú shì zuò jiàoshòude cáiliào.**

He doesn't have the makings of a professor.

## Notes on №9

**shíxiàn**: “to realize/achieve/bring about/accomplish/come true” Besides being used to talk about the Four Modernizations, **shíxiàn** is also used for realizing a wish, an ideal, a goal, self-sufficiency, a reform, industrialization, etc. Note that **shíxiàn** can be used in a causal sense (i.e., “cause to come about”): “They realized their wish” [**Tāmen shíxiànle tāmen de yuànwàng**]; or in a non-causal sense (i.e., “come about”): “Their wish came about” [**Tāmen de yuànwàng shíxiànle**].

**Zài Xīfāng, shíxiàn gōngyèhuà yǐjīng shì yìbǎinián qián de shì le.**

In the West, achieving industrialization is something which was done a century ago.

**Nánjīng jībenshang shíxiànle lǜhuà.**

**Nánjīng** has basically accomplished “greenification” (making the city green by planting trees, flowers, etc.).

**xiàndài**: “modern times” or “modern,” “contemporary”

**Xiàndài rénde xiǎngfǎ dōu shì hěn kēxuéde.**

Modern man's ideas are all scientific.

-huà: “-ize,” “-ify”

Examples:

<a href="#">gōngyèhuà</a>	to industrialize	<a href="#">lǜhuà</a>	to make green (by planting trees, etc.)
<a href="#">Jiǎnhuà</a>	to simplify (Jǐn is mZ-ihuà short for jǐndàn)	<a href="#">mélihuà</a>	to beautify
<a href="#">Méiguóhuà</a>	to Americanize	<a href="#">èhuà</a>	to worsen (è is a literary word for “bad”)
<a href="#">Xīfānghuà</a>	to Westernize		

[xiàndàihuà](#): “to become modernized”; “modernized/sophisticated/modern” Caution: This is an **intransitive** verb (cannot take an object). Therefore, to say “modernize our country” you must phrase it as “make our country become modernized”:

<a href="#">Wǒmen yào shǐ wǒmende guójiā xiàndàihuà.</a>
We must modernize our country.
<a href="#">Zhèxiē xiàndàihuà yǔyán bú shì měige rén dōu zhīdaode.</a>
Not everyone knows these modern terms.

**Sìge Xiàndàihuà**: “the Four Modernizations” These are the modernization of agriculture, industry, national defense, and science and technology. Comprehensive development in these areas by the end of the century was called for at the Eleventh National Party Congress in 1977, and again by Communist Party Chairman [Huà Guófēng](#) at the Fifth National People's Congress in 1978. (This theme had been enunciated twice before, in 1965 and 1975, by [Zhōu Ēnlái](#).) Since 1979, the drive for the “socialist Four Modernizations” has been at the root of the Chinese government's domestic policy and have also had a broad influence on its foreign policy.

[zhěnggè\(r\)](#): As an adjective (before a noun), “whole,” “entire,” referring to a single item.

<a href="#">Zhěnggè shàngwǔ nǐ dōu zuò shénme le?</a>
What did you do the whole morning?
<a href="#">Wǒ yào mǎi zhěnggède huǒtuǐ, bú yào bàngede.</a>
I want to buy a whole ham, not a half one.
<a href="#">Zhěnggè jìhuà dōu shì tā yíge rén xiǎngchūláide.</a>
The entire plan was his idea.

As an adverb, [zhěnggè\(r\)](#) means “completely,” “in its entirety”:

<a href="#">Zhèijù huàde yìsi nǐ zhěnggè nòngcuò le.</a>
You completely misunderstood the meaning of that sentence.
<a href="#">Tāde mótuōchē zhěnggè bèi zhuànguài le.</a>



His motorcycle was completely ruined in the collision.

*Zhèige fāngzi zhěnggè dōu shì mùtóu zuòde.*

This house is made completely of wood.

**gǎoshàngqù**: **Shàngqù**, “to go up,” may be used figuratively to say that production “goes up” or work “moves forward.” The resultative compound **gǎoshàngqù**, therefore, means “to cause to go up,” “to cause to move forward.” We have translated it here as “to push ahead” the economy.

### Notes on №10

**tí**: One meaning of the verb **tí** is “to lift,” “to raise.” In a more abstract sense, it can mean

1. “mention,” “refer to,” “bring up” (a subject). **Tí wèntí** is “to ask questions.”

*Wǒ tí ge wèntí kéyǐ ma?*

May I ask a question?

*Qǐng dàjiā tí yíjiàn.*

Please give us your comments, everyone.

*Bié zài tí nèijiàn shì le, hǎo ma?*

Don't mention that again, okay?

*Tí měici tídao zhèijiàn shì, wǒ jiu shēngqì.*

Every time he mentions that, I get angry.

2. “to raise,” “to bring up,” “to put forward” (questions, comments, demands, etc.):

*Tā tíe nèi liǎngge tiáojiàn, wǒ méi bànfa shíxiàn.*

There's no way I can satisfy (fulfill) the conditions he put forward.

*Nǐ juéde wǒde bànfa bù xíng, kéyīu tích nǐde bànfa.*

If you don't think my way (of handling it) will do, you can propose a way of your own.

*Tā tíchū ràng Zhāng Tóngzhì zuò lǐngdǎo.*

He proposed having Comrade **Zhāng** be the leader.

*Tā tíchū yào dào Nánjīng qù yítàng yǐhòu cái néng xiě zhèipiān wénzhāng.*

He said that he had to go to **Nánjīng** before he could write this article.

**jiākuài**: “to quicken,” “to speed up” (one's step, a process, the pace of doing something)

*Rúguǒ jiākuài zuò, sāntiān jiu xíng le.*

If we speed up, we can finish in three days.

sùdù: (literally “fast-degree”) “speed,” “pace,” “tempo”

Sānshinián lái, Rìběn jīngjì fāzhǎnde sùdù hěn kuài.

For the past thirty years, Japan's rate of economic development has been very fast.

jiākuài... sùdù, “to quicken the pace of...,” “to speed up”:

Wǒmen yào jiākuài gōngzuòde sùdù.

We must speed up our work.

Zhōngguó yào jiākuài shíxiàn Sìge Xiàndàihuàde sùdù.

China wants to speed up the Four Modernizations.

[The opposite of jiākuài... sùdù is fàngmàn sùdù.]

### Notes Additional Vocabulary

zhìliàng: “quality” Also pronounced zhīliàng or zhǐliàng.

Shùliàng duō, zhìliàng yě bú cuò.

They are plentiful and of good quality.

In some contexts, you can use the syllable **zhì/zhǐ/zhǐ** to stand for **zhìliàng** and the syllable **liàng** to stand for **shùliàng**:

Zhǐ, liàng, dōu bú cuò.

The quality and quantity are both good.

## Unit 3

### References

### Reference List

### Vocabulary

## Reference Notes

### Notes on №1

guǎn...jiào...: Guǎn A jiào B means “to call A B.”

Guǎngdōng rén guǎn qípáo jiào “chángshān.”

Cantonese call qípáo (a kind of dress) “chángshān.”

**gōngshè**: “commune” This is short for remain **gōngshè**, “people's commune” (the word remain is taught in exchange 6). **Gōng** means “public.” and **shè** is an “organized body.”

People's communes, of which there are now over 52,000 in China, are the administrative units of the countryside. There are three levels of commune organization: the production team, with from eleven to over one hundred households; the production brigade, with from twenty to over one thousand households; and the commune itself, with from six to seventeen brigades or from fifty-six to 275 teams. A typical commune might have a population of 22,500 people, broken down into fifteen production brigades of three hundred families each, and each brigade would in turn be composed of ten production teams of thirty families. (Of course, no actual commune would be divided up so evenly.) A typical county might be made up of thirteen communes of this size.

The people's communes were formed after a long series of changes in the organization of the countryside, beginning with the Land Reform Movement of 1950. This movement distributed the land to the peasants; the next step was to begin the coordination of their efforts in production. They did this in 1951 by forming mutual aid teams, also called work exchange teams. The peasants still owned their own land, plows, and livestock, but they pooled their manpower, tools, and other resources to get the work done.

In 1953\* elementary agricultural cooperatives were organized by merging several mutual aid teams. The land, tools, and livestock became the property of the cooperative, but the profits from the land were distributed, not retained by the commune for investment. In 1956, when advanced agricultural cooperatives were established, the distribution of profits was abolished.

In 1958, the last step to communize China was taken. The people's communes were formed by the merging of several advanced agricultural cooperatives. What was formerly an advanced agricultural cooperative became, a production brigade. The original plan for communization had called for completion in 1967. Since no major problems were encountered, the plan was completed nine years ahead of time.

Today, commune members still live in individual houses. All the land, buildings, shops, clinics, large machinery, electrical power stations, factories, and so on, belong to the commune. However, the planning of the production and the payment of the members, which depends on the amount of production, is done on the production team level. All the teams have their own livestock, but they take turns borrowing large machines such as planters or tractors from the commune. Production teams often specialize in one type of activity, such as crop raising, machinery repair, or animal husbandry. Production brigades handle tasks which are beyond the capacity of a team, such as irrigation or the purchasing of a tractor. Truly large projects like road construction or the establishment of a large, well-equipped hospital, must be taken on by the commune.

**yǒu méiyǒu xiězhe**: **-Zhe** is the marker of duration. Together with a verb, it describes a STATE, for example:

Mén

kāizhe.

The door is open.

The door is in the state of having been opened.		
Mén	guānzhe.	The door is closed.
The door is in the state of having been closed.		

Thus, *xiězhe*, in exchange 1, means literally “in the state of having been written.”

To make a verb plus *-zhe* negative, use *méi*(you) (not *bù*):

Mén méi kāizhe.
The door is not open.
Mén méi guānzhe.
The door is not closed.
Dānzishang mèi xiězhe.
It isn't written on the list.

To make a question, use one of the following patterns:

Mén kāizhe ma?	Is the door open?
Mén yǒu méiyǒu kāizhe?	
Mén kāizhe meiyǒu?	

He is often added onto the end of a sentence with *-zhe*:

Mén kāizhe ne ma?
Is the door open?
Kāizhe ne.
Yes, it's open.

Many speakers of standard Chinese do not use this *-zhe*; they would replace it by phrasing such as *Mén kāile* and *Dānzishang yǒu méiyǒu xiě* (or *xiě le méiyǒu*). These sentences are also perfectly good Chinese.

**Sìjìqīng**: A commune in rural **Běijīng**. Literally, the name means “four-seasons-green,” in other words, “green all year round.”

Half the population of the municipality of **Běijīng** lives in rural areas, in 272 people’s communes. The principal crops are wheat, rice, and vegetables, including cabbage, eggplants, cucumbers, and tomatoes. There are also orchards producing apples, pears, peaches, and persimmons. About half the vegetables grown in **Běijīng**'s communes supply the city's needs completely and half are shipped elsewhere.

## Notes on №2

**dàduì**: “(production) brigade,” short for **shēngchǎn dàduì**.

**chǎnliàng**: “output, yield,” literally, “production-amount.”

**shāndì**: “mountainous region; hilly area; hilly country,” literally, “mountain-land.”

**Aěrbā'níyà shì shāndì guójiā.**

Albania is a mountainous country.

**Zài shān**

Output is somewhat lower in mountainous regions.

**Nèige dìfang shì shān , kāi chē bú tài fāngbian.**

That's hilly country; it isn't easy to drive there.

## Notes on №3

**jiāoqū**: “suburbs, outskirts” The bound form **jiāo** means “suburbs,” as in in **Běijīng xījiāo**. “the western suburbs of **Běijīng**,” **yuǎnjiāo**. “the outer suburbs.” and **jìnjiāo**, “the close suburbs.” (**Qū**, “area, district,” will be introduced separately in Unit 5 of this module.)

**Běijīng jiāoqū yígòng yǒu èrbáiqīshìèrge gōngshè.**

Altogether, there are 272 communes in the suburbs of **Běijīng**.

**Sìjìqīng gōngshè zài Běijīngde jìn jiāoqū.**

The commune **Sìjìqīng** is in the close suburbs of **Běijīng**.

**dàozi**: “rice” in the paddy or after harvesting but before hulling. (After hulling, it is called **mǐ**, and when cooked it is called **fàn**.)

**Jīngxīdào**: “Capital-West Rice,” a variety famous for its good taste.

**Běijīngde jīng**: “**jīng** as in **Běijīng**” In conversation, you identify a word or character by giving a common phrase in which it is used. The pattern for doing this is

Phrase	-de	Word	
e.g., <b>yí èr sān sì</b>	<b>-de</b>	<b>sì</b>	“‘four’ as in ‘one two three four’”

This pattern can be especially useful when you tell someone your Chinese name. If you were called **Chén Dìngwén**. ( ), for example, you could identify the characters of your first name by saying **Yídingde dìng, wénxuéde wén**, “**Dìng** as in **yíding** (‘certainly’), and **wén** as in **wénxué** (‘literature’).”

**dōng-xī-nán-běi**: While in English we usually name the directions of the compass in the order “north, south, east, west,” in Chinese they are usually named in the order

dōng xī nán běi		dōng nán xī běi
	or	
east west south north		east south west north

**Notes on №4**

quánguó: “the whole country”

Wú Zuòrénde huà zài quánguó hěn yǒu míng.
The paintings of Wú Zuòrén are famous throughout the country.
Quánguó chǎnliàng zuì gāode dìqū shì Sìchuān.
The area of the country with the highest output is Sìchuān..
Běijīng Yāo-líng-yào Zhōngxuéde jiàoyu zhiliàng quánguó dìyī.
The educational quality of Běijīng's No. 101 Middle School is first in the country.

miànji; “(surface) area” (For the second example, you need to know píngfāng gōnglǐ, ”square kilometer.”)

Zhèige gōngshède miànji duó dà?
What is the area of this commune?
Zhōngguóde miànji shì jiǔbǎi liùshiwàn píngfāng gōnglǐ.
China's area is 9.6 million square kilometers.

miànji bǐjiǎo dàde yǒu sìge: This is a useful structure with yǒu:

Miànji bǐjiǎo dàde (píngyuán)	yǒu	sìge.
As for the ones [flatlands] with a relatively large area,	there are	four.
There are four with a relatively large area.		

Tā bú yuànyì qù Zhōngguóde yuányīn	zhǔyào yǒu	liǎngge.
As for the reasons why he doesn't want to go to China,	there are mainly	two.
There are mainly two reasons why he doesn't want to go to China.		

Zuótiān měi2 la2ide (rén)	yǒu	duōshǎo3o?
As for those [people] who didn't come yesterday,	there were	how many?
How many people were there who didn't come yesterday?		

Zhōngwén shuōde nàme hǎode Měiguó rén	méiyǒu	jǐge.
---------------------------------------	--------	-------

As for Americans who speak Chinese that well,	there aren't	a few.
There aren't but a few Americans who speak Chinese that well.		

liángshi; “grain, cereals,” but in Chinese terminology this can also include other staples like beans and sweet potatoes.

### Notes on №5

hù(r): “household, family” The original meaning of this word, was “door.” Now it has become the counter for households. Besides its use in exchange 5, -hù can also be followed by the noun rénjiā, “people-home,” that is, “family”:

Zhèige dàduì yǒu duōshao hù rénjiā?

How many households are there in this brigade?

Zài Měiguó, chàbuduō měihù dōu yǒu diànshì.

In American, almost every family has a television.

kǒu: Literally, “mouth,” this is the counter for people considered as making up a family as in

Nǐ jiā yǒu jǐkǒu rén?

How many people are there in your family?

mài gěi guójiā: “sell to the state.” Every year, a production team must give a certain percentage (usually from five to seven percent) of its produce and cash income in taxes to the state. In addition, they must sell a quota of grain to the state, the quantity being established according to the population of the team, and the area and productivity of the land. If the team is left with additional grain after fulfilling their quota, they decide for themselves how much of it they will sell for cash to the state at a higher price and how much will be put into the team's grain reserves. The state sets quotas for grains; fruit and vegetable supply and demand are coordinated by local government authorities.

...bù shǎode cài na!: Ha is not a new word for you; it is just a contraction of ne and a. You have learned that ne is the marker of absence of change. Here it has a special function: to show that the speaker is trying to convince the listener of the greatness of an amount, the great extent of a condition, or a fact which surpasses ordinary expectations. Examples:

Tāde shōurù bù shǎo ne!

His income is not small (i.e., more than you would suspect)!

Tā shuōle yào zuò dào hěn wǎn ne.

She said she was going to work until very late.

Hǎo rè'naode dìfang na!

What a lively place!

Kàn tā nàme niánqīng, hái néng qù zuò jiàoshòu ne!

Isn't it something that someone as young as he can be a professor!

Yào cānguān nàme duō dìfang, yíge xīngqī nǎr gòu? Liǎngge xīngqī hái bú gòu ne!

How could one week be long enough to visit so many places? Two weeks wouldn't even be enough!

Zhème dàde rén hái kū na!

Imagine, such a grown-up person crying!

### Notes on №6

**jiànshè**: “to construct, to build up; construction” This is mostly used in a special sense: to construct or build up a country. The Jargon “socialist construction,” “the construction of China,” or “China reconstructs” conveys an attitude toward the “mission” facing the country: to build China from the ruins left by a semi-feudal, semi-colonial society into a socialist power and to create the conditions for the transition to Communism. “Socialist construction” includes the reform of the superstructure as well as the development of the national economy.

Wǒmen yào bǎ Zhōngguó jiànshèchéng yíge xiàndàihuàde shèhuìzhǔyì guójiā.

We want to build China into a a modern socialist nation.

**rénmín** ? “the people” You have seen this word already in **Rénmínbì**. “People’s currency.” Distinguish between remain and **rénmín**. **Rénmen** (with the plural ending **-men**) refers to any and all people, without class implications. It has approximately the same scope as **dàjiā**, “everyone.” **Rénmín**, on the other hand, refers to the broad masses and lower-level cadres, and excludes state and class enemies.

Zhōngguó rénmín xīwàng néng shēnghuóde āndìng.

The Chinese people hope to be able live peaceful and settled lives.

Quánguó yíngòng yǒu wǔwàn èrqiānduō rénmin gōngshè.

There are over 52,000 people’s communes in the whole country.

**fāzhǎn**: “to develop, to grow.” In the Society module, you learned the adjectival verb **fādá**. “to be developed.” Now you see the action verb for “to develop.”

Zhèi èrshinián lái, Ribēnde qìchē gōngyè fāzhǎnde bǐjiào kuài.

Over the past twenty years, Japan’s automobile industry has developed rather quickly.

Zhōngguó zhèngfǔ zài nǎli fāzhǎn gōngyè.

The Chinese government is working hard to develop industry.

Tā yánjiū fāzhǎnzhōng guó'iāde jīngjì qíngkuàng.

He studies the economic situation of developing countries.



### Notes on №7

càidi: “vegetable plots” or “vegetable fields” (large or small).

shǒu; “to harvest”

Lǎo Wángde càidi měinián shōude fānqié dōu hěn duō.

Lǎo Wáng harvests a lot of tomatoes from his vegetable plots every year.

Shōubudào liángshi, zěnmē chī fàn ne?

If we can't harvest any grain, how will we eat? (rhetorical question said by farmers when working in the fields)

mǔ: A Chinese unit of area equal to 1/15 hectare. In English this is simply written “mu” (or sometimes mou).

dì: “land,” “ground,” or “fields”

Zhèikuài dì yǐqián shì wǒ fùqinde.

This piece of land used to belong to my father.

Tā cóng dishang zhǎodàole nèizhī bǐ.

He found that pen on the ground.

Shuì dishang ba! Lián jiàoshòu dōu shuì nàr ne!

Sleep on the ground! Even professors sleep there!

Zhème zǎo nǐmen jiù dào dìli qù gōngzuó la!

You're going to work in the fields so early!

shōude bù shǎo: “harvested quite a lot” Here are some more examples of the pattern “Verb -de Quantity:”

Nǐ chīde tài shǎo.

You're eating too little.

Guānyú zhèige, wǒ zhīdaode bù duō.

I don't know much about this.

Tā kàn xiǎoshuō kànde bǐ wǒ duō.

He reads more fiction than I.

Wǒ bú shì jiào nǐ shǎo mǎi yidiǎnr ma? Nǐ mǎide tài duō le!

Didn't I tell you not to buy very much? You bought too much!

### Notes on №8

**jīxièhuà**: “to mechanize; mechanization” **Jīxiè** means “machinery,” “mechanics,” or “mechanical.” **-Huà** is the syllable which corresponds to “-ize” (make into), which you learned in the previous unit in **xiàndàihuà**. “to modernize.”

**Nóngyè jīxièhuà xiànzài shì nóngcūnde zhòngdiàn gōngzuò.**

Agricultural mechanization is now the key task in rural areas.

**Nǐmen dàduìde jīxièhuà shuǐpíng xiāngdāng gāo a.**

The level of mechanization in your brigade is quite high!

**yībàn duō yidiǎn**: “a little more than half” [The opposite, “a little less than half,” could be said as **chà yidiǎnr yībàn**, **yībàn shǎo yidiǎnr**, or **yībàn bú dào yidiǎnr**.]

**bǎifēnzhī wǔshiyī**: “fifty-one percent”- Chinese does not have a separate word for “percent,” expressing percentages with the same pattern used for all fractions. First, therefore, you should learn how to express fractions. In Chinese, the two parts of a fraction are stated in the reverse order from English, with the word **-zhī** in between. (**-Zhī** is a literary word with the same use as **-de**: possessive or modification marker.)

<b>sānfēn</b>	<b>zhī</b>	<b>èr</b>
3 parts	's	2
“two parts out of three,” i.e., “two thirds”		

Here are a few more examples:

1/2	<b>èrfēnzhī yī<sup>a</sup></b>	1/3	<b>sānfēnzhī yī</b>	1/4	<b>sìfēnzhī yī</b>	1/20	<b>èrshífēnzhī yī</b>
5/4	<b>sìfēnzhī wù</b>	5/8	<b>bāfēnzhī wǔ</b>	17/19	<b>shíjūfēnzhī shíqī</b>		

<sup>a</sup>Normally, of course, you would say **yībàn**.

Percentages (hundredths) are expressed like this:

<b>bǎifēn</b>	<b>zhī</b>	<b>wǔshiyī</b>
100 parts	's	51
“fifty-one parts out of one hundred,” i.e., “fifty-one one hundredths” or “fifty-one percent”		

“One hundred percent,” therefore, is **bǎifēnzhī bǎi**:

**Tā shì bǎifēnzhī bǎide Méiguó rén.**

He is one hundred percent American.

### Notes on №9

biéde jǐge...: “the other few” Compare:

Nǐ jiù cānguān gōngshè ma?
You're only visiting communes?
Bù cānguān biéde shenme dìfang?
You're not going to visit any other kinds of places?

**xiānjìn**: “advanced” This is used to describe people, work units, or methods of a high level, worthy of emulation. Individuals may be designated as advanced workers (**xiānjìn gōngzuòzhě**) by their unit leaders or elected by their fellow workers, and units such as factories and communes may be designated as advanced by government authorities. To qualify as advanced, a unit must have carried out all political movements successfully, successfully put into effect each policy directive, and completely met the quota for its product under the national plan.

**guò jǐtiān**: “in a few days” (literally, “pass a few days”)

Qǐng nǐ guò yihuǐr zài dǎlai.
Please call back in a while. (In this case, <b>guò yihuǐr</b> means <b>děng yihuǐr</b> .)
Zài guò jǐge xīngqī, tāmen jiù yào shōu dàozi le.
In another few weeks, they are going to harvest the rice.
Bàba māma xiān dào le. Yòu guòle yihuǐr, dìdi mèimei yě lái le.
Mother and father arrived first. Then after a while, younger brother and sister came too.

**zhuānjiā**: “specialist, expert” The ending **-jiā** enters into many words describing people. It has a slightly different meaning from **-zhě**, which you learned in unit. 1. **-Zhě** is only added to verbs; **-jiā** can be added to nouns as well as verbs. **-Zhě** means simply “a person who...,” but **-jiā** is used for professionals or specialists in some activity. Thus, **zuòjiā** is “professional writer, author,” but **zuòzhě** is just “writer” (not specifying whether writing is the person's career).

The ending **-jiā** is added to subjects of study, as in **zhèngzhìxuéjiā**, “political scientist,” and **jīngjìxuéjiā**, “economist.” In the PRC, some words with the ending **-jiā** carry elitist overtones and are sometimes replaced by other terms.

### Notes on №10

**yǒu shénme tèdiǎn ma?**: “does... have any distinctive points?” is here translated more idiomatically as “is there anything distinctive about...?”

**shìzhe zǔzhìle...**: “trying-ly organized...” i.e., “organized on a trial basis”

Nǐ shìzhe nèiyang zuò xíng bu xíng.
Try doing it that way and see if it works.

Zhèishuāng xié wǒ shìzhe chuān, chuānbushàng.

I tried to put these shoes on, but couldn't get them on.

Do not overuse **shìzhe**; there are other more common ways to express English “try.” Sometimes the idea of trying is implicit in the verb itself, as in

Zhèipiān wénzhāng wǒ kànle, kànbuxiàqù.

I tried to read this article, but I couldn't.

Wǒ gěile, tā bú yào.

I tried to give it to him, but he didn't want it (wouldn't take it).

Sometimes, “try” can be expressed by reduplicating the verb:

Nǐ chuānchuan.

Try it on.

Wǒ chuānle chuān, chuānbushàng.

I tried to put it on, but couldn't get it on.

Wǒ kāile kāi, kāibukāi.

I tried to open it, but couldn't get it open.

or by a reduplicated verb plus **kàn**:

Wǒ méi zuòguo jiǎozi, zuòzuo kàn ba.

I've never made **jiǎozi** (dumplings), but I can try.

**zǔzhi**: “to organize; organization”

Zhèipiān wénzhāng zǔzhide hěn hǎo.

This article is well organized.

Wǒmen zǔzhile yíge lǚxíngtuán, xiǎng dào Ōuzhōu qù wánwanr.

We organized a tour group; we want to go on a trip to Europe.

Zhèige zǔzhi yǐjīng yǒu wūshiwàn rén le.

This organization already has 500,000 people.

**zhuānyè**: “special line/field/discipline; specialization” This is used in the PRC for one's “major” subject in college, or for one's professional specialization.

Wǒ zài dàxué xuéde zhuānyè shì zhèngzhixué.

My major in college was political science.

Shùxué zhuānyè zhēn méi yìsi, nǐ wèishénme hái yào xué ta?

Majoring in math is really boring; why do (did) you want to take it?

Zhèige zhuānyè zài Zhōngguó hèn shǎo yǒu rén xué.

Very few people study this specialization in China.

zhuānyèhuà; “specialized; specialization”

Gōngchǎngde zhuānyèhuà yuè lái yuè pǔbiàn le.

The specialization of factories is becoming more and more common.

Zhuānyèhuà(de) rénmín gōngshè yǒu tāde hǎochù.

Specialized communes have their advantages.

### Notes on №11

tuōlājī: “tractor” This word may be a sound borrowing from the English word “tractor,” but it also makes good sense in Chinese, since the parts mean literally, “drag-pull-machine.”

píngjūn; “average” This can be used as an adjective, an adverb, or a verb:

Zhōngguó gōngrénde píngjūn shōurù bù duō.

The average salary of Chinese workers is not much.

Píngjūn yíge rén shíge jiǎozi zěnmè gòu!

How could an average of ten jiǎozi (dumplings) per person be enough!

Píngjūnqilai wǒmen měige rén yǒu shíkuāi qián.

When you average it out, each of us has ten dollars.

-tái: Literally, “platform” (as you learned in zhàntái, “station platform”), this is the counter for machines. (The word for “machine,” jīqì, is number 14 on this reference list.)

měige dàduì èrshítái: “twenty for each brigade” No verb is necessary here.

Compare:

Yíge rén yíkuài.

One piece (e.g., of cake) per person.

měige xīngqī yíci

once every week

Wǒmen xuéxiào píngjūn wùge xuésheng yíge lǎoshī.

In our school, there is one teacher for every five students on the average.

**hái xiǎng duō mǎi jǐtái:** “still want to buy a few more” English “more” sometimes contains the meaning of “still, additionally” (**hái**), so the word “still” is not absolutely necessary in the English translation for US. Look at other examples of the common pattern **hái... duō...**:

Zhèige xiǎo nánháizi hái xiǎng duō chī yíge píngguǒ, kèshi tā mama bù gěi!

This little boy (still) wanted to have another apple, but his mother wouldn't give it to him!

Wǒ hái xīwàng duō xué jǐge yuè Zhōngwén.

I would like to study Chinese for another few months.

Tā hái děi duō děng jǐtiān cái néng zǒu.

He still has to wait another few days before he can leave.

### Notes on №12

**túpiàn:** “picture, photograph” This is usually used for photographs, as in **túpiàn zhǎnlǎn**, “photo exhibition” (but some people use it for any kind of illustration).

**xīnkù:** “to be arduous, tiring, hard” (literally, “pungent-bitter”)

Tā báitiān zuò shì, wǎnshàng niàn shù, tài xīnkǔ le.

It's too tiring for her, working during the daytime and studying at night.

Nǐ zhème xīnkǔ yào lèibìngde.

You're going to get sick from fatigue by working so hard.

**zhòng:** “to plant” or “to grow” things:

Zhèikuài dì zhòng shénme yě bù shōu.

You don't harvest anything you plant on this land!

Zhèng liángshi shì nóngmín de shì.

Growing-grain is the business of the peasants.

Zhèige shǎoshù mínzú zài shānshàng zhòngle bù shǎo qíguài de dōngxi lái chī.

This minority nationality grows a lot of strange things on the mountain to eat.

### Notes on №13-14

**zhuānyè** special line/field/discipline (See Notes on No. 10)

jīqì (jīqì) (yítái) machine

## Unit 4

### References

#### Reference List

#### Vocabulary

#### Reference Notes

##### Notes on №1

**lǐ**: A Chinese unit of length, equal to one-half kilometer. **lǐ** is often used to measure the noun **lù** (“road,” but here meaning simply “walking or riding distance”):

Cóng nǐ jiā dào xuéxiào yǒu jǐ lǐ?

How many 11 is it from your house to the school?

The unit of distance **lǐ** is often used in rural areas, but rarely in the city.

**Wàn lǐ Chángchéng**: You learned **Chángchéng**, “the Great Wall,” in the Meeting module. The descriptive term **Wàn lǐ Chángchéng** comes from the fact that the wall is over twelve thousand **lǐ** in total length (approximately 6,700 kilometers).

**yǒu yí wàn lǐ cháng**: “is ten thousand **lǐ** long” Use the verb **yǒu** (not **shì**) in sentences telling or asking length, height, area, time, age, etc. In such sentences, **yǒu** has the special meaning “to attain, to come up to (a certain level).”

Cóng zhèr dào huǒchēzhàn !

yǒu duō yuǎn?

How far is it from here to the train station?

Chābùduō

yǒu yí lǐ.

It’s about one **lǐ**.

ĭde hái zi

yǒu duō dà?

How old is your child?

Tā

yǒu sān sui duō.

He is over three years old.	
Nǐ	yǒu duō gāo?
How tall are you?	
Wǒ	yǒu yīmǐ bā.
I'm one meter eighty (cm).	
Shànghǎide dōngtiān	zhǐ yǒu liǎngge yuè.
Winter in Shànghǎi is only two months (long).	

The negative of such sentences uses méiyǒu:

A: Dào huǒchēzhàn zhēn yǒu wǔlǐ lù ma?	
Is it really five lǐ to the train station?	
B: Méiyǒu wǔlǐ, hěn jìn.	
No, it isn't. It's very close.	
Tā méiyǒu wǔsìsui, tā cái sishíjǐ.	
He isn't (as old as) fifty years old; he's only forty-something.	

jīngguòle hǎojǐge shěng: “goes through many provinces.” This sentence illustrates well that completion **-le** is completely different from English past tense. Even with completion **-le**, the verb still means “goes through,” not “went through.” The completion of an event in the past can result in a present state (for example, the Great Wall was built in the past and is still standing), and so **-le** must sometimes be translated into English with the present tense. Other examples:

Wǒ xiànzài dǒngle tā wèishénme méi gēn tā jiéhūn.	
Now I understand why he didn't marry her.	
Wǒ dàile yǎnjìng, nǐ dōu bú rènshi wǒ le, shì ma?	
You don't recognize me with glasses on, eh? (I am wearing glasses.)	
Zhèběn shū jièshàole Měiguóde zhèngzhì qíngkuàng.	
This book introduces the American political situation.	

shěng: “province” Shěng takes the counter **-ge**. or is sometimes used without a counter.

Zhōngguó yíòng yǒu èrshìèrge shěng.	
China has twenty-two provinces altogether.	



### Notes on №2

xiū: “to repair” roads, structures, cars, radios, shoes, etc. Also, “to trim” hair, fingernails, or “to prune” trees, shrubbery, etc. Also, “to build, to construct” reservoirs, railroads, roads, irrigation ditches, etc.

xiūguo hǎo jǐcì le: “has been repaired a great many times” The -le at the end of the sentence adds on the meaning “so far.” Here are other examples of the pattern ...-guo ...-le:

Zhèige diànyǐng tā kànguo liǎngcì le, hái bù zhīdào zěnmē huí shì.

He has seen this movie twice, and he still doesn't know what it's all about.

Tā kǎoguo liǎngcì le, dōu bù xíng.

He has taken the exam twice, but didn't make it either time.

Qíncháo: “the Qín Dynasty” (221-207 B.C.)

yìzhí zài xiū: Literally, “all-along in-process-of repair,” i.e., “it has been being repaired all along.”

### Notes on №3

Bádǎoling: A mountain seventy-five kilometers northwest of Běijīng, over which passes a section of the Great Wall dating from the Ming Dynasty (1368-1644). This is the usual spot to which tourists are taken to see the Great Wall. (Some people pronounce this with different tones: Bádǎoling.)

hǎoxiàng: “to seem,” but here meaning “it seems to me,” as in

Wǒ hǎoxiàng zài nǎr jiànguo zhèige rén.

It seems to me I've seen this man somewhere before.

Nǐ hǎoxiàng gào sūguo wǒ zhèijiàn shì.

It seems to me you've told me this before.

jiànzhù: As a verb, “to build, to construct”:

Zhèige dàlóu shì nēinián jiànzhùde?

When was this building constructed?

As a noun, “a structure” or “architecture”:

Zhè shì Qíncháode jiànzhù.

This is a structure from the Qin Dynasty.

Tā shì xué jiànzhùde.

He studied architecture.

chóngxīn: “again, afresh, anew”

Zhèixiē pánziwǎn xǐde bù gānjing, qǐng nǐ chóngxīn xǐ yíci.

These dishes were not washed clean; please wash them again.

Chóngxīn is often followed by zài, “again”:

Zuòde bù hǎode huà, chóngxīn zài zuò.

If (we) don't do it well, we'll do it all over again.

### Notes on №4

zài lǐshǐshàng: “in history, down through history” Chinese often uses -shàng, “on,” where English would use “in,” especially for the meaning “in such-and-such a field or area”: zài jīngjìshàng, “in economy, eco“omically”; zài xuéxíshàng, “in (one’s) studies”; zài shēngchǎnshàng, “in production”; and, of course, bàozhǐshàng, “in the newspaper,” etc.

yòng... zuò...: “to use... as...”

Tā yòng tāmen jiāde kètíng zuò bàngōngshì.

He uses their living room as an office.

### Notes on №5

qínluè: As a verb, “to invade”:

Sūlián wèishénme qínluè Āfùhàn?

Why did the Soviet Union invade Afghanistan?

As a noun, “invasion” or “aggression”:

Wǒmen bixū fángbèi Sūliánde qínluè.

We must guard against Soviet aggression.

běifāng lái: “coming from the north” The word cóng, “from,” is often omitted from phrases such as the following:

A: Nèige xuéxiàode Zhōngguó xuésheng dōu shì Táiwān lái de ma?

Are the Chinese students in that school all from Taiwan?

B: Bú shì, yě yǒu dàlù lái de.

No, there are also some from the mainland.

Cóng Shànghǎi qù Xīběi zhùde rén hěn duō, Běijīng qùde yě yǒu.

There are many people who have gone to live in the Northwest from **Shànghǎi**, and there are also some who have gone there from **Běijīng**.

**Rén shì hóuzi biànde.**

Man came (“changed”) from the monkey.

### Notes on №6

**yǒulǎn**: “to sightsee,” “to tour”

**Dào Běijīngde wàiguó rén dōu xiǎng qù Shísānlíng yǒulǎn.**

Foreigners who go to Beijing all want to go to the Thirteen Tombs to sightsee.

**Dào Chángchéng qùde yǒulǎnchē měitiān sībān.**

There are four tour buses to the Great Wall every day.

**Shísānlíng**; “the Thirteen Tombs,” also called “the Ming Tombs,” because they date from the Ming Dynasty. These are located outside of **Běijīng**.

**gōngzuòzhě**: “worker” in a particular field, e.g., **jiàoyu gōngzuòzhě**, “educational worker,” **xīnwén gōngzuòzhě**, “journalist,” **yǔyán gōngzuòzhě**, “language worker.” Such terms are PRC usage, sometimes created to replace titles with elitist connotations.

Do not confuse this with the general term for “worker,” **gōngren**, which will be introduced in Unit 6.

### Notes on №7

**gǔdài**: “ancient,” the opposite of **xiàndài**. **Gǔ-**, “ancient,” is used mainly in compound words:

**Běijīng shì yíge gǔchéng.**

**Běijīng** is an ancient city.

**Gǔrén yǒu yíjù huà, “Jiāozhě bì bài.”**

The ancients had a saying, “Pride goeth before the fall.”

**Zài gǔshíhòu zhèige guōjiāde wénhuà yǐjīng hěn fādá le.**

This country’s culture was already well developed in ancient times.

**Gǔdài** is also used as a noun meaning “ancient times, antiquity.”

**yìshu**: “art,” meaning either “the arts” or “skill.” **Yìshujiā** is an “artist.”

**Wǒ tīngshuō nǐ zài zhèr xué yìshu, nǐ shì xué xiàndài yìshu háishì gǔdài yìshu?**

I understand you study art here; do you study modern art or ancient art?

**Jiāo shū shì yìzhōng yìshu.**

Teaching is an art.

**Jiàotáng:** “church,” literally, “religion-hall”

### Notes on №8

**kě:** Notice that **kě**, “indeed, certainly, really,” is often accompanied by **le** at the end of the sentence:

Wǒ xiànzài zài kàn tā zuì xīnde shū, kě yǒu yìsi le.

I'm reading his latest book now. It's really interesting.

### Notes on №9

**gài:** “to build,” only used for buildings. (Another common use of this word is as the verb “to cover,” which was the original meaning.)

Zhèige fāngzi gài le duōshǎo nián le?

How old is this house/building? (lit., “How many years has it been since this house was built?”)

**Shí Dà Jiànzhù:** The “Ten Great Structures” in **Běijīng** were designed and built in the 1950s by the Chinese themselves. The authorities wanted to modernize the layout of the capital and at the same time to commemorate the revolutionary victory and its heroes. The architectural styles include Western as well as traditional Chinese. The buildings are as follows: **Běijīng** Railroad Station, Museum of Art, Museum of History, Great Hall of the People, Revolutionary Military Museum, Telegraph Building, Nationalities Cultural Palace, Agricultural Exhibition Hall, Workers Stadium, and the Monument to the People's Heroes.

### Notes on №10

**juéding:** “to decide” a course of action, or a “decision”

Tāmen juéding yào bàn dào Niǔ Yuē qù zhù le.

They decided to move to New York.

Wǒ juéding míngtiān zài zuò zhèijiàn shì.

I've decided not to do this until tomorrow.

Wǒ juéding qù le.

I've decided to go. (Note that **le** is not attached to **juéding** here even though “decided” is a completed action. The verb which follows **juéding** prevents this.)

Wǒ yào hé Huáshèngdùn fāngmian shāngliang yíxià cái néng zuò juéding.

I have to discuss this with Washington before I can make a decision.

chuānguò: “to cross through”

Cóng zhèr chuānguoqu jiù dào le.

We Just cross through here and then we're there.

guǎngchǎng: “square” in a city (the literal meaning is “wide-field”)

### Notes on №11

**Gùgōng:** The full name is **Gùgōng Bōwùyuan**, “the Former Imperial Palace Museum.” This was the palace of the ruling families of the **Míng** and **Qīng** dynasties. It is located in the center of **Běijīng**. In conversation it is usually referred to simply as the **Gùgōng** (literally, “Former-palace”).

**kàndewán kànbuán?**: “can (one) finish seeing (it)?” This is the compound verb of result **kànwán**, “finish seeing,” with the syllables **-de-** and **-bu-** inserted between the action and the result. Notice that in the question form, the affirmative choice is given first and the negative choice second, just as in simple questions like **qù bu qù** (which means **qù hái shì bú qù**). In some varieties of Standard Chinese, the question form of verbs like **kàndewán** follows the pattern Action **bu** Action-**de**-Result: **Kàn bu kàndeván?** This pattern is increasingly common.

**Gùgōng yìtiānkàndewán kànbuán?**: Note the placement of the time expression **yìtiān**, “one day,” BEFORE the verb<sup>1</sup>. Expressions telling that something is done WITHIN a certain period of time (usually translated as “in” a certain period) come BEFORE the verb. Other examples:

Nǐ yìtiān néng huílai ma?

Can you get back in one day?

Méi wèntí, bàntiān jiù huílai le.

No problem. I'll be back in half a day.

Wǒ yìhuìr yào chūqu.

I'll be going out in a while.

Tā yíge zhōngtóu jiù xuéhuì le.

He learned it in just an hour.

Wǒ liǎngge yuè qù yíci.

I go once in two months.

**nǎr:** The word for “where” is used here to make a rhetorical question (one to which no answer is expected) implying the negative of what it says. Other examples:

Nǎr yòu nàme róngyì!

Since when is it that easy. (It isn't at all so easy.)

<sup>1</sup>Remember: Time expressions referring to POINTS in time, including ones like “in (by the end of) two days,” go BEFORE; those describing the CONTINUATION of time go AFTER. (Review the note on placement of time phrases in the Meeting module, Unit 1, Notes on No. 6.)

Wǒ nǎr zhīdào tā yǐjīng jiéhūn le!

How was I to know that she was already married! (i.e., I had no way of knowing)

### Notes on №12

shéi... shéi jiù...: “whoever...” You can use an interrogative pronoun— shéi, shénme, nǎige, zěnnme, náli, shénme shíhou, duōshǎo, etc. in a dependent clause and then repeat it in the main clause to get meanings like “whoever,” “whatever,” “however,” “wherever,” “whenever,” “however much,” etc. The adverb s, “then,” is often used in the main clause.

Nǐ xūyào shénme, wǒ jiù gěi nǐ shénme.

I’ll give you whatever you need.

Náli duì nǐ zuì fāngbian wǒmen jiù zài náli Jiàn miàn.

We’ll meet wherever is most convenient for you.

Shéi xiǎng qù, shéi jiù qù.

Whoever wants to go, goes.

Here are some examples in which jiù is not used:

Nǐ ài zěnmeyàng zěnmeyàng.

Do whatever you like.

Nǐ shénme shíhou fāngbian, shénme shíhou lái.

Come whenever it’s convenient for you

Zài Táiwān, xiāngjiāo zǒngshì yǒu; yào duōshǎo, yǒu duōshǎo.

They always have bananas in Taiwan; there are as many as one could want (i.e., there are plenty).

xiǎngzhe: “be thinking of, have on one’s mind” -Zhe on the end of an action verb like xiǎng shows the prolonging of the action over a period of time. Compare these examples:

Bié zhànzhe, zuòxia ba!

Don’t stay standing; sit down’.

Nǐ tīngzhe!

Listen!

Nǐ mànman chī, wǒ děngzhe nǐ.

Take your time eating; I’ll wait for you.

Wǒ zài zhèr kānzhe ta, nǐ qù jiào liàng jiùhùchē.

I'll stay here and watch him; you go call an ambulance.

### Notes on №13: Additional Vocabulary

**cháodài**: The bound form **-cháo** must be preceded by a name (as in **Qíncháo**, “the Qin Dynasty”). **Cháodài** can be used alone, as in **Zhèige gōngdiàn shì zài neige cháodài jiànzhude?**, “In which dynasty was this palace constructed?”

## Unit 5

### References

#### Reference List

#### Vocabulary

### Reference Notes

#### Notes on №1

**méitàn**: “coal” In daily life (for coal is still used as a fuel in many homes in China), this is usually called simply **méi**. **Tàn** by itself means “charcoal” (charcoal is also called **mùtàn**, literally, “wood-charcoal”).

Another word **tàn**, written with a different character but pronounced exactly the same, means the element “carbon.”

**Zhèige dìfāngde méitàn shēngchǎn qíngkuàng bú cuò.**

Coal production is doing very well in this place.

**zīyuán**: “resources” This is used in such phrases as **zìrán zīyuán**. “natural resources,” and **dìxià zīyuán**, “underground resources.”\*\*

**Rìběn yǒu zīyuánde wèntí.**

Japan has a problem of resources, (refers to lack of resources)

**bù shǎo**: “not few,” i.e., “many,” “large” Remember that Chinese often uses **bù** to express the opposite of adjectives:

**Shíjiān bù zǎo le.**

It's getting late.
Nǐ zhēn bù cōngmíng.
You're really dumb.
Nèige guōjiāde jīngjì fāzhǎnde bùmàn.
That country's economy is developing quite fast.

disānwèi: “third place” -Wèi is the same word you learned in Nèiwèi shì Gāo Tongzhì?, but here it means “place” or “position” in a statistical ranking, -Wèi also means “place” in mathematics: gèwèi, “the units place”; shíwèi, “the tens place”; bǎiwèi, “the hundreds place”; etc.

Use the pattern zhàn dì-...-wèi for “to rank in ... position”:

Zhōngguó rénkǒu zhàn shìjiè dìyīwèi.
China's population ranks first in the world.
Yìndù dàozi chǎnliàng zài shìjièshàng zhàn dìjīwèi?
How does India's rice production rank in the world?

## Notes on №2

biānjìng: “(national) border”

Zài biānjìng dìqū shēnghuó, gōngzuòde rén, yíding yào tebié xiǎoxīn.
People who live and work in the border areas must be especially careful.
Zhèige chéngshì lí biānjìng hěn jìn.
This city is very near the border.

zài lí biānjìng bù yuǎnde dìfang: “was in places near the border” The main verb of the sentence is zài, “was in.” The phrase lí biānjìng bù yuǎn goes with -de and describes dìfang. Here is a diagram of the structure:

Zhōngguóde shíyóu	zài	lí biānjìng bù yuǎn -de	dìfang.
China's oil	was in	not far from the border	places.

yánhǎi: “along the coast,” “coastal” (Yán, which you will learn in Unit 7, means “along.”)

Zhèzhǒng dōngxi shì yánhǎi dìqū cái yǒude.
This kind of thing is found only in the coastal regions.
Nèijǐge yánhǎi chéngshì jiànshède hěn kuài.



Those few coastal cities have been built up very quickly.

**Yánhǎi yídài** is a very common way of saying “coastal region.” You should also memorize the expressions **yánhǎi gèshěng**<sup>2</sup>, “the (various) coastal provinces,” and **yánhǎi zīyuán**, “coastal resources.”

### Notes on №3

**kuàngqū**: “mining area/region” **Kuàng** is the word for “mine,” as in **méikuàng**, “coal mine.” **-Qū** means “area,” “region,” as in **dìqū**, “region,” **jiāoqū**, “suburbs,” and **shìqū**, “urban area.”

**Zhèige jìhua shì guānyú kuàngqū jiànshède.**

This plan has to do with the development of mining regions.

**jīnshú**: “metal,” literally, “metal-category”

**Zhèi shì jīnshúde ma?**

Is this (made of) metal?

**Xiànzài wǒmen zuò zhèizhǒng dōngxì bú yòng jīnshú, dōu yòng zhǐ le.**

Now we no longer make this kind of thing out of metal, we make it out of paper.

**niándài**: This has two meanings:

- (as used in 3B) “a decade of a century,” e.g., **èrshí niándài**, “the twenties”;
- “period,” “era”

**Zhèige gùshi xiěde shì shénme niándàide shì?**

What period is this story about?

**Zhèipíng jiǔ shì shénme niándàide?**

What vintage is this wine/liquor?

**jīxiè**: “machine,” “machinery,” “mechanical”

**Wǒmen zhèlìde shēngchǎn zhǔyào kào jīxiè.**

Most of our production here is by machine.

**jīxiè** is also pronounced **jījiè**.

**jīqì**, “machine,” which you learned in Unit 3, is different from **jīqì**. **Jīqì** refers to individual machines; **jīxiè** is machines in general—machinery. **Jīqì** virtually- always translates as “machine(s).” **Jīxiè** is basically “machinery,” but may translate as “machine” in certain phrases, like **jīxiè gōng rén**, “machine worker,” **jīxiè gōng yè**, “machine industry,” etc.

<sup>2</sup>On the word **gè** “various,” see the Notes on No. 6.

### Notes on №4

**zài guò shínián:** “in another ten years,” “after another ten years have passed” Here are some more examples of the use of **(zài) guò** (Amount of Time):

**Zài guò jǐnián wǒ jiù xíguàn zhèrde shēnghuó le.**

I'll get used to life here in another few years.

**Guò jǐtiān tā jiù yào qù Yìdàlì zuò lǐngshì le.**

In a few days, he will be going to Italy to be consul.

**-chū:** “at the beginning of” a time period

**Míngniánchū wǒ qù Shànghǎi.**

At the beginning of next year I'm going to Shanghai.

**Yuèchū zài shuō ba!**

We'll see about it at the beginning of (next) month!

**Zhèige yuè chū tiānqì kāishǐ nuǎnhuó le.**

The weather started to get warmer at the beginning of this month.

**Wénhuà Dà Géming chū wǒmen shéi dōu hái bù zhīdào shì zěnmé huí shì.**

At the beginning of the Cultural Revolution, none of us knew what it was all about yet.

**qiángguó:** “strong-country,” i.e., “a (world) power”

**qǐmǎ:**

1. “at least”

**Tā xué Zhōngwén qǐmǎ yǒu wǔnián le, dànshi hái shuōde bù hǎo.**

He has been studying Chinese for at least five years, but he still doesn't speak well.

**Měitiān wǎnshàng wǒ qǐmǎ yào kàn liǎngge zhōngtóu shū cái néng shuì jiào.**

Every evening I have to read at least two hours before I can go to sleep.

**Zhèige rén zhēn néng pǎo, měitiān qǐmǎ pǎo shíèr yīnglǐ.**

This guy can really run. Every day he runs at least twelve miles. acceptable), most basic, rudimentary”

2. “minimum, lowest (required to be acceptable,) most basic, rudimentary”

**Zhèige rén! Lián qǐmǎde lǐmào dōu bù dòng!**

This guy! He doesn't even understand the most basic manners!

Nǐ lián zhè qǐmǎde dào lǐ dōu bù dòng?!

You don't even understand this basic principle (of conduct, life, etc.)?!

Similar expressions include *qǐmǎde tiáojiàn*, “the most basic conditions”; *qǐmǎde huánjìng*, “the most basic environment(al conditions)”; *qǐmǎde zhīshi*, “the most rudimentary knowledge”; *qǐmǎde shuǐpíng*, “the minimum level.”

### Notes on №5

*zěnmeyàng la?*: “what happened (to him)” *La* is just a contraction of *le* and *a*. Here are more examples of the extremely useful word *zěnmeyàng*, “how is...,” “what happened (to)...,” or “do what”:

Ránhòu ne? Ránhòu zěnmeyàng?

And then? Then what happened?

Éi, hǎo jǐnián méi kànjian Xiǎo Wú le, tā zěnmeyàng le?

Say, I haven't seen *Xiǎo Wú* for many years. What ever became of her?

Yíge rén bù néng xiǎng zěnmeyàng jiu zěnmeyàng.

A person cannot just do anything they feel like doing.

Nǐ yàoshi bú gàosu ta, tā huì duì nǐ zěnmeyàng ma?

If you don't tell him, will he try to do anything to you?

Tā bú huì zěnmeyàng.

He won't do anything.

A: Nǐ dǎsuan zěnmeyàng?

What are you going to do?

B: Nǐ xiǎng wǒ yīnggāi zěnmeyàng?

What do you think I should do?

A: Wǒ bù zhīdào, nǐ yào zěnmeyàng jiu zěnmeyàng.

I don't know. Do whatever you want to do.

*zhòng*: “to be heavy,” in several senses:

Zhèige jīqì yǒu duō zhòng?

How heavy is this machine?

Gōngkè tài zhòng, zhēn lèi.

I have too much homework; I'm really tired.

Bú yào bǎ huà shuōde tài zhòng le.

Don't put it too strongly.

Tā shòule zhòng shāng, xiànzài zài yīyuànli.

He was badly injured and is now in the hospital.

Zhòngliàng means "weight" (compare chǎnliàng, zhìliàng, shùliàng).

The opposite of zhòng is qīng, "to be light," which is introduced in No. 7, below.

### Notes on №6

gèguó: "various countries" Gè-, "each and every, various," is a specifier like zhèi-, "this," or nèi-, "that." You can prefix it to counters and to some nouns. Here are some examples:

Wǒmen zài quánguó gèdì cānguān yóulǎnle yíge yuè.

We visited and toured all over the country for one month. (Gèdì is "each place," "various places.")

Xiànzài gèrén zuò gèrènde, sidiǎn zài kāi huí.

For now, everyone can do what they want. We will have the meeting at four. (Gèrén is "everybody.")

Gèwèi rúguǒ yǒu shénme wèntí, qǐng xiànzài tíchulai.

If you all have any questions, please bring them up now. (Gèwèi is a polite form of address for a group of people, e.g., an audience. -Wèi is the polite counter for people.)

Tāmen yòng gèzhǒng xiàndàihuàde jīqì.

They use all kinds of modern machines. (Gèzhǒng is "various kinds.")

When a gè- phrase is followed in the sentence by dōu, "all," it takes on the meaning "every," "all." Thus gèguó in sentence 6A is translated as "all countries."

guānxīn; "to be concerned about," "to care about," "to be interested in" the welfare of something.

Zhèrde lǎoshī hěn guānxīn xuésheng.

The teachers here are very concerned about (care about) the students.

Tā hěn guānxīn kuàngūde jiànshè, sānge yuèli lái kànguo hǎo jǐcì.

He cares a great deal about the building up of the mining region; he came to see it many times in three months.

xǔduō: "many," "a great deal (of)," "lots (of)" This is a synonym of hěn duō, and used in the same ways.

chénglì: “to establish,” “to found,” “to set up”

Měiguó Diànhuà Diànbào Gōngsī shì nǎinián chénglìde?

In what year was AT&T established?

### Notes on №7

-qū: “area,” “region,” “district” This word, which you have already seen in *dìqū*, “area,” “region,” and in *kuàngqū*, “mining region,” can combine with many other words, for example *gōngyèqū*, “industrial region,” *nóngyèqū*, “agricultural region” or “farming region,” *shāngyèqū*, “business district (of a city),” *fēngjǐngqū*, “scenic spot,” *shānqū*, “mountainous district.”

*lìliàng*: “power,” “force,” “strength” In 7A, this is translated idiomatically as “capability.” Another example would be *jīngjì lìliàng*, “economic capability.” Here are more examples (for the third one, you need to know *tuánjié*, “unity”):

Wǒmen de lìliàng bù gòu, méiyǒu bànfǎ bāngzhù nǐ.

Our power is insufficient, there is no way we can help you.

Dà zìde shíhòu, bù néng yòng tài dà lìliàng.

When typing, one should not hit too hard.

Tuánjié jiù shì lìliàng.

Unity is strength.

Shénme lìliàng yě bù néng bǎ wǒmen fēnkāi.

No force can separate us.

jìn...lái: “during the last...”

Jìn sāntiān lái, Xiǎo Huá hǎoxiàng xīnli hěn bù gāoxìng.

For the last three days, Xiǎo Huá has seemed very unhappy.

Jìn jǐnián lái, tā biànhuà hěn dà.

In recent years, she has changed a great deal.

Jìn bǎinián lái de Zhōngguó lìshǐ hěn yǒu yìsī.

Chinese history of the past hundred years is very interesting.

qīng: “to be light” in weight

Xiāngzi bù zhòng, hěn qīng.

The suitcase isn't heavy; it's light

Qīng gōngyè gōngren méiyǒu zhòng gōngyè gōngrende shōurù duō.

Light industrial workers do not have as high wages as heavy industrial workers.

### Notes on №8

èrshinián qián: Qián is a short form of yǐqián. You can often substitute qián for yǐqián when it comes at the end of a time phrase. Both words are commonly used in conversation and writing. More examples:

Wǒ lái Měiguó qián, shénme yě méi zhǔnbèi.

Before I came to America, I didn't prepare anything.

Yíge yuè qián, zhèige dàlóu hái méi gàiwán, xiànzài yǐjīng zhù rén le.

A month ago, this building wasn't even finished yet, and now there are already people living in it.

qióng: "to be poor"

Qióng bú shì wèntí, lǎn cái shì wèntí.

Being poor isn't a problem; it's being lazy that's a problem.

fāngxīn: "to be unworried," "to be at ease," "to put one's mind at ease" (literally, "put down the heart")

Nǐ bàn shì, wǒ fāngxīn.

With you in charge (literally, "[if] you handle affairs"), I am at ease, (reportedly said by Máo Zédōng to Huà Guófēng before Máo died in 1976)

Nǐ fāngxīn hǎo le, wǒ huì xiǎng bànfade.

Don't you worry. I'll think of a way.

Nǐ yíge rén qù, wǒ bú fāngxīn.

I'll worry if you go alone.

suàn: "to be counted as," "to be considered as," "can be regarded as" This verb is used much more often than these English translations would seem to indicate. To really get the feel of what suàn means, you have to look at it in context. Here are some examples (the translations attempt to be idiomatic):

A: Hángzhōu suàn bu suan gōngyè chéngshì?

Would you say that Hangzhou is an industrial city?

B: Bú suàn, suàn yóulǎn chéngshì.

No, it's a tourist city.

Zěnmé duō cài, sānshikuài qián bú suàn guì.

Thirty dollars isn't expensive for so much food.

Nǐ děi zìjǐ huì shuō nǐ xiǎngde dōngxī cái suàn huì shuō Zhōngwén.

You have to be able to say what you want to say before you can be considered to speak Chinese.

A: Tí xiàxiè le!

Thank you so much!

B: Nà suàn shénme! Péngyōu ma!

It's nothing (literally, "What can that be considered")! We're friends, after all!

Fāzhǎn bǐjiào kuàide yào suàn méitàn gōngyè hé jīxiè gōngyè.

One would have to say the coal industry and the machine industry are the most rapidly developing industries.

Tiānjīn suīrán bú suàn zuì yǒu míngde chéngshì, dànshì měinián yě yǒu bù shǎo rén qù cānguān.

Although one would not call Tiānjīn a very famous city, quite a few people go there to visit every year.

Shuō zhèizhōng huà hái suàn shì wàijiāoguān!

What kind of diplomat talks like that! (literally, (In view of the fact that he) says such things, can he still be considered a diplomat?!)

Zhèi yě suàn Běijīng kǎoyā ma? bú duì ma!

They call this Peking duck? The flavor is all wrong!

Zài zhèi jīge xuéshēnglǐ, tā hái suàn shì hǎode ne, kěshi dōu bú tài hǎo.

Of these students, I suppose he's the best, but none of them is very good.

## Notes on №9

**zǒngde lái shuō**: "generally speaking," "on the whole"

Zǒngde lái shuō, wǒmen xuéxiào xuéshēngde shuǐpíng dōu shì hěn gāode.

Generally speaking, our school's students are of a very high caliber.

Zǒngde lái shuō, nǐmende gōngzuò gāode bú cuò.

On the whole, you did a good job.

A similar phrase using the pattern ...**lái shuō** is **yībān lái shuō**, which means "generally speaking," "ordinarily":

Yībān lái shuō, wǒ měige yuè qù kàn ta yíci.

Generally speaking I go see him once a month.

Yībān lái shuō, Huáshèngdùnde chūntiān hěn shūfu.

Generally speaking, spring in Washington is very comfortable.

Yībān lái shuō, Zhōngguō rén zǒngshì hěn kèqì.

Generally speaking, Chinese people are always polite.

**ba:** This is a new use of **ba** for you. It is used in colloquial speech to mark a pause in the sentence, setting off the topic which precedes it (in this case, zǒngde lái shuō).

Zhèige rén ba, bú shì zuò wàijiāoguānde cáiliào.

This guy— he isn't foreign service officer material.

**biànhuà:** “change(s)” This is only used as a noun.

Shínián bú jiàn, tā biànhuà hǎo dà.

He hadn't seen her in ten years, and she had changed a great deal.

**shì:** “city,” “municipality” Used mostly in reference to the official city level of government, e.g., Dàqing shì, “the city of Dàqing,” Běijīng shì, “Běijīng municipality,” shì bānde, “city-run,” yánhǎi gèshěng, shì, “the coastal provinces and cities.” **Shì** is also used in a few set phrases like shì zhōngxīn, “center of the city,” “downtown.”

**zhōngxīn:** “center,” “heart,” “core,” “hub”

Běijīng shì Zhōngguóde zhèngzhì, wénhuà zhōngxīn.

Běijīng is the political and cultural center of China.

Guǎngzhōu shì yíge shāngyè zhōngxīn.

Guǎngzhōu is a commercial center

Wǒmen hái méiyǒu tándào wèntíde zhōngxīn.

We haven't yet touched on the core of the question.

**Zhōngxīn** can also be used before a noun to modify it. It then translates as “central”:

Zhèixiē niánde zhōngxīn gōngzuò shì gǎo jīngjì jiànshè.

The central task now and in the coming years is to engage in economic construction.

## Notes on №10

**ruò:** “to be weak” (people or countries)

**gǎnxiè:** “to be grateful (for)”



Zhōngguó zhèngfǔ hěn gǎnxiè wàiguó zhuānjiā duì Zhōngguóde bāngzhu.

The Chinese government is very grateful for the help foreign experts give to China.

Tā feicháng gǎnxiè péngyoumen duì tāde guānxīn.

He is very grateful for his friends' concern.

Fēicháng gǎnxiè.

Thank you so much, (formal)

bāng:

1. “to help, to assist” This is a less formal synonym of bāngzhu.

Bié jí, wǒ lái bāng nǐ.

Take it easy, I'll help you.

2. “for (someone),” “as a help to (someone)”

Nǐ qù bāng wǒ ná xìn, hǎo ma?

Would you go get the mail for me, please?

Bāng wǒ ná yíxià hǎo ma?

Would you please hold this for me a second?

In most cases, the context will clarify whether bāng is meant as “to help someone do something” or as “to do something for someone,” but ambiguity may arise:

Tā bāng wǒ zuò fàn.

She helps me cook.

OR

She cooks for me.

Using yìqǐ, “together,” can remove the ambiguity: Tā bāng wǒ yìqǐ zuò fàn can only mean “She helps me cook,” meaning that the two people make dinner together; it could **not** possibly mean “She cooks for me.”

qítā: “other,” “else,” “the rest”

Zhèxiē shū wǒ jiù kànle liǎngběn, qítā hái méi kàn.

I've only read two of these books, I haven't read the others yet.

Nǐ qù Shànghǎi, qítā rén ne?

You're going to Shànghǎi; what about the others?

Nǐ hái xiǎng qù shénme qítāde dìfāng, wǒmen zài zuò ānpái.

If you want to go to any other places, we'll make more arrangements.

Chúle zhèige shì zhǔyào wèntí, qítā dōu méi guānxi.

Besides this, which is the main issue, the rest doesn't matter.

Wǒ zhǐ juéde bù hao yìsi, qítà méiyǒu shénme.

I just feel embarrassed, nothing else,.

## Unit 6

### References

#### Reference List

#### Vocabulary

#### Reference Notes

##### Notes on №1

Hànyǔ: “Chinese language” This is more formal than Zhōngwén.

Shuō Zhōngguó huà bú tài nán, kěshì yào xuéhǎo Hànyǔ jiu bǐjiào nán le.

It isn't too hard to speak Chinese, but if you want to master the Chinese language, it is more difficult.

Wǒ liǎngdiǎn zhōng yǒu Hànyǔ kè.

I have Chinese class at two.

fùzá: “to be complicated, to be complex” Also pronounced fùzá.

Nà shì yíge fùzáde wèntí.

That's a complicated question.

xiāngxìn:

1. “to believe in, to have faith in”

Tā xiāngxìn yíge hǎn qígùàide zōngjiào.

He believes in a very strange religion.
Wǒ bù xiāngxìn.
I don't believe it!
Yìqián rénmen bù xiāngxìn zhèzhǒng shuōfǎ, xiànzài xiāngxìn le.
People didn't used to believe in this explanation, but now they do.

2. (as used in 1B) “to be convinced, to be certain, to trust that...”

Wǒ xiāngxìn tā yíding zuòde hǎo.
I'm certain that he will do a good Job.

## Notes on №2

Zhōngdōng: “the Middle East”

Zhōngdōng dìqū yǒu hěn duō guójiā dōu dúlì le.
The Middle East region has many countries which have become independent.

**Yìsīlǎnjiào:** “Islam” -Jiao, “religion,” goes on the end of words for different religions. The following examples are for comparison, not for memorisation:

Tiānzhǔjiào (“heaven-lord-religion”)	Catholicism
Xīnjiào (“New-religion”)	Protestantism
Yóutàijiào	Judaism
Fójiào	Buddhism
Dàojiào	Taoism (the popular religion, not the philosophy)

**Xīnjiāng:** The **Xīnjiāng** Uygur Autonomous Region, formerly known as Sinkiang or Chinese Turkestan, is China's westernmost area. The largest of the country's autonomous regions and provinces, **Xīnjiāng** makes up one sixth of China's total area. In this vast land of great natural beauty and sharp geographical contrasts, plentiful resources make conditions ideal for the development of industry, agriculture, and livestock farming.

**Xīnjiāng** has held an important place in China's politics and economy since ancient times. In the days before the large-scale navigation of the seas, **Xīnjiāng** was crossed by the famous “Silk Road,” by which economic and cultural ties were maintained between China and other Asian and European countries. During the Western **Hàn** period over two thousand years ago, incursions by the **Xiōngnú** (Hsiungnu) led the Chinese central government to a policy of occupying the oasis cities of southern **Xīnjiāng** as garrison posts. **Xīnjiāng** has been intimately connected with China ever since that time, al-

though their relations have often been turbulent. The **Qīng** dynasty made a province of **Xīnjiāng** (the name means “the New Dominion”) in 1884. From the Chinese revolution in 1911 until 1949, **Xīnjiāng** remained under authoritarian Chinese control at the same time that local nationalist forces were also at work. Communist Chinese forces “liberated” **Xīnjiāng** from late 1949 until the spring of 1950. **Xīnjiāng** became an autonomous region on October 1, 1955.

**Xīnjiāng** is surrounded by mountains: the Altay in the north; the Kunlun in the south and west; and the Tianshan Range, over 200 kilometers wide, which cuts across the center from east to west. Between these mountain ranges are basins of varying sizes. Southern **Xīnjiāng** has the Tarim Basin and northern **Xīnjiāng** the Dzungarian Basin. In addition there are smaller basins such as the Hami and Turfan Basins. All are well-suited to agriculture and livestock farming. **Xīnjiāng** fine-wool sheep and **Yīlí** horses are famous throughout China. Despite a harsh seven-month winter, the north has its herdsmen who put their horses and sheep to graze on the wide grasslands for the brief summer. In the arid south, too, livestock herding is a major occupation. In agricultural areas, the dry climate makes irrigation indispensable; a full ninety percent of **Xīnjiāng**'s farmland is irrigated. The areas around Turpan and Hami are famous for their “karez” (**kǎnrǐng**) irrigation, a system for conveying water from sources under mountain slopes to farmland by means of man-made underground channels. Crops include winter and spring wheat, cotton, corn, rice and silkworms. But **Xīnjiāng** is most celebrated for its fruits—cantaloupe, melons (**hāmiguǎ**) from **Shànshàn** and seedless grapes from Turpan are available in season in **Běijīng**'s markets. The **Tiānshān** and Altay Mountains, covered with evergreen forests, are rich in wildlife and in precious herbs which go into the making of Chinese medicines. **Xīnjiāng** has important deposits of petroleum (especially at Karamay [**Kèlāmǎyī**], coal, iron, gold, jade, and uranium (in the Altay Mountains). The main industries are petroleum, metallurgy, coal, electric power, chemicals, construction materials, textiles, and sugar refining.

About half the population of **Xīnjiāng** is of the Uygur (Uighur) nationality (see the note on **Wéiwúěr**. “Uygur,” under number 7), and over forty percent are **Hàn** Chinese. The rest of the population belongs to one of these ethnic groups: Kazak (Kazakh), Hui (Chinese Moslem), Mongol, Kergez (Kirghiz), Xibo (Sibo), Tajik (Tadzhik), Uzbek, Manchu, Daur (Tahur), and Tartar (Tatar). There are also several hundred Russians. In the north of **Xīnjiāng** there is a **Hàn** majority, and in the south, a Uygur majority. The capital **Ūrümqī** (**Wúlǔmùqí**), with a population of 800,000 (1980, est.), is the region's center for industry, commerce, and transportation. **Xīnjiāng** University in **Ūrümqī** has departments of Chinese, government, history, foreign languages, math, physics, chemistry, biology, and geography. Kashgar (Chinese **Kāshǐ**), ancient gateway of the silk trade, is still a commercial and craft center. Kuldja (Chinese **Yīníng**) is a commercial center which produces leather and tobacco, and also has metallurgical and textile industry. Other cities of note are Kuytun (Chinese **Kuítún**), Hotan (**Hétián**), **Shíhézi**, and Yarkand (**Shāchē**).

**tǎolùn**: A verb, “to discuss,” or a noun, “discussion.”

Rénmen chángcháng tǎolùn shìjièshàng yìxiē yǒu yìside wèntí, kěshì shéi yě bù zhīdào zhèizhōng tǎolùn yǒu shénme yòng.

People often discuss some very interesting questions about the world, but no one knows of what use this kind of discussion is.

Nèige rén bú ài shuō huà, cónglái bù cānjiā tǎolùn.

That person doesn't like to talk. He never takes part in discussion.

**Tǎolùnhuì** (“discussion-meeting”) is a “symposium.”

### Notes on №3

**nèidi**: “the interior” of a country; modifying a noun, **nèidi** can be translated as “inland.” e.g., **nèidi chéngshì**, “inland city.”

From the point of view of **Xīnjiāng**, a border region, **nèidi** refers to China proper; but from the point of view of **Běijīng**, **Shànghǎi**, or **Guǎngzhōu**,

**nèidi** refers to inland regions such as **Sichuān**.

**Zhōngguó dàbùfen nèidi chéngshìde gōngyè méiyǒu yánhǎi chéngshìde nàme fādá.**

In most inland cities of China, industry is not as developed as in the coastal cities.

**tōngyī**: As a process verb, “to become united”:

**Yuènnán xiànzài tōngyī le.**

Vietnam has now been united.

As an action verb, “to unite, to unify, to integrate”:

**Qín Shǐhuáng tōngyīle Zhōngguó.**

**Qín Shǐhuáng** united China.<sup>a</sup>

<sup>a</sup>in 221 B.C.

**gōngyuán** and **gōngyuán qián**: “A.D.” and “B.C.” Literally, **gōngyuán** is “common era” and **gōngyuán qián** “before the common era.”

**gōngyuán qián èrbǎièrshìnián**

222 B.C.

**gōngyuán sībǎisānshìliùnián**

A.D. U36

**gōngyuán chū**

the beginning of the Christian era

## Notes on №4

**Jiěfàngjūn**: “the Liberation Army,” short for **Zhōngguó Rénmín Jiěfàngjūn**, the Chinese People's Liberation Army, which in English is usually called the FLA.

**héping**: “peace” (For the first example, you need to know **yǔ**, a formal word for “and.”)

**Zhànzhēng yǔ Héping shì yìběn hěn hǎode xiǎoshuō.**

War and Peace is a very good novel.

**Shìjiè hépingde wèntí shì gèguó rénmin guānxīnde wèntí.**

World peace is a question of concern to the people of all nations.

In some idioms, **héping** can be used to modify a noun or a verb. **Héping jiéfàng** “peacefully liberate,” is an example.

### Notes on №5

**zìzhìqū**: “autonomous region”

Zhōngguó dàlù yǒu wǔge zìzhìqū.

The Chinese mainland has five autonomous regions.<sup>2</sup>

Zìzhìqūde rénmin dàbùfen shì shǎoshù mínzú.

The people of the autonomous regions are mostly minority nationalities.

**chà**:

1. (as used in 5A) “to differ,” as in

Běijīng shíjiān gēn Niǔ Yuē shíjiān chà shí sānge zhōngtóu.

Běijīng time and New York time differ by thirteen hours.

2. (as used in 5B) “to be inferior, to be poor, to be not up to standard”:

Wǒde Hànyǔ fāyīn bǐ tāde fāyīn chà yidiǎn.

My Chinese pronunciation is a little worse than his.

Zhiliàng chà yidiǎn, bú shì wǒmende zérèn.

It’s not our responsibility that the quality is inferior.

Nèige dìfāngde qíngkuàng bǐ zhèr chàde duō.

Conditions in that place are much worse than here.

Wǒmende gōngzuò hái chàde yuǎn ne.

Our work is a long way from what it should be.

3. “to lack”

Bú gòu, hái chà sānge.

There aren’t enough. There are still three too few.

The five autonomous regions are:

Nèiměnggǔ Zìzhìqū	the Inner Mongolia (or Nei Monggol) AR
Níngxià Huízú Zìzhìqū	the Níngxià Hui AR

Xīnjiāng Wéiwú'ěr Zìzhìqū	the Xīnjiāng Uyğur AR
Guǎngxī Zhuàng Zìzhìqū	the Guǎngxī Zhuàng AR
Xīzàng Zìzhìqū	the Tibet AR

jiāotōng: “traffic,” “transportation”

Zhèlǐde jiāotōng bù ānquán, qìchē tài duō, kāide tài kuài.
The traffic here isn't safe. There are too many cars, and they go too fast.
Qǐng nǐ zhǎo yíge jiāotōng jǐngchá lái.
Please go get a traffic officer.

zhǔyào shì...: “it’s mainly that...,” or “it’s mainly because...”

Zhǔyào shì Zhōngguóde língdǎo rén bù dǒng jīngjì, gōngyè fāzhǎn cái nàme màn.
It's mainly because China's leaders do not understand economics that industrial development has been so slow.

me (also pronounced ma): “as for,” “...well, ... .” This colloquial word marks a pause and sets off the topic of a sentence. It is often used when the speaker is hesitating about exactly what to comment on the topic.

Tā zài wénxué fāngmiàn me... kéyì shuō hén bú cuò, kěshì shùxué fāngmiàn kě zhēn chà.
In the area of literature... he can be said to be quite good, but he's really poor in mathematics.
Zhōngguóde zhòng gōngyè jiànshè me... zhèi jǐnián hái suàn kéyì le.
As for China's heavy industrial construction... it has not been too bad the past few years.
Rúguǒ tā bú yuànyì me, nà jiù suàn le.
If he's unwilling, well, then let the matter drop.

### Notes on №6

chū chāi: “to go/be away on official business” (For this example, you need to know Sū-Háng. an abbreviation for Sūzhōu and Hángzhōu.)

Dàjiā dōu xīhuan chū chāi qù Sū-Háng yídài, kéyì duō yíxiē jīhuì yóulǎn.
Everyone likes to go on business to the Sūzhōu-Hángzhōu region, (because) one can have more opportunities to do sightseeing.

**fàng jià**: “to let out for vacation” or “to have vacation, to be on vacation” Here are examples of the first meaning:

Nǐmen xuéxiào nǐtiān fàng jià?
What day does your school let out for vacation?
Fàng jià le, nǐ zěnme hái qù shàng bān?
Vacation has started; why are you still going to work?

Here are examples referring to the state of being on vacation:

Zhèige ĭlbài wǒmen zài fàng jià ne.
This week we are on vacation
Fàng jiàde shíhou wǒmen cái néng zài yìqǐ.
We can only be together when we are on vacation.

The length of time the vacation lasts is expressed by a time phrase modifying the object **jià**:

Qùnián wǒmen fàngle sānge ĭlbàide jià, jīnnián zhǐ fàng liǎngge ĭlbài.
Last year we had three weeks of vacation, but this year we only have two weeks.
Shíyuè yīhào, xuéxiào fàng yìtiān jià.
Schools have one day of vacation on October 1.

**bú shì... ma?**: This has both a literal and a rhetorical use. In 6B you see the rhetorical use.

1. Literal use: “isn’t...?, don’t...?” etc.
2. Rhetorical use: “you know, you will recall, remember” Use this to remind the listener of a fact you know he is aware of (although he may have forgotten it).

Contrast the literal and rhetorical use of this pattern:

LITERAL	Nǐ bú shì yǒu yíge mèimei zài Shànghǎi ma?
	Don’t you have a younger sister in Shànghǎi? (CHECKING INFORMATION)
RHETORICAL	Wǒ bú shì yǒu yíge mèimei zài Shànghǎi ma?
	You’ll recall that I have a younger sister in Shànghǎi. (REMINDING)

Further examples:

- LITERAL

Nǐ bú shì shuō yào qù ma? Zěnme yǒu bú qù le ne?



Didn't you say you were going to go? How come you aren't going now?

• RHETORICAL

Wǒ bú shì yǐjīng xiěwánle ma? Wèishénme hái ràng wo xiě?

I've finished writing it, you know. Why do you still want me to write?

Wǒ bú shì gēn nǐ shuōguo ma? Wǒ xiàwú yào kāi huì, méi shíjiān.

Haven't I told you? I have a meeting this afternoon and don't have time.

Xiàle diàntī, wàng yòu zǒu, bú shì yǒu ge cān-tīng ma? Wǒmen jiù zài nàr jiàn miàn, hǎo bu hǎo?

When you get off the elevator and go to the right, there's a restaurant, you know? We'll meet there, okay?

Bú shì ma? may also be put onto the end of a sentence:

Wǒmen fàng jià le, bú shì ma?

We're on vacation, remember?

### Notes on №7

**Tz!**: This sound is just like the clicking of the tongue sometimes written in English as “Tsk.” As in English, it can be used to express disappointment or chiding, but in Chinese it can also be used to express admiration, as when describing a beautiful house, a dish of food, or a smartly dressed person.

**měi**: “to be beautiful”

Xià dà xué le, nǐ kàn wàibian duō měi.

It has snowed a lot. Look at how beautiful it is outside.

Zhàopiànshang tā zhēn měi.

She looks beautiful in the photograph.

**Wěiwúěr**: The Uygur, or Uighur, a Turkic people who, with a population of six million, constitute one of China's largest national minorities. Their early history, like that of other peoples of central Asia, is unrecorded. Some scholars have hypothesized that their origins were Indo-European rather than Turkic. At any rate, they emerge into the light of history in the **Táng** dynasty. At that time, they were a nomadic people well known to the Chinese; in fact, they helped the **Táng** overthrow a hostile Turkic empire in Mongolia in 7UU. The Uygur, in turn, established an empire in the area, but this lasted only until 840, when the wild Kirghiz sacked their capital and killed their khan. A portion of their population then migrated westward to the oases of the Tarim Basin. There, they mixed with the local Turkic population, and although the Uygur racial strain dominated, they adopted the Turkic language and no longer called themselves Uygur. Gradually, their occupation shifted from nomadic herding to farming. The resulting stability allowed a great development in their literature and arts, especially song and dance. In the tenth century, closer contact with merchants, travelers, and settlers from the Middle East stimulated their conversion to Islam, a process which took several centuries to complete.

Modern times have witnessed the emergence of Uygur nationalism, reflected in their official re-adoption of the historical name “Uygur” earlier in this century. Uygur leaders have often resisted control by outside powers, and even attempted to establish an independent republic in the region. Under Chinese authority today, the Uygur, who remain for the most part a farming people living and marrying within the village unit, have a limited degree of regional autonomy and are guaranteed cultural freedom and linguistic rights by the PRC Constitution.

### Notes on №8

liàng: “to be bright, to be light” or “to be shiny”

Zhèige dēng bú liàng le.

This light won't go on.

Nǐde xīn chēzi zhēn liàng a!

Your new car is really shiny!

Tiān liàng means “to get light out” or “daybreak, dawn”:

Tiān liàng yìhòu, jiēshang jiù rè'naoqilai le.

After it got light out, the streets started to liven up.

Tiān liàng yǐqián néng dào ma?

Can we get there before dawn?

gāng... jiù...: “just (hardly)... and already...”

Tā gāng dàxué bìyè jiù dào Xībēi qù le.

He went to the Northwest when he had just graduated from college.

Zhèige háizi gāng lái Méiguō sāngē yuè, jiù huì shuō bù shǎo Yīngwén le.

It has been barely three months since this child came to the U.S., and already she can speak a lot of English.

Zhèige xuéqī gāng kāishǐ, wǒmen jiù juéde hǎoxiàng guòle hén cháng shíjiān le.

The semester had barely started when we felt as if a long time had already passed.

nóngmín: “peasant,” as contrasted with non-ideological terms like *nóngfū*, “farmer,” or *nóngyè gōng-rén*, “agricultural worker.”

Zhōngguóde nóngmín zhàn quánquó rénkǒude bǎifēnzī bāshí.

China's peasants make up 80 percent of the population of the whole country.

-zú: “nationality,” as in *Wěiwúěrzú*, “the Uygur nationality,” *Hànzú*, “the Han nationality,” *Měnggǔzú*, “the Mongol (Mongolian) nationality.”

-zhǔyì: “doctrine” or “-ism,” as in **Gòngchànzhǔyì**, “Communism”; **hépingzhǔyì**, “pacifism”; **mínzúzhǔyì**, “nationalism”; **Dǎěr wénzhǔyì**, “Darwinism.”

**dà gǎo shèhuìzhǔyì**: “go all out with socialism; engage in socialism in a big way” The adjectival verb **dà**, “to be large,” is used here as an adverb. [Adverbs modify verbs or other adverbs.] When so used, it means “in a big way” or “go all out with (doing something)”:

<b>Jiēhūnde shíhou yě bú yào dà chī dà hē.</b>
Even when one gets married, one shouldn't put on a great feast
<b>”Dà Bàn Nóngyè.”</b>
”Make Great Efforts to Develop Agriculture.” (slogan)

### Notes on №9

**gōngren**: This is the general term for “worker” in the sense of a wage-earning laborer. (**Gōngzuòzhě**, which you learned in Unit 4, does not imply manual labor; it simply means someone who works in a particular field, such as education or archeology.) Examples: **shíyóu gōngren**, “oil worker”; **nóngyè gōngren**, “agricultural worker,” for example, a wage-earning worker on a state farm; **tiělù gōngren**, “railroad worker.”

**jiāo**: “to hand over, to give” **Jiāo qián** is “to pay” (a fee or bill, especially one which is due regularly).

<b>Wǒ hái méi jiào zhèige yuède fǎngzū.</b>
I haven't paid this month's rent yet.
<b>Jiào gài wǒmen ba! Nǐ fàngxīn hǎo le!</b>
Leave it to us! Don't worry about it! (Here <b>jiào</b> refers to turning over a task to someone.)

**zhǒngzú**: “race” or “racial” Examples are **Huángzhǒngrén**, “people of the yellow (Oriental) race,” **Hēizhǒngrén**, “people of the black race,” and **Báizhǒng-rén**, “people of the white race?”

### Notes on №10

**Suóyì...** : Notice that when stressed at the beginning of a sentence, **suóyì** is translated as “That's why...”

**chǎng** and **gōngchǎng**: **Gōngchǎng** (introduced in No. 7 above) is the generic term for a factory or plant. If you were talking about the installations in an area and wanted to say that there were schools, factories, and hospitals, you would use **gōngchǎng**. **Chǎng**, on the other hand, is only used in specific contexts. If you are talking about a specific factory, you can say **chǎnglǐ** for “in the factory.” A worker can say **wǒmen chǎng** for “our factory.” You can also use **chǎng** in certain compound nouns which specify what the factory makes, as in **dītǎnchǎng**.

### Notes on №11

**wénzì**: “writing,” “written language,” “script,” “system of writing” For example, a member of China's Committee for Reform of the Written Language would be a **wénzì gōngzuòzhě**. “written language worker.”

**Jiāoliú:** “to exchange” or “an exchange,” “interchange” This is only used to refer to a back-and-forth flow of culture, technology, experience, thought, and so forth. “To exchange” one thing for another is **huàn** [or **jiāohuàn** in formal contexts such as the exchange of views or of prisoners].

**shéi shuōde:** “Says who!” This is strictly informal and could be taken as impolite if used in an inappropriate context.

**zài gǎi:** “in the process of changing”

**bú shì... ma?:** This is another example of the rhetorical use of this pattern (see the Notes on No. 6): “We’re changing our writing, aren’t we?!”

### Additional Vocabulary

**biānjiing** border area; borderland; frontier; frontier region

**biānjiāng:** “frontier region, border region” This refers to the area inside the border. **Biānjiè** refers more specifically to the border or boundary itself.

## Unit 7

### References

### Reference List

### Vocabulary

### Reference Notes

### Notes on №1

**hái zhēn yuǎn:** **Hái**, “still,” in this sentence may go untranslated; it expresses surprise at how far it is into town. In this meaning, **hái** is often used before **zhēn**, “really.”

**Nǐ hái zhēn bú pà lěng, zhème lěngde tiān chuān zhème shǎo!**

You really don’t mind (“aren’t afraid of”) the cold; you wear so little in such cold weather!

**Shèyuán**, “commune member,” includes working members and their non-working family members. The ending **-yuán** is used in various compound words to mean “member”:

<b>Dǎngyuán</b>	Party member
<b>Tuányuán</b>	(Communist Youth) League member

huiyuán OR chéngyuán	member
----------------------	--------

yǒu diǎnr bú tài fāngbian: “a little inconvenient, kind of inconvenient” You are familiar with the phrasing yǒu diǎnr bù fāngbian. Here you see that use bú tài instead of just bù.

Yánzhe, “along, alongside,” is used for longer distances than pángbiān, “side?”

Qìchē yánzhe zhèitiáo lù kāile hěn jiǔ cái kànjian yíge rén.
The car drove along this road a long time before they saw a person.
Yánzhe fāngzi sibiānr zhòngle hǎoduō huā.
A lot of flowers were planted along the four sides of the house (i.e., all around the house).

BUT:

Fāngzi pángbiān zhòngle hǎoduō huà.
A lot of flowers were planted alongside the house (on the side or sides).

gōnglù: “public-road,” i.e., “highway” “Expressway” is gāosù gōnglù, “high-speed public-road.” (As of this writing, mainland China has no expressways; Taiwan has one, which goes from the north to the south of the island.)

hái suàn: “can still be considered to be...” This is an idiom for “fairly.” Compare the use of hái for “fairly” which you learned in the Society module, for example, Hái hǎo, “Fairly good.”

Tā hái suàn wèntí shǎode xuéshēng, biéde rén wèntí gèng duō.
He can be considered a student with relatively few problems; the others have even more problems.
Nà hái suàn xiǎo shì.
That's not a big thing (“a small matter”)

## Notes on №2

tiělù: “railroad,” literally, “iron-road”

Xīběide tiělù bù duō, érqǐè yǒu bù shǎo shì gāng xiūde.
There aren't many railroads in the Northwest, and many of them were just built.
Wǒ yǒu yíge gēge zài tiělùshang gōngzuò.
I have an older brother who works on the railroad.

fāshēng: “to happen,” “to occur” The event which happens often follows fāshēng in the sentence (just as in sentences with yǒu, “there is,” the thing that exists often follows yǒu):

Bù zhīdào fāshēngle shénme shìqing, láile zhème duō rén.

I wonder what has happened that so many people have come here.

Zhèi jǐtiān fāshēngle hǎojǐjiàn qíguàide shì.

The last few days, a lot of strange things have been happening.

Nèi shíhou fāshāngde shì, wǒ dōu bù zěnmē qīngchǔ le.

The things that happened then aren't very clear in my mind anymore.

Shéi dōu bú jìde zhèijiàn shì shì shénme shíhou fāshēngde le.

No one remembers when that event took place anymore.

bǐ mànchē hái màn: “even slower than a slow train” Here, hái is used as even.

Zuótiān lěng, jīntiān, bǐ zuótiān hái lěng.

It was cold yesterday, (but) today is even colder than yesterday.

jǐnzhāng: “to be nervous,” “to be tense”

Zài zhèli kāi chē zhēn jǐnzhāng, bù zhīdào shénme shíhou huì zhuàngdao rén.

It's really nerve-racking to drive here. You don't know when you might run into someone.

wènwenqīngchǔ: “to inquire until clear,” i.e., “to try to find out the true situation.” Notice that you can reduplicate a verb (here, wèn) even when the verb is followed by a resultative ending (here, qīngchǔ). Other examples: Qǐng nǐ bǎ shìqing shuōshuoqīngchǔ, “Please explain this more clearly”; Bǎ zhuōzi cācāgānjīng, “Wipe the table clean.”

### Notes on №3

zài máng... yě... : “no matter how busy...” The zài in this pattern (meaning literally, “more, additionally”) must be given extra-heavy stress: ZÀI máng wǒ yě děi huíqu. Yě here means “still, even so.”

Zhōngwén ZÀI nán wǒ yě yào xué.

No matter how hard Chinese is, I'm still going to study it.

-tàng: This counter for trips need not be translated here. Used with verbs like lái, qù, huílai, huíqu, etc., -tàng simply counts the number of times someone goes someplace. Other examples:

Tā shàngge xīngqī dào Shànghǎi qùle yítàng.

Last week he made a trip to Shànghǎi.

Wǒ jīntiān yǐjīng wǎng tā nàr pǎole liǎngtàng le.

I've already made two trips to his place today.

-yàng: “kind, sort” You have learned the word -zhǒng, “kind, sort, type.” These words are slightly different in usage; sometimes -yàng should not be translated literally as “kind,” but just left out of the translation (see the third, fourth, and fifth examples).

Zhèi jǐyàng dōngxi wǒ dōu méi kànjianguo, hěn qíguài.
I've never seen these kinds of things. They're very strange.
Nǐ kàndechūlái zhèi liǎnyàng dōngxi yǒu shénme bù yíyàng ma?
Can you tell what's different about these two kinds of things?
Wǒmen jīntiān wǎnshàng yǒu jǐyàng cài?
How many dishes are we having tonight [for dinner]?
Tā dào shāngdiàn què jǐcì yě méi mǎihui yíyàng dōngxi lai.
He went to the store several times, but didn't come back with a single thing.
Wǒ zhèr hái yǒu liǎngyàng shuǐguǒ... yíge píngguǒ yíge júzi.
I still have two fruits here... one apple and one tangerine/orange.

háishi: “it would be better to... .” This is another meaning for the word which you first learned as meaning “still.”

Wǒ bù shūfu, háishi shǎo chī diǎnr ba.
I'm not feeling well. I'd better not eat too much.
Háishi Ōuyáng Lǎoshī yíge rén qù, nǐmen dōu liú zài zhèr ba.
It would be better if Teacher Ouyang went alone; the rest of you just stay here.

Also used in the pattern háishi... hǎo:

Háishi nǐ qù háo.
It would be better if you went.

### Notes on №4

jǐn: “to be tight,” in both literal and figurative senses.

Zhèishuāng xié tài jǐn.
These shoes are too tight.
Bǎ mén guānjǐn.
Shut the door tight.
Wǒde shíjiān ānpaide hěn jǐn.

I have a very tight schedule.

**bīfang shuō... ba:** Ba can be used at the end of a **bīfang shuō** phrase. Compare the use of **bā** shown in unit 5.

**yòuéryuán:** “kindergarten,” literally, “young-child-garden” In Taiwan, the word **yòuzhìyuán** is used instead.

**xuǎn:** “to choose,” “to select”; “to elect”

Tāmen xuǎn wǒ zuò dàibiǎode shíhou, wǒ hěn bù hào yìsī.<sup>a</sup>

When they elected me as representative, I was very embarrassed.

Tā zài shāngdiànli zǒule bàntián yě méi xuǎndào tā xǐhuande dōngxi.

She walked around the store for a long time but didn’t find anything she liked. (**Xuǎn** is often used for “selecting”—buying—items at a store.)

<sup>a</sup>dàibiào. ”representative, delegate” (TVL, Unit 8)

### Notes on №5

**cóng chǎnliàngshang kàn:** “from the point of view of yield” Other examples of this pattern: **cóng shùliàngshang kàn**, “from the point of view of numbers/quantity”; **cóng fāzhǎn jīngjìshang kàn**, “from the point of view of developing the economy?”

**Chángjiāng:** “Long-River,” the Yangtze, now called the Changjiang in PRC publications. China’s longest river (6,300 kilometers), the Changjiang is an important artery of water transportation, passing through the cities of **Chōngqīng**, **Wūhàn**, **Nánjīng**, and **Shànghǎi**.

- ...yǐnán: to the south of...
- yǐběi is to the north of.

Júzi zhòng zài Chángjiāng yǐnán shì tián’de, dào le Chángjīng yǐběi jiù chéng le kǔde le.

Tangerines grown south of the Changjiang are sweet, but north of the Changjiang, they become bitter.

jiù shì...yě... :

1. “even...”

Jiù shì wǒ yě zhīdao.

Even I know that.

Jiù shì xuézhě yě bù dǒng zhèige wèntí.

Even scholars do not understand this problem.

Zhèige dà píngguǒ shì wǒ tèbié xuǎnchulai gěi nǐde.

I picked this big apple out especially for you.



2. “even if ...”

Tā shuō jiùshi nǐ qù zuò yě zuòbuhǎo.
He said that even if you did it, you wouldn't do it right.
Nǐ jiùshi mǎile wǒ yě bù chī.
Even if you bought it I wouldn't eat it.

bú yòng shuō X, jiù shì Y yě...: This three-part pattern means “For X, that goes without saying, but even Y is...” Sometimes in English we mention the parts X and Y in the reverse order: “Even Y is . . . , not to mention X.”

Nèige dìfāng zhēn hǎowánr, bú yòng shuō xiǎoháir, jiù shì dàrén yě zài nàr wánrde hěn gāoxìng.

That place is really fun. Even grown-ups have a great time there, not to mention children,

For *bú yòng shuō*, you can often substitute *bú yào shuō*. For *jiù shì*, you can substitute *lián*. For *yě*, you can substitute *dōu*.

When the clause after *yě* has *bù* or *méi*, you can translate *bú yòng shuō* as “much less”:

Bú yòng shuō zhōngxuéshēng, jiù shì yánjiùshēng yě kànbudǒng zhèiplān wénzhāng.

Even graduate students cannot understand this article, much less high school students.

Wǒ bú yòng shuō xiě, lián tīng yě láibují.

I couldn't even keep up listening to it, much less write it down.

Bú yào shuō qù kàn diànyǐng, wǒ lián chī fānde shíjiān dōu méiyǒu.

I don't even have time to eat, much less go to the movies.

gǎnshànglai: “to catch up” by hurrying (*gǎn* means “to hurry”)

Tā suīrán bìngle hǎojǐtiān, kěshì xuéxí háishi gǎnshànglai le.

Although he has been sick for quite a few days, he has caught up with his schoolwork.

Wǒ yǒu diǎnr shì, nǐmen xiān zǒu ba! Dèng yihuǐr wǒ jiu gǎnshànglai.

I have something I have to do. You go on ahead. I'll catch up with you in a minute.

### Notes on №6

*gāngtiě*: Literally, “steel-iron,” but usually translated as “iron and steel” (The usual order of paired words in Chinese and English is often the same, but sometimes differs. Other examples are *bàba māma*, “mom and dad”; *yéye nǎinai*, “grandma and grandpa.”)

*shítáng*: “dining hall,” “cafeteria,” “mess hall”

*zhīgōng*: “staff and workers”; “staff member or worker”

Zhèige chǎngde zhígōng dàbùfen shì nǚde.

The staff and workers of this factory are mostly women.

Zhèige zhígōng xuéxiào yǒu bù shǎo hèn hǎode lǎoshī, tāmen dōu duì zhígōng jiàoyu hěn rèxīn.

This staff and worker school has a lot of good teachers who are very interested and enthusiastic toward staff and worker education.

Zhígōng shítáng chángcháng mài lěng fàn.

Staff and worker dining halls often sell cold food.

jiāshǔ: “family members,” “(family) dependents”

Gànbude jiāshǔ chángcháng shòudào tèbiéde zhàogu.

The families of cadres often receive special care.

Dàqīngde gōngren jiāshǔ hěn duō dōu shì nóngmín.

Many families of workers at Dàqīng are peasants.

NOTE: Although in context, jiāshǔ may be translated as “family” as in the sentence above, it is different from jiāting. Jiāting refers to the family unit, the household. Jiāshǔ refers collectively to the family members other than the head of household.

yǒu bù shàode dàshítáng ne!: On this use of ne, see Unit 3 Reference Notes, Notes on No. 5.

## Notes on №7

zhìzào: “to manufacture,” as in Zhōngguó zhìzào, “Made in China.”

zhìzào chǎng, “plant,” “factory”

zài nǎr jiànguo ta: “have seen him somewhere” Nǎr, like other question words used in statements, becomes an indefinite pronoun here: “somewhere.”

Wǒ jìde wǒ zài nǎr chīguo zhèige cài.

I remember having this dish 'somewhere before.

gǎocuò: “to get (something) wrong” or “to do (something) wrong”

Bié gǎocuò le, zhèige zì hěn fǔzá ne!

Don't get it wrong; this character is very complicated!

Ò, wǒ gǎocuò le, tā bú shì wǒ yào zhǎode nèige nǚháizi.

Oh, I'm mistaken. She isn't the young woman I'm looking for.

Tā bǎazhèige wèntí gǎocuò le, méiyou nàme fǔzá.

He has misunderstood this problem. It's not that complicated.

Compare other verbs that have the resultative ending **-cuò**:

Nǐ niàncuò le ba, zhèige zì hǎoxiàng bú niàn lǜè, niàn liè.

You've read it wrong, haven't you? I don't think this character is read lǜè; it's read liè.

Xǎoxīn, bú yào zǒucuò.

Careful, don't go the wrong way.

**rényuán**: “personnel,” “staff.” Often used in **gōngzuò rényuán**. “working personnel,” “staff member.”

Zhèli suǒyǒude gōngzuò rényuán dōu shàngguo dàxué.

All the personnel here have attended college.

Wǒmen xiànzài xūyào hěn duō dòng Yīngyǔde kējì rényuán.

We now need a lot of scientific and technical personnel who understand English.

### Notes on №8

**yìbàn yǐshàng**: “over half” **Yìshàng** and **yǐxià** are used after quantities to mean, respectively, “over” and “under” an amount.

Zhèrde yánjiúshēng, sānshisui yǐxiàde bú tài duō.

Not many of the graduate students here are under thirty.

Zài Běijīng, wǔcéng lóu yīhàngde dàlóu cái yǒu diàntī.

In Běijīng, only buildings over five stories high have elevators.

Bǎifēn zhī bāshíwǔ yǐshàngde Zhōngguó rénkǒu shì nóngmín.

Over eighty-five percent of the population of China is made up of peasants.

**sùshè**: “living quarters”; “dormitory” This can either refer to the kind of quarters we think of as dormitories, with many people living and sleeping in each large room, or it can mean housing provided by an institution for its workers, with each family living in separate quarters.

Zhèi dìfāng shì gāngtiěchǎngde gōngren sùshè.

This place is the workers’ quarters of the iron and steel plant.

Wàijiāobùde sùshè bǐ biéde bùde sùshè dōu piàoliang.

The Foreign Ministry living quarters are better-looking than those of any other ministry.

**nèi jǐnián**: “those few years” This is currently a way of referring to the period of the Cultural Revolution.

**bèi**: This is a prepositional verb which indicates the **DOER** of the action, similar to the English “by” in passive sentences (like “John was hit by Bill”). In sentences with **bèi**, the subject of the sentence is the receiver of the action and the object of **bèi** is the **doer** of the action:

Wǒde zìdiǎn bèi rén jièzǒu le.

My dictionary was borrowed by someone.

Nèi jǐnián, zhěnggè shèhuì bèi jǐgè rén gǎode luànqībāzāo, zhēn méi bànǎ shuō.

Those few years, the whole society was messed up by a few people; it is really sad.

Unlike most prepositional verbs, **bèi** can be used without an object, as in sentence 8B. Here is another example:

Wǒde xīn qìchē bèi zhuàng le.

My new car was hit.

### Notes on №9

**Lái!**: Notice that **lái** does not necessarily mean “come here,” but can also mean “come on” and do some action.

Lái, zánmen gān yībēi!

Come on, let’s empty a glass together!

Lái ba, wǒmen shàng kè ba, bù shuō biéde le.

Come on, let’s get on with class and stop talking about other things.

Lái lái lái, wǒ lái gěi nimen jièshào wǒ gēn nimen shuōguode Liáng Jiàoshòu.

Now everyone, let me introduce Professor **Liáng**, whom I’ve told you about before.

**xiāomiè**: “to exterminate/eliminate/wipe out/stamp out” bad things such as landlords, the enemy, illness, poverty, illiteracy, rats, flies, etc. In sentence 9, it is used humorously.

**bǎ... xiāomiè le!**: You long ago learned **le**, the marker of completion. Here, **le** indicates that the action of the verb gets rid of something in one fell swoop. Here are other examples for comparison:

Bǎ zhèige zhuōzi mài le ba, méi yòng le.

Sell this table. It’s of no use anymore.

Bǎ diànshì guān le, wǒ bú kàn le.

Turn off the T.V. I don’t want to watch any more.

Bǎ yīfu tuō le ba, zhè tài rè.

Take off your coat; it’s too hot here.

This use of **le** is especially frequent with the adverb **dōu**, “all”:

Dōu mǎile ba!
Why not buy all of them!
Dǒu hēle ba!
Drink the whole thing!

**dào**: “yet, nevertheless, on the contrary” This is a very common adverb with one basic idea to it—the idea of contrasting one element with another. Depending on the context, the translation into English will differ. Here are examples of the main contexts in which you will encounter **dào**:

1. One particular element in the sentence is contrasted with something previously mentioned, about to be mentioned, or understood. (The contrasted elements are underlined in the following examples.)

A: Nǐ xiǎng hē diǎn shénme?
What would you like to drink?
B: Wǒ bù xiǎng hē shénme, wǒ dào xiǎng chī diǎn shénme.
I don't feel like having anything to drink. I would like something to eat, though.
Xià yǔde shíhou nǐ bú dài sǎn, jīntiān bú xià yǔ nǐ dào dài sǎn!
On rainy days you don't take an umbrella with you, but today, when it isn't raining, you do take one with you!

2. The whole situation expressed by the sentence contrasts with another particular set of circumstances previously mentioned, about to be mentioned, or understood.

Bānshang zuì hǎode xuéshēng zhècì dào kǎode zuì bù hǎo.
The best student in the class did the worst on the exam this time.
A: Jīnnián dōngtiān zhēn lěng!
It's really cold this winter!
B: Shēng bìngde rén dào shǎo le.
Fewer people have been getting sick, though.
A: Zhè fángzi nàme xiǎo, yòu nàme guì.
This house/apartment is so small, and so expensive.
B: Kěshi nǐ shàng bān duǒ fāngbian!
But it's so convenient for you to go to work.
A: Nà dào shì.

Well, that's true.

Wǒ dàoshi xiǎng bāng máng, jiù shì méi shíjiān.

I did want to help, it's just that I didn't have the time.

Shìqing dàoshi guòqu le, hěn cháng shíjiān yě wàngbuliǎo.

It was over with, but we couldn't forget about it for a long time.

Nà dào méi guānxi, zhǐ yào tā bú jièyi jiù suàn le.

That doesn't matter. As long as he doesn't mind, then let it go at that.

3. The whole sentence contrasts with expectations. In these cases, **dào** sometimes implies satisfaction with the state of affairs, sometimes dissatisfaction, and sometimes is neutral. In addition, it sometimes has an ironic meaning, as in the last three examples below.

Yǒu zhèyàngde shì! Wǒ dào bù zhīdào!

Is that so! Why, I didn't know!

Āiyà! Wǒ dào bǎ zhèjiàn shì wàng le!

Oh no! I forgot about **that**!

Sānshíkuài? Nà dào bú guì.

Thirty dollars? That's not so expensive. (**Dào** implies "I would have expected it to be more.")

Rúguǒ zhēn shì zhèyàng, dào hái yǒu xīwàng.

If that's really true, then there's still hope after all.

Hng, nǐ dào zhēn jiǎng chī a!

Well! Quite the gourmet aren't you! (**Jiǎng** = to be meticulous about)

Hng! Nǐ dào shuōde hǎofīng! Nǐ zuòzuò kan.

Hmph! You make it sound easy! Let's see you do it!

Tā shuō wǒ bù gāi zhème zuò, wǒ dào xiǎng zhīdao tā shì wǒ zěnme zuò!

He says I shouldn't have done this, but I'd like to know what he would have done if he were me!

### Notes on №10

fāxiàn: "to discover," "to find out"; "discovery"

Wǒ dàole yóujú cái fāxiàn wàng dài xìn le.

I didn't discover I had forgotten to bring the letters with me until I was at the post office.

Hěn duō yīxué dà fāxiàn dōu fāshēng zài gōngyè géming yìhòu.

Many great medical discoveries were made after the industrial revolution

The phrase **Wō fāxiàn...** is often used to preface an observation made about a person, or a fact that has just come to one's attention:

Wǒ fāxiàn nǐ hén néng chī!

I see you have quite a big appetite!

**jìnxíng**: “to carry on,” “to conduct,” “to proceed”

Zhèlǐde tāolùn jìnxíngde bú cuò, wèntí kuài shāngliánghǎo le.

The discussion here is proceeding well; the problem has almost been resolved.

**yèyú**: “spare-time,” “after hours,” “amateur” NOTE: “Spare time” as a noun must be translated as **yèyú shíjiān**.

Yèyú shíjiān wǒ xǐhuān kàn xiǎoshuō.

I like to read fiction in my spare time.

Tā shì yèyú yǔyánxuéjiā.

He is an amateur linguist.

## Notes on №11

**Hàozhāo** or **hàozhào** means to issue an official appeal to engage in some activity:

Zhèngfǔ hàozhāo niánqīng rén nǚlì xuéxí kēxué zhīshi.

The government calls on young people to work hard to acquire scientific knowledge.

Yīnggāi hàozhāo dàjiā xiàng tā xuéxí.

We should call on everyone to learn from her.

Chūntiān lái le, yòu hàozhāo zhòng shù le.

Spring is here; they're issuing calls to plant trees again.

Lǐngdǎode hàozhāo zǒng shì yì kāishǐ hěn duō rén tīng, hòulái jiù méi rén zhùyì le.

Appeals from the leaders are always followed by many people in the beginning, then later people stop paying attention to them.

**-bù**: This is an extremely common and useful counter. It is used for cars, buses, machines, movies, and long books.

Zhèi shì yí bù jiǎng huàxué zhànzhēngde diànyǐng.

This is a movie about chemical warfare.

děngyú: “to be equal to”

Èr jiā èr děngyú sì.

Two plus two equals four.

Děngyú is more often used in a non-mathematical sense:

Tā zhèiyang zuò, děngyú bǎ nǐ zuòde quán dōu gǎi le.

By doing this, he is in effect changing everything you have done. (Literally, “For him to do this is equal to changing all you have done.”)

-bèi: “times,” “-fold,” as in

sānbèi	three times/threefold
shíbèi	
yībǎibèi	ten times/tenfold
	one hundred times/hundredfold

Amounts with -bèi can be used in two different patterns, and the type of pattern used influences the meaning, as follows:

EQUIVALENCE PATTERN (A = x times y)

- expresses equivalence between two amounts
- uses the verb *shì*, *yǒu*, or *děngyú*

Examples:

Liù shì èr de sānbèi.

Six is three times two.

Tāde shū yǒu wǒde sìbèi.

He has four times as many books as I.

Jīnniánde shōurù děngyú qùnniánde liǎngbèi.

This year's income is twice last year's.

COMPARISON PATTERN (A is x times more than y)

- expresses comparison between two amounts
- uses *bǐ*, “compared to,” “than’



- the number before **-bèi** must be translated into English as one more than the Chinese number

EXAMPLES:

Liù bǐ èr duō liǎngbèi.
Six is three times as much as two.
Tāde shū bǐ wǒde duō sānbèi.
He has four times as many books as I.
Jīnniándè shōurù bǐ qùnián duō yībèi.
This year's income is twice last year's.

As you see, if you use **liǎngbèi**, “two times,” in a comparison sentence, the meaning comes out to “the base amount plus two times the base amount,” i.e., three times the base amount. Likewise, if you use **yībèi**, “one time,” the meaning is “the base amount plus one time the base amount,” or in other words, twice the base amount.

## Unit 8

### References

#### Reference List

#### Vocabulary

#### Reference Notes

#### Notes on №1

**Jiāoyìhuì**: “trade fair” **Jiāoyì** means “business, trade, transaction,” and **huì** is the same word you know from **kāi huì**, “to have a meeting.” The full name of the **Guǎngzhōu** Trade Fair is **Guǎngzhōu** Trade Fair (CECF). Since the first CECF in 1957, every spring and autumn **Guǎngzhōu** is inundated with businessmen and people of all walks of life connected with trade—more than 25,000 at each Fair. Chinese agricultural and industrial products are displayed in the Fairground buildings and open areas, located on **Hǎizhū Guǎngchǎng** (Haizhu Square) between the railroad station and the **Dōngfāng Bīnguǎn** (Dongfang Hotel). The Fair is held from April 15 to May 15 and from October 15 to November 15.

As the name implies, the CECF's main purpose is to assist China's state trading corporations in exporting goods, but some large import contracts are signed there each year as well.

Chùkǒu, “to export” and jìnkǒu, “to import”:

Rìběn měinián chùkǒu hěn duōqìchē.

Japan exports a lot of cars every year.

Wǒ zhēn bù dǒng wèishénme Zhōngguó chūkǒude dōngxì zǒng shì bǐ guónèi màide hǎo.

I really don't understand why the China exports are always better than those it sells domestically.

màoyì: “trade,” as in guónèi màoyì, “domestic trade”; màoyì zhōngxīn, “trade center”; màoyì fēng, “trade wind.”

Zhèiliǎngge guójiā zuìjìn jìnián cái kāishǐ jìnxíng màoyì.

It is only in the past few years that these two countries have started have trade (with each other).

Tán is used in the sense of “negotiate” in such phrases as tán màoyì, “do trade (negotiating),” tán shēngyì, “do business,” etc.

## Notes on №2

jīngjì tèqū: Literally, “economic special-district,” translated as “special economic zones,” and abbreviated as SEZ. SEZs are designated areas similar to the export processing zones (EPZs) which have been extremely successful in places such as Taiwan. China established SEZs to bring in the foreign capital needed to create jobs and modernize the national economy. In these zones, foreign investors' assets, profits, and other rights and interests are legally protected, and their operations enjoy tax and duty exemptions. Proposed investment projects are examined and approved by the Provincial administration of the SEZ, which also draws up its own development plans and organizes their implementation. The SEZs compete with each other for foreign Investment As of 1981» Guǎngdōng province had three SEZs—Shēnzhèn, Zhūhǎi (near Macao), and Shàntóu—and other SEZs had been established in Fújiàn province and Hǎinán Island. A wide variety of enterprises have already been set up.

fánróng: “to be flourishing/prosperous/booming”

Rìběnde shàngyè hěn fánróng.

Japan's commerce is flourishing.

Shínián yǐhòu, zhèige dìfāng huì biànde gèng fánróng le.

Ten years from now, this place will become even more prosperous.

Cóng zhèige zhǎnlǎnhuìshàngde dōngxì, nǐ kényì kàndào fánróngde Měiguó wénhuà.

From the things in this exhibition, you can see the flourishing American culture.

Fánróng can also mean “to make something prosper”:

Bàn jiàoyìhuìde mùdì jiù shì yào fánróng jīngjì.

The purpose of holding trade fairs is to promote economic prosperity.

jiāgōng:

1. “to finish” a product, i.e., to work on a half-finished or finished article to make it more perfect or finer;
2. “to process” a raw material into a finished product.

### Notes on №3

**Guǎngjiāohuì**: This is an abbreviation of **Guǎngzhōu Jiāoyìhuì**.

**jiàqian**: “price”

**Zhèige píngguǒ shénme jiàqian?**

How much are these apples?

**Tāmende dōngxi hén hǎo, jiàqian yě bú cuò.**

Their things are very good, and the prices are pretty good, too.

**Jiǎng jiàqian** means “to bargain, to haggle”:

**Zài Zhōngguóde shāngdiànli, bù kéyì jiǎng jiàqian, dànshi zài zìyóu shìchàngshang kéyì.**

You cannot bargain in stores in China, but you can in the free markets.

**kōngshǒu**: “empty-handed” **Kōng** means “to be empty,” as in

**Zhèige xiāngziō shì kōngde.**

This case is empty.

**Kōngshǒu** is used, adverbially:

**Wǒ bù hǎo yìsi kōngshǒu dào tā jiā qu.**

I would be embarrassed to go to his house empty-handed.

### Notes on №4

**chūxiàn**: “to appear” As with **fāshēng**, “to happen,” which you learned in the previous unit, **chūxiàn** is often followed in the sentence by the thing that appears, whereas in English the thing usually precedes “appear” (“Will a new class appear?”).

**Zhèige wèntí zài gāng chūxiànde shíhou, méiyǒu rén fāxiàn, xiànzài zhīdao yǐjīng tài wǎn le.**

When this problem first appeared, no one discovered it. Now that we’ve found out about it, it’s too late.

**Tàiyang chūxiàn zài dōngfāngde shíhou, jiù shì xīnde yìtiān kāishǐ le.**

When the sun appears in the east, it means that a new day is beginning. [**tàiyang**, “sun”]

Zhèige shíhou, qiánmian chūxiàn yìtiáo dà hé, shì wǒ méi xiǎngdàode.

At this moment, a large river appeared up ahead, something I had not expected.

**jiēji**: “(social) class” In the PRC, this word enters into many special phrases such as **jiēji jiàoyù**, “class education” (which consists of recounting the difficult past to schoolchildren and younger workers).

Shìjièshang méiyǒu yíge méiyǒu jiējide shèhuì.

There is no society in the world which is without classes.

**yánzhòng**: “to be serious, to be grave”

Zhèige qíngkuàng xiāngdāng yánzhòng.

This situation is quite serious.

Zhōngguó yǒu yánzhòngde rénkǒu wèntí.

China has a serious population problem.

Zhèige wèntí bú shì yánzhòng dào yíding yào qǐng língdǎo lái juéding.

This problem is not so serious that we have to ask our leader to decide it.

Nǐ hái méi kànchū zhèige wèntíde yánzhòngxíng.

You still haven't discerned the seriousness of this problem.

**-jí**: “level, rank, stage, grade, degree”

Zhèi yíjī língdǎo hái bù néng juéding zěnméi bàn, nǐ děi zhǎo shàngjí língdǎo.

This level leader cannot decide what to do. You must go to an upper-level leader.

Gānbu yígòng yǒu èrshiliù jí, shíjī yǐshàngde kényi kàn yìzhǒng pǔtōng rén kànbudàode bàozhǐ.

Altogether, there are twenty-six grades of cadres. Those above grade ten may read a newspaper that ordinary people cannot read. (The **Cānkǎo Zīliào**, “Reference Materials”)

Nǐ zhè xié zhēn gāojí!

These shoes of yours are really classy!

## Notes on №5

**xiànzhì**: “to restrict, to limit” or “restriction, limitation”

Wǒ àiren xiànzhì wǒ měige yuè chōu qíkuài qiándé yān.

My spouse limits me to smoking seven dollars' worth of cigarettes a month.

Wèile xiànzhì rénmínde zìyóu, zhèngfǔ dīnglǚ bù shǎo guānjū.

The government has set up a lot of rules to restrict the people's freedom.

Zài gāosù gōnglùshang, bǎ qìchēde sùdù xiànzhi zài wúshiwǔyīnglǐ yíxià shì bǐjiào héshìde.

It is rather appropriate to limit the speed of cars on the expressway to fifty-five miles an hour.

Yǒu bù shǎo xiànzhi zhēn ràng rén gǎobudǒng wèishénme yào zhème zuò.

There are many restrictions that leave one at a loss as to why one has to do it that way.

Yīnwèi shíjiánde xiànzhi, wǒ méi néng zuòdao wǒ kéyì zuòde nàme hǎo.

Because of time restrictions, I was not able to do as well as I could have.

**Xiànzhi** is often used in the phrase **shòu xiànzhi**, “to be restricted” (literally, “to receive restriction”):

Zài nèige guójiā, wàiguó rén lǚxíng shòudao hěn dà xiànzhi.

in that country, foreigners are very restricted when they travel.

**xiāofèi**: “to consume”

Zhèige gōngchǎng yìtiān xiāofèi duìshǎo méitàn?

How much coal does this factory consume a day?

Yíqián Běijīng jiù shì yíge xiāofèi chéngshì, shénme yě bù shēngchǎn.

Běijīng used to be just a consumer city; it didn't produce a thing.

**Xiāofèizhě** is a “consumer.”

**dāihuīr**: A Běijīng expression equivalent to **děng yihuīr** in the sense of “in (after) a while”:

Dāihuīr wǒ sòng ni huiqu.

In a little while, I'll take you back.

Wǒ xiànzài xiān qù yǒu diǎnr shì, dāihuīr jiù lái.

Let me first go and take care of something I have to do; I'll be back in a minute.

**yī... jiù...**: “as soon as...” You already know that **jiù** means “then” in the sense of immediately thereafter, e.g.,

Tā shuōwán jiù zǒu le.

He left right after he finished speaking.

When using the adverb **yī**, “as soon as,” **jiù** is often used in the following clause.

Tā yí dào, wǒmen jiù kéyì zǒu le.

We can leave as soon as he gets here.

Tiān yí liàng, tā jiù qǐlai kāishǐ gōngzuò.

As soon as it gets light out, he gets up and starts to work.

Wǒ yí kàn jiù míngbai le.

I understood as soon as I looked at it (OR read it).

Tā yí tīng zhèjù huà jiù jí le.

He got anxious (upset) as soon as he heard this sentence.

Wǒ yí fāxiàn hùzhào diū le, mǎshàng jiù dào língshìguǎn qù le.

As soon as I discovered that I had lost my passport, I immediately went to the consulate.

Tā zěnmē yí qù jiù shì bàntiān?

What's taking him so long?

Sometimes **yī... jiù...** is used in the sense of “every time,” or “whenever” (i.e., once certain conditions come about, something is sure to happen):

Wǒ duì zhède lù hái bù shú, yí bú zhùyì jiù huì zǒucuò.

I'm still not very familiar with the roads here. I go the wrong way whenever I'm not paying attention.

Píngcháng tā hěn máng, kěshi yí dào Xīngqītiān, tā jiù yào kāi chē chūqu wánr.

Usually he is very busy, but when Sunday comes he always goes out in his car to have fun.

Wǒ yí hē jiǔ jiù tóu yūn.

I get dizzy whenever I drink.

Tā měici yí yǒu wèntí jiù xiǎngdào wǒ, méi wèntíde shíhou cónglái jí bú izhe wǒ.

He thinks of me whenever he has a problem, but never remembers me when he doesn't have any problems.

**Yī** is sometimes used without **jiù** in a following clause, as in

Wǒ gāng yí tīng hǎoxiàng bú duì, hòulái yí xiǎng, duì le.

When I first heard it, it didn't sound right but then after I thought about it, I realized! it was right.

## Notes on №6

**xiàolù:** “efficiency”

Tāde xuéxí xiàolū hěn gāo, yìtiān néng kàn bù shǎo shū, hái néng jìzhu bù shǎo.

He is very efficient in his studies. He can read a lot in one day and can remember a great deal too.

Wèile tígāo shíjiān xiàolǜ, wǒmen bìxū jízhong lìliàng.

We must pool our forces in order to increase our efficiency. (Shíjiān xiàolǜ just means efficiency within a certain period of time.)

cái; You have seen cái meaning “only when, not until” (Tā míngtiān cái dào, “He isn’t coming until tomorrow”) and meaning “only in that case, not unless” (Zhèiyàng Zhōngguó wénhuà cái néng bǎochíxiàqù, “Only in this way can Chinese culture be preserved”). In sentence 6A, the necessary condition is gōngzuò xiàolǜ gāo. Since cái is an adverb, it must always precede the verb (here, néng), whereas in English, “only” precedes whatever it refers to (here, the noun phrase “workers with high efficiency”).

### Notes on №7

huānsòng: Literally, “joyously send off,” this is a formal word for “to give someone a send-off.” The ordinary word is just sòng.

dàibiǎo: “to represent, to stand for or a ”representative, delegate”

Wǒmen bù néng dōu qù. Nǐ dàibiǎo, hǎo bu hǎo?

We can’t all go. Why don’t you stand in, okay?

Nǐ dàibiǎo shéi?

Whom do you represent?

Tā dàibiǎo tā gōngsī qù cānjiā nèige jiāoyìhuì.

He went to the trade fair representing his company.

As a prepositional verb dàibiǎo can be translated as “on behalf of” or “in the name of”:

Wǒ dàibiǎo Lǚxíngshède tóngzhì xièxie nǐ.

I thank you on behalf of the comrades at the China Travel Service.

### Notes on №8

hǎiyùn tiáoyuē: “sea transportation treaty” The word tiáoyuē. “treaty,” “pact,” is used loosely here, for it was technically an “agreement” (xiédìng) which was signed between the U.S. and China on September 17, 1980. The maritime transport agreement stipulates that the U.S. open all its ports to China and China open specified ports to the U.S. (some Chinese ports do not have sufficient facilities). One third of the commercial shipping is to be handled by Chinese or American vessels.

guīmó: “scope, scale”

Zhèige gōngchǎngde guīmó bù xiǎo, jiù shì jìshù lìliang tài ruò le.

The scope of this factory is quite large, it's just that its technical capability is too weak.

Zhōngguó dà guīmóde gài gōngyù dàlóu, zhèijǐnián háishi dìyíci.

It is only in the past few years that China has started to build high-rise apartment buildings on a large scale.

### Notes on №9

**xiāoxi**: “news” This has a few meanings:

1. “news” between people— “tidings”;
2. “news” reported in a newspaper, news periodical, or newscast (this meaning is shared in common with **xīnwén**);
3. “information” in the sense of “intelligence,” “news” about someone or something (e.g., “Is this information reliable?”).

Yǒu shénme xiāoxi?

What information is there?

Wǒ gàosu nǐ ge hǎo xiāoxi!

Let me give you some good news!

Hěn cháng shíjiān méiyǒu tāde xiāoxi le.

We haven’t heard from him (OR about him) for a long time.

**qiānwàn**: “under any circumstances; by no means; be sure”

Qiānwàn yào xiǎoxīn, tiān hēi le, lù bu hǎo zǒu.

Be sure to be careful. It’s dark out, so it’s difficult to travel.

Nǐ dào le yǐhòu qiānwàn lái ge diànhuà.

When you arrive, be sure to call.

Qiānwàn bú yào wàngjǐ bǎ nèiběn shū dàilái, wǒ míngtiān yào yòng.

Make sure you don’t forget to bring that book; I need it for tomorrow.

Zhèijàn shì, qiānwàn bù néng ràng tā zhīdao.

He must absolutely not find out about this.

### Notes on №10

**shèbèi**: “equipment; facilities; installation”

Yǒude chǎng suīrán shèbèi hěn hǎo, dànshi shēngchǎn háishi gǎobuhǎo.



In some factories, although the equipment is very good, production is still poor.

Cóng Déguō jīnkǒude zhèixiē shèbèi dàbùfen shì yīxué fāngmiǎnde.

Most of this equipment imported from Germany is for use in medicine.

Zhèige gōngyùde shèbèi bǐ zhè fūjīnde biéde gōngyù dōu hǎo.

The facilities in this apartment building are better than those of any other in the area.

jízhōng: “to concentrate; to centralize; to put together”

Bǎ lìliàng jízhōng zài xué Zhōngwénshàng shì bù xíngde, yīnwei hái yǒu xǔduō biéde shì yào zuò.

It won't do to concentrate all your effort on studying Chinese, because you have many other things to do.

Zhèipiān wénzhāng jízhōngle jǐge rénde kànfā, suóyì kànqilai hěn yǒu yìsi.

This article assembles the opinions of several people, so it is very interesting to read.

Zài rénkǒu jízhōngde dà chéngshì zhù hěn yǒu yìsi.

It is very interesting to live in a big city with a concentrated population.

Wǎnhuìshàng xūyàode dòngxi dòu yào jízhōng fānghǎode.

The things that will be needed at the evening party should all be put together in one place.

Zhèixiē dōngxi fàng zài zhèlǐ jízhōng xié bù hǎo ma?

Wouldn't it be better to put those things here, all together in one place?

## Notes on №11

Zhōng-Měi liǎngguó: “China and America, the two countries” This is a formal way of saying Zhōngguò hé Měiguò.

hézuò: “together-do,” i.e., “to cooperate”

Wǒmen děi hézuò zhèijiàn shì cái néng bànde hǎo.

We must work together on this if we are to do it well.

Tā bú yào gēn wǒ hézuò.

He doesn't want to cooperate with me.

Xiànzài Zhōngguò hé wàiguó shāngrende hézuò yuè lái yuè duō le.

China is having more and more cooperation with foreign merchants.

Hé- can also be used before other one-syllable verbs for example,

Zhèiběn shì wǒmen héxiède.

We wrote this book together.

**dìng**: “to agree on; to draw up (a plan); to conclude (a treaty)”

Zánmen dìng ge xuéxí jihuà ba! Zhèiyang xiàqu, shénme yě xuébudào.

Let's put together a study plan! We won't learn a thing if we keep on like this.

Yībǎiduōnián qián, Qīngcháo zhèngfǔ hé wàiguò dìng-  
le bù shǎo duì Zhōngguó hěn bù hǎode tiáoyuē.

More than a century ago, the Qīng Dynasty government concluded many treaties with foreign countries that were very bad for China.

**yùn**: “to carry, to transport”

Tā qù Zhōngguóde shíhou bǎ tāde qìchē yě yùnyuē le.

When he went to China, he shipped his car over too.

Zhèixiē dōngxì fēicháng zhòng, yùnyuē lái bù fānghian.

These things are extremely heavy, and are difficult to transport.

Zhème duō dōngxì, hǎiyùn bǐ kōngyùn piányide duō.

With -so many things, it would be much cheaper to ship them by sea than by air.

---

# Chapter 9. Module 9:

## Introduction

Welcome to the Foreign Service Institute - Standard Chinese: A Modular Approach Life in China Module page.

Module 9 of the course does not have an accompanying workbook, as it was never developed. Here you will find the reference lists for the individual units along with the Chinese translations. I did not transcribe the reference lists in Pinyin, though this is very easy to do if you wish. Apologies for any inaccuracies in the transcriptions.

Module 9 should be fairly easy to do if you've finished Module 8. Some of the content is quite outdated but the vocabulary is quite helpful. There is a very little bit of overlap with the Personal Welfare and Marriage, Birth and Death Optional Modules, so that you can find the helpful explanatory notes for some of the vocabulary.

I (Eric Streit) added a vocabulary section which contains all the words included in the frames.

# Unit 1

## Vocabulary

nǐmen	你们	you
fēngshèng	丰盛	rich
dìqū	地区	area
yě	也	also
yǒu	有	Have
jiēdào	街道	street
jiēdàobàn	街道办	Street Office
bànshì	办事	work
bànshìchù	办事处	office
ba	吧	Bar
yǒu	有	Have
lí	离	Leave
wǒmen	我们	us
jiā	家	Family
bùyuǎn	不远	not far
nǐmen	你们	you
jiēdào	街道	street
jiēdàobàn	街道办	Street Office
bànshì	办事	work
bànshìchù	办事处	office
de	的	of
fùzé	负责	Responsible
fùzérén	负责人	principal
zérén	责人	responsible person
shì	是	Yes
shuí	谁	Who
shì	是	Yes
liú	刘	Liu
kāi	开	open

lán	兰	orchid
dàjiā	大家	Everyone
jiào	叫	Call
tā	她	she
liúdàjiě	刘大姐	Miss Liu
dàjiě	大姐	big sister
měigè	每个	each
jiēdào	街道	street
jiēdàobàn	街道办	Street Office
bànshì	办事	work
bànshìchù	办事处	office
dōu	都	All
lǐngdǎo	领导	lead
jǐgè	几个	several
fúwù	服务	Serve
fúwùzhàn	服务站	Service station
ma	吗	do you
shì	是	Yes
de	的	of
chúle	除了	Apart from
xǔduō	许多	many
pǔtōng	普通	usually
de	的	of
fúwù	服务	Serve
fúwùzhàn	服务站	Service station
yǐwài	以外	apart from
wǒmen	我们	us
háiyǒu	还有	and also
yíge	一个	One
jīxiè	机械	mechanical
xǐyī	洗衣	laundry
zhàn	站	stand
jīxiè	机械	mechanical
xǐyī	洗衣	laundry

zhàn	站	stand
bāngzhù	帮助	help
jūmín	居民	resident
xǐyī	洗衣	laundry
xǐyīfú	洗衣服	do the laundry
yīfú	衣服	clothing
shìbúshì	是不是	is not it
búshì	不是	no
chúle	除了	Apart from
bāngzhù	帮助	help
jūmín	居民	resident
yǐwài	以外	apart from
tāmen	它们	they
hái	还	return
chángcháng	常常	Frequent
bāngzhù	帮助	help
bùduì	部队	force
xǐ	洗	wash
bèizi	被子	Quilt
jiēdào	街道	street
jiēdàobàn	街道办	Street Office
bànshì	办事	work
bànshìchù	办事处	office
hé	和	and
guójiā	国家	nation
shēngchǎn	生产	Production
jìhuà	计划	plan
méiyǒu	没有	No
yǒuguān	有关	related
guānxi	关系	relation
ba	吧	Bar
nǐ	你	you
shuōdéduì	说得对	Yes
kěshì	可是	But

fúwù	服务	Serve
fúwùzhàn	服务站	Service station
kěyǐ	可以	Can
yǐwéi	以为	Think
qúnzhòng	群众	the masses
zhòngshēng	众生	sentient beings
shēnghuó	生活	Life
fúwù	服务	Serve
qúnzhòng	群众	the masses
hěn	很	very
huānyíng	欢迎	welcome
jūmín	居民	resident
jūmínwěi	居民委	residents committee
mínwěi	民委	Ethnic Affairs Commission
wěiyuán	委员	committee
wěiyuánhui	委员会	committee
shìbúshì	是不是	is not it
búshì	不是	no
jīcéng	基层	grassroots
de	的	of
zhèngfǔ	政府	government
jīguān	机关	organ
bù	不	Do not
jiēdào	街道	street
jiēdàobàn	街道办	Street Office
bànshì	办事	work
bànshìchù	办事处	office
cái	才	talent
shì	是	Yes
jīcéng	基层	grassroots
de	的	of
zhèngfǔ	政府	government
jīguān	机关	organ
jūmín	居民	resident

jūmínwěi	居民委	residents committee
mínwěi	民委	Ethnic Affairs Commission
wěiyuán	委员	committee
wěiyuánhui	委员会	committee
shòu	受	by
jiēdào	街道	street
jiēdàobàn	街道办	Street Office
bànshì	办事	work
bànshìchù	办事处	office
de	的	of
lǐngdǎo	领导	lead
jiāting	家庭	family
jiātingfùnǚ	家庭妇女	housewife
fùnǚ	妇女	women
cānjiā	参加	Participation
zhèngzhì	政治	politics
zhèngzhìxué	政治学	politics
zhìxué	治学	study
xuéxí	学习	study
yě	也	also
shì	是	Yes
jūmín	居民	resident
jūmínwěi	居民委	residents committee
mínwěi	民委	Ethnic Affairs Commission
wěiyuán	委员	committee
wěiyuánhui	委员会	committee
fùzé	负责	Responsible
ma	吗	do you
shì	是	Yes
de	的	of
jūmín	居民	resident
jūmínwěi	居民委	residents committee
mínwěi	民委	Ethnic Affairs Commission
wěiyuán	委员	committee



wěiyuánhùi	委员会	committee
zǔzhī	组织	organize
jiāting	家庭	family
jiātingfùnǚ	家庭妇女	housewife
fùnǚ	妇女	women
cānjiā	参加	Participation
xuéxí	学习	study
jùshuō	据说	it is said
jiēdào	街道	street
hé	和	and
xuéxiào	学校	School
yě	也	also
yǒuguān	有关	related
guānxi	关系	relation
yǒu	有	Have
wǒmen	我们	us
chángcháng	常常	Frequent
cānjiā	参加	Participation
xuéxiào	学校	School
de	的	of
huódòng	活动	Activity
nǐ	你	you
rúguǒ	如果	if
xiǎng	想	think
tuìxiū	退休	retire
yīnggāi	应该	should
zěnmē	怎么	how
zěnmēbàn	怎么办	How to do
yīnggāi	应该	should
hé	和	and
gōngzuò	工作	Work
dānwèi	单位	unit
tányītán	谈一谈	talk about
zhèxiē	这些	These

shìqíng	事情	matter
dōu	都	All
shì	是	Yes
gōngzuò	工作	Work
dānwèi	单位	unit
guǎn	管	Tube
jùshuō	据说	it is said
rénmen	人们	people
zài	在	exist
shénme	什么	what
bànshì	办事	work
bànshìchù	办事处	office
lǐngtuì	领退	withdraw
tuìxiū	退休	retire
tuìxiūjīn	退休金	pension
duì	对	right
yào	要	want
zài	在	exist
jiēdào	街道	street
jiēdàobàn	街道办	Street Office
bànshì	办事	work
bànshìchù	办事处	office
lǐngtuì	领退	withdraw
tuìxiū	退休	retire
tuìxiūjīn	退休金	pension
míngtiān	明天	tomorrow
nǐ	你	you
yǒu	有	Have
shénme	什么	what
shìer	事儿	thing
ma	吗	do you
míngtiān	明天	tomorrow
shì	是	Yes
bāyuè	八月	August

yīhào	一号	number one
wǒmen	我们	us
yào	要	want
qù	去	go
wèiwèn	慰问	condolences
jūnshǔ	军属	military
lièshǔ	烈属	martyr
nǐ	你	you
jiēdào	接到	received
tōngzhī	通知	Notice
méiyǒu	没有	No
shìbúshì	是不是	is not it
búshì	不是	no
zuìjìn	最近	Recently
xuéxiào	学校	School
yào	要	want
kāi	开	open
jiāzhǎng	家长	parents
jiāzhǎnghuì	家长会	parent meeting
shì	是	Yes
a	啊	what
hǎoxiàng	好像	like
xiàngshì	像是	like
xiàgèxīngqī	下个星期	next week
xīngqī	星期	Week
xīngqīyī	星期一	Monday
yīxià	一下	a bit
xiàwǔ	下午	afternoon
wǔdiǎn	五点	five o'clock

## Frames

- 1 nǐ men fēng shèng dì qū yě yǒu jiē dào bàn shì chù ba .  
你们丰盛地区也有街道办事处吧。  
Your Fengsheng area has a street office too, doesn't it?  
yǒu # lí wǒ men jiā bù yuǎn #  
有，离我们家不远。  
Yes, it's not far from our home.
- 2 nǐ men jiē dào bàn shì chù de fù zé rén shì shuí #  
你们街道办事处的负责人是谁？  
Who's the person in charge of your street office?  
shì liú kāi lán # dà jiā jiào tā liú dà jiě #  
是刘开兰。大家叫她刘大姐。  
Liu Kailan. Everyone calls her older sister Liu.
- 3 měi gè jiē dào bàn shì chù dōu lǐng dǎo jǐ gè fú wù zhàn ma #  
每个街道办事处都领导几个服务站吗？  
Does every street office manage several street units?  
shì de # chú le xǔ duō pǔ tōng de fú wù zhàn yǐ wài # wǒ men hái yǒu yí gè jī xiè xǐ yī zhàn #  
是的。除了许多普通的服务站以外，我们还有一个机械洗衣站。  
Yes. In addition to many ordinary service units, we also have an automated laundry.
- 4 jī xiè xǐ yī zhàn bāng zhù jū mín xǐ yī fú # shì bú shì #  
机械洗衣站帮助居民洗衣服，是不是？  
Automated laundries help the residents in washing clothes don't they?  
chú le bāng zhù jū mín yǐ wài # tā men hái cháng cháng bāng zhù bù duì xǐ bèi zi #  
除了帮助居民以外，它们还常常帮助部队洗被子。  
In addition to aiding the residents, they also often wash quilts for the troops.
- 5 jiē dào bàn shì chù hé guó jiā shēng chǎn jì huà méi yǒu guān xì ba #  
街道办事处和国家生产计划没有关系吧？  
There's no connection between street service units and the national production plan is there?  
nǐ shuō dé duì # kě shì fú wù zhàn kě yǐ wèi qún zhòng shēng huó fú wù # qún zhòng hěn huān yíng #  
你说得对，可是服务站可以为群众生活服务，群众很欢迎。  
No, but the street service units serve the masses in their daily lives, so the masses welcome them.
- 6 jū mín wěi yuán huì shì bú shì jī céng de zhèng fǔ jī guān #  
居民委员会是不是基层的政府机关？

Are the neighbourhood committees grassroots organisations working for the government?

bù # jiē dào bàn shì chù cái shì jī céng de zhèng fǔ jī guān # jū mín wěi yuán huì shòu jiē dào bàn shì chù de lǐng dǎo #

不，街道办事处才是基层的政府机关。居民委员会受街道办事处的领导。

No, it's the street offices that are the grassroots organisation of the government. The neighbourhood committees are under the management of the street offices.

7 jiā tíng fù nǚ cān jiā zhèng zhì xué xí yě shì jū mín wěi yuán huì fù zé ma #

家庭妇女参加政治学习也是居民委员会负责吗？

Are the neighbourhood committees also in charge of the participation of housewives in political study?

shì de # jū mín wěi yuán huì zǔ zhī jiā tíng fù nǚ cān jiā xué xí #

是的。居民委员会组织家庭妇女参加学习。

Yes, neighbourhood committees organise housewives to participate in study.

8 jù shuō jiē dào hé xué xiào yě yǒu guān xi #

据说街道和学校也有关系。

I understand that street offices are also connected with the schools.

yǒu # wǒ men cháng cháng cān jiā xué xiào de huó dòng #

有，我们常常参加学校的活动。

Yes, we often take part in school activities.

9 nǐ rú guǒ xiǎng tuì xiū yīng gāi zěn me bàn #

你如果想退休应该怎么办？

What should you do if you want to retire?.

yīng gāi hé gōng zuò dān wèi tán yī tán # zhè xiē shì qing dōu shì gōng zuò dān wèi guǎn #

应该和工作单位谈一谈。这些事情都是工作单位管。

You should talk with your work unit. These things are all taken care of by your work unit.

10 jù shuō rén men zài shén me bàn shì chù lǐng tuì xiū jīn #

据说人们在什么办事处领退休金。

I understand that people collect their pensions of some kind of office.

duì # yào zài jiē dào bàn shì chù lǐng tuì xiū jīn #

对，要在街道办事处领退休金。

That's right; you have to collect it at the street office.

11 míng tiān nǐ yǒu shén me shì ér ma #

明天你有什么事儿吗？

Do you have something to do tomorrow?

míng tiān shì bā yuè yī hào # wǒ men yào qù wèi wèn jūn shǔ liè shǔ #

明天是八月一号。我们要去慰问军属烈属。

Tomorrow is August 1st, we're going to go visit and cheer up military dependants and families members of revolutionary martyrs.

12 nǐ jiē dào tōng zhī méi yǒu # shì bú shì zuì jìn xué xiào yào kāi jiā zhǎng huì #

你接到通知没有？是不是最近学校要开家长会？

Did you receive notification? Doesn't the school want to have a parents meeting soon?

shì a # hǎo xiàng shì xià gè xīng qī yī xià wǔ wǔ diǎn #

是啊，好像是下个星期一下午五点。

Yes, it seems to me that it's next Monday at 5 in the afternoon.

## Unit 2

### Vocabulary

nǐ	你	you
tīng	听	listen
bàndǎo	半导	semiconductor
bàndǎotǐ	半导体	semiconductor
dǎotǐ	导体	conductor
shōuyīn	收音	radio
shōuyīnjī	收音机	radio
lǐ	里	inside
yòu	又	again
zài	在	exist
jiǎngdào	讲到	Speaking of
àiguó	爱国	patriotic
àiguówèishēng	爱国卫生	patriotic hygiene
wèishēng	卫生	health
yùndòng	运动	sports
le	了	span
duì	对	right
cháng	常	often
gǎo	搞	engage
wèishēng	卫生	health
shēngjiù	生就	born
jiùshì	就是	that is
hǎo	好	it is good
shì	是	Yes
yīnggāi	应该	should
duō	多	many
xuānchuán	宣传	publicity
zhèngfǔ	政府	government
shìbúshì	是不是	is not it

búshì	不是	no
hàozhào	号召	call
zhàorén	召人	call people
rénmín	人民	people
xiāomiè	消灭	wipe out
cāngyíng	苍蝇	fly
wénzi	蚊子	Mosquito
hé	和	and
lǎoshǔ	老鼠	mouse
duì	对	right
zhè	这	This
shì	是	Yes
àiguó	爱国	patriotic
àiguówèishēng	爱国卫生	patriotic hygiene
wèishēng	卫生	health
yùndòng	运动	sports
de	的	of
zhòngyào	重要	important
fāngmiàn	方面	aspect
jiěfàng	解放	liberation
jiěfàngqián	解放前	Before liberation
dào	到	arrive
zhōngguó	中国	China
láikàn	来看	come to see
kànkàn	看看	have a look
dàochù	到处	everywhere
dōu	都	All
hěnzāng	很脏	very dirty
dànshì	但是	but
xiànzài	现在	Now
bùyī	不一	different
yīyàng	一样	Same
le	了	span
bùshǎo	不少	quite a few



dìfāng	地方	place
dōu	都	All
hěn	很	very
gānjìng	干净	clean
zhè	这	This
jiùshì	就是	that is
zhèngfǔ	政府	government
hé	和	and
rénmín	人民	people
dà	大	Big
gǎo	搞	engage
wèishēng	卫生	health
de	的	of
chéngjì	成绩	score
a	啊	what
nǐ	你	you
bǎ	把	Bundle
nà	那	That
bāo	包	Bag
yào	药	medicine
cáng	藏	Tibetan
zài	在	exist
nǎér	哪儿	where
le	了	span
wǒ	我	I
zěnmē	怎么	how
zhǎo	找	Find
bú dào	不到	less than
nǐ	你	you
jìn wū	进屋	enter the house
qù	去	go
kàn kàn	看看	have a look
,	,	,
dà gài	大概	perhaps

jiù	就	At once
zài	在	exist
zhuōzi	桌子	table
shàng	上	superior
zài	在	exist
diǎnzháo	点着	lit
xīn	新	new
wénzi	蚊子	Mosquito
yào	药	medicine
yǐqián	以前	before
yīnggāi	应该	should
xiān	先	First
zuò	做	Do
shénme	什么	what
yīnggāi	应该	should
xiān	先	First
bǎ	把	Bundle
chuānghù	窗户	window
hé	和	and
mén	门	Door
dōu	都	All
guānshàng	关上	close
nǐ	你	you
měitiān	每天	every day
zǎochén	早晨	morning
dōu	都	All
huódòng	活动	Activity
yīhuì	一会	a while
yīhuìr	一会儿	a while
huìr	会儿	a while
ma	吗	do you
duìle	对了	correct
zǎochén	早晨	morning
kōngqì	空气	Air

xīnxiān	新鲜	Fresh
zài	在	exist
yángtái	阳台	balcony
táishàng	台上	on stage
zhàn	站	stand
yīhuì	一会	a while
yīhuier	一会儿	a while
huier	会儿	a while
duì	对	right
shēntǐ	身体	Body
hěn	很	very
yǒu	有	Have
hǎochù	好处	benefit
jīntiān	今天	today
nǐmen	你们	you
jiēdào	街道	street
yòu	又	again
gǎo	搞	engage
dàsǎochú	大扫除	clean up
sǎochú	扫除	remove
chúle	除了	Apart from
shì	是	Yes
a	啊	what
wǒmen	我们	us
jiēdào	街道	street
jūmín	居民	resident
gǎnxiǎngǎngàn	敢想敢干	dare to think
ǎngàn	敢干	dare
yíding	一定	must
dìngyào	定要	must
bǎ	把	Bundle
wǒmen	我们	us
zhèr	这儿	here
gǎo	搞	engage

de	的	of
xiàng	像	picture
xiānjìn	先进	advanced
jiēdào	街道	street
yīyàng	一样	Same
gānjìng	干净	clean
jīntiān	今天	today
jīntiānshàngwǔ	今天上午	This morning
tiānshàng	天上	heaven
shàngwǔ	上午	morning
běijīng	北京	Beijing
běijīngjiētóu	北京街头	Beijing street
jiētóu	街头	street
hǎoduō	好多	many
dìfāng	地方	place
yǒurén	有人	someone
yòng	用	use
guǎngbō	广播	broadcast
tong2	tong2	tong2
jiǎnghuà	讲话	speech
tāmen	他们	them
zài	在	exist
zuò	做	Do
shénme	什么	what
tāmen	他们	them
zài	在	exist
xuānchuán	宣传	publicity
jiāotōng	交通	transportation
jiāotōngguīzé	交通规则	traffic rules
guīzé	规则	rule
zài	在	exist
gǎo	搞	engage
wèishēng	卫生	health
de	的	of

shíhòu	时候	when
rúguǒ	如果	if
qúnzhòng	群众	the masses
yǒu	有	Have
yíge	一个	One
hǎobàn	好办	easy to handle
bànfǎ	办法	Method
néng	能	can
bùnéng	不能	cannot
hé	和	and
gé	革	leather
wèi	位	bit
huìtán	会谈	talks
tányītán	谈一谈	talk about
dāngrán	当然	certainly
kěyǐ	可以	Can
qúnzhòng	群众	the masses
bùjǐn	不仅	not only
cānjiā	参加	Participation
jiēdào	街道	street
suǒyǒu	所有	all
de	的	of
huódòng	活动	Activity
érqiě	而且	and
jīngcháng	经常	often
bāngzhù	帮助	help
wǒmen	我们	us
xiǎng	想	think
bànfǎ	办法	Method
zuòhǎo	做好	do well
gèxiàng	各项	various
gōngzuò	工作	Work
niánjì	年纪	age
jìdà	纪大	Ji Da

de	的	of
rén	人	people
shǐyòng	使用	use
zhèzhǒng	这种	this
yào	药	medicine
yǒuméiyǒu	有没有	Do you have
méiyǒu	没有	No
yǒuguān	有关	related
guānxi	关系	relation
méiyǒu	没有	No
yǒuguān	有关	related
guānxi	关系	relation
qǐng	请	Please
kàn	看	Look
shuōmíng	说明	illustrate
shuōmíngshū	说明书	manual
nǐ	你	you
juéde	觉得	feel
zhè	这	This
zhōng	钟	bell
xūn	熏	smoke
wénzi	蚊子	Mosquito
de	的	of
bànfǎ	办法	Method
zěnmē	怎么	how
zěnmeyàng	怎么样	How about it
zhè	这	This
zhōng	钟	bell
bànfǎ	办法	Method
hěn	很	very
hǎo	好	it is good
dàjiā	大家	Everyone
tǒngyī	统一	Unite
tǒngyīxíngdòng	统一行动	unified action

yīxíng	一行	one line
xíngdòng	行动	action
chéngjì	成绩	score
zhǔn	准	allow
bùcuò	不错	good

## Frames

- 1 nǐ tīng # bàn dǎo tī shōu yīn jī lǐ yòu zài jiǎng dào ài guó wèi shēng yùn dòng le #  
你听，半导体收音机里又在讲到爱国卫生运动了。  
Listen, they're talking about the patriotic clean-up campaign on the transistor radio.  
duì # cháng gǎo wèi shēng jiù shì hǎo # shì yīng gāi duō xuān chuán #  
对，常搞卫生就是好，是应该多宣传。  
Yes, it's good to have clean-ups often. This should be widely publicised.
- 2 zhèng fǔ shì bú shì hào zhào rén mín xiāo miè cāng yíng # wén zi hé lǎo shǔ #  
政府是不是号召人民消灭苍蝇，蚊子和老鼠？  
Does the government call on the people to exterminate flies, mosquitoes and rats?  
duì # zhè shì ài guó wèi shēng yùn dòng de zhòng yào fāng miàn #  
对，这是爱国卫生运动的重要方面。  
Yes, this is one of the important aspects of the patriotic clean-up campaign.
- 3 jiě fàng qián # dào zhōng guó lái kàn kàn # dào chù dōu hěn zāng #  
解放前，到中国来看看，到处都很脏。  
Before liberation, if you came to china to visit, you would've seen that every place was dirty.  
dàn shì xiàn zài bù yí yàng le # bù shǎo dì fāng dōu hěn gān jìng #  
但是现在不一样了，不少地方都很干净。  
But now it's not the same. Quite a few places are clean.  
这就是政府和人民大搞卫生的成绩啊  
Zhè jiùshì zhèngfǔ hé rénmín dà gǎo wèishēng de chéngjī a  
This is the achievement of the government and the people in doing a large-scale clean-up
- 4 nǐ bǎ nà bāo yào cáng zài nǎ ér le # wǒ zěn me zhǎo bú dào #  
你把那包药藏在哪儿了？我怎么找不到？  
Where did you hide that packet of insecticide? How come I can't find it?  
nǐ jìn wū qù kàn kàn , dà gài jiù zài zhuō zi shàng #  
你进屋去看看,大概就在桌子上。  
Go into the room and look, it's probably right on the table.
- 5 zài diǎn zhāo xīn wén zi yào yǐ qián yīng gāi xiān zuò shén me #  
在点着新蚊子药以前应该先做什么？  
What shall we do before lighting the mosquito insecticide?  
yīng gāi xiān bǎ chuāng hù hé mén dōu guān shàng #  
应该先把窗户和门都关上。  
You should close up all the windows and doors.
- 6 nǐ měi tiān zǎo chén dōu huó dòng yī huì er ma #  
你每天早晨都活动一会儿吗？  
Do you get some exercise every morning?



duì le # zǎo chén kōng qì xīn xiān # zài yáng tái shàng zhàn yī huì er # duì shēn tǐ hěn yǒu hǎo chù #

对了，早晨空气新鲜，在阳台上站一会儿，对身体很有好处。

Yes, in the morning when the air is fresh, it's good for the health to stand on the balcony for a while.

7 jīn tiān nǐ men jiē dào yòu gǎo dà sǎo chú le #

今天你们街道又搞大扫除了。

Is your street committee area doing a full scale clean-up again today?

shì a # wǒ men jiē dào jū mín gǎn xiǎng gǎn gǎn # yí dìng yào bǎ wǒ men zhè er gǎo de xiàng xiān jìn jiē dào yī yàng gān jìng #

是啊，我们街道居民敢想敢干，一定要把我们这儿搞的像先进街道一样干净。

Yes, the residents of our street committee area dare to think and dare to do, they're determined to make our area as clean as an advanced street committee area.

8 jīn tiān shàng wǔ běi jīng jiē tóu hǎo duō dì fāng yǒu rén yòng guǎng bō tōng2 jiǎng huà # tā men zài zuò shén me #

今天上午北京街头好多地方有人用广播tong2讲话。他们在做什么？

This morning, there people in many places on the streets of Peking speaking through megaphones. What were they doing?

tā men zài xuān chuán jiāo tōng guī zé #

他们在宣传交通规则。

They were publicising traffic rules.

9 zài gǎo wèi shēng de shí hòu # rú guǒ qún zhòng yǒu yí gè hǎo bàn fǎ # néng bù néng hé gé wèi huì tán yī tán #

在搞卫生的时候，如果群众有一个好办法，能不能和革位会谈一谈？

When doing the clean-up, if the masses have a good way of doing something, can they talk about it with the revolutionary street committee?

dāng rán kě yǐ # qún zhòng bù jǐn cān jiā jiē dào suǒ yǒu de huó dòng # ér qiě jīng cháng bāng zhù wǒ men xiǎng bàn fǎ zuò hǎo gè xiàng gōng zuò #

当然可以。群众不仅参加街道所有的活动，而且经常帮助我们想办法做好各项工作。

Of course they can, the masses not only take part in all activities, but moreover, they often help us think of ways to take care of various jobs.

10 nián jì dà de rén shǐ yòng zhè zhǒng yào yǒu méi yǒu guān xi #

年纪大的人使用这种药有没有关系？

Does it matter if this medicine is used by older people?

méi yǒu guān xi # qǐng kàn shuō míng shū #

没有关系，请看说明书。

No it doesn't matter, take a look at the instructions.

11 nǐ jué de zhè zhǒng xūn wēng zǐ de bàn fǎ zěn me yàng #

你觉得这种熏蚊子的办法怎么样？

What do you think of this method of fumigating mosquitoes?

zhè zhōng bàn fǎ hěn hǎo # dà jiā tǒng yī xíng dòng chéng jì zhǔn bù cuò #

这种办法很好。大家统一行动成绩准不错。

It's a good method, When everyone acts in unison the results are certain to be good.

## Unit 3

### Vocabulary

zhè	这	This
bàntiān	半天	long time
wǒ	我	I
dàgē	大哥	big brother
dào	到	arrive
nǎér	哪儿	where
qù	去	go
le	了	span
?	?	?
tā	他	he
zhèngzài	正在	is
yángtái	阳台	balcony
táishàng	台上	on stage
shàngchéng	上乘	Superior
chéngliáng	乘凉	enjoy the shade
ne	呢	Woolen cloth
huáshèng	华盛	Huasheng
huáshèngdùn	华盛顿	Washington
de	的	of
diànshì	电视	television
diànshìjié	电视节	TV Festival
diànshìjiémù	电视节目	TV show
jiémù	节目	programme
zěnmē	怎么	how
zěnmeyàng	怎么样	How about it
bǐjiào	比较	Compare
bǐjiàofēngfù	比较丰富	relatively rich
fēngfù	丰富	Rich
tīngshuō	听说	It is said that

lǎowáng	老王	Lao Wang
xǐhuān	喜欢	like
qín	琴	piano
qí	棋	chess
shū	书	Book
huà	画	painting
shìbúshì	是不是	is not it
búshì	不是	no
shì	是	Yes
a	啊	what
tā	他	he
de	的	of
shūfǎ	书法	calligraphy
hěn	很	very
hǎo	好	it is good
hái	还	return
zhǎnlǎn	展览	exhibition
guò	过	Pass
ne	呢	Woolen cloth
zhègè	这个	this
jiàri	假日	holiday
nǐ	你	you
zhǔnbèi	准备	Prepare
qù	去	go
nǎér	哪儿	where
wǒ	我	I
xiǎngdào	想到	think
gōngshè	公社	commune
diànyǐng	电影	Movie
yǐngér	影儿	Shadow
duì	队	team
qù	去	go
kànkàn	看看	have a look
tīngshuō	听说	It is said that

tāmen	他们	them
de	的	of
gōngzuò	工作	Work
gǎo	搞	engage
dé	得	have to
xiāngdāng	相当	quite
dānghǎo	当好	be good
nín	您	you
nǚér	女儿	daughter
de	的	of
yīnyuè	音乐	music
yīnyuèkè	音乐课	music class
chéngjì	成绩	score
hěn	很	very
hǎo	好	it is good
a	啊	what
tā	她	she
de	的	of
chéngjì	成绩	score
shì	是	Yes
bùcuò	不错	good
kěshì	可是	But
tā	她	she
gēnběn	根本	fundamental
bùxiǎng	不想	In no mood
yánjiū	研究	Research
yīnyuè	音乐	music
zhēnshì	真是	really
méibàn	没办	no way
bànfǎ	办法	Method
nǐmen	你们	you
gōngjiān	工间	workshop
xiūxi	休息	rest
de	的	of

shíhòu	时候	when
dàjiā	大家	Everyone
zuò	做	Do
shénme	什么	what
zuò	作	do
de	的	of
gōngjiān	工间	workshop
gōngjiāncāo	工间操	Workplace
duànliàn	锻炼	exercise
duànliàn	锻炼	exercise
duànliànshēntǐ	锻炼身体	Exercise
shēntǐ	身体	Body
jīntiān	今天	today
zhōngwǔ	中午	noon
yǒuxiàn	有线	wired
yǒuxiànguǎngbō	有线广播	cable broadcasting
guǎngbō	广播	broadcast
guǎngbōzhàn	广播站	radio station
guǎngbō	广播	broadcast
de	的	of
nèiróng	内容	content
duōbùduō	多不多	too much
bùduō	不多	not much
bùshǎo	不少	quite a few
tāmen	他们	them
niàn	念	read
le	了	span
hǎojǐ	好几	several
hǎojǐfèn	好几份	several copies
jǐfèn	几份	several copies
fènr	份儿	share
bàozhǐ	报纸	newspaper
měitiān	每天	every day
zǎochén	早晨	morning

nǐ	你	you
dōu	都	All
chūqù	出去	go out
pǎobù	跑步	Run
ma	吗	do you
duìle	对了	correct
chūqù	出去	go out
pǎobù	跑步	Run
dǎ	打	beat
tàijí	太极	Tai Chi
tàijíquán	太极拳	Tai Chi
nǐ	你	you
àirén	爱人	spouse
yě	也	also
shì	是	Yes
gǎo	搞	engage
tǐyù	体育	physical education
de	的	of
ma	吗	do you
shì	是	Yes
de	的	of
tā	他	he
de	的	of
tǐcāo	体操	Gymnastics
shízài	实在	really
bùcuò	不错	good
tā	她	she
chúle	除了	Apart from
cānjiā	参加	Participation
jiāyǎn	加演	encore
yǎnchū	演出	show
yǎnchūduì	演出队	performance team
de	的	of
huódòng	活动	Activity

yǐwài	以外	apart from
yèyú	业余	amateur
yèyúshíjiān	业余时间	spare time
shíjiān	时间	time
hái	还	return
zuò	作	do
shénme	什么	what
tā	她	she
xǐhuān	喜欢	like
tǐyù	体育	physical education
huódòng	活动	Activity
yóuqí	尤其	especially
shì	是	Yes
ài	爱	Love
dǎ	打	beat
yǔmáo	羽毛	feather
yǔmáoqiú	羽毛球	badminton
qiúér	球儿	ball
wǒ	我	I
xiǎng	想	think
cānjiā	参加	Participation
shūfǎ	书法	calligraphy
yánjiū	研究	Research
yánjiūhuì	研究会	Research
xíngbùxíng	行不行	Ok
bùxíng	不行	no
zhèxiē	这些	These
yánjiū	研究	Research
yánjiūhuì	研究会	Research
shì	是	Yes
rénmín	人民	people
wénhuà	文化	culture
huàshēng	化生	metaplasia
shēnghuó	生活	Life



---

de	的	of
yībù	一部	one
yībùfèn	一部分	part
bùfèn	部分	part
dōu	都	All
shì	是	Yes
zìyuàn	自愿	Volunteer
cānjiā	参加	Participation
de	的	of

## Frames

- 1      zhè bàn tiān wǒ dà gē dào nǎ ér qù le ?  
这半天我大哥到哪儿去了？  
Where has older brother been all this time?  
tā zhèng zài yáng tái shàng chéng liáng ne #  
他正在阳台上乘凉呢。  
He's cooling off on the balcony.
- 2      huá shèng dùn de diàn shì jìé mù zěn me yàng #  
华盛顿的电视节目怎么样？  
What are Washington television programs like?  
bǐ jiào fēng fù #  
比较丰富。  
There's quite a variety.
- 3      tīng shuō lǎo wáng xǐ huān qín # qí # shū # huà # shì bú shì #  
听说老王喜欢琴，棋，书，画，是不是？  
I hear that Lao Wang likes music, chess, calligraphy and painting, doesn't he?  
shì a # tā de shū fǎ hěn hǎo # hái zhǎn lǎn guò ne #  
是啊，他的书法很好，还展览过呢。  
Yes, his calligraphy is very good, he's even exhibited.
- 4      zhè gè jià rì nǐ zhǔn bèi qù nǎ ér #  
这个假日你准备去哪儿？  
Where are you planning to go for this holiday?  
wǒ xiǎng dào gōng shè diàn yǐng ér duì qù kàn kàn #  
我想到公社电影儿队去看看。  
I'm thinking of going to the commune's movie team to take a look.  
Tīng shuō tāmen de gōngzuò gǎo dé xiāngdāng hǎo  
听说他们的工作搞得相当好  
I've heard that their work is quite good
- 5      nín nǚ ér de yīn yuè kè chéng jì hěn hǎo a #  
您女儿的音乐课成绩很好啊。  
Your daughter's music class grades are really good.  
tā de chéng jì shì bù cuò # kě shì tā gēn běn bù xiǎng yán jiū yīn yuè # zhēn shì méi bàn fǎ #  
她的成绩是不错，可是她根本不想研究音乐，真是没办法。  
Her grades are pretty good, but she just doesn't want to study music, there's just nothing I can do about it.
- 6      nǐ men gōng jiān xiū xi de shí hòu # dà jiā zuò shén me #  
你们工间休息的时候，大家做什么？  
What do you all do when you take your break at work?

zuò de gōng jiān cāo duàn liàn duàn liàn shēn tǐ #

作的工间操锻炼锻炼身体。

We do some break-time calisthenics to get in shape.

7 jīn tiān zhōng wǔ yǒu xiàn guǎng bō zhàn guǎng bō de nèi róng duō bù duō #

今天中午有线广播站广播的内容多不多。

Did the local broadcasting network broadcast a lot of material today at noon?

bù shǎo # tā men niàn le hǎo jǐ fēn ér bào zhǐ #

不少，他们念了好几份儿报纸。

Yes, they read a whole lot of newspapers.

8 měi tiān zǎo chén nǐ dōu chū qù pǎo bù ma #

每天早晨你都出去跑步吗？

Do you go out to run every morning?

duì le # chū qù pǎo bù dǎ tài jí quán #

对了，出去跑步打太极拳。

Yes, I go out to run and to do Tai-Qi.

Huílái de shíhòu, shùnbìan dào cài shìchǎng mǎi cài

回来的时候，顺便到菜市场买菜

And on the way back, I stop at the market to buy groceries

9 nǐ ài rén yě shì gǎo tǐ yù de ma #

你爱人也是搞体育的吗？

Does your spouse do sports too?

shì de # tā de tǐ cāo shí zài bù cuò #

是的，他的体操实在不错。

Yes, he's really pretty good at calisthenics.

10 tā chú le cān jiā yǎn chū duì de huó dòng yǐ wài # yè yú shí jiān hái zuò shén me #

她除了参加演出队的活动以外，业余时间还作什么？

What does she do in her time after work, in addition to taking part in the activities of the performing arts group?

tā xǐ huān tǐ yù huó dòng # yóu qí shì ài dǎ yǔ máo qiú ér #

她喜欢体育活动，尤其是爱打羽毛球儿。

She likes sports activities. She especially loves to play badminton.

11 wǒ xiǎng cān jiā shū fǎ yán jiū huì # xíng bù xíng #

我想参加书法研究会，行不行？

I'd like to take part in a calligraphy study group, would that be alright?

zhè xiē yán jiū huì shì rén mín wén huà shēng huó de yī bù fèn # dōu shì zì yuàn cān jiā de #

这些研究会是人民文化生活的一部分，都是自愿参加的。

These study groups are one part of the cultural life of the people, they are all voluntary.

Zhèxiē yánjiū huì shì rénmín wénhuà shēnghuó de yībùfèn, dōu shì zìyuàn cānjiā de

这些研究会是人民文化生活的一部分，都是自愿参加的

This weekend I can go with you.

## Unit 4

## Vocabulary

yíge	一个	One
gāozhōng	高中	high school
gāozhōngxuéshēng	高中学生	High school student
zhōngxué	中学	middle school
zhōngxuéshēng	中学生	Middle school students
xuéshēng	学生	student
kàn	看	Look
běijīng	北京	Beijing
de	的	of
diànshì	电视	television
diànshìjiàoxué	电视教学	TV teaching
jiàoxué	教学	teaching
jiémù	节目	programme
néng	能	can
bùnéng	不能	cannot
néngkàndǒng	能看懂	Can understand
dàduō	大多	most
dàduōshù	大多数	most
duōshù	多数	most
gāozhōng	高中	high school
gāozhōngxuéshēng	高中学生	High school student
zhōngxué	中学	middle school
zhōngxuéshēng	中学生	Middle school students
xuéshēng	学生	student
dōu	都	All
néngkàndǒng	能看懂	Can understand
tā	她	she
chàngē	唱歌	Sing
gēér	歌儿	song

zhēnhǎo	真好	very nice
hǎofīng	好听	nice
nǐ	你	you
zǒngshì	总是	always
gǎocuò	搞错	mistake
nà	那	That
búshì	不是	no
gēér	歌儿	song
nà	那	That
shì	是	Yes
dìfāng	地方	place
dìfāngxì	地方戏	local drama
jīntiān	今天	today
jīntiānxiàwǔ	今天下午	this afternoon
tiānxià	天下	world
xiàwǔ	下午	afternoon
wǒmen	我们	us
de	的	of
jiàoxué	教学	teaching
tǎolùn	讨论	discuss
tǎolùnhuì	讨论会	discussion
bùkāi	不开	not open
le	了	span
hǎojíle	好极了	great
jíle	极了	Extremely
wǒ	我	I
nénggòu	能够	were able
qù	去	go
cānjiā	参加	Participation
jiāpái	加排	add row
páiqiú	排球	volleyball
páiqiúbǐsài	排球比赛	volleyball game
bǐsài	比赛	Contest
le	了	span

tā	他	he
zuìjìn	最近	Recently
de	的	of
zuòpǐn	作品	work
shēnshòu	深受	deeply
guǎngdà	广大	vast
guǎngdàqúnzhòng	广大群众	the masses
dàqún	大群	large group
qúnzhòng	群众	the masses
huānyíng	欢迎	welcome
zuìjìn	最近	Recently
jìnlǎngnián	近两年	last two years
liǎngnián	两年	two years
tā	他	he
tígāo	提高	improve
de	的	of
hěnkuài	很快	soon
zhēnwèi	真为	really
tā	他	he
gāoxìng	高兴	Happy
chúle	除了	Apart from
gōngzuò	工作	Work
yǐwài	以外	apart from
nǐmen	你们	you
hái	还	return
jīngcháng	经常	often
chángyǒu	常有	often
xuéxí	学习	study
ma	吗	do you
guǎngdà	广大	vast
guǎngdàgànbù	广大干部	the majority of cadres
dàgàn	大干	big dry
gànbù	干部	cadre
juéde	觉得	feel

yào	要	want
tígāo	提高	improve
zìjǐ	自己	Own
de	的	of
sīxiǎng	思想	Thought
shuǐpíng	水平	Level
jiù	就	At once
bìxū	必须	must
píngcháng	平常	usually
xuéxí	学习	study
nǐ	你	you
míngtiān	明天	tomorrow
wǎnshàng	晚上	night
shàngqù	上去	go up
dǎqiú	打球	play ball
qiúér	球儿	ball
ma	吗	do you
bù	不	Do not
wǒ	我	I
yào	要	want
péi	陪	accompany
wǒ	我	I
shīfù	师傅	master
qù	去	go
kàn	看	Look
bālěi	芭蕾	ballet
bālěiwǔ	芭蕾舞	ballet
wèile	为了	for
mǎnzú	满足	Satisfy
niánqīng	年轻	young
niánqīngrén	年轻人	young people
rénwén	人文	Humanities
wénhuà	文化	culture
huàshēng	化生	metaplasia

shēnghuó	生活	Life
de	的	of
xūyào	需要	need
zhègè	这个	this
zhōumò	周末	weekend
wǒmen	我们	us
yào	要	want
kāi	开	open
gè	个	individual
yīnyuè	音乐	music
yīnyuèhuì	音乐会	concert
zhēnbù	真不	really not
bùhuài	不坏	not bad
wǒ	我	I
yě	也	also
cānjiā	参加	Participation
nǐ	你	you
chúle	除了	Apart from
ài	爱	Love
dǎ	打	beat
pīngpāng	乒乓	ping pong
qiú	求	beg
ér	儿	Son
yǐwài	以外	apart from
hái	还	return
xǐhuān	喜欢	like
shénme	什么	what
xǐhuān	喜欢	like
lánqiú	篮球	basketball
wǒ	我	I
hái	还	return
cānjiā	参加	Participation
le	了	span
xuéxiào	学校	School



de	的	of
lánqiú	篮球	basketball
lánqiúduì	篮球队	basketball team
qiúduì	球队	team
yípó	姨婆	Aunt
jīntiān	今天	today
yǒu	有	Have
shénme	什么	what
xīnwén	新闻	news
tīngshuō	听说	It is said that
yíge	一个	One
yǒumíng	有名	Famous
de	的	of
yuèduì	乐队	band
yàodào	要到	arriving
wǒmen	我们	us
zhèr	这儿	here
lái	来	Come
yǎnchū	演出	show
le	了	span
nǐlǎo	你老	you old
shì	是	Yes
dúshū	读书	read
kuàilái	快来	come soon
xiūxi	休息	rest
yīhuì	一会	a while
yīhuìr	一会儿	a while
huìr	会儿	a while
kànkàn	看看	have a look
kàndiànshì	看电视	watch TV
diànshì	电视	television
ba	吧	Bar
hǎo	好	it is good
wǒ	我	I

láikàn	来看	come to see
yīhuì	一会	a while
yīhuìer	一会儿	a while
huìer	会儿	a while
guójì	国际	internationality
xīnwén	新闻	news
xīnwénjiémù	新闻节目	news program
jiémù	节目	programme
zhègè	这个	this
xīngqī	星期	Week
de	的	of
měigè	每个	each
wǎnshàng	晚上	night
yòu	又	again
páidé	排得	lined up
mǎnmǎn	满满	full
ér	儿	Son
de	的	of
le	了	span
nǐ	你	you
yào	要	want
dúshū	读书	read
yòu	又	again
yào	要	want
kànxì	看戏	go to the theatre
hái	还	return
xiǎng	想	think
cānjiā	参加	Participation
tuántǐ	团体	group
de	的	of
huódòng	活动	Activity
shì	是	Yes
tài	太	too
máng	忙	busy

le	了	span
zhègè	这个	this
jīngxì	京戏	Peking opera
zhíde	值得	worth
kàn	看	Look
jīntiān	今天	today
nǐ	你	you
xiǎng	想	think
bùxiǎng	不想	In no mood
xiǎngqù	想去	want to go
?	?	?
jīntiān	今天	today
wǎnshàng	晚上	night
diànshì	电视	television
diànshìjié	电视节	TV Festival
diànshìjiémù	电视节目	TV show
jiémù	节目	programme
zhuǎnbō	转播	broadcast
diànyǐng	电影	Movie
yǐngér	影儿	Shadow
zánmen	咱们	we
míngtiān	明天	tomorrow
kàn	看	Look
jīngxì	京戏	Peking opera
ba	吧	Bar

## Frames

- 1 yí gè gāo zhōng xué shēng kàn běi jīng de diàn shì jiào xué jié mù # néng bù néng kàn dòng #  
一个高中学生看北京的电视教学节目，能不能看懂？  
Will a senior high-school student be able to understand if he watches educational television in Peking?  
dà duō shù gāo zhōng xué shēng dōu néng kàn dòng #  
大多数高中学生都能看懂。  
The great majority of senior high-school students would be able to understand it.
- 2 tā chàng gē ér zhēn hǎo tīng #  
她唱歌儿真好听。  
She sings songs really beautifully.  
nǐ zǒng shì gǎo cuò # nà bú shì gē ér # nà shì dì fāng xì  
你总是搞错。那不是歌儿，那是地方戏  
You always mistake them! That's not a song, that's opera.
- 3 jīn tiān xià wǔ wǒ men de jiào xué tāo lùn huì bù kāi le #  
今天下午我们的教学讨论会不开了。  
Our teaching discussion session isn't meeting this afternoon.  
hǎo jí le # wǒ néng qù cān jiā pái qiú bǐ sài le #  
好极了，我能够去参加排球比赛了。  
Great, now I can go take part in the volleyball match.
- 4 tā zuì jìn de zuò pǐn shēn shòu guǎng dà qún zhòng huān yíng #  
他最近的作品深受广大群众欢迎。  
His recent works have received a hearty welcome of the broad masses.  
zuì jìn liǎng nián # tā tí gāo de hěn kuài #  
最近两年，他提高的很快。  
Yes, in the last 2 years his work has improved rapidly.  
Zhēn wèi tā gāoxìng  
真为他高兴  
I'm really happy for him
- 5 chú le gōng zuò yǐ wài # nǐ men hái jīng cháng yǒu xué xí ma #  
除了工作以外，你们还经常有学习吗？  
Do you often study in addition to your work?  
guǎng dà gàn bù jué de yào tí gāo zì jǐ de sī xiǎng shuǐ píng jiù bì xū píng cháng xué xí #  
广大干部觉得要提高自己的思想水平就必须平常学习。  
A great number of cadre numbers feel that to raise the level of their own thought, they must study often.
- 6 nǐ míng tiān wǎn shàng qù dǎ qiú ér ma #

你明天晚上去打球儿吗？

Are you going to play ball tomorrow evening?

bù # wǒ yào péi wǒ shī fu qù kàn bā lěi wǔ #

不，我要陪我师傅去看芭蕾舞。

No, I'm going to go with my teacher to see a ballet.

7 wèi le mǎn zú nián qīng rén wén huà shēng huó de xū yào # zhè gè zhōu mò wǒ men yào kāi gè yīn yuè huì #

为了满足年轻人文化生活的需要，这个周末我们要开个音乐会。

In order to satisfy the cultural needs of the younger people, we're going to have a concert this weekend.

zhēn bù huài # wǒ yě cān jiā #

真不坏，我也参加。

Great, I'll go too

8 nǐ chú le ài dǎ pīng pāng qiú ér yǐ wài # hái xǐ huān shén me #

你除了爱打乒乓球以外，还喜欢什么？

What else do you like besides ping pong?

xǐ huān lán qiú # wǒ hái cān jiā le xué xiào de lán qiú duì #

喜欢篮球。我还参加了学校的篮球队。

I like basketball. I even play with the school basketball team.

9 yí pó # jīn tiān yǒu shén me xīn wén #

姨婆，今天有什么新闻？

Auntie, what news is there today?

tīng shuō # yí gè yǒu míng de yuè duì yào dào wǒ men zhè er lái yǎn chū le

听说，一个有名的乐队要到我们这儿来演出了

I've heard that a famous music group is coming here to perform.

10 nǐ lǎo shì dú shū # kuài lái xiū xi yí huì er # kàn kàn diàn shì ba #

你老是读书。快来休息一会儿，看看电视吧。

You're always studying! Come on and rest a bit, watch some television.

hǎo # wǒ lái kàn yí huì er guó jì xīn wén jié mù #

好，我来看一会儿国际新闻节目。

Ok, I'll come and watch the international news program for a while.

11 zhè gè xīng qī de měi gè wǎn shàng yòu pái dé mǎn mǎn ér de le #

这个星期的每个晚上又排得满满儿的了。

Your schedule is filled up again every night this week.

nǐ yào dú shū # yòu yào kàn xì # hái xiǎng cān jiā tuán tǐ de huó dòng # shì tài máng le #

你要读书，又要看戏，还想参加团体的活动，是太忙了。

You want to study and see opera, and also take part in the group's activities; you're just too busy.

12 zhè gè jīng xì zhí de kàn # jīn tiān nǐ xiǎng bù xiǎng qù ?

这个京戏值得看，今天你想不想去？

This Peking opera is worth seeing. Do you want to go today?

jīn tiān wǎn shàng diàn shì jié mù zhuǎn bō diàn yǐng ér # zán men míng tiān kàn jīng  
xì ba #

今天晚上电视节目转播电影儿，咱们明天看京戏吧。

As for the television programming tonight, they're relaying a movie. Let's go see Peking opera tomorrow night.

# Unit 5

## Vocabulary

tīngshuō	听说	It is said that
nǐ	你	you
yàodào	要到	arriving
biānjiāng	边疆	frontier
chūchāi	出差	On business trip
qù	去	go
le	了	span
duìle	对了	correct
wèile	为了	for
zhècì	这次	this time
chūyáng	出洋	go abroad
ménér	门儿	door
zhè	这	This
liǎngtiān	两天	two days
máng	忙	busy
dé	得	have to
bùdé	不得	must not
bùdéle	不得了	incredible
zhècì	这次	this time
nǐ	你	you
chūmén	出门	go out
chūménér	出门儿	go out
ménér	门儿	door
bàngōng	办公	office
gōngshì	公事	business
,	,	,
zhǔnbèi	准备	Prepare
zěnmē	怎么	how
zǒu	走	Walk

a	啊	what
zuòfēijī	坐飞机	By plane
fēijī	飞机	airplane
xiàwǔ	下午	afternoon
dào	到	arrive
zhōngguó	中国	China
zhōngguómínháng	中国民航	Civil Aviation of China
guómín	国民	national
mínháng	民航	civil aviation
mǎi	买	purchase
jīpiào	机票	Air tickets
lǚxíng	旅行	trip
le	了	span
èrshí	二十	twenty
èrshíduō	二十多	more than twenty
èrshíduōtiān	二十多天	more than twenty days
shíduō	十多	more than ten
shíduōtiān	十多天	more than ten days
duōtiān	多天	Days
nǐ	你	you
juéde	觉得	feel
zěnmē	怎么	how
zěnmeyàng	怎么样	How about it
zhècì	这次	this time
chūmén	出门	go out
chūménér	出门儿	go out
ménér	门儿	door
yòu	又	again
guòcháng	过长	too long
chángjiāng	长江	Yangtze
yòu	又	again
guò	过	Pass
huánghé	黄河	Yellow River
yǒuyì	有意	intentionally



yǒuyìsī	有意思	interesting
yìsī	意思	mean
jíle	极了	Extremely
cóng	从	from
běijīng	北京	Beijing
běijīngfàndiàn	北京饭店	Beijing Hotel
fàndiàn	饭店	restaurant
dào	到	arrive
dào	到	arrive
dòngwù	动物	animal
dòngwùyuán	动物园	zoo
ér	儿	Son
yào	要	want
búyào	不要	don't want
zuò	坐	sit
chángtú	长途	long haul
chángtúqìchē	长途汽车	coach
qìchē	汽车	car
bùyòng	不用	Need not
zuò	坐	sit
wúguǐ	无轨	trackless
wúguǐdiànchē	无轨电车	trolleybus
diànchē	电车	tram
jiùxíngle	就行了	just fine
zhōuzǒnglǐ	周总理	Premier Zhou
zǒnglǐ	总理	Prime Minister
shífēn	十分	very
guānhuái	关怀	care
wǒmen	我们	us
dàxué	大学	the University
de	的	of
jiàoxué	教学	teaching
xuégōng	学工	Scholar
gōngzuò	工作	Work

nǐ	你	you
xǐhuān	喜欢	like
qí	骑	ride
zìxíng	自行	on their own
zìxíngchē	自行车	bike
xíngchē	行车	driving
chēér	车儿	car
ma	吗	do you
xǐhuān	喜欢	like
yībān	一般	generally
yībānláishuō	一般来说	Generally speaking
láishuō	来说	for
rúguǒ	如果	if
hé	和	and
zuò	坐	sit
gōnggòng	公共	public
gōnggòngqìchē	公共汽车	bus
qìchē	汽车	car
bǐ	比	Compare
wǒ	我	I
háishì	还是	still
ài	爱	Love
qíchē	骑车	ride a bike
guòxiē	过些	over
guòxiērizi	过些日子	some days
rìzi	日子	day
wǒ	我	I
nǚér	女儿	daughter
jiùyào	就要	about to
yàodào	要到	arriving
lúnchuán	轮船	ship
chuánshàng	船上	on board
shàngqù	上去	go up
gōngzuò	工作	Work

le	了	span
wǒ	我	I
yǒudiǎn	有点	a bit
yǒudiǎnér	有点儿	kind of
diǎnér	点儿	a little
bùfàng	不放	don't let go
fàngxīn	放心	rest assured
tā	她	she
shì	是	Yes
gè	个	individual
yǒuzhì	有志	Aspiring
yǒuzhìqì	有志气	Ambitious
zhìqì	志气	ambition
de	的	of
háizi	孩子	child
nǐ	你	you
jiù	就	At once
fàngxīn	放心	rest assured
ba	吧	Bar
zhègè	这个	this
yuè	月	moon
nǐ	你	you
zěnmē	怎么	how
mǎi	买	purchase
yuèpiào	月票	monthly pass
le	了	span
qíchē	骑车	ride a bike
búshì	不是	no
hǎo	好	it is good
ma	吗	do you
měitiān	每天	every day
tiānshàng	天上	heaven
shàngbān	上班	work
dé	得	have to

guò	过	Pass
liǎnggè	两个	two
qiáo	桥	bridge
zhēnlèi	真累	so tired
hóngdēng	红灯	red light
yīliàng	一亮	a bright
háiyào	还要	also
děng	等	Wait
bàntiān	半天	long time
háishi	还是	still
zuò	坐	sit
gōnggòng	公共	public
gōnggòngqìchē	公共汽车	bus
qìchē	汽车	car
fāngbiàn	方便	convenient
nǐ	你	you
tīngshuō	听说	It is said that
le	了	span
ma	吗	do you
wèile	为了	for
jiéshěng	节省	save
jiéshěngnéngyuán	节省能源	save energy
néngyuán	能源	energy
zhètiáo	这条	this
lùshàng	路上	on the road
de	的	of
gōnggòng	公共	public
gōnggòngqìchē	公共汽车	bus
qìchē	汽车	car
jiǎnshǎo	减少	reduce
le	了	span
zhètiáo	这条	this
lùshàng	路上	on the road
rén	人	people

bùduō	不多	not much
jiéshěng	节省	save
jǐliàng	几辆	several
jǐliàngchē	几辆车	several cars
liàngchē	辆车	car
yě	也	also
méiyǒu	没有	No
shénme	什么	what
guānxi	关系	relation
zhōngguó	中国	China
xiànzài	现在	Now
yǒu	有	Have
yuǎnyáng	远洋	ocean
yuǎnyánglún	远洋轮	ocean liner
yuǎnyánglúnchuán	远洋轮船	ocean-going ship
lúnchuán	轮船	ship
ma	吗	do you
yǒu	有	Have
zǎojiù	早就	early
yǒu	有	Have
le	了	span
yuǎnyáng	远洋	ocean
yuǎnyánghuòlún	远洋货轮	ocean freighter
yánghuò	洋货	foreign goods
huòlún	货轮	freighter
hé	和	and
yuǎnyáng	远洋	ocean
kèlún	客轮	passenger ship
wǒ	我	I
xīwàng	希望	hope
wǒmen	我们	us
de	的	of
jiāotōng	交通	transportation
tōngshì	通事	General

shìyè	事业	cause
yèdà	业大	Industry University
dàfā	大发	Daihatsu
fāzhǎn	发展	develop
biānjiāng	边疆	frontier
zǎo	早	morning
yídiǎn	一点	a little
yídiǎnér	一点儿	a little
diǎnér	点儿	a little
tōngguò	通过	pass
chē	车	car
kěbù	可不	may not
kěbúshì	可不是	not
búshì	不是	no
ma	吗	do you
dào	到	arrive
nàgè	那个	that
shíhòu	时候	when
ér	儿	Son
dàjiā	大家	Everyone
kàn	看	Look
qīn	亲	Dear
kě	可	Can
jiù	就	At once
fāngbiàn	方便	convenient
duō	多	many
le	了	span
zuótiān	昨天	yesterday
tā	她	she
hé	和	and
shuí	谁	Who
dào	到	arrive
yíhé	颐和	Yihe
yíhéyuán	颐和园	Summer Palace

qù	去	go
le	了	span
nà	那	That
shì	是	Yes
tā	他	he
sīrén	私人	private
de	的	of
shìer	事儿	thing
wǒmen	我们	us
zuìhǎo	最好	most
bù	不	Do not
dǎtīng	打听	inquire about
nǐ	你	you
zhème	这么	so
ài	爱	Love
yùndòng	运动	sports
měitiān	每天	every day
duànliàn	锻炼	exercise
sānsì	三四	three four
sānsìgè	三四个	three or four
sìgè	四个	four
xiǎoshí	小时	Hour
yǒu	有	Have
shénme	什么	what
yuányīn	原因	reason
ma	吗	do you
\xa0		
wǒ	我	I
yào	要	want
cānjiā	参加	Participation
míngnián	明年	next year
chūntiān	春天	spring
tiānyùn	天运	luck
yùndòng	运动	sports

yùndònghuì

运动会

Games



## Frames

- 1 tīng shuō nǐ yào dào biān jiāng chū chāi qù le #  
听说你要到边疆出差去了。  
I've heard that you're going off on business to the border region.  
duì le # wèi le zhè cì chū yáng mén ér # zhè liǎng tiān máng dé bù dé le #  
对了。为了这次出洋门儿，这两天忙得不得了。  
Yes, the past couple of days have been awfully busy because of this long distance trip.
- 2 zhè cì nǐ chū mén ér bàn gōng shì , zhǔn bèi zěn me zǒu a #  
这次你出门儿办公事，准备怎么走啊？  
How are you planning to travel when you go of on official business this time?  
zuò fēi jī # xià wǔ dào zhōng guó mín háng mǎi jī piào #  
坐飞机。下午到中国民航买机票。  
By plane. This afternoon, I'm going to the CAAC to buy a ticket.
- 3 lǚ xíng le èr shí duō tiān # nǐ jué de zěn me yàng #  
旅行了二十多天，你觉得怎么样？  
You were traveling for over 20 days, how did you like it?  
zhè cì chū mén ér # yòu guò cháng jiāng yòu guò huáng hé # yǒu yì sī jí le #  
这次出门儿，又过长江又过黄河，有意思极了。  
This time when I went away, I crossed over the Yangtze River and the yellow river, it was extremely interesting.
- 4 cóng běi jīng fàn diàn dào dòng wù yuán ér # yào bù yào zuò cháng tú qì chē #  
从北京饭店到到动物园儿，要不要坐长途汽车？  
Do I need to take a long-distance bus from the Peking hotel to the zoo?  
bù yòng # zuò wú guǐ diàn chē jiù xíng le #  
不用。坐无轨电车就行了。  
No, you can go by trolley bus.
- 5 zhōu zǒng lǐ shí fēn guān huái wǒ men dà xué de jiào xué gōng zuò #  
周总理十分关怀我们大学的教学工作。  
Premier Zhou was extremely concerned with the work of teaching in our university.
- 6 nǐ xǐ huān qí zì xíng chē ér ma #  
你喜欢骑自行车儿吗？  
Do you like to ride a bicycle?  
xǐ huān # yì bān lái shuō # rú guǒ hé zuò gōng gòng qì chē bǐ # wǒ hái shì ài qí chē #  
喜欢。一般来说，如果和坐公共汽车比，我还是爱骑车。  
Yes. Generally speaking, if you compare it to riding the bus, I prefer to ride my bicycle.
- 7 guò xiē rì zi # wǒ nǚ ér jiù yào dào lún chuán shàng qù gōng zuò le # wǒ yǒu diǎn ér bù fàngxīn #  
过些日子，我女儿就要到轮船上去工作了。我有点儿不放心。

In a few days, my daughter is going to go work on a steam ship. I'm a little bit worried.

tā shì gè yǒu zhì qì de hái zǐ # nǐ jiù fāng xīn ba #

她是个有志气的孩子。你就放心吧。

She's a girl with determination, don't worry.

8 zhè gè yuè nǐ zěn me mǎi yuè piào le # qí chē bú shì hǎo ma #

这个月你怎么买月票了？骑车不是好吗？

How come you bought a ticket this month? Isn't riding a bicycle good?

měi tiān shàng bān dé guò liǎng gè qiáo # zhēn lèi #

每天上班得过两个桥，真累。

Every day on my way to work, I have to cross over two bridges. It's really tiring.

Hóng dēng yī liàng, hái yào děng bàn tiān, hái shì zuò gōng gòng qì chē fāng biàn

红灯一亮，还要等半天，还是坐公共汽车方便

And when the light turns red, I have to wait forever, so it's still more convenient to take a public bus

9 nǐ tīng shuō le ma # wèi le jié shěng néng yuán # zhè tiáo lù shàng de gōng gòng qì chē jiǎn shǎo le #

你听说了吗？为了节省能源，这条路上的公共汽车减少了。

Have you heard? In order to save energy, the number of public buses on the street have been reduced.

zhè tiáo lù shàng rén bù duō # jié shěng jǐ liàng chē yě méi yǒu shén me guān xi #

这条路上人不多。节省几辆车也没有有什么关系。

There aren't too many people on this street. It doesn't matter if the number of public buses is reduced by a few.

10 zhōng guó xiàn zài yǒu yuǎn yáng lún chuán ma #

中国现在有远洋轮船吗？

Does china have ocean-going steamships now?

yǒu # zǎo jiù yǒu le yuǎn yáng huò lún hé yuǎn yáng kè lún #

有，早就有了远洋货轮和远洋客轮。

Yes, china has had ocean going freighter and ocean going steam ships for a long time.

11 wǒ xī wàng wǒ men de jiāo tōng shì yè dà fā zhǎn # biān jiāng zǎo yì diǎn ér tōng guò chē #

我希望我们的交通事业大发展，边疆早一点儿通过车。

I hope our transportation operations will develop greatly, and that the frontier regions will soon be open to trains.

kě bú shì ma # dào nà gè shí hòu ér dà jiā kàn qīn kě jiù fāng biàn duō le #

可不是吗！到那个时候儿大家看亲可就方便多了。

Yes indeed, when that time comes it will be so much more convenient for everyone to visit their families.

12 zuó tiān tā hé shuí dào yuán hé yuán qù le #

昨天她和谁到颐和园去了？

Who did she go with to the summer palace yesterday?

nà shì tā sī rén de shì ér # wǒ men zuì hǎo bù dǎ tīng #

那是他私人的事儿，我们最好不打听。

That's her private business, it would be best if we didn't inquire.

13

nǐ zhè me ài yùn dòng # měi tiān duàn liàn sān sì gè xiǎo shí # yǒu shén me yuán yīn ma #

你这么爱运动，每天锻炼三四个小时，有什么原因吗？

Is there some reason why you're so fond of exercising and why you're working out three or four hours a day?

\xa0 wǒ yào cān jiā míng nián chūn tiān yùn dòng huì #

我要参加明年春天运动会。

I want to enter the sports meet next spring.

# Unit 6

## Vocabulary

jīntiān	今天	today
tiāndōu	天都	Tento
shíyī	十一	eleven
shíyīyuè	十一月	November
yíyuè	一月	January
sānhào	三号	number three
le	了	span
zánmen	咱们	we
jiā	家	Family
hái	还	return
méi	没	No
chǔcún	储存	store
dōngcài	冬菜	winter vegetables
ne	呢	Woolen cloth
nǐ	你	you
fàngxīn	放心	rest assured
ba	吧	Bar
,	,	,
dānwù	耽误	hold up
bùliǎo	不了	no
nǐ	你	you
yòu	又	again
qù	去	go
nàgè	那个	that
càishì	菜市	food market
càishìchǎng	菜市场	vegetable market
shìchǎng	市场	market
mǎi	买	purchase
dōngxī	东西	thing

le	了	span
wǒ	我	I
xǐhuān	喜欢	like
nàgè	那个	that
càishì	菜市	food market
càishìchǎng	菜市场	vegetable market
shìchǎng	市场	market
tāmen	他们	them
de	的	of
fúwù	服务	Serve
fúwùyuán	服务员	waiter
tàidù	态度	manner
hǎo	好	it is good
kě	可	Can
hé	和	and
qì	气	gas
le	了	span
zhègè	这个	this
háizi	孩子	child
shì	是	Yes
chéngshì	城市	City
chéngshìhùkǒu	城市户口	Urban Hukou
hùkǒu	户口	account
ma	吗	do you
shì	是	Yes
zhè	这	This
shì	是	Yes
tā	她	she
de	的	of
chángqī	长期	long
hùkǒu	户口	account
zhèér	这儿	here
de	的	of
fùshí	副食	non-staple food

fùshípǐn	副食品	non-staple food
shípǐn	食品	food
zěnmē	怎么	how
mài	卖	Sell
bùshǎo	不少	quite a few
dōngxī	东西	thing
háishì	还是	still
gēnjù	根据	according to
hùkǒu	户口	account
kǒugòng	口供	oral confession
gōngyìng	供应	supply
zhègè	这个	this
yuè	月	moon
nǐ	你	you
érzi	儿子	son
guòshēngrì	过生日	birthday
shēngrì	生日	Birthday
tā	他	he
yòu	又	again
gāi	该	Should
zēngjiā	增加	Increase
jiāding	加定	Addition
dìngliàng	定量	Quantitative
le	了	span
duìle	对了	correct
wǒ	我	I
yīnggāi	应该	should
dào	到	arrive
liángdiàn	粮店	grain store
gěi	给	Give
tā	他	he
gǎiding	改定	modification
dìngliàng	定量	Quantitative
qù	去	go

gěi	给	Give
háizi	孩子	child
zēngjiā	增加	Increase
jiāding	加定	Addition
dìngliàng	定量	Quantitative
de	的	of
shǒushù	手术	Operation
zěnmē	怎么	how
zěnmēbàn	怎么办	How to do
dào	到	arrive
liángdiàn	粮店	grain store
qù	去	go
fúwù	服务	Serve
fúwùyuán	服务员	waiter
kàn	看	Look
le	了	span
hùkǒu	户口	account
kǒushàng	口上	speech
háizi	孩子	child
de	的	of
niánlíng	年龄	age
hé	和	and
shēngrì	生日	Birthday
jiù	就	At once
huì	会	meeting
zài	在	exist
liáng	粮	grain
běnr	本儿	Ben
shàng	上	superior
xiě	写	Write
shàng	上	superior
xīn	新	new
de	的	of
dìngliàng	定量	Quantitative

tīngshuō	听说	It is said that
liángdiàn	粮店	grain store
dōu	都	All
shì	是	Yes
gēnjù	根据	according to
liáng	粮	grain
běnr	本儿	Ben
fā	发	send
liángpiào	粮票	food stamps
ér	儿	Son
de	的	of
nǐ	你	you
yǒuméiyǒu	有没有	Do you have
méiyǒu	没有	No
bǎ	把	Bundle
zhèjiàn	这件	this
shìer	事儿	thing
gěi	给	Give
wǒ	我	I
jiǎng	讲	speak
yī	一	one
jiǎng	讲	speak
gōngrén	工人	Worker
de	的	of
liáng	粮	grain
yóu	油	Oil
dìngliàng	定量	Quantitative
shìbúshì	是不是	is not it
búshì	不是	no
bǐ	比	Compare
gànbù	干部	cadre
de	的	of
dìngliàng	定量	Quantitative
gāo	高	high



duì	对	right
gànbù	干部	cadre
de	的	of
liángshí	粮食	food
dìngliàng	定量	Quantitative
bǐ	比	Compare
gōngrén	工人	Worker
de	的	of
dī	低	Low
yóu	油	Oil
de	的	of
dìngliàng	定量	Quantitative
shì	是	Yes
yīyàng	一样	Same
de	的	of
shànggè	上个	Previous
shànggèxīngqī	上个星期	last week
xīngqī	星期	Week
wǒmen	我们	us
fùshí	副食	non-staple food
fùshídiàn	副食店	non-staple food shop
gōngyìng	供应	supply
de	的	of
yú	鱼	fish
tèbié	特别	special
xīnxiān	新鲜	Fresh
jiājiā	家家	every family
jiāér	家儿	home
dōu	都	All
yuànyì	愿意	willing
mǎi	买	purchase
wǒ	我	I
xiǎng	想	think
shàngjiē	上街	take to the street

qù	去	go
mǎidiǎn	买点	buy some
mǎidiǎnér	买点儿	buy some
diǎnér	点儿	a little
dōngxī	东西	thing
qíshí	其实	actually
nín	您	you
zhème	这么	so
dànián	大年	big year
niánjì	年纪	age
búyào	不要	don't want
shàngjiē	上街	take to the street
le	了	span
fùshí	副食	non-staple food
fùshídiàn	副食店	non-staple food shop
huì	会	meeting
bǎ	把	Bundle
huòwù	货物	goods
sònglái	送来	send
de	的	of
yímā	姨妈	aunt
fùshí	副食	non-staple food
fùshídiàn	副食店	non-staple food shop
fúwù	服务	Serve
fúwùyuán	服务员	waiter
sònghuò	送货	deliver goods
sònghuòlái	送货来	delivery
le	了	span
nǐ	你	you
xiānqù	先去	go first
páidui	排队	queue
wǒ	我	I
ná	拿	take
le	了	span

fùshí	副食	non-staple food
běnr	本儿	Ben
jiù	就	At once
lái	来	Come
zhègè	这个	this
gōngsī	公司	company
de	的	of
chǎnpǐn	产品	product
pǐnxiāng	品相	Condition
xiāngdāng	相当	quite
piányí	便宜	Cheap
jiānglái	将来	future
shēngchǎn	生产	Production
gǎo	搞	engage
de	的	of
gènghǎo	更好	better
jiàqián	价钱	Price
huì	会	meeting
gèngbiàn	更便	more convenient
piányí	便宜	Cheap
fēijī	飞机	airplane
fēijīchǎng	飞机场	AIRPORT
jīchǎng	机场	Airport
tōngzhī	通知	Notice
wǒmen	我们	us
yīnwèi	因为	because
tiānqì	天气	weather
bùhǎo	不好	not good
jīntiān	今天	today
tiānmíng	天明	Tianming
míngtiān	明天	tomorrow
wǒmen	我们	us
zǒu	走	Walk
bùliǎo	不了	no

liǎoliǎo

了了

gone

## Frames

- 1 jīn tiān dōu shí yī yuè sān hào le # zán men jiā hái méi chǔ cún dōng cài ne #  
今天都十一月三号了，咱们家还没储存冬菜呢。  
It's November 3rd already, and our family still hasn't stored away our winter vegetables.  
nǐ fàng xīn ba , dān wù bù liǎo #  
你放心吧,耽误不了。  
Don't worry; we'll make it in time.
- 2 nǐ yòu qù nà gè cài shì chǎng mǎi dōng xī le #  
你又去那个菜市场买东西了？  
Did you go to that market again to buy things?  
wǒ xǐ huān nà gè cài shì chǎng # tā men de fú wù yuán tài dù hǎo # kě hé qì le #  
我喜欢那个菜市场。他们的服务员态度好，可和气了。  
I like that market. The attitude of the service attendants there is good, they're really friendly.
- 3 zhè gè hái zi shì chéng shì hù kǒu ma #  
这个孩子是城市户口吗？  
Is this child a registered resident of the city?  
shì # zhè shì tā de cháng qī hù kǒu #  
是，这是她的长期户口。  
Yes, this is her long-term resident registration.
- 4 zhè ér de fù shí pǐn zěn me mài #  
这儿的副食品怎么卖？  
How are non-staple food items sold here?  
bù shǎo dōng xī hái shì gēn jù hù kǒu gòng yīng #  
不少东西还是根据户口供应。  
Many things are still supplied according to resident registration.
- 5 zhè gè yuè nǐ ér zi guò shēng rì # tā yòu gāi zēng jiā dìng liàng le #  
这个月你儿子过生日，他又该增加定量了。  
Your son will have a birthday this month, you should increase his ration quota again.  
duì le # wǒ yīng gāi dào liáng diàn gěi tā gǎi dìng liàng qù #  
对了，我应该到粮店给他改定量去。  
That's right; I should go to the grain and dry beans shop and change his ration quota for him.
- 6 gěi hái zi zēng jiā dìng liàng de shǒu shù zěn me bàn #  
给孩子增加定量的手术怎么办？  
What are the procedures for increasing the ration quota for children?  
dào liáng diàn qù # fú wù yuán kàn le hù kǒu shàng # hái zi de nián líng hé shēng rì # jiù huì zài liáng běn ér shàng xiě shàng xīn de dìng liàng #  
到粮店去 # 服务员看了户口上 # 孩子的年龄和生日 # 就会在粮本儿上写上新的定量 #

到粮店去。服务员看了户口上，孩子的年龄和生日，就会在粮本儿上写上新的定量。

You go to the grains and dry beans store. After the attendant looks at the child's age and his birth date on his resident registration, he writes the new quota in the grains and dry beans ration booklet.

7 tīng shuō liáng diàn dōu shì gēn jù liáng běn ér fā liáng piào ér de #

听说粮店都是根据粮本儿发粮票儿的。

I've heard that shops for grains and dry beans issue ration tickets according to the ration booklet.

nǐ yǒu méi yǒu bǎ zhè jiàn shì ér gěi wǒ jiǎng yī jiǎng #

你有没有把这件事儿给我讲一讲？

Is there some way you could explain this to me?

8 gōng rén de liáng # yóu # dìng liàng shì bú shì bǐ gān bù de dìng liàng gāo #

工人的粮，油，定量是不是比干部的定量高？

Is the grain and oil quota for workers, higher than for cadres?

duì # gān bù de liáng shí dìng liàng bǐ gōng rén de dī # yóu de dìng liàng shì yī yàng de #

对，干部的粮食定量比工人的低，油的定量是一样的。

The grain ration quota for cadres is lower than for workers, the oil ration quota is the same.

9 shàng gè xīng qī # wǒ men fù shí diàn gōng yìng de yú tè bié xīn xiān # jiā jiā ér dōu yuàn yì mǎi #

上个星期，我们副食店供应的鱼特别新鲜，家家儿都愿意买。

Last week the fish supply by our non-staple food shop was especially fresh, every family wanted to buy some.

10 wǒ xiǎng shàng jiē qù mǎi diǎn ér dōng xī #

我想上街去买点儿东西。

I want to go to the shopping area to buy a few things.

qí shí # nín zhè me dà nián jì bù yào shàng jiē le # fù shí diàn huì bǎ huò wù sòng lái de #

其实，您这么大年纪不要上街了，副食店会把货物送来的。

Actually, someone your age shouldn't have to go shopping, the non-staple food store will send goods over here.

11 yí mā # fù shí diàn fú wù yuán sòng huò lái le #

姨妈，副食店服务员送货来了。

Auntie, the attendant from the non-staple food store has brought his goods by.

nǐ xiān qù pái duì # wǒ ná le fù shí běn ér jiù lái #

你先去排队，我拿了副食本儿就来。

You go over and stand in line first, and I'll come as soon as I get the ration booklet for non-staple food items.

12 zhè gè gōng sī de chǎn pǐn xiāng dāng pián yí #

这个公司的产品相当便宜。

This company's products are quite inexpensive.

jiāng lái # shēng chǎn gāo de gèng hǎo # jià qián huì gèng pián yí #

将来，生产搞的更好，价钱会更便宜。

In the future, when production is even better, the prices will be even lower.

13

fēi jī chǎng tōng zhī wǒ men yīn wèi tiān qì bù hǎo # jīn tiān míng tiān wǒ men zǒu bù  
le le #

飞机场通知我们因为天气不好，今天明天我们走不了了。

The airport has notified us that we won't be able to leave today or tomorrow because of bad weather.

# Unit 7

## Vocabulary

wǒ	我	I
mǎi	买	purchase
jǐkuài	几块	a few pieces
chóuduàn	绸缎	satin
zuò	做	Do
yīliào	衣料	clothing
hǎobùhǎo	好不好	OK
bùhǎo	不好	not good
zuò	做	Do
yīliào	衣料	clothing
bùhǎo	不好	not good
bùrú	不如	better
zuò	做	Do
bèi	被	quilt
miànzi	面子	face
xiǎo	小	Small
wáng	王	king
xiàgèxīngqī	下个星期	next week
xīngqī	星期	Week
bàn xǐshì	办喜事	do a wedding
xǐshì	喜事	happy event
shìer	事儿	thing
wǒmen	我们	us
shíjǐ	十几	dozen
shíjǐgè	十几个	more than ten
jǐgè	几个	several
gèrén	个人	personal
gěi	给	Give
tā	她	she



mǎi	买	purchase
gè	个	individual
féngrèn	缝纫	sewing
féngrènjī	缝纫机	sewing machine
ba	吧	Bar
tā	她	she
cónglái	从来	never
cóngláiméi	从来没	never
méiyòng	没用	useless
méiyòngguò	没用过	Not used
féngrèn	缝纫	sewing
féngrènjī	缝纫机	sewing machine
háishì	还是	still
gěi	给	Give
tā	她	she
mǎidiǎn	买点	buy some
mǎidiǎnér	买点儿	buy some
diǎnér	点儿	a little
biéde	别的	other
dōngxī	东西	thing
ba	吧	Bar
nín	您	you
nǚér	女儿	daughter
gànshénme	干什么	what to do
shénme	什么	what
qù	去	go
le	了	span
bǎihuò	百货	department store
bǎihuòdàlóu	百货大楼	department store
dàlóu	大楼	building
màiguó	卖国	traitorous
guóchǎn	国产	domestic
hēibái	黑白	black and white
hēibáidiànshì	黑白电视	Black and white TV

diànshì	电视	television
diànshìjī	电视机	TV set
tā	她	she
páiduì	排队	queue
qù	去	go
le	了	span
gāngcái	刚才	Just now
wǒ	我	I
jīngguò	经过	go through
jiājù	家具	furniture
jiājùdiàn	家具店	furniture store
kànjiàn	看见	see
zhèjiàn	这件	this
jiājù	家具	furniture
bùcuò	不错	good
jiù	就	At once
gěi	给	Give
nín	您	you
mǎi	买	purchase
le	了	span
\xa0		
zhēnshì	真是	really
de	的	of
yòu	又	again
ràng	让	Let
nǐ	你	you
huāqián	花钱	spend money
nǐ	你	you
mǎi	买	purchase
máoxiàn	毛线	yarn
qù	去	go
le	了	span
shì	是	Yes
a	啊	what

guò	过	Pass
yuándàn	元旦	New Year
le	了	span
gěi	给	Give
wǒ	我	I
nǚér	女儿	daughter
mǎidiǎn	买点	buy some
mǎidiǎnér	买点儿	buy some
diǎnér	点儿	a little
xiǎolǐ	小礼	small gift
lǐwù	礼物	Gift
nín	您	you
nǚér	女儿	daughter
dàxué	大学	the University
dàxuébìyè	大学毕业	University graduate
bìyè	毕业	graduate
le	了	span
wǒmen	我们	us
yīngdāng	应当	should
qìnghè	庆贺	celebrate
qìnghè	庆贺	celebrate
shì	是	Yes
a	啊	what
tā	他	he
kě	可	Can
zhēn	真	real
zhǎngchéng	长成	grow into
chéngdà	成大	Chengda
dàrén	大人	adult
le	了	span
xiànzài	现在	Now
zhèngfǔ	政府	government
duì	对	right
hǎiwài	海外	overseas

hǎiwàiguānxi	海外关系	overseas relations
wàiguān	外关	foreign customs
guānxi	关系	relation
yòu	又	again
yǒu	有	Have
xīn	新	new
de	的	of
zhèngcè	政策	policy
le	了	span
wǒ	我	I
yě	也	also
tīngshuō	听说	It is said that
le	了	span
xiànzài	现在	Now
duì	对	right
qiáojuàn	侨眷	overseas Chinese
tǐng	挺	quite
zhàogù	照顾	take care of
de	的	of
nín	您	you
zhèkuài	这块	this piece
zhōngguó	中国	China
duànzi	缎子	satin
zhēn	真	real
piàoliàng	漂亮	pretty
zài	在	exist
nǎér	哪儿	where
mǎi	买	purchase
de	的	of
zài	在	exist
huáqiáo	华侨	overseas Chinese
qiáoshāng	侨商	overseas Chinese
shāngdiàn	商店	shop
tiāo	挑	pick

de	的	of
wǒ	我	I
yào	要	want
gěi	给	Give
háizi	孩子	child
mǎidiǎn	买点	buy some
mǎidiǎnér	买点儿	buy some
diǎnér	点儿	a little
chuángshàng	床上	bed
chuángshàngyòngpǐn	床上用品	bed linings
yòngpǐn	用品	Supplies
méiyǒu	没有	No
bùpiào	布票	cloth ticket
ér	儿	Son
le	了	span
nín	您	you
biéjí	别急	don't worry
wǒ	我	I
zhèr	这儿	here
háiyǒu	还有	and also
bùshǎo	不少	quite a few
bùpiào	布票	cloth ticket
ér	儿	Son
méiyǒu	没有	No
yǒuyòng	有用	it works
diao	diao	Lose
nín	您	you
ná	拿	take
qù	去	go
ba	吧	Bar
yífū	姨夫	uncle
wǒ	我	I
jiějie	姐姐	elder sister
xiàgèyuè	下个月	next month

jiù	就	At once
gāi	该	Should
zhuǎnyè	转业	change jobs
le	了	span
shìbúshì	是不是	is not it
búshì	不是	no
zhè	这	This
búshì	不是	no
shénme	什么	what
liǎobùqǐ	了不起	amazing
de	的	of
shì	事	case
búyào	不要	don't want
dàngzuò	当做	as
xīnwén	新闻	news
qù	去	go
jiǎng	讲	speak
gěi	给	Give
tóngxué	同学	classmate
tóngxuémen	同学们	classmates
tīng	听	listen
wǒ	我	I
xiǎngqǐ	想起	Remember
qǐlái	起来	stand up
le	了	span
wǒ	我	I
nà	那	That
zhāng	张	open
shēngbìng	生病	Get ill
zhù	住	live
yīyuàn	医院	Hospital
de	的	of
zhèngmíng	证明	prove
kěyǐ	可以	Can

yòng lái	用来	used to
mǎi	买	purchase
jī dàn	鸡蛋	egg
yǐ jīng	已经	already
mǎi	买	purchase
le	了	span
nǐ	你	you
fàng xīn	放心	rest assured
ba	吧	Bar
nín	您	you
kàn	看	Look
zhè xiē	这些	These
huā ér	花儿	flower
kě hǎo	可好	nice
zhòng	重	Heavy
le	了	span
cái	才	talent
liǎng gè	两个	two
yuè	月	moon
de	的	of
gōng fū	功夫	effort
duō shù	多数	most
dōu	都	All
kāi huā	开花	flowering
huā ér	花儿	flower
le	了	span

## Frames

- 1 wǒ mǎi jǐ kuài chóu duàn zuò yī liào hǎo bù hǎo #  
我买几块绸缎做衣料好不好？  
Shall I buy a few pieces of silk to use as clothing material?  
zuò yī liào bù hǎo # bù rú zuò bèi miàn zi #  
做衣料不好，不如做被面子。  
It wouldn't be good for clothing, that's not as good as using it to make a quilt cover.
- 2 xiǎo wáng xià gè xīng qī bàn xǐ shì ér # wǒ men shí jǐ gè rén gěi tā mǎi gè féng rèn jī ba #  
小王下个星期办喜事儿。我们十几个人给她买个缝纫机吧。  
Xiao Wang's wedding is next week. Let's all 10 or so of us buy her a new sewing machine.  
tā cóng lái méi yòng guò féng rèn jī # hái shì gěi tā mǎi diǎn ér bié de dōng xī ba #  
她从来没用过缝纫机。还是给她买点儿别的东西吧。  
But she's never used a sewing machine. We'd better buy her something else.
- 3 nín nǚ ér gàn shén me qù le #  
您女儿干什么去了？  
What did your daughter go off to do?  
bǎi huò dà lóu mài guó chǎn hēi bái diàn shì jī # tā pái duì qù le #  
百货大楼卖国产黑白电视机，她排队去了  
The Bai Huo Da Lou is selling domestically produced black and white television sets, she went to stand in line.
- 4 gāng cái wǒ jīng guò jiā jù diàn # kàn jiàn zhè jiàn jiā jù bù cuò # jiù gěi nín mǎi le #  
刚才我经过家具店，看见这件家具不错，就给您买了。  
Just now as I was passing the furniture store, I saw that this piece of furniture was pretty good so I bought it for you.  
zhēn de # yòu ràng nǐ huā qián #  
真是的，又让你花钱。  
Oh no, I've caused you to spend money again.
- 5 nǐ mǎi máo xiàn qù le #  
你买毛线去了？  
Did you go to buy wool yarn?  
shì a # guò yuán dàn le # gěi wǒ nǚ ér mǎi diǎn ér xiǎo lǐ wù #  
是啊，过元旦了，给我女儿买点儿小礼物。  
Yes, New Year's is almost here, I'm buying a little present for my daughter.
- 6 nín nǚ ér dà xué bì yè le # wǒ men yīng dāng qìng hè qìng hè #  
您女儿大学毕业了，我们应当庆贺庆贺。  
Your daughter is graduating from college, we should celebrate.  
shì a # tā kě zhēn zhǎng chéng dà rén le #  
是啊，他可真长成大人了。



- 7 Yes, she's really grown into an adult.  
 xiàn zài # zhèng fǔ duì hǎi wài guān xì yòu yǒu xīn de zhèng cè le  
 现在，政府对海外关系又有新的政策了  
 The government again has a new policy towards relations overseas now.  
 wǒ yě tīng shuō le # xiàn zài duì qiáo juàn tǐng zhào gù de #  
 我也听说了。现在对侨眷挺照顾的。  
 Yes, so I've heard. Now they're taking better care of family members of overseas Chinese.
- 8 nín zhè kuài zhōng guó duàn zi zhēn piào liàng # zài nǎ ér mǎi de #  
 您这块中国缎子真漂亮，在哪儿买的？  
 This piece of Chinese satin of yours is really pretty, where did you buy it?  
 zài huá qiáo shāng diàn tiāo de #  
 在华侨商店挑的。  
 I picked it out at the overseas Chinese store.
- 9 wǒ yào gěi hái zǐ mǎi diǎn ér chuáng shàng yòng pǐn # méi yǒu bù piào ér le #  
 我要给孩子买点儿床上用品，没有布票儿了。  
 I want to buy some bedding for the children but I'm out of cotton ration coupon.  
 nín bié jí # wǒ zhè ér hái yǒu bù shǎo bù piào ér méi yǒu yòng diao # nín ná qù ba #  
 您别急，我这儿还有不少布票儿没有用diao。您拿去吧。  
 Don't worry; I have plenty of cotton ration tickets which I haven't used up. You take them.
- 10 yí fū # wǒ jiě jiě xià gè yuè jiù gāi zhuǎn yè le # shì bú shì #  
 姨夫，我姐姐下个月就该转业了，是不是。  
 Uncle, older sister is leaving the military next month, isn't she?  
 zhè bú shì shén me liǎo bù qǐ de shì # bú yào dàng zuò xīn wén qù jiǎng gěi tóng xué men tīng #  
 这不是什么了不起的事。不要当做新闻去讲给同学们听。  
 This isn't some big thing. You don't have to treat it as news and tell all your classmates.
- 11 wǒ xiǎng qǐ lái le # wǒ nà zhāng shēng bìng zhù yī yuàn de zhèng míng kě yǐ yòng lái mǎi jī dàn #  
 我想起来了，我那张生病住医院的证明可以用来买鸡蛋。  
 It just occurred to me that my certificate which shows I was sick and staying in the hospital can be used to buy eggs.  
 yǐ jīng mǎi le # nǐ fàng xīn ba #  
 已经买了，你放心吧。  
 They're already bought, don't you worry.
- 12 nín kàn # zhè xiē huā ér kě hǎo zhòng le # cái liǎng gè yuè de gōng fū # duō shù dōu kāi huā ér le #  
 您看，这些花儿可好重了。才两个月的功夫，多数都开花儿了。  
 Look, my flowers are so easy to grow, it's been only two months and most of them have bloomed.

# Unit 8

## Vocabulary

táng	唐	Don
shāndì	山地	mountain
dìzhèn	地震	earthquake
de	的	of
shíhòu	时候	when
nǐmen	你们	you
jiā	家	Family
de	的	of
fángzi	房子	house
shòudào	受到	received
yǐngxiǎng	影响	influences
méiyǒu	没有	No
wǒmen	我们	us
de	的	of
fángzi	房子	house
bùcuò	不错	good
méiyǒu	没有	No
shénme	什么	what
dà	大	Big
wèntí	问题	question
tīngshuō	听说	It is said that
tāmen	他们	them
lǐng	领	collar
liǎojié	了结	settled
jiéhūn	结婚	marry
jiéhūnzhèng	结婚证	marriage certificate
yǐhòu	以后	after
děng	等	Wait
le	了	span

bùzhǎng	不长	not long
de	的	of
shíjiān	时间	time
zhùfáng	住房	housing
zhùfángwèntí	住房问题	housing issues
wèntí	问题	question
jiù	就	At once
dédào	得到	get
jiějué	解决	solve
le	了	span
nǐ	你	you
zhù	住	live
de	的	of
fángzi	房子	house
shì	是	Yes
jīguān	机关	organ
guǎnlǐ	管理	manage
de	的	of
háishì	还是	still
fángguǎn	房管	Housing management
fángguǎnsuǒ	房管所	Housing management office
suǒguǎn	所管	In charge
guǎnlǐ	管理	manage
de	的	of
wǒ	我	I
zhù	住	live
de	的	of
fángzi	房子	house
shì	是	Yes
shǔyú	属于	belong
wǒmen	我们	us
jīguān	机关	organ
de	的	of
wèile	为了	for

quánmiàn	全面	comprehensive
quánmiànjiějué	全面解决	Comprehensive solution
jiějué	解决	solve
chéngshì	城市	City
chéngshìjūmín	城市居民	city dweller
jūmín	居民	resident
de	的	of
zhùfáng	住房	housing
zhùfángwèntí	住房问题	housing issues
wèntí	问题	question
bìxū	必须	must
xīngjiàn	兴建	build
yīxiē	一些	Some
gōngyù	公寓	apartment
gōngyùlóu	公寓楼	apartment
zuìjìn	最近	Recently
zhèduàn	这段	this paragraph
shíqī	时期	period
nǐ	你	you
de	的	of
shēntǐ	身体	Body
kě	可	Can
zhēnbù	真不	really not
zhēnbùcuò	真不错	really not bad
bùcuò	不错	good
bùcuòya	不错呀	Not bad
shì	是	Yes
a	啊	what
tiáozhěng	调整	Adjustment
gōngzuò	工作	Work
yǐhòu	以后	after
wǒ	我	I
méiyǒu	没有	No
nàme	那么	So

lèi	累	tired
le	了	span
shēntǐ	身体	Body
hǎoduō	好多	many
le	了	span
sìrénbāng	四人帮	Gang of Four
héngxíng	横行	rampant
de	的	of
shíqī	时期	period
gōngyè	工业	industry
nóngyè	农业	agriculture
wénhuà	文化	culture
wàijiāo	外交	diplomatic
gèfāng	各方	parties
fāngmiàn	方面	aspect
de	的	of
gōngzuò	工作	Work
dōu	都	All
shòudào	受到	received
hěndà	很大	very big
dàying	大影	big shadow
yǐngxiǎng	影响	influences
míngnián	明年	next year
wǒ	我	I
kěnéng	可能	possible
néngdào	能到	Able to
zhōngguó	中国	China
qù	去	go
bùzhī	不知	I don't know
zhīdào	知道	Know
bànshǒuxù	办手续	Formalities
shǒuxù	手续	formalities
shìbúshì	是不是	is not it
búshì	不是	no

dé	得	have to
děng	等	Wait
hěn	很	very
zhǎng	长	long
de	的	of
shíjiān	时间	time
wǒ	我	I
tīngshuō	听说	It is said that
xiànzài	现在	Now
shēnqǐng	申请	Application
qù	去	go
zhōngguó	中国	China
de	的	of
shǒuxù	手续	formalities
yǐjīng	已经	already
jiǎndān	简单	Simple
de	的	of
duō	多	many
le	了	span
nǐ	你	you
kěyǐ	可以	Can
shìshì	试试	try
zài	在	exist
guǎngdà	广大	vast
dàgōng	大工	carpenter
gōngrén	工人	Worker
gànbù	干部	cadre
de	的	of
jījí	积极	positive
nǔlì	努力	effort
xià	下	Down
wǒmen	我们	us
chǎng	厂	factory
xiànzài	现在	Now

de	的	of
kùnnán	困难	difficulty
yídìng	一定	must
dìngnéng	定能	Certain energy
nénggòu	能够	were able
jiějué	解决	solve
gēnjù	根据	according to
guīdìng	规定	Regulation
wǒmen	我们	us
kěyǐ	可以	Can
zài	再	Again
gěi	给	Give
nǐ	你	you
fēnpèi	分配	distribute
yījiān	一间	one
fángzi	房子	house
tài	太	too
xièxiè	谢谢	thanks
le	了	span
zhèyàng	这样	so
zhèyàngér	这样儿	like this
yàngér	样儿	like
yǐlái	以来	since
wǒ	我	I
de	的	of
kùnnán	困难	difficulty
jiù	就	At once
shǎo	少	few
dé	得	have to
duō	多	many
le	了	span
chéngshì	城市	City
qīngnián	青年	youth
jiéhūn	结婚	marry

yǐhòu	以后	after
rúguǒ	如果	if
tāmen	他们	them
xiǎngyào	想要	want to
yíge	一个	One
háizi	孩子	child
zěnmē	怎么	how
zěnmēbàn	怎么办	How to do
ne	呢	Woolen cloth
tāmen	他们	them
yīnggāi	应该	should
yóu	由	Depend on
nǚfāng	女方	woman
fāngxiàng	方向	direction
tā	她	she
de	的	of
gōngzuò	工作	Work
dānwèi	单位	unit
hé	和	and
jiēdào	街道	street
jūmín	居民	resident
jūmínwěi	居民委	residents committee
mínwěi	民委	Ethnic Affairs Commission
wěiyuán	委员	committee
wěiyuánhùi	委员会	committee
tíchū	提出	propose
tíchūshēnqǐng	提出申请	submit application
shēnqǐng	申请	Application
xǔduō	许多	many
jūmín	居民	resident
dōu	都	All
jījī	积极	positive
cānjiā	参加	Participation
le	了	span



wǒmen	我们	us
zhègè	这个	this
dìqū	地区	area
de	的	of
jīběn	基本	basic
jīběnjiànshè	基本建设	infrastructure
jiànshè	建设	construction
yīncǐ	因此	therefore
wǒmen	我们	us
zhèér	这儿	here
de	的	of
zhùfáng	住房	housing
zhùfángwèntí	住房问题	housing issues
wèntí	问题	question
kěyǐ	可以	Can
zǎodiǎn	早点	early
zǎodiǎnér	早点儿	earlier
diǎnér	点儿	a little
jiějué	解决	solve
zhèxiē	这些	These
dàlóu	大楼	building
jīngguò	经过	go through
dìzhèn	地震	earthquake
yǐhòu	以后	after
jīběn	基本	basic
jīběnshàng	基本上	basically
háishi	还是	still
ānquán	安全	Safety
de	的	of
kěshì	可是	But
háiyào	还要	also
zài	再	Again
jiǎnchá	检查	an examination
yīcì	一次	once

xíng	行	Row
zhègè	这个	this
gōngzuò	工作	Work
jiù	就	At once
jiāogěi	交给	hand over
wǒmen	我们	us
ba	吧	Bar

## Frames

- 1      *táng shān dì zhèn de shí hòu # nǐ men jiā de fáng zi shòu dào yǐng xiǎng méi yǒu #*  
唐山地震的时候，你们家的房子受到影响没有？  
During the Tangshan earthquake, was your house affected?  
*wǒ men de fáng zi bù cuò # méi yǒu shén me dà wèn tí #*  
我们的房子不错，没有什么大问题。  
Our place is pretty good, there weren't any big problems.
- 2      *tīng shuō tā men lǐng liǎo jié hūn zhèng yǐ hòu # děng le bù zhǎng de shí jiān zhù fáng wèn tí jiù dé dào jiě jué le #*  
听说他们领了结婚证以后，等了不长的时间住房问题就得到解决了。  
I've heard that after they got their marriage certificate, they waited only a short time before their housing problem got solved.
- 3      *nǐ zhù de fáng zi shì jī guān guǎn lǐ de hái shì fáng guǎn suǒ guǎn lǐ de #*  
你住的房子是机关管理的还是房管所管理的。  
Is the place where you're living managed by your organisation or by the urban housing authority?  
*wǒ zhù de fáng zi shì shǔ yú wǒ men jī guān de #*  
我住的房子是属于我们机关的。  
The place I live in is one that belongs to my organisation.
- 4      *wèi le quán miàn jiě jué chéng shì jū mín de zhù fáng wèn tí # bì xū xīng jiàn yī xiē gōng yù lóu #*  
为了全面解决城市居民的住房问题，必须兴建一些公寓楼。  
In order to solve the problems of city residents in a comprehensive way, it's necessary to build some apartment buildings.
- 5      *zuì jìn zhè duàn shí qī # nǐ de shēn tǐ kě zhēn bù cuò ya #*  
最近这段时期，你的身体可真不错呀。  
Your health has been really good during this recent period.  
*shì a # tiáo zhěng gōng zuò yǐ hòu # wǒ méi yǒu nà me lèi le # shēn tǐ hǎo duō le #*  
是啊，调整工作以后，我没有那么累了，身体好多了。  
Yes, since things got reorganised at work, I haven't been so tired, and my health has been a lot better.
- 6      *sì rén bāng héng xíng de shí qī # gōng yè # nóng yè # wén huà # wài jiāo # gè fāng miàn de gōng zuò dōu shòu dào hěn dà yǐng xiǎng #*  
四人帮横行的时期，工业，农业，文化，外交，各方面的工作都受到很大影响。  
During the period when the Gang of Four was causing trouble, work in the areas of industry, agriculture, culture, and foreign relations were all greatly influenced.
- 7      *míng nián # wǒ kě néng dào zhōng guó qù #*  
明年，我可能到中国去。

I may be going to China next year.

bù zhī dào bàn shǒu xù shì bú shì dé děng hěn zhǎng de shí jiān #

不知道办手续是不是得等很长的时间。

I wonder if you have to wait a long time when going through the procedures.

Wǒ tīng shuō, xiànzài shēnqǐng qù zhōngguó de shǒuxù yǐjīng jiǎndān de duōle. Nǐ kěyǐ shì shì

我听说，现在申请去中国的手续已经简单的多了。你可以试试

I've heard that the procedures for applying to go to China have become much simpler now. You can try

8 zài guǎng dà gōng rén # gàn bù de jī jí nǚ lì xià # wǒ men chǎng xiàn zài de kùn nán yí dìng néng gòu jiě jué #

在广大工人，干部的积极努力下，我们厂现在的困难一定能够解决。

With the vigorous efforts of a vast number of workers and cadre members, the difficulties we now have at our plant can surely be resolved.

9 gēn jù guī dìng # wǒ men kě yǐ zài gěi nǐ fēn pèi yī jiān fáng zi #

根据规定，我们可以再给你分配一间房子。

According to the rules, we can assign you another room.

tài xiè xiè le # zhè yàng ér yǐ lái # wǒ de kùn nán jiù shǎo dé duō le #

太谢谢了，这样儿以来，我的困难就少得多了。

Thank you so much. With this arrangement, I'll have a lot fewer difficulties.

10 chéng shì qīng nián jié hūn yǐ hòu # rú guǒ tā men xiǎng yào yí gè hái zi # zěn me bàn ne #

城市青年结婚以后，如果他们想要一个孩子，怎么办呢？

What do young people in the city do after they're married if they want to have a child?

tā men yīng gāi yóu nǚ fāng xiàng tā de gōng zuò dān wèi hé jiē dào jū mín wěi yuán huì tí chū shēn qǐng #

他们应该由女方向她的工作单位和街道居民委员会提出申请。

They should submit applications by the woman to her place of work, and her residential committee.

11 xǔ duō jū mín dōu jī jí cān jiā le wǒ men zhè gè dì qū de jī běn jiàn shè #

许多居民都积极参加我们这个地区的基本建设。

Many residents are enthusiastically taking part in our area's capital construction.

yīn cǐ # wǒ men zhè er de zhù fáng wèn tí kě yǐ zǎo diǎn ér jiě jué #

因此，我们这儿的住房问题可以早点儿解决。

Because of this, our housing problem here can be solved sooner.

12 zhè xiē dà lóu jīng guò dì zhèn yǐ hòu # jī běn shàng hái shì ān quán de # kě shì hái yào zài jiǎn chá yī cì #

这些大楼经过地震以后，基本上还是安全的，可是还要再检查一次。

After the earthquake, these buildings were basically still safe, but they still need to be checked once again.

xíng # zhè gè gōng zuò jiù jiāo gěi wǒ men ba

行，这个工作就交给我们吧

Ok, hand this work over to us.

---

# Chapter 10. Car

## *A Modular Approach*

Optional Modules

- Restaurant
- Hotel
- Post Office and Telephone
- Car

Sponsored by Agencies of the United States and Canadian Governments

## Objectives of the Car Module

### General

The purpose of the Car Module is to provide you with the linguistic skills you need to use and take care of your car in everyday situations as well as emergencies.

Before starting the Car Module, you should have at least completed the Transportation Module.

### Specific

When you have finished this module, you should be able to:

1. Buy gasoline using the metric system to indicate quantity and ration coupons if necessary. Understand if the attendant offers you high-test or regular gas.
2. Tell an attendant that there isn't enough air in the tires. Ask for air to be put in the tires.
3. Tell an attendant the car windows need cleaning.
4. Explain to a garage attendant where your car has developed problems lately: brakes, headlights, automatic transmission, gear shift, fan belt, exhaust pipe, and so on.
5. Ask for a regular maintenance check up for the car.
6. Tell someone you have a flat tire and whether or not you have a spare tire and tools.
7. Tell someone that you got a traffic ticket and why.
8. State whether or not you have your driver's license and car registration with you.
9. Ask in a collision situation if someone is injured.
10. Understand someone describe in simple terms the damage to their car resulting from an accident.
11. Ask a garage repairman to fix a car which has been in an accident. Find out how long it will take to fix it. Ask for an estimate on cost repairs.

# Unit 1

## Part 1

### Reference List

### Reference Notes

#### Notes on Part 1

**qìyóu piào**: “Gasoline Coupons”. In the PRC, many commodities, such as cloth, food items, watches, bicycles, must be bought with money and ration coupons.

**zú**: “to be enough, to be sufficient.” **Lúntāide qì bù zú le**. is translated here as “the air in the tires isn't enough.” A more literal translation might be “The air in the tires isn't enough anymore.” The negative **bù** used with a marker **le** for new situation expresses a negative condition that has recently come about.

**bōli**: This word literally means “glass”, but is used here to refer to the windows of the car.

**man**: This is the adjectival verb “to be full”.

**Wǒ xiǎng cāyīcā**: “I think I'll wipe it a bit.” In the PRC gas stations sell gas only. Any minor servicing that may be needed, such as cleaning windows and getting air for tires, may be done by the driver himself. Any major servicing must be done at a repair garage.

#### Dialogue Peking:

#### Dialogue Taipei:

#### Notes after Dialogues in Part 1

**Jìyóu jiāhǎo le**: “The oil is added.” In the phrase **jiāhǎo le**, the word **hǎo** is used as the final, element of a compound verb of result. It indicates that the action of the verb has been brought to a successful conclusion. This is discussed in Transportation, Unit 7.

## Part 2

### Reference List

### Reference Notes

#### Notes on Part 2

**máobing**: This word is translated here as “something wrong.” Other translations might be: “defect”, “flaw”, “trouble”, or “problem”.

Tāde diànshì chū máobing le.

His television developed a problem.

A second meaning for **máobing** is “medical problem”, “illness”.

Wǒ shénme máobing yě méiyǒu.

There is nothing wrong with me.

A third meaning is “bad habit”, “odd habit”.

Tā máobing hen dà.

He is very “picky” (odd).

**líng**: This is the adjectival verb “to be sharp, keen”. It can be used to describe people that are intelligent. It can also be used to describe machinery that works well.

Lǎo Wángde érzi hěn líng.

Lǎo Wáng’s son is sharp.

Zhègè jīqì hái líng bu líng?

Does this machine still work well?

**liàng**: “To be bright”. A more literal translation of **You yíge dēng bú**

**liàng le** might be “There is one lamp that does not light up anymore.”

**bǎoyǎng**: “To maintain”. This verb can be used to talk about taking care of a person's body, as well as maintaining machinery.

Nǐyíding děi bǎoyǎng zìjǐ.



You have to take care of yourself.

Tā gāng shēngle háizi, dàifu gào su tā hǎohāorde bǎoyǎng.

After she had just given birth to a child, the doctor told her to take good care of herself.

língjiàn: “spare parts” or simply “parts”. Huàn língjiàn is “to exchange (something) for a spare part”.

## Dialogue Peking

## Dialogue Taipei

## Notes after Dialogues in Part 2

Yǒu shíhou hái huì xihuǒ.: You’ve seen that the auxiliary verb **huì** can mean “know how to, can”, as in *Nǐ huì shuō Yíngwen ma?* Here you see a different meaning: “likely to happen, possible to happen, liable to happen”. Here is another example.

Jīntiān huì xià yǔ ma?

Is it likely to rain today?

## Part 3

## Reference List

## Reference Notes

## Notes after Part 3

bào: “To explode”, “to burst”. This is the verb to use when talking about a “blow out”. If a tire has slowly gone flat, the verb to use is **biě**, “to be flat, sunken, not full”. *Lúntāi biě le.*

fādòngbùqǐlái: “not be able to start up”. *Fādòng* is the verb “to set in motion”, “to start”. *-Qǐlái* is the verb “to rise up” used as the final element in a compound verb of result.

tuídào: Compound verbs with *-dao* as the second syllable must be followed by a location of some sort and often are also followed by *lái* or *qù*.

Bǎ xíngli nádao lóushang qù.

Take the bags upstairs.

Bǎ chē kāidào lùbiarshang qù.

Drive the car to the side of the road.

### Dialogue Peking

### Dialogue Taipei

## Unit Vocabulary List

# Unit 2

## Part 1

### Reference List

### Reference Notes

#### Notes on Part 1

### Dialogue Peking

### Dialogue Taipei

### Notes after Dialogues Part 1

**chāo sù**: “To speed”, more literally, “to exceed the posted speed”

**nádào le**: Here you see another compound verb with **-dào**. But the addition of **-dào** does not add the meaning of “to (someplace)”, as in **tuīdào lùbiānrshang qu**, “push it to the side of the road”, but rather adds the meaning of “to obtain, get”.

**Nǐ nádao nǐde hùzhào le meiyou?**

Did you get your passport?

**dài**: This is the verb “to carry with one, to take or bring with one”. It is sometimes used with the verb **lái** when the meaning is “bring with one”.

Jīntian wǒ wàngle dài wǒde lìshǐ shū.

I forgot to bring my history book today.

Nǐ dài háizi qùle méiyǒu?

Did you take the children with you?

**fákuǎn**: This can be the verb “to issue a fine” or the noun “a fine”. **Fákuǎndān** is literally, “fine money ticket”.

**dānzi**: Here **dānzi** is used to refer to the traffic ticket, a short way of saying **fákuǎndān**. In other situations, **dānzi** often means “list of things”. Here are some examples. Notice that the phrase “to make a list” is **kāi yíge dānzi**, literally “open a list”.

Měige Xīngqīliù wǒ chūqu mǎi dōngxi yǐqián dōu kāi yíge dānzi.

Every Saturday before I go out to buy things, I make a list.

Nǐ néng bu néng bǎ nǐ yào mǎide shū kāi yíge dānzi.

Can you make a list of the books you want to buy?

## Part 2

### Reference List

### Reference Notes

### Notes after Part 2

**chuàng**: “To bump”, often pronounced **zhuàng**. This verb often occurs with the resultative ending — **zhào**, “to meet, to touch, to come into contact with.”

Zhèr dìfāng tài xiǎo dōngxi tài duō. Zǒu lùde shíhòu,  
bù shì chuàngzhào zhuōzi, jiù shì chuàngzhào yǐzi.

It's too close in here, too many things. When you walk, if you're not bumping into tables, then you're bumping into chairs.

**chūlǐ**: “To manage, to handle an affair, to take care of something”

Wǒ bù huì chūlǐ zhèijian shì.

I can't take care of this matter.

Nèijian shì tā chūlǐde hěn hǎo.

He has managed that affair very well.

**chū chēhuò**: “To have a car accident”, or more literally “to produce a car disaster”. This is more serious than the phrase **chū shì**.

**Tā chū chēhuò yǐhòu, hěn jiǔ jǐngchá cái lái.**

After he had the accident, it was a long time until the police came.

**lihai**: “To be severe”, “to be fierce”, “seriously”

**Tā bìngde hěn lihai.**

He is seriously ill.

**chū shì**: “To have an accident, to have something go wrong.” This phrase is used to describe a serious, unpleasant happening.

**Tā jiā chū shì le, wǒmen qù kànkàn.**

Something has happened in his home, let's go see. (e.g., a robbery, an arrest)

## Dialogue Peking

## Dialogue Taipei

## Part 3

## Reference List

## Reference Notes

## Notes after Part 3

**xiūli**: “To fix, to repair”.

**pidài**: “Fan belt”, sometimes simply called **pidài**, which is literally “leather belt”. **Pidài** is used for “belt” in machine terminology as in **sānjiǎopídài**, “V-belt”.

**xiūhào**: “To fix successfully, to repair successfully.” The syllable **-hǎo** indicates the result of the action, that is that the repairs were successfully completed.

**Yào jǐtiān kényi xiūhǎo?**

How many days will it take to fix it?

In the above sentence, the auxiliary verb **yào** means “to need, to require, to take”.

**gūji**: Originally this verb meant simply “to estimate (a figure)”. Now it also means “to guess”.

Zhèjjàn dàyì nǐ gūjì dèi duōshao qián?

How much do you estimate this overcoat costs?

Wǒ gūjì tā míngtiān bǔ huì lái.

My guess is he won't come tomorrow.

In this sentence the auxiliary verb **huì** means “to be likely to”, “to be possible to”.

**tiáozhěng**: “To adjust, to coordinate, to regulate.”

Qǐng bǎ nèige zhōng tiáozhěng yíxià.

Please adjust that clock a little.

**gū jià**: “To estimate a price.”

Zhèige fángzi kéyì mài duōshao qián, nǐ néng gūyigū jià ma?

Can you estimate how much this house can sell for?

## Dialogue Peking

## Dialogue Taipei

## Unit Vocabulary List

## Parts of the car

---

# Chapter 11. Hotel

## General

The purpose of the Hotel Module (HTL) is to provide you with the linguistic skills you need to be able to stay in a hotel and enjoy its services.

Before starting the? Hotel Module, you should have at least completed the Money Module. The Hotel Module may, of course, be done at any later point in the course.

## Specific

When you have finished this module you should be able to:

1. Ask to reserve a room. Specify whether it will be a single or double, with or without air conditioning, with or without heat.
2. Ask about room rates.
3. Understand questions about whether you want a television in your room, whether you need valuables stored, whether you want a guide.
4. Find out whether Western or Chinese food is served in the hotel restaurant.
5. Find out what hours meals are served in the hotel dining room.
6. Ask your room attendant for additional blankets or pillows.
7. Ask to have clothes laundered or cleaned.
8. Ask for tourist guidebooks.
9. Ask for the bill and settle your account.

## Objectives

### Unit 1

#### Part 1

#### Reference List

#### Notes after part 1

**lǚguǎn**; This word is used to refer to small inns and hotel. However, it is not used in the names of hotels.

A: Nǐ zhù lǚguǎn ma?

Do you stay in an hotel?

B: Shì, wǒ zhùzài Běijīng Fàndiàn.

Yes, I stay in the Běijīng hotel.

**qǔchulai:** This is a compound verb meaning “to fetch”, “to get”, “to pick up”.

**xiūxi xiuxi:** You've seen one syllable verbs reduplicated, like **kànkàn** and **děngyideng**. Here you see a two syllable verb reduplicated. The effect is the same. It makes the action more tentative, casual. “Rest a little bit”.

## Peking

A conversation between an American businessman, Mr. White (**Huáitè**) and the guide meeting him at Peking's Capital Airport:

After clearing customs:

At the room

## Notes after part 1 dialogue

It is the policy in the PRC that most visitors be accompanied by a bilingual guide throughout most of their trip. The traveler is met, either by a local party representative, or by some other person responsible for his safety and travel arrangements.

## Part 2

## Reference List

## Notes after Part 2

**yàoshi;** “If”. The word **yàoshi** is what is called a movable before or after the subject, but in any case before the verb in the sentence. This is also true of word like **zuotian**, **míngnian**.

Yàoshi tā bú qù, yě bǔ qù, wǒmen yě bú qù.

If he doesn't go, we won't go either.

Nǐ yàoshi jīntiān wǎnshàng niàn shū, wǒmen míngtiān wǎnshàng qù kàn diànyǐng.

If you study tonight, we'll go to a movie tomorrow night.

Jīntiān tā méi chī zǎodiàn.

He didn't eat breakfast today.

Wǒ míngtiān bù lái shàng kè.

I'm not coming to class tomorrow.

**diànlíng:** “Electric bell”. This word can refer to a buzzer or a bell.

**è:** “To be hungry”. In the sentence, **Nín è le ba.**, the state verb **è** occurs with the marker **le** for new situations. The result is a phrase meaning “you've become hungry, I suppose” or “you're hungry now, I suppose.” The verb indicates what the state is and the marker **le** indicates that the state is new.

## Peking

### Part 3

#### Reference List

#### Notes after Part 3

**tì:** This is a prepositional verb meaning “for”, in the sense of “in place of”.

Lǐ Xiānsheng jīntiān tì Wáng Xiānsheng jiāo shū.

Mr **Lǐ** is teaching class for Mr. **Wáng** today.

**Shànghǎi xiànzài yíding hěn rè le ba!**: Notice that three adverbs precede the verb in this sentence: **xianzài**, **yíding**, **hěn**. The verb in this sentence, **rè** “to be hot”, is a state verb. The marker **le** indicates a new situation, a change of state; “It has become hot”.

**fēiji piào:** In the Money Module you saw the word **piào** used to mean “bill” or “note”. Here it means “ticket”.

## Peking

A conversation between an American and her guide.

### Part 4

#### Reference List

#### Notes after Part 4

**kāishuǐ:** This can mean “boiling water” or “boiled water”. **Liǎng kāishuǐ** means “boiled water which has been cooled”.



**Wǒ bù xiǎng dào cāntīng qù chī fan le:** the marker *le* used in this indicates a new situation. The speaker has changed her mind. Usually she takes her meals in the dining room, but today she doesn't want to leave her room.

**shuixǐ:** This verb means “to wash, to launder”. But it is only used in a situation where it contrasts with **gānxǐ** “to dry clean”. Usually the one syllable verb **xǐ**, “to wash”, is used.

## Peking

A conversation between Miss Smith and the hotel attendant she has just rung for from her room.

## Unit Vocabulary List

### Unit 2

#### Part 1

#### Reference List

#### Notes after Part 1

**kōng:** The adjectival verb **kōng**, “to be vacant, empty” is used here to modify the noun, **fángjiān**, “room”.

**dānrénde / shuāngrénde:** The marker *de* in each of these phrases indicates that they are modifying something. The modified word (**fángjiān**) is omitted, however.

**-jiān:** This is the counter for “rooms”.

**nuǎnqì:** Literally this word means “warm air”. **Yǒu nuǎnqìde fángjiān** is “a room which has heat”.

**jiào:** This is the prepositional verb “to cause” (someone to do or be something). In the sentences below, **gāoxìng** is the adjectival verb “to be nappy”, **shēngqì** is the adjectival verb “to be mad”.

Tā jiào wǒ bú gāoxìng.

He made me unhappy.

Tā jiào wǒ shēngqì.

He made me angry.

Tā jiào wǒ zuò zhèijiàn shì.

He had me do this.

**-de shíhou:** When this follows any verb, verb phrase or sentence, the expressions means “when something was done”.

Niàn dàxuéde shíhou, wǒ zhùzai yíge péngyou jiā.

When I was in college, I lived at a friend's house.

**cǎisè:** This word refers to colors in general and is used to meaning “colored” or “colorful”. **Yánse** is used to refer specifically to one color at a time.

Back at the desk after seeing the room.

## Taipei

A conversation between Mr. Phillips and a desk attendant in a small Taipei Hotel.

## Part 2

### Reference List

### Notes on Part 2

**kèren:** Literally this word means “guests” but its translation changes depending on the context. In a hotel situation, it means “(paying) guests”. In a shopping situation, it means “customer”.

**shěngde:** This may translated as “to avoid”, “lest”, or “so that (something) won't have to happen”. Here are some examples.

Wǒ xiān qù kànyikàn nèige fángzi, shěngde ni qù le.

I'll first go and look at the house, so that you won't have to go.

Nǐ wangle mǎi niúǎi. Wǒ tì ni qù mǎi yíping, shěngde nǐ zài qù le.

You forgot to buy milk. I'll go buy a bottle for you, so that you won't have to go again.

Wǒ jīntian hǎo le. Wǒ kéyì zìjǐ qù le, shěngde nǐ máfan.

I'm better today. I can go myself, and save you the trouble.

**bǎnlai bǎnqu:** The verb “to move(something)” is **bān**. The verbs **lái** and **qù** may follow it to indicate the direction in which something is moved. As directional endings, **lái** and **qù** are toneless.

**zhào:** This is a prepositional verb meaning “according to”.

Zhào tāde yìsi zuò.

Do it according to his idea.

Zhào ta shuō, zhèige shìqing hěn rongyi.

According to what he says, this matter is very easy.

## Taipei

A conversation between an American man and a desk attendant in Taipei.

## Notes after part 3

**jiù shì**: When the adverb **jiù** is used with the verb **shì**, it emphasizes what follow. In this usage, **jiù** has been translated as “precisely”, “exactly”, “just”.

**zài**: This is the word for “again” when talking about future actions.[You is the word for again” when talking about past actions.]

Qǐng ni zài lái.

Please come again.

Bié zài shuō ba.

Don't say that again.

In the sentence ...**wǒ zài gěi ni ná yige**, the conversational translation “I’ll get you another” masks the true functions of **zài** in the sentence. A more literal translation might be “I’ll again get you one.”

**yóulǎn shǒucè**: “tourist guidebook”. **Yóulǎn** is the verb “to go sightseeing”. **Shǒucè** is the noun “handbook”.

**bìchúli / chōutìli**: The word for “closet” is **bìchú**. The word for “drawer” is **chōuti**. The syllable **-li** means “inside”. It may be added to a noun in a locational phrase to allow that noun to function as a place word and to indicate the precise location “inside”. When used as a locational ending, **--li** is toneless. You'll find more about locational endings in Unit 2 of the Transportation Module.

**gěi... dǎ diànhuà**: The word for “phone call” is **diànhuà**. The phrase “to make a phone call” is **dǎ diànhuà**. To say that a phone call is made to someone in particular, use the prepositional verb **gěi** followed by the name, then the phrase **dǎ diànhuà**.

Nǐ gěi shéi dǎ diànhuà?

Who are you calling?

Wǒ zuotian gěi mǔqin dǎ diànhuà le.

I called mother yesterday.

## Taipei

A conversation between an American woman and the hotel attendant taking her to her room.

## Part 4

### Reference List

### Notes on Part 4

**suàn zhàng:** Suàn is the verb “to calculate”. Zhàng is the word for “accounts” or “debts”.

**guò:** This is the verb “to pass”, either physically, as in **Guòle lùkǒu, wàng yòu zǒu.** “After you've passed the intersection, go to the right.”, or temporally, as in **Guò jítian, zài shuō ba.** “Wait a few days, then talk about it.”

### Taipei

A conversation between an American and a desk clerk in a hotel in Taiwan.

## Vocabulary

### Things in a Hotel Room

---

# Chapter 12. Post Office and Telephone

## Objectives

### General

The purpose of the Post Office and Telephone Module (PST/TEL) is to provide you with the linguistic skills you need to mail things, make phone calls and send telegrams.

### Specific

When you have finished this module you should be able to:

1. Locate a mailbox. Locate the nearest post office.
2. Buy postage for an air mail letter, a registered letter, aerogram, regular letter or postcard.
3. Buy letter paper, envelopes, aerograms and postcards.
4. Ship packages by sea or by air.
5. Insure packages or letters you send.
6. Locate a telegraph office.
7. Send a telegram.
8. Find the nearest public telephone.
9. Ask for help in using a phone? directory.
10. Make a phone call, ask to speak with someone. Understand simple replies such as "that line is busy", "he is not here now" or "he will call you back".
11. Answer the phone and understand who the caller wishes to speak with. Tell the caller you will look for that person. Tell him whether the person he wishes to speak with is there, is busy, or not there.
12. Ask someone to speak louder or tell him you cannot hear him clearly.

## Unit 1

### Part 1

#### Reference List

#### Notes after Part 1

**yìfēng xìn**: -fēng is the counter for letters and other things with envelopes.

**-céng**: Counter for Floors of buildings.

**guàhào xìn**: Guàhào is the verb “to register”. It is used here as a modifier. It precedes the noun it modifies.

Peking:

On his way out to mail some things, an American asks the service attendant for the Floor of his hotel for some information.

### Part 2

#### Reference List

#### Notes after Part 2

**tīē**: This is the verb “to stick something on or to something else”.

**Běnnhìde píngxìn/wàidìde píngxìn**: In the PRC mail rates differ depending on whether something is going to someplace in the city, out of the city, or out of the country. For the last two categories air mail service is available.

**běnnhì**: “This city”.

**wàidì**: “Foreign place”, “outside this city”.

Peking:

A conversation at the Post Office.

#### Notes after dialogue in part 2

**shízhāng yóupiào, wǔge hángkōng yóujiǎn**: Notice how both the counter -zhāng and the counter -ge are used here to talk about Flat objects. Although the counter -zhāng would be correct for both nouns, the speaker feels free to use -ge also.

## Part 3

### Reference List

### Notes after Part 3

**tì**: This is the prepositional verb meaning “in place of, for”.

Mèimei tì wǒ qù mǎi cài.

Little sister is going to go buy food for me (instead of me).

**shàngtōu**: -Tóu is a syllable like -biar. When added to a direction word, it changes it into a place name. The syllable -tóu, however, cannot be added to as many different direction words as -biar can. (See also final reference notes Directions Unit Five.)

Xiǎomàibù zài fàndiàn lǐtōu.

The variety shop is in the hotel.

Fàndiàn wàitōu yǒu yige yóutǒng.

Outside the hotel is a mailbox.

**xiǎoxīn**: “To be careful”.

**qīngfàng**: “Fragile”, or more literally “to put lightly”.

**zuihǎo**: This word acts as an adverb, coming after the subject **nǐ** and before the verb phrase. The word **zuihǎo** is used in politely offering advice to someone, not in warning them what they'd better do.

Taipei:

A conversation at the Post Office.

## Part 4

### Reference List

### Notes after Part 4

**bǎ dìzhí**: In sentence No. 28 the object comes before the verb and is preceded by the marker **bǎ**. Although it is common for an object to come before the verb marked by **bǎ**, not all objects can do so. The object in a **bǎ**-phrase is the direct object of an action verb. It is a particular know thing, not a new

idea about to be introduced into the conversation. The action verb in the sentence is usually more than one syllable or followed by something else, such as a place name. For more on *bǎ*, see Transportation Unit 3 and Meeting Unit 5.

Qǐng ni bǎ shū fàngzai zhuōzishang.

Please put the book on the table.

Tā bǎ tāde chē mài le.

He sold his car.

*diànxùnjú*: “Telegraph Office.” In the PRC the word used is *diànxùnjú*.

Taipei:

Mr. White, an American, is talking to a Chinese friend.

(Now he speaks to the clerk at the Telegraph Office.)

(He writes down what he wants to say and hands it to the clerk.)

Peking:

An American staying at the Peking Hotel asks the service attendant on her Floor for some information.

## Unit Vocabulary List

### Unit 2

#### Part 1

#### Reference List

#### Notes after Part 1

*néng*: “to be able to”. Although this verb overlaps in meaning with *kéyi*, “can, may”, there are definite differences. The verb *néng* is more general, while *kéyi* has the narrower meaning “be able to” the sense of “be permitted to do so by someone”.

Peking:



## Part 2

### Reference List

### Notes after part 2

**Qǐng dà yìdiǎr shēng shuō**: Notice that the phrase describing the manner of action, **dà yìdiǎr shēng** (with a little bit louder voice), comes before the main verb **shuō**, “to speak”.

**qīngchū**: This is the adjectival verb “to be clear”.

Peking:

(The receptionist puts the call through.)

(He speaks a little louder.)

## Part 3

### Reference List

### Notes after part 3

... **zhàn zhe xiàn ne**: -Zhe is the marker of DURATION of actions and states. It indicates that an action or state lasted (or lasts) for an amount of time. The marker ne marks ONGOING actions and states. In this expression the marker -zhe tells us that at some time the line CONTINUES to be occupied, and the marker ne tells us that this is GOING ON now. -Zhe is used in sentences to describe activities which last over a period of time, whether that time is past, present or future. A verb plus -zhe in Chinese often corresponds to the “-ing” form of the verb in English.

**Zǒuzhe qù kényi ma?**

Can you get there by walking?

**Tā hái bìngzhe ne.**

He is still sick.

**tīngdǒng**: This is a compound verb meaning “to understand (by listening)”.

**guò**: This is the verb “to pass, cross, go through.” It can be used when talking about time or space.

**Guò liǎngtiáo jiē, wàng zuǒ zǒu.**

Go past two streets and go to the left.

Guò liǎngfēn zhōng, wǒ zài lái.

I'll be back in two minutes.

Taipei:

## Part 4

### Reference List

### Reference Notes

Taipei:

(After the young lady finds the number, he dials it. A servant picks up the phone.)

(He hears the servant say...)

## Unit Vocabulary List

---

# Chapter 13. Customs Surrounding

## *Marriage, Birth and Death*

### Objectives

#### General

The purpose of the Module on Customs Surrounding Marriage, Birth and Death is to furnish you with the linguistic skills and cultural Background information you need to take part in conversations about changing attitudes and practices with regard to courtship, marriage, birth, divorce, death and funerals in China, and to conduct yourself in a culturally appropriate manner when you come in contact with Chinese people at the time of one of these significant events in their lives.

Before starting the MBD module, you should have at least completed the Arranging a Meeting Module. You may, of course, use this module at any later point in the course.

#### Specific

When you have finished this module, you should be able to:

1. Ask about the age when most people get married.
2. Ask about how a wedding is celebrated and what differences there are in marriage practices between the city and the country.
3. Ask about the current local customs regarding gifts for weddings, births, and funerals.
4. Ask about the frequency of divorce.
5. Talk about the functions and statuses of the people who play a role in arranging a present-day traditional marriage.
6. Ask questions about the bride, the groom, and the ceremony in a modern-day wedding.
7. Ask about population control efforts, changes in population control policy, restrictions on young people having children, what factors are taken into consideration in family planning, and how old most couples are when they have children.
8. Congratulate a new mother. Ask about a new-born infant's health, appetite, and weight, and describe the baby in terms of traditional values.
9. Talk about the traditional beliefs and practices with regard to the mother's health before and after giving birth.
10. Present condolences to someone whose relative has died, comfort and express concern for that person.
11. Ask, after deciding if appropriate, about the circumstances of the death and the funeral.

12. Apologize for not being able to attend a funeral.

13. Ask what attire and behavior are appropriate when attending a funeral.

## Unit 1: Weather and Terrain

### Part 1: Winter and Summer

#### Reference List

#### Reference Notes

#### Notes on Part 1

tíchàng: “to advocate, to promote, to initiate, to recommend, to encourage”

Zhè shì shéi tíchàngde?

Who advocates this?

niánqīng: “to be young” (literally “years-light” or “years green”. There are two different characters with the same sound used for the second syllable.)

Tā zhènmè niánqīng, zhènmè piàoliang!

She’s so young and so beautiful!

Wǒ niánqīngde shíhou, bù xǐhuan kàn shū.

When I was young, I didn’t like to read.

Zhèixiē niánqīng rén dōu ài kàn diànyǐng.

These young people all love to go to the movies.

Nèige niánqīngde Zhōngguó rén, Yīngwén shuōde bú cuò.

That young Chinese person speaks pretty good English.

jiéhūn: “to get married”, also pronounced jiēhūn. Notice that in Chinese you talk of “getting married”, while in English we talk of “being married”. And it follows grammatically that jiéhūn is a process verb, not a state verb. Jiéhūn will always be seen with an aspect marker such as le or will be negated with méi.

Tāmen jiéhūnle méiyóu?

Have they gotten married yet? (This is the equivalent of 'Are they married?')

Nǐ jiéhūn duō jiǔ le?

How long have you been married?

Jiéhūn is a verb-object compound, literally meaning “to knot marriage”. Jié and hūn can be separated by aspect markers, such as de or guo.

Nǐ shì shénme shíhou jiéde hūn? OR Nǐ shì shénme shíhou jiéhūnde?

When did you get married?

Wang Xiānsheng jiéguo sāncì hūn.

Mr. Wang has been married three times.

To say “get married to someone” use the pattern gēn ... jiéhūn.

Tā gēn shéi jiéhūn le?

To whom did he get married?

### Notes on №2

wǎnliàn wǎnhūn: “late involvement and late marriage”. Wǎnliàn is an abbreviation for wan liàn’ài, “mature love”, (liàn’ài means “romantic love, courtship”), and wǎnhūn is an abbreviation for wǎn jiéhūn, “late marriage”. This policy has been promoted since the 1960s, but only actively enforced since the 1970s. It is difficult to generalize about the required minimum marriage ages, as they differ from city to city and might be nonexistent in certain rural and national minority areas, where the government is trying to increase the population. The minimum age has been progressively raised over the years, until 1978 when the rules were eased a bit. In general, if the combined ages of the couple exceeds fifty years (or the female’s age exceeds the male’s), then the marriage is allowable.

### Notes on №3

qīngnián: “youth, young person”. Do not confuse this noun with the adjectival verb niánqīng, “to be young”. (See Notes on No. 1)

In this sentence, the noun qīngnián is used to modify the noun lǎoshī, “teacher”.

A:	Wǒ jìde sānshinián yīqián nǐ tèbié ài chī táng.
	I remember that thirty years ago you especially loved to eat candy.
B:	Shì a, nèi shíhou wǒmen dōu háishi qīngnián. Xiànzài lǎo le, yá bù xíng le.

Yes. Back then we were all young people. Now I'm old, and my teeth aren't good any more.

nǚlì: “to be hardworking, to diligent”, or as an adverb, “diligently, be hard”.

Tā suīrán hěn nǚlì, kěshì tāde Yīngwén háishi bù xíng. Although he's very hardworking, his English is still not good enough.

Wǒ děi nǚlì xué Zhōngwén.

I have to study Chinese very hard.

#### Notes on №4

nóngcūn: “rural areas, countryside, village”.

Nóngcūnde kōngqì bǐ chénglǐ hǎoduō le.

The air in the country is much better than in the city.

Tāmen Jiā zài nóngcūn zhù.

Their family lives in the country.

shíxíng: “to practice, to carry out (a method, policy, plan, reform)”.

Nǐ zhèige jìhuà hěn hǎo, kěshì wǒ xiǎng bù néng shíxíng.

This plan of yours is very good, but I don't think it can be carried out.

Zhèige bànfa yǐjīng shíxíngle sānge xīngqīle, kěshì jiéguǒ bù hǎo.

This method has been in practice for three weeks, but the results aren't good.

#### Notes on №5

chéng: “to constitute, to make, to become”.

Tāde xuéxí yìzhí hěn hǎo, biè yǐhòu ānpai gōngzuò bù chéng wèntí.

His studies have been good all along, so after he graduates, setting up a job for him won't constitute a problem.

Wǒde nǚer xiànzài chéngle jiějie, tā zhēn xǐhuan tāde xiǎo mèimei.

My daughter has become an older sister. She really likes her little sister.

fēngqì: “established practice, custom; general mood”.

Xiànzài yǒu bù shǎo qīngnián bú yào zài shāngdiànli mài dōngxì, zhèizhǒng fēngqì zhēn bù hǎo.

There are a lot of young people now who don't want to sell things in shops. This practice is really bad.

Xiànzài zài Zhōngguó, yòu yǒule niàn shūde fēngqì.

Now in China there is again a general atmosphere of study.

### Notes on №6

hé: “with”. You have seen he used between two nouns or pronouns as a conjunction meaning “and”. Here you see it used as a prepositional verb meaning “with”. The word gēn, which you have seen, also has both meanings, “and” and “with”.

Formerly, gēn was the most frequently used word for “with” or “and” in the Mandarin spoken in North China, and he was more often written. But he has come into wide conversational use in pùtōnghuà. In addition to this variation, school children in Taiwan are sometimes taught to say hàn instead of he, which is the same character with another pronunciation.

Generally speaking, if you use hé or gēn you should not have any problem being understood by any speaker of Standard Chinese.

liàn'ài: “to fall in love, to be in love; romantic love, courtship”. This is the socially acceptable way to describe a romantic relationship between two people. Notice that liàn'ài can be used both as noun and as a verb. (Liàn'ài is written with an apostrophe to show where the syllable division is: liàn ài, not lià nài.)

Tāmen liàn'ài le hǎojinián le.

They've been in love for quite a few years now.

Tāmen xiànzài kǎishǐ liàn'ài le.

They've just started to fall in love.

Womende liàn'ài zhī you sāntiān, jiù bù xíng le.

Our love is only three days old and already it's over.

The noun liàn'ài is often used in the phrase tán liàn'ài, “to be romantically involved” or more literally “to talk of love”.

Tāmen liǎngge tán liàn'ài yǐjīng tánle hěn jiǔ le.

The two of them have been in love for quite a while now.

Wǒ méiyǒu hé tā tán liàn'ài.

I'm not in love with her.

In China young people tend to go out in groups. When two people are seen going out alone, then it is assumed that they have serious intentions for the future.

### Notes on №7

kě: “really, certainly”. This is an adverb which intensifies state verbs. Kě can be used before a negative.

Tāmen liǎngge kě hǎo le!

The two of them are very good friends.

Kě bú shì ma!

Isn't that so! (Really! or No kidding!)

Nà kě bù xíng!

That really won't do!

Nà kě bú shì yíjiàn hǎo shì.

That's really not a good thing.

Nǐ kě yào xiǎoxīn!

You've got to be careful!

Although some Chinese are fond of using the word kě, to other Chinese it may sound too full of local color with which they do not identify.

### Dialogue in Peking

An American exchange student talks with her language teacher. They are both in their late twenties.

### Notes on the Dialogue

...zài èrshiwǔliūsù yǐhòu cái jiéhūn: This is quite a change from Imperial times, when females might be married off at age thirteen and males at age six so as to insure the family fortunes or fend off economic difficulties later. Nonetheless, regulations are less strict in the countryside today, where one can marry perhaps at age twenty.

## Part 2: Spring and Fall

### Reference List

### Reference Notes

### Notes on Part 2

yíshì: 'ceremony, function' This can be used to refer to a range of different ceremonies, from the signing of a treaty or agreement to the taking of marital vows.



In old China, marriages were celebrated extravagantly. It was not uncommon to find families going into debt because of the joyous occasion, which marked a new generation added to the family line. This elaborate ritual served to strengthen familial bonds and the newlyweds' feeling of obligation owed to the family.

In PRC cities of today, lack of extra money and coupons to purchase food for guests, celebration space, and free time for preparation limit the celebration often to procedural formality alone—registration with the local police bureau. Wedding dinners may still be enjoyed in the countryside, where there are fewer restrictions on time and food.

### Notes on №9

qīnqi: 'relatives\* Qīnqi is slightly different from the English word 'relatives' in that it does not include one's immediate family, that is parents or children, but is used to refer to all other relatives. (One's immediate family are called Jiālì rén.)

Nǐmen Jiā qīnqi duō ma?

Do you have a lot of relatives in your family?

Wǒmen Jiā qīnqi kě duō le!

We have lots of relatives in our family.

sònggei: 'give (a gift) to ...' The verb song has several meanings. One is 'to send', as in Wǒ bā nǐde xíngli sòngshàngqu le, 'I sent your luggage upstairs.' Another is to give someone something as a present.

Here you see song with the prepositional verb gěi 'for, to' after it. You have also seen Jiāogei, 'to hand over to ..., to submit to...'. When gěi is used after the main verb as a prepositional verb, it must be followed by the indirect object, that is, the person or thing to whom something is given. Gěi can also be used this way with jì 'to send', and mǎi 'to sell'.

Wǒ bǎ zhèjiàn yīfu jìgei wǒ mèimei le.

I sent this piece of clothing to my younger sister.

Tā bǎ fángzi mǎigei wǒ le.

He sold his house to me.

In these examples the direct object, clothing or house, is up front in the sentence, making it necessary to use gěi to put the indirect object after the main verb. This usually happens in sentences where the object is specific and the bǎ construction is preferred. When song is followed by an indirect object, however, the gěi is usually optional.

Wǒ yǎo song ta yíge xiǎo lǐwù.

I am going to give him a small present.

Wǒ yǎo sònggei ta yíge xiǎo lǐwù.

I am going to give him a small present.

## **Part 3: Terrain**

**Reference List**

**Reference Notes**

**Unit Vocabulary List**

## **Unit 2: Clothing**

**Part 1: Buying Clothes**

**Reference List**

**Reference Notes**

**Part 2: Buying Clothes**

**Reference List**

**Reference Notes**

**Having Clothes made**

**Unit Vocabulary List**

## **Unit 3: Hair Care**

**Part 1: At the Barber**

**Reference List**

**Reference Notes**

**Part 2: At the Hairdresser**

**Reference List**

**Reference Notes**

**Unit Vocabulary List**

**Unit 4: In the Home**

**Part 1: Personal Belongings**

**Reference List**

**Reference Notes**

**Part 2: Parts of the Home**

**Reference List**

**Reference Notes**

**Taking Care of Children**

**Unit Vocabulary List**

**Unit 5: Minor Physical Complains**

**Part 1: Colds and Fevers**

**Reference List**

**Reference Notes**

**Part 2: Stomach Ailments**

**Reference List**

**Reference Notes**

**Taking Temperature and Blood Pressure**

**Unit Vocabulary List**

**Unit 6: Accidents and Difficulties**

**Part 1: Losing a Driver's license**

**Reference List**

**Reference Notes**

**Part 2: A Motorcycle Accident**

**Reference List**

**Reference Notes**

**Crossing into a Restricted Area**

**Unit Vocabulary List**

**Appendix**

Unit Vocabulary Characters

**Parts of the Body**

**Medical Conditions and Illness**

**Furniture and Household Items**

**Parts of the House**

---

# Chapter 14. Restaurant

## Objectives

### General

The purpose of the Restaurant Module (RST) is to acquaint you with Chinese cuisine and eating customs and to provide you with the linguistic skills you need to be able to order food in a restaurant or to dine at home.

### Specific

When you have finished this module, you should be able to:

1. Name four foods or dishes suitable as a snack or as an in-between meal.
2. Name four dishes in Chinese you might order for dinner.
3. Name 5 types of meat, fish or fowl.
4. Translate the names of 10 Chinese dishes (either soups, main courses, or desserts) into English.
5. List the food which accompanies various main courses: rice, noodles, pancakes, steamed bread, flower rolls.
6. Order a Western-style breakfast.
7. Order one of the "fixed meals" offered in small restaurants.
8. Order Mongolian Barbecue or Mongolian Hot Pot.
9. Discuss with a friend what to order for a snack.
10. Ask for a menu and for help in reading it. Discuss with the waiter or waitress what the various dishes are. Ask for suggestions in ordering the meal.
11. Comment on the meal: how the dishes were made, which were most pleasing, and when you've had enough.
12. Ask for the check and ask to have the tip figured into the total.
13. Call to make reservations for a dinner party. Discuss the menu and cost of the dinner.
14. List the different types of courses which go to make up a banquet: cold dishes, main courses, soups, and desserts.
15. Partake in a formal banquet: toasting friends, wishing them well, and responding to the host's hospitality.

# Unit 1

## Part 1

### Reference List

### Reference Notes

#### Notes on Part 1

chī: “to eat”. The verb “to eat” is often expressed using a general object compound, chī fàn, instead of the simple verb chī.

Nǐ chī fàn le ma?
#####
Have you eaten?
Wǒ hái méi chī fàn.
#####
I haven't eaten yet.

suíbiàn ##: This word meaning “as you please”, or more literally “following convenience”, has a variety of uses.

Nǐ suíbiàn mài ba.
#####
Buy what you want.
Nǐ qù bu qu? Suí nǐde biàn ba.
#####
Are you going? Do what you like.

guōtiē ##: This has been translated here as “fried dumpling”, but actually a guōtiē differs from a dumpling in several respects. We usually think of a dumpling as a solid lump of leavened dough dropped in soup to cook. A guōtiē, however, is made of thin, unleavened dough, which serves as a wrapper for a filling. This filling may be Chinese cabbage, port, beef, lamb, or any combination, thereof. Secondly, a guōtiē is not dropped in soup, but is steamed and fried, so that the bottom is crisp and the top is soft.

bāozi ##: This is a round of steamed bread filled with salty stuffing (cabbage, pork, beef, shrimp, etc.) or sweet stuffing (red bean puree, walnuts, almonds, etc.). The steamed bread is made from a raised dough and forms a thick bun, somewhat similar in concept to a hamburger.

suān là tāng ###: A thick spicy soup made of pork, white bean curd, “red bean curd” (actually dried chicken or pork blood), dried tiger lily flowers, mushrooms, bamboo shoots and egg.

liǎngwǎn... ###...: The word for “bowl”, wǎn #, is used as a counter here.



**Dialogue Taipei**

A conversation in a small restaurant.

**Notes on the Dialogue**

Hái yào jǐge bāozi, zěnmeyàng?: The toneless syllable ji- means “a few” or “several”. It may be difficult to distinguish between jǐge. “a few”, from jǐge, “how many” in rapid speech. Usually there will be other clues such as intonation and context to help you distinguish them. This is discussed again in Unit 3 of the Directions Module.

Bú yào diǎn tài duō le.: The phrase bú yào is used to mean “don't” in sentences expressing a command. You'll learn more about this in the Transportation Module. The marker le for new situation is used here to reinforce the idea of “excessive”. Whenever a speaker says something is excessive, he is actually saying that it has BECOME excessive.

Nǐmen diǎn diǎn shénme?: The first word diǎn is the verb “to order”. The second word diǎn (from yìdiǎn, “a little”) means “some”.

Èrshǐge guōtiē, sìge bāozi: You can tell from the amount ordered that the guōtiē are more or less bite-sized, while the bāozi are larger.

**Dialogue Taipei**

A conversation between an American student and a Chinese friend in front of a small restaurant.

**Notes on the Dialogue**

xiǎochīdiàn: This is a small place where you can grab something to eat. (Xiǎochī means “snack”.) If you are in a city in China, you are probably not far from one. A xiǎochīdiàn is often run by one or two people. It may be arranged so that the cooking area faces the street, in which case you'll probably walk through the kitchen as you head for a table. Putting the kitchen at the front, facing the street, makes for better ventilation and allows people on the street to see and smell what is being cooked. Inside you are likely to find small tables without tablecloths, and stools. There is generally no menu, but some of the dishes may be written on a blackboard or on red pieces of paper which are hung on the wall. Since the xiǎochīdiàn is often a small operation, it may only offer a few things or it may specialize in serving one type of food, such as noodles or dumplings. The word xiǎo in xiǎochīdiàn, refers not to the size of the establishment, but to the types of food offered.

Tāmen dōu yǒu shénme?: The word dōu in this sentence refers to the object, not the subject. In other words, the sentence is translated as “What all do they have?” in this context. In another conversation the same sentence might mean “What do they all have?”.

This type of question with dōu expects an answer with more than one item mentioned. The dōu may be thought to refer to the object in the answer.

Nǐ dōu mǎi shénme le?

What all did you buy?

Wǒ mǎile shíge bāozi, sānjīn píngguo, liùpíng qìshuǐ.

I bought ten bāozi, three catties of apples, six bottles of soda.

But notice that in the answer dōu is NOT used even though the object is plural in number or a series of items.

## Part 2

### Reference List

### Reference Notes

#### Notes on Part 2

zhēng jiǎo: These are crescent-shaped dumplings filled with cabbage and meat which are steam cooked. The steaming is done by-placing the dumplings in a bamboo basket, which is one layer in a stack of bamboo baskets called a zhēng lóng, and then placing the whole stack over a container of boiling water.

gěi wo lái ...: The verb lái here means not “to come” but “to bring” since it is followed by a noun. The word gěi is the prepositional verb “for”.

yílóng zhēng jiǎo: Steamed dumplings are sold by the basket and served in the basket that they are steamed in. The word for one tier of such baskets is used as a counter, -lòng (yílòng, liànglòng. etc.).

tāng miàn: This is the name for a class of dishes made of noodles and soup. Unlike the Western idea of soup with some noodles, tāng miàn is basically noodles with some soup added. Because Northern China is a wheat growing area, noodles are a staple in the diet of that region. A bowl of noodles can be used to make a side dish for a large meal, or, with a little soup and meat added, can be a meal in itself. Noodles are commonly made in six-to-ten-foot lengths in China, and are regarded as a symbol of longevity.

chǎo miàn: One of the verbs translated “to fry” is chǎo. It is also sometimes translated as “stir fry”. The Chinese language has several verbs meaning “to fry”. Chǎo means to fry in a little oil, stirring rapidly and constantly, not unlike sautéing.

niúròu miàn: This dish consists of noodles in soup with pieces of beef. The word for “beef” is niúròu, literally “cow”, niú and “meat”, ròu. In the names of Chinese dishes, the thing the dish is primarily composed of, in this case noodles, is at the end of the phrase. Those words coming before describe the additional foods with which the dish is prepared or the style in which it is prepared.

jiǎozi: A crescent-shaped dumpling, made of white dough and stuffed with a mixture of meat and scallions or mixed vegetables. Jiǎozi may be served steamed, zhēng jiǎo or boiled, shuǐ jiǎo. It is said that Marco Polo took the idea of these dumplings back to Italy inspiring the creation of ravioli.

ròusī miàn: This is noodles in soup with shreds of pork and vegetables. Actually, the word ròu means simply “meat”, not “pork”. But the basic meat of China has always been pork, and therefore ròu on a menu refers to pork unless otherwise specified.

shénmede: This word, used after a series of nouns, means “and so on” or “etcetera”.

---

Qishuǐ, píjiǔ, shénmede dōu dǎi mǎi.

---

We need to buy soda, beer, and so on.

---

## Dialogue Taipei

A conversation between a waiter and a customer at a small eatery.

## Notes on the Dialogue

duōshaoge: The word duōshao may be used either with or without a counter.

sānxiān: This word occurs in the names of rice dishes, noodle dishes and soups. It can be roughly translated as “three delicacies”, more literally, “three fresh”. It means that the dish is made with two different meats, such as chicken and pork, and a seafood, such as shrimp, in addition to the vegetables.

## Dialogue Taipei

A conversation at another small eatery.

## Part 3

## Reference List

## Reference Notes

## Notes on Part 3

chǎo jīdàn: This is literally translated as “fried eggs”. Since chǎo means “to stir fry”, however, it actually refers to scrambled eggs.

kǎo miànbāo: “Toast”. This phrase is the verb kǎo “to roast” and the word for “bread”, miànbāo.

Qǐng zài lái...: Here again you see the verb lái used to mean “bring”. The word zài is the adverb “again”. Literally translated, this phrase means something like “Please again bring...”. This is the standard way to ask someone to bring more of something.

shāobing: This is a baked roll with layers of dough and covered with sesame seeds. It comes in two shapes, one oblong and the other round like an English muffin, only not as thick. It is usually eaten at breakfast.

liǎnggēn yóutiáo: This is a long, twisted, puffy roll which is deep-fried. It resembles a cruller, but it is not sweet. Literally, the name means “oil stick”. It is usually eaten at breakfast, along with dòujiāng and perhaps a shāobing. The counter for long, thin objects, like yóutiáo is -gēn.

dòujiāng: This is a liquid produced when bean curd, dòufu, is made from soybeans. It is white, resembling milk, and high in protein. It may be flavored so that it is sweet or salty. It is sometimes called soybean milk.

tiánde/xiānde: Many foods in China such as bāozi and dòujiāng come in two sorts: tiánde and xiānde. Although the Chinese categorize foods as either salty or sweet, this does not mean that food which is labeled “salty” is terribly salty. Sometimes the label “salty” simply means “not sweet”.

## Dialogue Peking

A conversation at the Peking Hotel.

## Notes on the Dialogue

Breakfast at the Peking Hotel: The Peking Hotel is said to have the best Western style food in the city. While they serve both Western and Chinese style lunches and dinners, they are not always prepared to serve certain kinds of Chinese breakfast foods, such as shāobing and yóutiáo. If you would like to eat these typical Chinese breakfast foods you should ask in advance.

xīfān: This is another breakfast food. It is a white porridge made of rice and water. In the northern parts of China it is eaten along with salted pickles, ham, salted vegetables, salted eggs or peanuts.

mántou: “Steamed bread”. While the word miànbāo refers to Western style bread, mántou refers to a Chinese version of bread, a large steamed roll made of white dough. It is heavy and moist with no crust.

## Unit Vocabulary List

### Unit 2

#### Part 1

#### Reference List

#### Notes on Part 1

kèfàn: This refers to a type of meal in which soup, a main dish, rice and tea are all served for one price. Much of the meal is prepared ahead of time, which makes it quick, convenient and inexpensive for the customer. It is referred to here as a “fixed meal”. Other translations are “fixed dinner”, “blue plate special” and “combination plate”.

Kèfàn jiù yǒu yīzhǒng ma?: When you ask this question, the person you are speaking to might think you are asking about the different price categories that kèfàn is available in. Restaurants which offer kèfàn often have an inexpensive, a moderate and a top-of-the-line kèfàn each day.

cài: This is the word for any dish which is not soup, rice or noodles.

yòng: Like the word gěi, “to give”, the word yòng can act as either a full verb or a prepositional verb. As a full verb, it means “to use”. As a prepositional verb, it means “with”. Here are some examples of both usages.

Nǐ kěyǐ yòng wǒde diànshàn.

You can use my electric fan.

Tā yòng kuàizi chī fàn.

He eats with chopsticks.

jī: While often the word for a type of meat, such as “beef”, niúròu, contains the syllable ròu, “meat”, the word for chicken does not.

xiàci: The words for “last time”, “this time” and “next time” are formed according to the same principle as you've learned for other time words, like “last week” and “last month”.

shàngcì		last time
shàngge xīngqī		last week
shàngge yuè		last month
zhècì		this time
zhège xīngqī		this week
zhège yuè		this month
xiàcì		next time
xiàge xīngqī		next week
xiàge yuè		next month

## Dialogue Taipei

A conversation between an American woman and a Chinese friend, who are out to eat on their lunch hour.

## Notes on the Dialogue

Nà: At the beginning of the sentence, nà means “then” or “well then”.

Yǒu sān-sìzhǒng: “three or four kinds”. Two consecutive numbers may be used together to give the idea of an approximate figure. The exception to this rule is that 10 and multiples of 10 can not combine with the number coming immediately before or after them. You will learn this in more detail in the Transportation Module.

Hǎo. Nǐ yào yíge qīngjiāo niúròu.: While at an informal meal each person at the table may choose one of the dishes, everyone at a Chinese meal eats from all the dishes, which are put in the center of the table.

## Dialogue Taipei

A conversation in a small restaurant.

## Notes on the Dialogue

Hǎo bu hǎochī?: The compound hǎochī, “to be tasty”, can be broken apart to form a question.

Kèfàn dōu yǒu shénme yàngde cài?: The adverb dōu in this sentence refers to the plural subject kèfàn, “fixed dinners”.

## Part 2

### Reference List

### Reference Notes

#### Notes on Part 2

xiārén: This word refers to small shrimp without shells.

dòufu: “Bean curd”. This is a soft white substance made from soybeans, with the consistency of jello or custard. It has only a faint taste, but is rich in protein and minerals. It is a staple found all over the Orient and may be found in everyday food as well as festive foods.

bú cuò: This phrase is used for “not bad”, in the sense of “pretty good”, “pretty well”, “all right”.

Bié kèqì: Because this phrase is one of the most basic phrases in the system of Chinese customs and manner, it is difficult to translate. Here, it may be translated as “Don't be formal.” or “Don't stand on ceremony.” But it should be viewed in context to determine its full meaning.

bǎo: This is an adjectival verb meaning “to be satisfied”, literally “to be full”.

Nǐ duō chī yidiǎn: Notice the word order of this sentence. The word duō is used as an adverb, and therefore precedes the verb chī. The word yidiǎn is used as the object of the action and therefore follows the verb.

Wǒ zài chī: The word zài can be used as a marker of ongoing action. You'll learn more about this in the Meeting Module.

### Dialogue Taipei

#### Notes on the Dialogue

Nǐ zài diǎn yíge ba.: The word zài here means “additionally” or “more”.

Wǒ xiǎng tài duō le, Bú yào cài le ba.; Here are two examples of the marker le for new situations. In the first sentence it is necessary to use le to indicate that the food order has now become too much. In the second sentence, it is necessary to use the marker le to indicate that the meat and vegetable is not wanted anymore.

### Dialogue Taipei

At another small restaurant.

## Notes on the Dialogue

Zài lai yíge tāng, zěnmeyàng?: Here you see another example of the word zài, meaning “additionally” or “more”.

Nǐ xiǎng bu xiang chī dian tiǎnde dōngxi?: The Chinese are not accustomed to eating desserts as are some other cultures. While they have invented some rather delicious desserts, these are usually served only at more formal dinners. At a modest meal or in a xiǎochīdiàn, the only dessert available is probably fruit.

## Part 3

### Reference List

### Reference Notes

#### Notes on Part 3

zhīdao: The verb “to know”, zhīdao is a state verb and therefore can be negated, only with the syllable bù.

Wǒ zuótiān bù zhīdao tā zài nǎr.

Yesterday I didn't know where he was.

Notice also that the verb “to know, zhīdao, has a neutral tone on the last syllable. But when it is negated, the verb “to know” has tones on all syllables, bù zhīdào.

Nǐ jiàode tài duō le.: “You've ordered too much.” A more literal translation might be “What you've ordered is too much. The phrase Nǐ jiàode is a modifying phrase with the modified noun (perhaps “food” or “dishes”) deleted.

Mápó dòufu: This is a peppery hot dish made of bean curd, finely chopped beef or pork and hot bean paste. This dish is typical of the Szechwan style of cooking, which is noted for hot spicy dishes.

yúxiāng qiézi: This name literally means “fragrant-fish eggplant”. However, there is no fish used in the preparation of the dish. It is made with scallions, ginger, garlic, hot bean paste, vinegar and soy sauce. Yúxiāng refers to a famous Szechwan manner of preparation which was originally used to make fish dishes, but was later applied to other foods, such as pork, beef, and eggplant.

jīdīng: Earlier you saw the word jīpiān, “chicken slices”, now you see the word jīdīng, which means “chicken cubes” or “diced chicken. Both are commonly used in the names of dishes.

gōngbǎo jīdīng: This is a famous dish which originated in Szechwan. It is made with diced chicken, bamboo shoots, scallions, red peppers, soy sauce, and garlic.

xiārén guōba tāng: This is a shrimp and tomato soup into which squares of dried crispy rice are dropped. These squares of rice bear some resemblance to “rice crispies”. They are the crisp browned part of the rice left at the bottom of the pot. As the crispy rice squares are poured into the hot soup, a sizzling, crackling sound is given off.

básī píngguo: This is a dessert made of apple slices Which are covered with a light batter and deep fried. The fried apples are then dipped in a hot mixture of sugar-syrup and sesame seeds. The apples

are coated much in the same way taffy apples are. These hot sugar-coated apples are then dropped into a bowl of ice water, which hardens the sugar syrup covering into a crisp candy coating. The result is a dessert which combines a number of textures and tastes. The name for this dessert is translated many ways: “spun taffy apples”, “caramel apple fritters”, “pulled silk apples”. Bananas can also be prepared in this way.

### Dialogue Taipei

A conversation between two Chinese friends who are out to dinner in a Szechwan restaurant.

### Notes on the Dialogue

Dinner in a Szechwan Restaurant; China has a rich and varied tradition of cooking, due to the size of the country, the many different foods available, and the long history of its culture. The numerous styles of cooking may be grouped into the following schools: The Northern School (Jīng cài), The Sichuan School (Chuān Cài), The Húnán School (Xiāng Cài), The Shànghǎi School (Hù Cài). The Fújiàn School (Mǐn Cài), The Canton School (Yuè Cài), each with its own distinct style and famous dishes. It is common to find restaurants representing most of these schools of cooking in many cities in China.

Dāngrán hái yào yíge tāng: The speaker says “Naturally we'll also want a soup.” because soup is a part of every Chinese meal, from the simplest lunch to the most elaborate dinner. The reason for this is that, unless toasts are being drunk, the Chinese do not drink beverages along with their meal. The soup, which is served at the end of the meal, is the main liquid of the meal.

sháo (sháozi)/tiáogēng: The word sháo is used more in Peking, while tiáogēng is used in other parts of the country, too.

## Unit Vocabulary List

### Unit 3

#### Part 1

#### Reference List

#### Reference Notes

#### Notes on Part 1

kāndèdǒng: This is a compound verb of result meaning “can read and understand (it)”. Its negative counterpart is kànbudǒng, “can’t read and understand (it)”. See Meeting Module. Reference Notes for Unit 1 for a discussion of compound verbs of result.



Tā xiěde zì, wǒ kānbudǒng.

I can't read (understand) his writing.

Huánghuā Yú: The *Seiaena Schelegeli* is translated here as “yellow fish”. It is sometimes referred to in Chinese as huáng yú. In English, it is also called croaker, drum fish, or China Bass. Since the huánghuā yú is a fish native to China, any American fish name given to it, such as croaker, is at best only a rough equivalent.

Hóngshāo Yú: The “red-cooked” style of cooking involves stewing the meat, or in this case, the fish, in soy sauce, sherry and water. It is called “red-cooked” because of the reddish-brown color the soy sauce gives the dish.

Cōngbào Niúròu: Beef with Spring Onions. Literally, this means “spring onions-fried beef”. Bào is another method of cooking. It is similar to chǎo “sauté”, but uses less oil and higher heat.

Zhàici Ròusī Tāng: Although translated here as “Szechwan Hot Pickled Cabbage,” zhàici is properly made from mustard green roots preserved with salt and hot pepper. It can be used to flavor foods or it can be eaten by itself.

mǐfān: This word refers to cooked rice. It can also refer to rice dishes, such as chǎo fàn.

huājuǎr: Flower-rolls are made of steamed bread, which has been shaped into layers resembling petals.

suàn yíxià zhàng: The verb suàn means “to figure, to calculate”. Suàn zhàng means “to figure accounts”, “to calculate the bill”. Here the word yíxià follows the verb. The use of yíxià after a verb has an effect similar to reduplicating the verb, that is it makes the action more casual.

zài hēibǎnshàng xiězhe ne: -Zhe is the marker of DURATION of actions and states. It indicates that an action or state lasted for an amount of time. The marker ne, on the other hand, marks ONGOING (and therefore present) actions or states. In this expression the marker -zhe tells us that at some time the dishes CONTINUE in the state of being written on the blackboard, and the marker ne tells us that that state is GOING ON now. -Zhe is used in sentences to describe activities which last over a period of time, whether that time is past, present or future. A verb plus -zhe in Chinese often corresponds to the ‘-ing’ form of the verb in English.

Zǒuzhe qù kényi ma?

Can you get there by walking?

Wǒmen zuòzhe shuō huà, hǎo bu hao?

Let's sit awhile and talk, okay?

Míngtiān wǎnshàng, wǒmen shì zuòzhe chī, hái shì zhànzhe chī?

Tomorrow night will it be a sit-down dinner or will we eat standing up?

Tā hái bìngzhe ne.

He is still sick.

gōngnóngbīng: This expression is a conglomeration of the words for “worker”, gōngren, “farmer”, nóngmín, and “soldier”, bīng. Notice that the first syllable (or only syllable) of each is used to make this abbreviated form.

chīdelái: This is a compound verb of result with the syllable -de- inserted between the action verb and the ending verb. This pattern is #used to express the meaning “able to \_\_\_\_”. Usually the second verb

of the compound expresses the specific result of the action, but here the verb lái expresses only the general idea of result. (The verb lái in this position has been called a “dummy result ending”. Qù can also be used this way.) Although no specific result is expressed here, the pattern is still used because it expresses the idea of “can” or “able to”.

Měiguó cài, wǒ zuòdelái; Zhōngguó cài, wǒ zuòbulái.

I can cook American food, I can't cook Chinese food.

Měiguó cài, wǒ huì zuò; Zhōngguó cài, wǒ bú huì zuò.

I can cook American food, I can't cook Chinese food.

### Dialogue Peking

Three American women, who have spent the morning sightseeing, enter a cafeteria in a park. It is lunchtime and there are many people. As the women get in line to order, an attendant in the cafeteria comes up to them.

### Notes after Dialogue in Part 1

Notice that in this situation the cafeteria attendant does not let the foreigners stand in line for their food. Instead he waits on them getting them special food when possible. The Chinese feel that foreigners are their guests and should be treated accordingly.

Wǒ bù dōu kàndedǒng: Notice that the American woman chooses a rather indirect way of letting the Chinese attendant know that she cannot read. In the lines following, the attendant answers back simply suggesting some of the more tasty dishes, a courteous and face-saving response.

Huì yòng, kěshi yòngde bú tài hǎo: This is another courteous response. Here the American lets it be known that they can handle chopsticks, but does so modestly.

Chīdelái ba?: Literally, “Was it edible?” or “Could you eat it?”

### Dialogue in Taipei

Three friends enter a restaurant in downtown Taipei at lunchtime. A waiter comes up to them.

### Notes after Dialogue in Part 1

Wǒmen gāng cóng Mèiguó lái: In this sentence and the ones which follow the American modestly explains their situation and then asks for help. The waiter replies in a friendly and polite manner.

## Part 2

### Reference List

## Reference Notes

### Notes on Part 2

yǒumíng: “To be famous”, literally, “to have a name”, is always negated with méi.

Kǎo Yángròu: This is Mongolian Barbecued Lamb. It is thin slices of lamb dipped in a sauce of soy sauce, scallions, Chinese parsley, sugar, and sherry, and other condiments you can mix to your own taste, then grilled quickly over high heat. This meal is prepared at specialty restaurants which usually serve little else.

Shuàn Yángròu: This meal requires that a pot with a source of heat beneath it (huǒguō, literally “fire pot”) be placed in the middle of the table. Usually the pot is shaped in a ring with a chimney containing the heat source in the center. Each guest cooks his meat and vegetables in the boiling water of the fire pot, often with four or five people simultaneously keeping track of their food as it is cooking. After his meat is cooked he then dips it into various sauces and eats it. By the end of the meal, the water in the pot has become a highly flavored soup. Fěnsī (see below) and vegetables are then dropped into it, and it is eaten.

chúle...yǐwài: This pattern is used to express the idea “except for...”, “besides...”, or “aside from...”. The second part, yǐwài, is sometimes omitted.

Wǒ chúle mǎi yiběn shū, hái yào mǎi yiběn zázhi.

In addition to buying one book, I also want to buy one magazine.

fěnsī: These are called “cellophane noodles” because their appearance is clear and glass-like. They are made from pea-starch and are sometimes called pea-starch noodles.

zuóliào: This refers to various sauces used to dip the lamb in, and therefore translates as “condiment”. In other contexts, zuóliào can mean “ingredient”.

shuōde wǒ dōu è le: Here you see a verb, shuō, the syllable de, and the result of the action of talking (wǒ dōu è le.) A literal translation of the expression might be “Talk to (the point that) I’m already hungry.” The marker de carries the meaning “to the point of”, “to the extent that” in this expression.

xiāng cài: A coarse, leafy, strong tasting type of parsley.

### Dialogue in Peking

This conversation takes place in late spring in Peking. A foreign student talks with a few of his Chinese classmates.

### Dialogue in Taipei

This conversation takes place in winter in Taipei. A foreign student and some of his Chinese classmates are in a northern Chinese restaurant, waiting for the food to come.

### Notes after Dialogue in Part 2

běifāng cài: The syllable -fāng means “place” or “region”. It is added to direction words to form the name of a place. Běifāng cài refers to Northern Chinese cuisine. Nánfāng cài refers to cuisine south of the Yangtze river, including the Shanghai school of cooking and the Cantonese school of cooking.

## Part 3

### Reference List

### Reference Notes

#### Notes in Part 3

báobǐng: These are thin, wheat cakes, usually rolled out and cooked in pairs that are separated before use. They resemble thin, French crepes in appearance. They are eaten with dishes instead of rice.

Mùxu Ròu: This is a pork dish cooked with egg. It is eaten with báobǐng. A spoonful of Mùxu Ròu is placed in the middle of a báobǐng. Then it is rolled up and eaten.

sùcài: This is a vegetable dish made with no meat sauces or flavorings at all, and is therefore correctly called a vegetarian vegetable dish. Although sùcài are made without the use of meat sauces or meat flavorings, they are often artfully seasoned and formed in such a way that they resemble meat very closely.

xiāng: This is the adjectival verb “to be fragrant”. Zhège sùcài hěn xiāng., could also be translated as “This vegetarian vegetable dish has a good aroma”. The verb xiāng is often used when talking about food to refer to dishes with garlic or ginger.

### Dialogue in Taipei

Miss Wang invites an American couple, Mr. and Mrs. White to her apartment for dinner. They are just sitting down to dinner.

## Unit Vocabulary List

## Unit 4

### Part 1

### Reference List

### Reference Notes

#### Notes on Part 1

dìng yìzhuō xí; “To arrange a formal dinner”, more literally “to make arrangements for a one table banquet”. The counter for xí, “a feast or banquet”, is -zhuō, “table”.

duōshao qiándē biāozhǔn: “What price level”. Biāozhǔn literally means “standard”. Duōshao qiándē biāozhǔn could also be translated more literally as “a standard costing how much”, where duōshao qián “how much does it cost?” modifies biāozhǔn, “standard.” You will also hear duōshao qián biāozhǔnde, with the marker de placed at the end of the phrase. In this case the whole phrase “what price level” modifies the noun jǐxí, “banquet”, which has been left out of the sentence because it is understood.

kè: This word for guest is interchangeable with kèren.

duōbàn: “Most of...”. Duōbàn is a noun and is used in the subject position.

Tāmen duōbàn dōu bú qù.
Most of them are not going.
Duōbàn shì niàn Zhōngwén ne.
Most of them are studying Chinese.

ràng wǒmen pǐi...: “Have us select...”, or more literally “allow us to select...”. The verb pèi means “to match”. Dishes are matched to make a formal menu in Chinese.

lěngpán: “Cold dishes” or appetizers start off the menu in a formal Chinese dinner. Four cold dishes followed by six to eight main courses, a soup and a dessert is one type of menu arrangement used for formal dinners. Four cold dishes, four sautéed dishes and four main dishes, soup and dessert in another type of formal menu.

Cold dishes are usually prepared so as to be pleasing to the eye as well as the palate. Cold cooked meats and vegetables are arranged in colorful designs.

jiǔ: Literally, this means “liquor”. It is a term referring to any kind of alcoholic beverage from light beers and wine to hard liquor.

Ēméi Cāntīng: This is the name of a restaurant offering Szechwan style cuisine. Omei (fīmái) is the name of a mountain range running through Szechwan.

## Dialogue in Peking

A conversation on the telephone.

## Notes following Dialogue 1

Nǐ yào duōshao qián biāozhǔnde?: In restaurants in Peking, dinners for a group of people can be arranged on a price per person basis. The restaurants often have several standard priced menus to choose from.

Yíge dà lěngpán: One large cold platter instead of several smaller cold dishes may be used in making up the menu for a dinner. One large cold platter, eight main courses, a soup and a dessert is another type of menu for a dinner.

12.	Hóngshāo Yúchì	Red-cooked Shark's Fin
13.	Xiāngsū Yā	Fragrant Crispy Duck
14.	Gānshāo Míngxiā	Dry-cooked Jumbo Shrimp Szechuan Style
15.	Fùguì Jī	Beggar's Chicken

16.	Tángcù Yú		Sweet and Sour Fish
17.	Mìzhī Huōtuǐ		Ham in Honey Sauce
18.	Dōnggua Zhōng		Winter Melon Soup served in the Carved Melon Shell
19.	Bābǎo Fàn		Eight Jewel Rice
20.	Xīngrén Dòufu		Almond Pudding

### Notes on Vocabulary №12-20

Hóngshāo Yúchì: Shark's Fin is considered a delicacy by the Chinese because it is rare, nutritious and has a smooth, chewy texture when cooked. Some people think that it is best prepared in the red-cooked style.

Xiāngsū Yā: Fragrant Crispy Duck is marinated and steamed with onions, wine, ginger, pepper and anise, then deep fried quickly for a crispy result. This method of preparing duck is an example of southern style cooking.

Fùguì Jī: "Beggar's Chicken" is a whole chicken wrapped in wet clay, then roasted until very tender. It is said that this method of preparation was first used by beggars. Originally this dish was called Jiǎohuā Jī, literally "Beggar's Chicken"; but as the dish became popular among the upper class, the name changed to Fùguì Jī, literally "Riches and Honor Chicken".

Dōnggua Zhōng: Winter melon, mushrooms, and ham go into this soup. On festive occasions the melon shell is carved with decorations, such as dragons, and used as a bowl for serving the soup. This is a Cantonese specialty.

Xīngrén Dòufu: This is translated here as "Almond Pudding". Because Xīngrén Dòufu, with its light consistency, is somewhere between a pudding and a gelatin, "Almond Gelatin" would also be a fitting translation of the name.

Bābǎo Fàn: "Eight Jewel Rice". This is sweet sticky rice (nòmǐ) with preserved fruits. The rice is shaped into a mound and decorated with some of the preserved fruit.

### Dialogue in Taipei

An American woman calls a restaurant in Táiběi.

## Part 2

### Reference List

### Reference Notes

### Notes on Part 2

zhūkè: At a Chinese banquet the guest of honor sits farthest away from the door, the inner-most place in the room. The host sits nearest the door, on the serving side of the table.

**Bié jǐn gěi wǒ jiǎn cài:** This expression is often used at dinner parties. It is good hospitality for the host or hostess to serve the guests individually from time to time, picking out tender morsels for them. Fellow guests may also do this for the guest of honor.

**gān yībēi:** Drink a glass”, literally “dry a glass” (meaning “o make the glass dry by emptying it”). Since wine cups are small, the usual toast is **Gān bēi!** “Bottoms up!” For people who don't like to drink too much, the phrase **Suīyì**, “As you like”, will serve as a reply indicating that the whole cup need not be emptied. See the note on **suīyì** below.

**Zuì jī:** “Drunken Chicken”. The name of this dish comes from the way in which it is prepared. The verb **zuì** “to get drunk”, refers to the fact that the chicken is marinated in wine at least over-night. This dish originates with the Shanghai school of cooking. It is served cold.

**Wǒ bú huì hē jiǔ. Dàjiā dōu suīyì ba.:** Chinese drinking etiquette requires that if someone doesn't want to participate in the full range of drinking activities, he should so indicate early on.

## Dialogue in Peking

### Notes following Part 2 Dialogue

Most of the entertaining at a Chinese dinner party takes place at the dinner table, although there is some tea drinking and chatting both before and after the meal in other rooms. The dinner is served at a leisurely pace so that each dish may be savored and talked about. A good dish is appreciated for its appearance as much as its taste, texture and aroma. As each dish is eaten, toasts will be made. The host will start off by toasting the guest of honor and then other guests as a group. As the evening progresses he will toast each guest in turn and each guest will probably propose a toast of his own in honor of the host. A strongly flavored liquor (**gāoliang jiǔ**), a milder rice wine (**huáng jiǔ**), or beer may be served. Guests usually drink only when toasting. If you'd like to take a drink of something you either propose a toast or catch someone's eye and silently toast each other.

**mànmǎr chī** In sentences expressing commands or requests, an adjectival verb describing manner precedes the main verb.

Kuài yìdiǎr kāi!

Drive a little faster!

Kuài lái!

Come here quickly!

In the sentence, **mànmǎr chī**, the adjectival verb coming before the main verb, **màn**, is reduplicated with the second syllable changing to a high tone. This also happens in a few other instances.

Kuàikuāerde chī!

Quickly eat!

Hǎohāode zuò!

Do it well!

## Part 3

### Reference List

### Reference Notes

#### Notes on Part 3

jìng: This is the verb “to offer (something) respectfully”. It is used here ceremonially in the phrase “offer her a glass” meaning “to toast her”.

Juǎnqilai: This compound verb is made of juǎn, “to roll”, qǐ, “to rise, go or come up”, and lái “to come”. Both Peking Duck and Mùxu Ròu are eaten rolled up in pancakes.

Xūn Jī: For this dish, chicken is smoked in a vapor from burning tea leaves. This example of Peking cuisine is served as a cold dish or a hot dish.

Zhā Xiāqíu: Zhā is the verb “to deep fry”. This is a Shanghai dish of shredded shrimp shaped into balls and then deep fried.

jiàng: “Paste”. The paste which is eaten with Peking Duck is tiánmiànjiàng. “sweet bean paste”.

### Dialogue in Taipei

#### Notes after Dialogue in Part 3

Wǒ zìjǐ lái: This is a polite way for a guest to respond when the host has been serving him specially.

Xià yíci wǒmen kéyǐ zài lái zhèlǐ chī Kǎo Yā.: The use of the phrase xià yíci makes it sound as if they are making definite plans about the next time they come to eat here, when in fact they are just talking generally about some future time. In English, we use “sometime” rather than “next time”, as in “We’ll have to get together again sometime.”

## Unit Vocabulary List

### Foods



---

# Chapter 15. Personal Welfare

## Objectives for the Personal Welfare Module

When you have finished this module, you will be able to:

1. Describe the weather in all four seasons for your present locale, a Chinese city, and your hometown.
2. Describe the location, geographical setting, population, and air quality of the three areas in No. 1.
3. Give the names of five or more items of clothing.
4. Get your hair cut or styled.
5. Describe several items you ordinarily carry with you when traveling.
6. Give the names of and describe the different rooms in a house.
7. Give simple directions to a babysitter.
8. Ask and answer questions about the common cold and its symptoms. Offer advice on what to do for a simple ailment. Understand the use of kāishuǐ, “boiled water.”
9. Describe what takes place during a visit to the doctor. Know how to give normal body temperature in Celsius and in Fahrenheit. Tell “where it hurts” (using a list of the parts of the body, if necessary. )
10. Describe accidents where injuries occur, and tell someone to call an ambulance.
11. Report the loss of a passport to the appropriate officials. Find out where to go to report the loss and be able to determine whether adequate translation facilities will be available.
12. Use the words for “danger” and “caution” in grammatical, situationally appropriate sentences. Describe how someone entered a restricted area and how and for what reasons he was escorted out.

## Unit 1: Weather and Terrain

### Reference List

### References Notes

### References Notes on Part 1

Jīntiān tiānqì hěn hǎo: Notice that the time word jīntiān “today” is placed before the subject, not directly before the verb here. Most time words of more than one syllable may come either before or after the subject, but in either case before the verb. Examples:

Qùnián wǒ hái bú huì xiě zì.

Last year I still couldn't write characters.

Wǒ xiànzài hái xiě yidiǎn le.

Now I can write a little.

qìhòu: "climate" Also pronounced qìhòu (with hou in the neutral tone).

Dōngtiān hěn lěng.: "it's cold in winter" The adverb hěn is not translated here. Often hěn adds little or nothing to the intensity of the adjectival verb, and doesn't need to be translated by "very." Later, you may notice that sometimes we translate the hěn literally and sometimes we choose to omit it from the translation. It is not a matter of right and wrong; it is more a matter of feeling, and may be, we admit, a somewhat arbitrary decision.

chángcháng: "often, frequently, usually" An alternate form of this word is cháng.

Tā chángcháng qù Xiānggǎng.

She often goes to Hong Kong.

Tā cháng kàn bàozhǐ.

He often reads the newspaper.

The phrase "very often" is NOT formed by using hěn with cháng; instead, Just use cháng or chángcháng. If you must stress that something happens very often, use a phrase like "every few days."

xià xuě: "to snow" or more literally "(there) falls snow." The subject xuě "snow" normally follows the verb xià "to descend." This reversal of subject and verb is the rule, not the exception, in weather expressions.<sup>1</sup>

Òu, xià xuě le.

Oh, it's snowing.

Xià xuě ma? Bu xià.

Is it snowing? No.

Yǒu méiyǒu xià xuě? Méiyǒu.

Is it snowing? No.

Xià xuě le méiyǒu? Méiyǒu.

Is it snowing? No.

Jīntiān xià xuě bu xià xuě?

Is it going to snow today?

Xiànzài bù xià xuě le.

It's not snowing anymore.

<sup>1</sup>English is no more logical when it comes to weather expressions: it uses the meaningless "it," as in "it snows."

tiān: “heaven, sky, day.”

Āiya, wǒde tiān na!

Oh my heavens!

Tiān zhīdao!

Heaven only knows!

qíng: “to be clear, to clear up” In the sentence Tiān qíng le, the marker le tells us that a change has taken place. The meaning is not simply that the sky is clear, but that the sky is clear NOW, or rather, the sky has cleared up.

## **Unit 2: Clothing**

## **Unit 3: Hair Care**

## **Unit 4: In the Home**

## **Unit 5: Minor Physical Complaints**

## **Unit 6: Accidents and Difficulties**

## **Appendixes**

### **Parts of the body**

### **Medical Conditions and Illnesses**

### **Furniture and Household Items**

### **Parts of the House**

## **Module Vocabulary List**